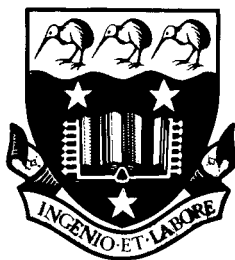




**The  
University  
of  
Auckland**

*Calendar 1988*



# Contents

	<i>Page</i>		<i>Page</i>
<b>Introductory Information</b>		<b>Postgraduate Diploma in Social Research</b>	189
Calendar 1988, 1989	4	<i>Faculty of Science</i>	
The University of Auckland Foundation	5	Degree of Bachelor of Science	194
History of the University	5	Degree of Bachelor of Science (Hons)	209
<b>General Information</b>		Degree of Bachelor of Optometry	212
Calendar Year 1988	11	Degree of Master of Science	215
Officers of the University	17	Degree Course Prescriptions	219
The Council	17	Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions	253
The Senate	18	Diploma in Clinical Psychology	253
Deans of Faculties	19	Diploma in Computer Science	254
Honorary Graduates	19	Diploma in Mathematical Education	254
Professores Emeriti	20	Diploma in Statistics	255
Staff of the University (academic)	21	Certificate in the Principles and Practice of Radio-Chemistry	256
Staff of the University (library)	49	<i>Faculty of Commerce</i>	
Staff of the University (non-academic)	50	Degree of Bachelor of Commerce	258
<b>General Statutes and Regulations</b>		Degree of Master of Commerce	267
Admission	56	Degree of Master of Business Administration	268
Preparatory Application	58	Degree Course Prescriptions	269
Enrolment and Course (General)	59	Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions	275
Limitation of Entry	70	Post Graduate Diploma in Business	275
Enrolment Limitations	70	Post Graduate Diploma in Commerce	276
Enrolment 1988	72	<i>Faculty of Law</i>	
Preparatory Enrolment	73	Degree of Bachelor of Laws	278
Enrolment Timetable 1988	76	Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Hons)	281
Extramural Enrolment	78	Professional Legal Education Programme	283
Examination	79	Degree of Master of Laws	283
Conferring of Degrees and Academic Dress	85	Degree of Master of Jurisprudence	285
Award of Honorary Degrees	86	Degree Course Prescriptions	287
Fees	86	Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions	293
Discipline	89	Diploma in Criminology	293
The Library	92	Post Graduate Diploma in Legal Studies	293
Arms of the University	96	<i>Faculty of Music</i>	
<b>Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>		Degree of Bachelor of Music	296
<i>Faculty of Arts</i>		Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)	299
Degree of Bachelor of Arts	98	Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours	301
Degree of Master of Arts	131	Degree of Master of Music	302
Degree of Master of Literature	138	Degree of Doctor of Music	304
Degree Course Prescription	139	Degree Course Prescriptions	306
Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions	182	Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions	309
Diploma in Broadcast Communication	182	Diploma in Music	309
Diploma in Drama	183	Diploma in Music with Honours	311
Diploma in Education	184	Certificate Course of Instruction in a Single Instrument	312
Diploma in Educational Psychology	184		
Diploma in English Language Teaching	185		
Diploma in Guidance and Counselling	187		
Diploma in Local Government and Administration	188		

	<i>Page</i>	<i>Page</i>
<i>Faculty of Architecture, Property and Planning</i>		Degree of Doctor of Science . . . . . 395
Degree of Bachelor of Architecture . . . . . 315		Degree of Doctor of Laws . . . . . 396
Degree of Bachelor of Property Administration 319		Degree of Doctor of Engineering . . . . . 397
Degree of Master of Architecture . . . . . 322		<i>Inter-Faculty</i>
Degree of Master of Property Administration . . 323		Degree of Master of Philosophy . . . . . 400
Joint Special Examination NZIA and AERB . . 324		Degree of Doctor of Philosophy . . . . . 400
Architecture Degree Course Prescriptions . . . 325		Certificate of Proficiency . . . . . 402
Degree of Bachelor of Planning . . . . . 331		Transitional Certificate . . . . . 403
Degree of Master of Planning . . . . . 334		Inter-Faculty Studies . . . . . 403
Planning Degree Course Prescriptions . . . . . 336		Operations Research . . . . . 403
Planning Diploma Course Regulations . . . . . 338		Intermediate courses (Other NZ Universities) . 404
Diploma in Town Planning . . . . . 338		<i>Continuing Education, Computer Centre</i>
<i>Faculty of Engineering</i>		Centre for Continuing Education . . . . . 406
Degree of Bachelor of Engineering . . . . . 340		Computer Centre . . . . . 406
Degree of Master of Engineering . . . . . 346		<b>General Student and Staff Information</b>
Degree Course Prescriptions . . . . . 349		Student Services . . . . . 410
Diploma Course Regulations and		Halls of Residence . . . . . 411
Prescriptions . . . . . 367		Students' Association . . . . . 413
Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology . . 367		Graduates' Association . . . . . 415
Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology . 368		University Club . . . . . 416
<i>Faculty of Fine Arts</i>		Lecture & Laboratory Timetables 1988 . . . . 417
Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts . . . . . 370		Lecture Timetable 1988 . . . . . 418
Degree of Master of Fine Arts . . . . . 372		Laboratory Timetable 1988 . . . . . 436
Degree Course Prescriptions . . . . . 374		<i>Scholarships, Tertiary Grants, Awards and Prizes</i>
<i>Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology</i>		Tertiary Assistance Grants . . . . . 440
Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology . . . . . 380		Scholarships and Prizes . . . . . 444
Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and		National Scholarships 1987 . . . . . 445
Bachelor of Surgery . . . . . 381		University of Auckland Scholarships 1987 . . . . 445
Degree of Master of Human Biology . . . . . 382		University of Auckland Prizes 1986 . . . . . 447
Degree of Master of Medical Science . . . . . 383		<b>Legislation</b>
Degree of Doctor of Medicine . . . . . 384		Legislation . . . . . 451
Degree Course Prescriptions . . . . . 385		<b>Prescribed Texts</b>
Diploma Course Regulations and		Prescribed Texts . . . . . 481
Prescriptions . . . . . 389		Directory . . . . . 503
Diploma in Paediatrics . . . . . 389		Index . . . . . 506
Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics . . . . 389		
Diploma in Obstetrics . . . . . 391		
<i>Higher Degrees</i>		
Degree of Doctor of Literature . . . . . 394		

#### Official Address

The correspondence of the University is conducted by the Registrar, and all communications on University matters should be addressed as follows:

The Registrar  
The University of Auckland  
Private Bag, Auckland  
New Zealand

Telegrams and Cables should be addressed as follows:

University Auckland  
Telephone: 737-999

## 1988 CALENDAR

JANUARY						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
				1	2	3
4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17
18	19	20	21	22	23	24
25	26	27	28	29	30	31

FEBRUARY						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29						

MARCH						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
	1	2	3	4	5	6
7	8	9	10	11	12	13
14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27
28	29	30	31			

APRIL						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
				1	2	3
4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17
18	19	20	21	22	23	24
25	26	27	28	29	30	

MAY						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
30	31					1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29

JUNE						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
		1	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10	11	12
13	14	15	16	17	18	19
20	21	22	23	24	25	26
27	28	29	30			

JULY						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
				1	2	3
4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17
18	19	20	21	22	23	24
25	26	27	28	29	30	31

AUGUST						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30	31				

SEPTEMBER						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
			1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9	10	11
12	13	14	15	16	17	18
19	20	21	22	23	24	25
26	27	28	29	30		

OCTOBER						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
31					1	2
3	4	5	6	7	8	9
10	11	12	13	14	15	16
17	18	19	20	21	22	23
24	25	26	27	28	29	30

NOVEMBER						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
	1	2	3	4	5	6
7	8	9	10	11	12	13
14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27
28	29	30				

DECEMBER						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
			1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9	10	11
12	13	14	15	16	17	18
19	20	21	22	23	24	25
26	27	28	29	30	31	

## 1989 CALENDAR

JANUARY						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
30	31					1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29

FEBRUARY						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
		1	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10	11	12
13	14	15	16	17	18	19
20	21	22	23	24	25	26
27	28					

MARCH						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
		1	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10	11	12
13	14	15	16	17	18	19
20	21	22	23	24	25	26
27	28	29	30	31		

APRIL						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
				1	2	3
3	4	5	6	7	8	9
10	11	12	13	14	15	16
17	18	19	20	21	22	23
24	25	26	27	28	29	30

MAY						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30	31				

JUNE						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
			1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9	10	11
12	13	14	15	16	17	18
19	20	21	22	23	24	25
26	27	28	29	30		

JULY						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
31					1	2
3	4	5	6	7	8	9
10	11	12	13	14	15	16
17	18	19	20	21	22	23
24	25	26	27	28	29	30

AUGUST						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
	1	2	3	4	5	6
7	8	9	10	11	12	13
14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27
28	29	30	31			

SEPTEMBER						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
				1	2	3
4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17
18	19	20	21	22	23	24
25	26	27	28	29	30	

OCTOBER						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
30	31					1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29

NOVEMBER						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
		1	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10	11	12
13	14	15	16	17	18	19
20	21	22	23	24	25	26
27	28	29	30			

DECEMBER						
M	T	W	T	F	S	S
				1	2	3
4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17
18	19	20	21	22	23	24
25	26	27	28	29	30	31



---

## THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND FOUNDATION

In commemoration of the Centenary of the University, the University of Auckland Foundation is established for the advancement of education in New Zealand in ways which extend the University's ability to meet the higher educational needs of the Community.

The Trustees will apply the income of the Foundation from time to time in fulfilling within the University District and elsewhere in New Zealand the purpose for which the Foundation is established:

1. To encourage the transfer and exchange of knowledge among scholars and the dissemination of knowledge among the community.
2. To encourage overseas scholars to visit New Zealand and New Zealand scholars to visit overseas to carry out study and research and to exchange and impart their knowledge and experience.
3. To arrange the movement within New Zealand of resident and visiting scholars.
4. To facilitate those visits and movements of scholars to, from and within New Zealand, assisting to arrange the temporary exchange or occupation of academic posts in New Zealand and (where New Zealand scholars are concerned) overseas.
5. To arrange the giving of lectures and the promotion of educational discussion and debate in New Zealand before invited or public audiences by scholars from both within and without New Zealand and to arrange itineraries and accommodation for the participants;

and in encouraging, arranging and facilitating those activities the Trustees may make such grants, pay such fees, cost of travel and accommodation and make such other expenditure as they consider necessary or desirable.

Note: "New Zealand Scholar" means a scholar resident in New Zealand who is pursuing his career here. "Scholar" includes a person engaged in any discipline, in the study or practice of administration and of technology and in the management or custody of libraries.

Donations to the Foundation should be sent to:

The Registrar,  
University of Auckland,  
Private Bag,  
Auckland 1.

A form of legacy for the Foundation, or for the University as a whole, is available on request from the Registrar.

---

## HISTORY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

As early as 1862 an unknown writer, 'J.G.', proposed in *Chapman's New Zealand Monthly Magazine* that a university should be established in Auckland. No one took up the suggestion. In the South Island, where the inhabitants were wealthier and keener on education, a university was established in Otago in 1869 and a college in Canterbury in 1873. In 1870 Parliament passed legislation to create the University of New Zealand as an examining body with affiliated teaching colleges. An Auckland politician, later Speaker of the House of Representatives, Maurice O'Rorke, tried to induce Parliament to place the University in Auckland, but he failed. The University of New Zealand had no fixed abode; its Senate met in the main towns in turn.

The citizens of Auckland did nothing to establish a college, but some so-called 'university' instruction was provided at the Auckland Grammar School. One student, Kate Edger, in 1877 became the first woman to graduate B.A. at a British university.

In 1878 O'Rorke was appointed chairman of a Royal Commission to report on higher education. It recommended that University Colleges should be established at Auckland and Wellington. In 1882 the Auckland University College was set up by Act of Parliament. Thus the College was a creation, not of the citizens and local government, like those in the south, but of the state.

The applicants for the first four chairs, of Classics and English, Mathematics, Natural Science, Chemistry and Physics, were interviewed in England by the New Zealand Agent-General and some of the most famous scientists and scholars of the day, including the great Benjamin Jowett of Balliol College, Vice-Chancellor of Oxford University. The men appointed formed an impressive group. The chemist, F.D. Brown, had studied both in France and at Leipzig as well as London, and taught at Oxford and London. He had published a dozen papers. Algernon Phillips Thomas, the biologist, was a Balliol man who had discovered the life history of the liver fluke. The classicist, T.G. Tucker, was to become a famous scholar. When he left to go to Melbourne University in 1885 he was succeeded by Hutcheson Macaulay Posnett, an Irishman who had written several books, including one on comparative literature, what would now be called the sociology of literature, a subject which he is now credited with inventing. The first professor of Mathematics was drowned shortly after he reached Auckland and he was succeeded by W.S. Aldis, who had been the senior wrangler at Cambridge and was the author of several mathematical books.

The College was formally opened on 21 May 1883 in the Choral Hall, then the largest hall in Auckland. The Governor, Sir William Jervois, announced that the College was to be a thoroughly democratic institution, open to all, women as well as men, and to all classes. He remarked that the first College building was a barn. It was, in fact, a disused courthouse.

When O'Rorke had first tried to secure a University for Auckland, in 1872, he had suggested housing it in Government House, left empty when the capital was moved to Wellington in 1865. This immediately aroused opposition in the newspapers, for many Aucklanders hoped that the capital — and the governor — would eventually return to Auckland. These conflicting ambitions lay at the basis of a recurrent feature of the history of the College, the great 'site row' which raged with particular violence in the years 1909-12, with the College trying to get at least part of the grounds of Government House while numerous citizens strongly opposed it. One result was that for years the College had no permanent site or permanent buildings. Instead, it acquired the disused Admiralty House and a building which had been the original Parliament House. In 1907 the Choral Hall was purchased. In 1917 the College occupied the deserted Grammar School. Not until 1926 did it acquire its first permanent building, now the Old Arts building, in Princes Street.

The College was poor: its statutory grant was for many years only £4,000 a year, while its educational reserves were of such poor land that they brought in very little. It was small: there were 95 students in 1883; 156 by 1901. Many of the students had not passed the matriculation examination. Most of them were part-time, trainee teachers and Law clerks, Music students from 1888 onwards, Commerce students by 1905. The College was dominated by the lay members of Council, especially by Sir Maurice O'Rorke, who was its chairman from 1883 to 1916. When Professor Aldis complained in 1892 that he had found the College stables occupied by O'Rorke's son's polo ponies he was dismissed! Despite a prolonged public controversy, Council would not reinstate him. Posnett also left, in 1891.

Some of the best professors departed. Most of the remainder grew increasingly out-of-date in their subjects. There was no system of sabbatical or study leave until the nineteen-twenties. The teachers simply handed on traditional knowledge: research was not expected and was rarely done. The staff lectured for very long hours. In some subjects research was impossible. For instance, the library took no mathematical journals, so the mathematicians knew little about recent work. Some students, however, carried out good research notably in Chemistry. In general the students were given a good, traditional undergraduate education, but standards were not rigorous and had in some subjects declined by the twenties.

In that decade and well into the thirties the College was ruled by a Registrar, Rocke O'Shea, and a new Chairman (President after 1924), another former Cabinet Minister, Sir George Fowlds. Under their not always benevolent dictatorship some improvements were made. The first New Zealand graduates with post-graduate education abroad were appointed to the staff, notably the very able economist, Horace Belshaw, the philosopher, R.P. Anschutz, and the physicist, P.W. Burbidge. An excellent researcher, W.F. Short, was appointed as a lecturer in Chemistry.

Some advances were made in providing professional education. The only such education offered at the College was in Law, which attracted large numbers of students. The only 'professional schools' recognized by the University of New Zealand were Medicine at Otago and Engineering at Canterbury. In 1906 the College established a School of Mining, which, covertly and by degrees was turned into a 'School of Engineering'. After fierce battles with Canterbury, fired by provincial rivalry, the Auckland School received University recognition for its teaching in the first two professional years. Students then had to go to Canterbury to complete their final year of education. In the course of this battle, in 1917, the College also began instruction in Architecture.

During the depression of the early nineteen-thirties there was great disputation and rancour. The temporary appointment of a lecturer in history, J.C. Beaglehole, later a world-famous scholar, was terminated, his friends believed, because of a letter of liberal or radical tendency, to a newspaper, defending the

right of Communists to distribute their literature. This episode led to a Council election in which a liberal, Hollis Cocker, displaced a conservative. The College Council now adopted resolutions in favour of academic freedom and received the undeserved congratulations of the flower of the British academic establishment, including Lord Rutherford and Wittgenstein. At this time, in a modern terminology, the College 'came alive'. For instance, some students, led by James Bertram, established a new literary journal, *Phoenix*, which was the focus for the first literary movement in New Zealand history: Allen Curnow, A.R.D. Fairburn, R.A.K. Mason and other writers, later distinguished, wrote for it.

The College received great intellectual stimulus in 1934 when four new professors arrived, H.G. Forder, a very able mathematician, Arthur Sewell, a brilliant lecturer in English, a classicist, C.G. Cooper, and a new historian, James Rutherford.

The College had never had academic leadership. Cocker came to dominate it before and during World War II as much as had O'Rorke and O'Shea. But Council now appointed the first Principal (later Vice-Chancellor) K.J. Maidment. He came in 1950 and remained for two decades. He was a Classics don from Merton College, Oxford.

The nineteen-fifties was a very difficult period in the history of the College — the University of Auckland, as it was called from 1958 onwards. There was a further, fierce 'site row'. Council wanted to move to a larger site out of town. The National Government in 1956 offered Government House to the College as a compensation for staying in Princes Street. Another 'save Government House' campaign followed. Both academic staff and the public were deeply divided over the issue, which was resolved in 1960: The University was to stay where it was.

The 'site row' held up the building programme for about six years, while student rolls rose rapidly, to 4,000 by 1959, with the result that there was bad overcrowding in quite inadequate buildings — army huts, for instance, were erected. Universities everywhere were expanding rapidly. New Zealand salaries were low and many able Auckland staff were recruited by Australian or other universities. Despite these problems, there was significant progress. New subjects were introduced: Geography, Anthropology, Maori Studies, Fine Arts. There was a new emphasis on staff research. Many of the new and younger academics became very active researchers, as could be seen in the growing lists of staff publications.

A general improvement in conditions was spearheaded by a Committee, the Hughes Parry Committee, which reported on University conditions. Staff salaries were raised. For the first time the students were given fairly generous bursaries, which led to a rapid increase in the proportion of full-time students. The government grant to the University rose rapidly. There was a massive university building programme, and over the next two decades the campus was transformed as one large building after another was erected: Fine Arts, Science, Engineering buildings, a Student Union, a new library ... A number of new subjects were introduced, including Political Studies, Art History, and Sociology. In 1968 teaching commenced in the new Medical School, which was the most important 'new development'.

By the end of the sixties Auckland had the largest university library in the country, whereas it had usually been the smallest. Most of the credit for this belonged to Kenneth Maidment. One other change must be mentioned. In 1962 the University at last became independent, when the University of New Zealand was abolished.

When Dr Kenneth Maidment departed in 1970, there were 9,300 students. Under his successor, Dr Colin Maiden, the roll increased to over 13,500 by 1987. Dr Maiden was an Auckland engineer who headed a research division of General Motors in Michigan. One of the first things that struck him in Auckland was the paucity of student facilities. He pushed ahead to get them a theatre, a splendid gymnasium and recreation centre, and a large playing field 'complex'. The entire administrative organisation, from faculties and committees to deputy vice-chancellors, was reformed. The academic boom of the sixties continued well into the seventies and several new buildings, like Human Sciences, were built and new subjects, like Management Studies and Computer Science, were introduced.

The seventies brought numerous social changes: an increase in the proportion of Maori and Polynesian students and in the proportion of women as well as in the proportion of older students. Only in the years 1975-81 were the first two women professors appointed, Marie Clay and Patricia Bergquist. At a time of high inflation the government grant to the University rose rapidly, to \$74.7 million by 1987. Nevertheless there was a certain austerity by then, in a bleak economic climate, but after a century of growth the University seems sufficiently strongly established in the community to withstand hard conditions.

---

# General Information

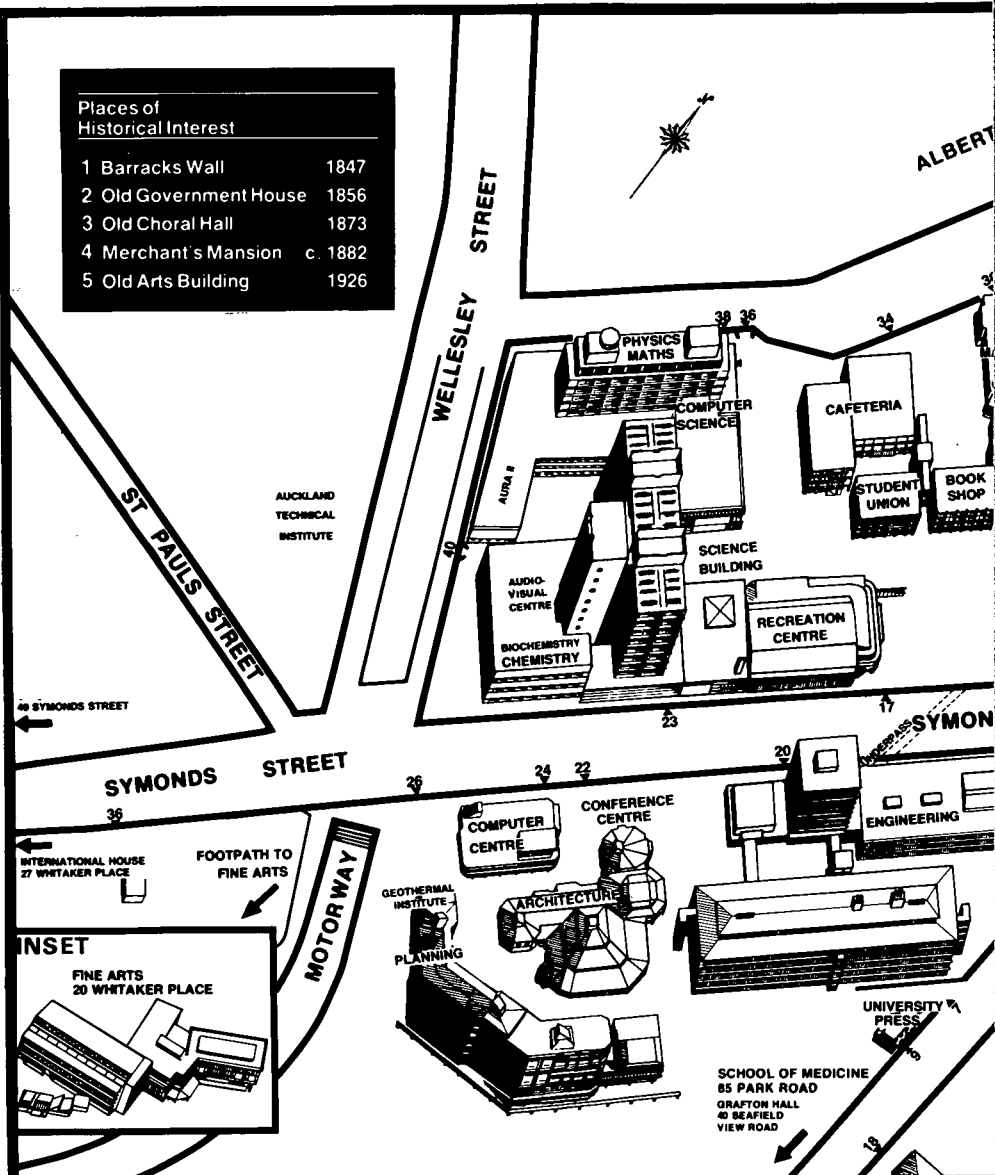
## *Contents*

---

9	Campus Map
11	Calendar Year 1988
17	Officers of the University
17	The Council
18	The Senate
19	Deans of Faculties
19	Honorary Graduates
20	Professores Emeriti
21	Staff of the University
49	Library Staff
50	Administration Staff
50	Registrar's Section Staff
51	Academic Section Staff
51	Finance Section Staff
51	Personnel Section Staff
53	Works Section Staff
53	Welfare Services Section Staff

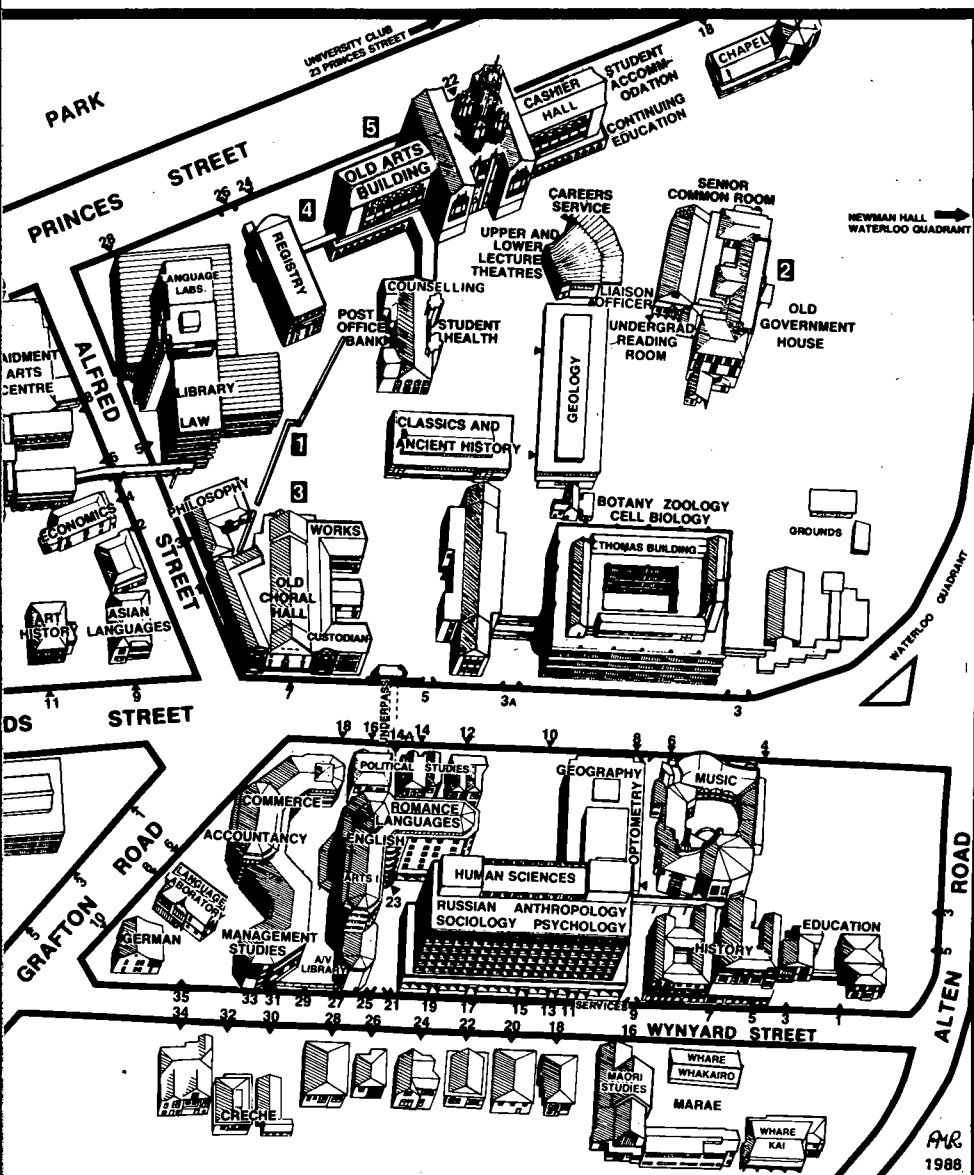
### Places of Historical Interest

- |                        |         |
|------------------------|---------|
| 1 Barracks Wall        | 1847    |
| 2 Old Government House | 1856    |
| 3 Old Choral Hall      | 1873    |
| 4 Merchant's Mansion   | c. 1882 |
| 5 Old Arts Building    | 1926    |



# UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

## MAIN SITE



**ALL DEPARTMENTS AND THEIR STREET ADDRESSES  
ARE LISTED AT THE BACK OF THE CALENDAR**

# THE CALENDAR YEAR 1988

## January 1988

Friday 1	New Year's Day
Tuesday 5	Registry opens Liaison Office opens
Thursday 7	General Information and Advisory Centre opens in Lower Lecture Theatre until 15 January
Friday 15	Applications close for: Enrolment as an Extramural student Permission to re-enrol because of failure to make satisfactory academic progress Preparatory Application for enrolment for all first year students Preparatory Application for Personal Interest Courses (Non-matriculated students — Examining) Preparatory enrolment as an internal student for Architecture, Property and Planning: Intermediate for BArch, BPA, BPlan (any papers in other Faculties requiring preparatory enrolment, 37.100), BArch 1st Professional, BArch Second Professional from BE Civil or NZCD (Arch), BPA 1st Professional (for the first time), BPlan 1st Professional (for the first time); Arts: Accounting 01.102, 01.103, English 18.328, Music 28.100, 28.101, 28.103 taken as a three paper one year course, Psychology 32.109, 32.210, 32.403, 32.408, 32.409, 32.421 and Masters papers, DipDrama, DipGuid (for the first time), DipSocRes; Commerce: BCom Part I (for the first time) including enrolments for conjoint courses, direct entry to Part II, Accounting 01.102, 01.103 and all other Accounting papers for any Course of study other than BCom, PGDipCom, All Commercial Law papers (for any course of study other than BCom), Management Science and Information Systems 74.100, 74.200 (for courses of study other than BCom), Management Science and Information Systems 74.200, 74.221, Management Studies and Labour Relations 72.203 (for course of study other than BCom), Management Studies and Labour Relations 72.305, 72.314; Engineering: BE Professional (for the first time) all papers for courses other than BE; Law: Law Intermediate papers in other Faculties requiring preparatory enrolment, 25.103, LLB and LLB (Hons) all papers in First Law Examination; Music: all papers including those for which interviews for a Performance Course have been held and places confirmed (for the first time) 28.215, 28.216, 28.218, 28.318; Science: Biochemistry 66.202, 66.203, 66.301, 66.302, Botany 06.371, Biology 39.311, 39.313, Cellular & Molecular Biology 40.303, 40.304, 40.305, Chemistry 08.230, 08.330, 08.331, 08.360, 08.370, Geology all Stage II and III papers, Pharmacology 96.301, Physics 31.297, Physiology 67.301, 67.302, 67.303, Psychology 32.109, 32.210, 32.403, 32.408, 32.409, 32.421 and Masters papers, Zoology 38.310, 38.316 and Masters papers (for the first time), BOptom 32.109 and all applications for second year of course Special Admission Permission to transfer to the University of Auckland from another University in New Zealand including students wishing to complete another University course
Friday 22	Last date for receipt of late Preparatory Application forms for courses/papers requiring Pre-enrolment

## February 1988

Monday 1	Auckland Anniversary Day holiday
Tuesday 2	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30
Wednesday 3	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30 Meeting of Press Committee 2.00
Thursday 4	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30
Saturday 6	Waitangi (New Zealand) Day
Monday 8	Meeting of Education Committee 3.30

Wednesday 10	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00 Meeting of Leigh Laboratory Management Committee 11.00
Thursday 11	Meeting of Theatre Management Sub-Committee 3.30
Monday 15	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30 Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 16	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Wednesday 17	General Information and Advisory Centre opens in Recreation Centre until 24 February
Thursday 18	<b>Enrolment begins</b> Times for enrolment for the various Faculties are set out under General Statutes and Regulations, Enrolment Timetable 1988 Meeting of Non-Academic Staff Committee 3.30 Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00
Friday 19	Meeting of Student Accommodation Committee 3.30
Monday 22	Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30
Tuesday 23	
Friday 26	<b>Enrolment ends</b>
Sunday 28	Candidates who have not presented theses, essays, dissertations and original investigations to complete their Degree or Diploma by this date are required to re-enrol and are not entitled to have their Degree conferred or Diploma awarded at the Graduation Ceremony in May
Monday 29	<b>FIRST TERM BEGINS</b> Meeting of Press Committee 2.00

**March 1988**

Tuesday 1	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30 Enrolments (with fees) close with the Registrar for the June examination for DipG&O
Thursday 3	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30
Monday 7	Meeting of Senate 9.30 Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Tuesday 8	Meeting of Departmental Grants Sub-Committee 9.00
Wednesday 9	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00
Thursday 10	Meeting of Recreation Sub-Committee 3.30
Monday 14	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30 Meeting of Council 4.00 Last day for additions to courses in Architecture, Property and Planning, Commerce, Fine Arts, Law, Medicine and Science except Masters papers and papers commencing after the beginning of the academic year
Tuesday 15	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Wednesday 16	Meeting of Promotions Advisory Sub-Committee 3.30
Thursday 17	Meeting of Public Relations & Cultural Activities Committee 3.30
Friday 18	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00
Monday 21	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30 Meeting of Student Welfare Committee 3.30
Tuesday 22	Meeting of Library Committee 10.00 Meeting of Union Management Committee 3.30
Thursday 24	Meeting of Audit Committee 3.30
Friday 25	Meeting of Departmental Grants Sub-Committee 9.00
Monday 28	Meeting of Senate 9.30 Meeting of Press Committee 2.00
Tuesday 29	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30
Thursday 31	Last day for additions and deletions to courses in Arts and Music and all deletions for all courses except Engineering Masters papers and papers commencing after the beginning of the academic year (not including DipG&O, DipPaed, DipObst, final year for MBChB) Last day for LATE applications for Extramural enrolment (Auckland subjects) Last day for receipt of applications for the conferment of Degrees and award of Diplomas for the May Graduation Ceremony including applications for Masters and other Degrees with a research content.



---

**April 1988**

---

Friday 1	<b>Easter Recess begins</b> Good Friday
Monday 4	Easter Monday
Tuesday 5	University closed
Wednesday 6	<b>Lectures resume after Easter Recess</b>
Thursday 7	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30
Monday 11	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30 Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Wednesday 13	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00
Thursday 14	Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30
Friday 15	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00
Monday 18	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30 Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 19	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Wednesday 20	Meeting of Promotions Advisory Committee 3.30
Thursday 21	Meeting of Non-Academic Staff Committee 3.30
Monday 25	Anzac Day
Tuesday 26	Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30
Wednesday 27	Meeting of Student Accommodation Committee 3.30
Thursday 28	Meeting of Theatre Management Sub-Committee 3.30
Saturday 30	Last day for substitution to Masters courses in Engineering

---

**May 1988**

---

Sunday 1	Applications close with Overseas Admissions Committee for overseas students in places other than New Zealand, Fiji, Tonga, French Polynesia and Hong Kong seeking admission at Entrance level for the 1989 academic year
Monday 2	Meeting of Senate 9.30 Meeting of Press Committee 2.00
Tuesday 3	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30
Thursday 5	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30 Graduation Ceremonies — Arts, Law, Architecture, Property and Planning
Friday 6	Graduation Ceremonies — Engineering, Medicine, Commerce, Science, Music and Fine Arts
Saturday 7	<b>First Term ends</b>
Monday 9	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30 Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Wednesday 11	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00 Meeting of Leigh Laboratory Management Committee 11.00 Meeting of Audit Committee 3.30
Thursday 12	Meeting of Recreation Sub-Committee 3.30
Monday 16	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30 Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 17	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Thursday 19	Meeting of Public Relations & Cultural Activities Committee 3.30
Friday 20	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00
Monday 23	Meeting of Student Welfare Committee 3.30
Tuesday 24	Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30
Monday 30	<b>Second Term begins</b> Meeting of Senate 9.30 Meeting of Press Committee 2.00
Tuesday 31	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30

---

**June 1988**

---

Thursday 2	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30
Monday 6	Queen's Birthday
Wednesday 8	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00

Thursday 9	Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30
Monday 13	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30 Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Tuesday 14	Meeting of Library Committee 10.00
Thursday 16	Meeting of Theatre Management Sub-Committee 3.30
Friday 17	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00 <b>Engineering Study Break begins</b>
Monday 20	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30 Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 21	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Thursday 23	Meeting of Non-Academic Staff Committee
Friday 24	<b>Engineering Study Break ends and Engineering Examinations begin</b>
Monday 27	Meeting of Senate 9.30 Meeting of Press Committee 2.00 Meeting of Student Accommodation Committee 3.30
Tuesday 28	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30 Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30
Thursday 30	Applications close for admission in 1989 for BMus (Performance) (for the first time), and DipMus (for the first time)

---

### *July 1988*

---

Saturday 2	<b>Engineering Examinations end</b>
Monday 4	<b>Mid-term Study Break begins</b>
Thursday 7	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30
Saturday 9	<b>Mid-term Study Break ends</b>
Monday 11	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30 Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Wednesday 13	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00
Thursday 14	Meeting of Recreation Sub-Committee 3.30
Friday 15	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00
Monday 18	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30 Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 19	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Thursday 21	Meeting of Public Relations and Cultural Activities Committee 3.30
Monday 25	Meeting of Student Welfare Committee 3.30
Tuesday 26	Meeting of Library Committee 10.00 Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30
Sunday 31	Applications close with the Registrar for Rhodes Scholarships Examination entries (with fees) for Sinclair, Gillies and Lissie Rathbone Scholarships (Entrance level) to be sent to the Secretary, Examination Board, Box 12-348, Wellington North, by this date

---

### *August 1988*

---

Monday 1	Enrolments (with fees) close with the Registrar for the next examination for DipObst Meeting of Senate 9.30 Meeting of Press Committee 2.00
Tuesday 2	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30
Thursday 4	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30
Monday 8	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30 Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Wednesday 10	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00 Meeting of Leigh Laboratory Management Committee 11.00
Thursday 11	Meeting of Theatre Management Sub-Committee 3.30
Friday 12	<b>Second Term ends</b>
Monday 15	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30 Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 16	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Thursday 18	Meeting of Non-Academic Staff Committee 3.30

Friday 19	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00
Thursday 25	Meeting of Audit Committee 3.30
Monday 29	Meeting of Student Accommodation Committee 3.30
Tuesday 30	Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30

**September 1988**

Thursday 1	Applications close with Overseas Students Admissions Committee for overseas students in New Zealand, Fiji, Tonga, French Polynesia and Hong Kong seeking admission at Entrance level for the 1989 Academic year Applications close for overseas students for entry to the Course for DipGeothermTech Enrolments (with fees) close with the Registrar for the December examinations for DipG&O and DipObst Meeting of Works Committee 3.30
Monday 5	<b>Third Term begins</b> Meeting of Senate 9.30 Meeting of Press Committee 2.00
Tuesday 6	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30
Wednesday 7	Meeting of Promotions Advisory Committee 3.30
Thursday 8	Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30
Monday 12	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30 Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Wednesday 14	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00
Thursday 15	Meeting of Recreation Sub-Committee 3.30
Friday 16	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00
Monday 19	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30 Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 20	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Thursday 22	Meeting of Public Relations & Cultural Activities Committee 3.30
Monday 26	Meeting of Student Welfare Committee 3.30
Tuesday 27	Meeting of Library Committee 10.00 Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30
Friday 30	Applications close for preparatory enrolment for Geology all Masters papers and BSc (Hons) Part IV and PhD

**October 1988**

Saturday 1	Applications close with the Registrar for Commonwealth (U.K. and Canada), Postgraduate and some Auckland Scholarships Applications close for entry to the course for BHB I (for the first time) for 1989
Monday 3	Meeting of Senate 9.30 Meeting of Press Committee 2.00
Tuesday 4	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30
Thursday 6	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30
Friday 7	Lectures end
Monday 10	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30 Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Wednesday 12	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00
Thursday 13	Meeting of Theatre Management Sub-Committee 3.30
Friday 14	<b>Internal Degree and Diploma Examinations begin</b>
Saturday 15	Applications close for N.Z. students for entry to the Course for DipGeothermTech Applications close for entry to the course for MBA/PGDipBus (for the first time)
Monday 17	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30 Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 18	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Wednesday 19	Meeting of Audit Committee 3.30
Thursday 20	Meeting of Non-Academic Staff Committee 3.30
Friday 21	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00 <b>Engineering Lectures end</b>

Monday 24	Labour Day
Tuesday 25	Meeting of Library Committee 10.00
Wednesday 26	Meeting of Promotions Advisory Committee 8.30
Friday 28	<b>Engineering Examinations begin</b>
	Meeting of Promotions Advisory Committee 8.30
Monday 31	<b>Third Term ends</b>
	Meeting of Student Accommodation Committee 3.30
	Applications close for some Auckland Scholarships
	Applications close for entry to the Course for DipEdPsych, DipClinPsych (for the first time) DipELT, BFA Studio I and all theory papers, Environmental Science MSc (for the first time) for 1989

**November 1988**

Tuesday 1	Applications close for most remaining Auckland Scholarships Candidates for all Masters Degrees except MSc in subjects other than Geography and Mathematics must present theses and dissertations by this date except by special permission of Head of Department. DipEd and DipEdPsych candidates must present their original investigations and written reports to the Registrar by this date Applications close for accommodation for University Halls of Residence for 1989 Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30 Meeting of Student Union Management Committee 3.30
Thursday 3	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30
Monday 7	Meeting of Senate 9.30 Meeting of Press Committee 2.00
Wednesday 9	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00 Meeting of Leigh Laboratory Management Committee 11.00
Thursday 10	Meeting of Finance Committee 3.30
Monday 14	Meeting of Deans Committee 9.30 Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Tuesday 15	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Thursday 17	Meeting of Theatre Management Sub-Committee 3.30
Friday 18	Meeting of Audio-Visual Committee 10.00
Monday 21	Meeting of Academic Committee 9.30 Meeting of Council 4.00
Wednesday 23	Meeting of Promotions Advisory Committee 3.30
Thursday 24	Meeting of Public Relations and Cultural Activities Committee 3.30 Applications close with University Entrance Board for Provisional Entrance in 1989
Tuesday 29	Meeting of Appointments Committee 8.30
Wednesday 30	Applications close for entry to the Course for DipBrC and for Anthropology 03.340 for 1989 Applications close for overseas students seeking admission with graduate status and wishing to enrol for a graduate Degree or Diploma.

**December 1988**

Thursday 1	Meeting of Works Committee 3.30
Monday 5	Meeting of Senate 9.30 Meeting of Press Committee 2.00 Meeting of Education Committee 3.30
Tuesday 6	Meeting of Deans Committee (Scholarships) 9.30
Wednesday 7	Meeting of Computer Committee 9.00
Monday 12	Meeting of Council 4.00
Tuesday 13	Meeting of Research Committee 10.00
Thursday 15	Last day for withdrawal from the final year course for MBChB
Friday 23	Registry closes
Sunday 25	Christmas Day
Monday 26	Boxing Day
Tuesday 27	Statutory holiday

## UNIVERSITY PERSONNEL

### OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY

Visitor HIS EXCELLENCY THE GOVERNOR-GENERAL

Chancellor M. J. A. BROWN (Judge), *(Retires 30-6-89)*

Pro-Chancellor B. H. PICOT *(Retires 30-6-88)*

Vice-Chancellor C. J. MAIDEN, ME N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

Deputy Vice-Chancellor P. N. TARLING, MA PhD LittD Camb., FRAS, FRHistS

Registrar W. B. NICOLL, BCom

### THE COUNCIL OF THE UNIVERSITY

EDWARD G. BOLLARD, CBE, BSc N.Z., PhD Camb., HonDSc, FRSNZ

*Appointed by the Governor-General in Council (Retires 30-6-88)*

M. J. A. BROWN (Judge), (Chancellor)

*Appointed by Council (Retires 28-2-90)*

RUTH H. BUTTERWORTH, MA DPhil Oxf.

*Appointed by Senate (Retires 31-12-89)*

BRIAN R. DAVIS, MSc PhD N.Z., DPhil Oxf., DSc, FNZIC

*Professor of Chemistry, appointed by the Senate (Retires 31-12-89)*

R. H. L. FERGUSON, CBE, MBChB N.Z., DO Lond., Hon LLD, FRCS, FRACS

*Appointed by the Governor-General in Council (Retires 30-6-89)*

A. M. FINLAY, QC, LL.M N.Z., PhD Lond.

*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-91)*

RICHARD A. FOSTER (President of the Students' Association)

*Ex officio*

JENNIFER B. GIBBS MA N.Z.

*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-89)*

R. C. GREEN, BA, BSc New Mexico, PhD Harv., FRSNZ, MANAS

*Professor of Prehistory, appointed by the Senate (Retires 31-12-88)*

J. H. INGRAM, CBE, BE N.Z., FIPENZ, FAIMM, MIMechE

*Appointed by Council (Retires 30-6-88)*

C. J. MAIDEN, ME N.Z., DPhil Oxf. (Vice-Chancellor)

*Ex officio*

E. D. G. MANN, BA N.Z.

*Appointed by the Governor-General in Council (Retires 30-6-90)*

DEIRDRE G. MILNE, LLB Well., MA

*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-91)*

WARREN MORAN, MA N.Z., PhD

*Professor of Geography, appointed by the Senate (Retires 31-12-88)*

MERIMERI PENFOLD, BA

*Appointed by Senate (Retires 31-12-88)*

BRIAN H. PICOT

*Appointed by Council (Retires 28-2-90)*

CHARMAINE G. POUNTNEY, MA DipED N.Z.

*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-89)*

HELEN M. RYBURN (Ms), MA N.Z.

*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-91)*

RAYMOND A. SCOTT, JP, MSc N.Z., AIEd Lond., DipEd N.Z.

*Elected by the Governing Bodies of Secondary Schools within the Auckland University District (Retires 31-12-88)*

GRAHAM D. SPEIGHT (The Hon. Sir), KCB, LLB N.Z., HonLLD

*Elected by Graduates (Retires 30-6-89)*

CATHERINE A. TIZARD, (Dame) DBE, BA N.Z., (Mayor of Auckland)

*Ex officio*

DARYL R. WEBB, BSc

*Appointed by Students' Association (Retires 30-6-88)*

J. L. WOODWARD, BE N.Z., MAsc Tor., FIEE, FIEAust., FIPENZ

*Professor of Engineering appointed by the Senate (Retires 31-12-89)*

---

## THE SENATE OF THE UNIVERSITY

Chairman: THE VICE-CHANCELLOR

ALL PROFESSORS (and their equivalents)

HEADS OF DEPARTMENTS AND ACTING HEADS OF DEPARTMENTS (subprofessorial).

DEANS (not being members of the professorial staff).

LIBRARIAN

LIAISON OFFICER

ASSOCIATE DEAN OF POST GRADUATE AFFAIRS IN MEDICINE

ELECTED MEMBERS OF THE SUB-PROFESSORIAL STAFF (three from the Faculty of Arts; two from the Faculty of Science; one each from the Faculties of Architecture, Property and Planning, Commerce, Engineering, Fine Arts, Law, Medicine and Human Biology, Music and from the Centre for Continuing Education and five from the sub-professorial staff at large).

*Faculty of Architecture Property and Planning*

L. R. B. MANN (*Retires 31-1-89*)

*Faculty of Arts*

J. C. BISHOP (*Retires 31-1-90*)

S. S. McNAUGHTON (*Retires 31-1-89*)

C. WEST-NEWMAN (*Retires 31-1-90*)

*Faculty of Commerce*

G. L. MICHAEL MORRIS (*Retires 31-1-90*)

*Faculty of Engineering*

E. G. KELLY (*Retires 31-1-90*)

*Faculty of Fine Arts*

MEGAN L. JENKINSON (*Retires 31-1-89*)

*Faculty of Law*

.....  
*Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology*

M. J. MERRILEES (*Retires 31-1-90*)

*Faculty of Music*

JOHN F. RIMMER (*Retires 31-1-89*)

*Faculty of Science*

G. R. CLARK (*Retires 31-1-89*)

C. C. KING (*Retires 31-1-90*)

*Centre for Continuing Education*

P. B. BECROFT (*Retires 31-1-89*)

*Sub-Professorial Staff at Large*

JOHN E. BRAGGINS (*Retires 31.1.90*)

E. MARY A. BULLIVANT (*Retires 31.1.90*)

RUTH H. BUTTERWORTH (*Retires 31.1.90*)

KATHRYN C. IRWIN (*Retires 31-1-89*)

E. JANE KELSEY (*Retires 31-1-89*)

PRESIDENT, AUCKLAND UNIVERSITY STUDENTS' ASSOCIATION

FIVE STUDENT MEMBERS (nominated by Auckland University Students' Association).

B. JONES (*Retires 30-4-88*)

J. PAGANI, BA (*Retires 31-3-88*)

A. WEBSTER (*Retires 30-4-88*)

.....  
.....

## DEANS

*Dean of the Faculty of Architecture Property and Planning*

ALLAN A. WILD, BArch N.Z., RIBA, FNZIA, FRSA

*Dean of the Faculty of Arts*

P. N. TARLING, MA PhD LittD Camb., FRAS, FRHistS

*Deputy Deans of the Faculty of Arts*

SUZANNE TYNDEL (Mrs), MA N.Z.

K. MALALGODA, BA Ceyl., DPhil Oxf.

H. R. ALLEN, BA Syd., PhD A.N.U.

*Dean of the Faculty of Commerce*

ALASTAIR MacCORMICK, MA PhD Yale, BSc MCom

*Associate Dean for Undergraduate Studies*

J. BRUCE TABB, BCom N.Z., PhD Sheff., MCom, FCA

*Dean of the Faculty of Engineering*

R. F. MEYER, BE N.Z., PhD Manc., FCASI, MAIAA, FIPENZ

*Associate Dean of the Faculty of Engineering*

R. M. SHARP, MA DPhil Oxf., CEng, MIM

*Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts*

J. D. SAUNDERS, DipFA N.Z., MSIA, DipIndustDesign, NDD, FNZSID, FRSA

*Sub Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts*

R. W. ELLIS, ARCA, RBA, MNZSSP, FRSA, MNZSID

*Dean of the Faculty of Law*

F. M. BROOKFIELD, BA LLB. N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

*Deputy Deans of the Faculty of Law*

W. C. HODGE, AB Harv., JD Stan.

J.G.H. HANNAN, BA LLB Well.

*Dean of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology*

D. S. COLE, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., FRCS, FRACS

*Deputy Dean of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology*

C. H. MACLAURIN, MBChB N.Z., FRCS, FRACS

*Clinical Sub Dean*

G. L. GLASGOW, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., FRCP, FRACP

*BHB Sub Dean*

R. L. M. FAULL, BMedSc MBChB Otago, PhD

*Dean of the Faculty of Music*

G. WARREN J. DRAKE, BA N.Z., PhD Ill., MA

*Dean of the Faculty of Science*

R. GEDDES, BSc PhD Edin.

*Deputy Deans of the Faculty of Science*

M. J. J. LENNON, PhD M.I.T., MSc

DIANNE C. MCCARTHY, BA MSc PhD

## HONORARY GRADUATES

HER MAJESTY QUEEN ELIZABETH, THE QUEEN MOTHER,

PAUL JOHN BEADLE,

SIR DAVID STUART BEATTIE,

EDWARD GEORGE BOLLARD,

SIR THOMAS HARCOURT CLARKE CAUGHEY,

SIR WILLIAM HENRY COOPER,

RICHARD HENRY LINDO FERGUSON,

SIR RAYMOND WILLIAM FIRTH,

DAVID FULTON FOWLDS,

ARTHUR OSWALD MICHAEL GILMOUR,

SIR JAMES CLENDON HENARE,

LLD 1966

MFA 1979

LLD 1983

DSO 1983

LLD 1986

LLD 1974

LLD 1986

LittD 1978

ME 1987

DSO 1983

LLD 1986

OLIVE AVERIL JOHNSON,	MA 1979
DAME KIRI TE KANAWA	MusD 1983
KENNETH JOHN MAIDMENT,	LLD 1970
ERIC HALL McCORMICK,	LittD 1983
RICHARD DENNIS McELDOWNEY,	LittD 1986
ROY GRANVILLE McELROY,	LittD 1976
LEWIS NATHAN ROSS,	LLD 1983
WALTER SCHEEL,	LLD 1978
WILLIAM KENDRICK SMITHYMAN,	LittD 1986
SIR GRAHAM DAVIES SPEIGHT,	LLD 1983
SIR ALEXANDER KINGCOMBE TURNER,	LLD 1965
DOROTHY GERTRUDE WINSTONE	LLD 1983
LESLIE COLIN WOODS,	DSc 1983

## PROFESSORES EMERITI

- COLIN JAMES ALEXANDER, MBChB N.Z., MD *Otago*, HonFRCR, FRACR, HonFACR (Medicine) Retired 1986
- JOHN ALEXANDER ASHER, Grosses Verdienstkreuz *Germany*, RNO *Sweden*, Ehrenkreuz I. Klasse *Austria*, Goethe Med. *Munich*, MA N.Z., DrPhil *Basle* (German) Retired 1986
- PAUL JOHN BEADLE, HonMFA, HonMNZSID, MNZSSPA, MFIM, FRSA (Fine Arts) Retired 1983
- BRUCE GRANDISON BIGGS, OBE, MA N.Z., PhD *Indiana*, FRSNZ (Anthropology) Retired 1984
- ARCHIBALD GORDON BOGLE, BE N.Z., DPhil *Oxf.*, CEng, FIEE, FIPENZ (Engineering) Retired 1978
- GEOFFREY PETER BRAAE., MCom N.Z., DPhil *Oxf.* (Economics) Retired 1987
- DENNIS BROWN, DSc *Brist.*, FlntP, FRSNZ (Physics) Retired 1967
- ROBERT MacDONALD CHAPMAN, CMG, MA N.Z., (Political Studies) Retired 1988
- EDWIN RICHARD COLLINS, OBE, MSc N.Z., PhD *Birm.*, FIP, FRSNZ (Physics) Retired 1982
- KENNETH BRAILEY CUMBERLAND, CBE, MA *Lond.*, DSc N.Z., FRSNZ (Geography) Retired 1978
- PETER BERNARD DAVID de la MARE, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc *Lond.*, FRIC, FNZIC, FRSNZ (Chemistry) Retired 1982
- JOHN CHARLES DOWER, A B MD *Johns H.*, FRACP (Paediatrics) Retired 1987
- PETER DAVID HENSMAN GODFREY, MBE, MA MusB *Camb.*, HonFRSCM, FRCO, ARCM (Music) Retired 1983
- DAVID HALL, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FNZIC, FRSNZ (Chemistry) Retired 1984
- BRIAN DUTTON HENSHALL, BSc PhD DSc *Brist.*, CEng, FRAeS, FNZIM (Management Studies) Retired 1987
- PETER BARRIER HERDSON, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., PhD *Northwestern*, FRCPA (Medicine) Retired 1986
- GEORGE WILLIAM HINDE, LLM N.Z., LLD (Law) Retired 1987
- KENNETH JAMES HOLLYMAN, MA N.Z., DU *Paris* (French) Retired 1987
- DAVID JOHN HOOTON, MSc N.Z., PhD *Edin.*, FlntP, FNZIP, CPhys (Physics) Retired 1987
- TREVOR ROBERT JOHNSTON, LLM BCom N.Z., MCom *Melb.*, PhD *Camb.*, FCA, FASA (Accountancy) Retired 1981
- ROBERT TERENCE KENNEDY, CBE, FRIBA, MTPI, ANZIA, MNZPI (Town Planning) Retired 1968
- WALTER KIRKPATRICK LACEY, MA *Camb.* (Classics and Ancient History) Retired 1987
- GRAHAM COLLINGWOOD LIGGINS, CBE, MBChB N.Z., PhD, FRCSEd, FRACS, FRCOG, FRNZCOG, FRS, FRSNZ (Medicine) Retired 1987
- ARNOLD ROBERT LILLIE, MA *Camb.*, DesSc *Geneva*, FRSNZ (Geology) Retired 1975
- RICHARD ELLIS FORD MATTHEWS, MSc N.Z., PhD ScD *Camb.*, FRS, FNZIC, FRSNZ (Cell Biology) Retired 1987
- CHARLES NALDEN, CBE, BMus *Durh. & Lond.*, DMus *Lond.*, (Music) Retired 1974
- ERIC MUSARD NANSON, OBE, MBChB N.Z., FRCS, FRCSCan, FACS, FRACS (Medicine) Retired 1980
- FRANCIS JOHN NEWHOOK, OBE, MSc N.Z., DIC, PhD DSc *Lond.*, FRSA (Botany) Retired 1984



ALLAN LLOYD ODELL, MSc N.Z., PhD Lond., DSc, FNZIC (Chemistry) Retired 1985  
 DAVID MURRAY PATON, MBChB Cape T., MD DSc Witw., FRCPCan, FRACP CBiol, FIBiol (Pharmacology) Retired 1987  
 ARVED JAAN RAUDKIVI, DipIng (Civil) Tallinn & T.H. Braunschweig, DRIngEh Braunschweig, PhD, CEng, FICE, FIPENZ (Engineering) Retired 1986  
 HUBERT SAMPSON, MA Br. Col., PhD McG., FNZPS (Psychology) Retired 1984  
 SIR KEITH SINCLAIR, Kt., CBE, MA PhD N.Z., LittD (History) Retired 1987  
 FORREST SMYTH SCOTT, MA MLitt Camb. (English) Retired 1985  
 ERNEST JOHNSTONE SEARLE, MSc N.Z., DSc (Geology) Retired 1972  
 CECIL MARIN SEGEDIN, MSc N.Z., PhD Camb., FIMA, FRSA (Hon) FIPENZ (Engineering) Retired 1981  
 CHRISTIAN KARLSON STEAD, CBE, MA, N.Z., PhD Brist., LittD (English) Retired 1986  
 PETER WHITAKER TAYLOR, BSc BE N.Z., PhD, CEng, FICE, FIPENZ, FASCE (Engineering) Retired 1986  
 ALAN LEE TITCHENER, CBE, BSc BE N.Z., ScD M.I.T., AOSM, MIMechE, FIPENZ, MAIME, FIM (Engineering) Retired 1986  
 RICHARD HORTON TOY, OBE, BArch N.Z., PhD Dub., RIBA (Architecture) Retired 1977  
 THOMAS NEIL MORRIS WATERS, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FNZIC, FANZAAS (Chemistry) Retired 1983  
 PHILIP RICHARD HYLTON WEBB, MA LLB Camb., LLD (Law) Retired 1987  
 HENRY ARTHUR WHALE, MSc N.Z., PhD Camb., FIP, SMIEEE (Engineering) Retired 1983  
 RALPH WINTERBOURN, MA DipEd N.Z., PhD Lond., FBPS (Education) Retired 1975

---

## UNIVERSITY STAFF (ACADEMIC)

---

*Dates given are dates of taking up full-time appointment. Where Degrees and Diplomas are shown without the name of the awarding university, the university is Auckland. List prepared 1-11-87.*

\* Denotes a part-time permanent appointment.

---

## ACCOUNTING & FINANCE, *see* School of Commerce

---

## ANATOMY, *see* Medicine and Human Biology

---

## ANCIENT HISTORY, *see* Classics

---

## ANTHROPOLOGY

*Professor of Maori Studies, Head of Department*

1965-70, 1985 I. H. KAWHARU, BSc N.Z., MA Camb., MLitt DPhil Oxf.

*Professor of Social Anthropology*

1958-67, 1974 R. N. H. BULMER, MA Camb., PhD A.N.U.

*Professor of Prehistory*

1961-66, 1973 R. C. GREEN, BA BSc New Mexico, PhD Harv., FRSNZ., MANAS

*Associate-Professor of Social Anthropology*

1966 ANTONY B. HOOPER, MA N.Z., PhD Otago

*Associate-Professor of Ethnomusicology*

1973 MERVYN E. McLEAN, MA N.Z., PhD Otago

*Associate-Professor in Maori Studies*

1970 R. J. I. WALKER, MA PhD

*Associate-Professor of Linguistics*

1965 ANDREW K. PAWLEY, BA N.Z., MA PhD

*Associate-Professor in Prehistory*

1975 GEOFFREY J. IRWIN, PhD A.N.U., MA

*Senior Lecturers in Social Anthropology*

1972 NANCY BOWERS, BS PhD Col.

- 1973 JUDITH W. HUNTSMAN, AB PhD *Bryn Mawr*, MA *Brown*  
 1972 M. R. RIMOLDI, BA DipAnth *Syd.*, PhD A. N. U.  
 1972 STEVEN S. WEBSTER, BA *Minn.*, PhD *Wash.*  
 1976 G. A. ROGERS, BA *Otago*, MA PhD  
*Senior Lecturer in Social Anthropology and Maori Studies*  
 1973 M. ANNE SALMOND, PhD *Penn.* MA  
*Senior Lecturers in Prehistory*  
 1973 HARRY R. ALLEN, BA *Syd.*, PhD A. N. U.  
 1982 D. G. SUTTON, MA PhD *Otago*  
*Senior Lecturers in Maori Studies*  
 1965 P. W. HOHEPA, MA *N.Z.*, PhD *Indiana*  
 1966 MERIMERI PENFOLD, BA  
 1986 C. D. BARLOW, MA PhD *Brigham Young*  
*Senior Lecturers in Linguistics*  
 1973 D. ROSS CLARK, BA *Br. Col.*, PhD *Calif.*  
 1980 F. LICHTENBERK, MA *Tor.*, PhD *Hawaii*  
*Senior Lecturer in Physical Anthropology*  
 1980 G. G. TUNNELL, BS *W. Texas State*, MA PhD *Colorado*  
*Lecturer in Physical Anthropology*  
 1987 M. PAMELA BUMSTED, BA *Beloit Col.* PhD *Mass.*, DipHumBio *Oxf.*  
*Honorary Research Fellows*  
 J. K. PARK, MA PhD *Otago*  
 ELEANOR C. RIMOLDI (Mrs), MA PhD

## ARCHITECTURE

- Professor, Head of Department*  
 1969 ALLAN A. WILD, BArch *N.Z.*, RIBA, FNZIA, FRSA  
*Professor, Architectural Design*  
 1964 PETER J. BARTLETT, BArch *N.Z.*, PhD, RIBA, FNZIA, FRSA  
*Professor*  
 1961-66, 1973 A. HAROLD MARSHALL, BArch BSc *N.Z.*, PhD *S'ton*, RIBA, FNZIA, FRAIA, FASA  
*Associate-Professor of Property Administration*  
 1978 W. KENNETH S. CHRISTIANSEN, DipTP, FRICS, FPMI, MNZPI, AREINZ  
*Senior Lecturers*  
 1964 I. E. GEORGE, BArch *N.Z.*, MArch *Calif.*, ANZIA  
 1967 M. R. AUSTIN, BArch *N.Z.*, PhD, FNZIA  
 1969 C. W. MEGSON, MArch, RIBA, ANZIA  
 1969 A. N. J. GOLDWATER, BArch *N.Z.*, FNZIA  
 1970 JOHN D. DICKSON, BArch PhD  
 \*1972 D. J. MITCHELL, BArch  
 1973 R. J. W. GRANWAL, ME, MIPENZ  
 1974 G. DODD, BSc *R'dg.*, MSc (Eng) PhD DipAud *S'ton*  
 1979 K. J. MORROW, DipArch *R.M.I.T.*  
 1979 H. B. WILLEY, MA PhD *Camb.*, BArch MSc  
 1979 J. G. HUNT, BArch PhD, ANZIA  
 1979 M. P. T. LINZEY, BE *Cant.*, PhD *Melb.*, ME, MIEAust  
 1979 C. A. BIRD, MA DipUD *Oxf. Pol.*, BArch  
 \*1981 J. D. SUTHERLAND, BArch *Wales*, RIBA, FNZIA, MNZIOB  
 1982 A. WARD, DipArch *Birm.*, RIBA  
 1985 GRAEME L. ROBERTSON, BArch, ANZIA, MNZIOB, FRSA  
*Lecturers*  
 1981 G. R. JENNER, BA *Otago*, BArch  
 1981 SARAH TREADWELL, BArch  
*Lecturers in Property Administration*

1986 DEBORAH S. LEVY, BLE *Aberd.*, ARICS

\*1986 KEVIN J. JOHNSTON, PhD *Br. Col.*, BCom, MArch, MPMI

*Lecturers, part-time*

\*PATRICK J. HANLY, MNZSSP

## ART HISTORY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1969 A. S. G. GREEN, MA *Camb.*, PhD *Edin.*, DipHistArt *Lond.*

*Senior Lecturers*

1979 M. R. DUNN, DipFA *Cant & Auck.*, MA *Melb.*, PhD

1971 A. J. WRIGHT, MA *Edin.*

\*1969-71, 1975 ELIZABETH E. EASTMOND, MA *Edin.*

1973 L. B. BELL, DipArtHist *Edin.*, BA, PhD

1974 I. B. BUCHANAN, BA *Manc.*, MA *Essex*

*Lecturers*

1977 ROBIN L. WOODWARD, PhD *Edin.*, MA

1988 TE AWEEKOTUKU NGAHUIA, DPhil *Waik.*, MA

*Tutor*

D. J. D. BASSETT, PhD *Edin.*, MA

## ASIAN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES

*Professor of Chinese, Head of Department*

1987 J. L. M. MINFORD, BA *Oxf.* PhD *A.N.U.*

*Associate-Professor of Chinese*

1967 MARGARET T. S. SOUTH, BA *Syd.*, PhD *A.N.U.*

*Senior Lecturer in Chinese*

.....  
*Senior Lecturers in Indonesian*

1968 J. B. KWEE, BA *Lond.*, PhD

1974 E. O. van REIJN, Drs *Ley.*

*Senior Lecturers in Japanese*

1970 SETSUKO ITO, (Miss), MA *Doshisha*, MPhil PhD *Lond.*

1972 T. TAKAGAKI, BA *Wakayama*, MA *San Francisco State*

1973 T. AKIMA, MA *Waseda*

*Lecturers in Chinese*

1984 MANYING IP (Mrs), BA *H. K.*, MA PhD

1986 D. M. CAMPBELL, BA *Well.*, MA

*Lecturers in Japanese*

1986 JUDITH N. RABINOVITCH, BA *Wash.*, MA PhD *Harv.*

1987 W. P. LAWRENCE, MA *Tokyo U.F.S.*

## BIBLICAL HISTORY AND LITERATURE, *see* Classics

## BIOCHEMISTRY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1974 A. G. C. RENWICK, MA *Camb.*, MDChB PhD *Edin.*, FRCPATH, CChem, FRSCHEM

*Associate-Professors*

1970 R. GEDDES, BSc PhD *Edin.*

1977 THOMAS BRITAIN, BSc PhD *E. Anglia*, CChem, FRSCHEM, FNZIC

*Senior Lecturers*

1969 A. M. ROBERTON, BSc *Otago*, DPhil *Oxf.*

1974 P. M. BARLING, BA *Oxf.* PhD *Lond.*

1976 G. K. SCOTT, BSc *Manc.*, PhD *Edin.*

1984 D.L. CHRISTIE, MSc PhD

*Lecturer*

1986 HEATHER M. NONHEBEL (Ms), BSc PhD Glas.

## BOTANY

*Associate-Professor, Head of Department*

1956 JOHN M. A. BROWN, BSc PhD Durh.

*Professor*

1976 PETER H. LOVELL, BSc PhD Sheff.

*Senior Lecturers*

1966 FRANK I. DROMGOOLE, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD.

1969 JOHN E. BRAGGINS, MSc Well., PhD.

1972 LAWRENCE C. W. JENSEN, AB Brown, MSc PhD Minn.

\*1972 BARBARA P. SEGEDIN MSc N.Z., PhD Camb.

1977 NEIL D. MITCHELL, MA Oxf., MSc Wales, PhD N<sup>o</sup>cle. (U.K.)

1979 JOHN OGDEN, MSc PhD Wales

1983 MICHAEL N. PEARSON, BSc C.N.A.A., PhD Exeter

1984 BRIAN G. MURRAY, BSc PhD R'dg, FLS

*Lecturers*

1984 ALISON STEWART, BSc Glas., PhD Stir.

1987 PHILIP J. HARRIS, MA PhD Camb

*Senior Tutor*

G. MARIE TAYLOR, MSc Well.

*University Post-Doctoral Fellow*

DAVID BACKHOUSE, BSc PhD N.S.W.

*Research Fellow*

JULIE WHITE, BSc PhD

*Honorary Research Fellow*

U. VIVIENNE CASSIE COOPER, MA PhD N.Z.

*Honorary Lecturers*

R. L. BIELESKI, MSc N.Z., PhD Syd., FRSNZ

A. ROSS FERGUSON, MSc Well., PhD

FRANK H. WOOD, MAgrSc Massey, PhD Cant.

## CELLULAR AND MOLECULAR BIOLOGY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1966 S. BULLIVANT, BSc PhD DSc Lond.

*Professors*

1964 P. L. BERGQUIST, MSc PhD N.Z., FRSNZ

1963 R. K. RALPH, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc N.S.W., MNZIC

*Associate-Professor*

1968 A.R. BELLAMY, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD

*Senior Lecturer in Genetics*

1978 H. E. D. LANE, BSc PhD Otago

*Lecturers*

1982 W. JUDD, BA PhD

1985 R.C. GARDNER, BA MSc PhD

*MRC Senior Research Fellow*

J. KISTLER, DipNat ETH Zür., PhD Basle

*Research Fellows*

D. A. ELLIOT, BSc Edin., PhD Lond.

R. H. McHALE, BSc Edin., PhD Adel.

K. F. H. POWELL, MSc PhD

*University Post-Doctoral Fellows*

D. J. SAUL, BSc PhD Sheff.

E. SCHNEIDER, PhD DipBioChem Bern  
 SALLY-ANN HARBISON, BSc, PhD *Liv.*  
 C. C. BERGMAN, DipIng PhD Darmstadt  
*Hon Lecturer.*  
 L.G. FRASER, MSc PhD

---

## CHEMICAL AND MATERIALS ENGINEERING, *see* Engineering

---

### CHEMISTRY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1958 R. C. CAMBIE, MSc PhD N.Z., DPhil Oxf., DSc, FRSNZ, FNZIC

*Professors*

1962 BRIAN R. DAVIS, MSc PhD N.Z., DPhil Oxf., DSc, FNZIC

1966 W. R. ROPER, MSc N.Z., PhD Cant., FRSNZ, FNZIC

1986 RALPH P. COONEY, BSc PhD Q'ld., FRACI, FNZIC

1958 CHARMIAN J. O'CONNOR, JP, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc, FRSNZ, CChem, FRSCChem, FNZIC

*Associate-Professors*

1961 GRAHAM A. WRIGHT, MSc N.Z., DPhil Oxf., FNZIC

1963 F. JOHN B. AGGETT, MSc PhD N.Z., FNZIC

1967 P. S. RUTLEDGE, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FNZIC

1968 D. J. McLENNAN, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD Well., DSc, FNZIC

1962 J. E. PACKER, MSc N.Z., PhD Lond., FNZIC, CChem, FRSCChem.

1966 MICHAEL J. TAYLOR, MA DPhil Oxf., FNZIC, FRSCChem

1970 GEORGE R. CLARK, MSc PhD DSc, FNZIC

1971 PAUL D. WOODGATE, MSc PhD DSc, FNZIC

1968 G. A. BOWMAKER, BSc PhD Syd., FNZIC, ARACI

*Senior Lecturers*

1948 H. MASLEN, MSc N.Z., PhD, MNZIC

1965 B. A. GRIGOR, MSc N.Z., PhD Leic., MNZIC

1966 ALLAN J. EASTEAL, MSc N.Z., PhD Tas., MNZIC, ARACI

1968 C. E. F. RICKARD, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, FNZIC

1969 DAVID SHOOTER, MSc PhD, MNZIC

1978 P. D. W. BOYD, BSc Tas., PhD Monash, ARACI, FNZIC

1982 R. F. HOWE, BSc PhD Cant.

*Senior Lecturer, Physico-Chemistry*

1960 GRAHAM R. WHITE, MSc N.Z., MNZIC

*Lecturers*

1984 L. JAMES WRIGHT, MSc PhD, MNZIC, MACS

1984 S. J. de MORA, BSc Wales, PhD Br. Col., MRSC, MNZIC

1985 J. B. METSON, BSc PhD Well., MNZIC

1987 JAN M. CODDINGTON, BSc, PhD Monash

1988 PENELOPE J. BROTHERS, PhD Stan, MSc, MNZIC

*Senior Tutors*

1982 JUDITH M. BRITTAIN, BSc PhD E. Anglia, MNZIC

1982 SHEILA D. WOODGATE, BS Arizona, PhD Stan.

*University Post-Doctoral Fellows*

D. ABRAM, BSc Nott., PhD Lond., C Chem, MRSCChem

DARLENE ANDERSON, BSc Qu., PhD Br Col.

E. G. BROWN, BSc Calif., PhD Davis

H. TANK, Dip Chem F. U. Berlin

---

## CIVIL ENGINEERING, *see* Engineering

---

---

## CLASSICS AND ANCIENT HISTORY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1974 VIVIENNE J. GRAY, PhD Camb., MA

*Associate-Professor*

.....

*Senior Lecturers*

1960 R. G. COWLIN, MA Camb.

1963 W. F. RICHARDSON, MA N.Z. & Camb., BD Otago, PhD

1971 W. R. BARNES, BA Syd., MA PhD Camb.

1981 A. J. SPALINGER, BA C.U.N.Y., MPhil PhD Yale

*Lecturers*

1986 G. K. H. LEY, BA Oxf., MPhil Lond.

1987 M. J. WILSON, BA LLB Tas., MA Tor., PhD Monash

---

## SCHOOL OF COMMERCE

*Dean, Professor of Management*

1969 ALASTAIR MacCORMICK, MA PhD Yale, BSc MCom

---

## GRADUATE SCHOOL OF BUSINESS

*Director MBA Programme*

1980 J. H. KERR INKSON, MA Aberd., MPhil Lond., PhD Otago

*Associate Director MBA Programme*

1987 ROBERT A. BERG, BSCE W.P.I., MBA Chic.

---

## ACCOUNTING & FINANCE within the School of Commerce

*Professor, Head of Department*

1968-71, 1975 D. M. EMANUEL, MCom PhD, ACA

*Professor*

1960 J. BRUCE TABB, BCom N.Z., PhD Sheff., MCom, FCA

*Professor of Finance*

1987 R. G. BOWMAN, BA Pomona, MS San Diego State, PhD Stan., CPACalif.

*NZI Professor of Finance and Insurance*

.....

*Associate-Professors*

1978 MARTIN S. PUTTERILL, MBA PhD Cape T., CA, FCMA

1977 IAN C. STEWART, BCA Well., BD Melb. Div. Coll., PhD N.E., MCom, ACA

*Senior Lecturers*

1969 G. L. MICHAEL MORRIS, BCom BCA Well.

1971 M. A. PERKINSON, MCom, ACA

1976 A. M. FAIRFIELD, MCom, ACA

1982 MICHAEL E BRADBURY, MCom, ACA, CMA

1982 JILNAUGHT WONG, MCom PhD, ACA

1986 DARIEN J. KERKIN, BA MBS Massey, ACA

*Lecturers*

1982 S. C. CALDERWOOD, MCom, ACA

1982 ANTHONY C. HARRIS, MCom, ACA

1982 G. B. JONES, MCom, ACA

1984 MICHAEL G. KEENAN, PhD St And., MA BCom DipVal

1984 DEREK M. SPEER, MCom, ACA

1985 ALAN M. TEIXEIRA, MCom, ACA

1986 HELEN C. GEORGE, MCom, ACA

1986 SONJA NEWBY (Mrs) MCom, ACA

1987 A. P. B. ROUSE, MCom, ACA

1987 C. CLIFFE, BA MCom *Cant.*, ACA

*Senior Tutors*

1973 C. B. FRANKHAM, BCom *N.Z.*, MCom, ACA

1979 KATHRYN G. CAIRD, BSc *Otago*, BCom

1986 B. K. BENNETT, BCom, ACA, ACIS

1986 ROSEMARY F. SPENCE, BA *Cant.*, BBS *Masse y*, ACA, ANZIM

## **COMMERCIAL LAW within the School of Commerce**

*Associate Professor, Head of Department*

1971 IAN G. EAGLES, BA LLB *Q'ld.*, PhD *Camb.*, LLM

*Professor*

.....  
*Senior Lecturers*

1973 A. WEBB, LLB *Nott.*

1975 GARTH A. HARRIS, LLB MJur

1979 JOHANNA C. VROEGOP, LLM

*Lecturers*

1982 COLIN D. PERKIN, BA *C.N.A.A.*, LLM *Birm.*

1984 WAYNE D. MAPP, LLM *Tor.*, LLB

1985 M. LOUISE LONGDIN-PRISK, BA LLB MJur

1985 M. J. ROSS, BCom LLM

1987 ELIZABETH GARRETT, MA LLM

## **MANAGEMENT SCIENCE AND INFORMATION SYSTEMS within the School of Commerce**

*Senior Lecturer, Head of Department*

1984 KAMBIZ E. MAANI, MSc *Tehran*, MSc PhD *Ill.*

*Professor*

\*1987 IVOR S. FRANCIS, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Harv.*

*Associate Professor*

1980 EBERHARD E. W. RUDOLPH, DipPhys *Aachen*, PhD *Witw.*

*Senior Lecturers*

1974 DONALD H. PETERS, BA *Washington & Jefferson*, MBA *Stan.*

1982 JAMES SHEFFIELD, MBA *Wis.*, MSc

1986 LECH J. JANCZEWSKI, MSc *Tor.*, MEng DEng *Warsaw*

*Lecturer*

1987 CHARLES R. MOORE, BSc *Wyoming*, MSc *Colorado*

## **MANAGEMENT STUDIES AND LABOUR RELATIONS within the School of Commerce**

*Associate Professor, Head of Department*

1972 JOHN S. DEEKS, MA *Camb.*, DipPM *Lond.*

*Professor*

.....  
*Associate Professor*

1980 J. H. KERR INKSON MA *Aberd.*, MPhil *Lond.*, PhD *Otago*

*Senior Lecturer*

1987 J. RICHARD S. HIGHAM, MA *Oxf.*, DipArch *Lond.*

*Lecturers*

1982 PAUL F. ROBINSON, BA *Open* BSc *U.M.I.S.T.*

1987 PETER F. BOXALL, MCom, MIPMNZ, ANZIM

---

## **MARKETING AND INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS within the School of Commerce**

*Professor, Head of Department*

1986 R. WAYNE CARTWRIGHT, MAgrSc Massey, PhD Purdue

*Associate Professor*

.....  
*Senior Lecturers*

1971 BRIAN D. MURPHY, MA PhD

1987 ROBERT A. BERG, BSCE W.P.I., MBA Chic.

1987 DONALD R. SCOTT, BSc Rhodes, MBA PhD Witw.

*Lecturers*

1978 ROGER MARSHALL, MCom

1985 MICHELE E. M. AKOORIE, MBA City, BA

1987 DAVID S.E. SHIEFF, MCom

---

## **COMMERCIAL LAW, see School of Commerce**

---

## **COMMUNITY HEALTH, see Medicine and Human Biology**

---

## **COMPUTER SCIENCE**

*Associate-Professor, Head of Department*

1982 ROBERT W. DORAN, BSc Cant., MS Stan

*Professor*

1966 JOHN C. BUTCHER, MSc N.Z. PhD DSc Syd., FRSNZ, FIMA

*Senior Lecturers*

1959 JOHN F. WHALE, MSc N.Z., DIC Lond., MBCS

1968 GARRY J. TEE, MSc N.Z., FIMA

1972 PETER M. FENWICK, MSc PhD, MIEEE, MACM

1973 G. ALAN CREAK, BA Camb., PhD Leeds

1979 RICHARD J. E. LOBB, MSc PhD

1981 PETER B. GIBBONS, MSc Massey, PhD Tor.

1981 KEVIN BURRAGE, MSc PhD, FIMA

*Lecturers*

1981 BRUCE W. HUTTON, PhD Warw., MSc

1984 WARWICK B. MUGRIDGE, BSc BA Massey, MSc

1985 JOHN G. HOSKING, BSc PhD, MIEEE

1987 WERNER STARINGER, MSc PhD T. U. Vienna

*Senior Tutors*

\*1985 JENNIFER A. LENNON, BSc N.Z., MSc

\*1985 BARBARA J. REILLY, BSc Well., MSc Ill.

---

## **CONTINUING EDUCATION, Centre for**

*Director*

1985 NOELINE E. ALCORN, MA N.Z., PhD Calif., DipEd Massey

*Senior Lecturers*

1950 RONALD G. DELLOW, MBE, MusB. N.Z., FRCO(CHM), ARSCM

1962 PETER B. BECROFT, MA N.Z., PhD Calif.

1973 JUDITH C. I. McMORLAND, BA Leeds, MA DipEd Massey, DipYthWk Manc., PhD

1978 ANTHONY A. MORRISON, MA PhD DipEd

*Lecturer*

1986 CLAUDIA H. F. BELL, BA Massey, MA



## ECONOMICS

*Professor, Head of Department*

1973 R. H. COURT, BA BSc N.Z., PhD N.S.W., MA

*Professors*

1972 C. A. BLYTH, MA N.Z., PhD Camb.

1977 A. J. L. CATT, MCom N.Z.

*Associate-Professor*

1979 CHARLES A. PERRINGS, BA PhD Lond.

*Senior Lecturers*

1964 K. D. S. JONES, BA Wales, MSc (Econ) PhD Lond.

1972 KENNETH E. JACKSON, BA PhD Kent

1978 S. R. H. JONES, BSc (Econ) PhD Lond.

1982 G. J. MacGREGOR-REID, MA Leic.

1983 ANTHONY M. ENDRES, MSocSc Waik., PhD W'gong

1985 SHOLEH MAANI, MS PhD Ill.

1986 ROSELYNE JOYEUX, BA Aix, MA PhD Calif.

1886 A. J. ROGERS, AM PhD Prin., MA

*Lecturers*

1979 ROBERT D. J. SCOLLAY, MA Well., BA Camb., BCom

1981 SUSAN M. ST JOHN, BSc MA N.Z.

*Senior Tutors*

1976 J. I. HORSMAN, MA N.Z.

1983 KATHRIN M. BOARDMAN, BSc MCom Cant.

## EDUCATION

*Associate-Professor, Head of Department*

1973 JAMES D. MARSHALL, BA PhD Brist.

*Professors*

1961 ANTHONY H. McNAUGHTON, MA Calif. & N.Z., PhD Calif., DipEd N.Z.

1962 MARIE M. CLAY, (Dame) DBE, MA DipEd N.Z., PhD, FNZPsS, Hon FNZEI

*Senior Lecturers*

1965 ERIC W. BRAITHWAITE, MA N.Z., DipSocSc Well.

1968 BARTON A. MacARTHUR, MA PhD

1971 JOHANNES F. EVERTS, MA DipClinPsych Cant., PhD DipEdPsych

1976 VIVIANE M. J. ROBINSON, PhD Harv., MA

1976 STUART S. McNAUGHTON, MA PhD

1978 ROGER A. PEDDIE, MA N.Z., Dipd'EtSup Poitiers, PhD

1978 COLIN J. LANKSHEAR, MA PhD Cant.

1980 KERI M. WILTON, PhD Alta., MA

1982 BRYAN F. TUCK, PhD Cant., MA

1985 DENNIS W. MOORE, PhD P.N.G., MA DipEd Psych

1986 DEREK HODSON, BSc, PhD Manc., MEd Wales, PGCE Exe., C Chem, FRSC, FNZIC

*Senior Lecturer in Child Studies*

1981 MICHAEL A. R. TOWNSEND, MA Cant., PhD Ill.

*Lecturers*

1984 GARY J. McCULLOCH, MA PhD Camb.

1987 ALISON JONES, BSc Massey, MPhil PhD

*Senior Tutor*

1979 KATHRYN C. IRWIN, BA Min., MEd Harv.

*Honorary Research Fellows*

DOROTHY R. HOWIE, MA PhD DipEd

MICHAEL PETERS, MA PhD

## ENGINEERING

*Dean, Professor of Mechanical Engineering*

1969 R. F. MEYER, BE N.Z. PhD Manc., FCASI, MAIAA, FIPENZ

## CHEMICAL AND MATERIALS ENGINEERING

*Professor, Head of Department*

1986 JOHN J. MOORE BSc Sur., PhD Birm., CEng, MIM, MAIME, MASM

*Professor in Chemical and Materials Engineering*

1981 BARRY J. WELCH, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc, MAChE, FRACI, FNZIC, MAIME

*Associate-Professors*

1968 W. GEORGE FERGUSON, BSc BE N.Z., PhD, CEng, MIPENZ, FIMMA, FIM

\*1969 GEOFFREY G. DUFFY, BSc N.S.W., PhD, ASTC, FRSNZ, CEng, MICHEM, FIMC

1973 ROY M. SHARP, MA DPhil Oxf., CEng, MIMMA

1986 KEVIN W. FREE, ME MSc N.Z., PhD Camb.

*Senior Lecturers*

1969 ERROL G. KELLY, BE PhD Otago, AOSM, CEng, MAIME, MIMM, MAusIMM

1970 JOSEPH T. GREGORY, BSc Idaho, PhD Wis., MASM, MAWS, MIMMA

1971 MICHAEL L. ALLEN, BSc(Eng) Lond., ME, CEng, MICHEM, MAChE, MIPENZ, MNZIC

1984 JOHN J. J. CHEN, BE PhD, CEng, MICHEM, MIPENZ

1986 HANS M. MULLER-STEINHAGEN, DiplIng DrIng Karlsruhe, MASME, MAChE, VDI

*Research Fellow*

G. K. NIMAL S. SUBASINGHE, BSc(Eng) Sri Lanka, MMinTech Otago, PhD

*University Post-Doctoral Fellow*

SVEIN R. BRANDTZAEG, DrIng Trondheim

## CIVIL ENGINEERING

*Professor, Head of Department*

1981 PETER G. LOWE, BE N.Z., MA Camb, MEngSc Syd., PhD Lond., CEng, FIPENZ, MICE, MIEAust

*Professors*

1977 MICHAEL J. PENDER, BE PhD Cant., MIPENZ, MASCE

1987 JOHN D. FENTON, BE MEngSc Melb., PhD Camb., DipCE B.I.T., MIEAust

*Senior Lecturers*

1967 BRUCE H. CATO, BE N.Z., CEng, MICE, FIPENZ, FIHT, ACIArb

1969 IAN W. GUNN, BE N.Z., DipPHE N'cle.(U.K.), CEng, FIPHE, MICE, MIPENZ, MInstWPC

1969 ANTHONY H. BRYANT, BE PhD Cant.

1972 ROGER C. M. DUNN, BE BSc N.Z., MEngSc N.S.W., DipTP, FITE, MIHT, MIPENZ

1975 RICHARD C. FENWICK, BE N.Z., PhD Cant., MIPENZ

1979 COLIN D. CHRISTIAN, BSc(Eng), PhD S'ton, CEng, MICE, MIPENZ

1979 BARRY J. DAVIDSON, BE PhD

1980 JOHN W. BUTTERWORTH, BE PhD

1980 RICHARD G. COMPTON, BE, MIPENZ

1980 THOMAS J. LARKIN, BE PhD, AMASCE

1981 BRUCE W. MELVILLE, BE PhD, AMICE

1986 LAURENCE D. WESLEY, MSc DIC PhD Lond., ME, MASCE, MIPENZ

1986 LESLIE M. MEGGET, ME Cant., MIPENZ

*RRU Senior Research Fellow*

CAROLINE S. FISK, BSc Atla., DEA Dde3 Cycle Paris

*Professional Design Consultants*

P. G. RADLEY, ME

P. CHARLTON, MSc, MICE, MIStructE

## ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONIC ENGINEERING

*Professor, Head of Department*

1977 J. L. WOODWARD, BE N.Z., MAsc Tor., CEng, FIEE, FIEAust, FIPENZ

*Professor*

1977 JOHN T. BOYS, ME PhD, MIPENZ

*Associate-Professors*

1966 D. V. OTTO, BE PhD, CEng, MIEE, FIMCNZ

1975 A. G. WILLIAMSON, BE PhD CEng, MIEE, MIERE, MemIEEE, MIPENZ

1976 D. THONG NGUYEN, BE Cant., PhD, MIPENZ

*Senior Lecturers*

1961 M. J. POLETTI, MSc N.Z.

1966 H. B. GATLAND, BSc N.Z., DipElectronics S'ton, CEng, MIEE, FIMCNZ

1966 L. J. CARTER, BSc Kent, MPhil P.N.G. Tech., CEng, SMIEEE, MIEE

1987 G. G. COGHILL, BSc H.-W., BA Open, PhD Kent, CEng, MIEE

*Lecturers*

1985 B. J. GUILLEMIN, BE, PhD

1985 G. B. ROWE, ME PhD, MemIEEE

1986 C. N. CHONG, BE Cant., PhD N'cle N.S.W., MemIEE

1987 H. R. POTA, BE S.Guj., ME I.I.Sc, PhD N'cle (N.S.W.), MemIEE

*Senior Tutor*

1984 G. R. HIGGIE, ME

## MECHANICAL ENGINEERING

*Professor, Head of Department*

1986 J. L. DUNCAN BMEchEng Melb., MSc PhD Manc., FASM

*Professor*

1977 P. S. JACKSON, PhD Camb., ME, CEng, MIPENZ, MRAES

*Associate-Professors*

1976 G. ARNDT, BE MEngSc Melb., PhD Monash, CEng, FIProdE, FIEAust, VDI

1982 GORDON D. MALLINSON, BSc Well., PhD N.S.W., MIEAust

*Associate Professor in Professional Engineering*

1969 D.H. FREESTON, BSc Lond., CEng, MRAES, FIMechE, MIPENZ (jtdly with Geothermal Institute)

*Senior Lecturers*

1965 JOHN J. WARD, MSc (Eng) Natal, CEng, MIMechE

1970 G. W. BLANCHARD, MSc Manc., MIMC

1973 G. MOLTSCHANIWSKYJ, MSc (Eng) Lond.

1975 J. D. TEDFORD, BSc, PhD Belf., CEng, MIProdE

1977 ROBERT R. RAINE, BSc PhD S'ton

\*1980 F. J. THOMSON, MSc Otago, PhD

1981 DEBES BHATTACHARYYA, ME Calc., PhD Jad., MASME

1982 PETER J. RICHARDS, BSc R'dg, PhD C.N.A.A., AMRAES

1982 BRIAN R. MACE, MA DPhil Oxf.

1984 R. G. J. FLAY, BE PhD Cant., CEng, MIMechE, MIPENZ

*Lecturers*

1986 R. A. STEPHENSON, PhD Cal. Tech., BE

1986 RAINER H. A. SEIDEL, Dipl Wirtsch Ing Karlsruhe

*MRC Senior Research Fellows*

N. D. BROOM, BE Melb., PhD

HEATHER SILYN-ROBERTS, BSc Wales, PhD

## MINING ENGINEERING incorporating the Otago School of Mines

*Professor*

.....

*Associate Professor, Head of Department*

1957 MICHAEL H. BUCKENHAM, BE N.Z., ME Otago, MSc DIC Lond., CEng, AOSM, MAusIMM, MIPENZ, MIMM

*Senior Lecturers*

1977 WOUTER SCHAAP, BSc S.A., MSc Brad., PhD Otago, CEng, FIMM, MICHEM, MAusIMM

1977 JOHN D. STGEORGE, BSc Lond., MSc N'cle U.K., CEng, ARSM, MIMM

1984 WILLIAM E. VANCE, MSc Nott., CEng, FIMM, MIEAust, MAusIMM, MIMinE, MIPENZ

*Lecturers*

1982 M. SALIH ÖZEREN, MSc Hacettepe, MSc, PhD Birm., AMAusIMM

**THEORETICAL AND APPLIED MECHANICS***Professor, Head of Department*

1981 IAN F. COLLINS, MA PhD Camb., FIMA

*Associate-Professors*

1962 MERVYN S. ROSSER, MSc MusB N.Z.

1962 DONALD A. NIELD, MA Camb., MSc N.Z., PhD, FIMA

1969 MICHAEL J. O'SULLIVAN, BE N.Z., PhD Cal. Tech., BSc ME

*Senior Lecturers*

1975 DAVID M RYAN, MSc Otago, PhD A.N.U., FIMA

1978 PETER J. HUNTER, DPhil Oxf., ME

1981 ROBERT McKIBBIN, MSc Cant, PhD, (jtly with Geothermal Institute)

*Lecturers*

1986 ANDREW B. PHILPOTT, BA BSc Well., MPhil, PhD Camb.

1986 SUSAN J. BYRNE, BSc Well., DIC PhD Lond.

1987 JAMES G. GRAHAM-EAGLE, MSc Well., DPhil Oxf.

*Research Fellow*

MARGARET E. BLAKELEY, BE, PhD

**GEOHERMAL INSTITUTE within the Faculty of Engineering***Associate-Professor, Director of Geothermal Institute*

1972 M. P. HOCHSTEIN, DipGeophys T. U. Clausthal, DrRerNat Mün (jtly with Dept. of Geology)

*Associate Professor in Professional Engineering*

1969 D. H. FREESTON, BSc Lond., CEng, MRAeS, FIMechE, MIPENZ (jtly with Dept. of Mech. Eng.)

*Associate Professor*

1979 P. R. L. BROWNE, BSc Cape T., MSc Leeds, PhD Well. (jtly with Dept. of Geology)

*Senior Lecturer*

1981 R. McKIBBIN, MSc Cant. PhD (jtly with Dept of Theoretical & Applied Mechanics)

*Lecturer*

1987 K. NICHOLSON, BSc C.N.A.A., MSc Manc., PhD Strath., CChem, MRSC, MNZIC, MAEG (jtly with Dept of Geology)

**ENGLISH***Professor, Head of Department*

1973 D. I. B. SMITH, MA N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

*Professors*

1980 T. L. STURM, PhD Leeds, MA

1988 ALBERT WENDT, MA Well.

*Associate-Professors*

1968 F.C. de VRIES, MA Amst., DLitt Utrecht

1964 M. P. JACKSON, MA N.Z., BLitt Oxf.

1967 M. A. F. NEILL, MA Otago, PhD Camb.

1966 R. J. HORROCKS, BA N.Z., MA PhD

*Senior Lecturers*

1966 W. SEBASTIAN BLACK, BA Leeds

1970 W. T. L. CURNOW, BA N.Z., PhD Penn., MA  
 1968 AOREWA P. McLEOD, MA Well., BPhil Oxf., BA  
 1969 J. LAMB, BA DPhil York (U.K.)

\*1972 STEPHANIE J. HOLLIS, BA Adel., PhD A.N.U.

1973 K. J. LARSEN, PhL Rome, MA PhD Camb.

1973 R. H. LEEK, MA PhD

\*1981 M. J. WRIGHT, MA Oxf., PhD N.E.

1977 R. H. NICHOLSON, MA Well.

1979 G. A. J. BOIRE, BA Montr., MA PhD McM.

1979 D. G. WRIGHT, MA Cant., PhD Tor.

1980 BRIAN D. BOYD, MA Cant., PhD Tor.

*Senior Lecturer in Drama*

1977 MERVYN. G. THOMPSON, MA Cant.

*Lecturers*

1985 MARGARET A. McLAREN, MA PhD

1985 W. SCOTT ALLAN, MA PhD Edin.

1986 ROBIN E. HOOPER, MA

1987 JOANNE C. WILKES, BA Syd., DPhil Oxf.

*Lecturer in English Language Teaching*

1987 GRAHAM LOCK, BA Lond., DipTEO Manc.

*Senior Tutors*

\*1971 RIEMKE ENSING, MA

1971 MARGARET A. EDGCUMBE, MA

1971 GABRIELLE HILDRETH, MA

*Tutor*

1987 JACQUELINE R. GREENWOOD, MA

*Honorary Research Fellow*

W. H. PEARSON, MA N.Z., PhD Lond.

## FINE ARTS

*Professor, Head of Department*

1961 J. D. SAUNDERS, DipFA N.Z., DipIndustDesign, NDD, FNZSID

*Associate-Professors*

1957 R. W. ELLIS, ARCA, RBA, MNZSSPA, FRSA, MNZSID

1966 G. L. TWISS, DipFA N.Z., MNZSSPA

*Senior Lecturers*

1971 J. B. TURNER

1975 A. GARCIA-ALVAREZ, PD Barcelona, MNZSSPA

1979 D. H. BINNEY, DipFA N.Z., MNZSSPA

1978 R. M. SIMPSON, MFA Ill., BFA

1977 P. E. DADSON, DipFA

1980 B. G. de THIER, DipFA Cant., MNZSID

1980 D. C. WATKINS, DipRCA Lond., DipGD Well. Poly.

\*1980 VICTORIA A. P. EDWARDS, MFA, MNZSSPA

\*1981 R. J. FRIZZELL, DipFA

*Lecturers*

1985 MEGAN L. JENKINSON, BFA

\*1984 CHRISTINE HELLYAR, DipFA

## FRENCH, *see* Romance Languages

## GEOGRAPHY

*Associate-Professor, Head of Department*

1970 R. J. WARWICK NEVILLE, MA DipEd N.Z., PhD Lond.

*Professors*

- 1968 WARREN MORAN, MA N.Z., PhD  
 1972 PAUL W. WILLIAMS, BA Durh., MA Dub., PhD Camb.

*Associate-Professors*

- 1965 A. GRANT ANDERSON, MA DipEd, N.Z., PhD  
 1965 G. ROSS COCHRANE, MA BSc N.Z., PhD, FBIS

*Associate-Professor, Director Environmental Science*

- 1987 JOHN E. HAY, BSc Cant., PhD Lond.

*Senior Lecturers*

- 1968 PETER L. HOSKING, BA N.Z., MA Cant., PhD S. Ill.  
 1971 DAVID G. RANKIN, BA PhD Nott.  
 1976 HONG-KEY YOON, BA Seoul, MS Brigham Young, PhD Calif.  
 1977 CHRISTOPHER R. de FREITAS, MA Tor., PhD Q'ld.  
 1980 STEPHEN G. BRITTON, MA Massey, PhD A.N.U.  
 1982 NEAL J. ENRIGHT, BA W. Aust., PhD A.N.U.

*Lecturers*

- 1986 CHRISTOPHER R. COCKLIN, BSocSc Waik., MA Guelph, PhD McM.  
 1986 DAVID V. HAWKE, BA Adel., MSc Witw., PhD  
 1986 KEVIN E. PARNELL, MA PhD James Cook

*University Post Doctoral Fellow*

- MARTIN PERRY, BSc H.-W., PhD C.N.A.A., MRTPI

*Honorary Lecturer*

- PHILIP J. McDERMOTT, MA PhD Camb.

**GEOLOGY***Professor, Head of Department*

- 1970 PHILIPPA M. BLACK, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, FMSAm, FRSNZ

*Professor*

- 1951 R. N. BROTHERS, MSc N.Z., DIC PhD Lond., FGS, FMSAm, FRSNZ

*Associate-Professors*

- 1958 J. A. GRANT-MACKIE, MSc N.Z., PhD  
 1969 K. B. SPÖRLI, DipIngGeol DrScNat Zür., FGSAm  
 1964 K. A. RODGERS, MSc PhD, FNZIC  
 1978 M. P. HOCHSTEIN, DipGeophys T.U. Clausthal, DrRerNat Mün. (jtly with Geothermal Institute)  
 1979 P. R. L. BROWNE, BSc Cape T., MSc Leeds, PhD Well. (jtly with Geothermal Institute)

*Senior Lecturers*

- 1960 P. F. BALLANCE, BSc PhD Lond.  
 1966 G. W. GIBSON, BSc N.Z., PhD Well.  
 1967 H. W. KOBE, DrPhil Zür.  
 1971 M. R. GREGORY, BSc N.Z., PhD Dal., MSc  
 1975 W. M. PREBBLE, MSc Well.  
 1980 I. E. M. SMITH, BSc Well., PhD A.N.U.  
 1981 R. J. PARKER, MSc Cape T., PhD Lond.  
 \*1981 J. CASSIDY, BSc PhD Liv.

*Lecturers*

- 1987 B. BEAMISH, BSc Tas., MSc N.S.W.  
 1987 K. NICHOLSON, BSc C.N.A.A., MSc Manc., PhD Strath. (jtly with Geothermal Institute)

*Honorary Lecturer*

- CORINNE A. LOCKE, BSc PhD Liv.

*Honorary Research Fellow*

- T. SAMESHIMA, BSc Tokyo, DSc Nagoya

*University Post-Doctoral Fellows*

- YOSHIAKI AITA, MSc DSc Tohoku  
 S. F. SIMMONS, BA MS PhD Minn.

---

## GERMANIC LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE

*Professor, Head of Department*

1966-72, 1986 ALAN KIRKNESS, BA N.Z., DPhil Oxf., MA

*Associate-Professor*

1966 KATHRYN SMITS, MA N.Z., DrPhil Freib.

*Senior Lecturers*

1972 SUZANNE TYNDEL (Mrs), MA N.Z.

1976 JAMES NORTHCOTE-BADE, MA Well., DrPhil Zür.

1978 FRIEDRICH VOIT, DrPhil Saar

*Senior Lecturer in Scandinavian Studies*

1965-68, 1975 O. LENNART WAARA, FilMag Uppsala

*Senior Tutors*

1969 MARTIN J. SUTTON, MA

1979 UTA HAGEN (Mrs), MA Freib.

*Tutor in Scandinavian Studies*

1968 CATRIN E. NORRBY, MA Gothenburg

---

## GREEK, *see* Classics

---

## HEBREW, *see* Classics

---

## HISTORY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1965 P. N. TARLING, MA PhD LittD Camb., FRAS, FRHistS

*Professors*

1956-58, 1964 M. P. K. SORRENSON, MA N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

1964 R. C. J. STONE, MA N.Z., PhD

*Associate-Professors*

1971 VALERIE I. J. FLINT, MA DPhil Oxf. FRHistS

1966 JUDITH M. C. BINNEY BA N.Z., MA

1967 M. A. R. GRAVES, BA Camb., PhD Otago

1972 RAEWYN DALZIEL, BA PhD Well.

1973 J. C. A. STAGG, MA Cant., AM PhD Prin.

1972 P. H. ROUSSEAU, MA DPhil Oxf., FRHistS

1978 L. Y. ANDAYA, BA Yale, AM PhD C'nell.

*Senior Lecturers*

1965 MARGARET H. LAMB (Mrs), BA PhD Lond.

1970 H. M. LARACY, MA Well., PhD A.N.U.

1976 R. T. PHILLIPS, MA PhD Camb.

1978 H. R. JACKSON, BA LLB Melb., MA Camb., PhD A.N.U.

1980 B. H. MOSS, BA C'nell., MA PhD Col., Dipd'Et Paris

1982 B. G. REAY, BA Adel., DPhil Oxf., FRHistS

*Lecturer*

1984 M. S. MAYER, MA Duke., AM PhD Prin.

*Senior Tutors*

1974 JUDITH O. BASSETT (Mrs), MA, LLB

1979 BARBARA J. WATSON ANDAYA (Mrs), BA Syd., MA Hawaii, PhD C'nell.

---

## INDONESIAN, *see* Asian Languages and Literatures

---

## ITALIAN, *see* Romance Languages

---

## JAPANESE, *see* Asian Languages and Literatures

---

---

## LATIN, *see* Classics

---

## LAW

*Professor, Head of Department*

1966 F. M. BROOKFIELD, BA LLB N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

*Professors*

1961 BRIAN COOTE, LLM N.Z., PhD Camb.

\*1987 J. A. FARMER, QC, PhD Camb., LLM

1982 M. B. TAGGART, LLM Harv., LLB

1988 R. G. HAMMOND, LLM Ill., LLB MJur

*Associate-Professors*

1962-65, 1969 B. J. BROWN, LLB Leeds, LLM Sing.

1969 K. A. PALMER, LLM Harv. & Auck., SJD Virginia

\*1973-78, 1981 G. F. DAWSON, BA BCL Oxf.

*Senior Lecturers*

1969 P. J. EVANS, BA LLB Otago, PhD Camb., LLM

1970 PAMELA E. RINGWOOD, BA Syd., LLM DipSocSc Adel.

1973 J. B. ELKIND, BA Col., JD N. Y., LLM Lond.

1968 D. W. McMORLAND, PhD Camb., LLM

1972 W. C. HODGE, AB Harv., JD Stan.

1977 MARGARET A. VENNEL, LLB N.Z.

1974 PAULINE TAPP, LLB MJur

1974 DAVID V. WILLIAMS, BA LLB Well., BCL Oxf., PhD Dar., DipTheol Oxf.

1979 S. J. MACFARLANE, MA LLB N.Z.

1974 M. A. WILSON, LLB MJur

1980 T. J. McBRIDE, LLB Well., LLM Dal.

1980 C. B. CATO, BCL Oxf., LLB

1978 J. G. H. HANNAN, BA LLB Well.

1979 E. JANE KELSEY, LLB Well., BCL Oxf., MPhil Camb.

1985 J. K. MAXTON, (Miss), LLB Lond., LLM Cant.

*Lecturers*

1983 G. L. WILLIAMS, BCom LLM, ACA

1983 W. J. BROOKBANKS, LLM

1985 P. G. WATTS, LLB Cant., LLM Camb.

1986 R. J. PATERSON, BCL Oxf., LLB

1986 JOANNA M. MANNING, LLM George Wash., BA LLB

1987 P. T. RISHWORTH, LLB MJur

*Lecturers, Part-time*

R. L. BRENNAN, LLB Cant.

G. A. CROWHEN, LLB Cant., LLM Well.

B. H. GILES, LLM Mich., LLB

A. P. MOLLOY, QC, LLB LLD

C. C. NICOLL, LLB

W. M. PATTERSON, LLB

L. L. STEVENS, BCL Oxf., BA LLB

P. R. H. WEBB, MA LLB Camb., LLD

---

## LEIGH LABORATORY

*Lecturer, Scientist-in-Charge*

1982 R. G. CREESE, BSc PhD Syd.

*Senior Lecturer*

1965 W. J. BALLANTINE, MA Camb., PhD Lond., MIBiol

*Lecturers*

1987 N. W. PANKHURST, BSc Otago, PhD Brist.



1987 T. A. V. REES, BSc *Liv.*, PhD *Wales*, MIBiol  
*University Post-Doctoral Fellow*  
 C. A. JACOBY, MSc *Ill.*, PhD *Stan.*

---

## MANAGEMENT SCIENCE & INFORMATION SYSTEMS, *see* School of Commerce

---

## MANAGEMENT STUDIES & LABOUR RELATIONS, *see* School of Commerce

---

## MARKETING & INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS SYSTEMS, *see* School of Commerce

---

## MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS

*Professor, Head of Department*

1969 DAVID B. GAULD, PhD *Calif.*, MSc

*Professors*

1958 J. A. KALMAN, MA *N.Z.*, AM PhD *Harv.*

1972 ALASTAIR J. SCOTT, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Chic.*, FAmSA (Statistics Unit)

*Professor, Head of Statistics Unit*

1965-71, 1973 GEORGE A. F. SEBER, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *Manc.* (Statistics Unit)

*Associate-Professors*

1966 PETER J. LORIMER, MSc *N.Z.*, PhD *McG.*

1969 JEFFREY J. HUNTER, BSc *N.Z.*, PhD *N. Carolina*, MSc (Statistics Unit)

1970 IVAN. L. REILLY, BA MSc *Well.*, AM PhD *Ill.*, FIMA

*Senior Lecturers*

1967 KENNETH ASHTON, BSc *Manc.*

1968 GANESH D. DIXIT, BA *Agra*, MA DPhil *Alld.*

1970 PAUL R. HAFNER, DipMaths DrPhil *Zür.*

1971 MAVINA K. VAMANAMURTHY, MSc *Mys.*, MS PhD *Mich.*

1971 P. RAMANKUTTY, BA *Madr.*, MSc *Kerala*, MA PhD *Indiana*

1969 DAVID P. ALCORN, BSc *N.Z.*

1971 BRUCE D. CALVERT, MS PhD *Chic.*, BSc

1969 CHRISTOPHER C. KING, BSc *Well.*, MSc *Warw.*

1970 DAVID J. SMITH, BA *Portland State*, MA PhD *Wash. State*

1971 JOEL L. SCHIFF, AM PhD *Calif.*

1971 WAYNE. J. WALKER, PhD *Ill.*, MSc

1971 MICHAEL J. J. LENNON, PhD *M.I.T.*, MSc

1974 ALLAN J. LEE, PhD *N. Carolina*, MA (Statistics Unit)

1979 CHRISTOPHER J. WILD, PhD *Wat.*, MSc (Statistics Unit)

1985 NICHOLAS C. WORMALD, BSc *A.N.U.*, PhD *N'cle (N.S.W.)*

1986 CATHERINE A. A. MACKEN, MSc *Massey*, PhD *C'nell* (Statistics Unit)

*Lecturers*

1982 SIMON P. FITZPATRICK, BSc *W. Aust.*, PhD *Wash.*

1983 MARSTON D. E. CONDER, MSocSc *Waik.*, MSc DPhil *Oxf.*

1986 WIREMU SOLOMON, PhD *Wis.*, MSc

*Senior Tutors*

1969 R. E. SWENSON, MSc

1985 MARGARET J. MORTON, PhD *Penn. State*, MSc

*Senior Computer Programmer*

JOHN R. PEMBERTON, MSc

---

## MECHANICAL ENGINEERING, *see* Engineering

---

---

## MEDICINE AND HUMAN BIOLOGY

---

### SCHOOL OF MEDICINE

*Dean, Professor of Surgery*

1974 D. S. COLE, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., FRCS, FRACS

---

### POSTGRADUATE AFFAIRS IN MEDICINE

*Associate-Dean of Postgraduate Affairs in Medicine*

1975 C. H. MACLAURIN, MBChB N.Z., FRCS, FRACS

---

### ANATOMY

*Associate-Professor, Head of Department*

1978 RICHARD L. M. FAULL, BMedSc MBChB Otago, PhD

*Professor*

1968 JOHN. B. CARMAN, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

*Professor of Radiology*

1986 STUART W. HEAP, MBBS Lond., FRCR, FRACR

*Associate-Professor in Reproductive Biology (july with Dept of Physiology)*

1969 DENYS P. BOSHIER, MSc N.Z., PhD Brown

*Associate-Professor*

1976 MERVYN J. MERRILEES, BSc Otago, PhD Tor.

*Senior Lecturers*

1973 CYNTHIA G. JENSEN, AB Brown, PhD Minn.

1984 J. MARTIN WILD, MA Cant., PhD

*Senior Lecturer in Radiology*

.....

*Lecturer*

.....

---

## BIOCHEMISTRY, *see* Biochemistry

---

### COMMUNITY HEALTH

*Professor of Human Genetics and Community Health, Head of Department*

1973 ARTHUR M. O. VEALE, MBChB BSc N.Z., PhD Lond., MCCMNZ

*Associate-Professor*

1979 ROBERT BEAGLEHOLE, MDChB Otago, MSc Lond., MRCP, FRACP, MCCMNZ

*Senior Lecturer in Medical Sociology*

1976 PETER B. DAVIS, BA S'ton., MSc Lond., PhD

*Senior Lecturer in Community Health*

\*1972 REX B. HUNTON, MBChB N.Z., DTM & H Liv., MRCP, MRCPEd, FRACP

*Senior Lecturer in Environmental and Occupational Health*

1983 TORD E. KJELLSTROM, MME R.I.T., MD Karolinska I., Stockholm MNZIC

*Lecturer in Biostatistics*

1986 ROGER J. MARSHALL, MSc S'ton, PhD Brist.

*Lecturer in Epidemiology*

1983 ROBERT K. R. SCRAGG, MBBS, Adel., PhD Flin., MCCMNZ

*Senior Research Fellow*

IAN C. T. LYON, MSc Well., PhD Otago, MAACB

*Research Fellow*

DIANNE R. WEBSTER, PhD Lond., MSc, MNZIC

*Executive Director Alcohol Research Unit*

SALLY CASSWELL, BA Sheff., PhD Otago

---

## GENERAL PRACTICE

*Elaine Gurr Professor of General Practice, Head of Department*

*Sir William Goodfellow Director of Continuing Medical Education in General Practice*

1978 P. M. BARHAM, BSc MBChB Otago, DipObst, MRCGP, FRNZCGP

*Associate Professor*

1977 S. RAE WEST, MBChB DipObst N.Z., FRCGP FRNZCGP, MCCMNZ

1973 JOHN G. RICHARDS, MBChB N.Z., FRCGP, FRNZCGP, FRCPEd, FRACP

## IMMUNOBIOLOGY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1980 J. D. WATSON, MSc PhD

*Associate-Professor, Haematology*

\*1971 J. G. BUCHANAN, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., MA Mich., FRCPEd, FRACP, FRCPath, FRCPA

*Senior Lecturers in Microbiology*

1971 D. A. BREMNER, MBChB N.Z., FRCPA

*Senior Lecturer in Haematology*

1985 P. A. OCKELFORD, BSc MBChB, FRACP, FRCPA

*Senior Lecturers in Immunology*

1987 L. McK. CAIRNS, MSc MBChB, MD, FRACP

1987 P. L. J. TAN, MBBS Sing., FRACP

*Senior Tutor*

1987 M. HEAP, MSc

*MRC Career Fellow*

J. MARBROOK, MSc PhD

*Research Fellows*

MARGOT A. SKINNER, BSc PhD

R. J. BOOTH, MSc PhD

J. E. CATTERMOLE, BSc PhD

P. S. CROSIER, MSc PhD Otago

R. L. PRESTIGE, BSc PhD Massey

## MEDICINE, The Department of

*Associate Professor, Head of Department*

1978 D. N. SHARPE, MBChB MD Otago, FRACP DipABIM, DipABCVDIs, FACC

*Professors of Medicine*

1968 J. D. K. NORTH, MBChB N.Z., DPhil Oxf., FRCP, FRACP

1973 P. J. SCOTT, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., MD Birm., FRSNZ, FRCP, FRACP

*Professor of Endocrinology*

1970 H. K. IBBERTSON, MBChB N.Z., FRCP, FRACP

*N.Z. Masonic Professor of Geriatrics*

1973 D. E. RICHMOND, MBChB N.Z., MD Otago, MHPEd N.S.W., FRCP, FRACP, DipABIM, DipABNeph

*National Heart Foundation Professor of Cardiovascular Studies*

1979 W. F. LUBBE, MBChB MD Cape T., FCP(SA), FRACP, FACC

*Honorary Professor*

1969 PHILIPPA M. WIGGINS, MSc N.Z., PhD Lond.

*Associate-Professor of Gastroenterology and Human Nutrition*

1971 C. TASMAN-JONES, BSc MBChB N.Z., FRCP, FRACP

*Senior Lecturers*

1971 D. J. SCOTT, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., MRCP(UK), FRACP

1978 I. J. SIMPSON, MBChB Otago, MD, FRACP

1980 E. W. WILLOUGHBY, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
 1987 R. P. NADEN, BSc MBChB DipObst, FRACP (jtly with Obstetrics and Gynaecology)  
 1987 J. KOLBE, MBBS Q'ld., FRACP  
 1987 I R. REID, MBChB, FRACP  
 1987 I. HAMILTON, MBBS MD Lond., MRCP, MRCS  
*Senior Lecturer in Geriatric Medicine*  
 1986 J. J. BASKETT, MBChB Otago, FRACP  
*Honorary Associate-Professor*  
 1981 I. M. HOLDAWAY, BMedSc, MDChB Otago, FRACP

## **OBSTETRICS and GYNAECOLOGY, incorporating the Postgraduate School of Obstetrics and Gynaecology**

*Professor, Head of Department and Postgraduate School*

1964 D. G. BONHAM, OBE, MA MBBChir Camb., FRCS, FRACS, FRCOG, FRNZCOG, MCCM (NZ)

*Professor in Obstetrics and Gynaecology*

1973 C. D. MANTELL, BMedSc MBChB Otago, PhD DipObst, FRNZCOG, FRCOG

*Associate-Professor in Steroid Biochemistry*

1969 J. T. FRANCE, MSc N.Z., PhD, MNZIC, FAACB

*Senior Lecturers*

1982 M. G. JAMIESON, BMedSc MBChB Otago, MSc Edin., DPhil Oxf., DipObst, MRCOG, FRNZCOG

1982 A. B. ROBERTS, MDChB Aberd., MRCOG

1986 N.S. PATTISON, BSc MBChB, DipObst, MRCOG

\*1987 L. M. E. McCOWAN, BSc MBChB DipObst, MRCOG, MRNZCOG

1987 R. P. NADEN, BSc MBChB DipObst, FRACP (jtly with Medicine)

*MRC Career Fellow*

W. B. WATKINS, MSc PhD DSc

*MRC Senior Research Fellow*

THERESA WILSON, BSc Edin., DipSci Otago, PhD

*Research Fellow*

V. J. CHOY, MSc PhD

## **PAEDIATRICS**

*Professor, Head of Department*

*Research Professor in Child Health*

1970 R. B. ELLIOTT, MBBS MD Adel., FRACP

*Associate-Professors*

1971 J. M. COSTELLO, MBChB N.Z., FRCP, FRACP

1972 R. N. HOWIE, MBChB N.Z., FRACP

*Senior Lecturers*

1976 M. C. MORRIS, MBChB Otago, FRACP, FRCPCan

1982 M. INNES ASHER, BSc MBChB, FRACP

1982 DIANA R. LENNON, MBChB Otago, FRACP

\*1984 E. A. MITCHELL, BSc MBBS Lond., DCH, FRACP

*Senior Lecturer in Neonatal Paediatrics*

1976 S. R. WEALTHALL, MDChB Sheff.

*MRC Career Fellow*

P. D. GLUCKMAN, MBChB Otago, MMedSc, FRSNZ, FRACP

*MRC Senior Research Fellow*

BARBARA M. JOHNSTON, BSc S'ton., DPhil Oxf.

*Senior Research Fellow*

ALISON W. WESLEY, MBChB Otago, DipObst, DCH, FRACP

*Research Fellow*

S. REDDY, DipSc MSc Otago, PhD

## **PATHOLOGY**

*Professor, Head of Department*

*.....*  
*Professor, Experimental Pathology*

1970 J. B. GAVIN, BDS N.Z., PhD DDS Otago

*Associate-Professor, Anatomical Pathology*

1970 J. F. ARTHUR, MD BS Lond., FRCPath

*Associate-Professor, Forensic Medicine*

1975 F. J. CAIRNS, MDChB N.Z., FRCPath, FRCPA

*Associate-Professor, Oncology*

1976 J. C. PROBERT, MA MBCh Oxf., DMRT Lond., FRCR, MRACR, DipAmerBdRad

*Honorary Associate-Professor*

1985 B. C. BAGULEY, MSc PhD, MNZMS

*Senior Lecturer, Anatomical Pathology*

1978 BETH J. L. SYNEK, MBChB Otago, FRCPA

*Senior Lecturer, Forensic Medicine*

1978 W. M. I. SMEETON, MBChB Otago, FRCPA

*Senior Lecturer, Anatomic & Forensic Pathology*

1981 T. D. KOELMEYER, MBBS Ceyl., FRACS

*Senior Research Fellows*

LOIS C. ARMIGER, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD

S. M. HUMPHREY, BSc Liv., PhD N.Z.

*Research Fellow*

W. R. WILSON, BSc Well., MSc PhD

---

## **PHARMACOLOGY and CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY**

*Professor, Head of Department*

*.....*  
*Honorary Professor in Cardiovascular Therapeutics*

1980 R. M. NORRIS, MBChB N.Z., MD Birm., FRCP, FRACP

*Associate-Professor in Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics*

1977 G. S. M. KELLAWAY, MDChB N.Z., FRCP, FRCPEd, FRACP

*Associate-Professor of Anaesthetics*

1978 R. A. BOAS, MBChB, N.Z., FFARACS

*Senior Lecturers*

1977 J. W. PAXTON, BSc PhD Glas.

1979 SHEILA A. DOGGRELL, BSc PhD S'ton.

*Senior Lecturer in Anaesthetics*

*.....*  
*Senior Lecturer in Clinical Pharmacology*

1984 NICHOLAS H. G. HOLFORD, MSc MBChB Manc., MRCP(UK), FRACP

---

## **PHYSIOLOGY**

*Associate-Professor, Head of Department*

1971 P. McN. HILL, MA MBBCh BAO PhD Dub.

*Professor*

1968 J. D. SINCLAIR, BMedSc MBChB MD N.Z., FRACP

*Professor of Neurophysiology*

1986 J. LIPSKI, MD PhD DSc Warsaw

*Senior Lecturers*

1970 M. N. EADE, MBChB N.Z., MD Birm., FRACP

1972 N. J. DAWSON, BSc PhD N.E.

- 1976 E. M. A. BULLIVANT, BSc Lond., PhD  
 1977 J. R. SLACK, BSc PhD Lond.  
 1977 B. H. SMAILL, BSc BE Cant., PhD Lond., DIC  
 1982 D. S. LOISELLE, MSc Alta., PhD Dal., DipPhEd Otago  
 \*1984 S. M. ROBINSON, MBChB Otago, MSc Adel., FFARACS

*Lecturer*

1986 A. A. YOUNG, BSc MBChB MSc PhD

*MRC Senior Research Fellow*

S. POCKETT, MSc PhD

*Senior Research Fellow*

R. J. MILNE, MSc Cant., PhD Otago, MIP

*University Post-Doctoral Fellow*

HASMEETA SHUKLA, BSc PhD Lond.

## PSYCHIATRY AND BEHAVIOURAL SCIENCE

*Associate-Professor in Adult Psychiatry, Head of Department*

1976 J. J. WRIGHT, MBChB MD Otago, FRACP, MRCPsych, MRANZCP

*Professor*

1970 J. S. WERRY, BMedSc MBChB N.Z., MD Otago, DipPsych McG., FRCPCan, FRANZCP

*Senior Lecturers in Psychiatry*

1978 R. G. LARGE, MBChB DPM Cape T., PhD, FFPsych SA, MRANZCP

1984 R. R. KYDD, MBChB Otago, MRANZCP

*Senior Research Fellow*

G. J. LEES, BSc PhD Melb.

*Associate-Professor in Behavioural Science*

1984 GREGORY L. WHITE, BA Stan., MA PhD Calif., MAPSA, MASPsS

*Senior Lecturers in Behavioural Science*

1970 JUDITH M. DUBIGNON, PhD Qu., MA

1972 J. M. RAEBURN, PhD Qu., MA MSc

.....

*Senior Tutors in Behavioural Science*

1975 R. G. R. NAIRN, MSc

1980 VALERIE, J. GRANT, MA PhD, NZRN

## SURGERY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1980 GRAHAM L. HILL, MBChM Otago, MD Leeds, FRACS, FRCS, FACS

*Sir William Stevenson Professor of Orthopaedic Surgery*

1975 D. HARLEY GRAY, MBChB N.Z., MMedSc ChM Otago, FRACS

*Honorary Professor*

1971 SIR BRIAN BARRATT-BOYES, KBE, MBChB N.Z., ChM Otago, Hon DSc Colorado, FRACS,

FACS, FRSNZ, Hon FRCS

*Associate-Professor*

1970 RONALD G. KAY, MBChB, N.Z., FRCS, FRACS

*Sir William Stevenson Associate-Professor of Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery*

1979 DONALD F. LIGGINS, MBMS Syd., FRACS

*Sir William Stevenson and Lady Stevenson Senior Lecturer in Ophthalmology*

1984 M. M. GILLIAN CLOVER, MBChB Otago, PhD Lond., FRACS, FRACO

*Senior Lecturers*

1974 W. THOMAS MORRIS, MBChB Brist., PhD Sheff., FRCS

1979 JOHN P. COLLINS, MBMCh N. U.I., FRCS, FRCSED, FRACS

1984 JAMES H. F. SHAW, BMedSci MDChB Otago, FRACS

*Senior Lecturer in Orthopaedic Surgery*

1979 GARNET D. TREGONNING, MBChB Otago, FRACS, FRCSCan

*MRC Career Fellow*

MICHAEL H. FLINT, MBBS Lond., FRCS, FRACS

*MRC Senior Research Fellow*

STEPHEN J. M. SKINNER, BSc PhD

*Research Physicists*

J. F. SUTCLIFFE, BSc N'cle (U.K.), MSc Salf., PhD Dund.

S. MITRA, MSc PhD Poona

*Research Fellows*

GRANT S. KNIGHT, MSc PhD

C. ANTHONY POOLE, BSc PhD Otago

PETER CHRISTIE, MBChB, FRACS

DAVID SCHROEDAR, MBChB Otago, FRACS

**CLINICAL TEACHERS TO THE SCHOOL OF MEDICINE***\*Clinical Readers*

D. M. O. Becroft

J. A. Birkbeck

Robin H. Briant

D. E. Caughey

J. C. Cullen

in Pathology

in Medicine

in Medicine

&amp; Clinical Pharmacology

in Medicine

in Surgery

R. H. Culpan

R. B. Ellis-Pegler

G. L. Glasgow

R. J. Goodey

J. R. D. Matthews

J. M. Neutze

O. R. Nicholson

in Psychiatry

in Immunobiology

in Medicine

in Surgery

in Immunobiology

in Paediatrics

in Surgery

*\*Clinical Senior Lecturers*

S. F. Aftimos

M. R. Ali

J. S. Allan

P. G. Alley

L. A. Armstrong

Toni Ashton

T. M. Astley

T. R. Bai

N. M. Bass

A. M. Bassett

C. S. Benjamin

A. D. Bird

H. A. Blacklock

S. C. Body

R. Booth

M. J. Butler

J. A. Cadwallader

A. D. Cameron

D. G. Campbell

P. E. Capelle

J. F. Carter

Joan S. Chapple

K. E. Clark

A. G. Clarke

E. D. Clarke

Patricia M. Clarkson

J. F. Collins

H. A. Coverdale

M. C. Croxson

M. S. Croxson

S. J. Culpan

C. G. Cumming

J. C. Cunninghame

R. G. Cutfield

J. G. Davison

P. B. Doak

G. W. Dodd

F. C. Donnelly

E. B. Dorman

I. D. Elliot

Keitha Farmer

G. F. Farr

E. J. Felgate

R. S. Ferguson

G. A. Foote

A. R. Fraser

M. E. Futter

L. H. Galler

J. E. Garrett

J. D. Gillies

P. J. Gow

R. R. Grigor

Tania R. Gunn

F. J. Hall

A. E. Hardy

E. A. Harris

A. C. Harrison

H. H. Hart

V. J. Harvey

A. J. Haslam

R. K. Haydon

J. W. Henley

P. G. Henley

M. E. C. Honeyman

J. E. Horton

Shirley Ip

Ruth Jackson

M. F. Jagusch

D. L. Jamison

P. E. B. Jensen

J. A. Judson

N. C. Karalus

G. Keating

D. B. Knight

G. F. Lamb

M. Lane

S. D. R. Lang

P. Leatham

A. Liang

D. M. F. MacDonald

A. H. Mark

R. E. Marks

A. H. Maslowski

G. H. Mason

D. A. R. McKay

R. N. McKegg

A. R. McKenzie

M. R. McLean

J. W. McLeod

C. J. Mercer

W. H. Mercer

P. Merrick

A. F. Merry

R. J. Methven

K. N. P. Mickelson

S. W. Miles

S. Milsom

T. E. Moore

R. P. Morton

M. E. Neill

J. E. Newman

G. I. Nicholson

R. D. Nicol

P. T. Nobbs

K. P. O'Brien

N. M. Officer

Susan J. Ogle

S. J. Palmer

M. J. Parslow

P. W. B. Pease

L. Peters

Karen O. Poutasi

S. P. Rainer

A. M. Ramirez

H. H. Rea

R. M. Reynolds

C. P. Ring

Helen E. Roberts

M. D. J. Robertson

S. M. Robinson

A. H. Roche

D. A. Rothwell

R. P. G. Rothwell

R. S. H. Rowley

Janet P. Say

D. A. Scollay

Marilyn Scott

J. P. Simcock

P. S. Simcock	A. N. Thomson	M. W. Watt
H. L. McI. Smith	A. A. G. Trenholme	Alison W. Wesley
D. L. Snow	A. Rae Varcoe	R. M. L. Whitlock
V. F. Sorrell	A. G. Veale	L. C. Williams
J. H. Stewart	M. R. Wallace	D. G. Woodfield
D. S. Sumner	W. E. Wallis	

## MUSIC

*Senior Lecturer, Head of Department*

1977 G. WARREN J. DRAKE BA N.Z., PhD Ill., MA

*Professor*

1983 HEATH LEES, BMus MA Glas., FTCL

*Associate-Professor*

1965 GERALD R. SEAMAN, MA DPhil Oxf.

*Senior Lecturers*

1979 CORAL BOGNUDA Ier Prix (Violincello) Ier Prix (Musique de Chambre) Paris, A.C.M. Melb.

1976 ANTHONY J. JENNINGS, BMus Well., DipSup Ier Prix Brussels, CertAdvStud, GSM (Lond)

1974 DAVID NALDEN, BA N.Z., Ier Prix (Violin) Ier Prix (Musique de Chambre) Brussels

1976 MARY T. O'BRIEN, DipPedagog Paris Cons.

1974 JOHN F. RIMMER, BA N.Z., MusD Tor., MA

1975 BRYAN A. SAYER, BA DipMus, LRSM, ARCM, LTCL

1983 TAMAS VESMAS

*Lecturers*

1987 HARRY M. COGHILL, ARCM

1984 JOHN A. ELSMLY, BSc BMus Well., Ier Prix (Comp) Brussels, SpCert Liège, LCTL

1980 FIONA E. McALPINE, MA Well., DèsL Paris

## OBSTETRICS & GYNAECOLOGY *see* Medicine and Human Bio.

## OPTOMETRY

*Associate-Professor, Head of Department*

1978 L. F. GARNER, BAppSc DipEd Melb., PhD Syd., LOsc DCLP, FBCO, FAAO, FVCO

*Associate-Professor*

1970 L. A. F. STOCKLEY, DipOphth Opt, Northam. Pol., FBCO, FCIBS

*Senior Lecturer*

1984 R. J. JACOBS, MSc PhD Melb., LOsc, FVCO

*Clinic Supervisor*

1985 M. S. HOVANDER, BSc OD Oregon

*\*Visiting Ophthalmologists*

J. S. CHAPMAN-SMITH, MBChB Otago, DO Dub., FRACS

J. D. MURDOCH, MBChB Otago, FRCSEd, FRACS

*\*Clinical Associates*

K. W. Atkinson

A. G. Bott

J. W. Boyce

T. Duncan

C. R. Earnshaw

G. R. Kearney

R. F. Kinnear

M. S. Knowles

J. Northey

N. G. Ritchie

J. Tanner

J. Tarbutt

G. A. Watters

*\*Academic Associates*

J. D. Adam

H. G. L. Bowen

W. A. P. Facer

L. B. Grocott

M. G. Hitchcock

J. Klinger

I. K. Laird

M. McKellar

J. C. Ohms

G. Sanderson

F. G. Snell



## PAEDIATRICS PATHOLOGY PHARMACOLOGY AND CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY

see **Medicine  
and  
Human Biology**

## PHILOSOPHY

*Professor, Head of Department*

1980 K. KRISTER SEGERBERG, BA Col., Fil Dok Uppsala, PhD Stan.

*Senior Lecturers*

1959 CLIVE W. I. PEARSON, MA PhD Q'ld

1971 MARTIN M. TWEEDALE, BA Prin., PhD Calif.

1969 ROBERT NOLA, BSc N.Z., PhD A.N.U., MA MSc

1971 JULIAN P. YOUNG, MA Camb. & Wayne State, PhD Pitt.

1974 FREDERICK W. KROON, MA PhD Prin., MA

1978 CHRISTINE H. M. SWANTON, BPhil DPhil Oxf., MA

1981 JOHN C. BISHOP, BA A.N.U., PhD Camb

1983 STANISLAW J. SURMA, MSc PhD DSc Cracow

1983 STEPHEN J. DAVIES, MA Monash, PhD Lond.

*Lecturer*

1985 DENIS J. ROBINSON, BA Melb., BPhil Oxf., PhD Monash

## PHYSICS

*Professor, Head of Department*

1969 ALAN R. POLETTI, MSc N.Z., DPhil Oxf., FInstP, FAPS, FNZIP, CPhys, FRSNZ

*Professor of Geophysics*

1969 A. C. KIBBLEWHITE, MSc N.Z., DIC PhD Lond., FInstP (Lond), FNZIP, CPhys, FASA

*Professor*

1987 D. F. WALLS, MSc N.Z., PhD Harv., FRSNZ, FOSA, FAPS, FNZIP

*Associate-Professors*

1963 ROBERT E. WHITE, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FInstP, FNZIP, CPhys

1953 J. BRIAN EARNSHAW, MSc(Eng) Manc., PhD

1958 R. F. KEAM, BA Camb., MSc DipHons N.Z., DPhil Oxf.

1966 ALAN P. STAMP, MSc N.Z., DPhil Oxf., FInstP, CPhys

1967 PHILIP C. M. YOCK, MSc N.Z., PhD M.I.T.

1969 C. DAVID STOW, BSc PhD Manc., DSc FInstP (Lond), FNZIP, CPhys, FRMetS, MMetS (Japan)

1971 PAUL H. BARKER, BA Oxf., PhD Manc.

1975 JOHN D. HARVEY, PhD Sur., MSc, MIEEE MZNIP

*Senior Lecturers*

1963 J. R. STOREY, MSc PhD N.Z., MNZIP, MIEEE, MAAPT

1961 ROSS GARRETT, BA MSc N.Z., PhD, MInstP

1963 A. CHISHOLM, MSc N.Z., PhD, MInstP (Lond.), MNZIP, CPhys

1969 Z. C. TAN, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, MInstP, CEng, MIEEE

1970 GARY E. J. BOLD, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, MNZIP, MIEEE, MASA

1970 MURRAY D. JOHNS, BSc N.Z., MSc PhD, MNZIP, MIEEE, MASA

1971 GRAEME D. PUTT, BSc PhD Melb., MAIP, FNZIP

1972 C. T. TINDLE, PhD Br. Col., MSc, MInstP, MNZIP, CPhys, FASA

1979 BARRY J. BRENNAN, BSc PhD

1982 STUART G. BRADLEY, MSc PhD, MInstP (Lond.) MNZIP, CPhys, MAMetS, FRMetS

1983 P. D. DRUMMOND, AM Harv., DPhil Waik., BSc

*Senior Lecturers in Physico-Chemistry*

1981 PETER R. WILLS, BSc PhD

1988 M. G. BOSHIER, MSc Otago, DPhil Oxf.

*Assistant Lecturer*

\*1963 D. J. HOOTON, MSc N.Z., PhD Edin., FInstP, FNZIP, CPhys

*Senior Research Fellow*

JOHN E. TITHERIDGE, MSc DipHons N.Z., PhD Camb., SMIEEE, FInstP, CPhys, SMIEEE FRSNZ

*University Post-Doctoral Fellow*

SZE TAN, MSc N.Z., PhD Camb.

---

**PHYSIOLOGY, see Medicine and Human Biology**

---

**PLANNING\****Professor, Head of Department*

1984 ROBERT B. RIDDELL, MA Camb., PhD N'cle(U.K.), DipTP N.Z., ARICS, MNZPI, MNZIS

*Associate-Professor**Senior Lecturers*

\*1963 J. R. DART, MSc DIC Lond., DipTP, MNZIS, MNZPI

1965 M. H. PRITCHARD, BSc Wales, DipTP, MNZPI

1974 M. A. TAYLOR, MA N.Z., PhD Lond., MRTPI, MNZPI

\*1986 L. A. WATKINS, BArch N.Z., MArch, DipTP, ANZIA, RIBA

*Senior Lecturer in Environmental Studies*

1970 L. R. B. MANN, BSc N.Z., MSc Well., PhD Calif.

*Lecturers*

1985 R. JOY GRANT, BSc N.Z., MTP, MNZPI

1987 PATRICIA M. AUSTIN, BSc Sus., BPhil N'cle(U.K.)

---

**POLITICAL STUDIES***Professor, Head of Department**Associate-Professors*

1965 RUTH H. BUTTERWORTH, MA DPhil Oxf.

1967 GRAHAM W. A. BUSH, MA N.Z., PhD Brist., DipEd

1968 BARRY S. GUSTAFSON, MA N.Z., DipEd Massey, DipSovStud Glas., PhD

1972 J. STEPHEN HOADLEY, BSc Purdue, MA Calif. State, PhD Calif.

*Senior Lecturers*

1969 E. PETER AIMER, MA N.Z., PhD A.N.U.

1970 JOHN D. PRINCE, MA Case W. Reserve &amp; Auck., PhD

1971 R. ANDREW SHARP, BA N.Z., MA Cant., PhD Camb.

*Lecturers*

1979 JOSEPH B. ATKINSON, MA Cant., MPhil Yale

1982 JACK VOWLES, PhD Br. Col., MA

*Senior Tutor*

1974 RAYMOND K. MILLER, BA McM., MA DipEd

---

**PSYCHIATRY, see Medicine and Human Biology**

---

**PSYCHOLOGY***Professor, Head of Department*

1968 GRAHAM M. VAUGHAN, MA N.Z., PhD Well., FNZPsS

*Professors*

1962 R. J. IRWIN, MA N.Z., PhD Tufts., FNZPsS

1978 M. C. CORBALLIS, BA MSc N.Z., PhD McG., MA, FRSNZ, FAAAS, FAPA, FNZPsS

1969 MICHAEL C. DAVISON, BSc Brist., PhD Otago, DSc, FRSNZ, FNZPsS

*Associate Professor*

1964 IVAN L. BEALE, MSc N.Z., PhD

*Senior Lecturers*

- 1965 J. A. GRIBBEN, MA N.Z., PhD Well.  
 1966 P. J. RIDDICK, BA N.Z., MA PhD  
 1968 G. D. de F. von STURMER, BA N.Z., MA Melb., PhD  
 1969 BARRY J. KIRKWOOD, BA N.Z., MA PhD  
 1972 VALERIE D. HOLLARD, MA PhD  
 1981 P. A. WHITE, BA Nott., DPhil Oxf.  
 1981 JEFFERY FIELD, BA Macq., PhD A.N.U.  
 1986 JENNIFER A. OGDEN, BSc Massey, DipSocSc N.E., MSc PhD DipClinPsych

*Lecturer*

1980 DIANNE C. MCCARTHY, BA MSc PhD

*Senior Research Fellow*

G. L. MANGAN, MA N.Z., BEd Melb., MA Oxf & Lond., PhD Lond., DSc Oxf., FBrPsS, FAPsS

*\*Associates in Clinical Psychology*

J. P. A. Allen	Ruth Jackson	J. R. Reeves
Brigid A. Barrer	Sandra Nevezie	F. W. Seymour
Aloma H. Colgan	A. Prosser	G. H. Taylor
Susanne Deveraux		

**ROMANCE LANGUAGES***Professor of French, Head of Department*

1987 DAVID G. BEVAN, BA Leeds, MA Cape T., MèS L Grenoble, DLitt DPhil S.A.

*Associate-Professors of French*

1960 A. S. G. BUTLER, MA N.Z., DU Paris  
 1969 J. C. CORNE, MA PhD

*Senior Lecturers in French*

1957 W. F. POLLARD, MA Dub.  
 1970 M. D. JAMIESON (Mrs), LèS L, Dipd'EtSup Lille  
 1966 JUDITH I. A. GRANT, MA N.Z., PhD Tor., Dipd'EtSup Paris, CertPhon Inst. de Phon., Paris  
 1970 B. D. McKAY, DU Paris, MA  
 1972 G. Y. EKAMBI (Mrs), Dipd'EtSup Besançon, MA  
 1978 PIERRE A. PETIT, MA Penn. MèS L DèS L Bordeaux

*Senior Lecturer in Italian*

1968-70, 1974 MICHAEL D. HANNE, BA Oxf.  
 1971 RICHARD B. BACKHOUSE, MA

*Senior Lecturers in Spanish*

1969 J. G. HOWLEY, MA Glas.  
 1981 M. K. READ, BA MLitt Brist., PhD Wales  
 1981 R. C. BOLAND, BA Syd., MA PhD Flin., DipEd Adel.

*Lecturer in Italian*

1980 LAURENCE E. SIMMONS, MA

*Lecturers in Spanish*

1986 M. S. HARVEY, BA PhD Monash  
 1987 CHRISTINE R. ARKINSTALL, MA Oviedo, BA

*Senior Tutor in Italian*

1967 MEME CHURTON (Mrs)

*Tutor in Italian*

1987 ADALGISA GIORGIO, Dottore in Lingue Naples, PhD R'dg

*Senior Tutor in Spanish*

1978 FIONA M. TALER, MA

**RUSSIAN***Associate-Professor (in charge)*

1970-72, 1975 HANS-PETER STOFFEL, DrPhil Zür.

*Senior Lecturer*

1975 IAN K. LILLY, MA Cant. &amp; Monash, PhD Wash.

*Lecturer**Senior Tutor*

\*1981 HANNAH BRODSKY-PEVZNER, DipPhil Latvian State

**SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES,**  
*see Germanic Languages and Literature***SOCIOLOGY***Professor, Head of Department*

1982 I. R. CARTER, BSc Bath, MA Essex, PhD Aberd., FRSA

*Associate Professor*

1987 B. SMART, BSc Lond.

*Senior Lecturers*

1972 D. R. BEDGGOOD, MA Cant., DPhil Waik.

1974 K. MALALGODA, BA Ceyl., DPhil Oxf.

1973 IVANICA M. VODANOVICH, BA N.Z., PhD DipSocAnthrop Lond.

1973 A. J. C. MACPHERSON, MA DPhil Waik.

1977 N. H. PERRY, BA Strath., BSc (Soc) Lond.

1982 C. H. G. CROTHERS, BA Waik., BA PhD Well.

*Lecturers*

1980 CATHERINE WEST-NEWMAN, BA N.Z., MA Lond., MA, PhD

1987 MAUREEN MOLLOY, BEd MA Br Col., PhD

**SPANISH,** *see Romance Languages***SURGERY,** *see Medicine and Human Biology***THEORETICAL AND APPLIED MECHANICS,** *see Engineering***ZOOLOGY***Professor, Head of Department*

1957 PATRICIA R. BERGQUIST, MSc PhD N.Z., DSc, FRSNZ

*Senior Professor*

1960 J. E. MORTON, QSO, MSc N.Z., PhD DSc Lond., FRSNZ, HonFLS

*Professor*

1972 E. C. YOUNG, MSc N.Z., DIC, PhD Lond.

*Associate-Professors*

1958 M. C. MILLER, BSc PhD Liv.

1970 B. A. FOSTER, PhD Wales, MSc

1976 R. M. G. WELLS, PhD DSc Lond., MSc, FRSNZ

*Senior Lecturers*

1958 D. R. COWLEY, MSc N.Z., PhD

1968 P. F. JENKINS, BSc N.Z., PhD

1968 R. D. LEWIS, BSc PhD Wales

1972 J. A. MACDONALD, AB Stan., PhD Texas

1976 J. L. CRAIG, BSc Otago, PhD Massey

1977 B. H. McARDLE, BSc Brist., DPhil York (U.K.)

1978 J. C. MONTGOMERY, BSc Otago, PhD Brist.

*Lecturers*

1980 D. M. LAMBERT, MSc Q'ld., PhD Witw.

1987 G. P. JONES, MSc PhD

1987 C. W. EVANS, BSc PhD

*Senior Tutors*1961 JOAN M. MILLER (Mrs), BSc *Liv.*

1967 MAUREEN H. LEWIS, MSc PhD

1972 R. MERE ROBERTS (Mrs), BSc *Cant.*, MSc*Tutor*1982 C. G. QUILTER, PhD *Otago*, BSc*Honorary Research Fellows*JOAN ROBB, MSc *N.Z.*, DipAgr *Cant. U. Coll.*MARSHALL LAIRD, MSc PhD DSc *N.Z.*, FAAA**UNIVERSITY STAFF (LIBRARY)***Librarian*PETER B. DUREY, BA *Durh.*, FLA, ALAA, FNZLA*Deputy-Librarian*KENNETH I. PORTER, MA *N.Z.*, DipNZLS, FNZLA*Head of Acquisitions*

ALISON M. GRANT, BA, DipNZLS, ANZLA

*Head Cataloguer*

CHRISTINE I. WILSON, BA, DipNZLS

*Head of Circulation*JOHN W. HAYWARD, BA *Cant.*, DipNZLS*Head of Reference*A. CATHERINE HUTCHINSON, MA *Well.*, DipNZLS, ANZLA*Head of Serials Unit, Acquisitions*NEIL C. HEINZ, MA *Well.*, DipNZLS*Architecture Librarian*WENDY S. GARVEY (Mrs), BA *Well.*, DipNZLS*Asian Languages Librarian*KUAN-HOONG LUN, BA, *Nan & Well.*, MA *Well.*, DipNZLS*Biological Sciences Librarian*FLAVIA A. CLIFFORD-WHITE, BSc *Otago*, DipNZLS, ANZLA*Engineering Librarian**Fine Arts Librarian*

VALERIE RICHARDS, NZLACert., ANZLA

*Geography Librarian*BRIAN W. MARSHALL, BA *Massey*, MA, DipNZLS, ANZLA*Geology Librarian*

ELVA LEAMING, BA, NZLA Cert

*Law Librarian*E. JULIA McMAHON O'HIGGINS, BA *N.Z.*, MA LLB, NZLACert*Librarian, Centre for Continuing Education*

MARY ANN CRICK, BA, NZLSCert

*Librarian, School of Medicine*

MARGARET A. GIBSON SMITH (Mrs), MA, NZLACert, ANZLA

*Music Librarian*BEVERLEY A. ANSCOMBE (Miss), BMus *Well.*, DipNZLS, ANZLA, LTCL.*Science Librarian*INGE E. B. RUDOLPH, BA (Libr Sci) *S.A.**Senior Librarians*

SUSAN M. FOGGIN (Mrs), MA, DipNZLS

THERESA B. GRAHAM, MA, DipNZLS

JENNIFER J. HART, MA, DipNZLS, ANZLA

GAIKA E. HAWKINS (Mrs), BA *Stell.*, LibDip *Cape T.*BRUCE A. HOWIE, BA *Well.*, DipNZLS

PATRICIA D. HULSE, BA, DipNZLS, ANZLA

ELAINE M. ROBINSON, NZLA Cert, ANZLA

*Associate-Librarian (Systems Manager)*

SHAYNE L. PARKINSON (Mrs), BA Waik.

*Assistant Librarians*

CORAL D. ASHFORD (Mrs), BA, CertNZLS

ANNA K. BELTOWSKI, LLB BALib C.N.A.A.

\*HANNA BRODSKY-PEVZNER (Mrs), DipPhil *Latvian State*

DAPHNE CARRUTHERS, MA N.Z., DipNZLS

AMANDA L. COOPER, MA, DipLibr *Well.*

MARGARET I. FREEMAN, MA, NZLACert

SUSAN HORN, MA, DipNZLS, ANZLA

IAN G. JOHNSTON, MA, DipLibr *Well.*

GAIL KEEFE, BA, NZLSCert

MARGARET E. KNIGHTBRIDGE, NZLACert

JONATHAN MARKHAM, BA *Well.*, MA *Syd.*, DipLibr *Well.*

P. JANE McRAE, BE *Otago*, MA

SARAH M. NEILL (Mrs), NZLACert

ROSLYN M. G. SMITH, LLB, Dip NZLS

MASAKO TAKAGAKI (Mrs), BA *Aoyama Gakuin*, NZLSCert

ROBERTA WHELAN, MA N.Z., NZLACert

RAINER WOLCKE, Staatsexamen *Hamburg*, DipLibr *Well.*

JENEFER M. WRIGHT, BA, NZLA Cert

---

## UNIVERSITY STAFF (ADMINISTRATION)

*Vice-Chancellor*

C. J. MAIDEN, ME N.Z., DPhil *Oxf.*

*Assistant Vice-Chancellors*

D. I. B. SMITH, MA N.Z., DPhil *Oxf.*

P. N. TARLING, MA PhD LittD *Camb.*, FRAS, FRHistS

P. L. BERGQUIST, MSc PhD N.Z., FRSNZ

*Assistant to the Vice-Chancellor (Buildings and Site Development)*

J. D. K. NORTH, MBChB N.Z., DPhil *Oxf.*, FRCP, FRACP

*Assistant to the Vice-Chancellor (Student Accommodation and Welfare)*

R. C. CAMBIE, MSc PhD N.Z., DPhil *Oxf.*, DSc, FNZIC, FRSNZ

*Registrar*

WARWICK B. NICOLL, BCom

*Vice-Chancellor's Secretary*

JENNIFER M. TOPLISS

*Council Committee Clerk*

VALRAE J. COLLINS

*Registrar's Secretary*

JOCELYN I. HIGGINS

---

## REGISTRAR'S SECTION

*Head of the Audio-Visual Centre*

*Assistant Registrar Student Accommodation*

MARGERIE MACKY

*Managing Editor, Auckland University Press*

ELIZABETH P. CAFFIN, MA *Cant.*, MS *Georgetown*

*Information and Public Affairs Officer*

W. R. S. WILLIAMS, LLB *Well.*, DipJ *Cant.*

*Manager University Printing Services*

R. E. H. STONE

*Internal Auditor*

PETER G. DORMON, ACA

**ACADEMIC SECTION***Academic Registrar*

LORNA A. WILSON (Mrs), JP

*Deputy Academic Registrar*

R. F. METCALFE, MA Cant.

*Assistant Registrars, Academic*

JOHN R. CLARKE

MICHAEL G. CRONIN

F. RICHARD V. MILNE, BA Lond.

V. PREECE, JP, MA N.Z.

*Senior Administrative Assistants*

RICHARD G. BOLLEY, BA York (U.K.)

K. G. BRADFORD

KENNETH M. MILNE, DipAgr M.A.C. N.Z.

GRETCHEN A. L. SPALINGER (Mrs), BA Calif.

RAYMOND J. WATKINS, MA

*Administrative Assistants*

PAUL L. COLVIN

FIONA M. MACLEAN

*Senior Systems Analyst*

KEITH W. SALMON, MA

*Systems Analyst*

SUSAN COLVIN

**FINANCE SECTION***Finance Registrar*

B. M. COCKER, ACA

*Deputy Registrar, Finance*

R. J. TOWNSEND, ACA

*Assistant Registrar, Finance*

IAN R. JOHNSON BCom, ACA

*Assistant Registrar, Purchasing*

G. J. SANDERSON, BSc Massey

*Assistant Registrar, Salaries*

MAURICE WONG SHEE

*Senior Administrative Assistant Research*

M. G. DIXON (Miss)

*Computer Systems Controller*

FAYE GROOM (Mrs)

*Accountant*

ANITA B. JANSEN

*Systems Accountant*

DYLAN ROGERS

*University Cashier*

FAY BUCHANAN (Mrs)

**PERSONNEL SECTION***Staff Registrar*

G. E. W. THOMAS, BA

*Assistant Registrars*

M. V. LELLMAN, BA

ELIZABETH P. PORT (Mrs)

*Senior Administrative Assistants*

ROBIN V. HUDSON (Ms)

JOY L. GILCHRIST

*School of Architecture**Assistant Registrar*

D. J. S. HARVEY, BMus

*Faculty of Commerce**Senior Administrative Assistant*.....  
*Centre for Continuing Education**Senior Continuing Education Officer*

GEORGE J. DIBLEY, BA

*Continuing Education Officers*

C. ANNE DAVIS, MA

\*JOAN DIAMOND, BA

\*VIVIENNE JONES, MA

BARRY T. WILLIAMS, BCA Well.

ALISON C. SIMCOCK, BA

*Assistant Continuing Education Officer*

MARION P. FEASEY

*School of Engineering**Assistant Registrar (Engineering)*

G. C. BEACH

*Graduate School of Business**Administrative Assistant*

DOROTHEA MULDER, (Mrs)

*School of Law**Senior Administrative Assistant*

STEPHEN F. PENK, MA PGDA Otago, BA

*School of Medicine**Assistant Registrar*

M. A. ROBINSON, BA Cant.

*Administrative Assistants*

SUSAN CATHERSIDES, BA

GAEL C. CLARK

*Department of Anthropology**Senior Administrative Assistant*

SANDRA JONES, BA Q'ld

*Department of Chemistry**Administrative Assistant*

BERYL STOUT

*Geothermal Institute**Senior Administrative Assistant*

OSCAR HUIJSSE

*Department of History**Administrative Assistant*

PAMELA M. RUSSELL, BA

*Leigh Laboratory**Administrative Assistant*

J. J. C. KAMPMAN

*Department of Psychology**Administrative Assistant*

YVONNE B. O'BRIEN

*Department of Zoology**Administrative Assistant* MARGARET L. BRICKLAND, BA



---

## WORKS SECTION

*Works Registrar*

ROBERT W. NICOL, BSc N.Z., CEng, MIEE

*Deputy Registrar, Services*

S. B. THORN, MA, CEng MIMarE, MBIM, MIPENZ

*Assistant Registrars*

R. K. JOHNSON, FCIS

KIM G. LONGDIN-PRISK, ME

C. B. M. JACKSON, BA DipLGA

PAUL M. WHITE, BArch

DENIS R. AGATE

*Senior Administrative Assistants*

R. F. ATTWELL

J. M. SWEENEY

*Administrative Assistant*

H. JANE BURN (Mrs) LLB Lond.

*Accountant*

JEAN E. REDKNAP

*Draughtsman, Works and Services*

D. K. CAMPBELL

*Superintendent of Horticulture*

A. PALMER, NCH, DipHort Hert.Inst.Hort.

*Assistant Superintendent of Horticulture*

JOHN P. ADAM, DipHort Dip P &amp; R Cant.

*University Custodian*

JOHN D. CLARK

*Deputy University Custodian*

L. W. TYRER

---

## APPLIED RESEARCH OFFICE

*Executive Officer*

JOHN P. BLAKELEY, ME Cant., MS Ill., CEng, MICE, FIPENZ

*Programme Manager**Project Officer*

NIEL C. GEDGE, BA

---

## WELFARE SERVICES

*Director of Welfare Services**Medical Director of the Student Health Service**Nursing Sister*

ANNETTE K. FAHY, NZRN

*Head of the Counselling Service*

D. W. SIMPSON, BA Cant., MA Well., DipEd Psych

*Counsellors*

P. CLAIRE CARTWRIGHT, MA DipClinPsych

SANDRA NEVEZ, BA Well., MA DipClinPsych

*Adviser to Overseas Students*

B. R. LYTHER, MA

*Mediator in Harassment Procedures*

\*KELLY GROVEHILLS

*Maclaurin Chaplain to the University*

R. J. GALVIN, BD Otago, BE

*National Council of Churches Chaplain to the University*

J. M. KER, BA BD N.Z.

*Roman Catholic Chaplains*

TERESA ROUGHAN (Sr), OP

CLARE CONAGLEN (Sr.), RSJ

MICHAEL SHIRRES (RevFr.), OP

*Disabled Students Resource Officer*

JOHN LAMBERT

*Physical Recreation Officer*

S. C. HOLLINGS, DipPE Madeley Coll., Keele

*Gymnasium Supervisor*

L. T. HADFIELD

**LIAISON OFFICE***Liaison Officer with Secondary Schools*

ROSS A. SPURDLE, DipEd Cant., MA

*Deputy Liaison Officer*

CHRISTINE M. HAMMETT (Mrs) BSc S'ton

*Maori and Pacific Islands Liaison Officer*

TAIMIHINGA S. POTAKA (Mrs), BA

**CAREERS ADVISORY SERVICE***Careers Adviser*

W. GUY NASH, ANZIM, ANZIPM

**HIGHER EDUCATION RESEARCH***Higher Education Research Officer*

JOHN JONES, BSc PhD Wales, MA Malawi

**COMPUTER CENTRE***Director*

1971 J. C. B. WHITE, MSc N.Z., PhD A.N.U.

*Assistant Director*

1971 J. N. BROWNLEE, MSc PhD, MIEEE, MNZIP

*Operations Manager*

J. D. LUFF

*Senior Computer Programmers*

A. R. ANDERSON, BSc A.N.U., DipCompSc W'gong, DipEd Monash

A. J. BLENNERHASSETT BSc MPhil

R. J. FULTON BSc DipComp Maths

S. J. C. HARENAPE, BSc

R. W. L. MARTIN BSc A.N.U.

G. E. PETERSON, MSc Lond.

J. R. POWELL

H. A. ROSS, BSc York (Can.), MSc Brock, PhD Dal.

**STUDENT UNION***Manager*

M. H. McNAMARA (Ms), BA Cant.

*Director (Maidment Arts Centre)**Theatre Administrator (Maidment Arts Centre)*

P. A. SHEEHAN (Ms), Dip Drama

---

# General Statutes and Regulations

## *Contents*

---

56	Admission Regulations
58	Preparatory Application Regulations
59	Enrolment and Course (General) Regulations
70	Limitation of Entry Statute 1985
70	Enrolment Limitations
72	Enrolment 1988
73	Preparatory Enrolment
76	Enrolment Timetable 1988
78	Extramural Enrolment Statute
79	Extramural Enrolment Regulations
79	Examination Regulations
85	Conferring of Degrees and Academic Dress Regulations
86	Award of Honorary Degrees Regulations
86	Fees Regulations
89	Discipline
89	Disciplinary Regulations
92	The Library
96	Arms of the University

---

## GENERAL STATUTES AND REGULATIONS

### ADMISSION REGULATIONS

#### Prerequisites and conditions

1. Subject to the Council's statutory powers to decline enrolment (whether for insufficiency of accommodation or of teachers or for other cause) and to Regulation 2, a person is qualified to matriculate (that is, to be admitted to the University and placed on its books as a student) if that person has been granted –

- (a) the University Entrance qualification by the New Zealand Universities Entrance Board either by accrediting or examination; or
- (b) admission by the New Zealand Universities Entrance Board at the Standard of the University Entrance examination (see Notes (i) and (ii) below), or
- (c) admission by the University Council at its discretion at a standard to be determined in respect of work done in any other University or other place of learning substantially corresponding or equivalent to courses taught at the University of Auckland (see Admission Ad Eundem Statum), or
- (d) admission by the University Council under Regulation 7; or
- (e) special admission; or
- (f) provisional entrance by the New Zealand Universities Entrance Board.

**\*Notes:** (i) Overseas students not previously enrolled at a university who are seeking admission to New Zealand Universities at entrance level are required to apply for a place, and for recognition of overseas educational qualifications, to: The Secretary, Overseas Students Admissions Committee, P.O. Box 12348, Wellington North, New Zealand.

(ii) New Zealand students and others who are ordinarily resident in New Zealand who have obtained University Entrance qualifications for countries outside New Zealand and who seek admission to New Zealand Universities at entrance level must apply for recognition of their qualifications to: The Secretary, Universities Entrance Board, P.O. Box 12348, Wellington North, New Zealand.

2. (a) Save with the permission of the Senate, a person who

- (i) has not reached the age of 16 years, by the 31st of December of the year preceding that in which admission is sought; or
- (ii) is on the books of another University; or
- (iii) is enrolled for full-time instruction in a secondary school, area school or technical institute shall not matriculate or be eligible to be on the books of the University.

(b) The Senate's permission in relation to paragraph (a)(i) of this Regulation shall be granted only in exceptional circumstances.

**Note:** to paragraph (2) Approval has been given for Auckland College of Education, physical education and music students enrolled at Massey University for BEd to be enrolled in the same year in approved courses at the University of Auckland.

3. A person seeking to matriculate shall comply with the Preparatory Application Regulations.

#### Matriculation

4. At matriculation (that is, on admission to the University) every student shall make the following declaration: 'I promise to obey the Statutes, Regulations and requirements of the University of Auckland.'

#### 5. Personal Interest Course – Non-Matriculated Students

there are two categories:

- (a) Examining
- (b) Non-Examining
- (a) Examining:

(i) a person who has a personal interest in a paper or papers but is ineligible to matriculate may make application in accordance with the Preparatory Application Regulations and subject to Senate approval may enrol in a paper or papers and sit the University Examinations.

(ii) A student who passes a paper in which he or she is enrolled under (i) above and who subsequently matriculates may have such a paper credited towards a degree or diploma provided that all the necessary conditions for such a degree or diploma (other than matriculated status) were fulfilled at the time that paper was passed.

**Note:** (i) Applications must be made on the Preparatory Application Form and submitted with a prescribed fee of \$27.50 to the Registrar not later than 15 January, or in a case where pre-enrolment is required for a course or paper, by the date set by the Council for pre-enrolment in that course or paper.

(ii) Under the Fees Regulations a late application may be received with a late fee of \$22 after 15 January and not later than 15 February.

(iii) On payment of a fine of \$22 in addition to the prescribed fee and late fee an application made after 15 February may be considered.

**(b) Non Examining:**

(i) A person who has a personal interest in a paper or papers but who is ineligible to matriculate may with the approval of the Head of the Department concerned enrol in the paper or papers on condition that the person complies with the preparatory Application Regulations, and all Regulations governing enrolment.

(ii) A student in this category may not take any university examinations.

**Note:** Approval will not normally be granted to courses or papers with restricted entry, i.e. those requiring application for a place.

**Admission ad eundem statum**

**Note:** For students applying to transfer to this University from another university, the Council pursuant to S24 of the University of Auckland Act 1961

(a) may grant admission with credits and exemptions for papers towards the course for a Bachelor's Degree or a diploma for work which in the opinion of the Senate is substantially corresponding or equivalent

(b) may grant admission to the status of a degree holder or diploma holder with the right to proceed to a specific higher degree or diploma with or without Honours.

Credits may be specified or unspecified and the grant of admission may include permission to advance in specified subjects.

Prerequisites may be prescribed as a condition of the approval to proceed to a higher degree or diploma.

**Students from another University in New Zealand**

6. A student from another University in New Zealand who wishes to transfer or be admitted to the University of Auckland

(a) Shall do so in accordance with the Preparatory Application Regulations;

(b) Shall be granted admission only if in the opinion of the Senate there are compelling circumstances for transfer to this University.

**Students from an overseas University**

7. (a) A person ordinarily resident overseas who holds a degree or other qualification from an overseas University may apply for admission to graduate status by completing the prescribed form and submitting it with the prescribed fee to the Registrar not later than 30 November.

(b) A person ordinarily resident in New Zealand who holds a degree or other qualification from, or has partly qualified in an overseas University may apply for admission at the appropriate level by completing the prescribed form and delivering it with the prescribed fee to the Registrar not later than 15 January in the year of the intended enrolment.

**Note:** A student wishing to enrol in a course or paper requiring pre-enrolment must comply with the Preparatory Application Regulations — i.e. submit their application by the date set by Council for pre-enrolment in that course or paper, even if it's earlier than the date indicated in (a) and (b) above.

8. All applications under Regulation 6 and 7 shall be accompanied or supplemented by such evidence as the Senate may require as to:

(i) identity

(ii) academic standing, and

(iii) any degree or diploma obtained by the applicant from another University.

**Special Admission**

9. A person who does not hold a University entrance qualification but who has attained the age of twenty-one years by 31 December in the year preceding that for which application is made may be granted special admission to any course of study. The Senate may waive that age requirement where the applicant is in its opinion otherwise fit to be admitted and in particular has

(a) satisfied any qualification for admission specified in the regulations for that course of study; or

(b) completed two years of study at a Teachers College and attained a sufficient standard therein; or

(c) passed School Certificate and attained the age of 16 years by 31 December in the year before enrolment, where granted a place in the course for the Diploma in Music; or

(d) obtained any other qualification approved by the Senate.

10. A student granted Special admission may enrol only for papers or subjects for the course of study for which admission is granted.

11. (a) Special admission becomes normal admission when the student

(i) having been admitted direct to a Professional Examination in Architecture, Engineering or Fine Arts has qualified to proceed to the next Professional Year, or

(ii) having been admitted to any course of study has passed an equivalent full-time course approved for a particular course of study.

(b) When a student has qualified for normal admission the student may enrol in any course of study subject to any requirements for enrolment in that course.

12. A person seeking special admission to the University shall apply for it in accordance with the Preparatory Application regulations, submit evidence of age and educational qualifications, and pay the prescribed fees.

**Notes:** (i) If candidates are under the age of 25, they will generally be advised by the Senate to undertake some preliminary studies unless their applications show professional or technical qualifications such as nurses, mariners or air pilots certificates.

(ii) Closing date for applications for Special Admission is 15 January (except: DipG&O – 1 March or 1 September; DipObst – 1 May or 1 November; DipPaed – 1 October).

(iii) On payment of a late fee of \$22 an application for any course of study (except DipG&O, DipObst and DipPaed) may be considered if it is made not later than 15 February.

(iv) On payment of a fine of \$22 in addition to the prescribed fees and late fee subject to the permission of the Senate, an application made after 15 February may be considered.

(v) In courses such as DipBIA, or in Fine Arts, where practical qualifications may receive merit classification, students should apply for a place on the appropriate enrolment form and if they are offered a conditional place they should then apply for Special admission where this is required.

### **Provisional Entrance**

**Notes:** 1. Under the University Entrance Qualification Regulations 1985 of the Universities Entrance Board a person who does not hold a University Entrance qualification and has not reached the age to apply for Special Admission may be granted Provisional Entrance to any Course of Study if that person (a) has reached the age of 16 years by 31 December of the year preceding that in which admission is sought (b) (i) has been awarded in the year in which application is made sixth form certificate in one or more subjects OR (ii) has gained a University Entrance credit in at least one subject under Regulation 10 of the Universities Entrance Regulations 1962. For full details refer to the University Grants Committee Handbook.

2. The entrance qualification shall cease to be provisional when the student has been issued with a certificate from the Universities Entrance Board.

**Notes:** The Universities Entrance Board will issue a certificate when the student has satisfactorily completed one year's full-time study or its equivalent.

3. (a) While the entrance qualification remains provisional a student may enrol only for papers or subjects of the Course of Study for which permission is granted.

(b) When the entrance qualification ceases to be provisional the student may enrol for any other Course of Study subject to any requirement for enrolment in that course.

4. A person seeking Provisional Entrance to University shall apply on the form provided by the Universities Entrance Board.

**Notes:** (i) Closing date for applications for Provisional Entrance is 17 November of the year preceding that in which admission is sought.

(ii) The fee prescribed by the Universities Entrance Board is \$55 (including GST).

(iii) No late applications will be considered.

## **PREPARATORY APPLICATION REGULATIONS**

1. Every person intending to enrol or to re-enrol in the University who comes within any of the categories described in Regulation 2 and 5 of the Admission Regulations shall give notice of that intention by completing the Preparatory Application Form and submitting it to the Registrar –

(i) By 15 January in the year of intended enrolment, or

(ii) In a case where pre-enrolment is required in any course or paper, by the date set by the Council for pre-enrolment in that course or paper.

2. The categories referred to in Regulation 1 are:

(a) Persons seeking to enrol as first year students (including those seeking Special admission) who are eligible to enrol at the University of Auckland and who have never previously enrolled at a University.

(b) Students whose last previous enrolment was at a University in New Zealand.

(c) Students who (having failed to make satisfactory academic progress) need the permission of the Senate (under the Exclusion Regulations) to enrol.

(d) Students who (wishing to enrol for any course of study or paper where entry is restricted) are required to pre-enrol (see Pre-enrolment Regulations).

(e) Persons seeking to enrol who are ineligible to matriculate.

3. Fees, as appropriate, must accompany the completed form.

**Note:** Special Admission Personal Interest Course – Non matriculated students (Examining) fee – \$27.50. Exclusion – \$22. First year students (unless special or personal interest course [examining]), pre-enrolment and transfer applications pay no deposit (fees are payable at enrolment). Late applications of the Preparatory Application Form from any of the categories above will be received on payment of a late fee of \$22; but if the application is for or includes pre-enrolment with a closing date of 15 January the pre-enrolment or the pre-enrolment section of the form will not (other than in exceptional circumstances) be accepted after 22 January. A fine of \$22, in addition to the prescribed late fee is payable on any application for Transfer, Special Admission, Personal Interest Course, Non-matriculated Students (Examining) and Exclusion made after 15 February.

## ENROLMENT AND COURSE REGULATIONS (GENERAL)

### Dates of Terms

1. (a) There shall be in each year three terms. The first term shall begin on the first Monday after 25 February and shall end on the Saturday preceding the 19th Monday of the calendar year. The second term shall begin on the 22nd Monday of the calendar year and shall end on the Saturday of the 11th week thereafter. The third term shall begin on the 36th Monday of the calendar year and shall end on 31 October of each year. The Easter recess shall extend from Good Friday to the Tuesday of Easter week, both days inclusive. The mid-term break during the second term shall consist of the whole of the 6th week.
- (b) For the purpose of the holding of such examinations as may be required at the conclusion of the University year, lectures and laboratory courses shall normally cease about the end of the fifth week of the third term in each year.
- (c) Lecture and laboratory courses in Engineering shall be suspended for the fourth and fifth weeks of the second term and shall end in the seventh week of the third term.

### General Course Provisions

2. (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations and to the express provisions of any other regulations every candidate for a degree, diploma or certificate course shall be required to
  - (i) be a matriculated student of the University;
  - (ii) follow the prescribed Course of Study in the order prescribed or indicated in accordance with the regulations governing the Course;
  - (iii) carry out the prescribed practical work (if any);
  - (iv) comply with the provisions of the Examination Regulations;
  - (v) pass the prescribed examinations.
- (b) The personal Course of Study of every student shall require the approval of the Senate provided that
  - (i) the Senate may delegate to the Dean of the Faculty within which the student is enrolled the power to give such approval;
  - (ii) the Senate may in exceptional circumstances approve a personal Course of Study which does not in every particular satisfy the regulations for the degree or diploma for which the student is enrolled;
  - (iii) Any person who produces evidence to the satisfaction of the Senate of inability to attend classes and who wishes to take any paper or papers the equivalent of which is not available by extramural enrolment at Massey University may in exceptional circumstances be permitted to enrol at the University of Auckland with such dispensations and upon such conditions as the Senate thinks fit;
  - (iv) where approval of a personal Course of Study has been withheld by a decision of the Dean acting under delegation of that power the student may appeal to the Senate against that decision;
  - (v) where options are prescribed for a Course of Study the Senate may at its discretion determine which of them shall be available in any year: provided always that sufficient options shall be available to enable a candidate to complete his Course.
- (c) Where in the opinion of a Head of Department an insufficient number has enrolled for a paper taught in the Department or there are insufficient staff to teach it, that Head of Department may, with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty, withdraw that paper for the current year within one week of the beginning of the first Term, if the essential prerequisites for any candidate's course of study are not thereby affected. No candidate shall be charged a fee for any change of course required because of the withdrawal of a paper.
- (d) In relation to the time limit for the presentation of a dissertation, original investigation, or thesis, 'academic year' shall in these and all other regulations of the University, unless the context requires otherwise, mean the period from the first day of March in one calendar year to the last day of February in the calendar year next following.
- (e) Except (i) as provided in the Extramural Enrolment Statute 1962 and the Extramural Enrolment Regulations and (ii) otherwise with the special permission of the Senate, no student shall enrol or continue to be enrolled at the University of Auckland while enrolled at any other university or university college.

### Eligibility to Enrol

3. (a) Students entitled to enrol at the University of Auckland subject to places being available, and who otherwise fulfil the eligibility requirements shall include
    - (i) those previously enrolled whose official record remains at this University;
    - (ii) those living in the area defined in the Appendix of these Regulations who wish to enrol for the first time at a university in a course of study in the Faculties of Arts (including the Course for the Diploma in Education but excluding other Diploma Courses);
- Commerce

Law, for the Intermediate Examination

Music, for the Degree of Bachelor of Music

Science (including the subjects of the Architecture and Engineering Intermediate Examinations but excluding the Course for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry);

(iii) those living in New Zealand south of the area defined in the Appendix of these Regulations who wish to enrol for the first time at a university in a Course of Study approved for the purposes of this subclause by the Senate.

Each student shall be subject in enrolment to any restrictions or conditions imposed by the Senate or by the Faculty or Faculties in which he or she enrolls.

**Note:** Compliance with the Preparatory Application Regulations is necessary for the categories of students to whom those Regulations apply (e.g. where pre-enrolment is required).

(b) Students who may be permitted by the Senate to enrol at the University of Auckland, subject to places being available, and who otherwise fulfil the eligibility requirements shall include

(i) those who wish to enrol for the first time in a Course of Study in the Faculty of Architecture, Property and Planning, for the Professional Examinations, or Engineering, for the Professional Examinations, Fine Arts, Medicine and Human Biology, Music for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance), Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours, Diploma in Music or Diploma in Music with Honours;

Science for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry or for the following Diploma Courses: Broadcast Communication, Business and Industrial Administration, Business, Clinical Psychology, Commerce, Criminology, Drama, Educational Psychology, English Language Teaching, Geothermal Energy Technology, Guidance and Counselling, Gynaecology and Obstetrics, Local Government and Administration, Mathematical Education, Obstetrics, Paediatrics, Social Research, Statistics, Town Planning;

(ii) those who wish to enrol at a university for the first time and are not entitled to enrol under subclauses (ii) and (iii) of Regulation 3 (a) of these Regulations;

(iii) those who have failed to make satisfactory academic progress in their University studies or have been excluded from the University under Regulation 10 of these Regulations;

(iv) those transferring from another university in New Zealand who satisfy the Senate as required by the Admission Regulations that there are compelling reasons for their transfer;

(v) those who wish to enrol to complete the Course requirements of another university in New Zealand;

(vi) those overseas students granted Admission *Ad Eundem Statum* with credits; or

(vii) those overseas students selected for admission at entrance level.

Each student permitted to enrol shall be subject in enrolment to any restrictions or conditions imposed by the Senate or by the Faculty or Faculties in which he or she enrolls.

**Note:** Compliance with the Preparatory Application Regulations is necessary for the categories of students to whom those Regulations apply (e.g. where pre-enrolment is required).

### **Enrolment**

4.(a) Every internal student shall enrol at the university in person before the beginning of the first term in accordance with the detailed enrolment timetable published in this *Calendar*; provided that where a student is, by reason of illness or of any exceptional circumstances beyond his control, unable to enrol in due time, he may with the permission of the Senate enrol late without penalty if he

(i) applies for that permission on or before 31 January, or as soon as reasonably possible in any case where it is after that date the student becomes ill or the exceptional circumstances arise; and

(ii) produces with his application a medical certificate or reasonable evidence of the exceptional circumstances relied upon.

(b) Students whose dissertations, original investigations, or theses for a degree, or diploma, are incomplete shall be required to re-enrol at the beginning of each academic year until the dissertation, original investigation, or thesis is presented.

(c) (i) Candidates for the Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics must complete a formal enrolment and pay the prescribed fees not later than 1 March for the June examination or 1 September for the December examination.

(ii) Candidates for the Diploma in Obstetrics must complete a formal enrolment and pay the prescribed fees not later than 1 March for the June examination or 1 September for the December examination.

(iii) Candidates for the Diploma in Paediatrics must complete a formal enrolment and pay the prescribed fees not later than 1 October or such date as approved by the Senate.

(iv) Candidates for the final year of the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery must complete a formal enrolment and pay the prescribed fees not later than 15 November or such date as approved by the Senate for the commencement of the Trainee Internship year.

(d) Extramural students shall enrol in accordance with the provision of the Extramural Enrolment Statute and Regulations.



(e) A student who has applied for Ad Eundem Statum Admission, or Special Admission to be eligible to matriculate, and who has not received a decision before the beginning of enrolment week, shall enrol and pay fees as if his application had been granted. If his application is refused he shall be admitted as a non-matriculated student to lectures and laboratories only; provided that his enrolment may be cancelled and his fees fully refunded if within fourteen days of the posting to him of notice of refusal he lodges at the Registry an appropriately completed 'Alteration to Course' form.

(f) A student who is enrolled at another University in New Zealand and who wishes to enrol at the University of Auckland shall submit to the Registrar an application to transfer on the prescribed form not later than 15 January in the year in which he wishes to enrol, provided that a late application may be accepted only with the permission of the Senate and on payment of a fee of \$22.

### Exceptions

5. (a) No student shall be enrolled in the same year for more than two distinct Courses of Study for degrees and diplomas. A student enrolling for two such Courses of Study shall be permitted to sit for examination in only two papers or their equivalent more than the maximum allowed in either Course of Study.

(b) (i) No student shall be enrolled in the same year for papers the content of which is substantially similar.

(ii) No student shall be enrolled in any paper already credited to a Course of Study or in any paper the content of which is substantially similar to any paper for which credit has been received provided that in exceptional circumstances the Senate may permit such enrolment for Certificate of Proficiency.

(iii) For the purposes of sub-paragraphs (i) and (ii) above substantially similar papers are not limited to those that are specifically restricted under any regulations for a Course of Study.

(c) Subject to the provisions of the Regulations for any degree or diploma no student shall be enrolled in two stages of a subject in the same year, provided that the Senate may waive this requirement in the case of a student of proven merit.

(d) Any student who has twice enrolled for, but had failed to be credited with a pass in an optional paper or subject shall not be entitled to enrol again for that paper or subject without the prior permission of the Head of Department in which it is taught.

(e) Students who satisfy the Senate that they are unable to attend the full Course of Study for which they are enrolled may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department concerned, be granted partial exemption from lectures.

6. (a) Each student (except for DipG&O, DipObst, DipPaed, or for final year MBChB) shall enrol on the appropriate day and morning or afternoon as set out in the enrolment timetables. Provided that on payment of the prescribed late fee and penalties as Senate may in its discretion impose an enrolment may be accepted after the day prescribed but in no case shall

(i) a student whose home is outside New Zealand be accepted later than the commencement of the second week of lectures, or

(ii) a student permanently resident in New Zealand be accepted later than 31 March, or

(iii) a student be accepted for enrolment in a laboratory subject (including the subject Studio in the Faculty of Architecture, Property and Planning and Faculty of Fine Arts) and any subject prescribed for the First, Second or Third Law Examination for LLB or LLB (Hons) Degree or for the Law Professional Examination and any paper in the Faculty of Engineering except with the special permission of the Senate.

**Notes:** (i) A late fee of \$22 is prescribed.

(ii) Where enrolment is applied for after the end of the first week of term an additional fine of \$4.40 is payable for each week or part of a week after the first week of term by which the application to enrol has been delayed.

(b) Each student for the Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics or the Diploma in Obstetrics shall enrol not later than 1 March for the June examination or 1 September for the December examination in that year.

**Note:** On payment of a fine of \$4.40 for each week or part of a week after 1 March or 1 September a late application to enrol may be considered.

(c) Each student for the Diploma in Paediatrics shall enrol by 1 October or such later date as approved by the Senate.

**Note:** On payment of a fine of \$4.40 for each week or part of a week after 1 October a late application may be considered.

(d) Each student for the final year for the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery shall enrol by 15 November or such later date as approved by the Senate.

**Note:** On payment of a fine of \$4.40 for each week or part of a week after 15 November a late application may be considered.

### Choice of Course of Study

(e) The Courses of Study of those enrolled after the date prescribed will be determined by the Senate and will not necessarily conform with those proposed by the students concerned. In determining such Courses, the Senate will have regard to the prior claims upon both laboratory and classroom space of those students who have enrolled at the approved time.

### PhD Enrolments

(f) The provisions of this Regulation do not apply to enrolments for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

**Payment of Fees**

7. (a) All fees that cannot be claimed under a study grant or bursary shall be paid in full at enrolment, provided that the Registrar or his deputy may, in exceptional circumstances grant an extension of time for the payment of fees.

(b) A charge of \$10 shall be paid with any application to defer payment of fees provided that the Registrar or his deputy may at his discretion waive payment of this charge.

(c) In any case where fees remain unpaid, a student shall not be entitled to have his record transferred to another University or to sit the final examination.

**Note:** A student who is unable to pay fees at enrolment must interview the Registrar or his deputy and complete an agreement regarding payment. Extension of time for payment of fees is not granted as a matter of course but only in exceptional circumstances.

**Alterations to Course of Study****8. (a) Additions, or Deletions of Papers and Subjects**

A student who having completed enrolment wishes to alter the Course of Study may apply to the Senate upon the conditions in the schedule of this Regulation for permission to add or delete, from any paper or subject. Any application made after the commencement of the first term in each year shall be submitted to the Registry on the appropriate form with the prescribed fees.

**Notes:** (i) It is not sufficient to notify a change of course of study solely to a Department. An "Application to Alter Course" form must be handed in at the Registry.

(ii) The prescribed fee is \$11

(iii) On payment of a late fee of \$4.40 for each week or part of a week a late addition (but not a late deletion) may be considered.

**Schedule**

Applications for Additions, Deletions and Substitutions of papers and subjects must be handed in at the Registry not later than the date prescribed below:

Faculties of Architecture Property and Planning, Commerce, Fine Arts, Law, Medicine (except DipG&O, DipObst, DipPaed and final year for MBChB), and Science	<b>ADDITIONS</b> The Monday of the third week of lectures in the paper(s) concerned. <b>DELETIONS</b> 31 March OR for papers commencing after the beginning of the academic year: the Monday of the third week of lectures in the paper(s) concerned. <b>SUBSTITUTIONS</b> Masters courses: 31 March
Faculties of Arts and Music	<b>ADDITIONS</b> Papers in Geography, Mathematics, Psychology and from Group B of the BA Regulations and papers commencing after the beginning of the academic year: The Monday of the third week of lectures in the paper(s) concerned. All other papers: 31 March <b>DELETIONS</b> 31 March OR for papers commencing after the beginning of the academic year: the Monday of the third week of lectures in the paper(s) concerned.
Faculty of Engineering	Intermediate and papers in other Faculties — refer appropriate Faculty. <b>ADDITIONS</b> The first Friday after the commencement of lectures in the paper(s) concerned. <b>DELETIONS</b> 31 March for full -year and first half-year papers and 8 August for second half-year papers. <b>SUBSTITUTIONS</b> Masters courses: 30 April
DipG&O and DipObst	<b>DELETIONS</b> 1 April for June examinations or 1 October for December examinations.

DipPaed

## DELETIONS

1 November

Final year for MBChB

## DELETIONS

15 December in the year of enrolment

**Notes: Deletions after Prescribed date:** (i) A student ceasing to take a paper after the prescribed date for deletion is strongly advised to notify the Registrar as soon as possible but not later than three weeks before lectures for the paper finish. (A 'Ceased Lectures Form' is available at the enquiries counter at the Registry for this purpose).

(ii) Where a student ceased lectures as under (i) above the following will apply: (a) the academic record will show the date of notification against the paper concerned (eg 'withdrew May') (b) for exclusion purposes the paper will be treated as a 'year of academic studies' (c) for tertiary grants purposes the paper will be treated as a failure. (d) for selection in a restricted course/paper there is no overall policy. It is important therefore to ask the Dean of the Faculty or the Head of Department concerned for information in this respect. (iii) A student should refer to Regulation 8(c)(2)(ii) of the Examination Regulations if the reason for ceasing to take a paper is illness or injury, or any exceptional circumstances beyond his or her control.

*Fees**(b) Payment of Additional Fees or Late Fees*

Any additional tuition fees and all late fees shall be paid at the time of the lodging of the application.

*(c) Refund of Fees*

(i) Where a candidate applies under paragraph (a) of this Regulation and within the appropriate time limit

(1) to delete all the papers for which he or she is enrolled, he or she shall receive a full refund of all tuition fees, and of the Students' Association Fee and Welfare Fee.

(2) to delete paper(s) but not all the papers for which he or she is enrolled or to substitute a paper for which a lesser fee is prescribed, he or she shall receive a refund of the difference between the total fees paid and the total due.

(ii) Where a student for reasons of illness or any exceptional circumstances beyond his or her control makes a late application for deletion, the Senate may in its absolute discretion grant a partial refund of tuition fees, but in no case of the Students' Association Fee and Welfare Fee.

**Note:** Students who have their tuition fees paid under University Scholarships, Fees Grants or Bursaries, Government Study Awards, Training College Bursaries, Secondary Teachers' Studentships, or Bilateral Aid Programme should note that if they do not comply with the Regulations relating to 'Alterations to Course of Study' they may prejudice their scholarship or bursary in a future year.

**Non-Matriculated Students**

9. Admission to lectures or laboratories may be granted to non-matriculated students provided they comply with all other Regulations governing admission. The Council may from time to time restrict entry of non-matriculated students to one or more subjects by reason of shortage of accommodation or other special circumstances.

**Note:** A non-matriculated student may not enter for any degree, diploma, or certificate of proficiency examinations as he is unable to comply with the course Regulations.

**Exclusion for failure to make satisfactory academic progress in a Course of Study as a whole**

10. (1) In this Regulation and the schedule to it: 'unsatisfactory student' (i) means a student who has made insufficient academic progress in that he has failed to the extent described opposite the name of that Faculty, in the right hand column of the Schedule to this Regulation, in any Course of Study there specified; (ii) includes any student who fails to comply with conditions of enrolment imposed under clause (5) of this Regulation. In the case of any student, a 'year of academic studies' means a year in which he is enrolled and has not withdrawn enrolment by the prescribed dates.

(2)(a) No unsatisfactory student may enrol at the University without the prior permission of the Senate.

(b) This clause of this Regulation does not apply to a student

(i) enrolling to complete Case Studies, Dissertation, Original Investigation or Thesis for any degree or diploma, or

(ii) enrolling for further study within the two years next following the completion of a degree or diploma or for a prerequisite for a Master's Degree or postgraduate diploma, provided that if a student has previously enrolled for a further course or courses of study over the last two years the conditions under Regulation II will apply, or (iii) enrolling for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

(3) No student may enrol in the University, without the prior permission of the Senate,

(a) who has been excluded from any university on the ground that he has failed to make sufficient academic progress; or

(b) who wishes to transfer to this university from another university under the Regulations of which he requires special permission to enrol having failed to make sufficient academic progress.

(4) Application for permission to enrol under paragraph (2) or paragraph (3) of this Regulation shall be made in accordance with the Preparatory Application Regulations.

**Note:** (i) Applications must be made on the Preparatory Application Form and submitted with the prescribed fee of \$22 to the Registrar not later than 15 January, or in a case where pre-enrolment is required for a course or paper, by the date set by Council for pre-enrolment in that course or paper.

(ii) Under the Fees Regulations a late application may be received with a late fee of \$22 after 15 January and not later than 15 February.

(iii) On payment of a fine of \$22 in addition to the prescribed fee and late fee an application made after 15 February may be considered.

(5) In granting a student permission to enrol under clause (2) or clause (3) of this Regulation, the Senate may impose on the student such conditions as it thinks fit:

(a) in relation to the minimum academic progress he must make in the year of enrolment (so as to be entitled to enrol in the next year without application under this Regulation);

(b) otherwise in relation to his future Course of Study.

(6) (a) Any student

(i) to whom the Senate refuses permission to enrol under clause (2) or clause (3) of this Regulation; or (ii) who objects to any condition of enrolment imposed by the Senate under clause (5); may within 14 days appeal to the Council against the refusal or imposition.

(b) A student who has appealed in accordance with this Regulation may pending the outcome be permitted by Senate provisionally to enrol in the same year in a Faculty other than the one in respect of which the appeal is being undertaken, and should the Council confirm the Senate's refusal to enrol the student in the course in respect of which an appeal is undertaken, Senate may make that provisional enrolment definite.

(c) In the event that Council confirms the Senate's refusal to enrol the student in the course in respect of which an appeal is undertaken, Senate may nevertheless readmit the student to that course in a subsequent year, provided that the student has by study or other activity in the interim shown to the satisfaction of Senate that there is a reasonable chance of academic success at the University.

(7) This regulation is subject to Regulation 11 and 12 of these Regulations.

### Schedule

Faculties of Architecture Property and Planning, Arts, Engineering, Law, Music and Science	Any Course of Study: any student who has, over the last two years of his academic studies, failed to pass the equivalent of one year's full-time Course of Study.
Faculty of Commerce	Bachelor of Commerce: any student who after one year has failed to pass three or more papers for Part I; any student who after two years has failed to complete the requirements for Part I; any other student who has, over the last two years of his academic studies, failed to pass the equivalent of one year's full-time Course of Study. Any Course of Study: any student who has, over the last two years of his academic studies, failed to pass the equivalent of one year's full-time Course of Study.
Faculty of Fine Arts	A Course of Study arranged in Professional Years: any student who has failed all the papers of a Professional Examination or has, over the last two years of his academic studies, failed to complete all the papers of a Professional Examination. A Course of Study not arranged in Professional Years: any student who has over the last two years of his academic studies, failed to pass in the equivalent of one year's full-time course.
Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology	Bachelor of Human Biology: any student who on two occasions has failed Part I as a whole; any student who on two occasions has failed to pass Part II as a whole, or on two occasions has failed to pass Part III as a whole; any student who has failed to pass any two parts of the course as a whole. Any other Course of Study: any student who has failed his previous year of academic study as a whole.

**Note:** A full-time Course of Study is as defined in the Scholarships, Tertiary Assistance Grants and Awards Section.

### Students who have enrolled in two or more Courses of Study

11. Notwithstanding anything in the Schedule or Regulation 10 or in Regulation 12 of these Regulations

- (a) a student who has enrolled for two or more courses will require the prior permission of Senate to enrol for any course at the University if that student has over the last two years of academic studies failed to pass the equivalent of one year's full-time Course of Study or if part-time at least half of the papers enrolled for;
- (b) a student who has enrolled for two or more courses will require the prior permission of Senate to enrol for any Course of Study in which that student has over the last two years of academic studies failed to pass at least half of the papers enrolled for.

### Application of Foregoing Regulation to Students who have been Enrolled Part-time

12. Regulation 10 of these Regulations shall not apply to a student who, over the last two years of his academic studies, has been enrolled in this University part-time for a Course of Study and has passed at least half of the paper or subjects for which he was so enrolled.

### Cross Credits

13(a) In this Regulation, cross-credits means papers of subjects which:

- (i) are common to two or more Courses of Study;
  - (ii) have been passed by a candidate for the purpose of one of those Courses of Study; and
  - (iii) that the candidate desires to transfer to another of those Courses of Study.
- (b) A candidate may, on payment of the prescribed fees under the Fees Regulations, transfer to the Course of Study for any degree or diploma named or referred to in the left hand column of the Schedule to this regulation cross-credits as shown opposite the degree or diploma so named or referred to in the right hand column of that Schedule (subject to any other provisions of this regulation).
- (c) No Stage III paper that fulfils the Stage III requirements of a Course of Study may be cross-credited to meet the Stage III requirement of another Course of Study.  
e.g. Stage III Maths credits passed as the only Stage III credits for BSc, could not be credited to BA unless three other Stage III papers were passed for the BA Course of Study.
- (d) No candidate may transfer as a cross-credit any paper or subject passed with a conceded pass or restricted pass; and if that paper or subject is compulsory any other paper or subject may be substituted for it as the Senate may approve.
- (e) No candidate may transfer as a cross-credit any paper or subject already so transferred under this Regulation.
- (f) In any case where an application for the transfer of cross-credits
- (i) is not otherwise covered by this Regulation or not covered by special provisions made elsewhere in the Regulations of the University or
  - (ii) is subject to any doubt or difficulty in the interpretation of these or any other Regulations of the University – the Vice-Chancellor may approve any such transfer of credit, or give any such direction in relation to the application, as he thinks fit.

### Schedule

#### Architecture Property and Planning

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (i) Degree of Bachelor of Architecture             | The papers or subjects of the Intermediate Examination |
| (ii) Degree of Bachelor of Property Administration | The papers or subjects of the Intermediate Examination |
| (iii) Degree of Bachelor of Planning               | The papers or subjects of the Intermediate Examination |

#### Arts

- |                                |                             |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (v) Degree of Bachelor of Arts | Not more than seven papers. |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|

#### Commerce

- |                                     |                             |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (vi) Degree of Bachelor of Commerce | Not more than eight papers. |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|

## Schedule

**Music**

(vii) Degree of Bachelor of Music	Not more than seven papers.
(viii) Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)	Not more than seven papers.

**Science**

(ix) Degree of Bachelor of Science	Not more than 36 credits.
(x) Degree of Bachelor of Optometry	Not more than 48 credits.

**Other Degrees and Diplomas**

(xi) Any Bachelors degree other than those named above	Not more than six papers or three subjects.
(xii) Any diploma other than those named above and other than the Diploma in Town Planning	Not more than one-third of the paper requirements of the diploma.

**Notes:**(i) In the case of Master's degrees no cross-credits are available, except where the course Regulations so provide.

(ii) A student taking two Courses of Study may be permitted to transfer as cross-credits no more than the maximum allowed for one Course or the other but not for both.

**Credit**

14(a) A candidate may with the approval of the Senate and on payment of the prescribed fees under the Fees Regulations be granted towards a degree or diploma named or referred to in the left-hand column of the Schedule to this Regulation, credit not exceeding that shown opposite the degree or diploma so named or referred to, in the right-hand column of that Schedule.

(b) No candidate may be granted credit for work already so credited under this Regulation.

## Schedule

<b>Arts</b>	
(i) Degree of Bachelor of Arts	<p>(a) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 and up to and including 1977 a three-year course full-time Division A at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than four unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.</p> <p>(b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1978 a three-year full-time Division A course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, seven unspecified papers, four at Stage I level and three at Stage II level. For the purpose of BA Regulation 5, the papers so credited shall count as papers in two subjects. For the purpose of BA Regulation 3, three papers shall count as papers in Group A in the Schedule to the BA Regulations and four papers shall count as papers in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.</p> <p>(c) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 and up to and including 1979 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than two unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations. For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1980 a three year Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, three unspecified Stage I</p>

papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations. For a student who had successfully completed in or after 1980 a two year full-time Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, two unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.

(d) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 and up to and including 1979 a three-year full-time Home Economics or Commercial course at the Auckland Secondary Teachers' College not more than four unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations. For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1980 a three-year full-time Home Economics or Commercial course at the Auckland Secondary Teachers' College or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, seven unspecified papers, four at Stage I level and three at Stage II level. For the purpose of BA Regulation 5 the papers so credited shall count as papers in two subjects. For the purpose of BA Regulation 3, three papers shall count as papers in Group A in the Schedule to the BA Regulations and four papers shall count as papers in Group B in the BA Regulations.

(e) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1976 a two-year full-time Course in Division A at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education two unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.

(f) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1977 a two-year full-time Course in Division E at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education two unspecified Stage I papers to count as one unspecified subject in Group B in the Schedule to the BA Regulations.

(g) For a student who has in or after 1975 completed the requirements for a Certificate Course of the Centre for Continuing Education with a grade B or higher, one or two papers to count as one unspecified Stage I subject.

(h) For a student who has in or after 1984 successfully completed Studio I for the BFA Degree but is not continuing with that degree, two papers to count as papers in one unspecified Group B Stage I subject.

(i) For a student who has in or after 1985 successfully completed the course either for the Diploma in Nursing or the Diploma in Physiotherapy at the Auckland Technical Institute, four unspecified Stage I papers to count as papers in one unspecified subject in Group B of the BA Schedule.

(j) For a student who has in or after 1988 passed the subject Legal System for LLB but is not continuing with the degree, one paper to count as a paper in one unspecified Group B Stage I subject.

## Commerce

### (ii) Degree of Bachelor of Commerce

(a) For a student who has in or after 1975 completed the requirements for a Certificate in Personal Management of the Centre for Continuing Education with a grade of B or higher, one or two unspecified Stage I papers.

(b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1977 a three-year full-time Division A course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, three unspecified papers to count as elective papers.

(c) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1977 and up to and including 1979 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council not more than one unspecified paper to count as an elective paper. For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1980 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the Control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education three elective papers for the three-year Division B course, or two elective papers for the two-year

Division B course.

(d) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1977 a three-year full-time Division Home Economics or Commercial course at the Auckland Secondary Teachers' College or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education not more than three unspecified papers to count as elective papers.

<b>Law</b> (iii) Degree of Bachelor of Law or Diploma in Criminology	(a) For a student who has in or after 1975 completed the requirements for a Certificate in Criminology of the Centre for Continuing Education with a grade B or higher, one or two unspecified papers.
<b>Music</b> (iv) Degree of Bachelor of Music	<p>(a) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a three-year full-time Division A course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, two unspecified papers (not being a paper in Music) in lieu of the BA papers prescribed for the Degree. For a student specialising in music in the above three-year course, a further two unspecified Stage I papers.</p> <p>(b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education not more than one unspecified paper (not being a paper in Music) in lieu of a BA paper prescribed for the Degree.</p> <p>(c) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 a three-year full-time Division Home Economics or Commercial course at the Auckland Secondary Teachers' College or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education not more than one unspecified paper (not being a paper in Music) in lieu of a BA paper prescribed for the Degree.</p>
<b>Science</b> (v) Degree of Bachelor of Science	<p>(a) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1976 and up to and including 1980 a two-year full-time course in Division A at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than six unspecified Stage I credits.</p> <p>(b) For a student who has successfully completed in or after 1974 and up to and including 1980 a Division B (concurrent study course) at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council, not more than six unspecified Stage I credits.</p> <p>(c) For a student who has successfully completed any other approved three-year course at a Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' College Council, or (from 1986) at the Auckland College of Education, 12 unspecified Stage I credits. For any other approved two-year course under the same authority, 8 unspecified Stage I credits.</p>

**Note:** The progress of students granted credit for Certificate Courses of the Centre for Continuing Education will be reviewed following their first year of study after the granting of the credit.

### Exemptions

15(a) A candidate for a degree or diploma, who has passed in a paper or subject not prescribed for that degree or diploma but the same as or substantially equivalent to a paper or subject so prescribed, may at the discretion of the Senate be exempt from that prescribed paper or subject; subject, however, to the provisions of any other regulation.

(b) A candidate exempted either under this or any other regulation for a paper or subject shall pay the prescribed fee under the Fees Regulations to be exempted from that paper or subject.

16. Except as permitted by Regulation 12 of these Regulations or by the Regulations for any particular Course of Study, no candidate may be granted in all more than one-third of the paper requirements of a Course of Study as cross-credits, credit, or exemptions.

### Abandonments

17. A student may apply on the appropriate form and on payment of the prescribed fee to abandon papers credited to one Course of Study and have them credited to another Course of Study.



**Note:** The prescribed fee for an "Abandonment" application is \$11.

### **Completion of Degree or Diploma at another University**

18. A student who leaves the University of Auckland district either to reside in another university district within New Zealand or to reside overseas, and who has passed for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland such part of the work as the Senate may from time to time determine to be the major part of the work for that degree or diploma may, with the approval of the Senate in order to complete that degree or diploma, take appropriate examinations at another University and may, with like approval be granted credits under these regulations for such examinations.

### **Additional Lectures**

19. A student while pursuing a Course of Study in the University may with the approval of the Dean of the appropriate Faculty, after consultation with the Heads of Departments concerned, take lectures in a subject which he is not offering for examination without payment of fee for the Course provided that this facility shall be granted only where the additional lectures would be useful in supplementing the student's Course of Study.

### **Vice-Chancellor's Special Powers**

20(a) The Vice-Chancellor may give such direction, or make such provision as he shall think fit for the relief of undue hardship where it is shown to his satisfaction:

(i) that an alteration or amendment to statutes or regulations involving a change in a Course of Study or in examination requirements has caused a candidate hardship; or  
(ii) that official advice has been given and acted upon, and it is later found that a candidate's Course of Study is not in accordance with the governing regulations and hardship would be caused if the candidate were to be compelled to comply with the full requirements of the regulations.

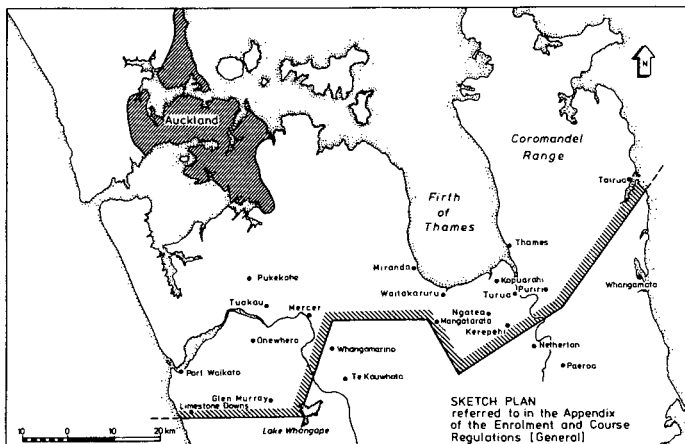
(b) Where a candidate for a Master's degree or Bachelor of Science (Honours) degree writes a script outside the prescribed time for the examination, the Vice-Chancellor shall have power to

(i) admit or reject the script as part of the examination  
(ii) authorise the Head of Department to conduct an oral examination, and the Head of the Department where appropriate and if necessary, shall submit a mark based on the year's work and the oral examination.

(c) A candidate may appeal against any decision of the Vice-Chancellor under this Regulation to the Council by giving notice in writing to the Registrar within fourteen (14) days of being notified of the decision. Council shall have the power to make such provision as it may think fit. The decision of the Council on any appeal under this Regulation shall be final.

## **APPENDIX**

That portion of the Provincial District of Auckland north of a line commencing on the west coast thence in a straight line east through Trig 76E No 2 to the outlet of the Awaroa Stream into Lake Whangape thence in a straight line in a north-north-easterly direction to the confluence of the Kopura Stream and the Maramarua River thence due east to Trig CXXVA thence in a straight line in a south-easterly direction to a point south-west of Kaihere thence in a straight line in a north-easterly direction to the junction of Townsend Road and Highway 26 thence in a straight line in a north-easterly direction through Tairua Hill Trig.



## THE LIMITATION OF ENTRY STATUTE 1985

1. This Statute may be cited as the Limitation of Entry Statute 1985 and shall come into force on 1 January 1986.
2. There is deemed to be an insufficiency of accommodation or of teachers in respect of a faculty, department, class or course if
  - (i) students cannot be allocated places in appropriate lecture rooms or laboratories at times when they can be reasonably expected to attend, or
  - (ii) the number of teaching staff does not ensure that all students can be adequately taught.
3. The maximum number of students that may be enrolled in any such faculty, department, class, or course shall be such as the Council after securing a recommendation from the Senate and after consultation with the University Grants Committee shall from time to time determine in respect of each such faculty, department, class or course.
4. In determining such maximum number of students the Council may after securing a recommendation from Senate and after consultation with the University Grants Committee:-
  - (a) prescribe academic standards to be achieved as a prerequisite for enrolment in any such faculty, department, class or course and
  - (b) prescribe other criteria for selection of students to be permitted enrolment in any such faculty, department, class or course.

## ENROLMENT LIMITATIONS

### ENROLMENT LIMITATIONS 1988

Limitations have been placed on the number of students that can be accepted for 1988 for the following Course of Study or papers.

#### FACULTY OF ARCHITECTURE PROPERTY AND PLANNING

Intermediate for BPA 37.100 .....	100
First Professional for BArch .....	67
First Professional for BPlan (for the first time) .....	45
First Professional for BPA (for the first time) .....	40

#### FACULTY OF ARTS

##### ANTHROPOLOGY

03.309 .....	50
03.340 .....	15

<b>DIPLOMA IN BROADCAST COMMUNICATION</b> .....	6
---	---

<b>DIPLOMA IN DRAMA</b> .....	16
-------------------------------	----

##### EDUCATION

14.100 .....	400
14.101 .....	750
14.102 .....	320
14.410 .....	18
14.418 .....	15
14.501/606 .....	15
DipEdPsych (first year) 16.100 .....	10
DipGuid (Part II) .....	15

##### ENGLISH

18.328 .....	12
DipELT .....	18

##### SOCIOLOGY

DipSocRes .....	6
-----------------	---

#### FACULTY OF COMMERCE

Bachelor of Commerce Part I (for the first time) .....	685
including enrolments for the first time in Part I for the conjoint courses BCom/BA, BCom/BSc, BCom/LLB.,	
BCom Part II (for the first time) .....	25
PGDipCom (for the first time) .....	10

**ACCOUNTING**

Accounting 01.102, 01.103 each (for courses other than BCom) .....	125
All Stage II and Stage III Accounting Papers (for courses other than BCom) .....	25

**BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION**

MBA/PGDipBus: Business Administration (for the first time) .....	75
PGDipBus: Marketing 70.433, 70.551, 70.552 each .....	40

**ECONOMICS**

12.102 (available only to Commerce Students from 1988)

**COMMERCIAL LAW**

02.100 (for courses other than BCom) .....	15
All other Commercial Law papers (for courses other than BCom) .....	25

**MANAGEMENT SCIENCE & INFORMATION SYSTEMS**

74.100 (for courses other than BCom) .....	25
74.200 (for courses other than BCom) .....	25
74.220 .....	80
74.221 .....	60

**MANAGEMENT STUDIES & LABOUR RELATIONS**

72.203 (for courses other than BCom) .....	30
72.305 .....	30
72.314 .....	30

**FACULTY OF ENGINEERING**

First Professional Examination (for the first time) .....	255
---	-----

First Professional courses of study for the first time:

Chemical and Materials/Metallurgical and Materials .....	40
Civil .....	65
Electrical and Electronic .....	75
Engineering Science .....	20
Mechanical .....	60
Mining & Mineral Process .....	25

<b>DIP GEOTHERM TECH</b> .....	30
--------------------------------	----

**FACULTY OF FINE ARTS**

BFA Studio I .....	55
MFA, MPhil (for the first time) .....	25

**FACULTY OF LAW**

Intermediate for Law, 25.103 .....	600
First Law Examination .....	225

**FACULTY OF MEDICINE AND HUMAN BIOLOGY**

Bachelor of Human Biology (for the first time) .....	105
DipPaed .....	2

**FACULTY OF MUSIC**

All first year enrolments .....	60
28.215, 28.216, 28.218 each .....	20
28.318 .....	5
Music, Masters .....	12

**FACULTY OF SCIENCE****BIOCHEMISTRY**

66.202 (incl. 66.202 and 66.203 combined — 50) .....	100
66.203 (incl. 66.203 and 66.202 combined — 50) .....	100
66.301, 66.302 each .....	36

**BOTANY**

06.371 .....	24
39.311 .....	24
39.313 .....	25

**CELLULAR AND MOLECULAR BIOLOGY**

40.303, 40.304 each .....	48
40.305 .....	30

**CHEMISTRY**

08.230 .....	142
--------------	-----

08.330, 08.331 each .....	50
08.360 .....	24
08.370 .....	30
<b>COMPUTER SCIENCE</b>	
07.100, 07.105 .....	900
07.101 .....	350
Stage II papers (all) .....	750
Stage III papers (all) .....	500
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE</b>	
MSc (for the first time) .....	10
<b>GEOLOGY</b>	
Stage II papers, each .....	36
Stage III papers, each .....	25
BSc(Hons) Pt IV, MSc, PhD .....	40
<b>OPTOMETRY</b>	
BOptom Year II .....	18
<b>PHARMACOLOGY</b>	
96.301 .....	24
<b>PHYSICS</b>	
31.297 .....	(each half year) 12
<b>PHYSIOLOGY</b>	
67.201 .....	64
67.301, 67.302, 67.303 each .....	32
<b>PSYCHOLOGY</b>	
32.108 .....	840
32.109 .....	450
32.210 .....	75
32.220, 32.230, 32.240 each .....	150
32.311 .....	44
32.314 .....	25
34.403, 32.404, 32.406, 32.408, 32.409, 32.410, 32.411, 32.412, 32.413, 32.415, 32.416 each .....	12
32.417, 32.418, 32.419 each .....	12
32.421 .....	16
<b>ZOOLOGY</b>	
38.310, 39.316 each .....	24
MSc, PhD .....	60
<b>DIPCLINPSYCH</b>	
(first year) .....	8

## ENROLMENT

To facilitate enrolment 1988 **ALL FIRST YEAR** students (except most special admission applicants, but including those applying for transfer from another NZ University) and those subject to exclusion will be required to complete a Preparatory Application Form to be submitted as soon as possible prior to 15 January. These are available from the Registrar, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland, or at the Enquiries Counter, Registry Building, 24 Princes Street.

1. Students wishing to enrol at the University of Auckland in 1988 who come under any of the categories listed below must complete a Preparatory Application Form.

(a) First Year including those applying for Special Admission or Personal Interest Courses.

New Zealand students or those ordinarily resident in New Zealand who have never previously enrolled at a University in New Zealand or overseas.

Note: (i) Those who do not hold New Zealand University Entrance qualifications but have passed an entrance qualification for admission to an overseas university must complete the Preparatory Application Form and also apply for a grant of Admission Ad Eundem Statum at entrance level through the Universities Entrance Board, P.O. Box 12348, Wellington North.

(ii) Overseas students on entry permit who have applied or are applying to OSAC for a place must not complete the Preparatory Application Form.

**(b) Transfer**

Students whose last previous enrolment was at another University in New Zealand.

**(c) Exclusion**

Students who have failed to make satisfactory academic progress and require the permission of Senate to re-enrol.

**(d) Pre-enrolment**

Students who wish to enrol in a course of study or paper(s) with restricted entry (as detailed in the timetable below).

The Preparatory Application Forms must be completed and posted to the Registrar, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland or handed into the Enquiries Office, Registry Building, 24 Princess Street by the prescribed date listed below if pre-enrolling, otherwise not later than 15 January 1988.

Late applications are subject to a late fee of \$22.

Note: (i) Late applications for restricted entry courses/papers with a closing date of 15 January will not be accepted after 22 January (other than in exceptional circumstances.)

(ii) For those restricted entry courses/papers with a closing date other than 15 January late applications will not be considered except

(a) in exceptional circumstances

(b) if places remain available in the course/paper concerned.

2. In addition to completing the Preparatory Application Form all students must complete their enrolment by attending in person at the University in accordance with the Enrolment Timetable. Students failing to enrol in accordance with the Timetable may forfeit their place or be charged late penalties in full.

## PREPARATORY ENROLMENT

Because of insufficient accommodation and restrictions on staffing there will be a limitation on the number of students who can be enrolled for certain courses at the University in 1988. With a few exceptions (see Notes) those wishing to enrol in 1988 for any of the Courses of Study listed below must complete a Preparatory Application Form by the date prescribed. Application forms are available from the Registrar, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland, or at the Enquiries Counter, Registry Building, 24 Princes Street. Intending students will not be permitted to enrol in any of the Courses of Study listed below unless they have received notice in reply to their Preparatory Application Form that a place is available in 1988. Students wishing to enrol for Courses of Study other than those listed below do not need to pre-enrol.

### Architecture Property and Planning

Intermediate for BArch, BPA, BPlan: Any papers with restricted entry in other Faculties (as listed below). Intro to Property 37.100

BArch First Professional

BArch Second Professional from BE (Civil) or NZCD (Arch)

BPA First Professional (for the first time)

BPlan First Professional (for the first time)

### Closing Date

15 January

### Arts

Accounting see Commerce below

Anthropology, 03.340

15 January

30 November for the following year

Education 14.410, 14.418

English 18.328

Music 28.100, 28.101, 28.103, taken as a three paper one year course

Psychology 32.109, 32.210, 32.403, 32.408, 32.409, 32.421 and Masters theses

15 January

DipDrama

DipGuid (for the first time)

PGDipSocRes

DipEdPsych (for the first time)

DipELT

31 October for the following year

DipBrC

30 November for the following year

**Commerce**

BCom Part I (for the first time) including enrolments for the first time in Part I for conjoint courses BCom/BA, BCom/BSc, BCom/LLB  
 BCom Part II (for the first time) e.g. direct entry  
 Accounting 01.102, 01.103 and all Stage II and III Accounting papers (for courses of study other than BCom)  
 PGDipCom  
 All Commercial Law papers (for any one course of study other than BCom)  
 Management Science and Information Systems 74.100, 74.200 (for courses of study other than BCom)  
 Management Science and Information Systems 74.200, 74.221  
 Management Studies and Labour Relations 72.203 (for courses of study other than BCom)  
 Management Studies and Labour Relations 72.305, 72.314  
 MBA/ PG DipBus (for the first time)

15 January

15 October for the following year

**Engineering**

BE Professional (for the first time)  
 All Engineering papers for courses of study other than BE  
 DipGeothermTech

15 January

1 September  
 Overseas Students  
 for the following year  
 15 October New  
 Zealand Students for  
 the following year  
 31 October for the  
 following year  
 15 January

**Fine Arts**

BFA Studio I and all theory papers

MFA MPhil

**Law**

Law Intermediate, 25.103 and any other papers for which pre-enrolment is required by other Faculties  
 LLB and LLB(Hons),  
 All papers in the First Law Examination (25.101-25.105)

15 January

**Medicine and Human Biology**

BHBI

1 October for the  
 following year

**Music**

BMus (Performance) (for the first time)  
 applications close with Head of Department  
 All students (including those who have been interviewed for a performance course in Music and received conformation of a place) who are enrolling for the first time  
 28.215, 28.216, 28.218, 28.318

30 June for the  
 following year

15 January

**Science**

Biochemistry 66.202, 66.203, 66.301, 66.302  
 Botany 06.371, Biology, 39.311, 39.313  
 Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.303, 40.304, 40.305  
 Chemistry 08.230, 08.330, 08.331, 08.360, 08.370  
 Commerce papers for BSC see Commerce  
 Geology, all Stage II and III papers  
 Environmental Science MSc (for the first time)

15 January

31 October for the  
 following year

Geology, BScHons (Part IV) MSc papers, PhD

30 September for the  
 following year

**Science**

Pharmacology 96.301

Physics, 31.297

Physiology, 67.301, 67.302, 67.303

Psychology, 32.109, 32.210, 32.403, 32.408, 32.409, 32.421

Zoology, 38.310, 38.316 and MSc papers (for the first time)

BOptom, Psychology 32.109 (for the second year of the course all applicants)

DipClinPsych (for the first time)

15 January

31 October for the  
following year

Preparatory Application Forms concerning pre-enrolment that are received late are subject to a late fee of \$22.

Note: (i) Late applications for restricted entry courses/papers with a closing date of 15 January will not be accepted after 22 January (other than in exceptional circumstances).

(ii) For those restricted entry courses/papers with a closing date other than 15 January late applications will not be considered except

(a) in exceptional circumstances

(b) if places remain available in the course/paper concerned.

**Notes:****1. Admission Ad Eundem Statum**

(a) *Students from other New Zealand Universities wishing to transfer to the University of Auckland.*

Students from other New Zealand Universities wishing to transfer to the University of Auckland are required to make application to transfer on the appropriate form to the Registrar not later than 15 January, or in the case of students wishing to enrol in any course or paper requiring pre-enrolment, by the date set by Council for pre-enrolment in that course or paper. A late application may be accepted with the permission of the Senate and subject to availability of places and upon payment of a late fee of \$22 up to 15 February, and after 15 February upon payment of an additional fine of \$22.

Because the University of Auckland is unable adequately to accommodate all of the students who in 1988 will seek to gain admission, students wishing to transfer to the University of Auckland for any undergraduate course shall be admitted **ONLY IF THERE ARE COMPELLING CIRCUMSTANCES FOR TRANSFER TO AUCKLAND**. Students wishing to enrol for papers or courses in which restriction of numbers is necessary will be selected on priority gradings based largely on their previous academic record. They will be required to nominate alternative papers and may be considered for alternatives if there are insufficient places in the papers of their first choice.

(b) *Students from Overseas requiring a student entry permit*

Under Government Regulations students who would require a student entry permit to enrol and who have part of a qualification from a University outside New Zealand cannot be enrolled with credits towards any course at the University of Auckland except in a limited number of specified cases.

(i) Overseas students seeking admission at entrance level should apply to the Overseas Students Admissions Committee (OSAC), P.O. Box 12348, Wellington North, New Zealand as follows.

Those in New Zealand, Fiji, Tonga, French Polynesia and Hong Kong by 1 September 1987.

Those in places other than New Zealand, Fiji, Tonga, French Polynesia and Hong Kong by 1 May 1987.

(ii) A person applying for graduate status must apply to the University for admission not later than 30 November.

**2. Special Admission**

Students are referred to Regulation 9 of the Admission Regulations and General Fees and Penalties under the Fees Regulations.

**3. Exclusion for Failure to make Sufficient Progress in Course of Study as a whole**

Students are referred to Regulation 10 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and General Fees and Penalties under the Fees Regulations.

**4. Preparatory Enrolment Interviews**

A General Information and Advisory Centre in the Lower Lecture Theatre will be open from 7 to 15 January, and in the Recreation Centre will be open from 17 to 24 February. The Liaison Office will be open from 5 January.

**5. Penalties**

(a) *Late Preparatory Enrolment, Late Enrolment, Late Additions or Deletions to Courses*

Students are referred to Penalties under the Fees Regulations for applications for late submission of the Preparatory Application Form, and late enrolment. For late additions or deletions of courses refer to Regula-

tion 8 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

**(b) Choice of Course**

The Course of study of a student making a late enrolment will be determined by the Senate and will not necessarily conform with that proposed by the student concerned. In determining the student's Course the Senate will have regard to prior claims upon both laboratory and classroom space of students who have enrolled in accordance with the enrolment timetable.

**6. Refund of Fees**

Students are referred to Regulation 8(c) of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

## 1988 ENROLMENT TIMETABLE

Students wishing to enrol at the University of Auckland in 1988 are required to attend at the University, Princes Street, to enrol during the hours of 9 a.m. to 5 p.m., Thursday 18 and Friday 19, Monday 22 February – Friday 26 February 1988 inclusive in accordance with this timetable. Enrolment is not completed until all fees payable in cash are paid in full. (Credit cards are not acceptable).

Students who were required to pre-enrol for a course of study or paper with restricted entry are asked to bring with them their 'confirmation of place'.

Students enrolling for the first time at a university should bring their UE, or other UE equivalent, HSC, 6th Form Certificate, Bursary or Scholarship results or evidence of admission *ad eundem statum* at entrance level. Any student who has changed name since last enrolment should produce a marriage certificate, a deed poll, or a statutory declaration.

Students enrolling in more than one Faculty should note that only one enrolment form is required.

Students other than those enrolling for the first time at a New Zealand University must collect their enrolment forms from Mathematics Lecture Theatre 1, Physics/Mathematics Building, 36 Princes Street, the day of their enrolment. Students enrolling for the first time at a New Zealand University must collect their enrolment forms from Physics Lecture Theatre 1, Physics/Mathematics Building, 36 Princes Street, the day of their enrolment. Students who may have difficulty completing enrolment due to disability should write to Disabled Students Resource Officer, AUSA, not later than 15 January, giving their name, address, telephone number, details of their disability, assistance required and the papers and course in which they propose to enrol.

Students failing to enrol in accordance with the Timetable may forfeit their place or be charged late penalties in full.

### ARCHITECTURE PROPERTY AND PLANNING

Intermediate for BArch, and BPA  
Intermediate for BPlan  
BArch, MArch, MPhil, PhD, NZIA/AERB Special,  
BPA, MPA, BPlan, MPlan, COP

18 Thursday

22 Monday

25 Thursday

### INITIALS OF SURNAME MORNING AFTERNOON

A - K

A - K

A - K

L - Z

L - Z

L - Z

### ARTS

BA, COP

If your 1988 course includes papers in Arts  
with restricted entry i.e. papers for which  
application for a place is required

} 19 Friday

A - K

L - Z

If your 1988 course includes papers in Science

19 Friday

A - K

L - Z

If your 1988 course of study is a conjoint BCom/

BA or includes papers in Accounting or  
Management Studies

} 24 Wednesday

A - K

L - Z

If your 1988 course of study includes papers in Law

23 Tuesday

A - K

L - Z

### ALL OTHERS

{ 22 Monday  
23 Tuesday  
24 Wednesday

A - C

G - K

O - S

D - F

L - N

T - Z



**INITIALS OF SURNAME**  
**MORNING AFTERNOON**

If you are enrolling in Arts papers for an Intermediate Course, refer to the appropriate Faculty.

MA, MPhil, DipBrC, DipDrama, DipEd, DipELT, DipGuid, DipLGA, PGDipSocRes, PhD	25 Thursday	A - K	L - Z
--	-------------	-------	-------

DipEdPsych	22 Monday	A - Z	
------------	-----------	-------	--

**COMMERCE****BCom, COP**

If your 1988 course of study is a conjoint

BCom/BSc	22 Monday	A - K	L - Z
----------	-----------	-------	-------

BCom/LLB	23 Tuesday	A - K	L - Z
----------	------------	-------	-------

BCom/BA	24 Wednesday	A - Z	L - Z
---------	--------------	-------	-------

If your 1988 course of study is not a conjoint course but includes any papers in Arts or Science (including Computer Science and Mathematics)	} 22 Monday	A - K	L - Z
---	-------------	-------	-------

If your 1988 course of study is not a conjoint course but includes any papers in Law	} 23 Tuesday	A - K	L - Z
---	--------------	-------	-------

If you are enrolling for BCom for the first time	24 Wednesday	A - K	L - Z
--	--------------	-------	-------

All other BCom, COP	} 25 Thursday	A - D	E - K
	} 26 Friday	L - P	Q - Z

MCom, MPhil, PhD	18 Thursday	A - K	L - Z
------------------	-------------	-------	-------

MBA/PGDipBus, PGDipCom	26 Friday	A - K	L - Z
------------------------	-----------	-------	-------

**ENGINEERING****Intermediate for BE**

	19 Friday	A - K	L - Z
--	-----------	-------	-------

ME, MPhil, PhD	19 Friday	A - K	L - Z
----------------	-----------	-------	-------

	} 25 Thursday	A - D	E - K
--	---------------	-------	-------

BE, COP	} 26 Friday	L - R	S - Z
---------	-------------	-------	-------

DipGeotherm Tech	26 Friday	A - K	L - Z
------------------	-----------	-------	-------

**FINE ARTS**

BFA, MFA, MPhil, PhD	18 Thursday	A - K	L - Z
----------------------	-------------	-------	-------

COP	26 Friday	A - Z	
-----	-----------	-------	--

**LAW**

Intermediate for Law	22 Monday	A - K	L - Z
----------------------	-----------	-------	-------

LLB, LLB (Hons), LLM, MJur, MPhil,  
LawProf, DipCrim, PGDipLS, COP

If your 1988 course of study includes any papers in Arts or Commerce, eg BA/LLB, BCom/LLB	23 Tuesday	A - K	L - Z
--	------------	-------	-------

If your 1988 course of study includes any papers in Science	22 Monday	A - K	L - Z
--	-----------	-------	-------

ALL OTHERS	} 23 Tuesday	A - B	C - D
	} 24 Wednesday	E - M	N - Z

**MEDICINE AND HUMAN BIOLOGY**

BHB, MHB, COP	26 Friday	A - Z	
---------------	-----------	-------	--

MBChB, MMedSc, MPhil, PhD	26 Friday		A - Z
---------------------------	-----------	--	-------

**MUSIC**

BMus, BMus(Performance), BMus(Performance)(Hons),  
MMus, MPhil, PhD, DipMus, DipMus(Hons),  
If your 1988 course of study includes Arts papers  
with restricted entry i.e. papers for which application  
for a place is required  
If your 1988 course of study includes papers in  
Science

19 Friday A - K L - Z

**ALL OTHERS**

22 Monday A - C D - F  
23 Tuesday G - K L - N  
24 Wednesday O - S T - Z

**SCIENCE****BSc, COP**

If your 1988 course of study includes any Science  
papers with restricted entry, i.e. papers for which  
application for a place is required, but no Arts,  
Commerce, Law or Music papers

18 Thursday A - K L - Z

If your 1988 course of study includes Arts,  
or Music papers

19 Friday A - K L - Z

If your 1988 course of study includes Commerce  
or Law papers

22 Monday A - K L - Z

**ALL OTHERS**

18 Thursday A - D E - K  
19 Friday L - P Q - Z

**BOptom, DipOpt**

18 Thursday A - K L - Z

BSc(Hons), MSc, MPhil, PhD, DipCompSci,  
DipMathEd, DipStats

18 Thursday A - K L - Z

**DipClinPsych**

24 Wednesday A - K L - Z

**EXTRAMURAL ENROLMENT STATUTE**

1.(1) This Statute may be cited as the Extramural Enrolment Statute 1981.

(2) This Statute shall come into force on 1 January 1982.

2. Any person qualified to enrol at a University in New Zealand who in any year is living in the urban area of Auckland and who satisfies the Senate of the University of Auckland that he or she should not be required to attend classes at the University, shall, subject to the provisions of this Statute and upon such conditions as Senate thinks fit, be permitted to enrol extramurally in that year.

3. No person who is already on the books of another University in New Zealand as a candidate for any degree, diploma or other qualification shall be permitted to enrol extramurally without the permission of that other University.

4. Except where the Senate otherwise permits, a person who is permitted to enrol extramurally in any paper or papers for which extramural tuition is provided at Massey University, shall —

(a) be required to register or enrol for tuition in each such paper at Massey University;

(b) not enrol in the same year for any other paper or papers at the University of Auckland;

(c) take the examinations of Massey University, and appropriate credit shall be granted at the University of Auckland for the paper or papers passed.

5. Save with the permission of the Senate granted in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, no person on the books of the University of Auckland may be enrolled extramurally in respect of

(a) any Stage III paper;

(b) any work for a Master's Degree;

(c) any work for a diploma;

(d) any paper requiring practical or laboratory work;

(e) any paper or other work which, in the opinion of Senate, requires internal tuition at a University.

6.(1) A person who is on the books of the University of Auckland as a candidate for any degree, diploma or other qualification but who lives outside the urban area of Auckland but within New Zealand, may be permitted to enrol extramurally.

(2) Permission for the purpose of subsection (1) of this section shall be at the discretion of Senate, but it shall be granted —

- (a) in the case of a person not living in the Auckland University District, only with the approval of the appropriate other University;
- (b) in the case of a person living in the urban area of Dunedin, Christchurch, Wellington, Palmerston North or Hamilton, only if he or she is unable to attend classes at the appropriate other University.
- (3) For the purpose of subsection (2) of this section "the appropriate other University" is Massey University or the University of Waikato, as the case may be, when the person lives in the urban area of Palmerston North or Hamilton; and is otherwise the University of the District in which the person lives (that is, the University of Otago, the University of Canterbury, or the Victoria University of Wellington, as the case may be).
7. A person on the books of this University who ceases to reside in New Zealand, and who requires to pass in the final paper or papers for any degree, diploma or other qualification, may enrol extramurally in the paper or papers at the discretion of Senate and upon such conditions as it thinks fit.
8. For the purposes of this Statute –  
the urban area of each University town named is as defined from time to time by the Council of the University concerned;  
the Auckland University District is as defined in the First Schedule to the University of Auckland Act 1961 but with the exclusion of the urban area of Hamilton.  
New Zealand includes Cook Islands, Niue and Tokelau.
9. The Extramural Enrolment Statute 1962 is repealed.

**Notes:** (i) A person who is already on the books of another University in New Zealand who is not qualified to enrol extramurally in accordance with Section 2 of this Statute, is, unless the Senate otherwise decides in exceptional circumstances, expected either to transfer to the University of Auckland or to enrol for such paper or papers at the University of Auckland as may be acceptable to the other University.

(ii) A student living in the urban area of Auckland who has been permitted to enrol extramurally at another University in any particular year will be expected, in any subsequent year of university study, either to enrol at the University of Auckland or to obtain the Senate's permission to continue to enrol extramurally.

(iii) The Senate normally permits Auckland Secondary Teachers' College physical education or music students, who are enrolled for BEd at Massey University, to enrol at the University of Auckland for a paper or papers other than those in respect of which extramural enrolment is permitted.

## EXTRAMURAL ENROLMENT REGULATIONS

1. Every person wishing, in any year, to enrol extramurally under the Extramural Enrolment Statute 1981 shall apply to the Registrar of the University not later than 15 January of that year.
2. Every application shall state –  
(a) the papers or other work in respect of which extramural enrolment is sought;  
(b) the grounds of the application;  
(c) whether the applicant is already on the books of, or (where it may be permitted or required) proposes to enrol at any other University and if so, which University and for what course, papers or other work;  
(d) (i) the applicant's current business and residential address;  
(ii) whether to the best of the applicant's knowledge and belief there will be any change of residence during the year of enrolment; and if so the expected new address and approximate date of change.
3. The applicant if living within the urban area of Auckland shall provide such evidence as the Senate deems fit that he or she is unable or should not be required to attend classes at the University of Auckland.
4. The application for extramural enrolment under section 6 of the Statute by a student already on the books of this University who lives in the urban area of a University town other than Auckland must be supported by a certificate from the Registrar of the appropriate University that the applicant is unable to attend classes at that University.
5. Every student permitted to enrol extramurally –  
(a) shall pay the prescribed fees for course approval (in addition to any fees payable at another University);  
(b) may withdraw from his or her studies by written notice to the Registrar not later than 31 March; and, having done so by that date, shall be entitled to a full refund of fees (but not any late fee or fine).
- 6(1) The studies of students permitted to enrol extramurally under the Statute are subject to Regulation 10 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).
- (2) For the purpose of this Regulation students who have not withdrawn under Regulation 5(b) or, being enrolled also at Massey University, have not withdrawn in accordance with the Regulations of that University, shall be deemed engaged in academic studies in the relevant year.
7. The Extramural Regulations last published in the 1981 *Calendar* are revoked.
8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1982.

## EXAMINATION REGULATIONS

### Eligibility to Sit Examinations

1. To be eligible to present himself or herself for examination in a paper or subject, a candidate

(a) must have been enrolled as an internal student, have attended classes to the satisfaction of the Senate, and performed to the satisfaction of the Senate such oral, practical, written, and other work as the Senate may require.

**Note:** Students will be informed by each department of the specific requirements for courses in that department and the extent to which the year's work will be taken into consideration in assessing final results. In some cases students may not be permitted to sit the final examinations.

(b) not being enrolled as an internal student, must have been granted exemption in accordance with the Extramural Statute and Regulations.

### **Time of Examinations**

2. The examinations shall be held at the times specified in the timetable each year.

### **Place of Examinations**

3. All internal students must sit their examinations at Auckland. Extramural students who do not wish to sit their examinations at Auckland may sit at one of the centres specified in the Extramural Enrolment Regulations, provided that, with the approval of the Senate, a special examination centre may be established under special circumstances subject to the payment of the extra fee prescribed in the Fees Regulations.

### **Conduct of Examinations**

4(a) The examinations shall comprise such written, oral and practical examinations as the examiners may determine.

(b) Where degree Regulations or prescriptions permit, or the Senate upon such conditions as it thinks fit approves, the examiners may in respect of any examination release to the candidates, the examination paper in advance of the sitting of the examination.

(c) Candidates shall write out answers to the questions in the presence of a supervisor, who shall be appointed or approved by the Council in accordance with such detailed instructions as may be furnished by the Council.

(d) No candidate shall communicate with an examiner in regard to an examination except through the Registrar.

(e) No candidate may be examined in any subject or part of a subject at any time other than that set down for him in the timetable.

(f) No candidate shall be allowed to enter the room:

(i) for a 3-hour examination later than one hour thirty minutes after candidates have begun writing the examination,

(ii) for a 2-hour examination later than one hour after candidates have begun writing the examination,

(iii) for a 1½-hour examination later than forty-five minutes after candidates have begun writing the examination,

(iv) for a 1-hour examination later than thirty minutes after candidates have begun writing the examination.

(g) No candidate shall be permitted to leave the room:

(i) of a 3-hour examination until one hour forty-five minutes has elapsed from the time the writing of the examination began,

(ii) of a 2-hour examination until one hour fifteen minutes has elapsed from the time the writing of the examination began,

(iii) of a 1½-hour examination until one hour has elapsed from the time the writing of the examination began,

(iv) of a 1-hour examination until forty-five minutes has elapsed from the time the writing of the examination began,

and then only with the permission of the supervisor and upon handing in his script.

(h) Candidates shall be allowed to read their examination papers for a period of not more than ten minutes before the examination commences but may not begin writing their answers until the room supervisor announces that they may do so.

(i) No candidate shall bring into examination an electronic calculator except by direction of the examiner. Where an examination has been designated 'calculator permitted'—

(i) the calculator used in the examination must be electronic, truly portable and self-powered, and noiseless. No audible alarms may be used

(ii) no supplementary material (e.g. operating manuals) related to the use and operation of the calculator will be permitted in the examination room other than spare batteries

(iii) in all cases it is the responsibility of the candidate to maintain the operation and operating power of the calculator.

**Note:** In the context of Regulation 4(i) above Electronic Calculator refers to any electronic device capable of information storage, or processing or retrieval.

(j) No candidate shall bring to an examination any written or printed matter except by direction of the examiner.

(i) Where an examination is designated "Open Book", candidates may take into the examination room any

written or printed material including books, Acts, etc, and there will be no check on items taken into the examination room.

(ii) Where an examination is designated "Restricted Book", candidates shall take into the examination room only material specified by the examiner, and that material shall not be annotated, written or typed upon, or otherwise marked.

(iii) Where an examination is designated "Restricted Book — may be written upon", candidates shall take into the examination room only material specified by the examiner; and that material may be annotated, written or typed upon or otherwise marked in a relevant or contextual manner.

(iv) All books and papers not approved for use in the examination, along with any spare personal belongings brought to the examination shall be left in such part of the room as the supervisor shall direct. All paper used during the examination must be handed to the supervisor before the candidate leaves the examination room.

(v) Where material is permitted under items (ii) and (iii) above, examiners will be required to be present at the commencement of the examination to check material brought in to the examination room.

(k) No candidate shall communicate with another in the examination room.

(l) No candidate shall continue writing an answer after the supervisor has announced the expiration of time. In no circumstances is any time over and above the time allotted to any paper to be allowed a candidate for reading over his scripts or making any amendment or addition to his scripts.

(m) Any complaint that a candidate has committed an examination offence shall be referred to the Deans Committee of the Senate (to which the Senate has delegated power to deal with all matters relating to examinations) to determine whether the complaint should be investigated. For the purposes of this Regulation an examination offence includes any breach of any rules relating to the conduct of examinations and any dishonest practice occurring in the preparation or submission of any work (whether in the course of an examination or not) which counts toward the attainment of a pass in any subject or otherwise occurring in connection with any examination.

(n) The Discipline Committee of the Senate (to which the Senate has delegated the appropriate powers) shall hear and determine any complaint which the Deans Committee has resolved should be investigated. The candidate concerned shall be notified in writing of the subject matter of the complaint and the time and place of the hearing. He shall be invited to state in writing his answer to the complaint and may attend the hearing.

(o) The Senate shall have power (which it may delegate to its Discipline Committee) to do all or any of the following things in the case of a candidate found guilty of an examination offence:

(i) Impose upon him any of the penalties prescribed in the Disciplinary Regulations

(ii) Disqualify him from sitting any examinations for such period as may be prescribed

(iii) Cancel any pass with which he may have been credited in the subject or examination in respect of which the offence has occurred.

(p) Where the Senate or any committee of the Senate is satisfied that a candidate has not complied with any Regulation of the University whether in respect of any examination or any other matter having given the candidate such opportunity as it considers reasonable of remedying his non-compliance with the Regulation or Regulations, then the Senate shall have power (which it may delegate to its Discipline Committee) to suspend for such time as may be prescribed the release to the candidate of the results of any examination, or to decline to credit to his course any subject or subjects, or to impose both those penalties.

(q) A candidate may appeal to the Council from any decision of the Senate or its Discipline Committee under paragraphs (n) or (o) of this Regulation by giving notice in writing to the Registrar within 14 days of being notified of the decision. A candidate so appealing shall be entitled to make submissions in writing and may, with the consent of the Council, appear when the appeal is determined. The Council may dismiss or allow the appeal or vary the penalty but shall not impose any penalty which the Senate or its Discipline Committee could not have imposed. The decision of the Council on any appeal under this Regulation shall be final.

### **Marking of Scripts**

5 (a) In determining a candidate's result the examiners:

(i) may take into consideration the work done by the candidate during the year;

(ii) shall give due weight to reports on practical work done by the candidate wherever these are required;

(iii) shall include marks obtained by the candidate where the Senate has allotted a percentage of marks for awarding on the year's work of the candidate in any paper or subject.

### **Passes — Grades and Marks**

(b) A pass mark in any paper or subject including papers and thesis for a Master's Degree is: for a single paper, 50%;

for two or more combined or linked papers, an average of 50%;

for one or more papers and a thesis, an average of 50%;

provided that

- (i) the Senate may give approval for a thesis to count as more than one paper;
- (ii) a candidate not attaining a minimum of 37% in any combined or linked paper except in the papers or thesis for a Masters degree and mid-year examinations, will fail the subject as a whole provided that this requirement may be waived in exceptional circumstances at the discretion of the Senate;
- (iii) a candidate taking papers in the Faculty of Music not attaining a minimum of 37% of the marks allocated for the end of the year examination, will fail the paper as a whole. This does not apply to examinations in Performance.
- (iv) a candidate for the Degree of Master of Engineering must pass in each of eight subjects or in each of three subjects and a thesis;
- (v) where oral work is required for a paper of a language, unless otherwise provided, a pass in both oral work and written papers is necessary;
- (vi) where both practical and written work is required for a paper or subject a pass in both practical work and written papers is necessary.

There are eleven pass grades and two fail grades as set out:

#### Pass Grades

A + high first	B + high second	C + sound pass
A clear first	B clear second	C pass
A — bare first	B — bare second	C — marginal pass

**Notes:** (i) Candidates for BMus (Performance) who pass the subject Performance 28.120 with a grade of C- and are therefore not eligible to proceed with the Course of Study for BMus (Performance) may in respect of that pass apply for a credit of two unspecified Stage I Music papers toward the course of study for the Degree of BMus.

#### Restricted Passes

A restricted pass shall apply only to a paper in the Faculty of Arts, Commerce, or Science. A candidate at the discretion of the appropriate Faculty (or Department for the Faculty of Science) may be considered for restricted passes. No application by the candidate for consideration is required. A restricted pass in a paper which is a prerequisite for enrolment in another paper shall not be accepted as fulfilling that prerequisite except with the approval of the relevant Head of Department in each case.

**Note:** A student with a Restricted Pass in a paper who wishes to take the paper again may do so for Certificate of Proficiency only.

#### Conceded Passes

A conceded pass shall apply only to the following Courses of Study and may not be transferred to another Course of Study: Bachelor of Architecture, Diploma in Business and Industrial Administration, Bachelor of Engineering, Bachelor of Fine Arts, Bachelor of Human Biology, Bachelor of Laws, Bachelor of Laws with Honours, Law Professional Examination, Bachelor of Medicine and Surgery, Bachelor of Music, Bachelor of Music (Performance), Diploma in Music, Bachelor of Optometry, Bachelor of Property Administration, Bachelor of Planning (including Intermediate years where applicable).

A candidate at the discretion of the appropriate Faculty may be considered for a conceded pass. No application by the candidate for consideration is required.

#### Fail Grades

- D + Marginal Fail
- D Clear Fail
- D - Poor Fail

#### Work at Standard of Honours

6. A candidate whose work is at the standard of Honours or a First or Second Class Pass under the relevant degree or diploma regulations but who is ineligible for the award of Honours or First or Second Class Pass under the regulations shall be informed of the standard that he would have been awarded had he or she been eligible.

#### Recount of Marks

7. By making application within four weeks from the date of the mailing of his official result of the examinations, any candidate sitting for an examination for a degree, diploma, professional qualification, or certificate of proficiency may have the marks awarded his scripts recounted in any paper or subject which he has failed. The fee for such a recount shall be as prescribed in the Fees Regulations. A recount of marks covers a careful rechecking of the marks recorded by the examiner and ensures that no answer or any portion of an answer submitted by a candidate has been overlooked. No information relative to the application will be placed before the examiner. Candidates for the degree of Bachelor of Architecture, Bachelor of Fine Arts, Master of Fine Arts, Bachelor of Music (Performance), Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours, or for the Diploma in Music, or the Diploma in Music with Honours may apply for a recount of marks for written papers only.

**Note:** The prescribed fee for an application for recount of marks is \$22 and is refundable only if the recount shows that a pass rather than a fail grade should be recorded.

**Availability of scripts**

8. By making application during the period from the second Monday of December until the Friday preceding the Enrolment period a candidate may apply to view his or her final examination script provided all the assessment processes have been completed. In special cases a photocopy may be obtained.

**Note:** The prescribed fee for viewing an examination script is \$5.50 and \$11 for a photocopy. The fee is not refundable.

**Aegrotat Pass**

8. A candidate who has been prevented by illness or injury from presenting himself at any examination in any paper or subject, or who considers that his performance in any examination in any paper or subject has been seriously impaired by illness or injury may on application and with the approval of the Senate be granted an aegrotat pass in such paper or subject if the following conditions are satisfied:

(a) that the candidate is enrolled as an internal student for the course of instruction in the paper or subject in question;

(b) that the illness or injury was reported in writing to the Registrar within one week of the date upon which the examination affected took place or if more than one examination has been affected then within one week of the last of such examinations;

(c) that as soon as practicable after reporting the illness the candidate furnish to the Registrar a certificate (on the form provided) from a registered medical practitioner stating

(i) that he examined the candidate medically on a certain date;

(ii) that in his opinion the candidate was unable through illness or injury to present himself for the examination, or that in his opinion the candidate's performance in the examination was likely to have been seriously impaired by illness or injury. The nature of the illness or injury shall be stated in sufficient detail to make it clear that the candidate was not responsible for his disability, and in a form suitable for submission in cases of doubt to a medical referee;

(d) that the candidate's responsible teachers in the paper or subject of the examination in question certify that his work therein during the course of instruction was well above the minimum pass standard (or where relevant the minimum standard for a class of Honours or Pass) and that he is in their opinion clearly worthy to pass in that paper or subject (or where relevant) to be awarded First or Second Class Honours OR First or Second Class Pass, or

alternatively that the Senate is satisfied upon considering the quality of the candidate's work during the course of instruction and of any work which he has completed in the current examinations (whether in the paper or subject in question or any other paper or subject) that the candidate is clearly worthy to pass in the paper or subject in question or (where relevant) to be awarded First or Second Class Honours OR First or Second Class Pass therein,

provided that in either case

(i) Honours or a First or Second Class Pass may not be given to a candidate who has been awarded a pass under this regulation in respect of more than one paper for a degree or diploma involving not more than four papers; or in respect of more than two papers for a degree involving five or more papers;

(ii) a candidate for the degree of Bachelor of Engineering may, on the recommendation of the Senate, be given Honours irrespective of the number of aegrotat passes awarded.

**Note:** The fee prescribed under the Fees Regulations for each application for an Aegrotat Pass is \$5.50.

**Compassionate Pass**

10. Where by reason of any exceptional circumstances beyond his control other than his own illness or injury a candidate has been prevented from presenting himself at any examination in any paper or subject or considers that his performance in any examination in any paper or subject has been seriously impaired, he may on application and with the approval of the Senate be granted a compassionate pass subject to compliance with the same conditions (with necessary changes) as those appearing in clauses (a) and (d) of Regulation 8. Such an application must be made to the Registrar on the form provided within one week of the date upon which the examination affected took place, or, if several examinations have been affected, then within one week of the last of those examinations, and must be supported by such evidence as the Registrar shall require.

11. (a) The provisions of Regulations 8 and 9 shall apply to:

(i) any final written examination presented for a paper or subject of a Course of Study for a Degree, or for a Diploma, or for a Certificate of Proficiency, or for a Professional qualification;

(ii) any final practical examination presented for a paper or subject of a Course of Study for a Degree, or for a Diploma, or for a Certificate of Proficiency, or for a Professional qualification;

(b) the provisions of Regulations 8 and 9 shall apply (with necessary changes) to:

(i) the final submission in each year of work for the practical subjects for the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts, or the Degree of Master of Fine Arts;

(ii) the final submission in each year of studio work for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture as if such final

submission were an examination and as if the date upon which such final submission was due were the date of examination.

12. Where (i) a percentage of the marks awarded for a final examination is allocated to a prior written test; and (ii) a candidate is prevented, by illness, injury or circumstances beyond his or her control, from sitting the test; or considers that his or her performance in the test has been seriously impaired by any of those causes – then; if the conditions in clauses (a), (b) and (c) of regulation 8 are (with the necessary changes) complied with, the candidate may on application and at the discretion of the Senate –

- (a) be permitted to sit another written test; or
- (b) receive a mark based on the average of marks awarded for other course work; or
- (c) take a viva voce examination; or
- (d) have the entire mark allocated to the final examination.

13. A candidate who is eligible to apply and has applied for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in any paper or subject may, in exceptional circumstances and on a recommendation from the Head of the Department concerned, be granted permission by the Senate to take a viva voce examination in any paper or subject of his aegrotat or compassionate pass application.

### **Concessions**

14. Where degree Regulations or prescriptions permit, or the Senate upon such conditions as it thinks fit approves, the examiners may in respect of any examination require or permit the candidates, either wholly or partly in lieu of taking an examination held in accordance with Regulations 2 to 5 inclusive and 7 to 9 inclusive of these Regulations, submit for examination such written assignments of work as may be required.

### **Theses**

15. Where a thesis is required as part of an examination the following conditions shall apply:

- (a) *Diplomas, Bachelors, and Masters Degrees* (i) The candidate shall submit two copies of the thesis to the Registrar and a short abstract bound in each copy of the thesis provided that a candidate for the degree of Master of Engineering shall submit three copies and a short abstract bound in each copy.
- (ii) The Registrar shall transmit the submitted copies to the examiners.
- (iii) On completion of the examination the supervisor of the thesis shall be responsible through the Head of the Department for the deposit of two copies with the University Library.
- (iv) On completion of the examination for the Degree of Master of Engineering the disposal of the third copy submitted shall be at the discretion of the Head of the Department.
- (v) Where more than the required number of copies of a thesis are submitted any additional copies shall be returned to the candidate.

#### **(b) Degree of Doctor of Philosophy**

- (i) The candidate shall submit three copies of the thesis to the Registrar and a short abstract bound in each copy of the thesis.

**Notes:** A further unbound copy of the thesis and extract will be required by the University Library if the candidate wishes to have the thesis published by University Microfilms International. Information in this connection will be forward to the candidate when the Degree is awarded.

- (ii) On completion of the examination two copies shall be deposited with the University Library. The disposal of the third copy shall be at the discretion of the Head of the Department.

**Notes:** (i) The examination copy of any written thesis presented for a degree or diploma shall be the first copy, unless the thesis is cyclostyled printed, reproduced photographically or by electrostatic process and be bound in a form sufficiently durable for preservation and use in the University Library. The second copy may consist of a carbon duplicate of the typescript only. The copy may be placed in a Departmental reading room.

- (ii) Candidates are recommended to obtain the booklet *Guide to the Presentation of Theses* from the Library before proceeding with the typing and binding of the thesis.
- (iii) The author of a thesis has a right to impose conditions restricting the publication of his work to ensure for such a period as he may stipulate, without however curtailing the University Librarian's right to make and supply copies thereof in terms of subsection (3) of Section 21 of the Copyright Act (1962).
- (iv) Where it is suspected that a thesis contains defamatory material the University Librarian may restrict access to the thesis subject to confirmation by the Library Committee.
- (v) Supervisors are requested to notify the University Library when a thesis is submitted if it is believed to contain material which could be considered defamatory.
- (vi) Where a thesis has been presented as part of a degree which
  - (a) has been awarded but the thesis itself is a failed thesis the thesis will not be deposited in the Library;
  - (b) has not been awarded the thesis will not be deposited in the Library irrespective of whether the thesis itself has been a pass or fail grade.
- (vii) For the Fourth Professional Examination for BArch one bound copy only of the thesis is required to be submitted.
- (viii) Candidates for DipBIA are required to consult the Course Director concerning the binding of the Project for the Diploma course.

### **Abstracts**

16. Where a thesis, dissertation, research essay, or original investigation is submitted as part of an examination for a Bachelor's or Master's Degree, a Diploma, or the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy, a candidate shall at the same time submit a short abstract not exceeding 350 words, suitable for publication. The abstract shall be bound in each copy of a thesis submitted.

### **Examination Centres**

17. Pursuant to Regulation 1 hereof the University of Auckland will conduct examinations in the following



centres: Apia, Auckland, Dargaville, Gisborne, Lautoka, Nuku'alofa, Paeroa, Rotorua, Rarotonga, Suva, and Whangarei. Internal candidates are required to sit their examinations at Auckland.

## CONFERRING OF DEGREES AND ACADEMIC DRESS REGULATIONS

1. Every Degree and every Diploma of the University shall be conferred or awarded in pursuance of a resolution of the Council in that behalf and at a meeting of the Council by the Chancellor or if he is absent from New Zealand or incapacitated by sickness or otherwise then by the Vice-Chancellor.

2. Every recipient of a Degree shall receive a certificate in appropriate form, under the Common Seal of the University, that his Degree has been conferred and stating the class of Honours (if any) awarded to him.

3. Every Diploma shall be in appropriate form under the Common Seal of the University.

4. In May of each year the Council shall meet in Convocation of the University for a ceremony of conferring Degrees and awarding Diplomas. Persons desiring to have their Degree conferred or Diploma awarded (whether in person or in absentia) at a ceremony in May shall make application to the Registrar not later than 31 March in the year of the ceremony.

5. The form of words to be used by the Chancellor (or Vice-Chancellor) in conferring a Degree shall be as follows: 'By authority vested in me as Chancellor (or Vice-Chancellor) I now proceed to confer the Degrees stated upon those who, within their several Faculties, have satisfied the requirements of this University.'

6. The form of words to be used by the Chancellor (or Vice-Chancellor) in awarding a Diploma shall with the necessary changes be the same as for the conferring of a Degree.

7. The regulations for academic dress shall be as follows:

(a) Graduates must appear at all public ceremonies of the University in the academic costume proper to their Degree, but doctors may on special occasions wear a scarlet gown and graduates admitted Ad Eundem Statum may wear the academic costume of their own University. Unless the holder of a Diploma is also a graduate, the only academic dress he may wear is an undergraduate gown.

(b) The robe for the Chancellor of the University is a blue damask gown with facings of gold lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms of the University. The cap is a black velvet trencher with gold lace and tassel. The robe for the Pro-Chancellor is a black silk gown with facings of blue silk and gold lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with gold tassel. The robe for the Vice-Chancellor is a blue silk gown with facings of silver lace, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with silver lace and tassel.

The robe for the Registrar is a gown of black silk with facings of blue silk, bearing on each shoulder the coat of arms. The cap is a black velvet trencher with a black silk tassel.

(c) The gown for a Bachelor's Degree is as for the Cambridge Bachelor of Arts. The gown for a Master's Degree is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts. The hood for every Degree is the size and shape as for the Cambridge Master of Arts. The hood for a Bachelor's Degree is lined with coloured silk and bordered with white fur. The hood for a Master's Degree is lined with coloured silk only.

The colours of the linings of the hoods for the Bachelors' and Masters' Degrees are as follows:

Architecture	lemon (BCC 111 primrose)
Arts	pink (BCC 32 rosepink)
Business Administration	burgundy (Polysatin 115cm width)
Commerce	orange (BCC 57 spectrum orange)
Engineering	violet (BCC 179 violet)
Fine Arts	gold (BCC 114 gold)
Laws	light blue (BCC 194 pompadour)
Medicine	
BHB	lilac (BCC 228 mayflower lilac)
MBChB, MMedSc	crimson (BCC 240 medici crimson)
Music	white (BCC 1 white)
Optometry	blue-green (BCC 119 honey bird)
Planning	light green (BCC 171 chartreuse green)
Property Administration	silver grey (BCC 41 violet grey)
Science	dark blue (BCC 87 empire blue)

(d) The gown for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy is as for the Cambridge Master of Arts with the addition of facings four inches wide of scarlet satin (3in-BCC 209 post office red) edged with gold satin (1in-BCC 114 gold). The hood is made wholly of scarlet silk.

(e) The gown for a Doctor's Degree other than that of Doctor of Philosophy is as for the Cambridge Master of

Arts but it is made of black silk or of scarlet silk or cloth. The hood is made wholly of silk and is of the following colours for the different degrees:

Engineering .....	violet (BCC 179 violet)
Laws .....	light blue (BCC 194 pompadour)
Literature .....	pink (BCC 32 rosepink)
Medicine .....	crimson (BCC 240 medici crimson)
Music .....	white (BCC 1 white)
Science .....	dark blue (BCC 87 empire blue)

(f) The cap for all graduates other than Doctors and the officers of the University is a black trencher with a tassel.

(g) The cap for all Doctors other than the officers of the University is as for the full dress Cambridge Doctor of Philosophy, namely a round black velvet bonnet with a gold cord around the crown ending in tassels.

Notes: (1) The colour of the lining of the hood for the Degree of Master of Philosophy is that of the Faculty in which the Degree is taken.

(2) Number references are from the British Colour Council Dictionary of Colour Standards. Approximate colours in the substitute material satin may be seen on a chart at the inquiry counter at the Registry.

(3) Satin or taffeta is frequently used as a substitute material for silk which is not always obtainable.

## AWARD OF HONORARY DEGREES

Clause 19 (3) of the University of Auckland Act 1961 gives Council power to confer any degree as an honorary degree in accordance with such conditions as it may prescribe: Provided that no honorary degree shall be conferred on any person by the Council unless that person has been recommended therefore by a joint committee of the Council and the Senate set up in accordance with the Statutes or Regulations of the University. Pursuant to the above clause or the Act, Council has drawn up regulations and set up an Honorary Degrees Committee for the conferment of the following honorary degrees:

Doctor of Laws  
Doctor of Science  
Doctor of Literature  
Doctor of Music  
Any Master's Degree

Information regarding the procedure and criteria for the nomination of a candidate for one of the above honorary degrees may be obtained from either the Vice-Chancellor or the Registrar.

## FEES REGULATIONS

The following fees have been prescribed by Council and are all subject to Goods and Service Tax of 10% which is included in the following schedule.

### GENERAL FEES

<b>Abandonment</b> .....	each application	\$ 11
<b>Ad Eundem Statum Admission</b> (from overseas) .....		110
<b>Additions or Deletions to a Course of Study</b> .....	each application submitted	11
<b>Academic Certificates</b> .....	one copy	2.20
.....	extra copies, each	0.55
<b>Aegrotat Pass</b> .....	each paper (maximum \$20)	5.50
<b>Availability of Scripts</b> Viewing .....	each paper	5.50
..... Photocopying .....	each paper	11
<b>Cross-credits, Credit or Exemptions</b> .....	each paper	16.50
.....	each credit	3.30

There is a \$55 maximum for each full-time course as defined under the Tertiary Assistance Grants Regulations, with an overall maximum of \$132, e.g. BA 4-6 papers \$55; BSc, 17-36 Stage I credits \$55; BE Intermediate 42 credits \$55; BE Intermediate and 1st Professional \$110. When an application for cross-credits, credit or exemptions is based on a grant of Special Admission for which the \$27.50 fee was paid the cross-credits, credit or exemptions fee is reduced by \$27.50 (e.g. A student granted Special Admission to BE with exemption for the Intermediate and First Professional Engineering Examinations having paid \$27.50 on that application would pay \$82.50 (\$110 less \$27.50) on his cross-credits, credit or exemptions application.)

<b>Deferred Payment of Fees</b> .....		11
<b>Exclusion</b> Permission to enrol having failed to make satisfactory academic progress .....		22
<b>Extramural Enrolment</b> (University of Auckland) .....	each paper	11
.....	each credit	2.20

**Extramural Enrolment** (Massey University)

any student whose record is held at the University of Auckland who wishes to enrol extramurally for tuition at Massey University while remaining on Auckland's books .....	11
<b>Personal Interest Course</b> - Non-matriculated Students (Examining) .....	27.50
<b>Special Admission</b> .....	27.50
<b>Recount of Marks</b> .....	each paper 22
<b>*Examination Centres</b> Examinations sat at Auckland but outside normal hours .....	each paper 33
Examinations sat in New Zealand but out of Auckland .....	each paper 55
Examinations sat outside New Zealand .....	each paper 77
<b>Special Statements</b> (e.g. Admission to the Bar, etc.) .....	each statement 11

**EXAMINATION FEES**

DSc, LittD, LLD .....	each 550
DMus (for tuition fees refer Tuition and Research Fees)	
on submission of work to be examined .....	275
MD, application to be examined .....	120
on submission of thesis .....	240
<b>All other courses of study</b> .....	11% of total tuition and research fees (full time course) <del>31.60</del>

**COURSE MATERIAL**

Departments may charge for materials supplied. Briefly these materials will be in lieu of text books and charges will vary from department to department.

**STUDENTS' ASSOCIATION FEE**

Students' Association Fee .....	85.80
---------------------------------	-------

All students are required to pay the Students' Association Fee (which includes a building levy) except that

(i) The following internal students need not pay the Fee:

those enrolled for DipG&O; DipObst; DipPaed; MBChB Pt III; Master's Degree from 3rd year onwards; MPlan Thesis only; DipEd Original Investigation only; Part II only for DipEdPsych, DipClinPsych, DipGuid; Dissertation only for LLB(Hons), DipCrim; Research Essay only for BPlan, DipLGA; Project only for DipBIA, DipStats, DipMathEd; Condensed course held in April for medical research workers for Certificate in Radiochemistry only; one paper, or one set of linked papers where the corequisites are marked \*\* in the BA Schedule for Certificate of Proficiency only by graduates or graduands. If a student is not joining the Students' Association the Identity Card will be over-stamped "NOT AUSA MEMBER".

(ii) Students concurrently enrolled full-time at the Auckland Technical Institute may pay a reduced fee of \$13.20 per paper (general fee \$11, building levy \$2.20). Students concurrently enrolled full-time at Auckland College of Education may pay a reduced fee of one half of the Students' Association Fee (including the building levy). To claim these reductions such students must complete the appropriate application form obtainable from the Students' Association Office, have the form certified by the Managing Secretary of the Students' Association of the Auckland Technical Institute and submit it to the University Registry before enrolment week.

(iii) Students who are members of the Auckland University Medical Students' Association who are enrolled in year 2 or 3 of the BHB course or in year 1 or 2 of the MBChB course may pay a reduced fee exclusive of the building levy of \$33 less than the Auckland University Students' Association Fee.

**Building Levy:**

The Students' Association Fee includes a building levy of \$19.80, or \$2.20 per paper if a student is concurrently enrolled full-time at the Auckland Technical Institute. Students who since January 1961 have paid a building levy five times or more at this or any other NZ University may be exempted from further payment of the levy. To claim the exemption such students must complete the appropriate application form obtainable from the Students' Association Office and submit it to the Registry before enrolment week. Late applications will be considered but in no case after 30 November in the year for which the exemption is sought. If the levy was previously paid at another NZ University evidence of this should accompany the application.

Graduates or graduands taking one Certificate of Proficiency paper only but wishing to join the Students' Association are exempt from payment of the building levy.

**WELFARE FEE**

Welfare Fee \$22.00

All students are required to pay the Welfare Fee (with limited exceptions).

(i) The following students if they wish to use the Welfare Services must pay the Welfare Fee and the Students' Association Fee.

Students living outside Auckland and not using the University Facilities other than the Library who are

enrolled only for thesis, dissertation or research essay.

Students not required to pay the Students' Association Fee (see under Students' Association see para. (i) above).

(ii) Students enrolled full-time at Auckland College of Education or Auckland Technical Institute, may pay a reduced Welfare Fee of \$11. Evidence of having paid a welfare charge at the College or Institute in the same year must be produced at enrolment.

(iii) Students on an approved cadetship may pay a reduced Welfare Fee of \$11.

(iv) Full-time members of staff who are enrolled for courses may not use the Welfare Services except by payment of standard charges for non-student users. The Student Health Service is available only in an emergency.

(v) Students sponsored by the United Nations for DipGeotherm Tech and students under approved University exchange schemes may use the Welfare Services without payment of the fee.

## PENALTIES

**Note: General fees, late fees, fines and penalties are not refundable.**

### Late Enrolments

(A) Internal Students	\$
(a) During the Enrolment Period	
Failure to enrol on the appropriate day, morning or afternoon as required by the enrolment timetable	5.50
(b) After the Enrolment Period	22
In addition after end of first week of first term	4.40
(c) DipG&O, DipObst — after 1 March or September	
per week or part of a week	4.40
(d) DipPaed — after 1 October	4.40
per week or part of a week	4.40
(e) MBChB (final year) — after 15 November	4.40
per week or part of a week	4.40
(B) Students for Instruction in a Single Instrument (Music)	
After the Enrolment Period	22
In addition after end of first week of first term	4.40

### Late Fees for Late Applications

**Note:** Late fees are payable in addition to the General fee.

#### (i) Additions or Deletions to Courses of Study

Applications received after the date prescribed in the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) Regulation 8	4.40
--	------

#### (ii) Admission Ad Eundem Statum

from a New Zealand university	
After 15 January and until 15 February	22
from an overseas university	
After 1 September for an undergraduate course and until 15 February	22
After 30 November for a graduate course and until 15 February	22

#### (iii) Permission to enrol — After 15 January and not later than 15 February

Exclusion — failure to make satisfactory progress	22
Extramural Enrolment (University of Auckland)	22
Personal Interest Course — Non-matriculated Students (Examining)	22
Special Admission	22

**A fine of \$22 in addition to the prescribed fee and late fee** is payable on any application under (ii) and (iii) above if application is made after 15 February.

(iv) Pre-enrolment after due date (and if the due date was 15 January not later than 22 January)	22
(v) Preparatory Application form after 15 January (refer (iv) for pre-enrolment applications)	22

## TUITION AND RESEARCH FEES

**Notes:** 1. A Master's candidate required to re-submit a thesis must re-enrol and pay the prescribed fee.

2. Students may be required to pay towards the cost of their field trips.

3. No refund of fees will be made unless an 'Application to Alter Course' form is handed in to the Registry on or before the appropriate date prescribed in Regulation 8 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and approved.

4. Definitions of full-time study are listed under Scholarships, Tertiary Assistance Grants and Awards.

### Doctor of Philosophy

First and Second year of full-time study	each	288
Each subsequent 6 months or part of 6 months of full-time study		144

(Candidates registered part-time for PhD are required to pay each year half the fee prescribed for full-time study.)

### Doctor of Music

Full-time course of study	each year	288
Part-time course of study	each year	144

### Masters Degrees

First and Second years	each	288
Third and subsequent years	each	36
MBChB Year III		108

### Business Administration

Master of Business Administration Part 1	each	3300
Parts 2 and 3	each	1320
PGDipBus (Business Administration) Part 1	each	3300
Part 2	each	1320
PGDipBus (Marketing)	each paper	495

### Medicine and Human Biology

DipG&O Part I and II	each	60
Dissertation		24
DipObst, composite fee		110
DipPaed, composite fee		96

### Instruction in Single Instrument

Half hour per week or one hour per fortnight	per term	220
--	----------	-----

### All Other Courses of Study

Full-time (including limited Full-time) course of study	each year	288
---	-----------	-----

### Part-time course of study (with a maximum fee of \$288)

Papers – including Law subjects, Performance (as weighted for Music), and Studio (as weighted for Fine Arts)	each paper	48
Credits – including Studio (as weighted for Architecture)	each credit	12
Half year papers in Engineering and Law		24

For the half year papers in Engineering refer to the prescriptions for BE. Half year papers in Law are: Introduction to Commercial Law, Introduction to Company Law, Introduction to Family Law, Copyright Patent, Insurance Law, Law and Society, Legal Analysis, Legal Theory, Commercial Papers and Practice, Land Conveyancing Papers and Practice, Wills and Trusts Practice.

Dissertation, Original Investigation, Research Essay, Research Topic	first year	48
Project 44.421 for BOptom, DipGuid Part II	first year	48
	subsequent years, each	24
DipCompSci, DipEdPsych Part II; DipGeotherm Tech,		
DipMathEd, DipStats	second and subsequent years, each	36
DipClinPsych Part I	year one	108
	year two	288
Part II	first year	144
	subsequent years, each	24

#### Notes:

1. The charge covers all tuition fees but not the Students' Association fee and some other charges such as late fees, notes for courses, field trips.
2. Students exempted from the charge pay tuition fees as prescribed for the appropriate course of study.

## DISCIPLINE

Under the provisions of the University of Auckland Act 1961, the Senate has, subject to a right of appeal to the Council, the power to deal with all questions relating to the discipline of students. During the intervals between meetings of the Senate, and subject to a right of appeal to the Senate, the Vice-Chancellor may exercise alone the powers of the Senate as to discipline.

## DISCIPLINARY REGULATIONS

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Disciplinary Regulations 1972.
2. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1973.
3. In these Regulations unless the context otherwise requires:  
'Class' means any lecture, tutorial, seminar, laboratory, or other assembly of students at which tuition is being given and includes any lecture or address within the University at which students are present;

'Hall' means any hostel or hall of residence or other student accommodation under the control of the Council;  
 'Student' means a duly enrolled student of the University and includes for the purposes of Regulation 4 hereof a person applying so to enrol;

'Students' Association;' means the Auckland University Students' Association Incorporated;

'Warden' means the person who is for the time being in charge of any Hall and includes his duly appointed deputies;

'The Act' means the University of Auckland Act 1961 and its amendments;

'The University' includes any institution under the control of the Council;

'University property' includes property occupied by the University, property owned by any institution under the control of the Council, and any property held by the Crown on behalf of or for the purposes of the University.

Words and expressions defined in the Act have the meanings so defined.

4(a) Every student shall on enrolling at the University sign a declaration in the following form or to the like effect:

'I hereby solemnly promise that I will faithfully obey the rules and regulations of the University and be bound by the same.'

(b) The Senate shall have the power to impose conditions on the attendance at classes of any student and to obtain his/her undertaking to observe those conditions, either at his/her enrolment, or in the course of his/her attendance at the University in all cases where in the reasonable opinion of the Senate it is necessary so to do in order to prevent any possible disturbance to the carrying out of normal activities at the University or otherwise to maintain order and discipline.

(c) The Senate or the Discipline Committee of the Senate may as delegate of the Council exercise the powers conferred on the Council by S. 24(2) of the Act without however preventing the Council from exercising those powers.

5. No student or other member of the University shall:

(a) act in a manner contrary to the good government of the University or prejudicial to its functioning as such;

(b) wilfully or recklessly damage or deface, or wilfully move without authority, any property on the University or any other property within the University precincts;

(c) wilfully impede the activities of the University, whether in teaching, research or otherwise;

(d) wilfully create any nuisance in or on the University precincts;

(e) wilfully obstruct any officer or member of the University employed at the University in the due performance of his functions or of the work he is required to perform;

(f) Interfere by offensive behaviour or unwanted attention with the pursuit of work or study by another student, member, or officer of the University or that other person's proper enjoyment of its amenities;

(g) be in a part of the University precincts in which he is not, at that time, entitled to be, knowing that he is not entitled to be there at that time;

(h) (i) start, ride, or park without prior permission, a cycle, a motorcycle, or a motor vehicle in University grounds;

(ii) fail to comply with the University Parking Regulations at all times;

(i) fail to comply with the directions on any notice erected with the authority of the Council and governing entry, speed and exit of vehicles, and the location of parking spaces;

(j) commit any criminal offence in the University precincts;

(k) smoke

(i) in any of the Libraries;

(ii) in any General Lecture Theatre, Seminar Room, Tutorial Room or Laboratory;

(l) commit a breach of any University Statute or Regulation or of any rule of conduct made by any person authorised by the Council or the Senate to make such a rule, provided that the Statute Regulation or rule has been published in the University *Calendar* or that reasonable notice thereof has been given by other means, to students generally or to the student charged with misconduct, before the misconduct is alleged to have taken place.

6. No student shall

(a) knowingly fail to identify himself if required or to comply with such directions as may be reasonably made by the Vice-Chancellor, the Registrar, any Professor, member of the Senate, or Lecturer in order to maintain good order and discipline;

(b) knowingly fail to comply with any reasonable direction given to him by the person in charge of a group of students going to, engaged in, or returning from a field trip or any other academic activity conducted by the University beyond the University precincts, or, while a member of such a group, do anything which would constitute misconduct if done within the University precincts;

(c) fail to comply with any specific Departmental or Faculty Regulation in regard to appropriate dress in relation to safety or to professional courses;

(d) bring or consume alcoholic liquors within the precincts of the University for other than official functions except with the permission of the Senate. Permission for alcoholic liquors to be consumed at other functions will be subject to the following conditions:

(i) where the function is held in a lecture theatre, reading room, seminar room, staff study or staff common room, one senior member of the staff shall be present throughout the function;

(ii) where the function is held within the facilities under the control of the Student Union Management Committee, a senior member of the staff or a member of the Student Executive or a member of the Student Union Management Committee shall be present throughout the function;

(e) post student notices elsewhere than on the permanent notice boards provided for this purpose, and in accordance with the conditions laid down by the Students' Association.

7.(a) Where there is misconduct by a student in a class, the person in charge of the class may reprimand the student and may exclude him or her from not more than three successive class meetings. Any such exclusion for more than one class meeting shall be promptly reported to the Vice-Chancellor.

(b) Where there is misconduct by a student in the use of any University facility, the person in charge of the facility may reprimand the student and may exclude him or her from using it for any period or indefinitely. Any such exclusion shall be promptly reported to the Vice-Chancellor except where it is for a period less than one week.

(c) A student reprimanded or excluded under paragraph (a) or paragraph (b) of this Regulation may appeal to the Senate against the reprimand or order for exclusion. The Vice-Chancellor may suspend the operation of the order for exclusion until the appeal has been heard or determined.

(d) In this Regulation, 'University facility' includes the Recreation Centre but does not include the University Library and the Computer Centre.

8. The Senate shall have power

(a) to impose on any student who does not observe the provisions of these Regulations; or the conditions (if any) attached to his/her attendance at classes pursuant to Regulations 4 and 6 thereof; or any direction given under Regulation 11 hereof; or who otherwise commits any breach of University discipline; any one or more of the following penalties as it thinks fit:

(i) such sum by way of restitution as may be appropriate for any damage so caused;

(ii) a fine not exceeding \$500;

(iii) a suspension from attendance at the University or any of its classes for such period as it thinks fit;

(iv) expulsion from the University;

(v) a limitation or prohibition on his/her attendance at any class or classes at the University or his/her use or enjoyment of any of the facilities of the University;

(b) to prohibit the sitting of examinations by any student who is in default with any payment due to the University under these or any other Regulations or any Statute;

(c) to delegate the powers conferred on it by these Regulations to the Discipline Committee of the Senate without thereby preventing itself or the Vice-Chancellor pursuant to Regulation 9 hereof from exercising any such delegated power.

(d) In this Regulation, 'University facility' includes the Recreation Centre but does not include the University Library and the Computer Centre.

9. The Vice-Chancellor shall have power (subject always to Regulation 14 hereof) to exercise all the powers and authorities of the Senate under these Regulations and under the Act, including any powers delegated by the Senate to any committee of the Senate, during the intervals between meetings of the Senate or that Committee.

10. The Vice-Chancellor, the Registrar, the Director of the Computer Centre, the Physical Recreation Officer, the Head of the Audio-Visual Centre, or any Professor, member of the Senate or Lecturer shall have power to report any student to the Discipline Committee for any breach of these regulations.

11. Any Warden shall have the power (subject always to Regulation 14 hereof)

(a) from time to time to give such directions as he reasonably thinks fit for the maintenance of good order and discipline within the Hall under his charge provided however that all such directions shall if of general application be exhibited on the main notice board of the Hall to which they relate forthwith after they are given;

(b) to impose as he thinks fit on any student who does not observe any of the directions so given, any one or more of the following penalties:

(i) such sum by way of restitution as may be appropriate for any damage so caused;

(ii) a fine not exceeding \$50;

(iii) a suspension from attendance at the Hall for such period as the Warden thinks fit;

(iv) expulsion from the Hall.

12. The Vice-Chancellor, the Registrar, or any Professor, member of the Senate, or Lecturer may, in addition to reporting any breach of these Regulations to the Discipline Committee, order any student to pay the cost of replacing or repairing any University property lost, damaged or destroyed by reason of the wilfulness, negligence, or misconduct of that student. Any penalty so ordered shall be paid within 14 days.

13. The Executive of the Students' Association shall (without prejudice to the power of the Senate under S. 34(3) of the Act) have power of disciplinary control over students within the Student Union Buildings or the precincts of the Student Union Building and in exercise of that power may

(i) impose a fine not exceeding \$25 on any student guilty of any act prejudicial to the maintenance of discipline therein, and

(ii) (whether or not in addition to imposing a fine) order any student to pay as a penalty the cost of replacing or repairing any property therein lost, damaged or destroyed by reason of wilfulness, negligence, or misconduct of that student.

14. (a) All fines and other penalties imposed under Regulations 9, 11, and 12 hereof or by the Discipline Committee under powers delegated to it under Regulation 8 hereof shall forthwith be reported to the Senate by the person or body imposing them.

(b) Any student on whom a fine or other penalty is imposed under Regulations 9, 11, and 12 hereof or by any committee of the Senate under powers delegated under Regulation 8 may within fourteen (14) days of imposition of that penalty, by giving notice to the Registrar in writing, appeal to the Senate against it. The Senate may hear and determine an appeal in such manner as it thinks proper.

(c) Any student who suffers any penalty under these Regulations by a decision of the Senate or the Discipline Committee of the Senate or the Executive of the Students' Association or whose appeal under the preceding clause of this Regulation is dismissed by a decision of the Senate may within fourteen (14) days of that decision, by giving notice to the Registrar in writing, appeal against it to the Council which may hear and determine the appeal in such manner as it thinks proper. The decision of the Council shall be final.

15. (a) The grounds of Old Government House are open to all members of the University for their individual use for the purpose of quiet recreation;

(b) No organised group activities will be permitted in those grounds without specific permission of the Vice-Chancellor, acting on behalf of the Council, given in each case and in such terms as are appropriate;

(c) Members of the University may bring guests into the University grounds but not into the grounds of Old Government House except in terms of clauses (a) and (b) above;

(d) At all times, and more particularly at night, members of the University and their guests shall act in such a way as not to cause disturbance or inconvenience to those living in the grounds (both occupants of Old Government House and members of the custodial staff), or to residents in the immediate neighbourhood.

**Notes:** (i) If the above requirements are observed, no time limit on the use of the grounds will be necessary, nor shall there be any need for the Police to be on the campus by invitation or otherwise.

(ii) Members of the University while in the grounds are free to observe demonstrations which may occur in the adjoining streets, but they are reminded that the Statutory and Common Law powers of the Police enable the Police to enter the University campus and to take appropriate action in relation to offences committed thereon and to prevent a breach of the peace.

(iii) Whenever it appears likely that demonstrations of the kind mentioned in note (ii) above will occur, the Vice-Chancellor shall consult with the appropriate representatives of staff and students.

(iv) Any privileges of staff, students, and their guests in respect of the use of the grounds, may be withdrawn by the Vice-Chancellor, acting on behalf of Council; the Vice-Chancellor shall report the circumstances to the next following meeting of the Senate and Council.

16. (a) No member of the Security Service enrolled as a student at the University shall carry out any inquiries into security matters within the precincts of the University.

(b) The proposed attendance of a member of the Security Service at the University shall be discussed between the Security Service and the University Authorities before his enrolment.

17. After the discussions contemplated in the preceding sub-clause 16(b) have been held, the Senate shall determine each year what special conditions (if any) as to attendance at classes shall apply to students who are members of the Security Service in order to maintain discipline among the students of the University by preventing any possible disturbance to the carrying out of normal teaching activities.

18. Nothing in these Regulations shall prejudice the rights and remedies of the University under the general law in respect of the misconduct or negligence of any student.

## THE LIBRARY

The University Library was established in 1884 with a grant of £37 for books which were 'to be bought in England and uniformly bound in full calf with golden lettering'. Since then the Library has grown into a collection of more than 1 million volumes, excluding thousands of unbound periodicals, pamphlets, and reprints. Over 14,000 periodical titles are currently received. The Library has benefited by a number of generous gifts among them being the collections of books in Classics and Old Testament Literature bequeathed by the late Professor A. C. Paterson and an extensive collection of material relating to the Labour movement in



New Zealand and other countries presented by Mr P. W. G. McAra.

The University Library comprises the General Library in the Library Building on the corner of Princes Street and Alfred Street, divisional libraries in Architecture Property and Planning, Biological Sciences, Continuing Education, Engineering, Fine Arts, Geography, Geology, Law, Maori Studies, Medicine, Music, Science. In addition there are departmental reading rooms in a number of subjects. The General Library contains most of the books needed for under-graduate reading in arts subjects. It also contains more advanced material in Accountancy, Anthropology, Education, Geography, History, Languages and Literature, both classical and modern, Philosophy, Psychology.

A separate Undergraduate Reading Room is situated in the former Ballroom of Old Government House. This contains 140 seats for readers and a collection of works in heavy demand.

The Audio Visual Library is located in the Arts I Building. It contains a collection of videotapes, radio cassettes and slides.

More information about the Library, its services and organisation, can be found in the *Library Guide* and in the pamphlet *Books and Reading Accommodation in the University of Auckland*. These are available from the Information Desk in the General Library. Library tours are offered during the week preceding enrolment and during the first week of lectures. Readers are encouraged to seek assistance throughout the year from Reference Department staff.

## LIBRARY REGULATIONS

1. These regulations may be cited as the Library Regulations 1970 and shall come into force on 1 January, 1971.

2. Except where otherwise stated

(a) these regulations shall apply to all sections of the University Library, that is, the General Library, Undergraduate Reading Room, Architecture Property and Planning, Biological Sciences, Centre for Continuing Education, Engineering, Fine Arts, Geology, Geography, Law, Maori Studies, Medicine, Music and Science, and such other sections as may be added by the Senate;

(b) in these regulations 'books' includes all types of printed, written and photographic material, and (except where the context otherwise requires) gramophone records and tapes.

### Hours of Opening (General Library only)

3. The hours of opening shall be: Mondays to Thursdays

8.30 am – 11 pm

Fridays 8.30 am – 8 pm

(Third Term – 11 pm)

May Study Break (first two weeks)

8.30 am – 6 pm

Summer Vacation

9 am – 5 pm

(Wed – 8 pm)

Saturdays

9 am – 5 pm

(Third Term – 9 pm)

9 am – 1 pm

9 am – 12 noon

The Library shall be open on Sundays in first and second terms and August Study Break from 9 am to 5 pm and in third term from 9 am to 9 pm. No lending services shall be available on Sundays. The Library shall be closed on Anniversary Day, Waitangi Day, Good Friday, Easter Saturday, Easter Sunday, Easter Monday, Anzac Day, Queen's Birthday and for up to three weeks from and including Christmas Eve.

These hours may be varied at the discretion of the University Librarian and any variation shall be appropriately notified in the General Library.

### Readers

4. (a) All members of the University Council, all professors, lecturers and junior lecturers, all enrolled students of the University, and all library, administrative and technical staff shall be readers for the purpose of these Regulations and may

(i) use all sections of the Library; and

(ii) on completion of such registration formalities as the University Librarian requires, borrow books from it; provided that no person shall be deemed an undergraduate member of the University unless he is currently enrolled as such.

(b) By special permission of the University Librarian any person not included among those authorised by clause (a) of this Regulation may be a reader and accorded full or partial use of Library facilities.

(c) The University Librarian may at any time require from any reader as a condition of that reader's use of the Library and borrowing facilities that he pay to the University a sum of not more than \$15 as a deposit to be applied in payment or part payment of any sum for which he may become liable under Regulation 6 (d). Any balance of the deposit shall be refunded on the termination of his use of the library.

(d) Persons admitted as approved readers under clause (b) of this Regulation may be charged an annual fee which shall be determined by the Library Committee from time to time\*. No fee shall be charged to retired

members of the University staff or such persons as the Librarian may determine.

\*The fee for 1988 will be \$55 including GST.

### **Borrowing**

5. (a) No reader shall borrow any book otherwise than in accordance with these regulations.

(b) (General Library only). Borrowing starts at 9am and ceases 20 minutes before closing time. No borrowing on Sundays. The hours during which books may be borrowed may be varied at the discretion of the University Librarian. Borrowers shall write their name and address clearly and legibly on the book card of each book and present book and card at the exit for stamping along with their identity card. The address given shall be that to which any notices should be sent. The desk assistant shall stamp the book with the date on which it is to be returned.

(c) Any person on leaving the Library shall on demand present all books and personal property for inspection.

(d) (General Library only). Any book on the open shelves which has a book card and date slip may be borrowed until the next end of term or for such shorter periods as the Librarian may decide. Borrowers shall be required to check the date stamped in the book by the desk assistant. Glass case books without 'not to be borrowed' labels may be borrowed for a fortnight only. All other materials shall be used only in the Library except that Teaching Staff and Postgraduate Students may borrow bound volumes of periodicals for fourteen days, and theses for fourteen days.

(e) Books from any section of the Library other than the General Library shall be borrowed direct from that Section.

(f) All books shall be subject to recall within 24 hours. Borrowers who fail to respond to a recall notice within 24 hours shall incur a fine of (including GST) of \$1.50 plus \$1.50 for each further 24 hours that the book is overdue. Borrowers who retain other books beyond the date for return stamped on the date slip incur a fine of (including GST) of 25c per day whether a notice has been sent or not.

(g) The Librarian shall be under no obligation to notify borrowers when books are overdue and a fine may still be charged when books are returned after the date stamped, even though no notice has been received.

(h) Borrowers who wish to renew a book on limited loan for a further period may apply by letter (giving author, title and call number on the spine of the book) or in person, or (in the case of theses, periodicals or glass case books) by telephone. Renewal will be refused if the book is reserved, and may be refused at the discretion of an authorised librarian. At the end of the term, all outstanding books shall be returned or presented for renewal at the Lending Desk. They cannot be renewed by letter or by telephone at this time.

(i) Readers may reserve for borrowing one book a day by filling in a reservation card at the Lending Desk. The length of loan allowed shall depend on the number of other readers who are also waiting for the book. Borrowers who return limited loan reserve books late shall incur a fine (including GST) of \$1.50 per volume for each 24 hours the book is overdue.

(j) Books which are in heavy demand may be kept behind the Lending Desk. These Desk Copies shall be available for a specified period (advertised in the Library concerned) on surrender of the reader's identity card and may not be removed from the Library except in the case of overnight loans. Failure to return Desk Copies on time shall incur a fine (including GST) of \$1 per volume for each hour or part of an hour for which the book is not returned.

(k) Teaching staff and postgraduate students may apply to borrow books from another library through the Interloans Assistant. Such books are subject to the conditions imposed by that library.

(l) The gramophone records held in the General Library shall be available for borrowing on payment of a subscription determined by the University Librarian from time to time.\*

(m) Library books may be taken out of New Zealand only with the prior permission of the University Librarian.

(n) Authorised librarians may refuse to issue excessive numbers of books to any one reader.

\*Current subscriptions are: students \$14; staff and graduate borrowers \$16 (including GST).

Subscription to complete collection including compact discs \$40 (including GST) for staff and students.

### **Discipline**

6. (a) Bags, satchels and briefcases shall not be taken into the Library.

(b) Under no circumstances shall a book be passed on to another reader without being reissued in that reader's name. Where this regulation is broken the reader in whose name the book is issued shall remain liable for all fines payable by reason of failure to return a book which is overdue or recalled.

(c) Every reader shall immediately notify to the Library any change of his address and thereupon renew the borrowing of all books issued to him.

(d) (i) Readers shall be responsible for, and shall make good, any loss of or damage to books on loan to them or being used by them in the Library. In addition to the cost of replacement or repair, readers may be charged an

administration fee of \$10 (including GST), whether or not the book if lost is subsequently found and returned in good order.

(ii) The loss of a book shall be reported immediately to an authorised librarian.

(iii) A lost book remains the property of the University, notwithstanding payment of the bill for its replacement, and must be returned if found. A refund (in whole or part, according to the condition of the book on return) will be made for it but the administration fee may be retained.

(e) No reader shall deface or mark any book.

(f) The reservation of seats in the Library shall not be permitted. Books and any other articles left for any length of time on chairs or tables may be removed by any of the Library staff. No responsibility is accepted for personal belongings left in the Library.

(g) Silence shall be observed in all public reading areas.

(h) Bottles of ink shall not be brought into the Library.

(i) No reader shall smoke or shall consume food or drink in any part of the Library open to readers.

(j) A warning signal will be given 15 minutes before closing time and all readers shall vacate the Library by closing time.

(k) Library fines or bills shall be paid at the lending desk of the Library concerned.

(l) Where a fine or charge is not paid within 14 days of becoming due:

(i) the University Librarian may withdraw library privileges from the reader in default for such period as he thinks fit;

(ii) the Senate may impose on the reader any of the following penalties; prohibit the sitting of examinations; withholding of examination scripts; refusal of re-enrolment for the next academic year; disqualification from graduation.

(m) No reader may borrow from the Library while any fine or charge payable by him is outstanding.

(n) Any authorised librarian may require any reader who is guilty of disorderly or improper conduct or of any breach of these regulations to withdraw from the Library and the University Librarian may withdraw library privileges from that person for such period as he thinks fit. Nothing in these regulations shall limit the application to the Library (where relevant) of the Disciplinary Regulations 1972.

**Note:** The unauthorised borrowing or removal of books is regarded as a serious disciplinary offence.

### Copyright

7. Every reader using copying facilities in the Library shall duly comply with the laws on copyright.

**Note:** (i) Readers are warned that if a copyright work is copied the copying must be a "fair dealing for the purpose of research or private study only" to comply with the laws on copyright.

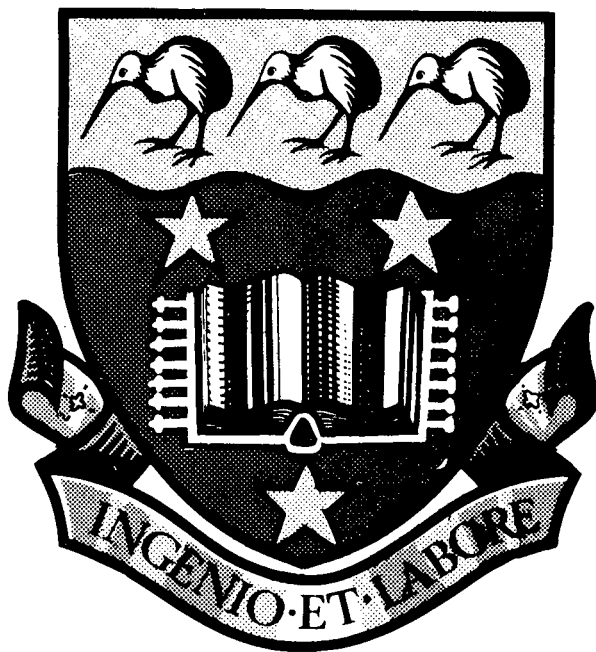
(a) No more than one copy of the work must be taken.

(b) No whole copyright work by any author can be copied.

(c) Single extracts must not exceed 4000 words. If a series of extracts is required, each extract must not exceed 3000 words to a total of 8000 words. In neither case must the total amount copied exceed 10% of the whole work.

(ii) These rules apply to coin-operated copying machines and not to photocopying supplied by librarians.

(iii) Failure to observe these rules may be treated as a breach of discipline. Users who are in doubt as to whether an item is in copyright should consult a member of the Library Staff.



## ARMS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

as granted by Garter, Clarenceux and Norry and Ulster, Kings of Arms by Letters Patent bearing date the 15th February 1962 and recorded in the College of Arms, London.

### Heraldic Description

Azure between three Mulletts Argent an open Book proper edged and bound Or with seven clasps on either side Gold on a Chief wavy also Argent three Kiwis proper.

On a scroll set below the Arms appear the words 'Ingenio et Labore'.

### Symbolism

The open book together with the motto 'Ingenio et Labore', freely translated as 'by natural ability and hard work', indicate in a general way the aim of the institution and combined with the three stars express the idea of learning pursued under the sky of the Southern Hemisphere. The kiwis are indicative of New Zealand as the bird is absolutely confined to its Islands and the silver wavy chief upon which they are set directs attention to the fact that Auckland is on the sea coast.

**Note:** British Colour Council Dictionary of Colour Standards, references: AZURE (BCC 196) OR (BCC 114).

# Faculty of Arts

## Contents

---

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	98 Degree of Bachelor of Arts
	101 Schedule of Papers for Bachelor of Arts
	131 Degree of Master of Arts
	133 Schedule of Papers for Master of Arts
	138 Degree of Master of Literature

---

<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	139 Department of Anthropology
	145 Department of Art History
	145 Department of Asian Languages and Literatures
	148 Department of Classics and Ancient History
	157 Department of Economics
	158 Department of Education
	161 Department of English
	162 Department of Geography
	164 Department of Germanic Languages and Literature
	166 Department of History
	170 Department of Mathematics and Statistics
	170 Department of Music
	171 Department of Philosophy
	172 Department of Physics
	172 Department of Political Studies
	173 Department of Psychology
	175 Department of Romance Languages
	179 Department of Russian
	180 Department of Sociology

---

<b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>	182 Diploma in Broadcast Communication
	183 Diploma in Drama
	184 Diploma in Education
	184 Diploma in Educational Psychology
	185 Diploma in English Language Teaching
	187 Diploma in Guidance and Counselling
	188 Diploma in Local Government and Administration
	189 Postgraduate Diploma in Social Research

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### FACULTY OF ARTS

The Faculty of Arts offers a first degree, the Bachelor of Arts, and a Master of Arts, which may be awarded with or without honours.

The BA is intended to be a general degree, containing a number of different subjects, but at least one subject has to be carried to Stage III level (sometimes informally called a 'major'). Students can choose from a very large number of subjects, including some in Science and Commerce. They can thus partially prepare themselves for a range of occupations, and credits may be granted in respect of Teachers' College courses. But the concept behind the degree is more that of a liberal education than a vocational one.

In the MA a student usually works within one particular discipline, and more often than not the degree will include a research component.

The BA is, if taken full-time, a 3 year degree, but it may be taken part-time. The MA, an Honours degree, must be taken within a limited period, varying according to discipline, but not more than three years in any case. Several Diplomas are available within the Faculty, normally post-graduate, and with a vocational emphasis. They include the Diplomas in Broadcast Communication, Drama, Education, Educational Psychology, Guidance and Counselling, and Local Government and Administration.

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS BA

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations; for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts shall follow a course of study of not fewer than three years.
2. The course of study for the Degree shall consist of twenty-one papers selected from those listed in the Schedule to these Regulations. Papers are classified in three stages, I, II, III.
3. No course of study for the Degree shall include more than seven papers selected from Group B, nor more than eighteen in total from Pure and Applied Mathematics and subjects in Group B.
4. Every course of study for the Degree shall include
  - (a) at least six papers in one subject of which three are at Stage III level;
  - (b) at least eleven papers higher than Stage I level selected from two or more subjects;
  - (c) no more than eleven papers in any one subject.
5. Every course of study shall consist of four, five or six subjects: provided that in exceptional circumstances the Senate may, upon the recommendation of the Heads of Departments in which the candidate proposes to take advanced papers, approve a course consisting of more than six subjects.
6. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than nine papers for this Degree.

#### Requirements for Particular Subjects

7. A candidate wishing to be enrolled in any subject which is also a subject of examination for the Degree of Bachelor of Science shall comply with such of the course Regulations for that Degree relating to prerequisites, combinations of subjects, and practical work, as are applicable to that subject, save where the Senate in individual cases allows otherwise.

#### Botany, Chemistry, Economics, Geography, Mathematics, Physics, Zoology

- 8.(a) A candidate may with the permission of the Senate enrol for Stage II papers of a subject to which this Regulation applies without having been credited with the Stage I papers. Candidates credited with Stage II papers shall not also have the Stage I papers of the subject credited to their courses. If the examiner certifies that the candidate though failing a Stage II paper or papers, attained the standard of a pass at Stage I of the subject, the candidate shall have the appropriate Stage I paper or papers credited to his or her course.

- (b) This Regulation applies to the following subjects:

Applied Mathematics	Chemistry	Geography	Pure Mathematics
Botany	Economics	Physics	Zoology

#### Chinese, Indonesian, Japanese

- 9.(a) A candidate with previous knowledge of any subject to which this Regulation applies may be required by

the Senate to take Stage II papers of that subject without having passed Stage I papers. A candidate who passes Stage II papers shall be credited with Stage II papers but shall not be credited with Stage I papers as papers for any University degree or diploma. If the examiner certifies that the candidate though failing a Stage II paper or papers, attained the standard of a pass at Stage I of the subject, the candidate shall have the appropriate Stage I paper or papers credited to his or her course.

(b) This Regulation applies to the following subjects: Chinese, Indonesian, Japanese.

#### Law

10.(a) This Regulation applies (notwithstanding the provisions of Regulations 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6) to a candidate for this Degree who has been credited for this Degree with not fewer than fifteen papers (in this Regulation called 'arts papers'), of which three are at Stage III level in one subject and five others are at a higher level than Stage I.

(b) Where the candidate:

(i) has been credited with fifteen arts papers and

(ii) has been credited for the Degree of LLB or LLB (Hons) with six subjects from those listed in Parts I and II of 10 (f) below, of which at least three are from Part II – the candidate shall be entitled to be credited with those six subjects as the remaining six papers for this Degree.

(c) Where the candidate:

(i) has been credited with more than fifteen but fewer than twenty-one arts papers and

(ii) has been credited for the Degree of LLB or LLB (Hons) with one or more subjects from those listed in Parts I and II of 10 (f) below the candidate shall be entitled to be credited with it or them as the remaining paper or papers for this Degree, provided that only subjects listed in Part II shall be credited as papers at Stage II.

(d) A candidate who has completed or is completing the course for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours) under the Regulations published in the University of Auckland *Calendar* 1966, and who invokes this Regulation, may be credited with the subject Constitutional and Administrative Law in place of the subject Constitutional Law.

(e) This present regulation being in substitution for that which appeared in the University of Auckland *Calendar* 1987 ("the old regulation") – a candidate who before 1988 enrolled for this Degree and for any part of the First Law Examination for the Degree of LLB or LLB(Hons) may proceed under the old regulation but with the substitution of the Schedule to this present regulation; upon condition that the candidate completes the course for this Degree in 1988 or 1989.

(f) Part I

- 25.205 Administrative Law
- 25.102 Constitutional Law (before 1989)
- 25.209 Copyright, Patents, Trademarks, Un-fair Competition (before 1988)
- 25.209 Intellectual Property (after 1987)
- 25.210 Criminology
- 25.211 Family Law
- 25.212 Industrial Law
- 25.213 International Institutions
- 25.214 International Law
- 25.217 Jurisprudence (before 1978)
- 25.225 Law and Society (if taken, after 1988, for the Law II Examination)
- 25.218 Legal History (if taken for the Law II Examination)
- 25.219 Legal Process (before 1978)
- 25.103 Legal System
- 25.226 Legal Theory and Analysis (if taken for the Law II Examination)
- 25.232 Litigation
- 25.220 Local Government Law
- 25.224 Pacific Legal Studies
- 25.106 Public Law
- 25.234 Welfare Law
- After 1977 and before 1989:
- Any two of 25.225 Law and Society
- 25.226 Legal Analysis

#### 25.227 Legal Theory

Part II

- 25.301 Advanced Administrative Law
- 25.303 Advanced Constitutional Law
- 25.304 Advanced Criminology
- 25.305 Advanced Family Law
- 25.306 Advanced Industrial Law
- 25.307 Advanced International Law
- 25.335 Advanced Law and Society
- 25.317 Advanced Legal Philosophy
- 25.324 Air and Space Law
- 25.310 Comparative Law
- 25.311 Conflict of Laws
- 25.313 Environmental Law
- 25.315 International Trade
- 25.316 Law Reform
- 25.225 Law and Society (if taken, after 1988, for the Law III Examination)
- 25.218 Legal History (if taken for the Law III Examination)
- 25.317 Legal Philosophy (before 1988)
- 25.317 Legal Theory (before 1978)
- 25.226 Legal Theory and Analysis (if taken for the Law III Examination)
- 25.325 Maori Land Law
- 25.336 Natural Resources Law
- 25.319 Planning Law
- 25.320 Restitution

**Music**

11.(a) Except with the leave of the Senate, no candidates may advance in Music (that is take any papers in that subject beyond Stage I level) unless they have, before enrolling for any Stage I paper in Music, satisfied the Head of Department that they have attained a suitable standard in the subject.

(b) Candidates advancing in Music shall comply with Regulation 6 of the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music as if they were enrolled for that Degree.

**Oral Work**

12. In each of the subjects Chinese, Indonesian and Japanese a candidate shall be required to pass in the oral work as well as the written papers.

**Cross-credits, Credit, and Exemptions**

13.(a) Except in the case of students to whom Regulation 10 applies, the total cross-credits, credits and exemptions granted to a candidate under Regulations 12, 13 and 14 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall not exceed ten papers for this Degree.

(b) In the case of students to whom Regulation 10 applies, the maximum number of cross-credits, credits and exemptions granted to a candidate under Regulations 12, 13 and 14 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall be determined by the Dean.

14. Notwithstanding anything in these Regulations a candidate who has successfully completed:

(i) a course or courses at Teachers' College under the control of the Auckland Teachers' Colleges Council;

or

(ii) the requirements for a Certificate Course of the Centre for Continuing Education;

or

(iii) the course either for the Diploma in Nursing or the Diploma in Physiotherapy at the Auckland Technical Institute;

or

(iv) Studio I for BFA but is not completing that Degree;

(v) Legal System for LL.B, but is not completing that Degree

as listed in the Schedule to Regulation 14 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), may be granted credit for this Degree as provided by that Regulation.

15. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations. Such a course may include papers offered in other Faculties.

16.(a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

(b) A candidate who gained credit in any unit or units under any of the former Regulations for this Degree, shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers as the Senate shall determine.

(c) For candidates who enrolled for this Degree before 1973 the subject prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions, where not covered by these Regulations, shall be determined by the Head of the Department concerned.

(d) A candidate who gained credit in any paper under any of the former Regulations may complete the Degree under these present Regulations.

(e) These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1981.

**Schedule**

1. This Schedule sets out paper numbers, prerequisites, corequisites and other conditions applying to courses for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts.

2. This Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.

3.(a) The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.

(b) Where a prerequisite has been waived by a Head of Department and re-imposed as a corequisite the paper or papers as to which that corequisite is imposed may not be credited as a pass for the candidate's course of study unless and until he has passed that corequisite.

4.(a) The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, if a corequisite of a paper is failed then the paper passed cannot be used as a prerequisite to other courses.

(b) Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, the corequisites marked \*\* in the Schedule are linked in the sense that they

(i) must be attempted in the same year and will not be credited separately;



(ii) will be treated as a unit for the purpose of Examination Regulation 5(b), of the Examination Regulations.

5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.

6. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, a candidate may not enrol for any paper until he satisfies all prerequisite and corequisite requirements and other requirements listed in the Schedule.

The papers prescribed for this Degree are:

## SCHEDULE

Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>GROUP A</b>				
<b>ANCIENT HISTORY</b>				
<b>Egyptian Options</b>				
12.100 Near Eastern History			11.100	
12.200 Egypt in Dynasty XVIII	12.100 or 11.100	12.102 or 12.103	12.320	By special permission of the Head of Department the corequisites may be waived
12.210 Egyptian Language 1	as 12.200			
*12.220 Egypt in Dynasties V-XI	as 12.200	as 12.200	12.300	as 12.200
*12.300 Egypt in Dynasties V-XI	12.200 12.210		12.220	The prerequisite 12.210 may be waived for students who have passed, or are taking one of 12.301, 12.322, 12.332, 12.303, 12.313, 12.321, 12.323 with language prerequisite
12.310 Egyptian Language II	12.210 or 11.100			
*12.320 Egypt in Dynasty XVIII	12.220, 12.210		12.200	as 12.300
<b>Mesopotamian Options</b>				
12.201 The Neo-Assyrian Empire	12.100 or 11.100	as 12.200	12.301	as 12.200
12.211 Akkadian Language	as 12.200			
*12.221 Mesopotamia in the 18th Century B.C.	12.100	as 12.200	12.321	as 12.200
12.301 The Neo-Assyrian Empire	12.211, 12.221		12.201	The prerequisite 12.211 may be waived for students who have passed, or are taking one of 12.300, 12.320, 12.322, 12.332, 12.303, 12.313, 12.323 with language prerequisite.
*12.321 Mesopotamia in the 18th Century B.C.	12.201, 12.211		12.221	as 12.301
<b>Greek Options</b>				
12.102 Greek History				
*12.202 Greece and Persia	12.102 or Greek II	12.100, 11.100 or 12.103	12.332	If 12.202 is taken as part of Greek III no corequisite is required; also as 12.200
12.222 Tyranny	as 12.202	as 12.202	12.322	as 12.202
12.322 Tyranny	10.100, 12.202		12.222 10.309	The prerequisite 10.100 may be satisfied by 10.200 and may be waived for students who have passed or are taking one of 12.300, 12.301, 12.303, 12.313, 12.320, 12.321, 12.323 with their language prerequisite
*12.332 Greece and Persia	10.100, 12.222		12.202 10.309	as 12.322

Title of Paper		Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
Roman Options					
12.103	Roman History				
†12.203	Pax Romana	11.103 or 12.103 or Latin II	12.100, 11.100 or 12.102	11.103 12.323 09.308	If 12.203 is taken as part of Latin III no corequisite is required; also as 12.200 as 12.203
12.213	A subject in Roman History	as 12.203	as 12.203 09.308	12.313 09.308	
†12.303	Roman Britain	09.102, 12.203		03.319	
12.313	A subject in Roman History	as 12.303		12.213 09.308	The prerequisite 09.102 may be satisfied by 09.100 or 09.200, and may be waived for students who are taking, or have passed, one of 12.300, 12.301, 12.320, 12.321, 12.322, 12.332 with their language prerequisite
†12.323	Pax Romana	as 12.303		12.203 09.308	
Other Options					
†12.307	Special Topic in Comparative Civilisations	12.100, 03.101	12.220 or 12.200, or 03.206	03.337	With special permission of the Head of Department one of the corequisites may be waived. Candidates who are enrolled for or have passed Latin III may enrol without prerequisites. Candidates who are enrolled for or have passed Greek III may enrol without prerequisites
12.314	Historians of Rome	12.103 and any Stage II Ancient History paper			
*12.324	Historians of Greece	12.102 and any Stage II Ancient History paper			

1. One approved paper from another subject may, with the consent of the Head of Department, be substituted and counted as part of the subject Ancient History for the purposes of Regulation 4 and MA Regulation 1(b). With the consent of the Head of Department students may offer as Stage III papers one or two of the papers 12.400, 12.401, 12.402, 12.404, 12.409, 12.412, 12.419, 12.422 as prescribed for the MA Degree.

2. Students who passed any of 12.200, 12.201, 12.202, 12.203 with language before 1977 shall take such prerequisites for Stage III as the Head of Department may require; the Head of Department may approve other linguistic qualifications which are in his/her opinion appropriate.

**Note:** 11.103 is a valid prerequisite to 12.203 only under the conditions given in the prescription under 11.103.

## ANTHROPOLOGY

### Anthropology I

03.100	Introduction to Social Anthropology		
03.101	Introduction to Archaeology and Biological Anthropology		
03.102	Introduction to Maori Society		04.101
03.103	Ethnomusicology: An Introduction to World Music	28.105 or permission of Head of Department	28.114

### Anthropology II

03.200	Ethnography of Island Polynesia	03.100		Available to candidates who have not passed 03.100 provided that they have passed four papers in any subject or subjects and take 03.100 as a corequisite
03.201	Melanesian Ethnography	03.100		
*03.202	Social Organisation	03.100		As for 03.200
*03.203	Anthropology and the Concept of Culture	03.100		As for 03.200
*03.204	Economic Prehistory	03.101		Available to candidates who have not passed 03.101 provided that they have passed four papers in any subject or subjects and take 03.101 as a corequisite
03.206	Origins of Civilisation	03.101		
03.207	Human Evolution	03.101		

	Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
03.208	The Coming of the Maori		03.102 or 04.101 or permission of Head of Department	04.203	
03.209	Ethnomusicology: Folk and Traditional Music of the Western Continents	03.103 or 28.114	28.103	28.214	
03.210	Ethnic Groups and Interethnic Relations	03.100			As for 03.200
*03.211	Traditional Maori Society	03.102 or 04.101 or 24.120 or permission of Head of Department		04.202	
†03.212	Sociolinguistics	03.100		83.202, 18.205	As for 03.200
03.213	Development of Ethnography	03.100			As for 03.200
03.214	Issues in Social Theory	03.100			As for 03.200
03.215	Current Issues in Archaeology	03.101			As for 03.204
03.216	Maori Kinship and Community	03.102 or 04.101		04.207	
Anthropology III					
03.300	History of Anthropology	03.100	03.202, or 03.214 or any two of 03.200, 03.201, 03.203, 03.210, 03.211, 04.202.		
*03.301	Kinship and Marriage	03.100	03.202 or 03.214		
03.302	Contemporary Problems in Social Anthropology	03.202, 03.214 or 03.203			
*03.304	Social History of Maori Land Legislation	One or more Stage II papers in Social Anthropology or Maori Studies or permission of Head of Department		04.308	The prerequisites may be waived provided 03.306/04.302 is taken as corequisite
†03.305	Special Topic In Melanesia		03.201 and 03.202 or 03.214, or permission of Head of Department		
03.306	Topics in Contemporary Maori Society	One or more Stage II papers in Maori Studies or Social Anthropology		04.302	
03.307	Folk Classification	03.100 and permission of Head of Department	03.202 or 03.214		
03.308	Advanced Method and Theory in Archaeology	03.101	03.100 or 03.102/ 04.101; and 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/ 04.203 or 03.215 or permission of Head of Department		
†03.309	Primate Behaviour and Society	03.101 or permission of Head of Department	03.207 or permission of Head of Department		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisite and corequisite may be waived provided appropriate science papers have been passed
*03.310	Social Movements	03.100 and permission of Head of Department			
03.311	Studies in Oral Literature	03.202 or 03.214, or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department			

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
03.313	Contemporary Polynesia	03.100	03.200	03.329	
03.314	Problems in Asian Prehistory and Biological Anthropology	03.101	03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203		
03.315	Regional Prehistory: Oceania	03.101	03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215 or permission of Head of Department		
*03.316	Regional Prehistory	03.101	One of 03.204, 03.206, 03.207, 03.208/04.203		
†03.317	Language and Society	03.100, and permission of Head of Department		83.308	
03.318	Music of Oceania	03.209	28.201	28.314	The corequisites for 28.201 are waived for students of 03.318
†03.319	Roman History: Britain from the Iron Age to the Anglo Saxons	12.103 and 03.101		12.303	By special permission of the Head of relevant Department the prerequisite may be waived
03.320	The Anthropology of Agriculture	03.101 and 03.202 or 03.214; or 03.100 and 03.101 and permission of Head of Department			
*03.322	Urban Anthropology	03.202 or 03.214; or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department			
03.323	Diachronic Anthropology	03.202 or 03.200 or 03.201 or 03.214; 03.100 and permission of Head of Department			
03.325	Experimental Archaeology	03.101	03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215 or permission of Head of Department		
†03.326	Statistical Methods in Anthropology	03.100 or 03.101			
03.327	Human Osteology and Forensics for the Archaeologist	03.207			By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisite may be waived, provided appropriate science papers have been passed
*03.329	Contemporary South Pacific Societies	03.200 or 03.201		03.305 03.313	
*03.330	Special Topic in Archaeology	03.101	} 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203		
†03.331	Archaeological Resource Management	03.101			
†03.333	Special Topic in Social Anthropology	03.100 and permission of Head of Department			
†03.334	Special Topic in Social Anthropology	03.100 and permission of Head of Department			
†03.335	Special Topic in Social Anthropology	03.100 and permission of Head of Department			

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
†03.336	Special Topic in Social Anthropology	03.202 or 03.214			
*03.337	Special Topic in Comparative Civilisations	0.3.101 and 12.100	03.206 and 12.200 or 12.220	12.307	By special permission of the Head of Department one of the corequisites may be waived
03.338	Special Topic in Biological Anthropology	03.101	03.207 or permission of Head of Department		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisite and corequisite may be waived, provided appropriate Science papers have been passed
†03.339	Special Topic in Culture History	Permission of Head of Department		83.302	
†03.340	Field Methods in Archaeology	03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215			

## ART HISTORY

### Art History I

- 19.151 Renaissance Art to c.1520  
 19.152 Western Art from c.1840 to the present day  
 19.153 Maori and Other Polynesian Arts

### Art History II

- 19.259 Topics in 18th and early 19th Century Art  
 19.260 Topics in Baroque Art  
 19.261 Topics in 17th and early 18th Century Art in Northern Europe
- } Any two of  
 19.151, 19.152 or  
 19.153

### Art History III

- \*19.301 Special Topic in Medieval Art to be prescribed by the Head of Department  
 Two of 19.257, 19.258, 19.259, 19.260, 19.261 or two of 19.251, 19.252, 19.253
- 19.302 Mid 19th Century Painting in France and Britain  
 19.304 Dürer and his Sources and influence  
 19.305 NZ Art (General)
- } 19.302 or 19.307  
 or 19.308
- †19.306 Special Topic in Western Art after 1500  
 19.307 Art in the USA, 1945 to the present day  
 19.308 Topics in Early 20th Century Art 1987: 20th Century Sculpture  
 19.309 Women in Art
- } As for 19.301
- } 19.306 under  
 1981 Regulations
- \*19.310 Topics in 17th Century Graphic Art  
 19.311 Contemporary New Zealand Art

Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>ASIAN GEOGRAPHY</b>				
Asian Geography I				
20.130 Geography of East Asia				
Asian Geography II				
*20.240 Geography of Malaysia Singapore and Indonesia (odd years only)	20.102 or 20.130		20.310	With permission of the Head of Department a student may enrol in this course without fulfilling prerequisites if two papers in Asian Studies have been passed.

**ASIAN HISTORY**

Asian History I				
24.130 China since the Opium War				If a candidate attempts papers in both History and Asian History at the same level they will count as papers in separate subjects but not otherwise.
24.132 Nationalism and Revolution in Vietnam, Thailand and Indonesia			24.221 under 1980 Regulations	
24.133 The Development of Modern Japan				
Asian History II				
24.222 China under the Ming and Qing dynasties	Two stage I papers in History and/or Asian History	Papers 24.222, 24.223, 24.224 are not corequisite, but candidates are strongly advised to take 24.223 and 24.224 in the same year.		In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may waive prerequisites or require them to be taken as corequisites.
†24.223 State and Society in pre-colonial Island S.E. Asia	As for 24.222		24.220 under 1980 Regulations	
24.224 State and Society in pre-colonial Mainland S.E. Asia	As for 24.222		24.220 under 1980 Regulations	
Asian History III				
24.312 Sino-Japanese relations since the Meiji restoration	Two Stage II papers in History and/or Asian History			In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may waive one prerequisite paper, provided it is taken as a corequisite.
24.330 British Imperialism in S.E. Asia				
24.340 Theravada Buddhism and Islam in S.E. Asian History				

**ASIAN POLITICS**

Asian Politics I				
*30.103 China since 1949; The Politics of an Emerging Superpower				Students wishing to advance in Political Studies should carefully note the prerequisites listed under Political Studies II and III in this Schedule.

Title of paper		Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
Asian Politics II					
30.210	Southeast Asian Foreign and Defence Policies	Any two papers from Political Studies I and/or Asian Politics I			The Head of Department may exempt students who wish to enrol in 30.210 or 30.308 from prerequisites, if they have passed other relevant papers in, for example, Asian Geography, Asian History, Asian Politics, or Asian Languages & Literatures.
Asian Politics III					
*30.308	The Foreign and Domestic Politics of an Asian Nation: Japan Incorporated	Any two papers from Political Studies II and/or Asian Politics II			

## BIBLICAL HISTORY AND LITERATURE

### Biblical History and Literature I (Not available until further notice)

*11.100	The History of the Near East from Neolithic Times to Alexander the Great		11.101	12.100	By special permission of the Head of Department 11.100 may be taken without 11.101
*11.101	Biblical Literature of the Old Testament		11.100		
*11.103	Roman History		11.113	12.103	By special permission of the Head of Department 11.103 may be taken without 11.113
*11.113	Biblical Literature of the New Testament		11.103		This paper may not be taken without prior or concurrent enrolment in paper 11.103 or 12.103

### Biblical History and Literature II (Not available until further notice)

*11.200	The History of Israel to AD 135				
*11.201	The History of Christian Origins to AD 135				
*11.202	The Biblical Archaeology of a prescribed period				
*11.203	The Apocrypha with prescribed texts				

## CHINESE

Chinese I					
48.100	Language Acquisition A		**48.101		
48.101	Language Acquisition B		**48.100		
48.102	Introduction to Chinese Thought				
48.104	Aspects of Traditional Chinese Culture				
Chinese II					
48.200	Language Acquisition	48.100, 48.101	**48.201, 48.202		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived
48.201	Introduction to Modern Chinese Literature	48.100,48.101	**48.200, 48.202		
48.202	Introduction to Classical Chinese Language and Literature	48.100,48.101	**48.200, 48.201		
*48.203	Major Schools of Chinese Thought	48.102			
Chinese III					
48.300	Language Acquisition	48.200,48.201, 48.202	**Two from 48.301 to48.303		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
48.301	Readings in Chinese Contemporary Literature	48.200, 48.201, 48.202	**48.300 and either 48.302 or 48.303		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived
48.302	Readings in Classical Chinese Literature	48.200, 48.201, 48.202	**48.300 and either 48.301 or 48.303		
48.303	Readings in Contemporary Chinese Literature	48.200, 48.201, 48.202	**48.300 and either 48.301 or 48.302		

## CLASSICAL STUDIES

### Classical Studies I

*73.102	Epic and Elegiac		73.100	
*73.103	Comedy and Satire			
*73.104	Tragedy and Literary Criticism			
73.105	Special Topic: Introduction to Classical Literature			

## ECONOMICS

### Economics I

**Note:** Students planning to take Stage II papers should offer 13.100 and 13.101. Some Economics III papers require mathematics and statistics prerequisites. Students planning to take stage III papers should consult the Head of Department for advice.

13.100	Microeconomics	13.101	13.103	By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived
13.101	Macroeconomics	13.100	13.103	
13.102	Statistical Methods		26.180 26.181	13.102 is available only to BCom students in 1988.
*13.105	Mathematical Methods in Economics		26.101 26.122 26.142	Students who have passed, or are concurrently enrolled in, any paper in pure Mathematics may not enrol in 13.105

**Note:** Students advancing in Economics require an adequate mathematical background, and are strongly advised to take papers in the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. Paper 13.105 will not be taught in 1988.

### Economics II

13.200	Microeconomics	13.100 and 13.101		Students who passed 13.103 and 13.104 with at least a B- average prior to 1987 can proceed to any Economics II papers.
13.201	Macroeconomics	13.100 and 13.101		
13.203	Managerial Economics	13.100 and 13.101		
13.204	New Zealand Public Economics	13.100 and 13.101		
13.205	Introduction to Econometrics	13.100 and 13.101; plus one of 13.102, 26.180, or 26.181		
13.210	The Industrialisation of Britain to 1870	13.100 and 13.101	17.200	
13.211	The International Economy since 1870	13.100 and 13.101	17.201	
*13.213	Economic History of USA 1776-1940	13.100 and 13.101		
*13.214	The New Zealand Economy	13.100 and 13.101		

### Economics III

**Note:** Students taking papers 13.300, 13.301, 13.302, 13.304 or 13.305 should have previously passed 13.105 or alternatives approved by the Head of



Title of paper		Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
Department. Students are advised to have taken 13.205 as well and this will be required for 13.309 in 1989. For 1988 students without 13.200 and 13.201 but with at least a B-average in any two of 13.203, 13.204, 13.205, 13.214 may with the permission of Head of Department enrol in Stage III papers other than 13.300, 13.301.					
13.300	Theory of Value	13.200			
13.301	Macroeconomic Theory and Policy	13.200 or 13.201			
13.302	Econometrics	13.200 or 13.201		26.381	
13.304	International Trade	13.200	13.201		
13.305	Financial Economics	13.200			
13.306	Classical Marxist and Modern Economic Ideas	13.200 or 13.201			
13.307	Public Expenditure	13.200			
13.308	Economics of Labour	13.200 or 13.201			
13.309	International Finance	13.200 or 13.201 13.205 will be prerequisite for 13.309 in 1989			
13.310	Economic History of Australia and NZ	13.200 or 13.201; and one other Stage II paper		17.300	
*13.311	Special Topic				Enrolment in Special Topic papers requires Head of Department approval
*13.312	Special Topic				
13.313	Management and Enterprise in the British Economy 1750-1939	13.200 or 13.201; and one other Stage II paper			

## EDUCATION

### Education I

14.100	An introduction to Educational Thought				A candidate intending to take Stage III papers in Education or more than two Stage II papers in Education must have passed in both 14.100 or 14.102 and 14.101
14.101	Introduction to Developmental Psychology				
14.102	Education and Society: Historical & Sociological Approaches to Education				

### Education II

14.200	Comparative Education	A candidate enrolling in two or more Stage II papers must have passed 14.100 or 14.102, and 14.101			The Head or Department may waive the prerequisites or restrictions in special circumstances A candidate intending to take two or more Stage III papers must have passed two Stage II papers A candidate intending to take only one or two Stage II papers not having passed 14.100 or 14.102, and 14.101 must have the permission of the Head of Department
*14.201	History of Education				
14.202	New Zealand Education				
*14.203	Educational Psychology				
14.204	Evaluation of Individual Differences				
*14.205	Educational Problems; A Multidisciplinary Approach	14.100 or 14.102 and 14.101			
14.206	The Sociology of Education	A candidate enrolling in two or more Stage II papers must have passed 14.100 or			This paper is not available to students who passed 14.315 before 1978
14.208	Educational Philosophy				

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
*14.209	Introduction to Methods of Research in Education	} 14.102, and 14.101			
Education III					
14.300	Twentieth Century Educational Thought	} A candidate enrolling in two or more Stage III papers must have passed two Stage II papers			The Head of Department may waive the prerequisite or restrictions in special circumstances. A candidate intending to take only one or two Stage III papers must have the permission of the Head of Department
14.301	Comparative Education				
14.302	History of Education				
14.303	School and Society: A Sociological Perspective				
*14.305	The Guidance Process				
14.306	Introduction to Counselling in the Community				
*14.307	Principles of Curriculum Development				
14.308	Educational Psychology: A Behavioural Approach				
14.309	Developmental Psychology				
14.310	Psychology of Adolescence				
*14.311	Special Education	14.203 or 14.204 or 32.208			
14.313	Methods of Research in Education	} A candidate enrolling in two or more Stage III papers must have passed two Stage II papers			
14.314	Issues in Early Childhood Education				
14.316	Early Determinants of Behaviour				
14.317	Organizational Effectiveness				
14.318	Studies in Teaching and Learning in Higher Education				
14.319	Special Topic: The Reading Process				
14.320	Special Topic				
†14.321	The Nature of Educational Theory	} A candidate enrolling in two or more Stage III papers must have passed two Stage II papers			
14.322	Adult Learning and Education				
*14.323	Special Topic: Issues Related to Reading Difficulties				
14.324	Education and Revolutionary Change				
14.326	The Political Economy of Education				

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
14.327	Aspects of Science Education	A candidate enrolling in two or more Stage III papers must have passed two Stage II papers			
14.328	Special Topic: Contemporary Feminist Perspectives in Education				
14.329	Special Topic				
14.330	The Seriously III Child				
14.331	Computers in Education				

## ENGLISH

### English I

18.100	Introduction to Chaucer and Shakespeare				Candidates intending to take 18.200 are advised to take paper 18.100.
18.101	20th Century Literature				Candidates intending to take 18.201 are advised to take paper 18.105.
18.103	New Zealand Literature				Candidates should note that for entry to English II it is essential to have passed two English I papers
18.104	19th Century Literature				
18.105	Introduction to English Language			83.102	

### English II

18.200	Mediaeval Literature	Any two English I papers			Students are advised that it is in their interest to take three English II papers in the same year
18.201	English Language	As for 18.200			
† 18.205	Sociolinguistics	18.105 or 83.102 or 03.100 and one other English I paper	See Note	03.212, 83.202	18.205 is available to candidates who have not passed 18.105 or 83.102 or 03.100 provided that they have passed four papers in any subject or subjects and take 18.105 or 83.102 or 03.100 as a corequisite.
18.210	The Age of Shakespeare: Poetry	As for 18.200			Candidates may take a fourth paper in English II either concurrently or in a later year.
18.213	The Age of Shakespeare: Tragedy		See Note	18.211, 18.212, 18.313, 18.204	The taking of a fifth paper requires Head of Department's permission, which will only be given in rare cases
18.220	Twentieth Century Fiction	As for 18.200		18.321	By permission of the Head of Department prerequisites may be waived; such action will however be virtually limited to single papers for students who have fulfilled or are fulfilling Regulation 4(a) with three Stage III papers in another subject
18.222	Modern Poetry, 1900-1945	As for 18.200			

**Note:** Candidates should note that (i) for entry to English III it is essential to have passed one of 18.200 or 18.201; one of 18.210 or 18.213; and one other English II paper.

(ii) For 18.300: 18.201 or the combination of 18.200 and 18.105 is a prerequisite. For 18.302: 18.200 is a prerequisite. For 18.304: 18.201 or 18.205 is a prerequisite.

(iii) Beginning in 1989, for entry to English III students will be required to have passed one of 18.200, 18.201 and 18.205; one of 18.210 or 18.213; and one other English II paper.

### English III

18.300	The English Language from Chaucer's day to the present	18.201, or the combination of 18.200 and 18.105, 18.210 or 18.213 and one other English II paper	One paper from 18.306-18.308 and one from 18.310-18.329		Candidates taking more than three papers in English III may take the extra papers or a fourth English II paper without corequisites
--------	--	--	---	--	---

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
18.301	Old English: Language, Literature and Society	18.200 or 18.201 18.210 or 18.213 and one other English II paper	As 18.300		
18.302	Middle English Literature	18.200, 18.210, 18.213 and one other English II paper	As for 18.300		
18.303	The Linguistic Analysis of Literature	As for 18.301	As for 18.300	83.305	Any one English paper from English III not previously taken may be taken for MA with the approval of the Head of Department
18.304	Phonology and New Zealand Speech	18.201, 18.210 or 18.213, and one other English II paper	As for 18.300	83.307	
18.306	Prose, Poetry and Drama of the Eighteenth Century	As for 18.301	One paper from 18.300-18.304 and one from 18.310-18.329	18.202	By permission of the Head of Department corequisites may be waived. Such action will be virtually limited to candidates who have fulfilled or are fulfilling Regulation 4(a) with three Stage III papers in another subject
18.307	Romantic Literature	As for 18.301	As for 18.306	18.203, 18.324	
*18.308	18th Century Novels	As for 18.301	As for 18.306	18.322	By permission of the Head of Department prerequisites may be waived. Such action will be virtually limited to candidates who have fulfilled or are fulfilling Regulation 4(a) with three Stage III papers in another subject and who wish to enrol in a single English III paper
18.310	Shakespeare: Selected Plays: Comedies and Tragicomedies	As for 18.301	One paper from 18.300-18.304 and one from 18.306-18.308		
18.314	Major Works, 16th and 17th Centuries	As for 18.301	As for 18.310	18.311, 18.312	
18.320	Victorian Literature	As for 18.301	As for 18.310		
18.323	American Literature: Poetry	As for 18.301	As for 18.310		
*18.325	Special Topic II as prescribed by the Head of Department: Novels from the Post-Colonial World 1950-1980	As for 18.301	As for 18.310		
18.326	Special Topic III as prescribed by the Head of Department: Women Writers of the 20th Century	As for 18.301	As for 18.310		
18.327	Special Topic IV as prescribed by the Head of Department: Australian Literature	As for 18.301	As for 18.310		
18.328	Special Topic V as prescribed by the Head of Department: Creative Writing	As for 18.301	As for 18.310		
*18.329	Special Topic VI as prescribed by the Head of Department	As for 18.301	As for 18.310		

Title of paper		Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>FRENCH</b>					
French I Language papers				All French I language papers other than 34.100 (or 34.110) and 34.108 are mutually exclusive except that subject to the consent of the Head of Department. 34.100 may be taken after passing any other French I language paper except 34.110	Selection of a French I language paper is subject to the consent of the Head of Department. Corequisites requirements refer to the courses of students advancing in French
34.100	Language Acquisition or 34.110		One French I Text paper		
34.102	Language comprehension				
34.104	Language comprehension in specific areas A: Science				
*34.106	Language comprehension in specific areas B: *Social Science, *Art History				
34.108	Language Comprehension in Music				
Text papers					
34.101	20th Century literary texts		34.100 or 34.110		
*34.109	Contemporary French Civilisation		As for 34.101		
French II					
34.200	Language Acquisition	34.100 or 34.110	Two French II papers		Corequisite requirements refer to the courses of students advancing in French. Prerequisites may be waived by the Head of Department in exceptional circumstances
34.201	19th and/or 20th Century literary texts	34.100 or 34.110 and one of its corequisites	34.200 and one other French II paper		
*34.202	19th and/or 20th Century literary texts	As for 34.201	As for 34.201		
*34.203	19th Century literary texts	As for 34.201	As for 34.201		
34.205	Mediaeval texts	As for 34.200	As for 34.201		
*34.209	19th Century French Civilisation	As for 34.201	As for 34.201		
34.210	Le Français de métiers	As for 34.200	As for 34.201		Enrolment only by permission of Head of Department
34.214	Applied Language studies	As for 34.200	As for 34.201		
34.218	Historicity and variation in French	As for 34.200	As for 34.201		
French III					
34.300	Language Acquisition	34.200	Two other French III papers		Corequisite requirements refer to the course of students taking more than two Stage III papers in French. Prerequisites may be waived by the Head of Department in exceptional circumstances
34.302	17th and 18th Century texts	34.200 and two other French II papers	34.300 and one other French III paper		
34.306	Medieval French Language	As for 34.302	As for 34.302		
*34.307	A Literary Topic	As for 34.302	As for 34.302		
34.308	A topic in 19th and/or 20th Century literature	As for 34.302	As for 34.302		
†34.309	A topic in 19th and/or 20th Century literature	As for 34.302	As for 34.302		
*34.310	17th and 18 Century texts	As for 34.302	As for 34.302		
34.318	L'Espace francophone: French in France and Overseas	34.200.	As for 34.302		

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
*34.320	Translation of Written Texts	As for 34.300			Enrolment only by permission of Head of Department

## GEOGRAPHY

### Geography I

- 20.101 Introductory Physical Geography  
20.102 Introductory Human Geography

### Geography II

- 20.201 Physical Geography  
20.202 Geographical Perspectives on Urban-Industrial Societies  
  
20.203 Remote Sensing Techniques  
20.204 Statistical Techniques in Geography  
20.205 Human Impact in the Environment  
20.206 Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries (even years only)

20.101 and 21.102

36.264

With special permission of the Head of Department (i) a student may enrol in one Stage II paper without fulfilling the prerequisites, or (ii) prerequisites may be waived and reimposed as corequisites

20.306

### Geography III

- 20.302 Regional Processes and Development  
20.303 Geomorphology and Hydrology  
20.304 Biogeography and Climatology  
20.305 Population Process Policies and Techniques  
20.306 Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries (even years only)

20.315

20.315

20.206

Students including three or more Stage III Geography papers must attempt at least one of 20.302, 20.303, 20.304, 20.305

With special permission of the Head of Department (i) a student may enrol in one or two Stage III papers without fulfilling the prerequisites, or (ii) prerequisites may be waived and reimposed as corequisites

Three Stage II papers in Geography including 20.204 (or equivalent) and at least one of 20.201 and 20.202

20.240

- \*20.310 Geography of Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia (odd years only)

- \*20.312 Special Topic

- 20.313 Advanced Statistical Analysis in Geography

- 20.314 Geographic Information Systems and Image Processing

20.316

- 20.315 Research Design and Methods in Human Geography

20.302 or 30.205

- 20.320 Resources and Environmental Management

## GERMAN

### German I

- 22.100 Language Acquisition

\*\*22.101

22.103, 22.104

Title of paper		Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
22.101	Introduction to German Literature		**22.100	and 22.105 may not be taken concurrently with 22.100, 22.100 and its corequisite 22.101 may be taken after passing either 22.105 or 22.105 and 22.103.	
22.102	German Civilisation				
22.103	Reading Knowledge of German				
22.104	German for Singers				
22.105	Introductory Language Acquisition				
German II					
22.200	Language Acquisition	22.100, 22.101	**22.202, 22.203	A student who presents or has presented 22.200 without having passed 22.100 may not enrol for 22.103 or 22.104 or 22.105	By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived
22.202	20th Century Literature	As for 22.200	**22.200, 22.203		
22.203	German Linguistics and History of Language	As for 22.200	**22.200, 22.202		
German III					
22.300	Language Acquisition	22.200, 22.201, 22.202	**22.301 and one from 22.302, 22.303		
22.301	Medieval and Romantic Texts	As for 22.300	**22.300 and one from 22.302, 22.303		
22.302	Modern German Classics	As for 22.300	**22.300, 22.301		
22.303	Post-war Literature	As for 22.300	**22.300, 22.301		

## GREEK

Greek I					
10.100	Greek Reading. Prescribed texts with grammatical questions		**10.101		The papers may not be taken separately except under the most exceptional circumstances
10.101	Greek Reading. Prescribed texts with grammatical questions		**10.100		
<b>Note:</b> If 10.100 and 10.101 are taken concurrently, they are linked corequisites. 10.101 may not be taken without prior or concurrent enrolment in 10.100.					
Greek II					
10.200	Prescribed Books		**10.201, 10.202		The Head of Department may waive prerequisites for students with sufficient previous knowledge and corequisites in special cases
10.201	Greek Literature and Unprepared Translation	10.100, 10.101	**10.200, 10.202		
10.202	Greek History or Literature and Use of the Language		**10.200, 10.201		
Greek III					
10.300	Prescribed Books		**10.301, 10.302		As for 10.200
10.301	Greek Literature and Prepared and Unprepared Translation	10.200, 10.201, 10.202	**10.300, 10.302		The Head of Department may waive prerequisites for students with sufficient previous knowledge and corequisites in special cases
10.302	Greek Language Greek History or Literature and Prose Composition		**10.300, 10.301		
10.303	Advanced Language Study Prose Composition or *Verse Composition		10.303, 10.301, 10.302		

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
*10.304	Greek Poetry	As for 10.300	10.300, 10.301, 10.302		Permission of Head of Department required. Not all papers will be available every year
10.305	Literary Topic	As for 10.300	As for 10.304		
10.306	Greek History	As for 10.300	As for 10.304	10.307	
*10.307	Greek Philosophy	As for 10.300	As for 10.304	10.306	
†10.308	Greek Language	As for 10.300	As for 10.304		
10.309	*Greece and Persia or Tyranny	As for 10.300	As for 10.304	12.202 or 12.222	

## HEBREW

Hebrew I	(Not available until further notice)				
*23.100	Classical Hebrew — Language		**23.101		
*23.101	Classical Hebrew — Texts		**23.100		
*23.102	Modern Hebrew				
*Hebrew II	(Not available until further notice)				
*23.200	Classical Hebrew — Language	23.100, 23.101	**23.201 and one of 23.202, 23.203		
*23.201	Classical Hebrew — Texts	23.100, 23.101	**23.200 and one of 23.202, 23.203		
*23.202	Modern Hebrew — Language and Texts	23.100, 23.101	**23.200, 23.201		
*23.203	Classical Hebrew — Further Texts	23.100, 23.101	**23.200, 23.201		

## HISTORY

History I					
24.100	From Versailles to Pearl Harbor: issues of peace and war				
24.101	The Russian Revolution				
24.103	Fascism in the inter-war years				
24.105	The U.S.A. in the 20th Century				
24.106	Marxism in Perspective				
24.107	Women in New Societies			24.322	
24.120	Race Relations in New Zealand				
24.121	New Zealand Society and Politics				
24.140	Europe in the Age of Kings and Queens 1450-1700				
†24.141	Europe in the Age of Revolution 1750-1875			82.102 after 1984	
History II					
24.200	Rome and the Barbarians	Two Stage I papers in History and/or Asian History or two of 12.100, 12.102, 12.103			In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may waive prerequisites or require them to be taken as corequisites
24.201	Medieval English Kingship from Alfred to Henry III	As for 24.200			
24.214	Parliaments, Estates and Revolutions 1500-1660	As for 24.200 but excluding 12.100, 12.102, 12.103		24.210	



	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
*24.215	Society in Crisis: Europe 1550-1660	As for 24.214		24.211	
24.216	Modern France 1871 to the Present	As for 24.214			
24.230	Polynesian and European Exploration of the Pacific	As for 24.214			
†24.232	Colonial Society and the American Revolution	As for 24.214			
24.233	Australian Society 1788-1988	As for 24.214			
24.234	New Zealand Communities 1840-1940	As for 24.214			
†24.235	Special Topic	As for 24.214			
†24.236	Special Topic	As for 24.214			
<b>History III</b>					
*24.301	The Mexican Revolution	Two Stage II papers in History and/or Asian History			In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may waive one prerequisite paper, provided it is taken as a corequisite
*24.302	The Reign of Henry VIII				
24.307	The Origins of the First World War				
24.309	British Labour History 1850-1918				
†24.310	The American Civil War and Reconstruction				
24.314	Race in the Antipodes: New Zealand, Australia and South Africa in the 19th Century	Two Stage II papers in History and/or Asian History			Students taking History III papers should note that it may prove impossible, owing to pressure of numbers in certain classes, to allow students to enrol for all the papers of their first choice.
24.315	Pacific History: Culture Contact to about 1900				
†24.320	Special Topic: To be prescribed by Head of Department				
†24.325	Special Topic				
†24.327	Communism in Western Europe				
24.328	Religion in Changing Societies				
†24.329	Special Topic: to be prescribed by Head of Department				
24.331	Justinian and his Age.				
24.333	A History of Medieval Europe from Charlemagne to Philip the Fair				
24.334	Britain and Russia: a Century of Conflict				
*24.336	Popular Culture in Early Modern Europe				
24.338	Racial Equality in the United States since 1920				

**INDONESIAN**

Indonesian I					
80.100	Language Acquisition A	**80.101			By special permission of the Head of Department corequisites may be waived
80.101	Language Acquisition B	**80.100			

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
80.103	Indonesian literatures and civilisations				
80.104	Islam in Indonesia				
Indonesian II					
80.200	Language Acquisition	80.100, 80.101	**80.201, 80.202		By special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites and corequisites may be waived
80.201	Twentieth Century Indonesian/Malay fiction	80.100, 80.101	**80.200, 80.202		
80.202	Twentieth Century Indonesian/Malay poetry	80.100, 80.101	**80.200, 80.201		
Indonesian III					
80.300	Translation at sight of passages of Indonesian non-literary prose and translation at sight into Indonesian	80.200, 80.201, 80.202	**80.301, 80.302		By special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites and corequisites may be waived
80.301	Introduction to Classical Malay language and literature	80.200, 80.201, 80.202	**80.300, 80.302		
80.302	Modern Indonesian/ Malay literature	80.200, 80.201, 80.202	**80.300 or 80.301		
80.306	An approved Special Topic	80.200, 80.201, 80.202			
80.307	Introduction to Javanese language and literature	80.200, 20.201, 80.202			

## ITALIAN

Italian I					
*35.104	Italian Language in Opera and Song				
35.106	Italian Language Studies (i)		35.107	35.102 35.103	
35.107	Italian Language Studies (ii)		35.106	35.102 35.103	
*35.109	Modern Italian Film				
35.110	Images of Women in 20th Century Italian Literature				
Italian II					
35.200	Language Acquisition	35.100, 35.101 or 35.102, 35.103 or 35.106, 35.107	One or two from 35.202 — 35.231		In special cases the Head of Department may waive the corequisites and prerequisites
35.204	Italian Fiction and Cinema	Two Italian I language papers from 35.102, 35.103, 35.106, 35.107	35.200		
35.209	Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture A [Texts in Italian]	As for 35.204	35.200	35.210	
35.210	Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture B [Texts in English]	Any six Stage One Arts papers from Group A in the <i>Calendar</i> . In the case of Fine Arts Students, a candidate must have passed the first Professional Examination.			This paper does not qualify as a prerequisite for Stage III Italian, 35.209
35.230	20th Century Poetry	As for 35.204	35.200		

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
35.231	A Special Topic in Italian Literature	As for 35.204	35.200		
Italian III					
35.300	Language Acquisition	35.200	One or two from 35.302 — 35.333	No paper may be taken at Stage III whose content	In special cases the Head of Department may waive the corequisites and prerequisites
35.302	14th Century Literary Texts: Dante	35.200 and one other Italian II paper except 35.210	35.300		
*35.303	14th Century Literary Texts: Boccaccio and Petrarca	As for 35.302	35.300	corresponds to that of a paper already passed at Stage II	
35.321	Linguistics: Principles and Methods Applied to the Study of Contemporary Italian	As for 35.302	35.300		
35.322	L'italiano nel mondo del lavoro: Working with Italian	As for 35.302	35.300		Enrolment by permission of Head of Department
35.331	A Special Topic in Italian Literature or Film	As for 35.302	35.300		
35.332	A Special Topic in Italian Literature	As for 35.302	35.300		
35.333	A Special Topic in Italian Literature	As for 35.302	35.300		

## JAPANESE

### Japanese I

81.100	Introduction to the Japanese Language A		**81.101		By special permission of the Head of Department corequisites may be waived
81.101	Introduction to the Japanese Language B		**81.100		
*81.102	Japanese Literature in Translation				
81.103	Introduction to Japanese Thought and Culture				

### Japanese II

81.200	Translation at sight from and into Japanese	81.100, 81.101	**81.201, 81.202		By special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites and corequisites may be waived
81.201	Intermediate Japanese	81.100, 81.101	**81.200, 81.202		
81.202	Language Acquisition: Modern Japanese	81.100, 81.101	**81.200, 81.201		

### Japanese III

81.300	Translation at sight from and into Japanese	81.200, 81.201, 81.202	**81.301 and 81.302 or 81.303		By special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites and corequisites may be waived
81.301	Translation of and comments on prescribed modern texts	81.200, 81.201, 81.202	**81.300 and 81.302 or 81.303		
81.302	Translation of and comments on prescribed classical texts together with questions on the history of Japanese literature	81.200, 81.201, 81.202	**81.300, 81.301		

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
81.303	Modern Japanese	81.200, 81.201, 81.202	**81.300, 81.301		

**LATIN**

Latin I					
09.100	Prescribed Books		09.101		
09.101	Translation and Language		09.100		
<b>Note:</b> if 09.100 and 09.101 are taken concurrently they are linked corequisites					
09.102	Introduction to the Latin language			A student who has previously passed 09.100, 09.101 may not enrol for 09.102, 09.103	The Head of Department may waive corequisites in special cases.
09.103	Introduction to Latin literature		09.102		
<b>Note:</b> if 09.102 and 09.103 are taken concurrently they are linked corequisites.					

Latin II					
09.200	Prescribed books	09.100, 09.101	**09.201, 09.202		
09.201	Latin Literature, and Unprepared Translation		**09.200, 09.202		
09.202	Roman History or Literature, and use of the Language		**09.200, 09.201		
Latin III					
09.300	Prescribed Books	09.300, 09.301, 09.302	**09.301, 09.302		The Head of Department may waive corequisites in special cases
09.301	Latin Literature, and Unprepared Translation		**09.200, 09.201, 09.202	**09.300, 09.302	
09.302	Latin Language, Roman History or Literature, and Prose Composition			**09.300, 09.301	
09.303	Advanced Prose Composition or *Verse Composition	09.300, 09.301 09.302			
09.304	Latin Poetry	As for 09.300	**09.300, 09.301, 09.302		Permission of Head of Department required. Not all papers will be available every year
09.305	Literary Topic	As for 09.300	As for 09.304		
09.306	Latin Language	As for 09.300	As for 09.304		
09.307	Roman History	As for 09.300	As for 09.304		
09.308	†Pax Romana or a subject in Roman History	As for 09.300	As for 09.304	12.203 12.213	

**LINGUISTICS**

Linguistics I					
83.102	Introduction to Linguistics			18.105	
83.103	Introduction to Historical and Comparative Linguistics		83.102 or permission of Head of Department		
Linguistics II					
†83.202	Sociolinguistics	83.102, or 18.105 or 03.100		03.212 18.205	Available to candidates who have not passed 03.100, 83.102 or 18.105 provided that they have passed four papers in any subject or subjects and take 03.100, 83.102 or 18.105 as a corequisite

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
83.203	Phonology	83.102			
83.204	Grammatical Analysis	83.102			
Linguistics III					
83.300	Recent Trends in Grammar	Permission of Head of Department			
†83.301	Special Topic in Linguistics	Permission of Head of Department			
†83.302	Special Topic in Comparative Linguistics	Permission of Head of Department		03.339	
†83.303	Languages of Polynesia	83.103 or 04.204		04.305	Available to a candidate who has not passed 83.103 or 04.204 provided that four papers in any subject or subjects have been passed and 83.103 is taken as corequisite
†83.304	Theory of the Lexicon	Permission of Head of Department			
83.305	Linguistic Analysis of Literature	Permission of Head of Department		18.303	
*83.306	Philosophy of Language	Permission of Head of Department		29.202	
83.307	Phonology and New Zealand Speech	Permission of Head of Department		18.304	
†83.308	Language and Society	Permission of Head of Department		03.317	
†83.309	Field Methods	83.203 and 83.204, or permission of Head of Department			
†83.310	Special Topic in Linguistics	Permission of Head of Department			

## MAORI STUDIES

### Maori Studies I

04.100	Introduction to the Structure of Maori Language				
04.101	Introduction to Maori Society			03.102	
04.104	Introduction to Spoken and Written Maori				

### Maori Studies II

*04.202	Traditional Maori Society	03.102 or 04.101 or 24.120 or permission of Head of Department		03.211	
04.203	The Coming of the Maori		03.102 or 04.101 or permission of Head of Department	03.208	
04.204	Second Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts	04.100			Prerequisite may be waived for suitably qualified Maori language students provided that they take 04.100 as corequisite Prerequisite may be waived for suitably qualified Maori language students provided that they take 04.104 as corequisite Corequisites 04.204, 04.205 waived for native speakers of Maori
04.205	Second Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills	04.104			
*04.206	A Topic in Maori Material Culture		04.204, 04.205		
04.207	Maori Kinship and Community	04.101/03.102		03.216	

Title of paper		Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>Maori Studies III</b>					
04.302	Topics in Contemporary Maori Society	One or more Stage II papers in Maori Studies or Social Anthropology		03.306	
†04.303	Maori Oratory: Whaikōrero, Non-Casual Speech Forms	Permission of Head of Department			
†04.304	Maori Poetry and Song	04.204 or 04.205			
†04.305	Languages of Polynesia	83.103 or 04.204		83.303	
04.306	Third Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts	04.204			
04.307	Third Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills	04.204 and 04.205			
*04.308	Social History of Maori Land Legislation	One or more Stage II papers in Maori Studies or Social Anthropology or permission of Head of Department		03.304	Prerequisites may be waived if 03.306/04.302 is taken as corequisite
04.309	Whanaungatanga-Whakapapa		04.307		
†04.310	Special Topic in Maori Studies	Permission of Head of Department			
†04.311	Special Topic in Maori Studies	Permission of Head of Department			
†04.312	Special Topic in Maori Studies	Permission of Head of Department			

## MATHEMATICS APPLIED

A detailed schedule of the papers available in this subject can be seen by reference to the Schedule to the BSc Regulations.

The following rules must be read in conjunction with the schedule:

Six credits in Applied Mathematics at Stage I (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage I paper in Mathematics (BA)

Four credits in Applied Mathematics at Stage II (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage II paper in Mathematics (BA)

Four credits in Applied Mathematics at Stage III (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage III paper in Mathematics (BA)

## MATHEMATICS PURE

A detailed schedule of the papers available in this subject can be seen by reference to the Schedule to the BSc Regulations.

The following rules must be read in conjunction with the schedule:

Six credits in Pure Mathematics at Stage I (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage I paper in Mathematics (BA)

Four credits in Pure Mathematics at Stage II (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage II paper in Mathematics (BA)

Four credits in Pure Mathematics at Stage III (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage III paper in Mathematics (BA)

## MUSIC

**Note:** The number enrolling in certain papers is restricted. Candidates should consult *Calendar* Degree course Prescriptions for Department of Music.

Music I

28.100	Harmony and Counterpoint	28.101, 28.103	28.122	A candidate must pass papers 28.100, 28.101 and 28.103 with an overall grade of at least C+ before proceeding to Music II
--------	--------------------------	-------------------	--------	---

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
28.101	Musicianship and Materials of Music		28.100, 28.103		
28.103	Music in Society		28.100, 28.101		
28.104	Music and the Twentieth Century			28.101	
28.105	Basic Musical Techniques		28.104 or 28.114		
28.113	Acoustics				
28.114	Introduction to Ethnomusicology		28.101 or 28.105 or permission of Head of Department	03.103	
Music II					
28.201	Materials and Analysis		28.202; one of 28.203-208	28.209	
28.202	Harmony and Counterpoint				
	History of Musical Style:-				
*28.203	The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance**	28.100, 28.101 and 28.103 with an overall grade of at least C+	28.201		
28.204	The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era††			28.205	
*28.207	The Classic-Romantic Era**			28.206	
28.208	The Twentieth Century††				
28.214	Ethnomusicology	28.114; as for 28.201		03.209	
28.223	Musicology	As for 28.201			
Music II					
28.301	Analysis		one of 28.303 28.308	28.309	
28.302	Harmony and Counterpoint				
	History of Musical Style:-				
*28.303	The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance**	28.201, 28.202; one of 28.203-208	28.301	28.203	
28.304	The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era††			28.205	
*28.307	The Classic-Romantic Era**			28.207	
28.308	The Twentieth Century††			28.208	
28.314	Ethnomusicology	28.214; as for 28.301		03.318	
28.323	Musicology	28.223; as for 28.301			
†28.324	Special Topic: Russian Song				

**Note: Transitional**

A candidate whose course was begun under the Regulations set forth in the 1966 *Calendar* and has passed 28.101, 28.102 and 28.103 with an overall grade of C+ or better shall complete the course under those Regulations but, where required by Senate, with such substitute papers as it may determine.

\*\* Taught in odd-numbered years

†† Taught in even-numbered years

\* This paper will not be taught in the current *Calendar* year

**PACIFIC STUDIES**

\*79.100 A Topic in the Political Economy of the Pacific

79.101 A Topic in Pacific Arts

Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>PHILOSOPHY</b>				
Philosophy I				
29.100 Introduction to Metaphysics and Theory of Knowledge				Students planning to enrol in any Philosophy II papers are reminded that they must have passed two Philosophy I papers
29.101 Introduction to Logic				
29.102 Ethics				
29.103 Social Philosophy				
Philosophy II				
*29.200 Philosophy of Mind	Any two Philosophy I papers			By special Permission of Head of Department prerequisites may be waived
29.201 Logic II	29.101 and one other Philosophy I paper			
*29.202 Philosophy of Language	As for 29.200		83.306	
29.203 Philosophy of Science	As for 29.200			
29.204 Greek Philosophy	As for 29.200			
29.205 Political Philosophy	As for 29.200			
*29.206 History of Scientific Ideas	As for 29.200			
29.207 Philosophy of Religion	As for 29.200			
29.208 Metaphysics II	As for 29.200			
*29.209 History of Philosophy	As for 29.200			
*29.210 Ethics	As for 29.200			
29.211 Existentialism and Phenomenology	As for 29.200			
29.212 Philosophy of the Arts	As for 29.200			
*29.213 Special Topic	As for 29.200			
*29.214 Special Topic	As for 29.200			
Philosophy III				
*29.300 Theory of Knowledge	29.208 and one other Philosophy II paper			By special Permission of Head of Department prerequisites may be waived
29.301 Metaphysics III	As for 29.300			
*29.302 History of Philosophy (Ancient and Mediaeval)	29.204 and 29.208			
29.303 History of Philosophy (Modern)	As for 29.300			
29.304 Ethics	Either 29.208 and one of 29.205 and 29.210; or 29.208 plus 29.102 and one other Philosophy II paper			
29.305 Logic III	29.201 and 29.208		26.315	
29.306 Contemporary Analytic Philosophy	29.101, 29.208 and one other Philosophy II paper			
29.307 Special Topic: Contemporary Continental Philosophy	As for 29.300			
*29.308 Special Topic				

**POLITICAL STUDIES**

<b>Political Studies I</b>				
30.100 American Government: Themes and Practices in a Liberal Democracy		One other paper from Political Studies I		



	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
30.101	Soviet Communism in Theory and Practice		One other paper from Political Studies I	30.202	A student who includes an Asian Politics I paper as a corequisite will be enrolled in the subject Political Studies In exceptional circumstances and by special Permission of Head of Department, a corequisite may be waived.
30.102	Law, Property and Individualism: An Introduction to Political Thinking				
30.106	Foreign and Defence Policies of the Major Powers				
30.107	An Introduction to New Zealand Politics and Government				
Political Studies II					
*30.200	Major Figures in Political Thought	Any two papers from Political Studies I and/or Asian Politics I	One other paper from Political Studies II or Asian Politics II	30.105	A student who includes an Asian Politics II paper as corequisite will be enrolled in the subject Political Studies In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of the Head of Department prerequisites may be waived or taken as corequisites, and corequisites may be waived
30.201	British Politics and Society				
30.204	A Topic in the Structure of International Relations: New Zealand and Australian Foreign Policy				
30.208	A Topic in European Politics:				
30.209	Modern Political Ideologies				
30.211	Public Administration: Central and Local				
30.212	Australian Politics				
Political Studies III					
30.301	US Foreign Policy	Any two papers from Political Studies II and/or Asian Politics II			A student may include Asian Politics III 30.308 as a paper in Political Studies for the purpose of Regulation 4(a)  In exceptional circumstances and by special permission of Head of Department, prerequisites may be waived or taken as corequisites
30.302	A Topic in the Politics of New States				
30.303	Introduction to Statistics and Political Research				
30.304	Political Learning and Political Behaviour				
30.305	Studies in Contemporary Political Ideas				
30.307	The European Community and COMECON: Nationalism Versus Integration in East and West Europe Incorporated				
30.309	Explaining Political Action Explaining Resolutions				
*30.310	Public Administration: Theory and Process				
30.311	Comparative Public Policy				

## PSYCHOLOGY

### Psychology I

- 32.108 Introduction to General Psychology
- 32.109 Introduction to Experimental Psychology

Title of paper		Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
Psychology II					
32.210	Learning	32.108 and 32.109		32.206	In exceptional circumstances and by special Permission of Head of Department prerequisites may be waived or taken as corequisites
32.220	Human			32.207, 32.211, 32.209	
32.230	Experimental Psychology			32.207, 32.212	
	Brain and Behaviour			32.213	
32.240	Social and Developmental Psychology			32.214, 32.215	
Psychology III					
32.301	Psychology of Individual Differences	3 papers from 32.210, 32.220 32.230,32.240; or all of 32.209 32.211, 32.212, 32.213,32.214, 32.215			In exceptional circumstances and by special Permission of Head of Department prerequisites may be waived or taken as corequisites
32.303	Cognitive Processes: Advanced				
32.304	Theory & Systems of Personality				
32.305	Physiological Psychology				
32.306	The Design of Psychological Experiments				
32.307	The Psychological Analysis of Vision and Hearing				
32.308	Research Topic		Four of 32.301-32.314	Enrolment requires approval of Head of Department	
32.309	Learning				
†32.311	Social Psychology				
*32.312	Organisational Psychology				
32.313	Special Topic in Psychology				
32.314	Special Topic in Psychology				

**Transitional** In order to complete equivalents of papers 32.220, 32.230, 32.240, a candidate who has passed the appropriate Stage II papers under the Regulations set forth in the University of Auckland Calendar for 1987 may, in 1988 and 1989 only, enrol for any of the following papers therein prescribed for BA: 32.209, 32.211, 32.212, 32.213, 32.214, 32.215.

## RUSSIAN

Russian I					
43.100	Russian Language Acquisition 1		**43.101	43.111 may not be taken in the same year	By special permission of the Head of Department this restriction may be waived
43.101	Russian Language Acquisition 2		**43.100	43.111 may not be taken in the same year	By special permission of the Head of Department this restriction may be waived
*43.111	Introduction to Serbo-Croatian				
43.112	Russian Civilisation				
43.113	The Classics of Russian Literature				
Russian II					
43.210	Language Acquisition: Russian	43.100 43.101	**43.211 **43.212	By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived	

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
43.211	(i) Introduction to Modern Russian and (ii)The Russian Lyric in the Nineteenth Century	43.100 43.101	**43.210 **43.212		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived
43.212	The Russian Short Story in the Nineteenth Century	43.100 43.101	**43.210 **43.211		
Russian III					
43.310	Language Acquisition: Russian	43.210 43.211 43.212	two from **43.311 to **43.313		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived
43.311	Introduction to Russian and Slavonic Linguistics	43.210 43.211 43.212	**43.310 and either 43.312 or 43.313		
43.312	The Russian Novel in the Nineteenth Century	43.210 43.211 43.212	**43.310 and either 43.311 or 43.313		
*43.313	Introduction to Russian Literature of the Twentieth Century	43.210 43.211 43.212	**43.310 and either 43.311 or 43.312		

## SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES

### Scandinavian Studies I

46.100	Language Acquisition		**46.101	
46.101	Aspects of Scandinavian Civilisation			

### Scandinavian Studies II

46.200	Language Acquisition	46.100, 46.101	**Either 46.201, 46.202 or 46.203, 46.204		By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites and corequisites may be waived for any paper
*46.201	Introduction to Scandinavian Languages and Linguistics	46.100, 46.101	**46.200, 46.202		
*46.202	Scandinavian Drama and Film	46.100, 46.101	**46.200, 46.201	22.409	
46.203	Modern Swedish Novels and Short Stories	46.100, 46.101	**46.200, 46.204		
46.204	Swedish Poetry	46.100, 46.101	**46.200, 46.203		

### Scandinavian Studies III

46.300	Language Acquisition	46.200 and either 46.201 and 46.202 or 46.203 and 46.204	**Either 46.301 and 46.302 or 46.303 and 46.304		
*46.301	Scandinavian Languages and Linguistics	46.200, 46.203 46.204	**46.300, 46.302	46.201	
*46.302	Scandinavian Drama and Film	46.200, 46.203 46.204	**46.300, 46.301	46.202, 22.409	
46.303	Modern Scandinavian Novels and Short Stories	46.200, 46.201 46.202	**46.300, 46.304	46.203	
46.304	Scandinavian Poetry	46.200, 46.201 46.202	**46.300, 46.303	46.204	

## SOCIOLOGY

### Sociology I

82.100	Issues and Themes in Sociology	
--------	--------------------------------	--

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
82.101	New Zealand Society: Structure and Change				
*82.102	A History of Sociological Ideas			24.141	
82.103	Debates in Social Policy				
Sociology II					
82.200	Sociological Theory	Two from 82.100, 82.101, 82.102 and 82.103			By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisites or corequisites may be waived in any paper
82.201	Sociological Method	Two from 82.100, 82.101, 82.102 and 82.103			
82.202	A Topic in Comparative Sociology: New Zealand Community Studies	One of 82.100 82.101, 82.102, 82.103			
†82.203	Sociology of a Selected Region				
82.204	Sociology of Social Problems				
82.205	Social Stratification				
*82.206	Regional & Community Development				
82.207	Sociology of the Family				Not available to students who have taken 82.302
82.208	Special Topic: Power, Control and the Modern Organisation				
82.209	Social Change and Modernisation; an Introduction to the Sociology of Development	One of 82.100, 82.101, 82.102, 82.103, 79.100			Not available to students who have taken 82.307
82.210	Special Topic: Varieties of Religious Experience	One of 82.100, 82.101, 82.102, 82.103			
82.211	Special Topic: Popular Culture				
82.212	Special Topic: Class and Inequality in Australia and New Zealand				Not available to students who have taken 82.305
Sociology III					
82.300	Industrial Sociology	82.200, 82.201			
82.301	A Topic in Political Sociology				
82.302	A Topic in the Sociology of the Family and Socialisation				
*82.303	A Topic in the Sociology of Religion				
82.304	A Topic in Minority and Ethnic Relations: Ethnicity and Ethnic Groups				
82.305	Class & Inequality in Australia and New Zealand				Not available to students who have taken 82.212
*82.306	Community Studies				
82.307	Advanced Study in Social Change and Modernisation: The World System, New Zealand and the Pacific				

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
82.308	Special Topic: Law and Society	82.200, 82.201			
*82.309	Special Topic				Not available to students who took 82.206 in 1982
†82.310	Special Topic				
†82.311	Special Topic				
82.312	Sociological Analysis				Not available to students who took 82.308 in 1978 and 1979
†82.313	Sociology of a Selected Region				Not available to students who took 82.203 before 1980
*82.314	Deviance				
†82.315	Sociology of the Arts				Not available to students who took 82.309 in 1980
82.316	Research paper				Enrolment requires approval of Head of Department
†82.317	Sociology of the Welfare State				
82.318	Sociology of the Media				

**Note:** Students including three Stage III Sociology papers in their Degree must attempt 82.312 as one of them.

## SPANISH

### Spanish I

†45.101	20th Century Literary Texts				
45.102	Language: Oral, Aural and Translation from Spanish to English			45.100; 45.104/45.105	
45.103	Contemporary Hispanic Civilisation				
45.104	Language Acquisition		45.105	45.100; 45.102	
45.105	Language Acquisition		45.104	45.100; 45.102	
45.107	Language Acquisition (Advanced)		45.108	45.100, 45.102, 45.104/45.105	Enrolment in this paper by special permission of Head of Department
45.108	Language Acquisition (Advanced)		45.107	45.100, 45.102, 45.104/45.105	Enrolment in this paper by special permission of Head of Department

### Spanish II

45.200	Language Acquisition	45.100/45.104/ 45.105	Two other Spanish II papers		
*45.201	Golden Age Literary Texts	45.100 and 45.101 or 45.103; or 45.104/45.105	45.200 and one other Spanish II paper		By special permission of the Head of the Department a candidate may present one or more papers at Stage II level provided that he has passed in one Stage I paper
45.202	19th and 20th Century Literary Texts				
*45.203	Literary Analysis with Prescribed Texts	As for 45.201	As for 45.201		
45.204	20th Century Latin American Texts				
45.206	Spanish Study Abroad Programme		45.200	45.306	
*45.207	Modern Hispanic Literature	43.104/45.105 or 45.107/45.108	45.200 or 45.208 and one other Spanish II paper		[As for all Stage II papers]

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
45.208	Language Acquisition (Advanced)	45.107/45.108	Two other Spanish II papers	45.200	By special permission of Head of Department a student having obtained an exceptionally high grade in 45.104/45.105 may enrol in 45.208 instead of 45.200
45.209	"Practising Critics" in the Hispanic World	As for 45.207	As for 45.207		[As for all Stage II papers]
Spanish III					
45.300	Language Acquisition	45.200	Two from 45.301-45.306		
*45.301	Medieval Literary Texts	45.200 and two other Spanish II papers	45.300 and one from 45.302-45.306		
45.302	Golden Age Literary Texts		45.300 and one from 45.301, 45.303-45.306		By special permission of the Head of the Department a candidate may present: (a) 45.300 only provided that he has passed in 45.200, (b) one or more papers other than 45.300, provided that he has passed in either 45.200 or in one Stage I paper
*45.303	19th Century Literary Texts		45.300 and one from 45.301, 45.302, 45.304-45.306		
45.304	20th Century Literary Texts	As for 45.301	45.300 and one from 45.301-45.303 and 45.306		
45.305	20th Century Latin American Literary Texts		45.300 and one from 45.301-45.306		
45.306	Spanish Study Abroad Programme		45.300	45.206	
45.307	Modern Hispanic Literature	45.200 or 45.208 and two other Spanish II papers	45.300 or 45.308 and one from 45.301-45.306		[As per all Stage III papers]
45.308	Language Acquisition (Advanced)	45.208	Two from 45.301-45.307, 45.309	45.300	By special permission of Head of Department a student having obtained an exceptionally high grade in 45.200 may enrol in 45.308 instead of 45.300
45.309	Introduction to Professional Translation	45.208	45.308		By special permission of Head of Department 45.300 may be a corequisite, or 45.200 a prerequisite

### Group B

#### Subject

Accounting

01.102

01.103

Accounting papers as prescribed for the Degree of BCom.

01.103

01.100

01.102

01.101

Management Studies and Labour Relations

72.203

72.207

72.303

72.307

72.311

72.315

Management Studies and Labour Relations papers as prescribed for the Degree of BCom.

Permission of Head of Department

Physics  
31.100

31.102

Botany  
Computer Science  
Chemistry  
Environmental Studies  
Geology  
Physics  
Physiology  
Zoology

Six credits in each subject at Stage I (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage 1 paper in that subject (BA)  
Four credits in each subject at Stage II (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage II paper in that subject (BA)  
Four credits in each subject at Stage III (BSc) are equivalent to one Stage III paper in that subject (BA)

\* Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

† Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

\*\* Linked corequisite papers must be attempted in the same year and will not be credited separately.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF ARTS MA

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Arts shall before enrolment for this Degree

(a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, except as provided in Regulation 2 below, and

(b) (i) have fulfilled the prerequisites for a subject as listed in the Schedule to these Regulations and have obtained a grade higher than an average of C in the Stage III papers in that subject;

(ii) provided that in special circumstances where the Head of Department so recommends the Senate may accept an average grade of less than C+ or waive such prerequisites as it thinks fit.

2. Subject to the Admission Regulations, candidates may enrol for this Degree after having completed at least nineteen papers, including eleven papers at advanced level, for the Bachelor of Arts Degree, provided that

(a) the course proposed for this Degree will extend over not fewer than two academic years;

(b) they have obtained grades averaging B- or above in the advanced papers for the Bachelor of Arts Degree of the subject which they propose to take for this Degree;

(c) they satisfy the conditions in Regulation 1 (b) above, or are exempted from them;

(d) the remaining paper or papers for the Bachelor of Arts Degree are not in the subject which they propose to take for this Degree nor prerequisite to it;

(e) they enrol for these two papers in the first year of their course for this Degree;

(f) should they not pass the remaining paper or papers in the first year of their Master of Arts course, their Master's course shall be suspended until they have passed the remaining paper or papers.

3. A candidate for this Degree shall follow a course of study that may extend over one year or more according to the requirements for the respective subjects in the Schedule but, except with the special permission of the Senate, shall not exceed three years in duration.

4. A candidate presenting subject 17, Languages and Literature, shall satisfy the requirements of Regulation 1(b) (i) in respect of each of the languages in his course. A candidate presenting subject 21, Mathematics, shall satisfy the requirements of Regulation 1(b) (i) in respect of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.

5. A candidate shall be required to fulfil the requirements and pass the examination in one of the subjects prescribed in the Schedule provided that the Head of Department may require a student who fails to achieve a sufficient level in his paper or papers to substitute a further paper or papers for a thesis, dissertation or research essay where these are prescribed.

6. A candidate for this Degree may not

(a) substitute a paper or papers for any paper in which the candidate has already been examined for this Degree;

(b) resit any paper for this Degree except as provided in Regulation 13.

7. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a candidate for this Degree in any subject listed in the appended Schedule other than the subject 17, Languages and Literature, may with the permission of the Senate take:

(i) one Stage III or one Master's paper or:

(ii) one Stage III and one Master's paper or:

(iii) two Master's papers, in a subject other than the one being taken for this Degree, or:

(iv) two Master's papers or one Master's and one Stage III paper in

subjects that both differ from the one being taken for this Degree, if in each case such a paper is related to the candidate's research interests. Each such paper shall substitute for and be equivalent to one paper in the Master's course of the subject in which the Degree is being taken.

8. No candidate shall take for this Degree any paper the same as or substantially equivalent to any other paper he has passed or is taking and obtain credit for both for this Degree.

9. No candidate who has previously failed in a subject for this degree shall enrol a second time in the same subject without the permission of the Senate. For the purpose of this Regulation, subject 17, Languages and Literature and any one of the individual subjects which under Clause 17 of the appended Schedule may be used to make up a combined Languages and Literature course, shall be regarded as the same subject.

10. The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Head of Department.

### **Theses**

11. Where a thesis is required the following conditions shall apply:

(a) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some branch of the subject; or with the approval of the Senate shall consist of a review of the literature of some special problem, which may be combined with the repetition of some standard investigation on an aspect of that problem.

(b) In the case of a thesis recording laboratory work, a certificate shall be supplied to the Registrar by the supervisor stating that laboratory work has been carried out within the University.

(c) Except where otherwise provided in the schedule, candidates must present their thesis in the year in which they first sit for their degree or, with the consent of the Head of Department concerned, in either of the subsequent two years, provided that the time may be extended, in exceptional cases, by Senate.

(d) Candidates shall submit their thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the academic year in which it is presented or at a subsequent date within that academic year if so arranged with the Head of his Department. The Registrar shall deliver the thesis to the Head of Department concerned.

(e) If the examiner with the concurrence of the Assessor so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to resubmit it by a later date specified by the examiner and approved by Senate.

12. Where a dissertation or research essay is required the following conditions shall apply:

(a) The candidate shall present the dissertation or research essay in the year prescribed under the appropriate Departmental heading in the Schedule.

(b) Except as provided in the Schedule, the candidate shall submit the dissertation or research essay to the Registrar by 1 November in the year in which it is due to be completed or at a subsequent date within the same academic year if so approved by the Head of Department concerned, provided that the period may be extended, in exceptional cases, by Senate. The Registrar shall deliver the dissertation or research essay to the Head of Department.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of a thesis, dissertation or research essay, see Examination Regulation 15.

### **Honours**

13.(a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.

(b) Honours shall be awarded only if a candidate obtains a sufficient standard in the papers taken and in the thesis at its first presentation, provided that, subject to sub-clause (c) of this Regulation, a candidate who qualifies for an aegrotat or compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honours by applying:

(i) for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in papers not in excess of the number permitted to a candidate for Honours under the Examination Regulations, or

(ii) to sit or resit in the year following all the papers affected, or

(iii) for a pass or passes under (i) and to sit or resit the remainder as in (ii) above.

(c) A candidate permitted under Regulation 3 to take a course of study for this Degree for a longer period than three academic years shall not be eligible for honours unless the Senate so decides.

14. A candidate shall not take for this Degree a subject already passed for the Degree of Master of Commerce, or for the Degree of Master of Science, or as a principal subject for the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours).

15. The Senate, upon the recommendation of the Head or Heads of Departments concerned, may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations or to the Schedule below.



## Schedule

### (1) Ancient History

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject of Ancient History including three Stage III papers OR six papers in Ancient History if a student has passed three Stage III papers in Latin or Greek.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a special subject which counts as two papers and an essay which counts as one paper.

The papers shall be selected from 12.400 to 12.429, except that one paper or two papers not already taken may be taken from 12.300 to 12.332. The special subject shall be one of those from 12.502/512 to 12.520/12.530. Normally a candidate shall present three or four papers in the first year and the remaining paper (if any), the special subject (2 papers) and essay (12.603) or dissertation (12.604) in the next year following.

A candidate in full time employment or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to take three papers in the first year, the special subject in the second year and one paper and the essay or dissertation in the third year, OR (with special permission) two papers in the first year, the special subject and one paper in the second year and one paper and the essay or dissertation in the third year. Other combinations may be approved by the Head of Department in special cases provided that candidates for Honours must complete the work within three years.

### (2) Anthropology

*Prerequisites:* Either eight papers in Anthropology and Maori Studies, or Anthropology and Linguistics, including three Stage III papers in Anthropology;

*Requirements:* Seven papers, or four papers and a thesis (03.601) which counts as three papers. The papers shall be selected from 03.400 to 03.423, 03.300 to 03.340, 83.300 to 83.310, 04.302 to 04.312; with no more than three papers from the following group of papers: 03.300 to 03.340, 83.300 to 83.310, 04.302 to 04.312.

A candidate shall present four papers in the first year and if taking seven papers, present the remaining papers in the following year.

A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to present three papers in the first year, or in special circumstances, two papers in the first year, and if taking seven papers, shall present all papers within three years of first enrolment for the Degree.

### (3) Art History

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject of Art History including three Stage III papers plus a pass in Stage I of Greek, Latin or a modern European language other than English.

*Requirements:* Seven papers or four and a thesis (19.601) which counts as three papers. The papers shall be selected from papers 19.400 to 19.412; except that among the first four papers presented for the Degree one paper may be taken from options presented for Art History III, and that a second paper prescribed for Art History III may be presented by students presenting three further papers instead of a thesis; but no paper that has been credited to the Degree of Bachelor of Arts shall be taken for this Degree, and papers 19.305 and 19.401 may not both be taken for this Degree. All candidates shall present four papers in the first year: except that a candidate in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to present two papers in each of two years. Candidates presenting papers only shall present the remaining three papers in one year.

### (4) Asian Studies

*Prerequisites:* Three Stage III papers in an Asian language: and such Stage II or III papers in the other subjects as the respective Heads of Departments shall approve.

*Requirements:* Five papers and a thesis (97.601) which counts as two papers; or six papers and a research essay (97.603) which counts as one paper.

In either case candidates shall include three papers selected from those available at Masters level in Chinese, Indonesian or Japanese subject to the approval of the Head of Department. The remaining two or three papers shall, subject to the approval of the Heads of Departments, be selected from the Masters papers in one or two different subjects. At the discretion of the Heads of Departments one Stage III paper may be substituted for one of these Masters papers. In the thesis or research essay, sources in the Asian language being studied will be used.

### (5) Chinese

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject of Chinese including 48.300, 48.301 and 48.302

*Requirements:* Six papers and a dissertation (48.604) which counts as one paper.

Papers 48.400 and 48.419 and four others selected from 48.402 to 48.420.

A candidate may present the six papers and a dissertation in the same year or four papers in the first year including 48.400 and 48.419, and the two papers and dissertation in the year next following. The dissertation must be presented by 1 November in the second year of the course provided this period may be extended to 28 February of the following year with the permission of the Head of Department and provided further that the time may be extended by the Senate in special cases.

### **(6) Economics**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject of Economics including three Stage III papers

*Requirements:* Six papers; or four papers and a thesis (13.601) which counts as two papers; or five papers and a research essay (13.603) which counts as one paper.

The papers shall be selected from 13.400 to 13.417.

### **(7) Education**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Education including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* (i) Four papers and a thesis (14.601) which counts as three papers. The papers shall be selected from 14.400 to 14.422.

OR (ii) Four papers and a folio of casework (14.606) in the area of guidance and counselling with associated seminars counting three papers. The four papers shall include 14.405, 14.410 and two other papers approved by the Head of Department. No more than fifteen students chosen on academic criteria and personal qualities may in any one year be permitted to prepare a folio of casework in guidance and counselling. Those not so chosen may complete this Degree by presenting a thesis.

OR (iii) Five papers and a thesis (14.611) which counts as two papers.

OR (iv) Six papers and a dissertation (14.604) which counts as one paper.

In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may permit a candidate who has attempted a thesis or a dissertation or a folio of casework to complete the MA as

(v) Seven papers.

A candidate may, with the consent of the Head of Department, be permitted to present three papers or two papers in the first year and remaining papers in the year next following.

*Note:* In considering applications to attempt two or three papers only in the first year, the Head of Department may take into account the extent of a student's employment or other responsibilities outside the University.

### **(8) English**

*Prerequisites:* (i) Two approved papers in a language other than English (normally two Stage I papers of a European language or two approved language papers from Maori Studies) and

(ii) Eight papers in English including 3 papers at Stage III chosen in accordance with the corequisites

*Requirements:* Seven papers; or five papers and a thesis (18.601) which counts as two papers; or six papers and a dissertation (18.604) which counts as one paper.

A candidate presenting

(a) Seven papers or

(b) Six papers and a dissertation shall present all papers or all papers and the dissertation in the same year or, having presented four papers in the first year, present the remaining three papers or two papers and dissertation in the year next following. Other combinations may be presented only with permission of the Head of Department, provided that no candidate may present fewer than three papers in the first year. The papers shall be selected from 18.400 to 18.422, 18.424 to 18.430 and from (but shall include not more than one of) the Stage III English papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts.

### **(9) French**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject of French including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Seven papers; or four papers and a thesis (34.601) which counts as three papers.

Paper 34.400 and either six or three papers selected from 34.401 to 34.431. Paper 34.417 is not available to students who have passed paper 34.214. Papers 34.421 and 34.431 may only be taken with the permission of the Head of Department.

A candidate (a) shall present (i) in the first year, four papers and (ii) in the second year, three further papers or, with the approval of the Head of the Department, a thesis; and (b) may, with that approval, present other combinations (including 7 papers in one year) but in no case fewer than three papers in the first year.

### **(10) Geography**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Geography including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (20.601) which counts as three papers. A candidate shall present four papers in the first year, and the thesis in the following year. In exceptional circumstances a candidate may, with

the consent of the Head of Department, be permitted to present the papers in two consecutive years with at least two papers in the first year, the thesis then being submitted in the third year. Papers shall be selected from 20.400 to 20.445.

### **(11) German**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject German including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Seven papers; or, with the approval of the Head of Department, five papers and a thesis (22.601) which shall count as two papers. Paper 22.400 and six papers selected from 22.401 to 22.440.

A candidate presenting seven papers shall either present all papers in the same year or, having presented four papers in the first year, shall present the remaining three papers, or the thesis and one paper, in the year next following.

Those students taking their MA over two years in this Department may present all papers at the end of their second year, if they have within their first year been officially admitted to a university of a German-speaking country to pursue a course of bona-fide study for no longer than six months.

### **(12) Greek**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Greek including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Six papers, comprising 10.400 and 10.401 and four papers selected from 10.402 to 10.408. By special permission of the Head of Department a student may be allowed to substitute another paper for 10.401. The choice of papers is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

A candidate in full time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to spread the papers over two years, provided that at least three papers are taken in the first year. Normally three papers will be taken in each year.

### **(13) History**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subjects History or Asian History or both including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Either (a) six papers, and a dissertation (24.604) counting as one paper; or (b) (with the permission of the Head of Department) four papers and a thesis (24.611) counting as three papers.

In respect both of (a) and (b), papers are to be selected from 24.400 to 24.429, and must include 24.410. With the permission of Head of Department, however, a student following the (a) option may include as one of the six papers required a special study (24.430), involving a research programme prepared in consultation with one or more staff members. In exceptional cases, a second special study (24.431) may be included.

In respect both of (a) and (b) students must attempt four papers (excluding 24.430 and 431 but including 24.410) in the first year. Those following the (a) option must complete their remaining work in their second year. However, a student in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to pursue the (a) option by attempting fewer papers in the first year and spreading the remaining work over the one or at most two years following.

### **(14) Indonesian**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Indonesian including three papers at Stage III.

*Requirements:* Six papers and a dissertation (80.604) which counts as one paper.

Papers 80.400, 80.401, 80.402 and three papers selected from 80.403 to 80.409.

A candidate may present the six papers and a dissertation in the same year or four papers in the first year and the two papers and the dissertation in the year next following.

The dissertation must be presented by 1 November in the second year of the course provided that this period may be extended to 28 February of the following year with permission of the Head of Department and provided further that the time may be extended by the Senate in special cases.

### **(15) Italian**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Italian including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Seven papers; or four papers and a thesis (35.601) which counts as three papers. Paper 35.400 and paper 35.403 and either five or two papers selected from 35.401 to 35.424.

A candidate presenting seven papers shall either present all papers in the same year, or having presented four papers one of which shall be paper 35.400 in the first year, shall present with the approval of the Head of the Department the thesis or the remaining three papers in the year next following.

### **(16) Japanese**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Japanese including 81.300, 81.301 and 81.302.

*Requirements:* Six papers and a dissertation (81.604) which counts as one paper.

Papers 81.400, 81.401 and four papers selected from 81.402 to 81.409.

A candidate may present the six papers and a dissertation in the same year or four papers in the first year including 81.400, 81.401 and the two papers and the dissertation in the next year following.

The dissertation must be presented by 1 November in the second year of the course provided that this period may be extended to 28 February of the following year with permission of the Head of Department and provided further that the time may be extended by the Senate in special cases.

### **(17) Languages and Literature**

*Prerequisites:* For the specific prerequisites for the individual courses a candidate is referred to the individual subjects making up a combined Languages and Literature course.

*Requirements:* Seven papers in any two of the subjects (i) to (viii); three papers to be taken from each language chosen and the seventh paper to be taken from either language chosen to be approved by the Head of the Department concerned.

#### **(i) English**

Two papers selected from 18.400 to 18.403 inclusive and one or two other papers from 18.404 to 18.422 and 18.424 to 18.430. This selection of papers may be varied by permission of the Heads of the Departments concerned.

#### **(ii) Greek**

Paper 10.400, and two or three from 10.401 to 10.408.

#### **(iii) Latin**

Paper 09.400 and two or three from 09.401 to 09.407.

#### **(iv) French**

Paper 34.400 and two or three from 34.401 to 34.431.

#### **(v) German**

Three or four papers from 22.400 to 22.440.

Paper 45.400 and two or three from 45.401 to 45.603.

A candidate presenting seven papers shall either present all papers in the first year or, having presented four papers in the first year, present three papers in the year next following.

### **(18) Latin**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Latin including three Stage III papers, together with Greek 10.100, 10.101 or approved alternatives.

*Requirements:* Six papers comprising 09.400 and 09.401 and four other papers selected from 09.402 to 09.407. By special permission of the Head of Department a student may be allowed to substitute another paper for 09.401. The choice of papers is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

A candidate in full time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to spread the papers over two years, provided that at least three papers are taken in the first year. Normally three papers will be taken in each year.

### **(19) Linguistics**

*Prerequisites:* Either eight papers in the subject Linguistics including three papers at Stage III level; or, with the permission of the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department, five papers in the subject Linguistics and three papers at Stage III level in the subject Maori Studies or in a language subject other than English.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (83.601) which shall count as three papers. The papers shall be selected from papers 83.400 to 83.406, 83.300 to 83.310 except that not more than two papers may be selected from 83.300 to 83.310.

A candidate shall present four papers in the first year.

A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to present two papers in the first year and two papers in the following year.

### **(20) Maori Studies**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Maori Studies including three papers at Stage III level.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (04.601) which shall count as three papers. The papers shall be selected from papers 04.400 to 04.403 and 04.302 to 04.312 with not more than two papers being selected from 04.302 to 04.312.

A candidate shall present four papers in the first year.

A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to present two papers in the first year and two papers in the following year.

### **(21) Mathematics**

*Prerequisites:* Mathematics 26.220 or 26.221, 26.240 or 26.241, at least one of 26.260, 26.280, 26.281, plus twenty 300 or 400 level credits approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. Normally at least 16 of those 20 credits shall be from papers in Mathematics and Computer Science, but 12 credits in Mathematics and Computer Science may be approved in special cases.

*Requirements:* Papers totalling 20 credits and a thesis (26.601) which will count as 16 credits or papers totalling 20 credits and an advanced course of study (26.605) which will count as 16 credits.

The selection of papers is to be made with the approval of the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics of papers from Mathematics 26.400 to 26.499 and Computer Science 07.490 to 07.499. Up to four of these credits may be replaced by four Stage III credits taken from papers in Mathematics and Computer Science not already taken for any other Degree or Diploma.

### **(22) Music**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Music including 28.301 at least one of 28.303 to 28.308, at least one of 28.314 and 28.323; where necessary a candidate will be required to satisfy the Head of the Department of his or her proficiency as a performer, or the ability to read an approved language other than English, or both.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (28.601) which shall count as three papers. The papers shall be selected from 28.400, 28.401, 28.402, 28.406, 28.409, 28.414, 28.419 and 28.423. All candidates must enrol for 28.423 (Seminar in Musicology) and one of 28.402, 28.406, 28.409 and 28.414 in their first year of enrolment. Candidates may with the approval of the Head of Department include one paper not previously taken from those listed for Music III, but their course must include two examinable papers from those listed above.

### **(23) Philosophy**

*Prerequisites:* Either: Eight papers including 29.101 and 29.306 and three other Stage III papers in the subject Philosophy.

Or: Eight papers including 29.101 and 29.306 in the subject Philosophy with two other Stage III papers in Philosophy and three other Stage III papers in any subject or subjects.

*Requirements:* Seven papers; or four papers and a thesis (29.601) which shall count as three papers. One and only one paper may be selected from those at Philosophy III (29.300 to 29.308) which the student has not previously passed. All other papers must be selected from 29.400 to 29.420. A candidate shall present either all papers in the same year or, having presented four papers in the first year, either present the remaining three papers in the year following or, with the approval of the Head of Department, a thesis.

The Head of Department may, in special circumstances (e.g. if the student is part time), approve a different sequence of papers over a period of time which accords with Regulation 3, no less than two papers being taken in any one year.

### **(24) Political Studies**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subjects Political Studies and Asian Politics including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (30.601) which shall count as three papers; or six papers and a research essay (30.603) which shall count as one paper; or seven papers.

The papers shall be selected from 30.400 to 30.415.

Each candidate shall present four papers in the first year and the remainder in the year next following, except that, with the consent of the Head of Department, the candidate may present three papers in the first year and the remainder in the year next following or, in special circumstances, four papers in the first year, two in the second year and the remainder in the third.

A candidate presenting a research essay must submit it at the end of the second term in the year of presentation.

### **(25) Psychology**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Psychology including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Seven papers, or four papers and a thesis (32.601) which shall count as three papers. The papers shall be selected from 32.401 to 32.421. Except with special permission of the Head of Department, a candidate may enrol for a thesis subsequent to the first year of enrolment for this Degree only if he or she obtains an average grade of at least B- in the four papers.

A candidate shall present 4 papers in the first year and if taking 7 papers present the remaining papers in the following year. A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities

may be permitted by the Head of Department to present 3 papers or in special circumstances, 2 papers in the first year; and if taking 7 papers shall present the papers within three years of first enrolment for the Degree.

### **(26) Russian**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Russian including three Stage III papers (43.310 and two others).

*Requirements:* Seven papers, or five papers and a thesis (43.601) which shall count as two papers. Papers 43.410 and at least one paper from 43.411 to 43.416 and at least one from 43.418 to 43.425. Paper 43.418 is a requirement for students intending to present a thesis in Russian literature. A candidate presenting seven papers may present four papers in the first year and the remaining three papers in the year next following, or, with the consent of the Head of Department, three papers in the first year and the remaining four in the year next following. A candidate presenting a thesis shall present either four or five papers in the first year and the remaining paper (if any) and the thesis in the year next following.

### **(27) Sociology**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Sociology including 82.312 and two other Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Either four papers and thesis (82.601) equivalent to three papers;

or: Six papers and a Research Essay (82.603) equivalent to one paper.

Papers to be drawn from 82.400 to 82.417, except that one paper not already taken may be drawn from 82.300 to 82.318.

A candidate shall present four papers in the first year, and the remaining papers in the second year: except that a candidate who is engaged in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may be permitted by the Head of Department to present three papers in the first year, or in special circumstances two papers in the first year, the remaining papers to be completed within the following two years.

The date for the presentation of the Research Paper (82.603) shall be not later than 1 November in the year for which enrolment in this paper is accepted.

### **(28) Spanish**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Spanish including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Seven papers or six papers, and a research essay (45.603), or four papers and a thesis (45.601) which counts as three papers.

Paper 45.400 and either six or five or three papers from 45.401 to 45.425. A candidate presenting seven papers shall either present all papers in the same year or, having presented four papers, one of which shall be paper 45.400, in the first year shall present, with the approval of the Head of Department, the thesis or the remaining three papers in the year, next following. Other combinations may be presented only with permission of the Head of Department, provided that no candidate may present fewer than three papers in the first year.

## **THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF LITERATURE**

### **MLitt**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations. For general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### **General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Literature shall before enrolment have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Master's Degree with First or Second Class Honours, or, in exceptional cases, one of the other preliminary qualifications that would be required for enrolment for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

2. A candidate for this Degree shall follow a course of full-time supervised study of not less than one year, nor more than two years, or the equivalent in part-time study.

#### **Course Content**

3. The course of study for this Degree shall comprise the preparation and presentation of a thesis, based on original research in one of the subjects available in the Faculty of Arts. The research topic shall be approved by the Head of Department and by the Senate.

4. The Senate shall, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, appoint a supervisor or supervisors of the thesis.

#### **Other Provisions**

5. The Senate may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

6. The Degree may, on the recommendation of the Senate, be awarded with Distinction.
7. Notwithstanding Regulation 12(b) of the Regulations for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy, a thesis rejected for that Degree shall not be submitted for this Degree.
8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1988.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DEPARTMENT OF ANTHROPOLOGY

The Department of Anthropology includes three subjects: Anthropology, Maori Studies and Linguistics.

Some papers in this Department are offered under more than one subject. Such a paper will be listed under the same short title but with a different code number for each subject. Thus *Introduction to Maori Society* is listed both under Anthropology with the code number 03.102, and Maori Studies, with the code number 04.101. Students will choose the subject under which they wish to take such double-listed papers.

No paper may be credited twice to the same degree.

**Note:**\* This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.  
† This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

### ANTHROPOLOGY

#### Anthropology Stage I Level

##### Social Anthropology Papers

##### 03.100 Introduction to Social Anthropology

Basic anthropological issues and approaches to the study of culture and society.

(1 hour lecture per week, 1 hour tutorial; taught in two streams)

##### 03.102 Introduction to Maori Society

Traditional Maori society; the effects of European contact; the contemporary culture. This same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.101.

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour tutorial)

##### Ethnomusicology paper

##### 03.103 Ethnomusicology: An Introduction to World Music

An introduction to the history, scope and principles of music structure and music behaviour, and a survey of the traditional musics of selected non-western societies.

Corequisite: 28.105 or permission of Head of Department of Music.

The same paper is offered as Music 28.114.

(2 hour lecture per week; no tutorial)

##### Archaeology and Biological Anthropology paper

##### 03.101 Introduction to Archaeology and Biological Anthropology

Biological variation and evolution in human populations; evolution of the human species; evolution of culture up to the emergence of the first cities and the prehistory of the Pacific region.

(1 hour lecture per week and 1 hour tutorial; taught in two streams)

#### Anthropology Stage II Level

Students should note that papers 03.200, 03.201, 03.202, 03.203, 03.204, 03.206, 03.207, 03.208, 03.209, 03.214 and 03.215 are pre or corequisite to certain Stage III and MA papers. Papers 03.200, 03.201, 03.202, 03.203, 03.204, 03.206, 03.207, 03.210, 03.212, 03.213, 03.214 and 03.215 are available to candidates who have not completed the normal prerequisite, provided that they have passed four papers in any subject, or subjects, and take the normal prerequisites as a corequisite.

#### Social Anthropology Papers

##### 03.200 Ethnography of Island Polynesia

A survey of a number of pre-European and contemporary rural Polynesian societies.

Prerequisite: 03.100

(2 hour lecture, 1 hour fortnightly tutorial)

##### 03.201 Melanesian Ethnography

A survey of Melanesian societies, with emphasis on traditional and changing social, economic, political and cultural features, especially on the village level.

Prerequisite: 03.100

(2 hour lecture/discussion; taught in two streams).

##### \*03.202 Social Organisation

A survey of various methods for the description and analysis of social organisation. Prerequisite 03.100

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour fortnightly tutorial)

##### \*03.203 Anthropology and the Concept of Culture

The bases of the notion of culture in European, British and New Zealand social history.

Prerequisite: 03.100

(1 hour lecture, followed by 1 hour discussion; tutorials as necessary)

##### 03.210 Ethnic Groups and Inter-ethnic Relations

Anthropological approaches to ethnicity.

Prerequisite: 03.100

(1 hour lecture, followed by 1 hour discussion; tutorials as necessary)

##### \*03.211 Traditional Maori Society

Some accounts of traditional Maori life.

Prerequisites: 03.102 or 04.101 or 24.120 or permission of Head of Department

The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.202.

##### †03.212 Sociolinguistics

The study of language in its social context.

Prerequisite: 03.100.

The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.202 and English 18.205.

(2 hours per week)

### **03.213 Development of Ethnography**

An historical survey of various ethnographies and schools of social anthropology.

Prerequisite: 03.100

(1 hour lecture followed by 1 hour discussion)

### **03.214 Issues in Social Theory**

An introduction to theoretical issues in social anthropology.

Prerequisite: 03.100

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour fortnightly tutorial)

### **03.216 Maori Kinship and Community**

A study of selected patterns of social relations e.g. kinship and residence; kinship and ancestral land; kinship and tribal identity.

Prerequisite: 03.102 or 04.101

**NOTE:** The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.207.

## **Archaeology and Biological Anthropology Papers**

### **\*03.204 Economic Prehistory**

Approaches to the archaeological study of human subsistence economies.

Prerequisite: 03.101

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour tutorial fortnightly)

### **03.206 Origins of Civilisation**

The study of the early civilisations of the Near East and a comparative survey of early Chinese, American and other civilisations.

Prerequisite: 03.101

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour fortnightly tutorial)

### **03.207 Human Evolution**

The evolution of humankind; the fossil evidence for human evolution as well as comparative data on the other primates and from fields such as behavioural genetics and neurology. One term is spent looking at the evolution of the brain and specifically human behaviours such as language.

Prerequisite: 03.101

(1 hour lecture, regular 2 hour tutorial/labs arranged)

### **03.208 The Coming of the Maori**

Archaeological perspectives on Polynesian origins, initial adaptations to New Zealand, local cultural development, classic Maori society, history to 1840 A.D.

Corequisite: 03.102 or 04.101 or permission of Head of Department

The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.203.

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour fortnightly tutorial required.

Field trips and short practical project)

### **03.215 Current Issues in Archaeology**

An examination of current concepts in archaeological research and their place in the development of archaeological thought.

Prerequisite: 03.101

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour tutorial)

## **Ethnomusicology Paper**

### **03.209 Ethnomusicology: Folk and Traditional Music of the Western Continents**

Prerequisites: 03.103 or 28.114

Corequisite: 28.103

The same paper is offered as Music 28.214. For prescription see under Music Department.

(1 hour lecture, 1 hour listening)

### **Anthropology Stage III Level**

Students should note that paper 03.308 is a prerequisite to paper 03.401 at MA level.

## **Social Anthropology Papers**

### **03.300 History of Anthropology**

Anthropology and its history of ideas — the theorists, the theories, and their social contexts.

Prerequisite: 03.100.

Corequisites: 03.202 or 03.214, or any two of 03.200, 03.201, 03.203, 03.210, 03.211, 04.202

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

### **\*03.301 Kinship and Marriage**

A survey of the anthropological literature on kinship and marriage with emphasis on different models of interpretation.

Prerequisite: 03.100

Corequisite: 03.202 or 03.214

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

### **03.302 Contemporary Problems in Social Anthropology**

Selected contemporary issues in social anthropology.

Prerequisite: 03.202 or 03.214 or 03.203

(2 hour lecture and discussion)

### **\*03.304 Social History of Maori Land Legislation**

Historical study of Maori land legislation and its social context, oriented toward critical analysis of contemporary New Zealand society.

Prerequisite: one or more stage II papers in Social Anthropology or Maori Studies or permission of Head of Department.

The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.308

### **†03.305 Special Topic in Melanesia**

Corequisite: 03.201 and 03.202 or 03.214 or permission of Head of Department

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

### **03.306 Topics in Contemporary Maori Society**

A survey of current Maori institutions, social groupings and events.

Prerequisites: One or more Stage II papers in Maori Studies or Social Anthropology.

The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.302

(2 hour lecture and discussion)

### **03.307 Folk Classification**

Studies of the ways information about human beings and their environment is ordered in different cultures with particular attention to classifications of animals and plants.

Prerequisite: 03.100 and permission of Head of Department.



Corequisite: 03.202 or 03.214, although prior completion of one of these papers will be to the student's advantage

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**\*03.310 Social Movements**

The origins, structure, and ideology of a variety of movements of protest and change.

Prerequisite: 03.100 and permission of Head of Department.

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**03.311 Studies in Oral Literature**

The study of oral narrative and other folklore materials. Various theoretical frameworks and analytical techniques are considered and applied to materials drawn from Pacific and other societies.

Prerequisite: 03.202 or 03.214 or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department.

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**03.313 Contemporary Polynesia**

A survey of recent social, economic and political changes in Fiji and Island Polynesia.

Corequisite: 03.200

Prerequisite: 03.100

Restriction: 03.329

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**†03.317 Language and Society**

The ethnography of communication.

Prerequisites: 03.100, and permission of Head of Department. The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.308

(2 hour lecture)

**03.320 The Anthropology of Agriculture**

Ecological and economic aspects of interactions between plants and human subsistence activities in traditional and developing societies, with emphasis on Pacific humid tropics.

Prerequisites: 03.101 and 03.202 or 03.214; or 03.100 and 03.101 and permission of Head of Department

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**\*03.322 Urban Anthropology**

Prerequisite: 03.202 or 03.214; or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department

**03.323 Diachronic Anthropology**

Anthropological approaches to the time dimension especially in non-industrial societies.

Prerequisites: 03.202 or 03.200 or 03.201 or 03.214; or 03.100 and permission of Head of Department

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**†03.326 Statistical Methods in Anthropology**

Prerequisite: 03.100 or 03.101

For prescription, see under Prehistory Stage III papers

**\*03.329 Contemporary South Pacific Societies**

Recent cultural, social, economic and political developments in Melanesia, Fiji and Island Polynesia.

Prerequisite: 03.200 or 03.201

Restrictions: 03.305 and 03.313

(2 hour lecture/discussion)

**†03.333 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

Prerequisite: 03.100 and permission of Head of Department

**†03.334 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

Prerequisite: 03.100 and permission of Head of Department

**†03.335 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

Prerequisites: 03.100 and permission of Head of Department

**†03.336 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

Prerequisite: 03.202 or 03.214

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**Archaeology and Biological Anthropology Papers**

**03.308 Advanced Method and Theory in Archaeology**

Prerequisite: 03.101.

Corequisite: 03.100 or 03.102/04.101 and 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215 or permission of Head of Department

(2 hour lecture/tutorial)

**†03.309 Primate Behaviour and Society**

A choice of topics in advanced biological anthropology that allows a consideration of the relevance of information from the study of human biology to the understanding of our species. Primate sexuality, behaviour and social structure are examined comparatively and in an evolutionary framework.

Prerequisite: 03.101 or permission of Head of Department

Corequisite: 03.207 (or permission of the Head of Department given appropriate science papers).

(2 hour lecture/seminar, regular tutorial/labs arranged)

**03.314 Problems in Asian Prehistory and Biological Anthropology**

Prerequisite: 03.101

Corequisite: either 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

**03.315 Regional Prehistory: Oceania**

Archaeology, prehistory, historical linguistics, settlement pattern, and ethnohistory of a region.

Prerequisite: 03.101

Corequisites: 03.204 or 03.206, 03.208 or 04.203 or 03.215 or permission of Head of Department

(2 hour lecture/tutorial)

**\*03.316 Regional Prehistory**

Prerequisite: 03.101

Corequisites: one of 03.204, 03.206, 03.207, 03.208/04.203

(2 hour lecture/seminar weekly)

**†03.319 Roman History**

Britain from the Iron Age to the Anglo Saxons (c. AD 800).

Prerequisites: 12.103 and 03.101, or permission of the

relevant Head of Department (1 hour lecture twice weekly). The same paper is offered as Ancient History 12.303. For prescription, see under Ancient History III. (Students taking this paper for Anthropology do not have to take the language option.)

### **03.325 Experimental Archaeology**

Experimental approaches to the interpretation of archaeological data, involving basic training in techniques of field and laboratory analysis, and practical experimental research projects.

Prerequisite: 03.101

Corequisites: 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215 or permission of Head of Department (3 hour lecture/laboratory)

### **†03.326 Statistical Methods in Anthropology**

Introduction to analytical approaches to anthropological data. Basic statistical concepts and methods, computer skills and their uses within anthropology. Aspects of research design, quantitative analysis, statistical inference, data management, pattern recognition.

Prerequisites: 03.100 or 03.101

(2 hour lecture/tutorial)

### **03.327 Human Osteology and Forensics for the Archaeologist**

Prerequisite: 03.207 or permission of Head of Department given appropriate science papers

(1 hour lecture/seminar; 2 hours practical work per week)

### **\*03.330 Special Topic in Archaeology**

Prerequisite: 03.101

Corequisites: 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203

(2 hour lecture/tutorial; some lab work required)

### **†03.331 Archaeological Resource Management**

Prerequisite: 03.101

Corequisites: 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203

(2 hour lecture/seminar; 5 days field work)

### **\*03.337 Special Topic in Comparative Civilisations**

Prerequisites: 03.101 and 12.100

Corequisites: 03.206 and 12.200 or 12.220

By special permission of the Head of Department one of the corequisites may be waived

The same paper is offered as Ancient History 12.307

### **03.338 Special Topic in Biological Anthropology**

Human biocultural adaptation in the Pacific. Contemporary, historic and archaeological populations.

Prerequisite: 03.101

Corequisite: 03.207 or permission of Head of Department.

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

By special permission of the Head of Department the prerequisite and corequisite may be waived provided appropriate Science papers have been passed.

### **†03.339 Special Topic in Culture History**

For 1988: Austronesian settlement of the Pacific: the view from linguistics.

Prerequisite: Permission of Head of Department

The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.302.

### **†03.340 Field Methods in Archaeology**

An introduction to archaeological excavation fieldwork methods, laboratory analysis and the writing of reports.

Prerequisites: 03.204 or 03.206 or 03.208/04.203 or 03.215

Fieldwork: 15 days. Lab/seminar: Ten two-hour classes.

### **Ethnomusicology**

#### **03.318 Music of Oceania**

Prerequisite: 03.209

Corequisite: 28.201

(Music Department corequisites for 28.201 are waived for students of 03.318)

(2 hour lecture)

The same paper is offered as Music 28.314. For prescription see under Music Department.

### **Anthropology for MA and Honours**

The course of study of every student must be approved by the Head of Department. A candidate may present either seven papers, or four papers and a thesis (03.601) counting as three papers.

Students wishing to regard their degree as a qualification in social anthropology are required to take not fewer than three 03.400 level papers, other than "Special Topic" papers, in this subdiscipline, and when their course consists entirely of papers, to take not fewer than four such papers. Students wishing to regard their degree as a qualification in prehistory or biological anthropology are required to take 03.401 or 03.412 and at least one other paper in Anthropology at 03.400 level, and, where their course consists entirely of papers, are required to take 03.409. Full-time students are, except with the special permission of Senate, required to present four papers in their first year of enrolment and either three papers or a thesis in their second year. Part-time students who are engaged in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of Department to present three papers in the first year or in special circumstances two papers in the first year; and if taking seven papers shall present all papers within three years of first enrolment for the degree. Students presenting theses who are candidates for scholarships and prizes will be required to meet appropriate deadlines determined by their supervisors and Head of Department.

### **Social Anthropology Papers**

#### **03.400 Theory in Social Anthropology**

A study of some major theoretical domains in anthropological thought.

Prerequisites: at least two papers from 03.300-03.307, 03.310-03.313, 03.317, 03.320-03.323, 03.329

(2 hour seminar)

#### **03.402 Advanced Topic in the Social Anthropology of Polynesia**

Recent studies of Polynesian culture are examined

and past studies re-examined from a comparative and structural/historical perspective.

Prerequisite: as for 03.400

(2 hour seminar)

### **\*03.404 Ritual and Symbolism**

Anthropological interpretations of religion, ritual and systems of belief.

Prerequisites: as for 03.400

(2 hour seminar)

### **03.405 Ethnohistory**

A critical discussion of theories of history working toward the definition of a Pacific history from a Pacific Island point of view.

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

### **03.408 Ethical Problems in Social Research**

An examination of questions of responsibility, relevance, and the place of values in the conduct of social research.

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

### **†03.411 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

Topic to be announced.

### **†03.413 Special Topic in Social Anthropology**

Topic to be announced.

### **†03.414 Field Methods in Social Anthropology**

An examination of the experience, methods and techniques of anthropological fieldwork in relation to particular research problems.

(2 hour seminar)

### **03.415 Research Topic in Social Anthropology**

Corequisites: at least two 03.400 level papers in social anthropology excluding those labelled "Special Topic". This paper is not available to students who are intending to enrol for a thesis (03.601), except with special permission of Head of Department.

### **03.419 Topic in Social Anthropology**

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

### **\*03.420 Critical Literary Theory and Ethnographic Texts**

An historical critique of ethnographic form through the study of selected 20th Century ethnographies.

### **†03.423 Maori Ethnicity**

Also offered as Maori Studies 04.402.

### **Archaeology and Biological Anthropology Papers**

#### **03.401 Archaeological Method**

Illustrative, laboratory and analytical techniques. Artefact drawing, field surveys, photography and conservation. Report writing.

Prerequisite: 03.308 or permission of Head of Department. Previous field-work is also required for enrolment in this paper.

(3 hour lecture and laboratory; 4 weeks field-work)

#### **03.403 Prehistoric Ecology and Economics**

A study of concepts and the archaeological evidence. A current or previous enrolment in 03.308 is strongly advised.

(2 hour lecture or seminar)

### **03.409 Research Topic in Biological Anthropology and/or Archaeology**

Research problems in archaeology and/or biological anthropology such as computer applications and other special topics selected in consultation with staff. The paper requires either a series of research essays, or one major essay in the form of a short (40-50 pp.) research paper. Required of students who wish to regard their degree as a qualification in biological anthropology or prehistory and whose course consists entirely of papers. Also available to students doing a thesis degree, but not in the form of a single research essay.

### **03.412 Theory in Biological Anthropology**

A study of evolutionary theory, its history and its application to human populations for the understanding of anatomical behavioural and/or social attributes.

Prerequisite: 03.309 or permission of Head of Department given appropriate Science papers

(2 hour lecture and laboratory)

### **03.416 Special Topic in Biological Anthropology**

For 1988: Special topics selected in consultation with appropriate staff according to field of research.

### **03.418 Research Design and Methodology**

The course is designed to introduce students to procedures used in the definition of research problem, development and implementation of research design and the presentation of results.

Prerequisite: any Stage III paper in Prehistory, Biological Anthropology or Maori Studies, or permission of Head of Department.

(2 hour lecture/seminar)

### **†03.421 Advanced Biological Anthropology**

A directed reading and individual study course to prepare students for doing research in a selected subfield of biological anthropology.

Prerequisites: as for 03.412

### **03.422 Special Topic in Archaeology**

For 1988: Special topics selected in consultation with appropriate staff according to the student's field of research.

### **Ethnomusicology**

#### **03.410 Advanced Theory and Method in Ethnomusicology**

The same paper is offered as Music 28.414. For prescriptions see under Music Department.

Corequisite: 03.318

(1 hour lecture)

### **03.601 Thesis**

## **MAORI STUDIES**

Full details concerning Maori Studies papers are contained in *Courses in Maori Studies for 1988* available from Maori Studies secretary.

### **Maori Studies Stage I Level**

Students who are beginning their study of Maori

language should take 04.100 and 04.104 concurrently.

#### **04.100 Introduction to the Structure of Maori Language**

##### **04.101 Introduction to Maori Society**

Traditional Maori society; the effects of European contact; the contemporary culture.

The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.102.

#### **04.104 Introduction to Spoken and Written Maori**

##### **Maori Studies Stage II Level**

Students should note that 04.204 and 04.205 are designed to be taken together and should be enrolled in concurrently.

##### **\*04.202 Traditional Maori Society**

Some accounts of traditional Maori life.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.211.

##### **04.203 The Coming of the Maori**

Archaeological perspectives on Polynesian origins, initial adaptations to New Zealand, local cultural development, classic Maori society, history to 1840 AD. The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.208.

#### **04.204 Second Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts**

#### **04.205 Second Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills**

##### **\*04.206 A Topic in Maori Material Culture**

##### **04.207 Maori Kinship and Community**

A study of selected patterns of social relations e.g. kinship and residence; kinship and ancestral land; kinship and tribal identity.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.216.

##### **Maori Studies Stage III Level**

The language papers 04.306 and 04.307 are designed to be taken together and students should enrol in them concurrently.

##### **04.302 Topics in Contemporary Maori Society**

A survey of current Maori institutions, social groupings and events.

Note: The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.306.

##### **†04.303 Maori Oratory: *Whaikōrero* and other Non-Casual Speech Forms**

##### **†04.304 Maori Poetry and Song**

A study of selected traditional song texts, their musical and literary form, and the traditional circumstances of their composition.

##### **†04.305 Languages of Polynesia**

A comparative-historical survey.

The same paper is offered as Linguistics 83.303.

#### **04.306 Third Year Maori Language: Structure and Prescribed Texts**

#### **04.307 Third Year Maori Language: Oral and Written Skills**

##### **\*04.308 Social History of Maori Land Legislation**

Historical study of Maori land legislation and its social context, oriented toward critical analysis of contemporary New Zealand society.

The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.304.

##### **04.309 Whanaungatanga – Whakapapa**

##### **†04.310 Special Topic in Maori Studies**

##### **†04.311 Special Topic in Maori Studies**

##### **†04.312 Special Topic in Maori Studies**

##### **Maori Studies for MA and Honours**

The course of study of every student must be approved by the Head of Department. A candidate must present four papers and a thesis (04.601) counting as three papers. Up to two papers listed under Stage III level Maori Studies, if not credited for a BA degree, may be offered as papers for MA.

##### **†04.400 A Topic in Maori Language**

##### **†04.401 A Topic in Maori Literature**

##### **†04.402 Maori Ethnicity**

Also offered as Anthropology 03.423.

##### **†04.403 Special Topic in Maori Studies**

##### **04.601 Thesis**

---

## **LINGUISTICS**

Fuller details concerning Linguistics papers are contained in *Courses in Linguistics for 1988* available from the Department.

### **Linguistics Stage I Level**

#### **83.102 Introduction to Linguistics**

The structure of human languages. Methods of analysis and formal description.

Restriction: English 18.105.

#### **83.103 Introduction to Historical and Comparative Linguistics**

The study of language change and historical relationships among languages.

### **Linguistics Stage II Level**

#### **†83.202 Sociolinguistics**

The study of language in its social context.

The same paper is taught as Anthropology 03.212 and English 18.205.

#### **83.203 Phonology**

Phonological and phonetic theory. The study of sound systems. Problems of analysis.

#### **83.204 Grammatical Analysis**

Grammatical theory. Types of grammatical systems. Descriptive problems in morphology and syntax.

### **Linguistics Stage III Level**

#### **83.300 Recent Trends in Grammar**

Modern theories of syntax and morphology. Syntactic and morphological topics.

#### **†83.301 Special Topic in Linguistics**

#### **†83.302 Special Topic in Comparative Linguistics**

For 1988: Austronesian settlement of the Pacific: the view from Linguistics. The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.339.

#### **†83.303 Languages of Polynesia**

A comparative-historical survey.

The same paper is offered as Maori Studies 04.305.

#### **†83.304 Theory of the Lexicon**

### 83.305 Linguistic Analysis of Literature

For prescription see under English 18.303

### \*83.306 Philosophy of Language

For prescription see under Philosophy 29.202

### 83.307 Phonology and New Zealand English

For prescription see under English 18.304

### †83.308 Language and Society

The same paper is offered as Anthropology 03.317

### †83.309 Field Methods

Practical work with a native speaker of an unfamiliar language. Phonological and grammatical description of the language.

### †83.310 Special Topic in Linguistics

#### Linguistics for MA and Honours

The course of study of every student must be approved by the Head of Department. A candidate must present four papers and a thesis (83.601) counting as three papers.

A candidate who has passed three papers at Stage III level in the subject Maori Studies or in a language subject other than English and five papers in Linguistics may proceed to MA in Linguistics with the permission of Senate upon recommendation of the Head of Department.

Up to two papers listed under Stage III Linguistics, if not credited for a BA degree, may be offered as papers for MA.

### 83.400 A Topic in Descriptive Linguistics

### †83.401 A Topic in Descriptive Linguistics

### †83.402 A Topic in Sociolinguistics

### †83.403 A Topic in Comparative Linguistics

### †83.404 Special Topic in Linguistics

### †83.405 Advanced Studies in Syntax

(This paper will also be offered as English 18.408) Some of the theories and concepts which are currently of interest to grammarians. Topics include: case, dependency, and lexical grammars, functionalism, grammatical relations, transitivity, universals and metatheoretical principles.

### \*83.406 English Linguistics.

Also offered as English 18.410.

### 83.601 Thesis

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

## DEPARTMENT OF ART HISTORY

For Art History prescriptions for BA, BFA, MFA see Faculty of Fine Arts, Degree Prescriptions.

### Art History for MA and Honours

Four papers from 19.400 to 19.412, or three papers from 19.400 to 19.412 and one paper from the options prescribed for Stage III Art History

and either:

(a) A Thesis (value 3 papers)

or

(b) Three papers from 19.400 to 19.412, or two papers from 19.400 to 19.412 and one paper from the options

prescribed for Stage II Art History.

### \*19.400 Topics in 17th Century Drawing

### 19.401 Topics in Australian and New Zealand Art (Advanced)

†19.402 Special Topic in Western Art before 1600, to be prescribed by the Head of Department

### \*19.403 Watteau and his Sources and Influences

### \*19.404 Film Studies

### 19.405 Nicolas Poussin and 17th Century Classicism

Note: A candidate who has been credited with a pass in paper 19.303 may not take this paper.

### †19.406 Art Historiography

### 19.407 A Topic in Medieval Art

### 19.408 A Topic in 19th Century Art

### 19.409 Topics in the Theory of Modern Art

### 19.410 Topics in 19th and 20th Century Sculpture

### 19.411 Modern Literature and the Visual Arts

### 19.412 Women in Art (Advanced)

The thesis (19.601) shall not exceed 30,000 words, and two copies must be handed in to the Registrar, not later than 1 November.

The subjects for the thesis shall be chosen in consultation with the Head of Department.

Book lists will be distributed at the beginning of the year.

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

## DEPARTMENT OF ASIAN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES

### CHINESE

#### Chinese I

A detailed guide to Chinese studies at Auckland is available from the Department of Asian Languages. Students are invited to refer to this or to consult members of staff before enrolment.

Papers 48.100 and 48.101 are linked corequisites, and entail six hours of teaching per week. A candidate's final result will be determined over the two papers.

### 48.100 and 48.101 Language Acquisition A and B

A beginner's course in the written and oral use of modern Chinese, tested in some or all of the following ways: translation into and from Chinese, reading and comprehension, re-arrangement of words and phrases, sentence-making and conversation.

### 48.102 Introduction to Chinese Thought

(First half of year)

A survey in English translation of traditional Chinese philosophical and religious literature (Confucian, Taoist, Buddhist, etc.) and of the ideas which have helped shape Chinese culture. This paper is open to all interested students, whether or not they are taking Chinese language papers.

#### **48.104 Aspects of traditional Chinese culture** (Second half of year)

This course explores many diverse but related aspects of Chinese culture within the framework of the great 18th century novel *The Story of the Stone* (to be studied in English translation). This paper is open to all students whether or not they are taking Chinese language papers.

#### **Chinese II**

Papers 48.200, 48.201 and 48.202 are linked co-requisites, and entail seven hours of teaching a week. A candidate's final result will be determined over the three papers.

#### **48.200 Language Acquisition**

Advanced written and oral use of modern Chinese, tested in some or all of the following ways: translation into and from Chinese, conversation, dictation, reading, comprehension, comments on grammar.

#### **48.201 Introduction to Modern Chinese Literature**

A survey of the major developments in modern Chinese literature, together with readings of selected passages from the works of representative authors.

#### **48.202 Introduction to Classical Chinese Language and Literature**

#### **\*48.203 Major Schools of Chinese Thought**

A study of the major schools of Chinese thought. Texts in English translation representative of Confucianism, Mohism, Taoism, Legalism, Chinese Buddhism and Neo-Confucianism will be analysed and discussed. This paper is open to students whether or not they are taking Chinese language papers. This course will normally be offered in alternate years.

#### **Chinese III**

Candidates must take 48.300 and either 48.301 and 48.302 or 48.301 and 48.303. The groups of papers are linked. A candidate's result in the final examination will be determined over three papers. 48.300, 48.301 and 48.302 are prerequisites for the MA Degree. Students may take 48.303 as a fourth paper in addition to 48.300, 48.301 and 48.302. As a fourth paper 48.303 must be passed with a minimum mark of 50%.

#### **48.300 Language Acquisition**

Written and oral use of modern Chinese tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading.

#### **48.301 Readings in Contemporary Chinese Literature**

#### **48.302 Readings in Classical Chinese Literature**

#### **\*48.303 Readings in Contemporary Chinese**

Contemporary Chinese writing and practical language usage.

With approval of the Head of Department certain papers prescribed for Chinese for MA and Honours

may be selected as additional Stage III level papers.

#### **Chinese for MA and Honours**

Six papers (which must include 48.400 and 48.419) and a dissertation (48.604) of 10,000 words or more on a selected topic for which Chinese sources will be used. Students intending to enrol for MA should consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss the availability of papers and obtain advice on vacation reading. Students are strongly advised to take papers 48.102 and 48.104 as part of their BA Degree.

#### **48.400 Advanced Language Skills for Practical and Research Use**

#### **48.402 Chinese Prose Literature of the Tang and Song Dynasties**

#### **48.403 Introduction to Chinese Historiography and Translation of Historical Texts**

#### **48.405 Chinese Poetry of the Tang and Song Dynasties**

#### **48.406 Readings in the Confucian and Taoist Classics**

#### **48.411 The Novel in Imperial China**

#### **48.412 Modern Chinese Fiction**

#### **48.413 Traditional Chinese Drama, with Special Reference to the *Xixiang Ji***

#### **48.414 Modern Chinese Drama, with Special Reference to the Plays of Cao Yu**

#### **48.415 A study of Newspaper and other Non-literary Forms of Modern Chinese**

#### **48.416 An Approved Topic**

#### **48.417 A Special Topic in Chinese Poetry**

#### **48.418 Readings in Contemporary Chinese Literature**

#### **48.419 Bibliography and Research Methodology**

Candidates who have taken paper 48.401 prior to 1988 may not take paper 48.419.

#### **48.420 Principles and practice of Chinese-English translation**

Every candidate will be required to pass an examination in the oral use of the language. In determining the class of Honours, the candidate's performance in the written papers, the dissertation, the oral examination and in course work will be taken into consideration. The attention of students who intend to enrol for MA is drawn to Regulation 6 of the General Provisions for the Degree of Master of Arts.

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all the papers listed above will be available in any one year.

### **INDONESIAN**

#### **Indonesian I**

Papers 80.100 and 80.101 are linked corequisites and entail six hours of teaching per week plus language labs. No previous knowledge of Indonesian is required. A candidate's final result will be determined over the two papers.

#### **80.103 Indonesian Literature and Civilizations**

A survey of social, religious and intellectual forces

which have contributed to the formation of Indonesian literatures; including traditional and contemporary dance and drama. This paper is available to students whether or not they are taking Indonesian language papers.

This paper will be offered in alternate years.

#### **80.104 Islam in Indonesia**

This course will trace the origins of Islam in the Middle East and its subsequent development in India, Africa and Island South-East Asia. The fundamental doctrines of the Muslim tradition will be examined and specific attention given to its contribution to the character of Indonesian society and its literature. This paper is available to all students whether or not they are taking Indonesian language papers.

#### **Indonesian II**

Papers 80.200, 80.201 and 80.202 are linked co-requisites. A candidate's result in the final examination will be determined over three papers. Students may take 80.203 as an additional paper.

#### **80.200 Language Acquisition**

Written and oral use of Indonesian/Malay tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading.

#### **80.201 Twentieth Century Indonesian/Malay fiction**

#### **80.202 Twentieth Century Indonesian/Malay poetry**

#### **Indonesian III**

Papers 80.300, 80.301, and 80.302 are linked co-requisites. A candidate's result in the final examination will be determined over the three papers. With the approval of the Head of Department certain papers prescribed for Indonesian for MA and Honours may be selected as additional Stage III papers.

#### **80.300 Translation at sight of passages of Indonesian non-literary prose and translation at sight into Indonesian**

#### **80.301 Introduction to Classical Malay language and literature**

#### **80.302 Modern Indonesian/Malay Literature**

#### **80.306 An Approved Special Topic**

#### **80.307 Introduction to Javanese language and literature**

#### **Indonesian for MA and Honours**

Students intending to enrol for MA must consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss optional papers and to obtain advice on vacation reading.

Twelve hours per week of lectures and tutorials (six papers comprising 80.400, 80.401, and 80.402 and three others, together with a dissertation (80.604) of 10,000 words or more on a selected topic for which Indonesian sources will be used.)

#### **80.400 Translation at sight from and into Indonesian and free composition**

#### **80.401 A study of modern Indonesian/Malay literature**

#### **80.402 A study of selected classical Malay texts**

#### **80.404 An introduction to textual criticism with special reference to classical Malay**

#### **80.405 Muslim mysticism in classical Malay literature**

#### **80.406 An introduction to the structural analysis of Indonesian/Malay**

#### **80.407 A study of another Indonesian language**

#### **80.409 An approved special topic**

Every candidate will be required to pass an examination in the oral use of the language. In determining the class of Honours, the candidate's performance in the written papers, the dissertation, the oral examination and in coursework will be taken into consideration. The attention of students who intend to enrol for MA is drawn to Regulation 6 of the General Provisions for the Degree of Master of Arts.

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all the papers listed above will be available in any one year.

### **JAPANESE**

#### **Japanese I**

A detailed guide to courses in Japanese is available from the Department of Asian Languages. Students are invited to refer to this or to consult members of staff before enrolment.

Students enrolling without a previous knowledge of the subject may receive a total of seven hours of teaching per week.

Papers 81.100 and 81.101 are linked corequisites and entail seven hours of teaching per week. A candidate's final result will be determined over the two papers.

#### **81.100 Language Acquisition A**

A basic course in grammar and reading comprehension together with some oral drills.

#### **81.101 Language Acquisition B**

Written and oral use of modern Japanese tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, writing of *kana* and *kanji* scripts, aural comprehension, conversation, and dictation.

#### **\*81.102 Japanese Literature in Translation**

A survey of Japanese literature in English translation from earliest times to the modern period. Paper 81.102 is open to any interested student, whether or not he or she is studying Japanese language.

#### **81.103 Introduction to Japanese Thought and Culture**

A survey of Japanese intellectual and cultural traditions from earliest times. This paper will normally be offered every second year alternating with paper 81.102. It is open to all interested students whether or not they are taking Japanese language papers.

#### **Japanese II**

Six hours of teaching in modern Japanese per week. Papers 81.200, 81.201, and 81.202 are linked.

A candidate's result in the final examination will be determined over three papers.

### **81.200 Translation at Sight from and into Japanese**

#### **81.201 Intermediate Japanese**

This paper will be a continuation of 81.101. Candidates will be examined on the prescribed textbooks.

#### **81.202 Language Acquisition: Modern Japanese**

Written and oral use of Modern Japanese tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, and grammar.

### **Japanese III**

Either six or eight hours of teaching in Japanese per week.

Candidates must take either 81.300, 81.301 and 81.302 or 81.300, 81.301 and 81.303. The groups of papers are linked. A candidate's result in the final examination will be determined over three papers.

Students may take either 81.302 or 81.303 as a fourth paper to be passed with a minimum mark of 50%. 81.300, 81.301 and 81.302 are prerequisites for the MA Degree.

### **81.300 Translation at Sight from and into Japanese**

#### **81.301 Translation of and Comments on Prescribed Modern Texts**

#### **81.302 Translation of and Comments on Prescribed Classical Texts together with Questions on the History of Japanese Literature**

#### **81.303 Modern Japanese**

Written and oral use of Japanese utilising selected non-literary texts. The texts will be based upon the materials covered.

With the approval of the Head of Department certain papers prescribed for Japanese for MA and Honours may be selected as additional Stage III level papers.

### **Japanese for MA and Honours**

Six papers comprising 81.400 and 81.401 and four others together with a dissertation (81.604) of 10,000 words or more, on a selected topic for which Japanese sources will be used, or an annotated translation of a Japanese text.

Students intending to enrol for MA must consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss optional papers and to obtain advice on vacation reading.

Prerequisites: Eight papers in Japanese including 81.300, 81.301 and 81.302

Students are strongly advised to take 81.102, 81.103 and 81.303 as part of their BA Degree.

### **81.400 Translation at sight into Japanese and Free Composition**

#### **81.401 Translation at sight from Modern Japanese Texts together with Questions on Research Materials and Methodology**

#### **81.402 Translation of and Comments on Prescribed Modern Prose Literature**

### **81.403 Translation of and Comments on Prescribed Classical Prose**

### **81.404 Translation of and Comments on Selections from Japanese Poetry**

### **81.405 Translation of and Comments on Selections from Japanese Drama**

### **81.406 An Approved Special Topic in Japanese Language, Literature, Thought or Culture**

### **81.407 Translation of and comments on Modern Non-Literary Texts including Selections from Newspapers and Periodicals**

### **81.408 Introduction to Japanese Linguistics**

### **81.409 Advanced Language Acquisition**

Advanced oral expression and aural comprehension including techniques associated with formal interpreting.

Every candidate will be required to pass an examination on the oral use of the language. In determining the class of Honours, the candidate's performance in the written papers, course work including oral skills, the dissertation and the oral examination will be taken into consideration. The attention of students who intend to enrol for MA is drawn to Regulation 6 of the General Provisions for the Degree of Master of Arts.

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all the papers listed above will be available in any one year.

### **Asian Studies for MA and Honours**

Five papers and a thesis (97.601) which counts as two papers; or six papers and a research essay (97.603) which counts as one paper.

In either case candidates shall include three papers selected from those available at Master's level in Chinese, Indonesian or Japanese subject to the approval of the Head of Department. The remaining two or three papers shall, subject to the approval of the Heads of Departments, be selected from the Master's papers in one or two different subjects. At the discretion of the Heads of Departments one Stage III paper may be substituted for one of these Master's papers. In the thesis or research essay, sources in the Asian language being studied will be used.

## **DEPARTMENT OF CLASSICS AND ANCIENT HISTORY**

The Department of Classics and Ancient History includes four subjects. Latin, Greek and Ancient History are taught to MA with Honours level, Classical Studies at Stage I only.

Students should note that in the Classics and Ancient History Department most of the language papers at Stage I and II, and the basic papers at Stage III, are normally linked to other papers and must be taken, and passed, concurrently; the Ancient History papers may all be taken individually by students with the necessary prerequisites and corequisites, but students wishing to advance beyond Stage I should plan their courses carefully in consultation with a member of staff.



An MA with Honours in Latin and Greek (Combined Honours) requires that students pass Latin III and Greek III before enrolling in their MA year. Students planning this course should therefore start Latin and Greek together in their first year. Students who have taken the scholarship papers in Latin or Greek or who are sufficiently advanced in their studies may be enrolled for Stage II papers in place of Stage I papers. Such students should see the Head of Department at the earliest possible date.

Latin I consists of 09.100 and 09.101 for students who have studied Latin for four or more years at school, and of 09.102 and 09.103 for students with less than that. Students in the former group may in special circumstances apply to the Head of Department for permission to enrol in 09.102/3. Students who have passed 09.100 and 09.101 proceed to Latin II. Students who have passed 09.102 and 09.103 may, with the consent of the Head of Department, proceed to Latin II, but may prefer to take 09.100 and 09.101 before doing so.

Students who intend to advance to MA with Honours in Latin or Greek are strongly advised to enrol for the other as well in their first year. The prerequisites are stated in the MA Degree Course Regulations.

Students who intend to advance to Stage III in Ancient History are required to cope with documents in an ancient language, and must pass a prerequisite paper before enrolling for Stage III. The prerequisite paper for Paper 12.300 and 12.320 is 12.210, for 12.322 and 12.332 is 10.100, for 12.303 and 12.313 is 09.102.

Students who wish to take the Greek or Latin options at MA are advised to enrol in Greek or Latin papers in their first year, and do more than the prerequisite minimum. Students who wish to take the Egyptian option must pass paper 12.310 before enrolling for MA, and 12.410 before enrolling for papers 12.520/530. As much of the scholarly work on Ancient History (especially Egyptian and Akkadian subjects) is in foreign languages, students planning to take these options should enrol for German I and French I papers, in their first year preferably. Students should note that Greek III and Latin III may be used as the Stage III prerequisite to Ancient History MA with Honours provided that six Ancient History papers have been passed (see the MA Degree Course Regulations).

Students who intend to take Latin or Greek are advised that Ancient History papers, at least in the field relevant to their language, will be most useful, especially for those advancing beyond Stage I, since outlines of Roman (Greek) History are now no longer taught within the language courses. Students considering enrolling for any subject in the Department are strongly advised to come and see a member of staff during the pre-enrolment period. External

students should consult the Department as early in the year as possible.

**Note:**

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

## **LATIN**

### **Latin I**

(Four hours per week for papers 09.100 and 09.101. Four hours per week plus tutorial for papers 09.102 and 09.103. Papers are linked if taken concurrently.)

#### **09.100 Prescribed Books**

Books, or groups of works, will be set; candidates will be given passages to translate, and questions will be asked on points of grammar and syntax and on prosody where relevant, and on the content of the books and their literary and historical background and on relevant Roman institutions.

#### **09.101 Translation and Language**

(i) (50%) Translation at sight from Latin. A passage, or passages of Latin prose or verse or both, will be set for Translation from Latin into English.

(ii) (50%) A course on the structure and use of the language. Students will attend a course appropriate to their interest and experience in one of the following alternatives:

- (a) Elementary Prose Composition;
- (b) Latin Composition: exercises in grammar and syntax;
- (c) Linguistic and syntactical analysis of passages of Latin. This option is not available in 1988.

Each course will comprise coursework and a formal examination.

#### **09.102 Introduction to the Latin language**

(Two hours per week)

This paper introduces students to the vocabulary and grammar of Latin and teaches them to translate passages of Latin into English. Entry is restricted to those with less than four years Latin at school. Others may apply to the Head of Department.

#### **09.103 Introduction to Latin literature**

(Two hours per week)

This paper introduces students to authors from the classical and silver ages of Latin literature by means of extracts (in Latin) from their works. It cannot be taken without 09.102.

**Note:** Latin I consists of 09.100 and 09.101 for students who have studied Latin for four or more years at school, and of 09.102 and 09.103 for students with less than that. Students in the former group may in special circumstances apply to the Head of Department for permission to enrol in 09.102/3. Students who have passed 09.100 and 09.101 proceed to Latin II. Students who have passed 09.102 and 09.103 may, with the consent of the Head of Department, proceed to Latin II, but may prefer to take 09.100 and 09.101 before doing so.

### **Latin II**

(Five hours per week. Papers 09.200, 09.201 and 09.202 are linked.)

Prerequisite 09.100, 09.101 unless direct entry is approved.

**09.200 Prescribed Books**

Books, or groups of works, will be set; candidates will be given passages to translate, and questions will be asked in points of grammar and syntax and in prosody where relevant, and on the content of the books and their literary and historical background, and on relevant Roman institutions.

**09.201 Latin Literature, and Unprepared Translation**

A passage, or passages, of prose and verse will be set for translation from Latin into English.

Two courses of reading each on a prescribed subject; each course will be examined (a) by a coursework essay and (b) by a number of passages for translation and comment in a formal examination.

**09.202 Roman History, or Literature, and use of the Language**

Passages from the specified History or Literature topic for translation and comment in examination and a coursework essay. One of the following:

(a) Prose Composition: Elementary or more advanced;

(b) Latin Composition: exercises in grammar and syntax.

Students will attend the course appropriate to their interest and previous experience. Each course will comprise coursework and a formal examination.

The proportion of the marks awarded on coursework and the detailed requirements will be announced at the beginning of the year.

**Latin III**

(Six hours per week. Papers 09.300, 09.301 and 09.302 are linked; for the remaining papers see under each paper.)

Prerequisites 09.200, 09.201, 09.202.

**09.300 Prescribed Books**

As for Latin II

**09.301 Latin Literature and Unprepared Translation**

As for Latin II

**09.302 Latin Language, Roman History or Literature and Prose Composition**

Passages from the specified History or Literature topic for translation and comment in examination and a coursework essay.

History of the Latin Language from earliest times to the Augustan Age.

Composition. A number of passages will be set for translation into Latin. These will include coursework exercises and a final examination.

A higher standard of work will be expected for Latin III in all sections of these papers. The proportion of the marks available which will be allotted to coursework and the detailed requirements will be announced at the beginning of the year.

**09.303 Advanced Prose Composition or \*Verse Composition**

(One hour per week)

Prerequisite: 09.300, 09.301, 09.302 for prose composition. For verse composition, permission of Head of Department.

Passages will be set for translation into Latin. A proportion of the marks available will be allotted to coursework.

**09.304 A Subject or Subjects in Latin Poetry**

(One hour per week) (Restricted entry)

Corequisite: 09.300, 09.301, 09.302

The works (or selections of the works) of an author or authors will be set for translation and comment or criticism. The author(s) will normally be as for paper 09.402 or part of it, and students who offer this paper will not be able to offer 09.402 at MA and Honours level unless there has been a change of syllabus.

**09.305 Literary Topic**

(One hour per week) (Restricted entry)

Corequisites: as for 09.304

The topic will normally be as for paper 09.402 or 09.406 (or part thereof) and students who offer this paper will not be able to offer that paper at MA and Honours level unless there has been a change of syllabus.

**09.306 Latin Language**

(One hour per week) (Restricted entry)

Corequisites: as for 09.304

More advanced Latin Language. The syllabus will be as for paper 09.404; students who offer this paper will not be able to offer paper 09.404 at MA and Honours level unless there has been a change of syllabus.

**09.307 Roman History**

(One hour per week) (Restricted entry)

Corequisites: as for 09.304

A period of Roman History to be studied with Latin texts. The syllabus will be as for paper 09.405; students who offer this paper will not be able to offer paper 09.405 at MA and Honours level unless there has been a change of syllabus.

**09.308 †Pax Romana or A Subject in Roman History**

(Two hours per week) Papers 12.203 and 12.213 restricted; syllabus as for 12.203 or 12.213.

Note: For papers marked *Restricted entry* (09.304 – 09.307) permission of the Head of Department is required to enrol; permission will normally be granted if there is an Honours candidate wishing to take the equivalent paper.

**Latin for MA and Honours**

Honours in Latin (six papers)

Normally candidates must offer papers 09.400, 09.401 and *four* others, the selection to be approved by the Head of Department. By special permission of the Head of Department a student may be permitted to substitute another paper for 09.401.

Except for paper 09.401 there are no special paper prerequisites, though there are certain restrictions. All intending MA students should consult the Head of Department in the year preceding enrolment, since not all papers will be available every year.

Prerequisite: Eight papers in Latin, including 09.300-09.302

#### **09.400 Unprepared Translation of Latin Prose and Verse**

##### **09.401 Prose Composition or Verse Composition**

Passages of English Prose or Verse for translation into Latin. Some passages will be assessed as course-work. In a final examination one passage will be set for prose composition, either one or two shorter passages or a choice of passages will be set for verse composition. Candidates may not offer verse composition unless they have already taken and passed the verse option in paper 09.303.

##### **09.402 Latin Poetry**

(09.304 or 09.305 restricted without syllabus change)  
Two subjects will normally be set with reference to prescribed texts. The examination will consist of passages for translation, and candidates will be required also to write commentaries on a choice of passages or at least one essay, or both. Passages may also, or alternatively, be set for practical criticism.

##### **09.403 Latin Prose Writers**

Two subjects will normally be set with reference to prescribed texts. The examination will consist of passages for translation, and candidates will be required also to write commentaries on a choice of passages or at least one essay, or both.

##### **09.404 Latin Language**

(09.306 restricted without syllabus change)

##### *Either Vulgar Latin*

The phonology, morphology, syntax and vocabulary of Vulgar Latin, as seen in the set texts. Comparison with inscriptional texts will be made where relevant. A knowledge of the history and literary background and significance of the set texts will also be required.

##### *Or Early Latin*

The phonology, morphology, syntax and vocabulary of Early Latin as seen in the set texts. Comparison with inscriptional texts will be made where relevant. A knowledge of the sources and characteristics of Plautine comedy will also be required.

##### **09.405 Roman History**

(09.307 restricted without syllabus change)

A subject with reference to the original Latin sources; candidates will be required to translate and comment on a selection of passages, and to write essays chosen from a selection.

##### **09.406 A Subject in Latin Literature to be prescribed by the Head of Department**

An author or group of similar authors will be chosen for special study. Candidates will read widely in the prescribed texts and be expected to translate passages, and write commentaries and essays on the subject-matter of the texts and on their literary genre.

##### **09.407 A subject to be proposed by the student and approved by the Head of Department**

The subject may be literary, philological, historical or philosophical and must be approved not later than 31

December of the year preceding enrolment.

#### **Combined Honours (Languages and Literature)**

See MA Degree Course Regulations.

## **GREEK**

### **Greek I**

Papers 10.100, 10.101 are linked. Four lectures and a tutorial per week throughout the year.

#### **10.100 Prescribed Texts with Grammatical Study**

Texts will be prescribed for reading; translation of passages will be required in examination, and questions will be set which will require a candidate to show an understanding of the grammatical and syntactical usages in the texts.

#### **10.101 Prescribed Texts with Grammatical Study**

A different group of texts from 10.100 may be set.

### **Greek II**

(Five hours per week) Papers 10.200, 10.201 and 10.202 are linked.

Prerequisites 10.100, 10.101 or direct entry.

#### **10.200 Prescribed Books**

Books or groups of works will be set; candidates will be given passages to translate, and questions will be asked on points of grammar and syntax and on prosody where relevant, and on the content of the books and their literary and historical background, and on relevant Greek institutions.

#### **10.201 Greek Literature and Prepared and Unprepared Translation**

A course of readings in Greek literature and practice in Translation. An essay will be set for coursework, and passages will be set for Translation in examination with questions on their grammar and syntax.

#### **10.202 Greek History or Literature and use of the Language**

Passages from the Specified History or Literature topic for translation and comment in examination and a coursework essay.

Use of the Language. The coursework will consist of practice in writing Greek (sentences and an introduction to prose composition) and studies in Greek grammar and syntax. These elements will be tested in a final examination.

### **Greek III**

(Six hours per week Terms I and II, five hours per week Term III for papers 10.300, 10.301, 10.302; for the remaining papers see under each paper.) Papers 10.300, 10.301 and 10.302 are linked.

Prerequisites: 10.200, 10.201, 10.202

#### **10.300 Prescribed Books**

As for Greek II

#### **10.301 Greek Literature, and Prepared and Unprepared Translation**

A reading course in Greek Literature.

Normally one work will be specified for reading; a

coursework essay will be set on Greek literature, normally on the specified work. In examination, passages from the reading course will be set for Translation with comment, literary and/or grammatical and syntactical.

Prepared translation from Homer. Unprepared Translation. As for Greek II

### **10.302 Greek Language, Greek History or Literature and Prose Composition**

Greek language. The Homeric dialect, including discussion of the Homeric hexameter, and a portion of Homer for special study.

Translation of a passage and questions on the dialect will be set in a formal examination.

Greek History or Literature. As for Greek II

A coursework essay and passages for translation and comment in examination conditions.

Prose Composition. A number of passages will be set for translation into Greek; these will include coursework exercises and a final examination.

A higher standard of work will be expected for Greek III in all sections of these papers.

The proportion of the marks available which will be allotted to coursework will be announced at the beginning of the year.

### **10.303 Advanced Language Study**

Prerequisites: 10.300-10.302

Prose composition, \*Verse composition or Studies in Greek grammar and syntax. (One class per week)

Passages will be set for translation into Greek or for study in Greek. A proportion of the marks available will be allotted to coursework.

### **\*10.304 Greek Poetry**

(One hour per week) (Restricted entry)

Corequisite: 10.300-10.302

Translation of pieces of Greek poetry from specified texts; passages may also be set for comment and a selection of essays will be set.

### **10.305 Literary Topic**

(One hour per week) (Restricted entry)

Corequisite: 10.300-10.302

Translation from prescribed texts. Passages may also be set for comment, and a selection of essays will be set.

### **10.306 Greek History**

(One hour per week) (Restricted entry)

Corequisite: 10.300-10.302

Syllabus as prescribed for paper 10.405, which is restricted unless there has been a change of syllabus. May not be offered with 10.307.

### **\*10.307 Greek Philosophy**

(One hour per week) (Restricted entry)

Corequisite: 10.300-10.302

Syllabus as prescribed for paper 10.406, which is restricted unless there has been a change of syllabus. May not be offered with 10.306.

### **10.308 Greek Language**

(One hour per week) (Restricted entry)

Corequisite: 10.300-10.302

Syllabus as prescribed for paper 10.404, which is restricted unless there has been a change of syllabus.

### **10.309 Greece and Persia or Tyranny**

(Two hours per week)

Corequisite: 10.300-10.302

Syllabus as prescribed for paper 12.202 or 12.222, which is restricted.

**Note:** For papers marked *Restricted entry* (10.304-10.308) permission of the Head of Department is required to enrol; permission will normally be granted if there is an Honours candidate wishing to take the equivalent paper among 10.404-10.408.

## **Greek for MA and Honours**

### **Honours in Greek (six papers)**

Normally, candidates must offer papers 10.400, 10.401 and *four* others, the selection to be approved by the Head of Department. By special permission of the Head of Department a student may be permitted to substitute another paper for paper 10.401. Except for paper 10.401, there are no special paper prerequisites, though there are certain restrictions. All intending MA students should consult the Head of Department in the year preceding enrolment, since not all papers will be available every year.

Prerequisite: Eight papers in Greek, including 10.300-10.302.

### **10.400 Unprepared Translation**

Passages of prose and verse will be set for translation into English.

### **10.401 Advanced Language Study**

Prose Composition and verse composition or studies in Greek grammar and syntax. Passages will be set for translation into Greek or for study in Greek. The verse option in paper 10.303 is prerequisite for verse composition. Without the special permission of the Head of Department, the studies in Greek Grammar and Syntax option may not be taken by students who have taken that option in paper 10.303. For each option, some passages will be assessed as coursework and passages will be set for final examination.

The proportion of the marks allocated to coursework will be announced early in the year.

### **10.402 Greek Poetry**

A subject or subjects will be set with reference to prescribed texts. In the final examination candidates will be required to translate passages and may be required to comment on a selection of other passages; they will also be required to write at least one essay.

### **10.403 Greek Prose Writers**

A subject or subjects will be set with reference to prescribed portions of the authors to be studied. In the final examination candidates will be required to translate passages and may be required to comment on a selection of other passages; they will also be required to write at least one essay.

**10.404 Greek Language**

(Paper 10.308 restricted unless there has been a change of syllabus)

An advanced study of one or more Greek dialects with special reference to prescribed texts.

**10.405 Greek History**

(Paper 10.306 restricted unless there has been a change of syllabus)

A subject in Greek History with reference to prescribed sources.

Permission of the Head of Department is required to take both this paper and 10.406.

**\*10.406 Greek Philosophy**

(Paper 10.307 restricted unless there has been a change of syllabus)

A subject in Greek Philosophy with reference to prescribed texts.

Permission of the Head of Department is required to take both this paper and 10.405.

**10.407 A subject in Greek Literature to be prescribed by the Head of Department**

An author or group of similar authors will be chosen for special study. Candidates will read widely in the prescribed texts and be expected to translate passages, write commentaries and essays on the subject-matter of the texts, and on their literary genre.

**10.408 A subject to be proposed by the student and approved by the Head of Department**

The subject may be literary, philological, historical or philosophical and must be approved not later than 31 December of the year preceding enrolment.

**Combined Honours: (Languages and Literature)**

See MA Degree Course Regulations.

**CLASSICAL STUDIES****Classical Studies I****\*73.102 Epic and Elegiac**

(Two hours per week)

Epic will be taught for the first sixteen weeks of the course and Elegiac for the remaining eight weeks. The principal authors to be studied will be Homer and Virgil (Aeneid) and in Elegiac Archilochus, Solon, Tyrtaeus, Simonides and the Greek Anthology, and in Latin, Catullus, Tibullus, Ovid, Propertius and Martial.

**\*73.103 Comedy and Satire**

(Two hours per week)

Each topic will occupy half the course. Plays from Aristophanes, Plautus and Terence will be studied in the comedy section and the main authors in the satire section will be Horace and Juvenal.

**\*73.104 Tragedy and Literary Criticism**

(Two hours per week)

Tragedy will occupy the first sixteen weeks of the course, and Literary Criticism the remaining eight weeks. In Tragedy, plays of the Greek dramatists

Aeschylus, Sophocles and Euripides will be read together with those of Seneca. Literary Criticism will consist of a study of Aristotle's Poetics and Horace's Art of Poetry.

**73.105 Special Topic**

1988: Introduction to Classical Literature. Five topics will be taught: Homer; Euripides; Aristophanes; Virgil or Ovid; Horace.

**ANCIENT HISTORY****Ancient History I****12.100 Near Eastern History**

(Two hours per week)

This paper is a prerequisite to 12.200, 12.210, 12.220, 12.201, 12.211, 12.221. Restricted 11.100.

An outline history of the ancient civilisations of Egypt, Mesopotamia and Israel from neolithic times to Alexander the Great; the course will include artistic and cultural questions, and the civilisations of Anatolia, Syria and Iran will be considered in less detail.

**12.102 Greek History**

(Two hours per week)

This paper is normally prerequisite to papers 12.202, 12.222

An outline of Greek History from the Mycenaean Age to the Peace of Apamea (188 BC). Special attention will be paid to social and cultural questions and some attention will be given to the intellectual history of the period.

**12.103 Roman History**

(Two hours per week)

This paper is normally prerequisite to papers 12.203, 12.213

An outline of Roman History from the earliest times till the foundation of Constantinople.

Particular attention is paid to the Romans' achievement in government and in spreading civilisation and culture.

For all Stage I papers tutorial classes will be arranged.

**Ancient History II****12.200 Egypt in Dynasty XVIII**

(Three or four hours per fortnight)

Prerequisite 12.100 or 11.100. Restricted 12.320

This paper is prerequisite to 12.300; one of 12.102, 12.103 is corequisite

Students planning to advance to 12.300 must take paper 12.210 with this paper unless they are taking, or have taken, 10.100 or 09.102 or an approved alternative. Egypt in the XVIIIth Dynasty (c. 1570–1320 BC). This course concentrates on the internal organisation and foreign policy of the kings of this dynasty.

**12.201 The Neo-Assyrian Empire**

(Three or four hours per fortnight)

Prerequisite normally 12.100 or 11.100. Restricted 12.301

This paper is prerequisite to 12.321; one of 12.102,

12.103 is corequisite. Students planning to advance to 12.321 must take paper 12.211 with this paper unless they are taking or have taken one of 12.210, 10.100, 09.102 or an approved alternative.

**The Neo-Assyrian Empire (c. 884-612 BC).**

This course will include a study of the Assyrian State, the aims, methods and historical importance of Assyrian imperialism, and its reflection in art, literature and religion. Special attention will be paid to contemporary documents.

**\*12.202 Greece and Persia**

(Three or four hours per fortnight: 10.309, 12.332 restricted)

Prerequisite normally 12.102 or Greek II; one of 12.100, 11.100 12.103 is corequisite except for students who have passed Greek II. This paper is prerequisite to 12.322

Students planning to advance to 12.322 must enrol for Greek I unless they have taken, or are taking, 12.210 or 09.102 or an approved alternative.

**Greece and Persia (c. 546-323 BC)**

This will involve a study of Herodotus' history and the first Persian War, the Greek countermeasures and the organisation of the Athenian Confederacy, Persian interventions in Greek inter-state struggles in the fifth and fourth centuries, and Alexander's anabasis.

**†12.203 Pax Romana**

(Four hours per fortnight: 09.308, 12.323 restricted) Prerequisite normally 12.103 or Latin II; one of 12.100, 11.100 or 12.102 is corequisite except for students who have passed Latin II. This paper is prerequisite to papers 12.303 or 12.313.

Students planning to advance to 12.303 or 12.313 must have passed or be enrolled for paper 09.102 or another approved Latin paper unless they have taken or are taking 12.210, 12.211, 10.100 or an approved alternative.

The Pax Romana, with special reference to the first three centuries AD.

This will involve a study of Imperial Roman society – (the satirists' picture and other criteria), Roman Central and Provincial government, and their attitudes to their neighbours; social and economic problems in the empire and the intellectual and religious cross-currents.

**12.210 Egyptian Language and Documents**

(Two hours per week)

Prerequisite 12.100 or 11.100

This paper is prerequisite to 12.310, and to 12.300, 12.320 unless an alternative language paper is taken. The Egyptian Language, hieroglyphic writing, and selected documents up to Dynasty XVIII.

**12.211 Akkadian Language and Documents**

(Two hours per week)

Prerequisite 12.100 or 11.100

This paper will be prerequisite to 12.301 and 12.321. The Akkadian Language, cuneiform writing and selected documents of the Neo-Assyrian Empire.

**12.213 A subject in Roman History**

(Three or four hours per fortnight: 12.313 restricted) Prerequisites, corequisites, etc., as 12.203.

**\*12.220 Egypt in Dynasties V-XI**

(Three or four hours per fortnight; 12.300 restricted) Prerequisite 12.100 or 11.100

This paper is prerequisite to 12.320; one of 12.102, 12.103 is corequisite

Students planning to advance to 12.320 must take paper 12.210 with this paper unless they have taken, or are taking 10.100, 09.102 or an approved alternative. A study of the decline of Old Kingdom Civilisation, the ferment of disillusionment and heart-searching which followed, and the re-establishment of an ordered government and society in the Middle Kingdom. The course will be based on Egyptian historical and literary documents in English translation.

**\*12.221 Mesopotamia in the 18th Century B.C.**

(Three or four hours per fortnight).

Prerequisite normally 12.100 or 11.100. Restricted 12.321.

This paper is prerequisite to 12.301; one of 12.102, 12.103 is corequisite.

Students planning to advance to 12.301 must take paper 12.211 with this paper unless they are taking or have taken one of 12.210, 10.100, 09.102 or an approved alternative.

Assur, Mari, Babylon: Mesopotamia in the 18th Century B.C. This is a period of immense documentary wealth, with important archives of documents found in several centres and relating to all aspects of life during the period. The most notable political event of the time was the gradual rise of Babylon to the position of imperial mistress of the entire region, under one of its most famous kings, Hammurabi.

**12.222 Tyranny**

(Three or four hours per fortnight; 10.309 12.322 restricted) Prerequisite normally 12.102 or Greek II; one of 12.100, 11.100, 12.103 is corequisite except for students who have passed Greek II. This paper is prerequisite to 12.332. Students planning to advance to 12.332 must take Greek I with this paper unless they have taken or are taking, 12.210, 09.102 or an approved alternative.

A study of the causes of the tyrannies in the Greek city-states, the aims and methods of the tyrants and the reasons for their expulsion. The course will consider the VII-VI century tyrants at the Isthmus of Corinth, in Ionia, and in Sicily, and the connexions between tyranny and imperialism (collaboration and resistance), the tyranny in Athens, and the tyrants in Sicily and elsewhere in the late Vth and following centuries.

**Ancient History III**

**\*12.300 Egypt in Dynasties V-XI**

(Four hours per fortnight; 12.220 restricted)

Prerequisites normally 12.200, 12.210. Either this paper or 12.320 is prerequisite to 12.520.

Syllabus as 12.220 with the addition of documents for study in Egyptian.

**12.301 The Neo-Assyrian Empire**

(Four hours per fortnight: 12.201 restricted)

Prerequisites normally 12.211, 12.221.

Syllabus as for 12.201 with the addition of documents for study in Akkadian.

**†12.303 Britain from the Iron Age to the Saxons**  
(Four hours per fortnight)

Prerequisites normally 12.203 and 09.102 or Latin I or II. This paper is prerequisite to 12.503

Paper 03.319 is restricted

Britain from the Iron Age to the Anglo-Saxons (c. AD 800).

**†12.307 Special Topic in Comparative Civilisations**

(Two hours per week all year)

Prerequisites: 03.101 and 12.100. Corequisites: 03.206 and 12.200 or 12.220

Restriction: 03.337

With special permission of the Head of Department the corequisites may be waived. Syllabus from the Department.

**12.310 Egyptian Language II**

(Four hours per fortnight)

Prerequisite 12.210: this paper is prerequisite to 12.410

Hieroglyphic writing and a study of more advanced documents of either Dynasty XVIII or Dynasties V–XI

**12.313 A Subject in Roman History**

(Four hours per fortnight: 09.308, 12.213 restricted)

Prerequisites normally 12.203 and 09.102 or approved alternative.

Either this paper or 12.303 or 12.323 is prerequisite to 12.503.

Syllabus as 12.213 with the addition of documents for study in Latin.

**12.314 Historians of Rome**

Prerequisite 12.103

A study of the Greek and Latin writers on Roman History; all works will be studied in English. The authors will include Polybius, Livy, Sallust, Caesar, Tacitus, Suetonius. This paper will be taught in alternate years (from 1986).

**12.320 Egypt in Dynasty XVIII**

(Four hours per fortnight: 12.200 restricted.)

Prerequisites normally 12.210 and 12.220

Either this paper or 12.300 is prerequisite to 12.520. Syllabus as 12.200 with the addition of documents for study in Egyptian.

**\*12.321 Mesopotamia in the 18th Century B.C.**

(Four hours per fortnight: 12.221 restricted)

Prerequisites normally 12.201, 12.211.

Syllabus as 12.221 with the addition of documents for study in Akkadian.

**12.322 Tyranny**

(Four hours per fortnight; 10.309, 12.222 restricted)

Prerequisite normally 10.100 and 12.202 or approved alternative

Either this paper or 12.332 is prerequisite to 12.502. Syllabus as 12.222 with the addition of documents for study in Greek.

**†12.323 Pax Romana**

(Four hours per fortnight; 09.308, 12.203 restricted)

Prerequisites normally 09.102 and 12.213 or approved alternative

Either this paper or 12.303 or 12.313 is prerequisite to 12.503.

Syllabus as 12.203 with the addition of documents for study in Latin.

**\*12.324 Historians of Greece**

Prerequisite 12.102

A study of the Greek writers on Greek History; all writers will be studied in English. The authors will include Herodotus, Thucydides, Xenophon, Aristotle, *The Old Oligarch*, Polybius, Diodorus Siculus, Arrian, and Plutarch. This paper will be taught in alternate years (from 1987).

**\*12.332 Greece and Persia**

(Four hours per fortnight; 10.309, 12.202 restricted)

Prerequisites normally 10.100 and 12.222 or approved alternative

Either this paper or 12.322 is prerequisite to 12.502. Syllabus as 12.202 with the addition of documents for study in Greek.

**Ancient History for MA and Honours**

Normally candidates must offer three or four of the papers 12.400 – 12.422 or approved substitutes in their first year, one of the special subjects 12.502, 12.512; 12.503, 12.513; 12.520, 12.530, in their second year together with the fourth paper from papers 12.400 – 12.422 if not taken in the first year, and an essay (12.603) or dissertation (12.604) on a subject approved by the Head of Department. The prerequisites for papers 12.502 – 12.530 will not be waived save in the most exceptional circumstances. One or two papers from 12.300 to 12.332 not taken for BA may be taken as substitutes for papers 12.400 to 12.422. All intending MA students should consult the Head of Department in the year preceding enrolment, since not all papers will be available every year. Prerequisites: Eight papers from 12.100 to 12.332 including three of 12.300 – 12.332 or substitutes approved by the Head of Department. Note that papers 12.502 – 12.530 all have individual prerequisites.

**12.400 A topic in Near Eastern History after Alexander the Great**

The Jews in the Graeco-Roman World.

A study of the political and social developments in Judaea and the Diaspora, together with their cultural and ideological implications, from the Conquest of Alexander the Great to the outbreak of the First Revolt against Rome.

**12.401 The Sumerians**

This is a study of the people who created the first literate civilisation in Western Asia in the fourth and third Millennia B.C. and were responsible for major achievements in the field of art, architecture, literature and thought.

**†12.402 A topic in Greek History after Alexander the Great**

The relations between Greeks and Romans from the end of the third century B.C. down to approximately A.D. 180. There are two main parts. The first deals with the political contacts and conflicts of the two peoples ending in the destruction of Corinth in 146 B.C. For this period the main literary sources are Polybius and Livy. The second main period begins with the reign of the Emperor Nero and deals more fully with the conditions of Greece and the Greek cities of Asia Minor as revealed by the works of Plutarch and the letters of the younger Pliny. This part of the course will also touch on the revival of Greek letters known as the "Second Sophistic".

**†12.403 A topic in Roman History**

The later Roman Empire A.D. 193–337

This course will include study of various developments – military, administrative, economic, religious, social – in a crucial period of change for the Roman Empire. Particular attention will be paid to the Severan period (A.D. 193–235).

**†12.404 A topic in the social history of the Ancient World**

The institution of slavery in the Ancient World. The paper considers the composition of the slave population at different periods, their numbers, employments and treatment; modes of liberation and the position of emancipated slaves; the impact of slavery on society, especially the family, farming, commerce and government; the cases of slave wars and revolts; slavery and serfdom and the other part-slave part-free statuses, with special reference to debtors' contracts.

**\*12.405 A topic in the Economic History of the Ancient world****\*12.406 Political Thought and Practice in the Ancient World**

A study of the ideologies of the monarchies of the Near Eastern Kingdoms, the city-states of Greece and the Res Publica and Imperium of the Romans.

**†12.409 A topic proposed by the student and approved by the Head of Department not later than 31 December of the year preceding enrolment.****12.410 Late Egyptian Language**

Prerequisites 12.310 after 1982

This course will introduce a study of the changes to the Egyptian language in the New Kingdom period, and the study of the documents of Dynasties XIX and XX will be begun.

**†12.412 The Hellenistic World and The Heritage of Hellenism****†12.414 The Family in the Ancient World**

This course will consider the known sources of information about the family, including marriage customs, laws affecting kinship, property and succession in the ancient civilisations, and consider the importance of these for the history of the societies considered.

**12.419 Special Subject****12.422 Special Topic in Greek History**

The Life and Times of Agesilaus of Sparta 396-360 B.C. A study of Spartan Society and its relationship with other Greek States and with Persia in this period, based on the Greek sources (in translation).

**†12.429 Special Subject**

Approved substitutes for the above papers are:

One or two papers as prescribed for Ancient History III not already taken at Stage III.

One or two papers from other subjects as prescribed MA Regulation 6.

**The special subjects will be as follows:**

**\*12.501, \*12.511 Mesopotamian History**

Prerequisites: 12.211 and 12.301

Not available at present

**12.502, 12.512 Greek History**

Prerequisites: 12.202 or 12.332 with 10.100 or Greek III

A subject in Greek History based on specified Greek texts; the subject and texts are as for 10.405. In this and other special subjects the examination will consist of two papers, one on the texts, including transliteration (where relevant) and translation, and (where relevant) on linguistic questions and tradition and veracity of the texts; the other on their historical significance.

**12.503, 12.513 Roman History**

Prerequisites: 12.303, 12.313 or 12.323 with 09.102 or other approved papers, or Latin III

A subject in Roman History based on specified Latin texts: the subject and texts are as for 09.405.

For the examination see paper 12.502

**12.520, 12.530 Egyptian History**

Prerequisites: 12.300 or 12.320 and 12.410

The New Kingdom, Dynasties XIX and XX, c. 1320-1085 BC, based on a detailed consideration of specified texts.

For the examination see paper 12.502

**12.603 Essay****12.604 Dissertation****\*BIBLICAL HISTORY AND LITERATURE**

This subject is not available until further notice.

**\*Biblical History and Literature I****\*11.100 Near Eastern History**

Lectures as for 12.100 plus 10 lectures and a test on Israel. (Students who do not wish to advance to 12.200 or 12.201 may omit either the Egypt or the Mesopotamia lectures).



Corequisites: 11.101, restricted 12.100

An outline of the history of Israel is placed in the context of a general survey of the history of the ancient Near East, thus providing the necessary background to the literature of the Jewish people.

This paper may be used as a prerequisite to all Ancient History papers for which 12.100 is prerequisite provided that a piece of work in the relevant area has been presented in coursework or examination.

**\*11.101 Biblical Literature of the Old Testament**  
(Two hours per week)

Corequisite: 11.100, which normally must be taken concurrently or passed before enrolment in this paper.

A survey of the Biblical literature of the period illustrating the different forms of literature in the Old Testament; a special study of the books of Amos and Jeremiah from the standpoint of their literary form and their relationship to the history and the religion of their times.

**\*11.103 Roman History**

(Lectures as for 12.103, plus 10 lectures and a test on the Jewish background to the New Testament. Students who do not wish to advance to Roman History Stage II need not offer either the first test or an essay on the Roman Republic half of paper 12.103, but all must take the test on the extra 10 lectures.)

Corequisite 11.113, restricted 12.103

An outline history of the Roman world up to and including the time of the rise of Christianity, and with special lectures on the background to the New Testament.

**\*11.113 Biblical Literature of the New Testament**

A survey of the books of the New Testament from the standpoint of their content and significance and their literary forms; a special study of Matthew Chs. 1-10, the Acts of the Apostles, Chs. 1-7, and the Epistle to the Hebrews from this standpoint and as indicating the relationships between Jews and Christians in the 1st Century of the Christian era.

**\*Biblical History and Literature II**

One of the papers at least may require as a prerequisite a pass in papers at Latin I, Greek I, or Hebrew I as well as in Biblical History and Literature I levels.

**\*11.200 The History of Israel to A.D. 135**

**\*11.201 The History of Christian Origins to A.D. 135**

**\*11.202 The Biblical Archaeology of a Prescribed Period**

**\*11.203 The Apocrypha with Prescribed Texts**

## HEBREW

This subject is not available until further notice.

**\*Hebrew I**

(Four hours per week)

Classical Hebrew Papers 23.100 and 23.101 are linked.

**\*23.100 Classical Hebrew — Language**

Corequisite: 23.101

Translation of passages from selected portions of the Old Testament. Translation of a simple unprepared passage from a narrative portion of the Old Testament. Parsing of words, and questions on points of elementary syntax occurring in the prescribed work.

**Note:** No candidate who fails to satisfy the Examiner in the unprepared translation shall be deemed to fulfil the requirements in Hebrew.

**\*23.101 Classical Hebrew — Texts**

Corequisite: 23.100

Translation and pointing of a passage from the unpointed text taken from one of the selected portions of the Old Testament. Retranslation from English into Hebrew of an easy narrative passage from or based upon the prescribed prose. General questions on elementary grammar, with translations into pointed Hebrew of sentences chosen to test grammatical knowledge.

**\*23.102 Modern Hebrew**

**\*Hebrew II**

**\*23.200 Classical Hebrew**

Prerequisites: 23.100, 23.101

Corequisites: 23.201 and one of 23.202, 23.203

Translation into idiomatic Biblical Hebrew of prose based on the prescribed texts, and of English sentences, illustrating Hebrew idiom and syntax; the pointing of passages from the prescribed texts; questions on the grammar and syntax of Biblical Hebrew.

**\*23.201 Classical Hebrew**

Prerequisites: 23.100, 23.101

Corequisites: 23.200 and one of 23.202, 23.203

Translation from prescribed texts from the Old Testament with questions on the grammatical and syntactical forms found therein. Translation of unprepared passages from the Old Testament including one from the unpointed text.

**\*23.202 Modern Hebrew**

Prerequisites: 23.100, 23.101

Corequisites: 23.200, 23.201

Modern Hebrew conversation and reading. Modern Hebrew grammar. Translation from selected Modern Hebrew texts.

**\*23.203 Classical Hebrew**

Prerequisites: 23.100, 23.101

Corequisites: 23.200, 23.201

Translation and annotation of selected portions of the Old Testament, together with the questions on the textual, literary and historical criticism of the books from which they are taken.

## DEPARTMENT OF ECONOMICS

For Economics prescriptions see Faculty of Commerce.

## DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

### Education I

**14.100 An introduction to Educational Thought**  
Corequisite: 14.101, if planning to enrol in more than one Stage II paper.

Selected philosophical and historical aspects of Western educational ideas.

### 14.101 Introduction to Developmental Psychology

Corequisite: 14.100 or 14.102, if planning to enrol in more than one Stage II paper.

An introduction to human development.

### 14.102 Education and Society

Corequisite: 14.101 if planning to enrol in more than one Stage II paper.

Education in its social and historical contexts.

## Education II

### 14.200 Comparative Education

Prerequisites: 14.100 or 14.102, and 14.101, if enrolling in more than one paper.

Issues in New Zealand education viewed from a comparative perspective.

### \*14.201 History of Education

Prerequisites: as for 14.200

Education and Society in Modern Britain: the social context of educational change since c. 1800.

### 14.202 New Zealand Education

Prerequisites: as for 14.200

Issues and problems associated with the organisation, administration and practice of education in New Zealand.

For 1988 the emphasis will be on curriculum issues arising out of a consideration of The Curriculum Review.

### \*14.203 Educational Psychology

Prerequisite: as for 14.200

Educational psychology, with particular reference to learning theory and cognitive development.

### 14.204 The Evaluation of Individual Differences

Prerequisites: as for 14.200

An introduction to the theory and practical aspects of evaluating individual differences. A course of practical work and elementary statistics must be completed concurrently.

### \*14.205 Educational Problems:

#### A Multidisciplinary Approach

Prerequisites: 14.100 or 14.102, and 14.101.

Analysis of the nature and implications of selected educational problems in a manner which integrates the various disciplines relevant to the study of education.

### 14.206 The Sociology of Education

Prerequisite: as for 14.200

An introduction to contemporary sociology of education.

## 14.208 Educational Philosophy

Prerequisites: as for 14.200

An introduction to contemporary philosophy of education with an emphasis on ethics.

## \*14.209 Introduction to Methods of Research in Education

Prerequisites: as for 14.200

An introduction to techniques used in Social Science research.

## Education III

### 14.300 Twentieth Century Educational Thought

Prerequisite: Two Education papers at Stage II level if enrolling in two or more papers at Stage III

A study of selected educational philosophies.

### 14.301 Comparative Education

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

An introduction to comparative theory and methodology through a study of educational issues in New Zealand and other countries.

### 14.302 History of Education

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

The social history of education in Auckland: a study of educational change in its historical and social and political contexts.

### 14.303 School and Society: A Sociological perspective

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A critical sociological discussion of some current educational issues.

### \*14.305 The Guidance Process

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

An introduction to the theory and practice of counselling and guidance within New Zealand educational institutions. A course of practical work must be completed concurrently.

### 14.306 Introduction to Counselling in the Community

Prerequisites: as for 14.300

An examination of the application of basic principles of counselling to the needs of individual children and adults and to couples, families and other groups.

### \*14.307 Principles of Curriculum Development

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of principles of curriculum development that may be derived from psychological, sociological and philosophical sources and their application to the analysis and construction of curricula in various institutions in New Zealand.

### 14.308 Educational Psychology: A Behavioural Approach

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of contemporary ideas and research in human learning and instruction. Topics will include the analysis of child and adult behaviour in school, home and residential settings.

### 14.309 Development Psychology

(First half of the year)

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of selected aspects of infant and child development including the development of perception, cognition, language and problem solving.

**Note:** In 1988 this paper will be taught in full-time hours and in 1989 in part-time hours.

#### **\*14.310 Psychology of Adolescence**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of research on the physical, emotional, social and intellectual development of adolescents, and its relevance to New Zealand society.

#### **14.311 Special Education**

Prerequisites: as for 14.300 including 14.203 or 14.204 or 32.208

An examination of the special educational needs of children showing a typical development and of the effectiveness of current special educational strategies.

**Note:** In 1988 this paper will be taught in part-time hours and in 1989 in full-time hours.

#### **14.313 Methods of Research in Education**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

Techniques used in educational research.

#### **14.314 Issues in Early Childhood Education**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

This paper will concentrate on the issues and theories of first and second language acquisition in Early Childhood Education settings.

#### **14.316 Early Determinants of Behaviour**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of research dealing with the influence on later behaviour of variables operating prior to and shortly after birth.

#### **14.317 Organisational Effectiveness**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of structural and interpersonal factors which influence the effectiveness of educational organisations.

**Note:** This course has special relevance to those with experience or interests in administration of educational social service or voluntary organisations. In 1988 this paper will be taught in full-time hours and in 1989 in part-time hours.

#### **14.318 Studies in Teaching and Learning in Higher Education**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

An introduction to the aims and characteristics of courses in higher education and a study of curriculum design and instructional strategy at this level.

#### **14.319 Special Topic: The Reading Process**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of contemporary ideas and research on the reading process.

#### **14.320 Special Topic**

#### **†14.321 The Nature of Educational Theory**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A philosophical examination of problems in educational theory.

#### **14.322 Adult Learning and Education**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

An introductory survey of Adult Education and an

overview of adult human development.

#### **\*14.323 Special Topic: Issues Relating to Reading Difficulties**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of contemporary issues in reading difficulties and intervention programmes. This course has a limited enrolment of 20. Students should consult the Head of Department.

#### **14.324 Education and Revolutionary Change**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

Investigation of the nature and role of education in Cuba and Nicaragua.

#### **14.326 The Political Economy of Education**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

An examination of the interrelationships of education with society, the economy, the political system and other social institutions.

#### **14.327 Aspects of Science Education**

Prerequisites: as for 14.300

An introduction to children's learning in science, to issues in the philosophy of science relevant to the Science curriculum and to a range of other issues in the contemporary international debate concerning science education at primary and secondary level.

#### **14.328 Special Topic: Contemporary Feminist Perspectives in Education**

**14.329 Special Topic: to be approved by Head of Department**

#### **14.330 The Seriously Ill Child**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of the needs, problems, and development of seriously ill children.

#### **14.331 Computers in Education**

Prerequisite: as for 14.300

A study of the role of computers in primary and secondary education.

A course of prescribed practical work, observational visits or special seminars will be associated with each Education III paper. Details of these requirements are available at enrolment. These will normally involve over the year about twenty-four hours of supervised work in laboratories and elsewhere and additional time for assignments.

#### **Education for MA and Honours**

Four papers and a thesis (14.601) which counts as three papers or, Four papers and a folio of casework in guidance and counselling (14.606) or, Five papers and a thesis (14.611) which counts as two papers or, Six papers and a dissertation (14.604) which counts as one paper or, in exceptional circumstances a candidate who has commenced a thesis, a folio of casework or a dissertation may complete the MA as seven papers.

#### **14.400 Educational Philosophy**

Philosophical issues in education.

#### **14.401 Comparative Education**

An examination of issues in New Zealand education

in the light of comparative theory and method.

**\*14.402 Historical Studies in Education**

An examination of issues involved in historical studies and research related to education, including supervised investigation of a selected aspect.

**\*14.403 New Zealand Education**

A study of selected aspects of New Zealand education. Particular reference will be paid to major investigations in the areas selected.

**14.404 Sociology of Education**

A more intensive examination of some of the matters introduced in papers 14.206, 14.303 and 14.326.

**14.405 Education and Work**

A theoretical and practical examination of selected economic, sociological and psychological aspects of the transition from school to work.

**Note:** (i) This course has special relevance to careers teachers and vocational guidance and employment officers.

(ii) In 1988 this paper will be taught in full-time hours and in 1989 in part-time hours.

**\*14.406 Educational Psychology**

An advanced treatment of the behaviour of normal children with special reference to learning and the conditions which promote it.

**14.407 Developmental Psychology**

An advanced treatment of research in selected aspects of cognitive and personality development.

**\*14.409 Methods of Research in Education**

An advanced treatment of selected aspects of the processes of research.

**14.410 Principles and Practice of Counselling and Consultation**

Prerequisite: 14.306 or its equivalent will normally be a prerequisite for this course plus approved work experience in guidance and access to an appropriate fieldwork setting.

An advanced examination of principles of counselling and consulting, together with practical experience in selected procedures.

**Note:** In 1988 this paper will be taught in full-time hours.

**14.412 Behaviour Analysis in Education**

An examination of the application of behaviour analysis techniques to contemporary problems in education, including supervised research and field experience.

**14.413 Special Education**

Prerequisite: 14.311 will normally be a prerequisite for this course.

An advanced study of special educational provisions for exceptional children, including an intensive analysis of provision for mentally retarded children.

**Note:** In 1988 this paper will be taught in full-time hours and in 1989 in part-time hours.

**14.414 Issues in Curriculum Development and Evaluation**

A consideration of current issues in curriculum development and evaluation in primary, secondary and various categories of tertiary education.

**14.415 Special Topic: to be approved by Head of Department**

The topic to be proposed by the student after consultation with staff members and approved by the Head of Department. The topic must be approved not later than 31 December of the year preceding enrolment.

**\*14.416 Special Topic in Adult Education**

A more intensive examination of some of the matters introduced at Stage III papers in Adult Education.

**14.417 Special Topic: to be approved by Head of Department**

The topic proposed by a staff member and approved by the Head of Department will be announced in the Department by 31 December of the year preceding enrolment.

**14.418 Marriage and Family Counselling**

Prerequisite: 14.306 or its equivalent will normally be a prerequisite for this course.

An advanced examination of counselling principles as applied to stresses arising within marital and family relationships.

**Note:** In 1988 this paper will be taught in part-time hours.

**14.419 Early Determinants of Behaviour**

An advanced study of research dealing with the influence on behaviour of variables operating prior to and shortly after birth.

**14.420 Special Topic: to be approved by Head of Department**

Subject to be proposed by a staff member or a student and approved by the Head of Department not later than 31 December of the year preceding enrolment.

**14.421 History, Philosophy and Methodology of Science Education**

A study of concept development in science, the relationship between philosophy of science and science curricula and the history of science education.

**14.422 Education and National Development**

An examination of the nature and role of education within the process of economic, political and social development in selected countries.

**14.601 Thesis (Value 3 papers)**

**14.604 Dissertation (Value 1 paper)**

**14.606 Casework Folio (Value 3 papers)**

**14.611 Thesis (Value 2 papers)**

A candidate presenting a thesis, dissertation or folio of casework shall forward it to the Professor of Education not later than 1 November in the year in which it is to be examined. A research seminar will be held periodically during the year for those preparing to write MA theses.

A timetable for these seminars will be available at enrolment.

## DEPARTMENT OF ENGLISH

**Notes** (i) Since the supply of text-books continues to be uncertain, some changes in courses may be unavoidable. Students will be notified of any such changes at the beginning of the academic year. The books mentioned in the appendix are *prescribed* books – ie those which students must have. Students should obtain from the department the fuller version of prescriptions and book lists, which include *recommended* books (ie additional to those prescribed); and also lists of further prescribed books which are required for those papers not mentioned in the appendix.

All students should possess a good Dictionary: *Collins English Dictionary* and the *Concise Oxford* are recommended.

(ii) Attention is directed to the MA prerequisites as set out in the Regulations for that Degree. Students intending to take MA in English should plan their courses with these requirements, particularly that of a foreign language, in mind.

### English I

To advance to English II two English I papers must have been passed. Students intending to take 18.200 are advised to take 18.100. Students intending to take 18.201 are advised to take 18.105. Paper 18.100 has one lecture weekly for the whole year. The other papers have one lecture per week with an additional weekly lecture for half the year. All courses have weekly tutorials.

#### 18.100 Introduction to Chaucer and Shakespeare

#### 18.101 Twentieth Century Literature

#### 18.103 New Zealand Literature

#### 18.104 Nineteenth Century Literature

#### 18.105 Introduction to English Language

### English II

To advance to English III three specific English II papers must have been passed. See BA Schedule under English II: Note. Each paper involves one lecture per week except for 18.201 which has an additional lecture for part of the year; tutorials are also given.

#### 18.200 Medieval Literature

#### 18.201 English Language

#### †18.205 Sociolinguistics

#### 18.210 The Age of Shakespeare: Poetry

#### 18.213 The Age of Shakespeare: Tragedy

#### 18.220 Twentieth Century Fiction

#### 18.222 Modern Poetry: 1900–1945

### English III

The course consists normally of a minimum of three papers, and a maximum of six papers; students must take one paper from 18.300–18.304, one from 18.306–18.308 and one from the group 18.310 and 18.314–18.329. See BA Schedule under English III: Qualifications, and also MA prerequisites. Each paper involves one lecture per week (except 18.301 which has two lectures per week), with tutorial work as arranged.

#### 18.300 The English Language from Chaucer's day to the present

Prerequisite: 18.201 or the combination of 18.200 and 18.105.

#### 18.301 Old English: Language, Literature and Society

#### 18.302 Middle English Literature

Prerequisite: 18.200

#### 18.303 The Linguistic Analysis of Literature

#### 18.304 Phonology, and New Zealand Speech

Prerequisite: 18.201

#### 18.306 Prose, Poetry and Drama of the Eighteenth Century

#### 18.307 Romantic Literature

#### \*18.308 Eighteenth Century Novels

#### 18.310 Shakespeare: Selected Plays

For 1988: Comedies and Tragicomedies

#### 18.314 Major Works, Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries

#### 18.320 Victorian Literature

#### 18.323 American Literature: Poetry

#### \*18.325 Special Topic II as prescribed by the Head of Department: Novels from the Post-Colonial World: 1950–1980

#### 18.326 Special Topic III as prescribed by the Head of Department: Women Writers of the Twentieth Century

#### 18.327 Special Topic IV as prescribed by the Head of Department: Australian Literature

#### 18.328 Special Topic V as prescribed by the Head of Department: Creative Writing

Entry to this course is restricted. Details for the procedure to be followed for pre-enrolment are available from the Department.

#### \*18.329 Special Topic VI as prescribed by the Head of Department

**Note:** 18.301 and 18.302 are normally prerequisites for MA paper 18.403. 18.301 is a prerequisite for MA paper 18.400, 18.302 is a prerequisite for MA paper 18.411 and normally a prerequisite for 18.401. 18.301 is normally a prerequisite for MA paper 18.402.

### English for MA and Honours

**Note:** Intending MA students who are in doubt about the choice of courses should consult the Head of Department.

#### (1) Single Honours – English

Students will select seven of the papers set out below, their selection of papers to be approved by the Head of the Department. One paper listed under Stage III English, if not already credited for a BA degree, may be offered as a paper for an MA. Not more than three papers may be taken from the period after 1930. With the permission of the Head of Department, a thesis (18.601) may be substituted for two papers or a dissertation (18.604) for one paper. The dissertation will normally take the form of a documented essay of about 12,000 words; while the length of the thesis is approximately 25,000 words upon a topic requiring detailed research.

Candidates who present their papers in two years are required to complete the specified coursework before sitting the examination for each paper. Those who present all their papers in one year are, in most cases, exempt from coursework but will be given the opportunity to submit it if they desire. All students taking a paper from English III will be required to submit the prescribed coursework for that paper.

**18.400 Old English**

Prerequisite: Old English at Stage III level

**18.401 Middle English**

Prerequisite: normally Middle English at Stage III level

**18.402 Norse (Icelandic)**

Prerequisite: normally Old English at Stage III level

**\*18.403 Introduction to English Philology**

Prerequisite: normally Old English and Middle English at Stage III level

**\*18.404 Victorian Studies (24.415 History paper)**

An interdisciplinary paper concerned with selected topics from English literature and British social and cultural history of the 19th Century

**18.405 Twentieth Century Poetry****18.406 Shakespeare: Selected Plays and Poems****\*18.407 Literary Theory****†18.408 Advanced Studies in Syntax**

(Linguistics paper 83.405)

**\*18.409 Twentieth Century Drama****\*18.410 English Linguistics****18.411 Selected Author or Authors I, to be prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1988: Chaucer

Prerequisite: Middle English at Stage III level

**†18.412 Bibliography and Textual Criticism****18.413 Essays Paper**

The course will consist of the supervised writing of short essays in a field or genre proposed by the student.

**18.414 Selected Author or Authors II, to be prescribed by the Head of Department**

For 1988: Early Twentieth Century Fiction: James Joyce.

**\*18.415 Nineteenth Century American Prose and Fiction****18.416 Twentieth Century American Literature**

Modern Literature and the Visual Arts.

(Art History paper 19.411)

**18.417 New Zealand Literature**

The course will be based mainly on authors of prose and verse writing after 1910.

**18.418 Restoration Literature****†18.419 Special Topic I: To be prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1988: Literature and Society: 1400-1550.

**\*18.420 Film Studies**

(Art History paper 19.404)

This inter-departmental paper – shared by the Departments of English and Art History – will examine film as an art by studying the work of some major film-makers and also the major theories of film criticism.

**18.421 Special Topic II: To be prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1988: Literature and Thought 1590-1650. A course in which literature is studied in relationship to

the history, ideology and religion of the time.

**18.422 Literature from the Old and New Commonwealths**

For 1988: Canadian Literature.

**\*18.424 Selected Author or Authors III**

For 1988: Major Victorian Writers: Dickens

**†18.425 A Topic in Sociolinguistics****\*18.426 Concepts of Satire in Augustan Literature****\*18.427 Special Topic III: To be prescribed by Head of Department****\*18.428 Special Topic IV: To be prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1988: Nabokov.

**18.429 Special Topic V: to be prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1988: Discourse Analysis.

**18.430 Special Topic VI: To be prescribed by Head of Department**

For 1988: Nineteenth Century Women Novelists.

**18.601 Thesis**

(equivalent of two papers).

**18.604 Dissertation**

(equivalent of one paper).

**(2) Combined Honours – English with another language (Languages and Literature)**

Students will select three or four papers (set out above for Single-Honours) as approved by the Heads of Department concerned.

---

**DEPARTMENT OF GEOGRAPHY**

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

**Geography I**

Two papers are offered for Geography I. They may be taken separately or together, but students planning to advance in geography should enrol in both. Practical work, tutorials, and a field excursion form an integral part of the courses, and participation in these is required. A list of recommended books for each course is included in the departmental *Student Guide* available from the departmental secretary.

**20.101 Introductory Physical Geography**

(second half of year)

Water in the environment is the unifying theme for a study of processes in physical geography.

**20.102 Introductory Human Geography**

(first half of year)

Social and economic processes that determine variation, accessibility and inequality in the spatial allocation of resources both within and between nations.

**Asian Geography I****20.130 Geography of East Asia**

(second half of year)

A topical and regional approach to the geography of China and Japan. The unity and diversity of East Asia, environment and cultural development, indus-

trialisisation and urbanisation, population problems, and environmental management are emphasised.

## **Geography II**

Six papers are offered for Geography II. They may be taken separately, but students planning to advance in geography should enrol for 20.204 (or equivalent) 20.201 and 20.202. A list of recommended books for each of the papers is included in the departmental *Student Guide* available from the departmental secretary.

### **20.201 Physical Geography**

Environmental processes in biogeography and soils, climatology, and geomorphology are considered with energy flow and transformation as the unifying theme.

### **20.202 Geographical Perspectives on Urban-Industrial Societies**

The location and organisation of economic activities in Western societies and their relationship to other aspects of social organisation. Principles and models that are used in geography to represent and interpret these relationships are considered.

### **20.203 Remote Sensing Techniques**

Photogrammetry, photo interpretation and an introduction to more recent techniques of remote sensing and their application.

### **20.204 Statistical Techniques in Geography**

Elementary statistical methods for the non-mathematical student, including descriptive statistics, the testing of simple statistical relationships, and the use of computer processing.

### **20.205 Human Impact in the Environment**

An examination of humanity as a modifier of the soil, atmosphere, land and other aspects of the natural and cultural world.

### **20.206 Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries**

The study of regional processes in Third World countries. The issues of agrarian change, urbanisation, migration and industrialisation are considered in the context of colonial legacies and contemporary political situations. Taught in even numbered years.

## **Asian Geography II**

### **\*20.240 Geography of Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia**

Population composition and growth, urbanisation, economic structure and regional patterns, and problems of resource use are emphasised. Taught in odd numbered years.

## **Geography III**

Each paper will involve at least two hours of lectures, seminars, or laboratory work per week, but students must also attend such additional practical work and fieldwork as may be required. A list of recommended books for each of the papers is included in the departmental *Student Guide* available from the departmental secretary.

### **20.302 Regional Processes and Development**

The identification of regions and the investigation of their components and dynamics. Particular attention is given to regional systems and inter-regional relations, the regional organisation of selected economic sectors, regional inequality, and the political and planning responses to regional structures.

### **20.303 Geomorphology and Hydrology**

Geomorphological and hydrological systems with special reference to coasts, slopes and karstic environments.

### **20.304 Biogeography and Climatology**

Concepts and methods in environmental climatology and biogeography.

### **20.305 Population Processes Policies and Techniques**

Components of change in human populations (fertility, mortality, migration), population structure (sex and age, ethnicity, economic activity) and population distribution (urbanisation, segregation, regional development). Techniques of measurement and analysis are introduced and policies which regulate population are considered.

### **20.306 Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries**

The study of regional processes in Third World countries. The issues of agrarian change, urbanisation, migration and industrialisation are considered in the context of colonial legacies and contemporary political situations. Taught in even numbered years.

### **\*20.310 Geography of Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia**

Population composition and growth, urbanisation, economic structure and regional patterns, and problems of resource use are emphasised. Taught in odd numbered years.

### **\*20.312 Special Topic**

### **20.313 Advanced Statistical Techniques in Geography**

An introduction to multivariate statistical methods and their application to model building and systems analysis.

### **20.314 Geographic Information Systems and Image Processing**

Principles, techniques and applications of geographic information systems, including computer analysis and presentation of cartographic and remotely sensed data.

### **20.315 Research Design and Methods in Human Geography**

A lecture, practical and field course which considers the principles of research design, methods and practice of data collection, sources of published and unpublished data, experience in analytical techniques and the presentation of results. The paper includes a residential field course of at least seven days normally held in the first week of the May study break.

### **20.320 Resources and Environmental Management**

Planning for the effective utilisation of natural resources through understanding the functioning of natural and man-modified ecological systems and the institutional structures determining their use.

### **Geography for MA, MSc, and Honours**

[Four papers and a thesis (20.601)]

Students will be required to select any four of the papers set out below. A list of recommended books for each of the papers is included in the departmental *Students' Guide* available from the departmental secretary.

### **\*20.400 History and Nature of Geography**

#### **20.410 Change and Transition in the Pacific**

The patterns and processes of island bio-physical environments, population, economic organisation and resource use.

#### **20.420 Biogeography**

Major concepts, theories, and methods in studies of plant communities, populations and nutrient cycling.

#### **20.421 Climatology**

Topics in boundary layer and applied climatology.

#### **20.422 Geomorphology**

An analysis of major ideas in systematic and regional geomorphology, with a focus on the SW Pacific and New Zealand.

#### **20.424 Hydrology and Fluvial Geomorphology**

Pure and applied aspects of hydrology and fluvial geomorphology, incorporating field and laboratory techniques.

#### **20.430 Land Use Studies**

Principles of land use competition and land use planning in rural and urban areas of developed economies.

#### **20.431 Ideas on Culture-Nature Relationships**

A cross cultural study of Western European and East Asian ideas on culture-nature relationships.

#### **†20.432 Regional Development Studies**

Studies of the interregional and international relationships between capital, labour and space.

#### **\*20.433 Political Geography**

#### **20.434 Population Geography**

Analysis and applications of the methods and materials of demography.

#### **\*20.436 Urban Geography**

Emphasis is on the spatial content of the politics and administration of metropolitan centres.

#### **20.440 Remote Sensing**

An advanced study of remote sensing applications involving analysis of a range of recent imagery and data.

#### **20.441 Coastal Studies**

Topics in historical coastal geomorphology and coastal management with process as the unifying theme.

### **20.442 Evaluation in Environmental and Resource Planning**

An examination of methods for the evaluation of resource development proposals.

### **20.443 Digital Mapping Systems**

The study of computer assisted cartography with special reference to its role in Geographic Information Systems in New Zealand.

### **20.444 Special Topic**

### **20.445 Special Topic**

---

## **DEPARTMENT OF GERMANIC LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE**

The Department teaches two subjects: German and Scandinavian Studies.

### **GERMAN**

More detailed information is contained in the Departmental Handbook and the Handbook of the Faculty of Arts, both of which are available from the University Office. Further information may also be obtained from the Secretary at 10 Grafton Road.

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

### **German I**

Two language acquisition courses are provided, 22.100 and 22.105. Students who have studied German previously must enrol for 22.100. Students without previous knowledge of German must enrol for 22.105.

Papers 22.100 and 22.101 are linked corequisites. A candidate's result will be determined over the two papers. See BA schedule.

In determining the final result, the candidate's performance during the year, in particular in assignments and class tests, will be taken into consideration.

### **22.100 Language acquisition**

Written and oral use of German tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation.

### **22.101 Introduction to German literature**

Literary history and criticism with special reference to modern poetry and short prose.

### **22.102 Aspects of modern German civilisation**

This paper is open to all interested students, whether or not they are studying German language and literature. The paper is strongly recommended to students of German at all stages.

A survey of modern German civilisation (i) Aspects of 19th and 20th century German history and thought; (ii) Literature (studied in translation), music, art and cinema of the period.

### **22.103 Reading knowledge of German**

The study of German vocabulary and sentence structure; comprehension of general and subject-related texts and translation into English.

The course is designed for those students who require a Foreign Language Reading qualification in another



department and also for those students taking 22.105 who intend to advance German in subsequent years.

#### **22.104 German for singers**

Pronunciation, intonation, comprehension of the texts of *Lieder*; background study of composers and poets. The course deals primarily with the *Kunstlied*. A minimum of three candidates is required.

#### **22.105 Introductory language acquisition**

Written and oral use of German designed specifically for students without previous knowledge of the language. Students intending to advance German in subsequent years are strongly recommended to take 22.103 concurrently.

#### **German II**

A candidate's result will be determined over the three papers. Papers 22.200, 22.202 and 22.203 are linked corequisites. See BA schedule.

In determining the final result, the candidate's performance during the year, in particular in assignments and class tests, will be taken into consideration.

#### **22.200 Language acquisition**

Written and oral use of German tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation.

**22.202 Genres of 20th century German literature**  
Literary criticism with special reference to drama; aspects of 20th century drama, prose and poetry.

**22.203 German linguistics and history of the German language.**

#### **German III**

A candidate's result will be determined over papers 22.300, 22.301 and either 22.302 or 22.303 which are linked corequisites. Students may take both 22.302 and 22.303, but only one will be a linked corequisite with 22.300 and 22.301. In determining the final result, the candidate's performance during the year, in particular in assignments and class tests, will be taken into consideration.

#### **22.300 Language acquisition**

Written and oral use of German tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation.

#### **22.301 Medieval and romantic texts**

#### **22.302 Classics of modern German literature**

#### **22.303 Post-war German literature German for MA and Honours**

Students intending to enrol for MA must consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss their choice of papers and to obtain advice on vacation reading.

#### **(1) Single Honours – German**

Seven papers comprising 22.400 and six others, to be selected with the approval of the Head of the Department. Students will normally be required to take at least one literary, one linguistic and one medieval paper in their course. With the approval of the Head of Department five papers and a thesis (22.601) may be offered. Students receiving such ap-

proval will be required to do the thesis in a second year.

#### **22.400 Language acquisition: Written and oral German**

**22.401 Medieval studies with special reference to the *Nibelungenlied* and Hartmann von Aue**

**22.402 Medieval Studies with special reference to Wolfram von Eschenbach**

**\*22.404 Literatur der Goethezeit**

**22.405 The poetry of Rilke**

**\*22.407 Selected works of Brecht**

**22.408 Post-war German prose**

**22.410 Linguistic analysis of contemporary written German**

**†22.411 The *Märchen***

**22.413 Selected works of Thomas Mann**

**22.415 German language developments, past and present**

**\*22.417 Twentieth century German poetry**

**22.418 An approved special topic in German language**

**22.419 An approved special topic in German literature**

**22.420 An approved special topic in German language or literature**

**22.421 Literatur und Film**

**22.422 German lexicography**

**22.423 An approved special topic in German language or literature**

**22.424 An approved special topic in German language or literature**

**22.440 An approved special topic in Germanic languages, literature, thought or history**

**(2) Languages and Literature with German as one language**

Three papers in German and three in the other subject, with the seventh paper selected from either subject.

Three or four papers in German as defined above for Single Honours, to be selected with the approval of the Head of Department.

### **SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES**

More detailed information is contained in the Departmental Handbook and the Handbook of the Faculty of Arts, both of which are available from the University Office. Further information may also be obtained from the Secretary at 10 Grafton Road.

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

### **Scandinavian Studies I**

Students may enrol without previous knowledge of the subject. Paper 46.101 may be taken on its own. If taken together with 46.100, then 46.100 and 46.101 are linked corequisites - see BA Schedule.

In determining the final result, the candidate's performance during the year will be taken into consideration.

**46.100 Language acquisition**

Oral and written use of Swedish, tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation from and into Swedish.

**46.101 Aspects of Scandinavian civilisation**

This paper is open to all interested students, whether or not they are taking 46.100 or advancing Scandinavian Studies. An outline of Scandinavian history, geography and society; selected works of modern Scandinavian literature studied in English translation.

**Scandinavian Studies II**

A candidate's result will be determined over three papers. Papers 46.200, and either 46.201 and 46.202 or 46.203 and 46.204 are linked corequisites - see BA Schedule.

In determining the final result, the candidate's performance during the year will be taken into consideration.

**46.200 Language acquisition**

Oral and written use of Swedish, tested in some or all of the following ways: composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading, translation from and into Swedish.

**\*46.201 Introduction to Scandinavian languages and linguistics****\*46.202 Scandinavian drama and film with special reference to Ibsen, Strindberg and Ingmar Bergman****46.203 Modern Swedish novels and short stories****46.204 Swedish poetry from medieval ballads to the present day.****Scandinavian Studies III**

A candidate's result will be determined over three papers. Papers 46.300 and either 46.301 and 46.302 or 46.303 and 46.304 are linked corequisites - see BA schedule.

In determining the final result, the candidate's performance during the year will be taken into consideration.

**46.300 Language acquisition**

Advanced oral and written Swedish; comprehension of written Danish and Norwegian ("Bokmaal").

**\*46.301 Scandinavian languages and linguistics****\*46.302 Scandinavian drama and film with special reference to Holberg, Ibsen, Strindberg, Lagerkvist and Ingmar Bergman****46.303 Modern Scandinavian novels and short stories****46.304 Scandinavian poetry from medieval ballads to the present day**

programme and its requirements of students are contained in a Guide which all students must obtain from the Department at 5 Wynyard Street. Students are advised to call at the Department before enrolment to discuss courses and to obtain reading lists and a leaflet entitled Advice on Books to Buy. This will list recommended texts for papers for which there are no prescribed texts.

**Note:** \* This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

**History I****24.100 From Versailles to Pearl Harbor: issues of peace and war**

(first half of year)

The origins of the Second World War in Europe and Asia. The course examines the challenges Germany and Japan presented to the status quo and considers the outcome.

**24.101 The Russian Revolution**

(first half of year)

The origins of the 1917 revolution and the development of the Soviet state and society.

**24.103 Fascism in the inter-war Years**

(first half of year)

The nature of inter-war fascism with particular reference to Italy, Germany and Great Britain.

**24.105 The USA in the 20th Century**

(second half of year)

Political, social, intellectual, cultural, economic, and military trends and events in this century. Topics include: the origins of modern America; immigration; America's experiment with imperialism; the Progressive Era; World War I; the 1920s; the Great Crash; the Depression; Franklin D. Roosevelt and the New Deal; World War II; the Cold War; Harry S. Truman and the Fair Deal; the changing political, economic and social role of women in America; civil rights; Korea; the Eisenhower years; John F. Kennedy and Camelot; Lyndon B. Johnson and the Great Society; Black Power; Vietnam; the 1960s; feminism; and the Nixon years.

**24.106 Marxism in Perspective**

(second half of year)

Marxism stands at the crossroads of the modern social sciences. This course provides an introduction to Marxism and Socialism in the context of industrialisation and the nineteenth-century labour movement. This interdisciplinary course should interest students of sociology, economics, political studies and philosophy as well as history.

**24.107 Women in New Societies**

(second half of year)

The social, economic and political history of women in the USA, New Zealand and Australia. The paper will begin with America in the colonial period and finish in the 1920s. Special themes will be women's domestic and family role, the changing work of

**DEPARTMENT OF HISTORY**

Fuller details concerning the Department's teaching

women, the education of women, the women's rights movement and women's participation in social reform movements.

#### **24.120 A History of Race Relations in New Zealand**

(first half of year)

A history of racial and cultural interaction in New Zealand from the late eighteenth century to the 1980s.

#### **24.121 New Zealand Society and Politics**

(second half of year)

New Zealand history (other than race relations and specifically Maori history) since 1840, but with the main emphasis on the period since 1870.

#### **24.140 Europe in the Age of Kings and Queens 1450-1700**

(second half of year)

An introduction to the history of late medieval and early modern Europe, with emphasis on the development of European states and changes in habits of thought, social order and life styles.

#### **†24.141 Europe in the Age of Revolution 1750-1875**

(second half of year)

A survey of the economic, social, political and ideological transformation of Europe during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, with emphasis on the 'dual revolution' - the French Revolution of 1789 and the British Industrial Revolution.

**Note:** Papers are taught on a half-year basis, three lectures, one tutorial per week. The following will be in sequence in 1988: 24.100-24.107; 24.101-24.105; 24.103-24.106; 24.120-24.121. 24.140, 24.141 will not be in sequence. Second half year papers will start in the week beginning 20 June. Should their timetable permit, students may take a single paper, or two or more papers from different sequences.

#### **Asian History I**

##### **24.130 China since the Opium War**

(second half of the year)

The collapse of Imperial China under the impact of foreign imperialism and internal upheavals and the subsequent struggle to rebuild a modern nation.

##### **24.132 Nationalism and Revolution in Vietnam, Thailand and Indonesia**

(first half of year)

An examination of the nineteenth-century roots of nationalism and the significance of the revolutionary struggle in the twentieth century.

**Note:** There will be three lectures and one tutorial a week for each paper. Paper 24.130 will start in the week beginning 20 June.

##### **24.133 The development of modern Japan**

(all year)

Offering some explanations for the rise of Japan as a major world power, the paper first discusses the feudal order in Tokugawa Japan and the policy of seclusion. The next section analyses the transition to a unified nation state and the opening of Japan to the West. The third section deals with the modernisation of Japan, its expansion into East Asia and the Pacific, the American occupation, and the reconstitution of the political order after 1945.

**Note:** 24.133 will be taught throughout the year, three lectures and a

tutorial each fortnight.

#### **History II**

##### **24.200 Rome and the Barbarians 350-750**

(first half of year)

The course will provide a broad outline of relations between the Roman Empire and various northern peoples from about 250 to about 600. Attention will then focus on the period during which the Goths first entered and settled within the Empire (roughly 350-430), concentrating on the motives of their leaders, the responses of the imperial government and the provincial aristocracy, and the resulting impact upon Roman institutions, culture, and economy.

##### **24.201 Medieval English Kingship from Alfred to Henry III**

(second half of year)

Studies in the development of royal power in England from the Anglo-Saxon period until the thirteenth century.

##### **24.214 Parliaments, Estates and Revolutions, 1500-1660** (second half of year)

A study of representation and consent in early modern Europe and of the parliamentary assemblies which were the embodiment of these principles. The course falls into two parts: a static, institutional study of assemblies in the mid-sixteenth century; and a dynamic study of the rise, decline, or eclipse of those assemblies, and particularly of their role in the crises of the mid-seventeenth century.

##### **\*24.215 Society in Crisis: Europe 1550-1660**

##### **24.216 Modern France 1871 to the Present**

(first half of year)

A political, social and economic history of France under the Republic emphasising the dynamics of social conflict and the mediating role of the State.

##### **24.230 Polynesian and European Exploration of the Pacific**

(first half of year)

European exploration of the Pacific and theories on the origin and migrations of Polynesians, including Maori voyages to New Zealand.

##### **†24.232 Colonial Society and the American Revolution**

(first half of year)

The development of the societies and institutions of colonial America leading to the American Revolution.

##### **24.233 Australian Society 1788-1988**

(second half of year)

A study of some of the main factors that have shaped Australian society and the attitudes and values of Australians.

##### **24.234 New Zealand Communities 1840-1940**

(second half of year)

A study of the origins, social structure, cultural and economic change, politics and government of different types of New Zealand communities. Case studies will be made of certain communities e.g. a

Wakefield community, a sheep station, a Maori community, an urban community.

†24.235 **Special Topic**

†24.236 **Special Topic**

**Note:** Papers are taught on a half-year basis, two lectures, one tutorial per week. The following will be the sequence in 1988: 24.200-24.201; 24.216-24.214; 24.230-24.234; 24.233-24.208; 24.232-24.233.

Second half year papers will start in the week beginning 20 June. Should their timetable permit, students may take a single paper, or two or more papers from different sequences.

**Asian History II**

**24.222 China under the Ming and Qing Dynasties**

(first half of year)

The social, political and economic structure of the final period of the Chinese empire, and the practice of imperial government under native and foreign rulers, China's relations with the outside world, and the development of her cultural heritage.

**24.223 State and Society in Pre-colonial Island S.E. Asia**

(first half of year)

An introduction to the history and culture of Malaysia, Indonesia, and the Philippines until the end of the nineteenth century. The course first examines their common economic and cultural environment, and the impact of Indian and Islamic ideas on society. It then traces the effects of Western intrusion into the archipelago and shows how this laid the grounds for the evolution of the region's modern political divisions.

**24.224 State and Society in Pre-colonial Mainland S.E. Asia**

(second half of year)

An introduction to the history and culture of Burma, Thailand, and the Indo-China states until the end of the nineteenth century. The main concern of the course is to show how a number of different ethnic unities which shared a similar geographic, economic and religious environment developed in time to become distinct polities. These historic experiences in turn determined how they responded to the Western challenge in the nineteenth century.

**Note:** Papers are taught on a half-year basis, two lectures, one tutorial per week. 24.223, 24.224 are taught in sequence. 24.222 will be taught in the first half. Second half year papers will start in the week beginning 20 June.

**History III**

\*24.301 **The Mexican Revolution**

\*24.302 **The Reign of Henry VIII**

**24.307 The Origins of the First World War**

(first half of year)

The origins of the First World War through discussion of the foreign policies of the main European countries involved, including Italy, and an analysis of international relations from 1870, and particularly from 1890 to 1915.

**24.309 British Labour History 1850-1918**

(first half of year)

The conditions of life and work of the lower classes and the evolving nature of the industrial and political labour movements.

†24.310 **The American Civil War and Reconstruction**

(first half of year)

The problems of slavery, race relations, and sectionalism in nineteenth-century America.

**24.314 Race in the Antipodes: New Zealand, Australia and South Africa in the 19th Century**

(second half of year)

The evolution of ideas about race in the nineteenth century with case studies of New Zealand, Australia and South Africa.

**24.315 Pacific History: Culture Contact to about 1900**

(first half of year)

The relations between Pacific Islanders and Europeans (explorers, travellers and missionaries) up to the colonial period.

†24.320 **Special Topic**

To be prescribed by Head of Department

†24.325 **Special Topic**

†24.327 **Communism in Western Europe**

(first half of year)

This course will survey the development of Communist Parties in Western Europe from the Russian Revolution to the present. Special attention will be given to the effort to adapt Leninism to the realities of Western democracies since the Popular Front. Reading knowledge of a European foreign language is recommended.

**24.328 Religion in Changing Societies**

(second half of year)

A study of religion in the British Isles in the mid-nineteenth century and how that religion fared when transplanted to Australia and New Zealand.

†24.329 **Special Topic**

To be prescribed by Head of Department

**24.331 Justinian and his Age**

(first half of year)

Justinian has a reputation as legal reformer, patron of art, victor over Persians and barbarians. He brought the 'Christian Empire' to a new stage of its development. Yet he antagonised the traditional governing class, drained the treasury, and failed in his military ambitions. Analysis will involve reference to the fifth-century background and look briefly at the fortunes of Byzantium after Justinian's death. Close attention will be given to the historian Procopius.

**24.333 A History of Mediaeval Europe from Charlemagne to Philip the Fair**

(second half of year)

Designed as a successor to 24.201, this paper will cover approximately the same period (c. 800-c. 1296) and will deal with the political and cultural history of mediaeval European States (excluding England).

**24.334 Britain and Russia: a Century of Conflict**

(second half of year)

During the nineteenth century one of the major fac-

tors in the formulation of British foreign policy was fear of the growth of Russian power. What was British policy in response? To what extent does an examination of Russian foreign policy warrant the nineteenth-century British interpretation of it?

**\*24.336 Popular Culture in Early Modern Europe**

**24.338 Racial Equality in the United States since 1920**

(second half of year)

The efforts of blacks to achieve full benefits of citizenship in the United States, including the NAACP's attack on segregation through the courts *Brown v Board of Education*, the Civil Rights movement, Martin Luther King, Black Power, Black Separatism and Black nationalism.

**Note:** Papers are taught on a half-year basis, one one-hour and one two-hour period per week. The following will be the sequence for 1988: 24.307-24.334; 24.310-24.338; 24.309-24.328; 24.315-24.314; 24.331-24.333; 24.327-24.325. Second half year papers will start in the week beginning 20 June. Should their timetable permit, students may take a single paper or two more papers from different sequences. But it may prove impossible owing to pressure of numbers in certain classes to allow students to enrol for all the papers of their first choice.

**Asian History III**

**24.312 Sino-Japanese Relations since the Meiji Restoration**

(first half of year)

The relations of the two principal nations of the Far East, 1868-1945: the breakdown of China's informal overseas empire: the growth of Japan's ambition and capability and the impact of these upon China.

**24.330 British Imperialism in Southeast Asia**

(first half of year)

A survey of British imperialism in the Southeast Asian context from the late eighteenth century to the years following the Second World War, with an emphasis on selected topics and areas.

**24.340 Theravada Buddhism and Islam in Southeast Asian History**

(second half of year)

The first section of the course will discuss the history and major teachings of these religions and their nature in Southeast Asia. The second section will examine the influence of specific religious developments in Theravada Buddhism and Islam in the history of Southeast Asia.

**Note:** Papers are taught on a half-year basis, one one-hour and one two-hour period per week, in the following sequence: 24.330-24.340, 24.312 will be taught in the first half year. Second half year papers start during the week beginning 20 June.

**History for MA and Honours**

Students must attempt four papers (excluding 24.430 and 24.431 but including 24.410) in their first year and complete their remaining work in their second year. Students in full-time employment or with other demanding responsibilities may (with the permission of the Head of Department) attempt fewer papers in their first year and spread their remaining work over the one or, at most, two years following.

The thesis shall not exceed 50,000 words and two

copies must be handed in to the Registrar in accordance with MA Regulation 11(d). The dissertation shall be between 10,000 and 15,000 words and two copies must be submitted to the Registrar by 1 December in the student's final year.

The Head of Department may permit a student not attempting a thesis to include as one of the six papers required a special study (24.430), involving a research programme prepared in consultation with one or more staff members. In exceptional cases, a second special study (24.431) may be included.

Students are expected to report regularly to their supervisors and to attend a fortnightly graduate research seminar in their second and (where applicable) third year.

**24.400 Topics in New Zealand History**

Discussion of research and controversy on several broad topics including race, class, gender, locality and nationality.

**24.401 The Political Development of the Pacific Islands from about 1870**

An examination of political and related social change in the Pacific Islands from annexation to decolonisation.

**\*24.402 Race and Class in Southern Africa in the 20th century**

**†24.403 Topics in Australian History since 1880**

An investigation of social change and social structure with emphasis on issues at present engaging the attention of research workers.

**24.404 Kings, Lords and Commons: Tudor Government and Society 1485-1603**

This course involves the extensive use of primary materials. It concentrates on the changing role of parliament; the shifting relationship between king, lords, and commons; and parliament's response to a wide variety of political, economic and social problems ranging from religion and witchcraft to treason and inflation.

**†24.405 The Crisis of American Liberalism**

The evolution of American society and institutions since the advent of the New Deal. The course will include readings on major political, social, economic, cultural, and military developments from 1932 through the resignation of Richard Nixon, as well as foreign policy for the same period. Emphasis will be on the changes wrought by the Great Depression and the New Deal and the emergence of America as a global power.

**\*24.406 Individual and Community in Western Europe 1050-1200**

**24.407 Indonesia and the Philippines: Colonial Experience and Post-colonial problems**

This paper examines the similarities and contrasts in the colonial history of Indonesia and the Philippines and discusses some of the problems the two Republics have faced since independence.

**\*24.409 British Social History 1870-1914**

### 24.410 The Historian's Craft: Theories, Methods and Techniques

The course is designed to achieve two aims: (1) to provide a basic knowledge of the evolution of history as a discipline through a selective study of some of the most influential schools of history in the past; and (2) to establish a sound understanding of some modern trends in history. The latter would involve the examination of ideas and the application of methodologies which have been developed by the French Annales School, by the closer links being forged between history and the social sciences, and by the unique developments which have evolved in the historiography of Asia, Africa, and the Pacific.

### †24.411 Topics in the History of the Early American Republic

A study of early national American society and politics, with special reference to political culture, diplomacy and war in the years between 1776 and 1828.

### 24.413 The Origins of the Second World War

This course is mainly concerned with the origins of the war in Europe and lays particular emphasis upon the relationship between internal and international affairs.

### 24.420 China's Struggle for Modernity: The Republican Era

An examination of China's gradual fragmentation after the 1911 revolution and its tortuous development towards a new national unity.

### †24.421 Special Topic

To be prescribed by Head of Department

### 24.422 Topics in Late Roman Religion

The course is designed to provide opportunity and guidance for seminar work on a variety of issues, pagan as well as Christian and Jewish, over a broad period of time (roughly the first five centuries of the common era).

In 1988, lectures will focus on Basil of Caesarea (d. 379), and students will be encouraged (though without insistence) to study the literary, philosophical and ascetic traditions that contributed to Christian monasticism in the fourth century.

### \*24.423 Marxist Historians and their Critics

### 24.430 Special Study

A research programme, normally related to one of the papers 24.400 to 24.429, selected in consultation with one or more staff members and approved by the Head of Department.

### 24.431 Special Study

A research programme, normally related to one of the papers 24.400 to 24.429, selected in consultation with one or more staff members and approved by the Head of Department.

**Note:** (i) There is no guarantee that all papers listed above will be available in any one year.

(ii) If enrolment for any MA paper other than 24.430 and 24.431 falls below five, students may be asked to transfer to another MA paper, or to pursue study in the field by enrolling in 24.430 or 24.431.

(iii) All students intending to enrol for MA must see the Head of Department before formally enrolling, preferably before the end of the previous year.

## DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS

For prescriptions see Index.

## DEPARTMENT OF MUSIC

**Note:** \* This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

† This paper may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

### Restrictions on Entry to Courses:

1. A student wishing to advance in Music for BA (that is beyond Stage I) who has little evidence of musical background is required to satisfy the Head of Department of Music that an appropriate standard has been reached. For this purpose short interviews will be held in late January of the year for which preparatory application has been made. A limited number of first-year places is available in the Department. Students should refer to the Faculty of Music Prescriptions for details.

### Music I

Music I (as prescribed for B.Mus)

28.100, 28.101, 28.103, 28.104, 28.105, 28.113, 28.114

### Prescriptions for BA

### 28.104 Music and the 20th Century

(One paper)

A listening-based approach to music and its various types and forms in the period 1900-1960.

### 28.105 Basic Musical Techniques

(One paper)

Fundamental written skills in music, and practice in keyboard work and aural perception.

### Music II

Music II (as prescribed for B.Mus)

28.201, 28.202, \*28.203, 28.204, \*28.207, 28.208, 28.214, 28.223

### Music III

Music III (as prescribed for B.Mus)

28.301 28.302, \*28.303, 28.304, \*28.307, 28.308, 28.314, 28.323, †28.324.

### Music for MA and Honours

Seven papers are required for MA in Music: four papers, and a thesis (which counts as three papers), as prescribed for MMus.

Entry to the course depends on interview by the Board of teaching members of the Music Faculty.

Where necessary, a candidate will be required to satisfy the Head of the Department as to his or her proficiency as a performer, or ability to read an approved language other than English, or both.

**Note:** (1) The availability of these papers will depend on the number of students and their choice of papers.

(2) The specific requirements for choice of papers are given in MA Schedule (22).

## PACIFIC STUDIES

**Note:** These papers are taught by visiting academics in different departments each year. Enquiries for 1988 should be initially addressed to the departments of Political Studies and Anthropology.

### \*79.100 A Topic in the Political Economy of the Pacific

### 79.101 A Topic in Pacific Arts

**Note:** \* This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

## DEPARTMENT OF PHILOSOPHY

Full details concerning the Philosophy Department, the content of its courses and its requirements of students are contained in a brochure entitled *Department of Philosophy: Course Outlines*. A copy can be obtained from the Philosophy Department Secretary, first floor, 3 Alfred Street. The brochure also contains a full list of textbooks for each course. Students are strongly advised to consult the brochure and to seek advice from the Department concerning their proposed Course of Study before enrolment. Students enrolling in Philosophy must obtain a copy of the brochure.

Prerequisites and corequisites for the various papers offered by the Department are set out in detail in the BA Schedule. Students should note that paper 29.101 is a prerequisite for some Philosophy III papers. Students may be able to obtain an exemption from the prerequisite or corequisite requirement of 29.101 for various papers by passing a special examination in logic to be held immediately before enrolment week. Interested students should see the Head of Department at the earliest opportunity, preferably before the vacation, as some study through the vacation will be needed. A pass in the special examination carries no credit towards a degree.

### Philosophy I

**Note:** Two hours per week for each paper including lectures and tutorials.

#### 29.100 Introduction to Metaphysics and Theory of Knowledge

##### 29.101 Introduction to Logic

##### 29.102 Ethics

##### 29.103 Social Philosophy

### Philosophy II

**Note:** (i) Paper 29.208 is a prerequisite for all Philosophy III papers.

(ii) One two-hour period per week for each paper other than 29.201 (two one-hour periods per week).

(iii) The prerequisites for all Philosophy II papers is a pass in two Philosophy I papers.

(iv) Students majoring in a subject other than Philosophy who wish to enrol in Philosophy II papers and who have not passed any Philosophy I papers may enrol if the Head of Department deems they have adequate background in the subject matter of the papers.

##### \*29.200 Philosophy of Mind

##### 29.201 Logic II

##### \*29.202 Philosophy of Language

##### 29.203 Philosophy of Science

##### 29.204 Greek Philosophy

##### 29.205 Political Philosophy

##### \*29.206 History of Scientific Ideas

##### 29.207 Philosophy of Religion

##### 29.208 Metaphysics II

##### \*29.209 History of Philosophy

##### \*29.210 Ethics

##### 29.211 Existentialism and Phenomenology

##### 29.212 Philosophy of the Arts

##### \*29.213 Special Topic

##### \*29.214 Special Topic

## Philosophy III

**Note:** (i) Paper 29.208 is a prerequisite for all Philosophy III papers.

(ii) One two-hour period per week for each paper other than 29.305 (two one-hour periods per week).

(iii) Students who wish to advance to MA in Philosophy must pass four Philosophy III papers, including paper 29.306 (for which 29.101 is a prerequisite), and attain an average grade of C+ or higher. For those students who complete a double major in Philosophy and another subject, the prerequisite for advancing to MA in Philosophy is a pass in three Philosophy III papers, including paper 29.306 (for which 29.101 is a prerequisite), the average grade for the three Philosophy III papers being C+ or higher.

### \*29.300 Theory of Knowledge

### 29.301 Metaphysics III

### \*29.302 History of Philosophy (Ancient and Mediaeval)

### 29.303 History of Philosophy (Modern)

### 29.304 Ethics

### 29.305 Logic III

### 29.306 Contemporary Analytic Philosophy

### 29.307 Special Topic: Contemporary Continental Philosophy

### \*29.308 Special Topic

### Philosophy for MA and Honours

Prerequisites for enrolment for MA in Philosophy are passes in eight Philosophy papers, including 29.101, 29.306, and three other Philosophy III papers (or two other Philosophy III papers for students taking a double major). All Philosophy III papers must be passed at an average grade of C+ or higher.

Seven papers are required for MA in Philosophy: either four papers to be taken in the first year and three in the second year of the course, or, with the approval of the Head of Department, four papers and a thesis counting as three papers (29.601). One paper may be chosen from those offered in Philosophy III which the student has not previously passed. All other papers are to be selected from 29.400 to 29.420, not all of which are offered in any one year. The selection must be approved by the Head of the Department, who will generally require that the chosen papers fall within at least three of the following areas of Philosophy: (i) Theoretical Philosophy (Metaphysics, Epistemology, etc.); (ii) Practical Philosophy (Ethics, Political Philosophy, etc.); (iii) Logic; and (iv) History of Philosophy (either a period or an important figure). Students intending to enrol for an MA in Philosophy must consult the Head of Department towards the end of the previous year to discuss the availability of papers, the proposed MA course, and textbooks, reference works and vacation reading for each course.

### 29.400 Ethics

### 29.401 Kant

### 29.402 Wittgenstein

### 29.403 Metaphysics

### 29.404 Philosophy of Language

### 29.405 Philosophical Psychology

### 29.406 Philosophy of Natural Science

### 29.407 Philosophy of Social Science

- 29.408 Philosophy of History**
- 29.409 Philosophy of Mathematics**
- 29.410 Philosophical Logic**
- 29.411 Mathematical Logic**
- 29.412 Topics in the History of Philosophy I**
- 29.413 Topics in the History of Philosophy II**
- 29.414 Topics in the History of Philosophy III**
- 29.415 Topics in Modern Philosophy**
- 29.416 Modern Continental Philosophy**
- 29.417 Aesthetics**
- 29.418 Special Topic**
- 29.419 Special Topic**
- 29.420 Special Topic**

Candidates for 29.420 will be required to write essays (to be submitted no later than the end of the fourth week of the third term) within a field of Philosophy to be specified by the Head of Department. There will be no examination paper.

## DEPARTMENT OF PHYSICS Physics I

### 31.100 Concepts of Physics

Two lectures plus one laboratory/tutorial per week for the whole year. The course begins by discussing the rise of Newtonian mechanics. It is found, for instance, that people untutored in physics tend to have a view of the physical world similar to that which prevailed amongst "scientists" in mediaeval times. The meaning and significance of the three laws of motion enunciated by Newton are explained. His law of gravitation is then discussed and combined with the laws of motion to show how the motions of planets and moons could be predicted. Terrestrial applications of Newton's ideas are then given, such as applications to fluid flow and the kinetic theory of gases. The 19th century concept of how light waves were propagated is discussed and how this gave a surprising result when attempts were made to determine the absolute motion of the earth; Einstein's resolution of the dilemma and the origins of the theory of relativity; the wedding of space and time and matter and energy. Ideas of quantum theory are introduced to explain atomic properties. The validity of the theory as demonstrated by its successes will then be shown. Since quantum theory seems to deny determinism, conceptual difficulties will be discussed. Although the course can be taken satisfactorily with little background in mathematics, the quantitative nature of physics will often be stressed. To this end lectures will often contain "appendices" sometimes in the form of handouts aimed at more satisfying explanations of the lecture material for those with a mathematical background.

## DEPARTMENT OF POLITICAL STUDIES

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

## Political Studies I

**30.100 American Government: Themes and Practices in a Liberal Democracy**  
(second half of year)

**30.101 Soviet Communism in Theory and Practice**

(first half of year)

**30.102 Law, Property and Individualism: An Introduction to Political Thinking**

(second half of year)

**30.106 Foreign and Defence Policies of the Major Powers**

(first half of year)

**30.107 An introduction to New Zealand Politics and Government**

(first half of year)

**Asian Politics I**

**\*30.103 China Since 1949: The Politics of an Emerging Superpower**

**Political Studies II**

**\*30.200 Major Figures in Political Thought**

**30.201 British Politics and Society**

In 1988: The Demise of the Welfare State

(second half of year)

**30.204 A Topic in the Structure of International Relations**

In 1988: New Zealand and Australian Foreign Policy.  
(second half of year)

**\*30.208 A Topic in European Politics**

**30.209 Modern Political Ideologies**

(first half of year)

**30.211 Public Administration: Central and Local**

(first half of year)

**30.212 Australian Politics**

(first half of year)

**Asian Politics II**

**30.210 Southeast Asian Foreign and Defence Policies**

(first half of year)

**Political Studies III**

**30.301 A Topic in the Structure of International Relations and the Formulation of Foreign Policy**

In 1988: United States Foreign Policy.

(second half of year)

**30.302 A Topic in the Politics of New States**

In 1988: Southern Africa

(first half of year)

**30.303 Introduction to Statistics and Political Research**

(full year)

**30.304 Political Learning and Political Behaviour**

Social Change, Political Environment and Voting Behaviour in Western Democracies

(first half of year)

**30.305 Studies in Contemporary Political Ideas**

(first half of year)



**30.307 The European Community and COMECON**

Nationalism versus Integration in East and West Europe  
(second half of year)

**30.309 Explaining Political Action**

In 1988: Explaining Revolutions  
(second half of year)

**\*30.310 Public Administration: Theory and Process**

Theories of the nature of decision-making in governmental agencies, of bureaucratic accountability and of organisational development. The course will examine the processes of political control, executive leadership, checks and malfunctions and also evaluate the delivery of services.

**30.311 Comparative Public Policy**

(second half of year)

**Asian Politics III****\*30.308 The Foreign and Domestic Politics of an Asian Nation: Japan Incorporated****Political Studies for MA and Honours**

Four papers and a thesis (30.601) which shall count as three papers; or six papers and a research essay (30.603) which shall count as one paper; or seven papers. The papers shall be selected from 30.400 to 30.415. A candidate presenting a thesis must attempt four papers in the first year.

All candidates shall take four papers in their first year and will be expected to complete the remainder, being three papers, or a thesis, or two papers and a research essay, in the following year. Only in special circumstances and with the approval of the Head of Department will permission be given for a candidate taking seven papers or six papers and a research essay either to present three papers in the first year and the remainder in the following year, or to spread the course over three years by taking either one paper or the research essay in the third year.

A candidate presenting a research essay must submit it at the end of the second term in the year of presentation. The research essay must be on a topic approved by the Head of Department and shall not exceed 20,000 words.

The thesis shall not, without express permission of the Head of Department, exceed 60,000 words.

The prerequisites for the MA course are eight papers in the subjects Political Studies and Asian Politics including three Stage III papers.

**\*30.400 Topic on Political Thought and Practice**  
The Role of Ideology in China**\*30.401 A Topic on the Role of Minority Ethnic Groups in Politics****\*30.402 A Topic on Urban Government and Politics****30.403 Special Topic to be Prescribed by the Head of Department**

In 1988: The Political Economy of Information  
(first half of year)

**30.404 Australian Politics****30.407 Thomas Hobbes and His Times****30.408 Special Topic to be prescribed by the Head of Department**

In 1988: Mass Communications and Mass Beliefs  
(second half of year)

**\*30.409 A Topic on the Politics of Asian Nations****\*30.410 Special Topic to be prescribed by the Head of Department****30.411 A Topic on Political Thought and Practice**

In 1988: Communist Revisionism in Eastern Europe

**30.412 A Topic on American Politics**

In 1988: Issues of the contemporary Presidency and the modern Supreme Court.

**30.413 Public Administration**

In 1988: Selected New Zealand Issues.

**30.415 Democratic and Libertarian Socialism**

---

**DEPARTMENT OF PSYCHOLOGY**

**Note:** (i) Students taking advanced courses are advised to consult with the lecturers concerned before purchasing books.

(ii) The Schedule attached to the Course Regulations for the Degree of BA should be consulted for pre and corequisites.

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

**Psychology I**

Two papers are offered for Psychology I which together provide a general introduction to the psychological study of behaviour.

The papers may be taken separately. However, a pass in 32.108 and 32.109 is necessary for entry to Stage II.

**32.108 Introduction to General Psychology**

Topics covered include: the neurobiological basis of behaviour; social behaviour and social influence; developmental psychology; mental abilities and measurement; personality; psychopathology and its treatments.

**32.109 Introduction to Experimental Psychology**

Topics covered include: learning, sensation and perception; memory and cognition; statistics.

(Laboratory attendance of 2 hours per week is required.)

**Psychology II**

A pass in three Stage II papers in Psychology is necessary for entry to Stage III.

**32.210 Learning**

Concerned with the two major aspects of learning, schedule control and stimulus control. Topics include: schedules of reinforcement, law of effect, superstition, Premack theory, choice and matching, generalisation gradients, transfer tests, transposition, blocking and overshadowing.

**32.220 Human Experimental Psychology**

An introduction to experimental design, analysis and theory, as applied to human perception and cognition.

**32.230 Brain and Behaviour**

A basic introduction to the structure and function of the brain, with applications to animal and human behaviour.

**32.240 Social and Developmental Psychology**

An introduction to the study of social behaviour and change across the lifespan in human behaviour. Half the paper will include such topics as interpersonal processes, nonverbal behaviour, small group processes, attitude and attitude change, the physical environment, social interaction and intergroup relations. The other half of the paper will be devoted to behaviour changes in infancy, adolescence and adulthood. Motor, perceptual, cognitive and socioemotional developments will all be considered.

**Psychology III**

A pass in three Stage III papers in Psychology is necessary for entry to MA and Honours in Psychology.

**Note:** Paper 32.301 covers some of the essential skills required for professional work in psychology and should be taken by all candidates who may wish to work with clients.

**32.301 The Psychology of Individual Differences**

A study of genetic sources of individual differences of their measurement, and of the construction and use of psychometric tests.

**32.303 Cognitive Processes: Advanced**

An examination of the psychology of attention, pattern recognition, memory, problem solving, language and thinking.

**32.304 Theory and Systems of Personality**

A study of different conceptions of personality with emphasis on their relevance to personal growth and social contexts.

**32.305 Physiological Psychology**

An advanced study of the physiological bases of behaviour with emphasis on research methodology.

**32.306 The Design of Psychological Experiments**

A course to help students design and analyse experiments in psychology, including topics in the analysis of variance, multiple regression, and categorical analysis. An introduction to the use of computers in data analysis through the BMD and SAS statistical packages.

**†32.307 The Psychological Analysis of Vision and Hearing**

Aspects of visual perception affecting behaviour in a variety of environments will be discussed. A study of the effects of noise on people and some relations between normal and pathological hearing will also be covered.

**32.308 Research Topic**

A research topic undertaken under the supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation instead of a final paper.

**32.309 Learning**

A discussion of how behaviour is controlled and modified in animals by consequent reinforcers and punishers. Emphasis is on laboratory research using animals, with some human data also considered. The theoretical approach taken is mainly quantitative.

**†32.311 Social Psychology**

This course concentrates on social functioning in both intergroup and intragroup settings.

**\*32.312 Organisational Psychology**

An examination of personnel psychology, organisational psychology and human engineering.

**32.313 Special Topic in Psychology****32.314 Special Topic in Psychology****Psychology for MA and Honours**

(Seven papers or four papers and a thesis 32.601 which is equivalent to three papers.)

Students in consultation with the Head of the Department will select their papers from among the following:

**\*32.401 History of Psychology**

An historical account of psychology with special reference to the aspirations and activities of influential psychologists.

**†32.402 Quantitative Psychology**

The quantitative analysis of psychological phenomena.

**32.403 Applied Analysis of Human Behaviour**

An examination of general issues in behaviour analysis, of approaches to psychological assessment, and of the application of behavioural techniques to psychological phenomena.

**32.404 Sensation and Perception**

An advanced treatment of modern psychophysics and of the psychology of vision and hearing.

**32.406 Physiological Psychology**

A study of current issues in the physiological bases of behaviour.

**32.408 Clinical Neuropsychology**

An examination of the relation between the brain and mental functioning with an emphasis on clinical cases of brain damage.

**32.409 Abnormal Psychology**

A consideration of the psychological understanding of mental disorders, including their aetiology, classification, assessment and treatment.

**†32.410 Neuropsychology**

An advanced treatment of functional models of the human brain and neurolinguistics.

**32.411 Advanced Operant Behaviour**

An advanced study of selected topics in learning at the level of current research.

**32.412 Social Psychology**

An examination of selected research topics in social psychology with a special emphasis on the underlying theories.

**32.413 Contemporary Issues in Developmental Psychology**

An examination of current research on infant development and parenting.

**32.415 Critical Issues in Psychology**

An examination of methodological, metatheoretical and social issues affecting the study and practice of psychology.

**32.416 Cognitive Processes**

A study of selected aspects of human cognition, which includes perception, attention, memory, problem solving and language.

**32.417 Special Topic in Psychology**

Physiological psychology laboratory techniques.

**32.418 Special Topic in Psychology****32.419 The Design of Psychological Experiments**

A course to help students design and analyse experiments in psychology, including topics in the analysis of variance, multiple regression, and categorical analysis. An introduction to the use of computers in data analysis through the BMD and SAS statistical packages.

**Note:** Students who have already passed 32.306 are not eligible to take this paper.

**32.420 Research Topic in Psychology**

A research topic undertaken under the supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation instead of a final paper.

**32.421 Theories and Systems of Psychotherapy**

A study of the theoretical bases of various systems of psychotherapy with particular emphasis on problems associated with matching systems to individuals.

**DEPARTMENT OF ROMANCE LANGUAGES**

**Note:** \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year  
†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

**FRENCH****French Stage I****Language papers****34.100 or 34.110 Language Acquisition**

(Entry to 34.110 is based initially on the mark obtained for French in the Bursary examination [or a decision by the Head of Section] and is subsequently confirmed by a streaming test.) Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, conversation, composition, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

**Note:** A minimum of four years' Secondary School French is required for this paper.

**34.102 Language Comprehension**

Aural and reading comprehension using texts on contemporary issues.

**34.104 Language Comprehension in specific areas A: Science**

Aural and reading comprehension using general science texts.

**\*34.106 Language Comprehension in specific areas B: \*Social Science, \*Art History**

Aural and reading comprehension using texts in areas or disciplines to be specified each year. (A minimum of five candidates per area is required).

**34.108 Language Comprehension in Music**

Comprehension of written and sung French for music students. For performance students, the listening comprehension examination will be replaced by performance of songs and arias in French.

**Text papers****34.101 Twentieth Century Literary Texts****\*34.109 Contemporary French Civilisation French Stage II****34.200 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, conversation, composition, exposition of an unprepared topic, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

**34.201 Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literary Texts**

1988: Shorter Fiction and Essays

**\*34.202 Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literary Texts****\*34.203 Nineteenth Century Literary Texts**

1988: Romanticism

**34.205 Medieval Texts****\*34.209 Nineteenth Century French Civilisation****34.210 Le français des métiers**

Written and oral application of the language to tourism, secretariat, the professions. (Enrolment by permission of the Head of Department.)

**34.214 Applied Language Studies**

A study of the structure of French with reference to different linguistic models and their relevance for teaching.

**34.218 Historicity and variation in French**

Introduction to French linguistics, the history of French, and regional variation in French.

**French Stage III****34.300 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written expression in French, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, conversation, composition, exposition of an unprepared topic, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

**34.302 Seventeenth and Eighteenth Century Texts**

1988: Prose

**34.306 Medieval French Language****\*34.307 A Literary Topic**

**34.308 A Topic in Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literature**

1988: The Novel and Society

**†34.309 A Topic in Nineteenth and/or Twentieth Century Literature**

1988: Coming of Age in the Novel

**\*34.310 Seventeenth and Eighteenth Century Literary Texts****34.318 L'Espace francophone: French in France and overseas****\*34.320 Professional translation of written texts****Foreign Language Reading Examination (French)****34.500 FLRE in French (without lectures)****34.501 FLRE in French (with lectures)****Note:** Students wishing to gain this qualification are advised as follows:

(a) if you passed in French at Bursaries or Scholarship levels, you should with some reading in French in your own subject be able to pass in 34.500; if you wish to refresh or improve your knowledge, you should enrol in 34.501 and attend lectures in 34.104 or 34.106 according to your discipline;

(b) if you passed in French at a lower level than Bursaries, but have done at least two years of Secondary School French, you should enrol for 34.501, 34.104 or 34.106;

(c) if you have done no French at all, you should enrol in a beginner's course at the Centre for Continuing Education.

A pass in 34.500 or 34.501 gives a prerequisite qualification but does not count towards a degree; a pass in 34.100, 34.102, 34.104 or 34.106 also counts toward several undergraduate degrees.

**French for MA and Honours**

Seven papers or four papers and a thesis (34.601)

The requirements are given in section (9) of the MA Schedule. The thesis must be taken in the second year. For the MA in Languages and Literature, the requirements are in section (17) of the MA schedule, there is no thesis option. Paper 34.400 is compulsory for both subjects, and the marks for it bear a relative weighting of three to two for each other paper in French. Selection of papers 34.421 and 34.431 is subject to the permission of the Head of Department. Prerequisites may be waived by the Head of Department. All intending MA students must consult staff in the year preceding enrolment.

**34.400 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written use of French, tested by: comprehension, conversation, composition, exposition of an unprepared topic, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis. (Prerequisite: 34.300).

**Pre-Modern Language and Literature****\*34.401 A Special Topic in Old French Language and/or Literature****\*34.412 A Special Topic in Old French Language and/or Literature****34.402 A Special Topic in Middle French Language and/or Literature**

1988: Poetry, Theatre, Rabelais

**34.413 A Special Topic in Middle French Language and/or Literature**

1988: Middle French language

**Modern Literature (17th to 20th centuries)****†34.423 A Special Topic**

1988: Nouvelles structures dans le roman du 20e siècle

**34.424 A Special Topic**

1988: les chemins de la pensée

**†34.425 A Special Topic**

1988: The Naturalist Novel

**34.426 A Special Topic**

1988: Novels of Social Comment and Human Relations

**†34.427 An Approved Topic****French Linguistics****\*34.416 A Special Topic****34.417 Applied Linguistics****34.419 Creole French****†34.420 An Approved Topic****Other Aspects of French Civilisation****\*34.410 A Special Topic**

1988: La Femme au 19e siècle

**34.411 A Special Topic**

1988: Modern French Canadian Fiction

**\*34.428 A Special Topic****†34.429 An Approved Topic****Research Options****34.421 Research techniques in French Language, Literature or Civilisation****34.431 Research techniques in French Language, Literature or Civilisation**

In both 34.421 and 34.431, one aspect will be studied in which an original investigation must be undertaken. Prerequisites may be required by the Head of Department.

**34.601 Thesis**

(Equivalent to 3 papers)

---

**ITALIAN****Italian I**

A guide to Italian studies at Auckland is available from the Romance Languages Department, Arts I Building. Students are warmly invited to visit the Italian lecturers before enrolment to discuss courses. It is best to phone to make an appointment.

(Methods of assessment for all Italian papers - coursework, examinations etc - are determined at the beginning of the year in consultation with the students for each course.)

**\*35.104 Italian Language in Opera and Song**

Primarily intended for singers. Comprehension and pronunciation. Study of Italian texts of operatic libretti, madrigals, songs. May be taken by both BA students and students from the Faculty of Music.

**35.106 and 35.107 Italian Language Studies (i) and (ii)**

Open to beginners and more advanced students, these papers must be taken together. Students learn to speak, read and write Italian and in addition, aspects of the history of Italian culture, contemporary life, society, politics and thought will be studied.

**\*35.109 Modern Italian Film**

A study of the work of some major Italian film makers of the post-war period in its political, social and cultural context. All films are subtitled or dubbed into English.

Two lectures and one tutorial per week.

**35.110 Images of Women in 20th Century Italian Literature**

A study of the representation of women's experience in works by Italian women and men, using texts translated into English. One lecture and one tutorial per week. (Separate tutorial for students taking Italian language papers, who will read short texts later in the year in Italian.)

**Italian II****35.200 Language Acquisition**

Advanced reading, grammar, writing, conversation in Italian. Three hours per week. Weekly assignments. May be combined with any one or more of the following papers for Italian II.

**35.204 Italian Fiction and Cinema**

(first half of year)

One two-hour and one one-hour discussion per week.

**35.209 Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture (A)**

General topics are covered in English but texts are read in Italian. This paper is for students advancing in Italian.

**35.210 Major Themes in Italian Renaissance Culture (B)**

This paper is taught entirely in English for students not advancing in Italian and has no Italian language prerequisite or corequisite.

**35.230 Twentieth Century Poetry**

Introduction to Poetics and Italian Poetry in the Twentieth Century

(second half of year)

**35.231 A Special Topic in Italian Literature Italian III****35.300 Language Acquisition**

Advanced reading, grammar, writing, conversation in Italian using material reflecting current events in Italy. Three hours per week. Weekly assignments. May be combined with any one or more of the following papers for Italian III:

**35.302 Fourteenth Century Literary Texts: Dante**

(first half of year)

**\*35.303 Fourteenth Century Literary Texts: Boccaccio and Petrarca****35.321 Linguistics: Principles and Methods Applied to the Study of Contemporary Italian****35.322 L'italiano nel mondo del lavoro: Working with Italian**

A practical course in translation from Italian to English.

**35.331 A Special Topic in Italian Literature or Film**

1988: Cinematic Discourse

**35.332 A Special Topic in Italian Literature****35.333 A Special Topic in Italian Literature Italian for MA and Honours**

The specific requirements for Italian are given in MA Schedule (15) and Languages and Literature including Italian in MA Schedule (17). In the former case 35.400 and 35.403 are compulsory; in the latter case 35.400 is compulsory.

In any given year only a small number of the following papers will be available.

**35.400 Language Acquisition: Oral and Written Use of Italian**

Tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, conversation, comprehension, reading.

**35.402 An Approved Topic in Linguistics****35.403 Linguistics: Principles and Methods Applied to the Study of Contemporary Italian****35.404 A Special Linguistics Topic****35.405 Thirteenth Century Literature****35.406 The Works of Dante****35.407 The Works of Boccaccio and the Genesis of Italian Prose****35.408 The Italian Theatre of the Renaissance; Teatro Erudito and Commedia dell'Arte****35.411 Verismo, with Special Reference to the Works of Verga****35.412 Pirandello and 20th Century Drama; Futurism, Pirandello, Dario Fo****35.413 A Special Topic in 20th Century Italian Poetry****35.414 A Special Topic in the 20th Century Italian Novel****35.415 Politics and the Novel****35.420 Methodologies of Literary Criticism****35.421 An Approved Topic in Linguistics****35.422 Cinematic Discourse****35.423 An Approved Literary or Cultural Topic**

**5.424 An Approved Literary or Cultural Topic**  
Intending MA students should consult with the Italian staff during their final BA year.

**35.601 Thesis**

(Equivalent to 3 papers)

**SPANISH****Spanish Stage I****†45.101 Selected Texts in Twentieth Century Literature**

One lecture a week; compulsory tutorials; two essays.

**45.102 Language: Oral, Aural and Reading Comprehension, Translation from Spanish to English**

One lecture per week; one oral class; one language laboratory session.

**45.103 Contemporary Hispanic Civilisation**

One lecture a week; compulsory tutorials; two essays one tutorial paper.

**45.104, 45.105 Language Acquisition**

Four lectures; one oral class; one language laboratory session; total 6 hours per week

Language acquisition: oral and written expression in Spanish, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

**45.107, 45.108 Language Acquisition (Advanced)**

Four lectures, one oral class, one language laboratory session, total six hours per week.

A special advanced course for students who already have a good command of Spanish. Acceptance into the course is on the basis of a preliminary test and permission of the Head of the Section.

**Spanish Stage II****45.200 Language Acquisition**

Two lectures; one oral class, one language laboratory session

Language acquisition: oral and written expression in Spanish, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

**\*45.201 Golden Age Literary Texts**

One lecture weekly; compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

**45.202 Nineteenth and Twentieth Century Literary Texts**

One lecture per week, compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

**\*45.203 Literary Analysis, with Prescribed Texts**

One lecture per week, compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

**45.204 Twentieth Century Latin American Texts**

One lecture per week, compulsory tutorials, two essays, one tutorial paper.

**45.206 Spanish Study Abroad Programme**

One lecture per week second and third terms in Auckland; one essay by end of third term. Four hours intensive language course per day and two hours lectures per week for four weeks in Spain; scheduled cultural activities in Spain; written and oral examination in Spain.

**\*45.207 Modern Hispanic Literature**

One lecture and one tutorial per week. Two essays and one tutorial paper.

**45.208 Language Acquisition (Advanced)**

Two lectures; one oral class and one language laboratory session. The follow-up course to Spanish 45.107, 45.108 developing and consolidating language skills acquired in the Stage I course.

**45.209 'Practising Critics' in the Hispanic World**

One lecture and one tutorial per week. Two essays and one tutorial paper.

This paper provides a study of the intellectual currents in contemporary Hispanic writing. The texts will consist of critical works by well-known creative Hispanic writers.

**Spanish Stage III****45.300 Language Acquisition**

One lecture; one oral class; one language laboratory session

Language acquisition: oral and written expression in Spanish, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, translation, dictation, reading aloud; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

**\*45.301 Medieval Literature**

One lecture per week; compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

**45.302 Golden Age Literature**

One lecture per week; compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

**\*45.303 Nineteenth Century Literary Texts**

One lecture per week; compulsory tutorials; two essays; one tutorial paper.

**45.304 Twentieth Century Literary Texts**

One lecture per week; compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

**45.305 Twentieth Century Latin American Literature**

One lecture per week; compulsory tutorials; two essays, one tutorial paper.

**45.306 Spanish Study Abroad Programme**

One lecture per week second and third terms in Auckland; one essay by end of third term. Four hours intensive language course per day and two hours lectures per week for four weeks in Spain; scheduled cultural activities in Spain; written and oral examination in Spain.

**45.307 Modern Hispanic Literature**

One lecture and one tutorial per week. Two essays and one tutorial paper.

**45.308 Language Acquisition (Advanced)**

Two lectures; one oral class and one practical audio-visual session.

This is the third-year advanced stream following on from 45.208.

**45.309 Introduction to Professional Translation**

Two lectures per week.

**Spanish for MA and Honours**

Seven papers or six and a research essay (45.603), or four papers and a thesis (45.601).

The specific requirements for Spanish are given in MA Schedule (28); and for Languages and Literature including Spanish in MA Schedule (17). In both cases, paper 45.400 is compulsory and the marks for it

bear a relative weighting of three to two for each other paper.

#### **45.400 Language Acquisition**

Oral and written expression in Spanish, aural and written comprehension; tested in some or all of the following ways: comprehension, explanation, conversation, composition, exposition of an unprepared topic, translation, dictation, reading; with linguistic and stylistic analysis.

#### **45.401 A Topic in Medieval Literature**

#### **45.402 Golden Age Poetry**

#### **45.403 The Picaresque Novel**

#### **45.404 Major Dramatists of the 17th Century**

#### **45.405 Minor Dramatists of the 17th Century**

#### **45.406 Cervantes**

#### **45.407 The Nineteenth Century Novel**

#### **45.408 The '98 Generation**

#### **45.409 The Contemporary Spanish Novel**

#### **45.410 Twentieth Century Spanish Poetry**

#### **45.411 Twentieth Century Spanish Theatre**

#### **45.412 Twentieth Century Latin American Novel**

#### **45.413 Twentieth Century Latin American Poetry**

#### **45.414 Twentieth Century Latin American Theatre**

#### **45.415 Portuguese Language and a Topic in Twentieth Century Portuguese Literature**

#### **45.416 A Topic in Twentieth Century Brazilian Literature**

#### **45.417 Eighteenth Century Literature**

#### **45.418 Applied Linguistics as related to Spanish**

#### **45.419 Research Techniques in Language and/or Literature**

#### **45.422 The History of Ideas**

#### **45.423 Linguistic Analysis of Spanish**

#### **45.420 Special Topic in Spanish Literature**

#### **45.421 Special Topic in Latin American Literature**

#### **45.424 Hispanic Women Writers**

#### **45.425 Introduction to Professional Translation**

#### **45.603 Research Essay**

#### **45.601 Thesis**

(Equivalent to 3 papers)

Intending MA students should consult with the senior staff of the Department during their final BA year.

### **DEPARTMENT OF RUSSIAN**

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

#### **Russian I**

Students may enrol for Stage I papers without any prior knowledge of the subject areas. The two Russian language papers, 43.100 and 43.101, are linked corequisites and are also prerequisites for all students advancing to Stage II except, with the approval of the Head of Department, those with Bursary-level

knowledge of the language; 43.111, 43.112 and 43.113 can be taken independently of each other and of any other papers in the Department. Students intending to advance in Russian are strongly advised to take Paper 43.112 during either their first or second year of study.

**Note:** The readings for papers 43.112 and 43.113 are entirely in English.

#### **43.100 and 43.101 Russian Language Acquisition 1 and 2**

Written and oral use of Russian, tested in some or all of the following ways: translation into Russian, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading. Literary and non-literary texts for translation from Russian.

The two papers must be taken together.

Five hours and one language laboratory session per week; regular assignments.

#### **\*43.111 Introduction to Serbo-Croatian**

Elementary spoken Serbo-Croatian; aural, oral and reading comprehension; translation from Serbo-Croatian into English; lectures on Yugoslavia and its languages and literatures.

Three hours per week, including one Language Laboratory session.

#### **43.112 Russian Civilisation**

A survey of the political, social, economic, religious, intellectual and artistic forces which historically have helped to shape modern Russia.

Two consecutive hours per week; two assignments.

#### **43.113 The Classics of Russian Literature**

Studies in major examples of Russian prose fiction.

Two consecutive hours per week; two essays.

#### **Russian II**

Papers 43.210, 43.211 and 43.212 are linked co-requisites. Paper 43.211 consists of two half-papers. Students who have not already taken paper 43.112 are strongly advised to do so alongside their Russian II papers.

#### **43.210 Language Acquisition: Russian**

Written and oral use of Russian tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading.

Three hours and one language laboratory session per week. Optional library use of the Language Laboratory.

#### **43.211 (i) Introduction to Modern Russian**

Linguistic analysis of modern non-literary texts, with special reference to morphology and word-formation. One class per week in the second and third terms.

#### **(ii) The Russian Lyric in the Nineteenth Century**

Studies in 19th Century lyric poetry. Introduced by a series of lectures on literary theory.

One class per week: one assignment.

#### **43.212 The Russian Short Story in the Nineteenth Century**

Selected short prose works by major Russian writers

from Karamzin to Chekhov.

Two classes per week in the first term, one class per week in the second and third terms; two assignments.

### **Russian III**

Papers 43.310 and any two from 43.311, 43.312 and 43.313 are linked corequisites.

#### **43.310 Language Acquisition: Russian**

Written and oral use of Russian tested in some or all of the following ways: translation, composition, comprehension, conversation, dictation, reading.

Three hours per week. Optional library use of the Language Laboratory.

#### **43.311 Introduction to Russian and Slavonic Linguistics**

An introduction to the scientific study of language as related to Russian and the group of Slavonic languages; historical explanation of so-called "anomalies" in Modern Russian.

One class per week; several short assignments.

#### **43.312 The Russian Novel in the Nineteenth Century**

Pushkin's *Evgenii Onegin* and one major novel each by Dostoevskii and L. Tolstoy.

One class per week; two assignments.

#### **\*43.313 Introduction to Russian Literature of the Twentieth Century**

Representative short literary texts by major Russian writers active since 1905.

One class per week; two assignments.

With the approval of the Head of Department certain papers from Russian MA and Honours may be offered as additional Stage III level papers.

Note: Paper 43.311 is substantially similar to 43.411; students will therefore be admitted either to paper 43.311 or to paper 43.411.

### **Russian for MA and Honours**

No student may offer any paper for the MA Degree in which he has already been credited with a pass at Stage III.

The specific requirements for Russian are given in MA schedule (26); and for Language and Literature including Russian in MA schedule (17). In both cases, paper 43.410 is compulsory. The prerequisite for paper 43.417 is 43.111, except in the case of students with sufficient prior knowledge. Paper 43.418 is a requirement for students intending to present a thesis in Russian literature. (Paper 43.411 is not available to those who have taken paper 43.311.)

#### **43.410 Language Acquisition: Russian**

#### **43.411 Introduction to Russian and Slavonic Linguistics**

#### **43.412 The History of Russian From its Origins to 1800**

#### **\*43.413 The Russian Language in the 19th and 20th Centuries**

#### **\*43.414 Lexicology and Practical Stylistics of Contemporary Standard Russian**

#### **\*43.415 A Special Topic in Russian or Slavonic Linguistics**

#### **\*43.416 A Special Topic in the Russian Language or Russian Linguistics**

#### **\*43.417 A Special Topic in Serbo-Croatian Linguistics and/or Literature**

#### **\*43.418 Introduction to Research in Russian Literature**

#### **43.419 Studies in Early Russian Literature**

#### **\*43.420 Studies in Eighteenth-Century Russian Literature**

#### **\*43.421 A Special Topic in Russian Poetry**

#### **\*43.422 A Special Topic in Russian Prose**

#### **\*43.423 A Special Study of a Russian Writer**

#### **\*43.424 A Special Topic in Russian Literature or Culture**

#### **\*43.425 A Further Special Topic**

Intending MA Students should consult the Head of Department during their final BA year about the availability of MA papers and the possibility of their presenting a thesis (43.601) in lieu of two papers.

#### **43.601 Thesis**

---

## **DEPARTMENT OF SOCIOLOGY**

Note: \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available

### **Sociology I**

#### **82.100 Issues and Themes in Sociology**

#### **82.101 New Zealand Society: Structure and Change**

#### **\*82.102 A History of Sociological Ideas**

#### **82.103 Debates in Social Policy**

### **Sociology II**

#### **82.200 Sociological Theory**

#### **82.201 Sociological Methods**

Students are expected to attend a weekly tutorial in addition to lectures in 82.201.

#### **82.202 A Topic in Comparative Sociology**

1988: New Zealand Community Studies

#### **†82.203 Sociology of a Selected Region**

#### **82.204 Sociology of Social Problems**

#### **82.205 Social Stratification**

#### **\*82.206 Regional Planning and Community Development**

#### **82.207 Sociology of the Family**

#### **82.208 Special Topic**

1988: Power, Control and the Modern Organisation

#### **82.209 Social Change and Modernisation; an Introduction to the Sociology of Development**

#### **82.210 Special Topic**

1988: Varieties of Religious Experience

#### **82.211 Special Topic**

1988: Popular Culture

#### **82.212 Special Topic**

1988: Class and Inequality in Australia and New Zealand

### **Sociology III**

#### **82.300 Industrial Sociology**

#### **82.301 Political Sociology**



**82.302 Sociology of the Family****\*82.303 Sociology of Religion****82.304 Ethnicity and Ethnic Groups****82.305 Class and Equality in Australia and New Zealand****\*82.306 Community Studies****82.307 Advanced Study in Social Change and Modernization**

The world System: New Zealand and the Pacific.

**82.308 Special Topic**

1988: Law and Society

**\*82.309 Special Topic****†82.310 Special Topic****†82.311 Special Topic****82.312 Sociological Analysis****†82.313 Sociology of a Selected Region****\*82.314 Deviance****†82.315 Sociology of the Arts****82.316 Research paper**

Students intending to enrol for 82.316 *must* discuss this intention with the Head of Department before Enrolment Week.

Students including three Stage III Sociology papers in their degree must attempt 82.312 as one of them.

**†82.317 Sociology of the Welfare State****82.318 Sociology of the Media****Sociology for MA and Honours**

Four papers and a thesis (82.601) which shall count as 3 papers, or 6 papers and a research paper (82.603). The subject of the thesis or research paper must be approved by the Department. An outline is to be submitted to the Head of Department by 31 March of the year for which enrolment for the research paper is accepted. The main text of the research paper should not exceed 10,000 words.

Not fewer than seven papers will be offered from the following list. The department strongly recommends that students include 82.401.

**82.400 Advanced Problems in Sociological Theory**

1988: Social Change and Social Futures: From Industrial to Post-industrial Societies

**82.401 Advanced Problems in Sociological Method****82.402 Sociology of a Selected Region**

1988: South Asia

**†82.403 Advanced Topics in Economic Sociology****82.404 Advanced Topics in Political Sociology**

1988: The State in Capitalist Society

**82.405 Deviance****82.406 Urban Sociology and Ecology****\*82.407 Rural Sociology****82.408 Complex Organisations****†82.409 Industrial Sociology****†82.410 Applied Sociology****\*82.411 Mass Communications****†82.412 Special Topic****†82.413 Special Topic to be prescribed by the Head of Department****82.414 Special Topic**

1988: Marxism and Sociology

**†82.415 Special Topic**

1988: A Topic in the Sociology of Development: Nationalism and Development

**\*82.416 New Zealand Family****82.417 Special Topic**

1988: Feminist Social Theory

**Note:** All graduate students are expected to attend and contribute to the Staff Graduate Seminars. A programme will be published.

# DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

## DIPLOMA IN BROADCAST COMMUNICATION

### DipBrC

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Broadcast Communication shall, before enrolment for this Diploma, have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Master of Arts or, (in exceptional circumstances) such other University Degree as the Senate may approve in the particular case.
2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a one year course of full-time study.
3. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of two parts:

#### Part I

Papers 30.403 and 30.408 as prescribed for MA

OR

A candidate who has already been credited with either 30.403 or 30.408 shall substitute paper 18.420 as prescribed for MA and a Research Essay (30.613).

#### Part II

Such written and practical work as may be prescribed in Radio and Television Productions and related fields, the whole counting as three papers (30.700).

4. A candidate shall be required to pass each paper of Part I and pass Part II as a whole.
5. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1982.

## PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipBrC

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide graduate students with a theoretical and practical preparation in broadcasting and communications.

The course is a full-time course extending over one year. Entry to the course will be restricted to six candidates in any one year. Candidates wishing to enrol in the course for the Diploma are required to give notice of their intention to the Registrar of the University by letter which shall include a curriculum vitae showing academic results and any other qualifications, by 30 November of the previous year. Candidates may be called for interview.

#### Part I (see Regulation 3 of the Diploma)

##### 30.403 The Politics of Information

Global, regional and domestic issues in news flows and communications technology.

##### 30.408 Mass Communications and Mass Beliefs

##### 18.420 Film Studies

##### 30.613 Research Essay

The research essay must be on a subject connected with the candidate's previously passed papers, 30.403 and 30.408 or, with the permission of the Head of Department of Political Studies, a topic on the structure and organisation of broadcasting. The research essay shall be between 10,000 and 20,000 words and two copies must be submitted to the Registrar not later than the last day of January in the calendar year following the examinations.

#### Part II

##### 30.700 (Three papers)

The course will include the following:

1. Introduction to the technical principles of radio and television broadcasting.
2. Practical experience in preparing and editing audio programmes, each student to present one such programme as a course submission.
3. Introduction to single-camera production techniques.
4. Introduction to multi-camera studio production.
5. Instruction and studio experience in the techniques of interviewing.
6. Post-production techniques, including scriptwriting, editing, graphics and animation.

7. Experience in preparing and editing video programmes, each student to present one such programme as a course submission.
8. An examination of the role of the producer in programme preparation.
9. An understanding of the principles of broadcast programming.
10. Development of critical awareness, including the preparation of individual diaries and reviews to be included as part of each student's course submission.

## DIPLOMA IN DRAMA

### DipDrama

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Drama shall before his or her enrolment for this Diploma either (i) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Arts having passed in not fewer than three papers in Stage II in English, or a language other than English, or such other subject or subjects as the Senate may approve; or (ii) have been admitted or qualified for admission to some other university degree approved for this purpose by the Senate; or hold or have qualified for an award or qualification in dramatic work approved for this purpose by the Senate; and in any case have had in the opinion of the Senate sufficient experience in the theatre or in the writing or teaching of drama.
2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a course of study for a period of one year, but in exceptional circumstances this period may be extended by the Senate.
3. The Course shall consist of such written and practical work as may be prescribed in theatrical, dramatic, and related fields.
4. A candidate shall throughout his enrolment for this Diploma carry out such practical work and shall participate in such approved theatrical work or plays as the Lecturer in charge of the Course shall require.
5. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1977.

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipDrama

The Diploma in Drama is directed by Mervyn Thompson, Senior Lecturer in Drama aided by other professional tutors and University lecturers.

The purpose of the Diploma in Drama is to offer a basic training in theatre and playwriting to those wishing to work in schools, the theatre or in the community. It should not be seen as a training course for professional actors.

Candidates wishing to enrol in 1988 in the Course for the Diploma in Drama (75.100) are required to give notice of their intention to the Registrar of the University not later than 15 January 1988.

Candidates should have a Bachelor of Arts Degree from Auckland or some other University or should hold an award or qualification in dramatic work and have had experience in the theatre or in the teaching of drama. Generally, candidates under 20 years of age are not considered for the course.

Candidates may be called for an interview. All candidates will be required to produce evidence of academic qualifications and a variety of theatrical skills.

The Course is a full-time course extending over one year. Permission to take other courses or do other theatre work will be granted only in rare instances.

The Course will include a selection of the following:

- (i) Fundamentals of acting including speech, movement and improvisation.
- (ii) Basic techniques of the theatre, e.g. lighting, design, wardrobe, direction.
- (iii) Television acting and the use of television equipment.
- (iv) Practical study from selected texts.
- (v) Selected aspects from the history of the theatre and drama.
- (vi) Selected aspects from the theory of drama.
- (vii) Theatre criticism.

(viii) Practical work in production.

(ix) Brief exercises in the making of theatre for young people.

(x) Exercises in group theatre and playmaking.

In 1988 the emphasis will be on playwriting and related skills.

A list of books required for study will be available from the Department. All students should obtain this.

## DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION

### DipEd

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Education shall before enrolment for this Diploma:

(a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a degree at a University in New Zealand except as provided in Regulation 2 below or have been awarded or qualified for the award of a University diploma approved by the Senate; and

(b) have passed papers 14.100 or 14.102 and 14.101 as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, provided that those papers or either of them may with the permission of the Head of Department be taken concurrently with papers in Part I of the course.

**Note:** Approved diplomas at present are the Diplomas in Fine Arts and Music and Diplomas in Home Science and Physical Education of the University of Otago. In special circumstances the Senate may permit a candidate who is the holder of a diploma other than those listed above to undertake the course.

2. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate may enrol for the Diploma in Education after having completed at least nineteen papers for the Bachelor of Arts Degree, or the equivalent in another degree, provided that

(a) The proposed course for this Diploma will extend over not fewer than two academic years.

(b) The remaining papers of the Bachelor's Degree are taken in the first year of the Diploma course.

(c) Should the candidate not pass the remaining paper or papers the Diploma course shall be suspended until they have been passed.

3. (a) The course of study for the Diploma in Education shall consist of two parts:

#### Part I

Four papers in Education at Stage II or III as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts and not having already been credited to a degree or diploma, of which not more than two are at Stage II.

#### Part II

A report of an original investigation (14.500) having the value of two papers, of a topic approved by the Head of the Department of Education.

(b) A candidate shall be required to pass each paper in Part I and the original investigation in Part II.

4. As to the investigation and report for Part II –

(a) the topic shall be submitted to the Head of Department in reasonable time before 31 March of the year in which the report is to be submitted, so that it may be approved by that date;

(b) the report shall be submitted within three years of the year in which the candidate completes Part I, or within such longer period as the Senate may in special circumstances permit;

(c) the report shall be delivered to the Registrar by 1 November, or later date approved by the Head of Department, of the year in which it is submitted.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with the original investigation. (See Examination Regulation 14.)

5. Every candidate shall present to the Head of Department a certificate from an approved authority confirming that the candidate has been engaged for at least two years in full-time work in the practice of teaching, or in education work of a related character, such as vocational guidance, child guidance, child welfare, social work or community education, and has shown efficiency therein.

6. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1977.

## DIPLOMA IN EDUCATIONAL PSYCHOLOGY

### DipEdPsych

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted*

for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Educational Psychology shall before enrolment for this Diploma:

(a) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree; and

(b) have passed the following four papers in Education as prescribed for the Master of Arts Degree:

14.407 Developmental Psychology

14.410 Principles and Practice of Counselling

14.412 Behaviour Analysis in Education

14.413 Education of Exceptional Children

or equivalent papers as approved by the Senate; and

(c) have passed 5 papers in Education and 5 papers in Psychology, including, in each subject, at least 3 papers above Stage I as prescribed for the Bachelor of Arts or Science Degree; and

(d) the Senate must be satisfied that the candidate is likely to benefit from the training provided by the course for this Diploma.

**Note:** Normally an interview supported by referee's statements, and evidence of training and experience in relevant work such as teaching, youth work, or counselling will be required under 1(d).

2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a course of not less than two years' full-time study nor more than four years' study (whether full or part-time); provided that the latter period may with the permission of the Senate be extended in exceptional circumstances.

3. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of two Parts:

### **Part I**

Satisfactory participation in and completion of a full-time professional training course including passing each stage of the on-course assessment requirements (16.100).

**Note:** The professional training courses are designed to follow on from the theory introduced in each of the four Masters papers listed in 1 (b). Course prescriptions may be obtained from the Department.

### **Part II**

(a) Satisfactory supervised participation in the work of approved psychological, special educational, and social work services, and in seminars on case work and professional practice (16.200).

(b) A comprehensive oral examination covering the work of the whole course (16.201).

4. (a) A candidate shall be required to pass each paper or section of each part of the Diploma.

(b) A candidate who has not passed a section of Part I may, with the permission of the Head of Department, take that section concurrently with work in Part II, in the second year.

(c) A candidate shall not be permitted to resubmit case work and professional practice material (16.200) nor to resit the oral examination (16.201), more than once.

5. A candidate shall be required to have completed a Master's degree or an equivalent research study before the Diploma may be awarded.

6. (a) The Diploma may be awarded with Honours.

(b) A candidate for Honours shall be required, after completing the requirements of Part I and II, to submit a Dissertation (16.604) reporting an advanced study of one of the following types, as approved by the Head of Department:

(i) a survey of the literature bearing on a topic relevant to clinical or professional practice

or (ii) an original or replication research study

or (iii) an evaluation of a clinical procedure

(c) The Dissertation shall be:

(i) submitted within three years of the year in which the candidate completes Part II; and

(ii) delivered to the Registrar by 1 November, or later date approved by the Head of Department, of the year in which it is submitted.

(d) Honours shall be awarded upon the results of the Dissertation but if the Dissertation is not of sufficient standard the Diploma shall be awarded to the candidate without Honours.

7. Under exceptional circumstances the Senate may grant exemption from any of the requirements under Regulations 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5.

## **DIPLOMA IN ENGLISH LANGUAGE TEACHING**

### **DipELT**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in English Language Teaching shall before his or her enrolment for this diploma
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a degree at a university in New Zealand or produced evidence to the satisfaction of the Senate of adequate training and/or experience to undertake the proposed course of study for the Diploma, and
  - (b) have had, normally, at least two years' teaching experience.
2. A candidate for the Diploma shall follow a one year course of full-time study or a two year course of part-time study. Candidates who follow a part-time course of study for the Diploma shall take Part 1 in their first year and Part 2 in their second year, as set out below. Full-time students shall take both parts concurrently in the one year.
3. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of two parts:

**Part 1****(a) 18.501 English Language**

A candidate who has already been credited with 18.201 shall substitute either 83.202/03.212 Sociolinguistics or 18.304/83.307 Phonology and New Zealand Speech.

(b) Either 04.101/03.102 Introduction to Maori Society or 03.200 Ethnography of Island Polynesia.

A candidate, who has already been credited with either 04.101/03.102 or 03.200, may substitute for those papers: 04.302/03.306 Topics in Contemporary Maori Society or 03.313 Contemporary Polynesia or 82.304 Ethnicity and Ethnic Groups.

(c) An approved language paper in a language other than English, Strongly recommended: 04.100 Introduction to the Structure of Maori Language, provided that

(i) A candidate who has previously studied a language other than English at tertiary level may with the approval of the Head of Department substitute for a paper under (c) an additional paper from either (a) or (b)

(ii) The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve the substitution of other papers in categories (a) and (b).

**Part II****(d) 18.502 Contexts of English Language Teaching****(e) 18.503 The Language Curriculum****(f) 18.506 Research Project**

4. No candidate may present for this Diploma a paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper already passed for any other degree or diploma.

5. Where a candidate is enrolled in any paper scheduled for another degree or diploma, he or she shall be required to comply with such of the course regulations as are applicable (including all prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions) unless exempted from these by the Senate.

6. Candidates shall be required to pass each paper of Part 1 and Part 2.

7. Candidates may, at the discretion of the Senate, be permitted to repeat a paper they have not passed.

8. These regulations may be varied by the Senate in particular circumstances.

9. This diploma may be awarded with or without Distinction.

10. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1988.

**PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipELT**

The purpose of the Diploma in English Language Teaching is to provide a specialised course in the theory and practice of teaching English in multi-lingual contexts, with special emphasis on the needs of English language learners in the Auckland, New Zealand and South Pacific regions. Candidates wishing to enrol in the course for the Diploma in English Language Teaching are required to pre-enrol on the Preparatory Application Form by 31 October of the preceding year. Candidates may be called for interview. Entry to the course will be restricted to eighteen candidates in any one year.

Prescriptions for courses listed in the Regulations for the Diploma (and not prescribed for other degrees) are given below.

**18.501 English Language**

Introduction to three fundamental areas of language description and analysis and their application to the study of English. These are phonology (the description and analysis of sound systems), grammar and semantics (the study of meaning). There will also be a component looking at features of New Zealand English.

**18.502 Contexts of English Language Teaching**

Socio-cultural aspects of English Language teaching in multilingual contexts and studies of second language learning.

**18.503 The Language Curriculum**

This paper will cover syllabus construction, current trends in language teaching methodology and issues of English Language across the curriculum. Full-time students taking this paper will be required to undertake regular teaching practice throughout the academic year.

**18.506 Research Project**

Normally, the research project will involve application of theories, models or approaches covered by the course to problems relevant to the teaching of English Language in New Zealand and/or the South Pacific Region.

**04.100 Introduction to the Structure of Maori Language**

As prescribed for Maori Studies.

**04.101/03.102 Introduction to Maori Society**

As prescribed for Maori Studies.

**03.200 Ethnography of Island Polynesia**

As prescribed for Anthropology.

Students will be expected to attend lectures and tutorials, complete assignments and sit examinations in accordance with the regulations for the above papers.

## **DIPLOMA IN GUIDANCE AND COUNSELLING**

### **DipGuid**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provision affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Diploma in Guidance and Counselling shall before his enrolment for this Diploma:

(a) have been awarded or qualified for the award of a Degree of a University in New Zealand, or in special cases have been awarded or qualified for the award of a University Diploma approved by the Senate and

(b) have passed paper 14.204 The Evaluation of Individual Differences, as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts; except that this may be taken concurrently with papers from Regulation 2(a) or waived with the permission of the Head of the Department of Education.

(c) The Senate must be satisfied that the candidate is likely to benefit from the training provided by the course for this diploma.

**Note:** Normally an interview supported by referee's statements, and evidence of training and experience in relevant work such as teaching, personnel work or community counselling will be required under 1(c).

2. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of two Parts:

**Part I**

(a) Three papers (not already passed for any other degree or diploma) from 14.305, 14.306, 14.308, 14.309, 14.310, 14.311, 14.312, 14.317, 14.320, 14.322, 14.325. Approval may be given for enrolment in Stage III papers from other Departments where training requirements for specialised application warrant this, as in the case of vocational guidance.

(b) Papers 14.405 or 14.418, and 14.410, provided that in exceptional circumstances a candidate may substitute for any or all of these papers a course or courses of study approved by the Head of Department.

**Part II**

Preparation and presentation of a folio of casework, 14.501, counting as two papers; together with satisfactory participation in such seminars and counselling and related activities as the Head of Department may require.

**Note:** Most students will require 1000 hours or more of face to face counselling work and related activities to attain competence in casework.

3. No more than fifteen students chosen on academic criteria and personal qualities shall in any one year be admitted for Part II.

4. The folio of casework required for Part II shall be:

(a) submitted within three years of the year in which the candidate completed Part I, or within such longer period as the Senate may in special circumstances permit; and

(b) delivered to the Registrar by 1 November, or later date approved by the Head of Department, of the year in which it is submitted.

5. A candidate shall be required to pass each paper of Part I and to pass Part II as a whole.

6. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1977.

# DIPLOMA IN LOCAL GOVERNMENT AND ADMINISTRATION

## DipLGA

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provision affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Local Government and Administration shall before his enrolment have been awarded or qualified for the award of a Degree or Diploma of this University, provided that, if not so qualified, a person may with the leave of the Senate be a candidate for the Diploma in Local Government and Administration if before enrolment he:

- (i) holds or has qualified for the award of a professional qualification in Accountancy, Management, or other approved discipline; or
- (ii) has had not less than five years responsible practical experience in a responsible position in local government or administration.

2. A candidate for the Diploma shall pursue a course of study for a period of not less than one year, provided that for part-time students the course of study shall extend over a period of not less than two years.

3. Except with the permission of the Senate in exceptional circumstances,

- (i) the course of study must be completed within four years of the date of first enrolment for the Diploma; and
- (ii) the Research Essay (Paper 30.623) must be submitted within two years of the date of first enrolment for that paper.

4. No candidate shall be credited for this Diploma with any paper which he has passed for another degree or diploma.

5. No candidate shall take papers for Part II unless he has passed or enrolled concurrently in the papers for Part I.

### Subjects

6. The subjects for examination for the Diploma shall be:

#### Part I

30.500 The Local Government System in New Zealand

30.413 Public Administration as prescribed for MA

Note: A candidate who has already been credited with 30.413 may substitute 72.405. Organisational Development as prescribed for MCom.

\*30.402 Urban Government and Politics as prescribed for MA

Note: A candidate who has already been credited with 30.402 may substitute 20.436 Urban Geography as prescribed for MA and MSc.

#### Part II

*Either*

Two papers from the following:

25.220 Local Government Law, as prescribed for LLB

25.313 Environmental Law, as prescribed for LLB

25.319 Planning Law, as prescribed for LLB

36.252 Law, Government & Planning, as prescribed for BTP

01.204 Public Sector Accounting, as prescribed for BCom

01.413 Management Decision Making and Control in the Government Sector, as prescribed for MCom

†13.203 Economics, as prescribed for BA and BCom

13.204 New Zealand Public Economics, as prescribed for BA and BCom

13.214 The New Zealand Economy, as prescribed for BA and BCom

13.307 Public Expenditure, as prescribed for BA and BCom

72.203 Organisation and Management, as prescribed for BCom

72.207 Labour Relations, as prescribed for BCom

72.303 Advanced Labour Relations, as prescribed for BCom

72.307 Personnel Policy & Practice, as prescribed for BCom

One paper as prescribed for any other Degree or Diploma of this University and specifically approved by the Head of Department.

*or*

30.623 Research Essay (which counts as two papers).

Note: An abstract is to be submitted with the Research Essay, see Examinations Regulation 14.



**Prerequisite for Papers in Part II**

7. Candidates should note that, unless a waiver is obtained from the relevant Head of Department, they will be required to comply with the prerequisites stipulated in the *Calendar* for the respective papers in Accountancy, Economics and Management Studies.

8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1980.

**PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipLGA**

The course for the Diploma in Local Government and Administration may be completed in not less than one year of full-time study or two years of part-time study. Students are required to take papers from Part I in their first year of study.

Prescriptions for courses listed in the Regulations for the Diploma (and not prescribed for other degrees) are given below.

**30.500 The New Zealand Local Government System**

The evolution, structure and characteristics of the system. Reorganisation schemes and functional features. Local politics, elections and public participation.

**30.623 Research Essay**

A research essay may be presented in lieu of two papers from Part II of the course. It shall consist of 18,000 to 20,000 words on an approved topic in local Government Administration or Politics.

**POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN SOCIAL RESEARCH****PGDipSocRes**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses for study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Social Research shall, before enrolment for this Diploma, have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Master of Arts in one of the subjects listed in paragraph (b) of this Regulation; or, if not so qualified, and provided Senate approves, have completed not fewer than four papers for that Degree in one of those subjects.

(b) The subjects in which a candidate shall have qualified in terms of paragraph (a) of this Regulation are Anthropology, Maori Studies, Economics, Geography, Sociology, Political Studies, Education, Psychology and History.

(c) In exceptional circumstances, Senate may approve the enrolment of a candidate who has been admitted or qualified for admission to a degree other than a Master of Arts or who has included in their qualifying degree subjects other than those specified in paragraph (b) of this Regulation.

2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a one year course of full-time study, or a two year course of part-time study.

3. The course of study for this Diploma shall consist of two parts.

**Part I**

†82.500 The Uses of Social Research.

†82.501 Issues and Methods in Research I.

†82.502 Issues and Methods in Research II.

**Part II**

A report on an original social research investigation counting as two papers (82.503).

The report shall be not more than 20,000 words long. Two copies must be submitted to the Registrar not later than the last day of February in the *Calendar* year following the examinations.

4. A candidate shall be required to pass each paper of Part I and pass Part II as a whole.

5. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1987.

**PRESCRIPTIONS FOR PGDipSocRes**

The purpose of the Diploma is to provide graduate students with a preparation in the methodological principles and practice of social research.

The course is a full-time course extending over one year or two years of part-time study. Entry to the course will be restricted to six candidates in any one year. Candidates wishing to enrol in the course for the Diploma

are required to give notice of their intention to the Registrar of the University by letter which shall include a curriculum vitae showing academic results and any other qualifications by 15 January each year. Candidates may be called for interview.

#### **82.500 The Uses of Social Research**

This paper will examine the literature on the roles of social research and social theory in the formulation, monitoring and evaluation of social policy; and the role of social policy concerns in the development of social science knowledge. The paper will apply themes from this literature to the New Zealand context.

#### **82.501 Issues and Methods in Research I**

#### **82.502 Issues and Methods in Research II**

These papers will provide an advanced critical education and training of in a range of qualitative and quantitative social research methods. These will include social surveys, use of official social data, field observation studies, and documentary studies. Analytical devices specifically intended to assist policy making and evaluating theories also will be reviewed.

#### **82.503 Supervised Social Research Project (Practicum)**

This exercise will involve an empirical research study within an explicit theoretical and/or policy relevant framework. The exercise will be reported in an essay of up to 20,000 words, written specifically to communicate the findings to appropriate audiences. Where possible the practicum will be carried out, at least in part, in an appropriate policy setting, or as a group research project.

# Faculty of Science

## Contents

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	194 Degree of Bachelor of Science
	196 Schedule for Bachelor of Science
	209 Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours)
	212 Degree of Bachelor of Optometry
	215 Degree of Master of Science
<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	219 Department of Biochemistry
	220 Department of Botany
	222 Department of Cellular and Molecular Biology
	223 Department of Chemistry
	226 Department of Computer Science
	228 Department of Education
	228 Environmental Science
	229 Department of Geography
	229 Department of Geology
	234 Leigh Laboratory
	234 Department of Mathematics and Statistics
	239 Medical Science
	239 Department of Optometry
	241 Department of Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology
	241 Department of Philosophy
	241 Department of Physics
	247 Department of Physiology
	249 Department of Psychology
	250 Department of Zoology
	253 Course in Environmental Studies
<b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>	253 Diploma in Clinical Psychology
	254 Diploma in Computer Science
	254 Diploma in Mathematical Education
	255 Diploma in Statistics
<b>Certificate Regulations</b>	256 Certificate in the Principles and Practice of Radiochemistry

## FACULTY OF SCIENCE

The Faculty of Science consists of fourteen independent Departments covering the full range of mathematical, physical, biological, behavioural and earth sciences. Each Department teaches papers at the undergraduate and graduate levels as well as being involved in research. Students commencing the BSc Course are advised to consult the *Science Faculty Handbook* which describes the papers offered and gives advice on planning a Course of study. Information on research activities is contained in the *University of Auckland Research Report* which is published each year and lists research publications and thesis topics. In addition each Department issues information on the courses it teaches.

### Bachelor of Science

Over 200 papers grouped under sixteen different subject headings are offered in the BSc schedule. Students select personal Courses of study from among these papers according to their interests and career objectives. There are 32 Stage I papers each of which provides an introduction to the subject and a foundation on which to build further study. The Stage II and III papers progress to a more advanced level, with a greater depth and concentration of subject-matter. The papers differ in their relative sizes and this is indicated by the number of credits awarded for each paper passed. Most of the Science papers involve laboratory or field work which is an integral part of the teaching programme.

The subjects offered in the BSc schedule are:

Biochemistry

Botany

Cellular and Molecular Biology

Chemistry

Computer Science

Environmental Studies

Geography

Geology

Mathematics – Applied

Mathematics – Pure

Pharmacology

Philosophy of Science

Physics

Physiology

Psychology

Zoology

Students should note that not all subjects are available at Stage I. The BSc schedule gives a breakdown of each subject's papers and their stages.

The minimum requirements for the BSc Degree can be summarised as follows:

- At least three years' study
- A total of 96 credits
- At least 36 credits above Stage I
- At least 12 credits in Stage III Science papers
- At least four different Science subjects (at least 6 credits in each). Regulation 3(c) permits exceptions.

For the purpose of defining Science subjects, Applied Mathematics and Pure Mathematics are separate subjects, but Biology is not a subject (all Biology credits must count as either Botany or Zoology).

There are two important constraints which must be borne in mind when planning a BSc course. The first is that all prerequisite and corequisite requirements are met. The best way to plan a BSc course is to select first the major subject which will be taken to Stage III. Then work backwards to ensure that all the necessary prerequisites are taken in the first two years. The other constraint on selection of papers is the problem of timetable clashes. Students should study carefully the timetable information given in this *Calendar*, noting particularly the quarters of the year in which each paper is taught. Some of the larger classes will have several alternative laboratory and lecture streams which may help to avoid clashes. Thus most of the common combinations of Stage I papers can be taken without clashes, but the large number of advanced papers means that many combinations of subjects are impossible for timetable reasons. As a general rule it is not possible to take papers which clash in lecture or laboratory times, unless a special arrangement can be negotiated with the Departments concerned.

The BSc Regulations include some special provisions which can be of benefit to some students. Thus students who have performed well in Bursary or Scholarship examinations may be permitted to enrol directly in Stage II papers without having passed the prerequisite Stage I papers. Students who have been awarded the NZCS or other technical qualifications before coming to University may be granted credit towards the BSc (maximum 36 credits). Students who abandon Intermediate courses for Engineering, Architecture and other courses will normally be permitted to credit passes in Science papers for the BSc Degree.

Although the main object of the BSc course is to teach scientific method and to impart knowledge and appreciation of some of the main scientific disciplines it is also possible to acquire a broad educational experience by suitable choice of papers. BSc students may also take up to 12 credits from papers in other Faculties, giving an opportunity to pursue interests outside of the sciences. To enable students to obtain

knowledge of particular use in Commerce, the papers listed in the Appendix may be selected in excess of these 12 credits, although enrolment limitations apply to many.

**Bachelor of Science (Honours)**

This course is available only to students of proven ability in Biochemistry, Computer Science, Geology, Applied Geology and Mathematics. Students normally change from the BSc course to the BSc (Hons) course at the end of their second or third year at University. The course covers much of the same advanced material as the MSc course, but it is possible to complete BSc (Hons) within four years. BSc (Hons) graduates are permitted to enrol for PhD studies without completing a Master's degree.

**Bachelor of Optometry**

This is a four-year professional course leading to registration as an optometrist. The first year consists of eight specified Science papers at the Stage I level. Entry into the second year of the course is strictly limited to 18 students and selection is made on the basis of performance in the first year. Considerable clinical training is involved particularly in the final year.

**Master of Science**

This is a course of advanced study and an introduction to research, based on the study of one scientific discipline in depth. All of the Science Departments offer MSc courses, each course consisting of a number of specialist papers plus a thesis on a selected research topic. (In Computer Science and Mathematics the thesis may be replaced by an advanced course of study.) All Departments offer a wide range of MSc research topics and intending students are advised to discuss their proposed course with staff members before completing the BSc Degree.

The prerequisite for the MSc course is a BSc degree with the required number of Stage III credits as specified for each subject in the MSc regulations, with an average grade of C+ or better in these Stage III papers.

**Doctor of Philosophy**

The PhD Degree has become accepted as the appropriate qualification for a career in scientific research. The PhD course consists of advanced study and supervised research leading to the presentation of a thesis. The thesis must be an original contribution to knowledge and meet the recognised international standards of scientific research.

**Diploma in Clinical Psychology**

This is a three-year course which is undertaken in conjunction with the Master's Degree in Psychology.

**Diploma in Computer Science**

This is a specialist graduate course concentrating on topics in Computer Science.

**Diploma in Mathematical Education**

This is a course for graduates in Mathematics who are involved in teaching the subject in secondary schools.

**Diploma in Statistics**

This is a specialist postgraduate course involving papers in Statistics, Mathematics and Computer Science together with a project.

**Certificate in the Principles and Practice of Radiochemistry**

A pass in 08.350, or 08.352 will entitle students to receive the elementary certificate.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE BSc

*The personal Course of Study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of Study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations candidates for the Degree of Bachelor of Science shall follow a Course of study of not less than three years.

2. (a) The subjects prescribed for this Degree are:

Biochemistry  
Botany  
Cellular and Molecular Biology  
Chemistry  
Computer Science  
Education  
Environmental Studies  
Geography

Geology  
Mathematics (Applied)  
Mathematics (Pure)  
Pharmacology  
Philosophy of Science  
Physics  
Physiology  
Psychology  
Zoology

(b) For the purpose of these Regulations: a 'paper' is a separately assessed segment of work in a subject, and papers are classified as follows:

Stage I (xx. 100 to xx. 199)

Stage II (xx. 200 to xx. 299)

Stage III (xx. 300 to xx. 399)

(c) 'credits' are awarded for the successful completion of papers as set out in the Schedule to these Regulations ("the BSc Schedule")

3. A complete Course of Study for this Degree requires the gaining of at least 96 credits, of which:

(a) at least 12 credits must be from Stage III papers in the BSc Schedule;

(b) at least 36 credits must be from papers above Stage I; and

(c) at least 6 credits must be from each of any FOUR subjects as prescribed in Regulation 2(a) or, if 20 or more credits are included under Regulation 10, at least 6 credits must be from each of any THREE subjects as prescribed in Regulation 2(a).

(d) Credits obtained from the paper 14.327 (Aspects of Science Education) shall not satisfy the requirement of Regulation 3(a) above.

4. For the purpose of Regulation 3(c) credits obtained from one or more papers in Biology shall all count as credits in either Botany or Zoology and may not be apportioned between those two subjects in any way.

5. In relation to the taking of any paper, a candidate shall comply (i) (before enrolment) with all prerequisite requirements and (ii) with all corequisite requirements; as set out in the BSc Schedule. Unless otherwise specified in the BSc schedule, a minimum grade of C is required in each prerequisite paper. However, the Head of Department may in exceptional circumstances:

(a) waive any of those requirements;

(b) waive any prerequisite requirement and impose it as a corequisite.

6. Except as provided in Regulation 9, a candidate who has not gained at least 24 credits from Stage I papers may not enrol for a Stage II paper.

#### Practical Work Requirements

7. In any paper that includes practical work as well as written work;

(a) a candidate must obtain passes in both in order to pass the paper as a whole;

(b) a candidate who is awarded a pass in practical work, but who fails the written work may, with the permission of the Head of Department, have the result for the practical work carried forward to a subsequent year.

**Note:** Candidates requesting this permission should apply to the Head of Department prior to the commencement of the Enrolment period in the year of re-enrolment for the paper.

#### Course Load Restrictions

8. A candidate may not enrol, in any one year, for papers totalling more than 50 credits.

**Direct Entry to Stage II papers**

9. Notwithstanding anything in Regulations 5 and 6, the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, permit a suitably qualified candidate to enrol for Stage II papers without having passed the prerequisite Stage I papers. But where such permission is given: –

- (a) a successful candidate shall be credited only with passes in the Stage II papers and not in any of the prerequisite papers;
- (b) a candidate who fails any Stage II paper may be granted a pass in the appropriate Stage I paper if the necessary standard has been attained;
- (c) a candidate who gains at least 12 credits from Stage II papers under this Regulation may include in the Course of Study 12 further credits as prescribed for a Bachelor's Degree in any other Faculty, in addition to any credits that may be obtained under Regulation 10, Appendix (b).

**Credit for Papers in other Faculties**

10. (a) A candidate for this Degree may obtain up to 32 credits from papers or subjects listed or referred to in the Appendix to the Schedule to these Regulations; of which credits not more than 12 may be obtained from the papers or subjects referred to in paragraph (b) of that Appendix.

(b) The credits allowed for the purpose of this Regulation shall be:–

**Architecture Property**

& Planning	per credit .....	1 credit
Arts	per paper .....	5 credits
Commerce	per paper .....	5 credits
Engineering	per half-year paper .....	4 credits
	per full-year paper .....	6 credits
Fine Arts	per paper .....	5 credits
Law	per 23 hours of lectures in any subject .....	2 credits
Medicine &		
Human Biology	per paper .....	6 credits
Music	per paper .....	5 credits

**Cross-Credits from other Degree Courses**

**Note:** See Regulation 13 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General)

11. Credits obtained under Regulation 10, from papers which are credited also to the Course of Study for another Degree, shall be counted as cross-credits for the purpose of Regulation 13 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General)

**Credits for Papers Abandoned from other Degree Courses**

**Note:** See Regulation 17 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General)

12. For the purposes of these Regulations the word 'papers' in Regulation 17 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall be interpreted as meaning:–

- (a) papers listed in the BSc Schedule;
- (b) papers equivalent to papers listed in the BSc Schedule as determined by the Senate;
- (c) papers that can be credited towards the BSc Degree under Regulation 10.

**Credit for Other Qualifications**

13. A candidate who has gained the New Zealand Certificate of Science, or has gained any other recognised technical qualifications of comparable standard, may be credited with such specified papers and/or given such unspecified credits up to a maximum of 36 credits, as the Senate may determine.

**Note:** A candidate who has successfully completed a course at an Auckland Teachers' College may be granted credits towards this Degree as provided by Regulation 14 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

**Transitional Provisions**

14. (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the Course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

(b) A candidate who gained credit in any unit, course or paper under any of the former Regulations for this Degree, shall be credited with such equivalent papers as may be determined by the Senate.

(c) For candidates who enrolled for this Degree before 1973 the subject prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions, where not covered by these Regulations, shall be determined by the Head of the Department concerned.

**Exceptions**

15. (a) The Senate may, in such cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal Course of Study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

(b) Every application for approval under this Regulation shall be submitted by the candidate in writing to the Registrar.

**Validity**

16. These Regulations shall come into force on January 1, 1983.

**Schedule**

1. This schedule sets out paper numbers, credits, prerequisites, corequisites, and restrictions applying to Courses of Study offered for the Degree of Bachelor of Science.

2. The schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.

3. The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that course.

4. The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.

5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to papers which cannot be credited together with that paper.

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
<b>BIOCHEMISTRY</b>								
Biochem	66.202	Molecular Aspects of Cells	46	12x6	6	6 credits from any Stage I Chemistry course and 39.101		66.201
	66.203	Central Concepts of Metabolism	46	12x6	6		66.202	66.201
	66.301	Biochemistry of Macromolecules	46	12x6	6	(a) 66.202 and 66.203 (b) 12 additional Science Credits above Stage I	66.302	
	66.302	Metabolic Interrelationships	46	12x6	6		66.301	

**BOTANY**

Bio	39.101	Central Concepts of Biology	46	12x3	6			39.111
Bot	06.102	Form & Function in Plants	46	12x3	6			39.112
Bio	39.210	Population & Community Ecology	46	12x6	6	39.101, 06.102, 38.102	38.207	39.211, 39.213
Bot	06.202	Evolution, Morphology and Cell Structure of Vascular Plants (taught in even numbered years only)	46	12x6	6	06.102, 39.101	38.102	06.302
	* 06.204	Mycology and Microbial and Microbial Interactions with Higher Plants (taught in odd numbered years only)	46	12x6	6	06.102, 39.101	38.102	06.304
Bot	06.205	Crop Physiology and Plant Breeding	46	12x6	6	06.102, 39.101 and 6 credits from any Stage I Chemistry or Maths paper	38.102	
	06.221	Plant Physiology	23	6x6	3	06.102, 39.101 and 6 credits from any Stage I Chemistry paper	38.102	



Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
Bio	39.311	Freshwater Ecology	23	6x6	3	15 credits at Stage II in 39.210, Bot and/or Zoo		
	39.313	Terrestrial Ecology	23	6x6	3	39.210; 3 credits at Stage II in Bot and 6 credits at Stage II in Bot and/or Zoo		
Bot	39.314	Applied Ecology	23	6x6	3	As for 39.311		
	06.302	Evolution, Morphology and Cell Structure of Vascular Plants (taught in even numbered years only)	46	12x6	6	9 credits at Stage II in Bot/39.210		06.202
	*06.304	Mycology and Microbial Interactions with Higher Plants (taught in odd numbered years only)	46	12x6	6			06.204
	06.321	Plant Physiology	23	6x6	3	06.221		
	06.325	Differentiation in Plants	23	6x6	3		06.205	
	06.331	Plant Pathology 1	23	6x6	3		06.204/304	
	06.332	Plant Pathology 2	23	6x6	3		06.204/304	
	06.341	Genetics	23	6x6	3		06.205	
	06.361	Advanced Plant Taxonomy	23	6x6	3		06.202/302	
	06.371	Marine Botany	23	6x6	3	12 Stage II credits in 39.210, Bot and/or Zoo		

**Note:** 1. Students may not enrol for more than six credits in Botany III until they have passed in nine credits from 39.210, 06.202, 06.204, 06.205, 06.221.  
2. Students who have passed the appropriate Stage II papers prior to 1988 may, in 1988 only, enrol for Stage III Botany papers and/or 39.311, 39.313 with the 1987 pre-requisites

## CELLULAR AND MOLECULAR BIOLOGY

Cell & Mol Bio	40.303	Cellular and Molecular Biology	46	12x6	6	(1) 08.111 and 08.110 and 08.121 (2) 66.202 (3) 12 credits from any papers in Botany, Biology, Zoology or Biochemistry. (4) 18 credits from any Stage II or Stage III Science papers		
	40.304	Microbial and Molecular Genetics	46	12x6	6		40.303	
	40.305	Plant and Animal Molecular Biology	46	12x6	6		40.303	

## CHEMISTRY

Chem	08.111	Organic and Physical Chemistry	46	12x3	6			08.110, 08.113, 08.115
	08.121	Inorganic and Physical Chemistry	46	12x3	6			08.120, 08.123, 08.125
	08.210	Physical and Analytical Chemistry	46	12x6	6	08.111 and 08.121 or 1986 prerequisites		
	08.220	Inorganic Chemistry	46	12x6	6	As for 08.210		

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
Chem	08.250	Radiochemical Techniques for Biological Scientists	10	10x3	2	08.111 or 08.121		08.350, 08.352
	08.310	Physical Chemistry	23	36	3	08.210		
	08.311	Physical Chemistry: Applications	23	36	3	08.210	08.310	
	08.320	Inorganic Chemistry	23	36	3	08.220		
	08.321	Physical-Inorganic Chemistry	23	36	3	08.220		
	08.330	Advanced Organic Chemistry (A)	23	36	3	08.230		
	08.331	Advanced Organic Chemistry (B)	23	36	3	08.230	08.330	
	08.340	Structural Methods in Chemistry	32	20	3	08.210	08.220 and 08.230	
	08.352	Radiochemistry	16	16x3	3	08.210		08.250, 08.350
	08.360	Analytical Chemistry	16	48	3	08.210		
	08.370	Environmental Chemistry	23	12x3	3	18.210		08.270
	†08.390	Advanced Topics in Chemistry	By Arrangement 3			08.310, 311,320, 08.321,330,331 08.340,350, 351, 352		
	†08.391		By Arrangement 3					

## COMPUTER SCIENCE

Comp Science	07.100	Introduction to Programming	46	60	6		07.105	07.101, 72.100, 74.100
	07.101	Elements of Computing	46	60	6			07.100, 72.100, 74.100
	07.105	Introduction to Computer Science	46	40	7		07.100	72.100, 74.100
	07.210	Computer Organisation	46	40	4	07.100, 105		
	07.220	Data Structures	46	40	4	07.100, 105		
	07.230	Computing Laboratory	23	80	4	07.100, 105		
	07.235	Computer Applications	46	40	4	07.100, 105	07.230	72.220, 72.221, 74.240, 74.221
	07.290	Numerical Computation	46	40	4	07.100; 26.120 or 121 or 122; 26.120 or 141 or 142		26.290
Man Sc & Info Sys	74.220	Systems Analysis			4	07.100, 07.105, 01.103 (or 01.101)		07.235
	74.221	Programming Laboratory			4	07.100, 07.105		07.235
Comp Science	07.301	Topic in Computer Science (a)	23		2	Permission from Head of Department		
	07.302	Topic in Computer Science (b)	23		2	Permission from Head of Department		
	07.303	Topic in Computer Science (c)	23		2	Permission from Head of Department		
	07.304	Topic in Computer Science (d)	46		4	Permission from Head of Department		
	07.305	Topic in Computer Science (e)	46		4	Permission from Head of Department		

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
	07.306	Topic in Computer Science (f)	46		4	Permission from Head of Department		
<b>Note:</b> Even though laboratory hours are not shown explicitly for papers 07.301 to 07.306, they will usually involve a considerable amount of practical work.								
	07.310	Advanced Computer Organisation	46	40	4	07.210, 230		
	07.320	Database Systems	46	40	4	07.220, 230		72.322, 74.322
	07.330	Language Implementation	46	40	4	07.210, 220, 230		07.305 in 1984
	07.340	Operating Systems	46	40	4	07.210, 230		
	07.351	Formal Languages	46		4	07.100, 26.220 or 221		07.250, 07.150
	07.352	Automata and Computability Design and Analysis of Algorithms	46		4	07.223, 07.230		07.250, 07.350
	07.360	Introduction to Artificial Intelligence	46	40	4	07.220, 07.230		
	07.390	Numerical Analysis	46	40	4	07.290; 26.220 or 221; 26.240 or 241		
Maths	26.391	Optimization in Operations Research	46	12x1	4	07.100 or suitable computing experience; 26.220 or 221.		
	26.395	Mathematic Modelling for Operations Research	46	12x1	4	07.100 or suitable computing experience; 26.180; 240 or 241.		
Man Sc & Info Sys	74.320	Systems Design			4	72.201, 72.203, 72.221		
	74.321	Systems Project			4	72.203; 74.220 or 72.220; 74.221 or 72.221		
	74.322	Data Base Management Systems			4			07.320
	74.323	Management of Information Systems			4			
	74.324	Data Communications			4	72.201, 72.203, 72.220 (or 07.210 or 07.220)		

**Note:** In exceptional circumstances and with the permission of Head of Department, some papers offered for MSc in Computer Science may be taken for the BSc Degree. Each such paper shall carry the credit rating shown in the MSc prescriptions

## EDUCATION

Educ	14.327	Aspects of Science Education	46		4			
------	--------	------------------------------	----	--	---	--	--	--

## ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES

Env Studies	84.200	Environmental Studies	46		4	24 Stage I credits or equivalent from any Faculty including at least 6 credits in Science papers		
-------------	--------	-----------------------	----	--	---	--	--	--

## GEOGRAPHY

Geog	20.101	Introductory Physical Geography	35	12x2	6			
------	--------	---------------------------------	----	------	---	--	--	--

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
	20.102	Introductory Human Geography	35	12x2	6			
	20.201	Physical Geography	46	23x1	4	20.101 and 20.102		36.264 With Special Permission of the Head of Department (i) A student may enrol in one Stage II paper without fulfilling the prerequisites, or (ii) prerequisites may be waived and reimposed as corequisites 20.306
	20.202	Geographical Perspectives on Urban-Industrial Societies	46	23x1	4			
	20.203	Remote Sensing Techniques	46	23x1	4			
	20.204	Statistical Techniques in Geography	46	23x1	4			
	20.205	Human Impact on the Environment	46	23x1	4			
	20.206	Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries (even years only)	46		4			
	20.302	Regional Processes and Development	46	23x1	4	Three Stage II papers in Geography including 20.204 (or equivalent) and at least one of 20.201 and 20.202	20.315	Students including three or more Stage III Geography papers must attempt at least one of 20.302, 20.303, 20.304, 20.305  20.206 With Special permission of the Head of Department (i) A student may enrol in one or two Stage III papers without fulfilling the prerequisites, or (ii) Prerequisites may be waived and reimposed as corequisites 20.316
	20.303	Geomorphology and Hydrology	46	23x1	4			
	20.304	Biogeography and Climatology	46	23x1	4			
	20.305	Population Processes Policies and Techniques	46	23x1	4		20.315	
	20.306	Geographical Perspectives on Developing Countries (even years only)	46		4			
	*20.310	Geography of Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia (odd years only)	46	23x1	4			
	*20.312	Special Topic	46	23x1	4			
	20.313	Advanced Statistical Analysis in Geography	46	23x1	4			
	20.314	Geographic Information Systems and Image Processing	46	23x1	4			
	20.315	Research Design and Methods in Human Geography	40	20x1	4		20.302 or 20.305	
	20.320	Resources and Environmental Management	46	23x1	4			

## GEOLOGY

Geol	21.100	Fundamentals of General and Environmental Geology	69	23x2	8			
Geol	21.150	Applications of Geological Concepts and Methods	23	18x3	4		21.100	
	21.200	Introduction to Field Geology		4 + 7 days	2	21.100, 21.150	21.211 or 21.212	21.201, 21.202

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
	21.211	Principles of Structural Geology and Geophysics	36	12x3	4	21.100, 21.150	21.200, 26.121 08.121 or (31.140 or 141)	21.201, 21.281
	21.212	Principles of Historical Geology and Paleontology	36	12x3	4	21.100, 21.150	21.200	21.202
	21.213	Principles of Mineralogy	24	12x4	4	21.100, 21.150	08.121	21.203
	21.215	Principles of Petrography	24	12x4	4	21.100, 21.150	08.121, 21.200, 21.213	21.203
	21.281	Geology IIA for Mining	36	24	3	21.100 and 21.150; and 08.121; or 21.213 and (26.120 or 26.121); and (26.140 or 26.141) and 26.175. Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department of Geology or Mining Engineering as appropriate	52.231 21.203	21.201
	21.284	Geology IIB for Mining	36	24	3	21.201 or 21.281 Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department of Geology or Mining Engineering as appropriate	21.203 or 21.213, 56.101	21.304
	21.300	Field Methods for Geology		12+ 10 days	2	21.200	6 Geology III credits	
	21.300	Field Methods for Geology		12+ 10 days	2	21.200	6 Geology credits	
	21.303	Advanced Paleontology	46	23x3	6	21.100 and 21.150 or 39.101 and either 06.102 or 38.102	21.300	
	21.304	Minerals & Mineral Deposits	69	23x2	6	08.121 and either 21.203 or (21.213, 21.215)	21.300	21.284
	21.305	Igneous & Metamorphic Petrology	48	23x3	6		21.300	
	21.306	Applied Geophysics	40		3	EITHER [(26.120 or 26.121), (26.140 or 26.141), (31.140 or 141)] 21.201 or (21.200, 21.211, 21.213, 21.215) OR 21.100, 21.150 and 31.210	31.330	21.386
	21.307	Experimental Geophysics		72x6 days	3	As for 21.306	21.306, 31.330	21.386
	*21.310	Geology of Australasia and the SW Pacific	36	24	3	at least 8 Geology II credits	2 papers from 21.303 - 318	
	21.311	Advanced Structural Geology	24	36	3	26.121 and 08.121 or (31.140 or 141) and either 21.201 or (21.200, 21.211)	21.300	21.301

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
	*21.312	Advanced Sedimentology	24	36	3	08.121 and either (21.201, 21.203) or 21.200, 21.211, 21.213, 21.215)	21.300	21.302
	21.318	Introduction to Engineering Geology	24	24	3	either (21.201, 21.203) or (21.200, 21.211, 21.213, 21.215)	21.300	21.201
	21.319	Special Topics in Mineralogy and Geochemistry	24	24	3	08.121, 21.203 or 21.213		
	21.381	Geology III For Mining	24	12	3	21.203; 52.231; (26.170 or 26.175); (21.201 or 21.281); and either (31.100 or 113 or 115) and (31.120 or 123 or 125) or (31.140 or 31.141)		
	Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department of Geology or Mining Engineering as appropriate.							
Geol	21.382	Coal Geology for Mining	24	12x2	3		21.281	21.381, (21.284 or 21.304)
	21.386	Applied Geophysics for Mining	12	24	3	Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department of Geology or Mining Engineering as appropriate	21.381	21.306, 21.307
	21.388	Engineering Geology	36	12	3	Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department of Geology or Civil Engineering as appropriate	21.301	
Geomech	52.231	Geomechanics I	46	11x3	4	24 Stage I credits including 21.100 and 150; permission of Head of Department Civil Engineering		
	52.331	Geotechnical Engineering	24	12	3	Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department, Civil Engineering		
Mining	52.332	Geomechanics II	36	12	3			
	56.101	Mineral Engineering	46		4	Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department, Mining Engineering		
	56.312	Evaluation & Mineral Economics	46	12	4			
	56.314	Rock Mechanics	36	15	3			

## MATHEMATICS, APPLIED

Maths	26.175	Introduction to Mathematical Modelling	46	23x1	6		26.140 or 141 or 142 or 241	
	26.180	Principles of Statistics	46	23x1	6		26.140 or 141 or 142 or 241	26.181, 13.102
	26.181	Introduction to Probability & Statistics	46	23x1	6			26.180, 13.102

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours		Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
			Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours				
Comp Science	26.260	Differential Equations	35	12x1	4		26.240 or 241 or 330 or 331	
	26.270	Principles of Mechanics	35	12x1	4	26.175 or 31.140 or 31.141	26.240 or 241 26.260	26.170
	26.280	Statistical Theory	35	12x1	4	26.180 or with permission of Head of Department, 26.181	26.240 or 241	
	26.281	Data Analysis	35	12x1	4	26.181 or 180		
	07.290	Numerical Computation	46	40	4	07.100; 26.120 or 121 or 122; 26.140 or 141 or 142		
	26.360	Applied Analysis	46	12x1	4	26.220 or 221; 240 or 241; 260		
	*26.362	Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (a)	46	12x1	4	Enrolment requires permission from the Head of Department		
	†26.363	Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (b)	23	12x1	2	Enrolment requires permission from the Head of Department		
	26.368	Mathematical Theory of Control	23	12x1	2	26.220 or 221 26.260		
	26.371	Introduction to Continuum Mechanics	46	12x1	4	26.240 or 241 26.260		54.241
Maths	26.372	Analytical Mechanics	23	12x1	2	26.270, 26.260 26.240 or 241		
	26.375	Applied Partial Differential Equations	23	12x1	2	26.240 or 241 26.260		26.363 (1984-86)
	26.376	Theory of Waves	23	12x1	2	26.240 or 241 26.260	26.375 or 31.210	
	26.380	Applied Probability	46	12x1	4	26.180; 220 or 221; 240 or 241		
	26.381	Linear Models	46	12x1	4	26.280; 220 or 221; 240 or 241		13.302
	26.385	Advanced Data Analysis	46	12x1	4	26.281 or 280; approval from Head of Department		
	07.390	Numerical Analysis	46	40	4	07.290; 26.220 or 221; 26.240 or 241		
	26.391	Optimisation in Operations Research	46	12x1	4	07.100 or suitable computing experience; 26.220 or 221		54.251
	26.395	Mathematical Modelling for Operations Research	46	12x1	4	The special inter-disciplinary nature of this paper may allow alternative prerequisites to those listed. 07.100 or suitable computing experience; 26.180; 240 or 241		54.351
	26.399	Applied Mathematics Laboratory		12x3	2	The special inter-disciplinary nature of this paper may allow alternative prerequisites to those listed. 07.100 or suitable computing experience	At least two of 26.371, 26.375, 26.381 26.385, 26.391 26.395	

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
<b>MATHEMATICS, PURE</b>								
Maths	26.101	Introduction to Algebra and Calculus	46	12x1	6			26.120, 121, 122 140, 141, 142; 13.105
	26.120	Principles of Algebra	46	12x1	6			26.121, 122, 221 101
	26.121	Introductory Algebra	46	12x1	6			26.120, 122, 221 101
	26.122	Finite Mathematics	46	12x1	6			26.120, 121, 221 101; 13.105
	26.140	Principles of Calculus	46	12x1	6			26.141, 142, 241 101
	26.141	Introductory Calculus	46	12x1	6			26.140, 142, 241 101
	26.142	Concepts of Calculus	46	12x1	6			26.140, 141, 241 101; 13.105
	26.210	Principles of Mathematics	46		6	26.140, 141 or 142; 26.120, 121 or 122	At least one other Stage II Mathematics paper	
Maths	26.220	Linear Algebra	46	23x1	6	26.120 or 121		26.221
	26.221	Algebra (accelerated paper)	58	12x1	8	Enrolment requires permission from Head of Department		26.120, 121, 122, 220
	26.240	Calculus	35	12x1	4	26.120 or 121; 26.140 or 141		26.241
	26.241	Calculus & Analysis (accelerated paper)	69		8	Enrolment requires permission from Head of Department		26.140, 141, 142, 240
	†26.310	Special Topics in Pure Mathematics (a)	46	23x1	4	Enrolment requires permission from Head of Department		
	26.311	Special Topics in Pure Mathematics (b)	23	12x1	2	Enrolment requires permission from Head of Department		
	26.315	Formal Logic	46	12x1	4	26.120 or 121 and at least one Stage II level Mathematics paper		29.305
	26.320	Algebraic Structures	46	23x1	4	26.220 or 221		26.321
	26.321	Introduction to Abstract Algebra	46	23x1	4	26.220 or 221		26.320
	26.325	Discrete, and Combinatorial Mathematics	46	12x1	4	26.220 or 221 or 240 or 241		26.310 (1985-1986)
	26.330	Introductory Analysis	23	12x1	2	26.240 or 241		26.331
	26.331	Analysis	69		6	26.240 or 241 and permission from Head of Department	26.220 or 221	26.330, 26.340
	26.335	Metric & Normed Spaces	23	12x1	2	26.240 or 241	26.220 or 221	
	26.340	Multivariable Calculus	46	23x1	4	26.240 or 241	26.220 or 221	26.331
	26.345	Techniques of Complex Variables	23	12x1	2	26.240 or 241		
	26.350	Topics in Topology	46	23x1	4	26.240 or 241 and permission from Head of Department	26.220 or 221	Taught in even numbered years
	*26.355	Geometry	46	23x1	4	26.220		Taught in odd numbered years



Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
<b>Note:</b> Any number of 400 level papers may be taken with prior permission of the Head of Department. Each such paper shall have the credit value shown in the MSc Prescriptions.								

**PHARMACOLOGY**

Pharm	96.301	Principles of Pharmacology	46	23x3	6	66.201 or 66.202 or 67.201 and 12 or more credits from any Science papers above Stage I		
	*96.302	Systematic Pharmacology	46	23x3	6	66.201 or 66.202 or 67.201 and 12 or more credits from any Science papers above Stage I	96.301	

**PHILOSOPHY**

Phil	29.203	Philosophy of Science	46		5	2 Stage I Philosophy papers or 24 BSc credits		
------	--------	-----------------------	----	--	---	---	--	--

**PHYSICS**

Phys	31.101	Concepts of Classical Physics	46	12x3	6			31.140, 141
	31.102	Concepts of Modern Physics	46	12x3	6			31.100, 150, 151
	31.104	Basic Electronics for Instrumentation (even years only)	12	12x2	2			
	31.140	Foundations of Classical Physics	46	12x3	6			31.101, 141
	31.141	Principles of Classical Physics	46	12x3	6			31.101, 140
	31.150	Foundations of Modern Physics	46	12x3	6			31.100, 102, 151
	31.151	Principles of Modern Physics	46	12x3	6			31.100, 102, 150
	31.200	Topics in Contemporary & Applied Physics	46		4	Any one of 31.101, 102, 140-151		
	31.206	Introductory Geophysics	23		2	6 credits from 31.101-151, 6 credits from 26.101-181		31.203, 230
	31.210	Theoretical Methods in Physics	23	6x1	3	26.120 or 121 31.140 or 141 <sup>b</sup> 26.140 or 141		
	31.220	Optics & Acoustics	23	6x1	3			
	31.240	Electronic Physics	23	6x1	3	31.140 or 141 <sup>b</sup> 26.120 or 121 26.140 or 141	31.290 See Note (1)	
	31.250	Quantum Physics	23	6x1	3	31.140 or 141 <sup>b</sup> 31.150 or 151 <sup>b</sup> 26.120 or 121 26.140 or 141		
	31.260	Structure of Matter	23	6x1	3	31.140 or 141		
	31.270	Astronomy & Astrophysics	23	6x1	3	31.140 or 141 31.150 or 151 26.101 or 140 or 141		
	31.290	Experimental Physics		23x6	6	31.140 or 141 31.150 or 151 26.120 or 121 26.140 or 141	two of 31.210 to 31.270	
	31.297	Digital Logic Laboratory		12x4	2	31.140 or 141 <sup>b</sup>	07.210	

**Note:** (i) Normally a course containing more than THREE of the papers 31.210, 220, 240, 250, 260 (including any already credited) will not be approved

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
unless it also contains 31.290 (or 31.290 has already been credited)								
(ii) For students who have taken Stage I Physics papers prior to 1986 the prerequisites for the Stage II Physics papers will be as advised by the Head of Department.								
(iii) The superscript b associated with the prerequisites 31.141 and 31.151 denotes that a grade of B- or better is required in these papers.								
Phys	31.325	Advanced Classical Physics	46		4	31.210, 31.220, 26.240 } or their 26.260 } equivalent	see note (i)	
	31.326	Laser Physics and Electro Optics	23		2	31.210, 31.220, 26.240 } or their 26.260 } equivalent	31.325 or equivalent see note (i)	
	31.330	Terrestrial Physics	23		2	(a) 31.210 or (b) 21.201, 31.140 or 141, 26.120 or 121, 26.140 or 141	21.306	31.335
	31.335	Geophysics	46		4	31.210, 31.220	One of 31.390 -392 and 31.325 see note (i)	31.330
	31.342	Semiconductor Devices	23		2	31.240, 31.290		
	31.345	Analogue and Digital Electronics	23		2	31.240, 26.240, 26.260		
	31.355	Advanced Quantum Physics	46		4	31.210, 31.250, 31.260, 26.240 } or their 26.260 } equivalent		
	31.356	Principles of Experimental Quantum Physics	23		2	31.250, 31.260, 31.290, 26.240 } or their 26.260 } equivalent		
	†31.370	Astrophysics	23		2	31.270, 26.120 or 121, 26.140 or 141		
	31.380-31.389	Selected Topics	23		2	Prerequisites and/or corequisites as determined by the Head of Department		
	31.390	Experimental Physics A	12x6		3	} 31.290 plus two papers from 31.210 to 31.270	At least two credits from 31.325-31.356 for each one of 31.390, 391, 392 enrolled for	21.307
	31.391	Experimental Physics B	12x6		3			
	31.392	Experimental Physics C	12x6		3			
	31.393	Experimental Geophysics (the same paper as Geology 21.307)	23x3		3	31.220; 290; (21.100, 21.150)	21.306, 31.330	

**Note:** (i) Normally a course containing more than six credits from 31.325-356 (including any already credited) will not be approved unless the papers 31.210, 31.220 or 31.240, 31.250 or 31.260 and 31.290 have already been credited (or are contained in the course) AND it also contains 31.325 and at least one of 31.390-392 (unless these have already been credited).

(ii) For students who have taken Stage II Physics papers prior to 1986 the prerequisites for the Stage III Physics papers will be advised by the Head of Department.

(iii) Students who have taken Stage III papers prior to 1988 may enrol in the new 4 credit papers only where these do not involve substantial overlap with previously credited papers. Details of restrictions will be advised by the Head of Department.

## PHYSIOLOGY

Physiol	67.201	Introductory Physiology	46	23x3	6	08.111 or 121 and 6 credits from any paper in Biology or Zoology
---------	--------	-------------------------	----	------	---	--

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours		Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
			Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours				
Physiol	67.301	Systematic Physiology	46	23x3	6	67.201 and 12 or more credits from any Science papers at Stage II or III level		
	67.302	Physiology of Cells & Excitable Tissues	23	12x3	3	67.201 and 12 or more credits from any Science papers at Stage II or III level		
	67.303	Physiology of the Nervous System	23	12x3	3	67.201 and 12 or more credits from any Science papers at Stage II or III level.		

## PSYCHOLOGY

Psych	32.108	Introduction to General Psychology	46		6			
	32.109	Introduction to Experimental Psychology	23	23x2	6			
	32.210	Learning	23	23x2	4	32.108, 109		32.206
	32.220	Human Experimental Psychology	23	23x2	4			32.207, 32.209
	32.230	Brain and Behaviour	23	23x2	4			32.211
	32.240	Social and Developmental Psychology	23	23x2	4			32.207, 212, 213
	32.301	Psychology of Individual Differences	23	23x2	4	12 credits from 32.210, 220, 230, 240; or from 32.209, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215	Four of 32.201-314	Enrolment requires approval of the Head of Department
	32.303	Cognitive Processes: Advanced	23	23x2	4			
	32.304	Theory & Systems of Personality	23	23x2	4			
	32.305	Physiological Psychology	23	23x2	4			
	32.306	The Design of Psychological Experiments	23	23x2	4			
	†32.307	The Psychological Analysis of Vision & Hearing	23	23x2	4			
	32.308	Research Topic		23x2	4			
	32.309	Learning	23	23x2	4			
	†32.311	Social Psychology	23	23x2	4			
	*32.312	Organisational Psychology	23	23x2	4			
	32.313	Special Topic in Psychology			4			
	32.314	Special Topic in Psychology			4			

**Transitional** In order to complete equivalents of the 4-credit papers 32.220, 32.230, 32.240, a candidate who has passed the appropriate Stage II papers under the Regulations set forth in the University of Auckland Calendar for 1987 may, in 1988 and 1989 only, enrol for any of the following papers therein prescribed for BSc: 32.209, 32.211, 32.212, 32.213, 32.214, 32.215

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
<b>ZOOLOGY</b>								
Bio	39.101	Central Concepts of Biology	46	12x3	6			39.111
Zoo	38.102	Animal Evolution & Diversity	46	12x3	6			39.112
	*38.201	Invertebrate Zoology (taught in odd numbered years only)	46	12x6	6	38.102, 39.101		38.301
	38.202	Vertebrate Zoology (taught in even numbered years only)	46	12x6	6	38.102, 39.101		38.302
	38.203	Animal Orientation	23	6x6	3		38.201 or 202	38.303
	38.204	Social Behaviour of Animals	23	6x6	3		38.201 or 202	38.304
	38.205	Entomology	23	6x6	3		38.201 or 202	38.305
	38.207	Biometry	23	6x6	3		38.201 or 202	39.207, 39.307
Zoo	38.209	Animal Physiology	23	6x6	3		38.201 or 202	38.309
Bio	39.210	Population & Community Ecology	46	12x6	6	39.101, 06.102, 38.102	38.207	39.100, 39.213
Zoo	*38.212	Marine Biology	23	6x6	3			39.212, 39.312
	*38.301	Invertebrate Zoology (taught in odd numbered years only)	46	12x6	6	38.202		38.201
	38.302	Vertebrate Zoology (taught in even numbered years only)	46	12x6	6	38.201		38.202
	38.310	Animal Morphogenesis	23	6x6	3		38.301 or 302	
Bio	39.311	Freshwater Ecology	21	6x6	3	15 credits at Stage II level in 39.210, Bot and/or Zoo or (in 1988 only) the 1987 prerequisites.		
	39.313	Terrestrial Ecology	23	6x6	3	39.210: 3 credits at Stage II in Bot and 6 credits at Stage II in Bot and/or Zoo or (in 1988 only) the 1987 prerequisites.		
Bio	39.314	Applied Ecology	23	6x6	3	As for 39.311		
Zoo	*38.315	Evolutionary Genetics	23	6x6	3		38.301 or 302	39.315
	38.316	Biological Oceanography	23	6x6	3		38.301 or 302	39.316
	38.317	Applied Entomology	23	6x6	3	38.205, 38.301 or 302		
	38.318	Advanced Concepts of Animal Behaviour	23	6x6	3	38.203, 204	38.301, or 302	
	*38.319	Ecological Physiology of Marine Animals	23	6x6	3		38.301 or 302	

**Transitional** A candidate whose course was begun under the Regulations set forth in the University of Auckland *Calendar* for 1987 may, in 1988 only, enrol for any of the following papers therein scheduled for BSc: 38.303, 38.304, 38.305, 39.307, 38.309, 39.312.

**Note:** Any candidate majoring in another subject may, with the permission of the Head of Department, take up two papers in Zoology without fulfilling the prerequisites and corequisites listed in the Schedule.

**Appendix: Papers from other Faculties (under BSc Regulation 10)**

(a)	Accounting	01.102	Financial Accounting
	Accounting	01.103	Management Accounting

Accounting	01.205	Financial Management
Economics	13.100	Microeconomics
Economics	13.101	Macroeconomics
Economics	12.203	Managerial Economics
Economics	13.205	Introduction to Econometrics
Management Studies and	72.203	Organisation and Management
Labour Relations		
Management Science and	74.200	Operations Management
Information Systems		

- (b) Any other paper or subject which
- (i) is taught in any of the Faculties of the University other than the Faculty of Science, and is prescribed for a Bachelor's Degree in any of those other Faculties; and
  - (ii) is not the same as, or does not substantially overlap with, any other paper or papers which the candidate wishes to credit towards the BSc Degree.

\*Starred papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†Daggered papers will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE (HONOURS) BSc (Hons)

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. The Degree may be awarded in each of the following Honours Schools: Biochemistry, Computer Science, Geology, Applied Geology, Mathematics.

2. Admission to the Course of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) shall be at the discretion of the Senate and shall be given at either the end of the second year or third year after matriculation provided that where the proviso to Regulation 10 applies, admission may be granted at the end of the third or fourth year after matriculation.

3. No candidate shall be admitted to an Honours School without the approval of the Head of Department of that School and of the Senate. Such approval shall be granted or withheld upon a consideration of the candidate's performance in the courses of University study already pursued by the candidate and particularly in the papers required as prerequisites to that Honours School.

4. No candidate may be awarded the degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) if he has previously been awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Science of this University.

5. In each Honours School a candidate's Course of study for the Degree shall comprise:

- (a) such prerequisites, being papers prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science, and
- (b) such Honours Parts (being Parts III and IV, or Part IV as the case may be) and
- (c) such Foreign Language requirements as the Head of the Department within the Honours School may prescribe, and
- (d) such papers in other subjects as may be required and prescribed in that Honours School under Regulation 15: provided that
  - (i) except where the Senate in its discretion otherwise permits, the number of prerequisite papers shall be not fewer than 72 credits in a case of entry into an Honours School at the end of the second year after matriculation and not fewer than 96 in a case of entry at the end of the third such year;
  - (ii) in the case of any prerequisite subject and with the approval of the Senate, if the candidate has been permitted to enrol for and has passed at Stage II without having passed at Stage I, Stage II may be substituted for Stage I, and Stage III may then be substituted for Stage II;
  - (iii) in the case of a candidate whose mother tongue is not English the Foreign Language requirements shall be waived.

6. A candidate for this Degree may, with the permission of the Heads of the Departments concerned and the approval of Senate, substitute one paper in another subject for one paper of the subject in which the Degree is being taken.

7. A candidate in any subject for this Degree where practical work is prescribed, must pass besides the written examination, in such practical work as may be prescribed by the Head of the Department.

### Withdrawal and Exclusion from Course

8. A candidate may withdraw from the Honours School and be granted such credits and exemptions for papers

for the Degree of Bachelor of Science as the Senate shall determine.

9. A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each Part of the Honours Course of study so that his performance in all papers comprising this Part shall be considered: provided that a candidate who has failed to pass an Honours Part as a whole may in such exceptional circumstances as the Senate approves be credited with a paper or papers of that Part and permitted in a subsequent year to present the paper or papers not so credited, together with (if the Senate permits) a paper or papers of the next succeeding Part.

The candidate shall then be required in that year to pass as a whole in all the papers so presented upon the same conditions as those herein prescribed.

10. A candidate shall sit his/her final examinations for the degree within four years of his/her matriculation: provided that at the discretion of the Senate the period may be extended to five years:

(a) where a candidate first enrolled in the subject of his/her Honours School in his/her second year after matriculation, or;

(b) in any special circumstances.

11. A candidate who, on the results of his/her examination, does not reach the standard required in the Honours school in which he/she is enrolled, shall be excluded by the Senate from the Honours School but he/she may be granted such credits and exemptions for papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Science as the Senate shall determine.

### **Classes of Honours**

12. The Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) may be awarded with First Class or Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in either First Division or Second Division. The class of Honours awarded shall be determined primarily on the performance of the candidate in the examinations in his final year but account may be taken of his work throughout his Course of Study.

13. The Senate may determine in respect of any candidate who fails to qualify for the Degree that he be awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Science or be credited with papers towards that Degree or be credited with the Degree of Bachelor of Science together with appropriate credits towards the Degree of Master of Science.

### **Transfer to BSc (Hons)**

14. The Senate may, on written application by a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Science and without payment of a fee, grant him permission to transfer to a Course of Study under these Regulations and allow him to be credited with a pass in such papers as the Senate shall determine.

### **Requirements of Honours Schools**

15. Subject to the provisos to Regulation 5, the Honours Courses of study with subject and papers of examination are as follows:

#### **Biochemistry Prerequisites**

(a) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the second year after matriculation, a total of 72 credits from papers that may be credited to the BSc Degree providing that these prerequisite papers, together with the papers selected for Part III, will enable the candidate to attain a level equivalent to the prerequisites for entry to Part IV.

(b) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the third year after matriculation, a total of 96 credits from papers that may be credited to the BSc Degree including 66.301 and 66.302 plus 12 additional Stage III Science credits from Botany, Cell Biology, Chemistry, Pharmacology, Physiology or Zoology.

#### **Biochemistry Honours Part III**

(Not fewer than 24 credits in Stage III papers approved by the Head of Department of Biochemistry). Part III shall consist of:

(a) 66.301 and 66.302 and

(b) at least 12 Stage III credits from Botany, Cell Biology, Chemistry, Pharmacology, Physiology or Zoology.

#### **Biochemistry Honours Part IV**

(Three papers together with practical work and a thesis)

The student shall follow one year's Course of Study approved by the Head of Department of Biochemistry and carry out an original investigation on an approved topic.\* The examination shall consist of three papers prescribed for the Degree of Master of Science (66.401 to 66.403) and a thesis embodying the results of the investigation which shall be equivalent to one paper. The thesis (66.603) shall be delivered to the Registrar at the end of the third term.

**Note:** Intending students should consult the Head of Department about the research topic immediately after completing the papers for Part III.

### **Computer Science Prerequisites**

(a) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the second year after matriculation, a total of 72 credits from papers that may be credited to the BSc Degree provided that these prerequisite papers, together with the papers selected for Part III, will enable the candidate to attain a level equivalent to the

prerequisites for entry to Part IV.

(b) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the third year after matriculation, a total of 96 credits from papers that may be credited to the BSc Degree including at least 20 credits at 300 or 400 level, of which at least 16 shall be from papers in Computer Science.

### **Computer Science Honours Part III**

(24 credits in papers approved by the Head of the Department of Computer Science)

Part III shall consist of papers approved by the Head of the Department of Computer Science totalling 24 credits and including such papers as will enable attainment of a level equivalent to the prerequisite to entry to Part IV.

### **Computer Science Honours Part IV**

(24 credits approved by the Head of the Department of Computer Science)

Part IV shall consist of papers approved by the Head of the Department of Computer Science totalling 24 credits.

**Note:** Normally the papers will be selected from Computer Science 07.400 to 07.499, as prescribed for the Degree of Master of Science.

### **Geology Prerequisites**

(a) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of his second year after matriculation, Geology, four papers, totalling 24 credits

Chemistry 08.120, 08.121 or 08.123

and 36 credits from other papers in any of the following subjects:

Botany, Chemistry, Geology, Mathematics, Physics, Zoology, or in any other subject approved by the Head of Department.

(b) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of his third year after matriculation, structure of Course of Study as specified for entry at the end of the second year:

24 credits from papers 21.300-21.388.

In special cases, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Geology, papers at an advanced level in any other subjects may be substituted for any of the above, provided that the candidate has gained at least 12 credits from Geology Stage III papers.

### **Geology Honours Part III**

(Geology papers totalling not fewer than 24 credits, together with practical work)

Part III shall contain papers prescribed as Geology second or third year papers, for a total of not fewer than 24 credits. In special cases, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Geology, advanced papers of other subjects may be substituted for Geology papers, provided that the Course of Study contains Geology papers totalling at least 12 credits.

### **Geology Honours Part IV**

(Three papers together with practical work and thesis)

The student shall follow one year's Course of Study approved by the Head of the Department of Geology and carry out an original investigation on an approved topic.\* The examination shall consist of three papers prescribed for the Degree of Master of Science (21.401 to 21.409 but not 86.100 or 86.102) and a thesis embodying the results of the investigation which shall be equivalent to one paper. The thesis (21.603) shall be delivered to the Registrar at the beginning of the second half of the second term.

**\*Notes:** (i) Intending students should consult the Head of Department about the research topic immediately after completing the papers for Part III.

(ii) The language for the Foreign Language Reading Examination shall be any approved by the Head of the Department of Geology and this examination should be taken as early as possible.

(iii) An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 14.

### **Applied Geology Prerequisites**

(a) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the second year after matriculation: Geology, five papers totalling at least 24 credits:

Chemistry 08.121

Mathematics (26.120 or 121) and (26.140 or 141) and (21.175)

Physics 31.140 or 31.141 and at least 18 credits from papers in any of the following subjects:

Chemistry, Computer Science, Geomechanics, Mathematics, Mineral Engineering, Physics or any other subject approved by the Head of the Department of Geology.

(b) For any candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of the third year after matriculation: structure of Course of Study as specified for entry at end of second year, and at least 24 credits from 21.301, 21.302, 21.304 or 21.284, 21.305, either (21.306 plus 21.307) or 21.386, 21.318, 21.381, 21.382, 21.388, 52.331, 52.332, 56.312, 56.314 provided at least 12 credits are from Geology Stage III papers.

In special cases, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Geology, papers at an advanced level in any other subjects may be substituted for any of the above, provided that the candidate has gained at least 12 credits from the Geology Stage III papers.

**†Applied Geology Honours Part III**

(Not fewer than 24 credits in Stage III papers approved by the Head of the Department of Geology, together with practical work.)

Not fewer than 24 credits from 21.301, 21.311, 21.302, 21.304 or 21.284, 21.305, either (21.306 plus 21.307) or 21.386, 21.318, 21.381, 21.382, 21.388, 52.331, 52.332, 56.312, 56.314, provided at least 12 credits are from Geology Stage III papers.

In special cases, with the approval of the Head of the Department of Geology, papers at an advanced level in any other subjects may be substituted for any of the above provided that the candidate has gained at least 12 credits from Geology III papers.

**Applied Geology Honours Part IV**

(Three papers together with practical work and thesis.)

The student shall follow one year's Course of Study approved by the Head of the Department of Geology and carry out an original investigation on an approved topic. The examination shall consist of three papers prescribed for the Degree of Master of Science in Applied Geology and a thesis (21.613) embodying the results of the investigation which shall be equivalent to one paper. The thesis shall be delivered to the Registrar at the beginning of the second half of the second term.

**Mathematics Prerequisites**

(a) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of his second year after matriculation: a total of 72 credits from the following subjects:

Mathematics, Chemistry, Computer Science, Physics, or in any other subject approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics provided that prerequisite papers, together with the papers selected for Part III, will enable the candidate to attain a level equivalent to the prerequisites for entry to Part IV.

(b) For a candidate seeking admission to the Honours School at the end of his third year after matriculation: Mathematics 26.220 or 26.221, 26.240 or 26.241, at least one of 26.260, 26.280, 26.281, plus twenty 300 or 400 level credits approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. Normally at least 16 of those 20 credits shall be from papers in Mathematics and Computer Science, but 12 credits in Mathematics and Computer Science may be approved in special cases.

**Mathematics Honours Part III**

(24 credits in papers approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.)

Part III shall consist of papers approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics totalling 24 credits and including such Mathematics papers as will enable attainment of a level equivalent to the prerequisites for entry to Part IV.

**Mathematics Honours Part IV**

(20 credits in papers approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.)

Part IV shall consist of papers approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics with a total credit value of 20 credits. Normally these papers will be chosen from Mathematics 26.400 to 26.499 and Computer Science 07.490 to 07.499 but the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics may approve a wider selection of relevant papers, including up to 4 Stage III credits not already taken for any other degree or diploma.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF OPTOMETRY

### BOptom

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations a candidate for the degree of Bachelor of Optometry shall follow a Course of study of not fewer than four years.

2. In these Regulations

(a) a 'paper' is an independently assessed segment of work in a subject, the successful completion of which results in the award of credits as set out in the Schedule to these Regulations.

(b) Papers are classified as Stage I (papers numbered .100-.199), Stage II (.200-.299), Stage III (.300-399) and Stage IV (.400-499).

3. A complete Course of study requires the gaining of 153 credits.

**Course Load**

4. A candidate may not enrol in any one year for papers totalling more than 50 credits.

5. A candidate in any paper of the subjects Biochemistry, Biology, Chemistry, Optometry, and Psychology shall



be required to pass both the written papers and in such practical work as may be required by the Head of Department: provided that the candidate's mark in the practical work may, with the leave of the Senate, be carried forward to a subsequent year.

6. (a) Candidates may not enrol for any paper until they have satisfied all the prerequisite and corequisite requirements for that paper, as set out in the BOptom Schedule, or have permission from the Head of the Department of Optometry.

(b) A candidate required to repeat any year III subjects may also be required to undertake such additional practical and clinical work as the Head of the Department of Optometry determines.

(c) A candidate required to repeat any of the papers 44.430, 44.431, 44.432 and 44.433 may also be required to complete such additional work and examinations in any or all of those papers as the Head of the Department of Optometry may determine.

(d) A candidate shall be required to pass independently the written component and clinical practice component of each of the papers 44.430, 44.431, 44.432 and 44.433 in order to pass each paper as a whole.

### Exceptions

7. (a) The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

(b) Every application for approval under this Regulation shall be submitted by the candidate in writing to the Registrar.

### Optional Transition From DipOpt

8. Any candidate who in or before 1981 enrolled for the Diploma in Optometry but has not completed the requirements for or been awarded that Diploma before 31 December 1987 may either (i) transfer to the Course of study for this Degree (in which case he shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers for this Degree as the Senate may determine), or (ii) complete the Course of study for the Diploma in Optometry in accordance with the Regulations for that Diploma last published in the University of Auckland *Calendar* for 1981.

### Revocation

9. The Regulations for the Diploma in Optometry are revoked (subject to Regulation 8 of these present Regulations).

10. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1982.

### Schedule

(1) This schedule sets out paper numbers, credits, prerequisites, corequisites, and restrictions applying to papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry.

(2) The schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.

(3) The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.

(4) The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.

(5) The heading 'restriction' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken together with that paper.

(6) A candidate may not take a further stage of a paper until he satisfies all prerequisite and corequisite requirements for that paper.

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours	Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
YEAR I								
Bio	39.101	Central Concepts of Biology	46	12x3	6			39.111
Chem	08.111	Organic and Physical Chemistry	46	12x3	6			
Chem	08.121	Inorganic and Physical Chemistry	46	12x3	6			
Maths	26.101	Introduction to Algebra and Calculus	46	12x1	6			26.120, 26.140 26.121, 26.141 26.122, 26.142

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours		Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
			Per Paper	Minimum Lab Hours				
Phys	31.140	Foundations of Classical Physics	46	12x3	6			31.102, 31.151 31.120, 31.123 31.125
Phys	31.150	Foundations of Modern Physics	46	12x3	6			31.101, 31.141 31.110, 31.115
Psych	32.108	Introduction to General Psychology	46		6			
Psych	32.109	Introduction to Experimental Psychology	23	23x2	6			

Note: (a) For Phys 31.140 a candidate may substitute 31.141;

(b) For Phys 31.150 a candidate may substitute 31.151.

## YEAR II

Optom	44.200	Physical Optics	12	12x2	3	31.140 or 31.141 31.150 or 31.151 26.101	44.201	
Optom	44.201	Geometrical Optics	12	12x2	3	31.140 or 31.141 31.150 or 31.151 26.101	44.200	
Optom	44.203	Ocular Anatomy	23	12x2	4	39.101	44.205	
Optom	44.205	Ocular Physiology	23	12x2	4	39.101	44.203 66.204 67.201	
Optom	44.210	Physiological Optics	46	23x3	8	39.101, 32.108 32.109	44.200, 44.201 44.203, 44.205	
Biochem	66.204	General and Ocular Biochemistry	46	10x3	6	39.101	66.201, 66.202 66.203	
Physiol	67.201	Introductory Physiology	46	23x3	6	39.101		
Psych	32.220	Human Experimental Psychology	23	23x2	4	32.108 and 32.109		32.207 23.211 32.213

## YEAR III

Optom	44.305	Ocular Pharmacology	12	6x2	2	44.203, 44.205 44.210, 66.204 67.201		
Optom	44.306	Applied Optics	23	23x2	4	44.200, 44.201		
Optom	44.310	Physiological Optics	23	12x3	4	44.203, 44.205 44.210, 66.204 67.201		
Optom	44.312	Contact Lens Practice	23	12x2	3	44.205	44.330	
Optom	44.313	Environmental Vision	23	12x2	4	44.200, 44.201 44.210		
Optom	44.314	General Pathology	23		2	44.203, 44.205 67.201	44.315	
Optom	44.315	Ocular Pathology	23	23x1	3	44.203, 44.205 44.210	44.330 44.314	
Optom	44.316	Ophthalmic Optics	23	12x2	3	44.200, 44.201 44.210	44.312	
Optom	44.330	Clinical Optometry	46	30x6	6	44.203, 44.205 44.210	44.310, 44.316	
Psych	32.213	Cognitive Processes: Introductory	12	12x2	2	32.108 and 32.109		

Subjects	Paper No	Title of Paper	Total Lecture Hours Minimum		Credits	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions
			Per Paper	Lab Hours				
YEAR IV								
Optom	44.415	Community Health Optometry Project	23		4	24 Year III Credits		
Optom	44.421				4	29 Year III Credits		
Optom	44.430	General Optometric Practice	48	33x9	8	A grade of at least C in each of 44.312, 44.315 and 44.330, and 21 other Year III credits		
Optom	44.431	Contact Lens Practice	12	33x3	6	as for 44.415		
Optom	44.432	Low Vision Practice	12	33x3	6	as for 44.415		
Optom	44.433	Binocular Vision Practice	12	33x3	6	as for 44.415		

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF SCIENCE

### MSc

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### Prerequisites

1. (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Science, before enrolment for the Degree
  - (i) shall (subject to Regulation 2) have been admitted (or have qualified for admission to) any of the following qualifying degrees:-  
Bachelor of Science (Honours); or  
Bachelor of Science; or  
Bachelor of Optometry; or  
shall have attained any other qualification approved by the Senate as equivalent to a qualifying degree; and
  - (ii) shall (subject to Regulation 3) have fulfilled the further prerequisites in the Schedule to this Regulation.
- (b) For the purposes of these Regulations, candidates for this Degree are classified according to their qualifying Degree (or equivalent qualification) and are referred to accordingly as:-  
‘BSc (Hons) candidates for this Degree’  
‘BSc candidates for this Degree’  
‘BOptom candidates for this Degree’.
- (c) For the purpose of these Regulations Medical Science will be treated as a subject offered for this Degree. For this subject the role of the Head of Department in these Regulations will be taken by the Chairman of the Committee for the MSc in Medical Science.

#### Schedule

The further prerequisites are (subject to Regulation 3):

- (a) For BSc (Hons) candidates for this Degree:-  
a pass in the final BSc (Hons) year in the subject offered for this Degree;
- (b) For BOptom candidates for this Degree:-  
a pass, with an average grade of C+ or better, in the Year IV of the course for the Degree of Bachelor of Optometry;
- (c) For BSc candidates for this Degree:-  
a pass, with an average grade of C+ or better in all Stage III BSc papers, in the appropriate prerequisite subjects, as follows:

<b>Applied Geology</b>	24 Stage III credits including at least 12 from Geology.
<b>Biochemistry</b>	Biochemistry 66.301 and 66.302.
<b>Botany</b>	24 Stage III credits, including at least 12 Stage III credits in Botany and/or Biology (prefix 39.) papers.
<b>Cellular and Molecular Biology</b>	Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.303 and at least 6 credits from Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.304 and 40.305.
<b>Chemistry</b>	08.210, 08.220, 08.230 and 18 Stage III credits, including at least 12 Stage III credits from Chemistry.
<b>Computer Science</b>	At least 20 credits at 300 or 400 level, of which at least 16 shall be from papers in Computer Science.
<b>Environmental Science</b>	18 Stage III credits including at least 12 Stage III credits from the following subjects: Biochemistry, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Chemistry, Geography, Geology, Pharmacology, Physics, Physiology and Zoology.
<b>Geography</b>	At least 16 Stage III credits, including at least 12 Stage III credits from Geography.
<b>Geology</b>	24 Stage III credits, including at least 12 Stage III credits from Geology, and up to 12 Stage III credits from other papers approved by the Head of Department.
<b>Mathematics</b>	Mathematics 26.220, or 26.221, 26.240 or 26.241, at least one of 26.260, 26.280, 26.281, plus twenty 300 or 400 level credits approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. Normally at least 16 of those 20 credits shall be from papers in Mathematics and Computer Science, but 12 credits in Mathematics and Computer Science may be approved in special cases.
<b>Medical Science</b>	18 Stage III credits including at least 12 from the following subjects: Biochemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Pharmacology, Physiology, Psychology, Zoology and such prerequisites as may be required for specific papers.
<b>Pharmacology</b>	Pharmacology 96.301; one of Biochemistry 66.301 or Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.303 or Physiology 67.301; and an additional 6 Stage III credits from Biochemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Chemistry, Computer Science, Mathematics, Physiology, Psychology or Zoology.
<b>Physics</b>	Physics 31.210, 220, 240,250, 260, 290; at least 12 credits from the Physics papers 31.312-389 including 31.320 or 31.325; at least 6 credits from the laboratory papers Physics 31.390-393; and at least 4 other credits from Stage III papers in Physics or Mathematics.
<b>Physiology</b>	18 Stage III credits including Physiology 67.301, 67.302 and 67.303, and at least 6 Stage III credits from Biochemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Psychology, Zoology, or other papers approved by the Head of Department.
<b>Psychology</b>	12 Stage III credits from Psychology.
<b>Zoology</b>	24 Stage III credits, including at least 12 Stage III credits from Zoology or Biology.

#### **Enrolment with Incomplete BSc**

2. With the approval of the Head of Department, a candidate may enrol for this Degree after having gained at least 90 credits for the Degree of Bachelor of Science, but on the following conditions:-
  - (a) the candidate's course for this Degree extends over two academic years;
  - (b) the candidate has fulfilled the prerequisites in the Schedule to Regulation 1 or been exempted from them;
  - (c) the remaining paper or papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Science are taken in the first year of the course for this Degree;
  - (d) if any remaining paper for the Degree of Bachelor of Science is not passed in the first year of the Master of Science course, the Master's course shall be suspended until that paper is passed.

#### **Variation of or Exemption from Prerequisites**

3. In any special case recommended by the Head of Department, the Senate may at its discretion -
  - (a) vary in any way; or
  - (b) exempt the candidate wholly or partly from the appropriate prerequisites in the Schedule to Regulation 1; and may accept a lower average grade than C+ in the prerequisites in paragraphs (b) and (c) of that Schedule.

#### **General Provisions**

4. Papers shall be taken in either the first or the second year or spread over two years according to the requirements of the Department.
5. (a) A candidate for this Degree may, with the permission of the Heads of the Departments concerned and with the approval of the Senate, take, by way of substitution for one paper of the subject in which the

Degree is being taken, one paper in another subject.

- (b) The combination of papers taken for the subject Medical Science must be approved by the Chairman of the Committee for the MSc in Medical Science. Papers offered in more than one aspect of Medical Science may be approved.
  - (c) The combination of papers taken for the subject Environmental Science must be approved by the Director of Environmental Science of the Faculty of Science.
6. Every candidate for this Degree shall be required to pass the prescribed papers and to present a thesis where that is prescribed by Regulation 10: except that a thesis only may, with the permission of the Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, be presented:-
- by a BSc (Hons) candidate for this Degree; on condition that the candidate fulfils any special requirements set by the Head of Department.

### **Thesis Requirements**

7. Where a thesis is required the following conditions shall apply:
- (a) The Senate shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate upon the recommendation of the Head of Department;
  - (b) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject;
  - (c) In the case of a thesis requiring laboratory work, that work shall be carried out within the University; but the Senate may permit a candidate to carry out the work in an approved institute outside the University for such limited period or periods as may be necessary;
  - (d) The candidate shall submit the thesis to the Registrar by the date prescribed in Regulation 9.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

### **Honours**

8. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours; First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Candidates who have completed the full requirements of this Degree in accordance with Regulation 10 are eligible for the award of Honours, except that a BSc (Hons) candidate for this Degree may not be awarded Honours in the Master's Degree in the same subject.
- (c) The Degree may be awarded with Distinction to any
- (i) BSc(Hons) candidate for this Degree; or
  - (ii) any candidate who has taken this Degree under exception (b) to Regulation 6: Where the candidate has achieved a standard equivalent to First Class Honours.
- (d) Honours shall not be awarded in a particular subject to any candidate who enrolled for and failed to qualify for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Science (Honours) in that subject. Such a candidate may be awarded the Degree with Distinction if a standard equivalent to First Class Honours has been achieved.
- (e) Honours shall be awarded if a candidate obtains a sufficient standard in the papers and thesis; but (subject to Regulation 9) a candidate who qualified for an aegrotat or compassionate pass may retain eligibility for Honours by applying
- (i) for an aegrotat or compassionate pass in one paper (or two papers for a course involving five or more papers), or
  - (ii) to resit all the papers affected, or
  - (iii) for a pass or passes under (i) and to resit the remaining papers affected under (ii).

**Note:** In order to be eligible for Honours or a Degree with Distinction the candidate must complete all requirements of the Degree within the time limit specified in Regulation 9.

### **Time limits**

9. (a) The requirements for this Degree in Regulation 10 shall be completed:-
- (i) in the subjects Geography and Mathematics by 1 November of the second year of enrolment;
  - (ii) in every other subject, within 24 months of the candidate's first enrolment.
- (b) In a special case the Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, grant the candidate:-
- (i) a time extension of three months, with continued eligibility for Honours or Distinction;
  - (ii) a further time extension of nine months, the candidate being no longer eligible for Honours or Distinction.
- (c) In exceptional circumstances the Senate may, on such written or other evidence as it requires, at its discretion grant a reasonable extension of time to a candidate for medical or compassionate or other compelling reasons. The extension may be granted -

- (i) whether or not there has been any extension under paragraph (b) of this Regulation; and
  - (ii) with or without continued eligibility for Honours or Distinction.
- (d) A candidate taking this Degree by thesis only shall submit the thesis within 18 months of first enrolment; but the time may be extended under paragraphs (b) and (c) of this Regulation.

### List of Subjects

10. The subjects of examination and relative requirements as to theses for this Degree, together with the prescription numbers relative to each examination paper, are as follows:

<b>Applied Geology</b>	Three papers and a thesis 21.611 which shall count as two papers; Foreign Language Reading Examination. One paper only from any three of the following four groups 21.408, (21.471 to 21.478), 21.484, and any one approved paper listed in the ME schedule. The chosen foreign language must be approved by the Head of Department of Geology; with the approval of the Head of Department the Foreign Language Reading requirement may be waived in the case of a student whose mother tongue is not English.
<b>Biochemistry</b>	Three papers and a thesis 66.601 which shall count as three papers (papers 66.401 to 66.403).
<b>Botany</b>	Three papers and a thesis 06.601 which shall count as three papers (papers 06.402 to 06.460).
<b>Cellular and Molecular Biology</b>	Three papers and a thesis 40.601 which shall count as three papers (papers 40.401, 40.402, 40.403).
<b>Chemistry</b>	Five papers and a thesis 08.601 which shall count as four papers (five papers from 08.410-08.450).
<b>Computer Science</b>	Papers totalling 24 credits and a thesis 07.601 which shall count as 24 credits or papers totalling 24 credits and an advanced course of study 07.605 which shall count as 24 credits. Normally the papers will be selected from Computer Science 07.400 to 07.499. The selection of papers must be approved by the Head of Department of Computer Science.
<b>Environmental Science</b>	Four papers and a thesis 64.601 which shall count as four papers. The papers are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Environmental Science 64.401 and</li> <li>(ii) two 400-level papers in one subject selected from Biochemistry, Botany, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Geography, Geology, Pharmacology, Physics, Physiology, Zoology or in the case of Chemistry 3 papers which in determining the overall result will be treated as the equivalent of 2 papers in the other subjects and</li> <li>(iii) one Stage III or Master's 400-level paper in another Science subject or Civil Engineering 52.391 or 52.392, Economics 13.413, Law 25.327 or Planning 36.451.</li> </ul>
<b>Geography</b>	Four papers and a thesis 20.601 which shall count as three papers (four papers from 20.400 to 20.445).
<b>Geology</b>	Three papers and a thesis 21.601 which shall count as two papers; Foreign Language Reading Examination (three papers from 21.401 to 21.409 and 86.100 or 86.102, the chosen foreign language must be approved by the Head of Department of Geology; with the approval of the Head of Department the Foreign Language Reading Requirements may be waived in the case of a student whose mother tongue is not English).
<b>Mathematics</b>	Papers totalling 20 credits and a thesis 26.601 which will count as 16 credits or papers totalling 20 credits and an advanced course of study 26.605 which will count as 16 credits. The selection of papers is to be made with the approval of the Head of Department of Mathematics and Statistics of papers from Mathematics 26.400 to 26.499 and Computer Science 07.490 to 07.499. Up to four of the twenty credits may be replaced by four Stage III credits from papers in Mathematics and Computer Science not already taken for any other Degree or Diploma.
<b>Medical Science</b>	Three papers and a thesis 89.601 which shall count as three papers. The combination of papers selected from Biochemistry 66.401-403, Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.403, Physiology 67.401-406, Psychology 32.406, 410, 416, 419, Pharmacology 96.404-407 or Medical Science 89.401-404 must be approved by the Chairman of the Committee for the MSc in Medical Science.
<b>Optometry</b>	Three papers and a thesis 44.601 which shall count as three papers (two papers from 44.551 to 44.554, plus a third paper from another subject for this Degree approved by the Heads of Departments concerned).

<b>Pharmacology</b>	Three papers and a thesis 96.621 which shall count as three papers (two papers from 96.404 to 96.407, plus a third paper from Biochemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Medical Science or Physiology for this Degree, the choice of paper to be approved by the Head of Department concerned, or, for Medical Science, by the Chairman of the Committee for the MSc in Medical Science).
<b>Physics</b>	Four papers and a thesis 31.601 which shall count as four papers (four papers from 31.410-31.489).
<b>Physiology</b>	Three papers and a thesis 67.621 which shall count as three papers (three papers from 67.401 to 67.406).
<b>Psychology</b>	Four papers and a thesis 32.601 which shall count as three papers (four papers from 32.401 to 32.421).
<b>Zoology</b>	Three papers and a thesis 38.601 which shall count as three papers (three papers from 38.401 to 38.411).

### Exceptions

11. In exceptional cases the Senate may approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
12. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1985.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DEPARTMENT OF BIOCHEMISTRY

#### Stage II

*Prerequisites:* See BSc Schedule. Entry to Biochemistry II is limited.

#### 66.202 Molecular Aspects of Cells

(One paper and practical work)

An introduction to molecular structures of biochemical importance and their relationships to cellular structure and function. Topics include biochemical thermodynamics; amino acids; carbohydrates and polysaccharides; lipids; nucleic acids; purification of proteins; protein structure; enzymes; cell membranes and transport; mitochondria and chloroplasts; specialised cell functions; elementary immunochemistry.

The course is a prerequisite for those advancing to papers 66.301, 66.302 BSc (Hons) and the MSc Degree in Biochemistry. Passes are required in both the written paper and in practical work (BSc Regulation 7).

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week.

Two tests will be held during the year.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes totalling 72 hours. Performance in practical work will contribute 30% of the final grade for the course. Students should wear a laboratory coat and covered footwear in the laboratory.

*Prerequisites:* 6 credits from any Stage I Chemistry course and Biology, 39.101.

#### 66.203 Central Concepts of Metabolism

(One paper and practical work)

An introduction to metabolism with particular emphasis on regulation and control – highlighting regulatory enzymes, covalent modification and amplification; energy-yielding pathways; compara-

tive metabolism of animal, bacterial and plant cells; hormones.

The course is a prerequisite for those proceeding to papers 66.301, 66.302 BSc (Hons) and the MSc Degree in Biochemistry. Passes are required in both the written paper and practical work (BSc Regulation 7). *Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week. Two tests will be held during the year.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes totalling 72 hours. Performance in practical work will contribute to 20% of the final grade for the course. Students should wear laboratory coats and covered footwear in the laboratory.

*Prerequisites:* (6 credits from any Stage I Chemistry course and Biology 39.101).

Combined Enrolment in 66.202 and 66.203 is limited to 50.

#### Stage III

*Prerequisites:* See BSc Schedule.

#### 66.301 Biochemistry of Macromolecules

(One paper and practical work)

Topics introduced in papers 66.202 and 66.203 are treated in greater depth, emphasis is placed upon the biochemistry of macromolecules with particular reference to structure and its elucidation using contemporary methods of protein, glycoprotein and nucleic acid sequencing, high-field NMR and other forms of spectroscopy and mass spectrometry. Practical work is concerned with the theory and practice of analytical procedures used by biochemists.

#### 66.302 Metabolic Interrelationships

(One paper and practical work)

This course examines recent advances in biochemistry such as mechanisms of communication in plants, the molecular biology of growth factors,

aspects of the chemistry and biochemistry of haemoglobins, the structure and function of glycoprotein hormones and other topics of current interest. *Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than six hours a week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course. Students should wear a laboratory coat and covered footwear during practical classes.

Entry to Biochemistry III may have to be restricted if the number of applicants exceeds the number of laboratory places. Candidates who lack one or more of the prerequisites listed in the BSc Schedule are also permitted to make preliminary application. Competence in mathematics up to University Entrance level is assumed.

### **Biochemistry for MSc**

Three papers and a thesis (66.601)

**66.401, 66.402, 66.403.** The general study of biochemistry at an advanced level with a special focus on recent developments in biochemistry and molecular biology. Considerable emphasis is placed upon direct reading, tutorials and seminars in each paper.

Candidates for the Master's Degree should consult the Head of the Department as soon as possible after the completion of the Bachelor's Degree, in order to select a thesis topic and to obtain advice on vacation reading.

The course will be of a minimum duration of one year; the student should normally expect to complete his or her thesis during the following year.

Students from other Universities must have taken Biochemistry to an advanced undergraduate level (e.g. Biochemistry Advanced 2 as offered at Otago University).

### **Research in Biochemistry**

Research facilities are available for PhD students and post-doctoral workers in various areas of biochemistry as listed in the Faculty of Science Handbook.

Intending applicants should make application to the Head of Department in the first instance.

## **DEPARTMENT OF BOTANY**

### **Stage I**

The first year course for students in Botany, Zoology or Biology consists of three 6-credit papers, Biology 101 (Paper 39.101), Botany 102 (Paper 06.102) and Zoology 102 (Paper 38.102).

#### **39.101 Central Concepts in Biology**

Biochemical concepts common to animals, micro-organisms and plants; the biochemistry of macromolecules, especially nucleic acids and proteins; enzyme action and catalysis; cellular energetics; genetic principles and mechanisms; fundamental processes of ecosystems; population and community dynamics; organic evolution. This course may be taken as part of the Stage I requirement in either Bo-

tany or Zoology, but may not receive credit in both.

#### **06.102 Form and Function in Plants**

An introductory course including the study of major plant groups. Topics covered include major features of NZ flora and vegetation; cytological and anatomical architecture and their relation to photosynthesis, respiration, translocation and transpiration; the regulation of growth and reproduction. The course will include a number of small group discussions and one or two field trips which students will be expected to attend.

### **Stage II**

The course consists of Botany 202 or 204, Botany 205, Botany 221, Biology 210 together with practical work including field trips.

#### **06.202 Evolution Morphology and Cell Structure of Vascular Plants**

The anatomy, morphology and systematics of gymnosperms and angiosperms together with an introduction to cytology and ultrastructure.

#### **\*06.204 Mycology and Microbial Interactions with Higher Plants**

Introduction to bacteria and microbial nutrition. Fungal morphology, physiology, taxonomy and life cycles, especially of pathogens. Micro-organisms in the soil and on plant surfaces and their role in decomposition and recycling. Pathogenic and non-pathogenic interactions with higher plants.

#### **06.205 Crop Physiology and Plant Breeding**

A study of physiology and breeding systems of plants with special emphasis given to fruit and vegetable crops of the Auckland region. The genetic component will include origin and domestication of crop plants, breeding systems, chromosome manipulation and plant breeding, gene banks and the conservation of genetic resources. Physiological aspects will emphasize the physiology of sexual and asexual reproduction by traditional and modern methods (e.g. tissue culture), the manipulation of plant habit and development, and the physiology of production and storage of the harvestable portions of crops (fruit, flowers and tubers).

#### **39.210 Population and Community Ecology**

Elementary demography and models of population growth with equal emphasis on plants and animals. Species interactions in multispecies associations, competition and predation. The emphasis will be on experimental ecology of plants and animals from a wide range of habitats. Examples are drawn from New Zealand marine environment and native forests. Practical work includes a compulsory field course, normally held during the first week of the May vacation, concentrating on the description and dynamics of native forest ecosystems (see below for dates).

#### **06.221 Plant Physiology**

An introduction to plant physiology and biochemistry with particular emphasis on plant response



to environment. **Water:** water potentials and water movement in the soil-plant-atmosphere continuum; water stress; plant adaptation. **Oxygen:** principles of gas exchange; structural adaptations to oxygen deficit; biochemical adaptations to oxygen deficit. **Temperature:** enzyme reactions, membrane effects, thermal adaptation. **Mineral nutrition:** criteria of essentiality; uptake mechanisms; role of nutrients. Laboratories will cover basic techniques used to study plant responses to these factors.

### Stage III

The course consists of a selection of papers from Biology 311, 313, 314, and Botany 302 to 371 together with practical work, including field trips.

#### 06.302 Evolution, Morphology and Cell Structure of Vascular Plants

See Botany 202.

#### \*06.304. Mycology and Microbial Interaction with Higher Plants

See Botany 204.

#### 39.311 Freshwater Ecology

Animal and plant freshwater communities, particularly of lakes and rivers, the physical and chemical environment; physiography of rivers and lakes; hydrology; pollution. Part of the course will consist of a weekend field course and four one-day field trips normally held in the first week of May vacation (see below for dates).

#### 39.313 Terrestrial Ecology

Sampling, with reference to forest communities; ordination and classification. Community theory and concepts of stability and diversity. Animal-plant interactions particularly with respect to New Zealand. Forest dynamics and the study of both temporal and spatial change. A compulsory residential field class is held during enrolment week (see below for dates). Interpretation of the field data will take place during some Wednesday laboratory times.

#### 39.314 Applied Ecology

The application of ecological principles to resource management, including natural recreational resources, forests and fisheries; aspects of the conservation of natural ecosystems — the planning process.

#### 06.321 Plant Physiology

Photosynthetic metabolism, with particular reference to productivity: light reactions, carbon pathways, chloroplast control mechanisms, photorespiration, limiting factors and diffusion resistances.

#### 06.325 Differentiation in Plants

Growth, differentiation, pattern and form. Control processes involved in vascular development, root initiation, root shoot interaction and other correlative processes, developmental processes such as flowering, geotropism. Emphasis is placed on the role of plant growth regulators and on those processes which have important implications for crop development. Practical work is by an experimental project.

#### 06.331 Plant Pathology 1

Review of fungal diseases of significance to the NZ economy; plant pathogenic nematodes, bacteria, viruses and mycoplasmas; techniques for diagnosis, isolation, culture and identification/characterisation of pathogenic organisms.

#### 06.332 Plant Pathology 2

Mechanisms of fungal pathogenesis; effects of disease on host plant physiology; host-pathogen interactions at the cellular level; epidemiology, diseases assessment and forecasting; principles of disease control, chemical and biological control of disease.

#### 06.341 Plant Genetics

Plant cytogenetics to include chromosome structure and genome organisation, chromosome behaviour in normal cell division and in structural and numerical mutants, B (supernumerary) chromosomes, sex chromosomes, chromosome evolution.

#### 06.361 Advanced Plant Taxonomy

Classical and experimental approaches to the study of taxonomic relationships in metaphytes including cytological, chemical and numerical techniques as well as field and herbarium methods and a knowledge of plant nomenclature rules. Phylogenetic and phenetic systems of classification; analysis of variation; speciation processes. Students should expect to attend a field course at Tongariro National Park in the May vacation (see below for dates).

#### 06.371 Marine Botany

Marine plants and communities; the sea as an environment for plant growth; photosynthesis and productivity in the sea; reproduction and life histories of marine plants; the utilisation and cultivation of seaweeds and microalgae. The practical work includes a residential 5 day class at the Leigh Laboratory during the August Vacation (see below for dates).

#### Laboratory Work

The practical work will be assessed separately and the marks included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass both in the written examination and in the practical work is necessary for credit to be awarded for a paper (BSc Regulation 7).

#### Field Courses in Botany/Biology, 1988

**06.361:** 23-27 May                      **39.311:** 30 April and 1

**06.371:** 15-19 August                      May and 9-12 May

**39.210:** 8-13 May                      **39.313:** 21-26 February

#### Botany for MSc

This course takes from fifteen months to two years and requires full-time attendance. It comprises three papers selected from 06.402 to 06.460 inclusive, together with a thesis (06.601) which is equivalent to three papers.

Students intending to read for MSc should consult the Head of Department as soon as possible after the completion of the Bachelor's Degree, in order to select a thesis topic and to have sufficient time to establish that appropriate facilities will be available for the research programme.

**60.402 Selected Topics in Botany**

A specialist course of study into aspects of current research.

**60.410 Plant Ecology**

Selected topics in plant demography. Forest community concepts. Field techniques and computer analysis. Historical plant ecology.

**60.420 Plant Physiology and Biochemistry**

In depth consideration of selected topics.

**60.430 Plant Pathology**

In depth consideration of selected topics.

**60.450 Developmental Botany, pure and applied**

A study of contemporary research into aspects of the anatomy, ultrastructure and physiology of plant development.

**60.460 Plant Systematics and Genetics**

In depth consideration of selected topics in plant classification and cytogenetics.

(See also MSc Regulation 4)

**Postgraduate Research: MSc Thesis and PhD**

Facilities are available for MSc and PhD research in a wide range of topics in Botany and Biology.

**DEPARTMENT OF CELLULAR AND MOLECULAR BIOLOGY****Stage III**

*Prerequisites:* See BSc Schedule.

**40.303 Cellular and Molecular Biology**

*Lectures:* Optical and electron microscopical methods used in the study of cell structure. The fine structure of cellular organelles and components in relation to their function. The structure, biosynthesis and function of nucleic acids and proteins. The Genetic Code. Genetic regulatory mechanisms in bacteria and eukaryotes. The mammalian cell cycle and control of growth of mammalian cells by hormones and other agents. An introduction to recombinant DNA technology.

*Laboratories:* The laboratory course will cover basic methods used to fix and examine biological material by light and electron microscopy. Experiments will also be performed with proteins and nucleic acids to illustrate their properties and the techniques used to investigate the structure and function of these materials.

**40.304 Microbial and Molecular Genetics**

*Lectures:* The units of mutation, function and recombination in bacteria and bacterial viruses. The transmission and recombination of genetic material in bacterial viruses, bacteria and diploid micro-organisms. Eukaryotic somatic cell genetics.

*Laboratories:* The laboratory course will cover basic methods used in bacteriology and microbiology as an introduction to experiments in microbial genetics. Experiments will be performed to illustrate methods of transmission of genetic information in micro-organisms and the experimental application of such

techniques to the resolution of problems of gene order and organisation of chromosomes.

**40.305 Plant and Animal Molecular Biology**

*Lectures:* The culture of animal cells *in vitro*. Immunity, the structure and synthesis of antibodies, and the cellular basis of the immune response. The molecular biology of viruses infecting animal cells. The molecular basis for the malignant transformation of cells. The molecular assembly of cellular structures. The nuclear, mitochondrial, and chloroplast genomes of plant cells. Plant cell and tissue culture techniques. Plasmid and virus vectors for gene transfer in plants and animals and their application in agriculture and horticulture.

*Laboratories:* An introduction to the culture of animal cells. Techniques used for studying antibodies and the cells involved in the immune response. An introduction to plant cell culture, including the isolation of protoplasts. Techniques for the isolation of plant organelles and nucleic acids and aspects of plant transformation using *Agrobacterium* plasmid vectors.

**Cellular and Molecular Biology for MSc and Honours**

Three papers and a Thesis (40.601).

**40.401 Cellular and Molecular Biology****40.402 Microbial and Molecular Genetics****40.403 Plant and Animal Molecular Biology**

The material for Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.303, 304 and 305 considered in greater depth, with knowledge of some of the current original literature. The course will be based on selected topics in Membrane Biology, Molecular Biology, Microbial and Molecular Genetics, Immunology, Virology, Gene Transfer and Gene Expression in Plants and Animals. *Prerequisites:* For Auckland students, at least 12 credits from Cellular and Molecular Biology 303, 304 or 305 (or Cell Biology 301 and 302 prior to 1979). Students from other universities or colleges must have taken some suitable subject to an advanced undergraduate level (e.g. Bio-chemistry Advanced II or Microbiology Advanced II as offered at Otago University). For students from other universities the MSc degree will normally involve a two-year course, in which the candidates may be required to take all or part of the course work for Cellular and Molecular Biology Stage III.

Although not a prerequisite, it is strongly suggested that intending Master's students should have taken a Radiochemistry course such as 08.352 or 08.250.

Students are reminded of the requirement of a grade of at least C+ in all Stage III subjects for BSc that are prerequisite for MSc (see MSc Regulation 1 (c)).

*Thesis:* The preparation of a thesis (40.601) is a most important feature of the work and a large part of the student's time should be devoted to this aspect of the course. The topic of research for the thesis can be in virology, electron microscopy, immunology,

molecular genetics or molecular biology or plant molecular genetics.

### **Research in Cellular and Molecular Biology**

Facilities are available for research by PhD and post-doctoral students in the fields of virology, molecular genetics, electron microscopy, molecular biology and plant molecular genetics. An outline of courses appropriate to students intending to advance to research in Cellular and Molecular Biology may be found in the Science Faculty Handbook and other departmental publications.

Intending students should consult the Head of the Department as early as possible.

**Note:** An MSc in Cellular and Molecular Biology is not a prerequisite for PhD registration.

---

## **DEPARTMENT OF CHEMISTRY**

The courses in Chemistry for the BSc Degree under these regulations are progressive; although prerequisites have not been prescribed more restrictively than necessary, students should bear in mind that familiarity with relevant material from earlier courses is assumed in the later ones.

### **First Year Courses**

#### **08.111 (6 credits) Organic and Physical Chemistry**

Structure, properties and spectra of organic compounds, acid-base equilibria, kinetics, systematic organic chemistry.

**Lectures:** Students will attend two lectures a week for the whole year and twelve 3-hour laboratory sessions throughout the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection (safety glasses with glass lenses). A pass in both theory and practical is necessary. Coursework comprises tests and the practical. The final grade is assessed from tests 24%, practical 20%, final examination 56%; or practical 20%, final examination 80%; whichever is to the student's advantage.

#### **08.121 (6 credits) Inorganic and Physical Chemistry**

Atomic structure, the molecular structure and reactions of selected elements and their compounds, chemical bonding, energetics, equilibria and electrochemistry.

**Lectures:** Students will attend two lectures a week for the whole year and twelve 3-hour laboratory sessions throughout the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection (safety glasses with glass lenses). A pass in both theory and practical is necessary. Coursework comprises tests and the practical. The final grade is assessed from tests 24%, practical 20%, final examination 56%; or practical 20%, final examination 80%; whichever is to the student's advantage.

### **Supplementary Chemistry**

This course is designed to assist students who do not have a strong background of chemistry. It will revise

the basic principles of chemistry and provide background for the laboratory and lecture courses in 08.111 and 08.121. No enrolment is required, and no credit is given towards the BSc. The course begins straight after enrolment, on Tuesday, Wednesday and Thursday, 23-25 February, starting at 9.00 am each day. During the teaching year Supplementary Chemistry is held at 8.00 am on Wednesday each week, covering the theory for the following week's laboratory assignment.

### **Advanced Courses**

Familiarity with the relevant material in the first-year courses will be assumed.

#### **08.210 (6 credits) Physical and Analytical Chemistry**

(One three-hour paper and practical work)

This course includes analytical chemistry, diatomic spectroscopy, reaction rates and mechanism, thermodynamics and chemical equilibrium.

**Lectures:** Students will attend two lectures a week. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

**Laboratories:** The practical course covers both analytical and physical chemistry. Students will attend practical classes of not less than 72 hours by doing six hours per week for half the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

**Prerequisite:** 08.111 and 08.121 or 1987 prerequisites.

#### **08.220 (6 credits) Inorganic, Structural and Theoretical Chemistry**

(One three-hour paper and practical work)

The course provides an introduction to chemical bonding, and to the chemistry of the solid state. Aspects of the chemistry of transition metal and main group elements are treated at greater depth. An introduction to kinetic studies of inorganic systems is also included.

**Lectures:** Students will attend two lectures a week. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

**Laboratories:** Students will attend practical classes of not less than 72 hours by doing 6 hours per week for half the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

**Prerequisite:** 08.111 and 08.121 or 1987 prerequisites.

#### **08.230 (6 credits) Organic Chemistry**

(One three-hour paper and practical work)

The course is based on the prescribed text and covers the structure and reactions of carbon compounds, classified by functional groups. An introduction to the chemistry of molecules of biological importance and

to applied organic chemistry is included.

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 72 hours by doing six hours per week for half the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

*Prerequisite:* 08.111 and 08.121 or 1987 prerequisites. Entry to Chemistry 08.230 is limited to 142 students.

### **08.250 (2 credits) Radiochemical Techniques for Biological Scientists**

This service course is designed to meet the needs of biological scientists, health workers and natural scientists who anticipate working with tracer quantities of radio-isotopes. It is not to be regarded as a training course for chemists. Students who expect to major in chemistry should generally enrol in 08.352 to gain experience in the principles and practice of radiochemistry. Principles of radioactive decay, quenching and self absorption, instrumental measurement of activity and dose, pulse height analysis, scintillation counting of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  nuclides, homogeneous and heterogeneous counting, radio-autography, radiological safety, waste disposal.

Ten lectures and ten three-hour laboratory sessions. One test ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  hr) will be held outside lecture hours. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

*Prerequisite:* 08.111 or 08.121

### **08.310 (3 credits) Physical Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

The course includes spectra and structure of polyatomic molecules, molecular thermodynamics and kinetics.

*Lectures:* One lecture per week throughout the year. One test (20%) and assignments (10%) will comprise the coursework requirement of 30%.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 6 hours per week in any one quarter of the teaching year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

*Prerequisite:* 08.210

### **08.311 (3 credits) Physical Chemistry: Applications**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

The course will consist of a series of topics in the area of applied physical chemistry. These topics will include subjects such as catalysis, surface chemistry, polymer chemistry, dynamic electrochemistry, photochemistry etc. The list of topics for the year will be

available within the Department in January.

*Lectures:* One lecture per week throughout the year. One test (20%) and assignments (10%) will comprise the coursework requirement of 30%.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 6 hours per week in any one quarter of the teaching year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

*Prerequisite:* 08.210

*Corequisite:* 08.310

### **08.320 (3 credits) Inorganic Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

The course will cover aspects of organometallic chemistry and bio-inorganic chemistry.

*Lectures:* Students will attend a total of 23 lectures during the year. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 36 hours during the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

*Prerequisite:* 08.220

### **08.321 (3 credits) Physical-Inorganic Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

The course includes aspects of inorganic kinetics, quantum chemistry, and co-ordination chemistry.

*Lectures:* Students will attend a total of 23 lectures during the year. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 36 hours during the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course. A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

*Prerequisite:* 08.220

### **08.330 (3 credits) Advanced Organic Chemistry A**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

This course deals with topics not already covered in the prescribed Chemistry 08.230 text. They include nitrogen, sulfur, and phosphorus compounds, aromatic compounds, hetero-cycles and natural products.

*Lectures:* Students will attend one lecture per week during the year. Two tests will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 36 hours during the year. This will normally be done in quarters 1 or 2 during the first

half of the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

*Prerequisite:* 08.230

Entry to Chemistry 08.330 is limited to 50 students.

### **08.331 (3 credits) Advanced Organic Chemistry B**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

This course deals with topics such as stereochemistry, the study of reaction mechanisms, radicals, photochemistry, pericyclic reactions, and reactions of carbonyl compounds.

*Lectures:* Students will attend one lecture per week during the year. Two tests will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes of not less than 36 hours during the year. This will normally be done in quarters 3 or 4 during the second half of the year. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

*Prerequisite:* 08.230

*Corequisite:* 08.330

Entry to Chemistry 08.331 is limited to 50 students.

### **08.340 (3 credits) Structural Methods in Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

This course deals with physical methods of determining chemical structures. Background theory is described for mass spectrometry, nuclear magnetic resonance, infrared and Raman spectroscopy, and X-ray structural analysis. Practical applications in inorganic, organic and organometallic chemistry are included. The course will consist of 32 lectures and 20 hours to be devoted to practical work and laboratory assignments. One test will be held outside lecture hours. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

*Prerequisite:* 08.210

*Corequisites:* 08.220 and 08.230

### **08.352 (3 credits) Radiochemistry**

The course is designed to meet the needs of chemists or biologists who anticipate working with tracer quantities of radioisotopes. Counting methods and counting statistics, handling radioactive substances, source preparation, radiological safety, three channel beta scintillation spectrometry, gamma spectroscopy, neutron activation, radioisotope generators and application of the principles and practice of radio-

chemistry to environmental, biological and chemical problems.

Sixteen lectures and sixteen three-hour laboratory sessions. Two tests will be held outside lecture hours. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection.

*Prerequisites:* 08.210

*Restrictions:* 08.250, 08.350

### **08.360 (3 credits) Analytical Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

The course will cover instrumental methods of analysis. It will consist of 16 lectures and 48 hours laboratory work on a project in analysis. One test will be held outside lecture hours. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

*Prerequisite:* 08.210

Entry to Chemistry 08.360 is limited to 24 students.

### **08.370 (3 credits) Environmental Chemistry**

(One two-hour paper and practical work)

The course covers aspects of the chemistry of the atmosphere, natural waters, and the land surface. A section on hazards associated with chemicals and their handling is also included.

*Lectures:* Students will attend one lecture a week. One test will be held outside lecture hours.

*Laboratories:* Students will attend practical classes, totalling 36 hours, at times to be arranged. No student may enter the laboratory unless wearing an approved form of eye protection. Performance in the practical work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

A pass both in the written paper and in the practical course is necessary.

*Prerequisite:* 08.210

*Restriction:* 08.270

Entry to Chemistry 08.370 is limited to 30 students.

### **†08.390 (3 credits) Advanced Topics in Chemistry**

### **†08.391 (3 credits) Advanced Topics in Chemistry**

## **Chemistry for MSc and Honours**

Candidates must select five papers from those numbered 08.410-08.450 inclusive. The assessment of a student's overall attainment in the degree will be made on the basis that each of the five papers has a weight of one, and the thesis 08.601 has a weight of four.

Students intending to read for MSc and Honours should consult the Head of the Department as soon as possible after the completion of the Bachelor's Degree, regarding allocation of a thesis topic and to ensure availability of laboratory facilities. The course is normally of one year's duration, but the thesis may, with the approval of the Head of the Department, be

completed during the second year. [See clause 2 (d) of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).]

An overall prerequisite for the course is that students have completed 08.210, 08.220 and 08.230 and 18 Stage III credits including at least 12 Stage III credits from Chemistry.

#### **08.410 Interfacial Chemistry and Kinetics**

(One 3-hour paper)

This course will include surface chemistry, electrochemistry, kinetics and catalysis.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

#### **08.411 Molecular Spectroscopy and Bonding**

(One 3-hour paper)

This course will cover aspects of molecular spectroscopy, magnetic resonance spectroscopy, chemical structure and bonding, including applications of symmetry and group theory to these topics.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

#### **08.420 Inorganic Chemistry**

(One 3-hour paper)

This course will cover topics in organo-transition metal chemistry, co-ordination chemistry, and structural chemistry.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

#### **08.421 Physical Inorganic Chemistry**

(One 3-hour paper)

This course will cover aspects of bonding, kinetics and mechanism in inorganic chemistry.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

#### **08.430 Organic Chemistry: Reactions and Synthesis**

(One 3-hour paper)

This is a course in which the principles of organic chemistry are applied to organic synthesis.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

#### **08.431 Organic Chemistry: Physical Organic and Mechanistic**

(One 3-hour paper)

This course will cover aspects of the investigation of organic reactions including physical-organic chemistry.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 30 lectures during the year.

#### **08.450 Special Topics in Chemistry**

(One 3-hour paper)

Students must choose three topics in specialised areas of chemistry from a selection to be offered.

*Lectures:* Students will attend 10 lectures in each topic selected.

In addition to attending prescribed lectures, students will be required to prepare and discuss a number of selected topics of special interest.

### **PhD in Chemistry**

Thesis 08.602 and oral examination. Facilities are available for postgraduate research on a wide variety of topics in all branches of Chemistry. Further information is available from the Head of Department. The PhD course usually takes between two and three years of full-time study and research.

## **DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE**

### **Stage I Courses**

#### **07.100 (6 credits) Introduction to Programming**

An introduction to algorithm and program design. Programming in a structured language (Pascal). This course is intended for students who may wish to advance in Computer Science.

#### **07.101 (6 credits) Elements of Computing**

Computer systems. Elementary programming. Applications of computers. Use of software packages. This course is intended for students who have no wish to advance in Computer Science.

#### **07.105 (6 credits) Introduction to Computer Science**

Introduction to data structures: implementation and applications of stacks, lists, queues, trees, strings, etc. Computer architecture and machine-level programming. Introduction to numerical computation: computational errors and elementary algorithms.

### **Stage II Courses**

#### **07.210 (4 credits) Computer Organisation**

This course deals with the logical structure of digital computers and systems. Topics include: number representation and binary arithmetic; digital logic; implementation of a simplified processor; architectural aspects of conventional machines; assembly languages; hardware requirements for high-level language support; computer peripherals.

#### **07.220 (4 credits) Data Structures**

Data structures and associated algorithms. The analysis of algorithms. Programming in Prolog. The application of data structures to language implementation.

#### **07.230 (4 credits) Computing Laboratory**

This course introduces techniques for developing and maintaining large programs. Extensive practical programming experience is provided.

#### **07.235 (4 credits) Computer Applications**

This course studies the applications of Computer Science, particularly to commercial areas. Topics will include: Commercial file processing, programming in Cobol. Office applications packages such as for word processing.

#### **07.290 (4 credits) Numerical Computation**

Introduction to the numerical algorithms fundamental to scientific computer work. Interpolation and approximation, numerical differentiation and integration, solution of nonlinear equations, linear systems of equations.

**74.220 (4 credits) Systems Analysis**

See Prescriptions Department of Management Science and Information Systems Faculty of Commerce.

**74.221 (4 credits) Programming Laboratory**

See Prescriptions Department of Management Science and Information Systems Faculty of Commerce.

**Stage III Courses****07.301 (2 credits) Topic in Computer Science (a)****07.302 (2 credits) Topic in Computer Science (b)****07.303 (2 credits) Topic in Computer Science (c)****07.304 (4 credits) Topic in Computer Science (d)****07.305 (4 credits) Topic in Computer Science (e)****07.306 (4 credits) Topic in Computer Science (f)**

One or more of these topics papers may be taught in any particular year. The actual contents of such courses and the requirements that must be met before departmental approval to enrol in them is given, will be announced prior to enrolment. Enrolment is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

**07.310 (4 credits) Advanced Computer Organisation**

This paper continues on from 07.210 in describing the organisation of modern computer systems. Topics include microprogramming, virtual storage, data communication, high-level language support, advanced machine structures, and several case studies.

**07.320 (4 credits) Database Systems**

This course deals with the storage and manipulation of data. Material includes: development of database management systems; hierarchic, network and relational data models; languages for data description, manipulation and querying; performance, reliability and security; design considerations; existing systems; advanced topics.

**07.330 (4 credits) Language Implementation**

The compilation and interpretation of computer languages. Lexical analysis. Top down and bottom up parsing. Error recovery. Symbol table analysis. Translation of control structures. Virtual machine models. In-line, threaded, and interpreted code. Linking. The comparison of implementation techniques necessary for various computer languages.

**07.340 (4 credits) Operating Systems**

What is an operating system? Operating system principles: concurrent processes, processor management, memory management, disk management, other peripherals, security. Interacting with people: system implementation and job control languages.

**07.351 (4 credits) Formal Languages, Automata and Computability**

Mathematical preliminaries: graphs, trees, semi-groups. Grammars. Finite state automata and regular languages. Push-down automata and context-free languages. Turing machines and computability.

**07.352 (4 credits) Design and Analysis of Algorithms**

A study of aspects of problem solving and algorithm design, including the following topics: algorithm efficiency, order analysis, profiling, design levels, fine tuning, abstract data types, program verification, invariants, recursion, parallel algorithms, and decidability.

**07.360 (4 credits) Introduction to Artificial Intelligence**

An introduction to the methods and applications of artificial intelligence. The nature of artificial intelligence. Languages for artificial intelligence. Problem solving and search. Knowledge representation. Applications in areas such as expert systems, natural language, perception, robotics, learning and planning.

**07.390 (4 credits) Numerical Analysis**

Analysis of methods of numerical interpolation, differentiation and quadrature. Numerical methods for differential equations.

**26.391 (4 credits) Optimisation in Operations Research**

See Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**26.395 (4 credits) Mathematic Modelling for Operations Research**

See Department of Mathematics and Statistics entry.

**74.320 (4 credits) System Design**

See Prescriptions Department of Management Science and Information Systems Faculty of Commerce

**74.321 (4 credits) Systems Project**

See Prescriptions Department of Management Science and Information Systems Faculty of Commerce

**74.322 (4 credits) Data Base Management Systems**

See Prescriptions Department of Management Science and Information Systems Faculty of Commerce

**74.323 (4 credits) Systems Economics**

See Prescriptions Department of Management Science and Information Systems Faculty of Commerce

**74.324 (4 credits) Data Communications**

See Prescriptions Department of Management Science and Information Systems Faculty of Commerce

**BSc (Honours) in Computer Science**

The regulations covering the BSc (Hons) in Computer Science are included in the general regulations for the degree. This course is designed to allow students of high ability to complete an Honours degree in four years and thus be eligible to proceed directly to a PhD degree and be eligible for the award of post-graduate scholarships. Students who obtain the BSc (Hons) will be permitted to advance to an

MSc by presenting a thesis or by pursuing an approved advanced course of study.

### Courses for MSc and Honours

Candidates for this degree select papers totalling 24 credits approved by the Head of the Computer Science Department. Normally these papers are selected from the list that follows.

In addition they write a thesis (07.601) or take an advanced course of study (07.605), either of which counts as 24 credits. Not all 400 level papers will be offered each year but those that are, together with their prescriptions, will be announced prior to enrolment.

#### Paper

<i>Number</i>	<i>Credits</i>
<b>07.401 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (a)</b>	1
<b>07.402 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (b)</b>	1
<b>07.403 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (c)</b>	1
<b>07.404 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (d)</b>	1
<b>07.405 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (e)</b>	2
<b>07.406 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (f)</b>	2
<b>07.407 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (g)</b>	2
<b>07.408 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (h)</b>	4
<b>07.409 Advanced Topic in Computer Science (i)</b>	4
<b>07.410 Computer Architecture</b>	4
<b>07.411 Topic in Computer Architecture</b>	4
<b>07.420 Database Management Systems</b>	4
<b>07.430 Theory of Compilers</b>	4
<b>07.431 Compiler Construction</b>	4
<b>07.432 Language Design and Definition</b>	4
<b>07.433 Comparison of Languages</b>	4
<b>07.434 Software Engineering</b>	4
<b>07.440 Advanced Operating Systems</b>	4
<b>07.441 Topic in Operating Systems</b>	4
<b>07.442 Data Communications and Networks</b>	4
<b>07.443 Topic in Data Communications</b>	4
<b>07.450 Theoretical Computer Science</b>	4
<b>07.451 Computational Complexity</b>	4
<b>07.452 Advanced Design and Analysis of Algorithms</b>	4
<b>07.460 Artificial Intelligence</b>	4
<b>07.461 Computational Logic</b>	4
<b>07.470 Computer Applications (a)</b>	2
<b>07.471 Computer Applications (b)</b>	2
<b>07.472 Computer Applications (c)</b>	4
<b>07.473 Robotics and Real-time Control</b>	4
<b>07.474 Computer Graphics</b>	4
<b>07.480 Seminar in Computer Science</b>	2

<b>07.481 Project in Computer Science (a)</b>	2
<b>07.482 Project in Computer Science (b)</b>	2
<b>07.483 Project in Computer Science (c)</b>	4
<b>07.490 Numerical and Linear Algebra</b>	4
<b>07.491 Numerical Quadrature</b>	4
<b>07.492 Numerical Solution of Ordinary Differential Equations</b>	4
<b>07.493 Numerical Solution of Partial Differential Equations</b>	4
<b>07.494 Mathematical Software</b>	4

### 53.332 Custom Integrated Electronic Design 4

As prescribed for the degree of Bachelor of Engineering. Enrolment requires the permission of the Head of Department of Computer Science and the Head of Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

### Diploma in Computer Science

See under Diploma Regulations and Prescriptions

### Postgraduate Research: MSc Thesis and PhD

Facilities are available for MSc and PhD research in a range of topics in Computer Science. Further information is available from the Head of Department. The PhD course usually takes between two and three years of full-time study and research.

## DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

### Education Stage III

#### 14.327 (4 credits) Aspects of Science Education

An introduction to children's learning in science, to issues in the philosophy of science relevant to the science curriculum and to a range of other issues in the contemporary international debate concerning science education at primary and secondary level.

## ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

The MSc in Environmental Science is a joint degree in Environmental Science and another Science subject. It is co-ordinated by the Director of Environmental Science and contributed to by a number of Departments. Students who intend to take the course must consult as early as possible the Director of Environmental Science who will advise on a suitable paper combination for the degree. A Preparatory Application Form must be submitted by October 31 in the year preceding intended entry to the programme. The course consists of four papers and a thesis 64.601 which shall count as four papers. In the case of a joint degree with Chemistry three papers will be taken under MSc Regulation 10 Environmental Science (ii) but treated as the equivalent of two papers in the other subjects. The papers are Environmental Science 64.401 plus a selection from Stage III and Masters 400-level papers in Science, Civil Engineering 52.391 or 52.392, Economics 13.413, Law 25.327 and Planning 36.451. Students will also be required to attend the Environmental



Science seminars. The combination of papers must be approved by the Director of Environmental Science in consultation with the Heads of Departments concerned. The papers and thesis will normally be completed in two years of study.

#### **64.401 Environmental Science**

The principles and procedures of Environmental Science through an examination of the concepts, theories and methods of Science as they relate to both natural and managed environments. Topics include scientific methods, systems theory and its applications, environmental monitoring and modelling, analytical techniques, policy and management issues and environmental impact assessment procedures. The course will include both field and laboratory work and a comprehensive case study. Attendance at Environmental Science seminars (normally held fortnightly) is a required part of this paper. (Available only to students enrolled for an MSc in Environmental Science.)

### **DEPARTMENT OF GEOGRAPHY** **Geography for BSc**

The prescriptions for Geography courses are as prescribed for Geography papers for BA.

#### **Geography for MSc and Honours**

[Four papers and a thesis (20.601)]

A candidate is expected to enrol for and sit the four papers in the first year, present the thesis in the year next following and submit it for examination by 1 November of that year. Papers shall be selected from 20.400 to 20.445. The prescriptions for Geography courses are as prescribed for Geography papers for MA.

### **DEPARTMENT OF GEOLOGY** **Stage I**

Two courses are offered.

#### **21.100 Fundamentals of General and Environmental Geology**

Sixty-nine hours lectures, 46 hours laboratories, 8 credits. Global geophysics, materials and basic structure of the lithosphere, igneous activity, metamorphism, tectonism and structural geology; general geomorphology, weathering, erosion and principles of sedimentation; introductory paleontology and stratigraphy; the geological history of New Zealand and the South-west Pacific; mineral deposits; environmental and engineering geology. The practical course will include identification of elementary rocks and minerals, examination of fossils, preparation and interpretation of simple geologic maps.

*Field Classes:* Each student will be required to attend at least two field excursions, arranged usually on weekends during term time.

*Practical Work:* One two-hour practical class must be attended each week. A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

#### **21.150 Applications of Geological Concepts and Methods**

*(Corequisite: 21.100)*

Twenty-three hours lectures, 54 hours laboratories, 4 credits. The history of, and scientific method in, geology, stratigraphic correlation, paleontology and paleoecology; the planetary system and elementary geophysics; igneous, metamorphic and sedimentary petrography, applied aspects of structure and tectonics.

*Field Classes:* Each student will be required to attend at least two field excursions, arranged usually on weekends during term time.

*Practical Work:* One three-hour practical class must be attended each week. A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

*Note:* Students terminating at Stage I Geology need only take 21.100 to acquire a sound background to all aspects of the discipline. A pass in both 21.100 and 21.150 is necessary before a student can advance to Stage II courses in Geology. Any student taking both 21.100 and 21.150 and failing in the former whilst passing the latter will receive 4 credits and will not be permitted to advance in Geology until 21.100 has been passed.

### **Stage II**

Entry to each course is limited. Students who intend to enrol should make pre-enrolment application to the Registrar no later than 15 January 1988.

*Field Classes* are a compulsory part of each paper and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost.

Attention is drawn to the inclusion in the Schedule of Science Faculty courses of 52.231 Geomechanics I as a Stage II course relevant to those students with an interest in mining or engineering geology.

The following seven courses are offered:

#### **21.200 Introduction to Field Geology**

*(Prerequisites:* 21.100 and 21.150. *Corequisite:* 21.211 or 21.212 *Restrictions:* 21.201, 21.202)

Seven days field work, 4 laboratory hours; 2 credits. Introduction to the techniques of geological mapping. Each student will be required to produce a geological map and a report on their field mapping exercise.

#### **21.211 Principles of Structural Geology and Geophysics**

*(Prerequisites:* 21.100 plus 21.150. *Corequisites:* 26.121, 21.200, 08.121 or (31.140 or 31.141). *Restrictions:* 21.201, 21.281)

Three lectures and 3 laboratory hours per week, first half year. 4 credits.

Elements and mechanical principles of structural geology. Introduction to applied geophysics and solid earth geophysics.

*Field Classes:* One-day excursions may be arranged during this course.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

#### **21.212 Principles of Historical Geology and Paleontology**

*(Prerequisites:* 21.100 and 21.150. *Corequisite:* 21.200.

**Restriction:** 21.202)

Three lectures and 3 laboratory hours per week; second half year. 4 credits.

Stratigraphic principles and practice, the code of nomenclature, definitions and application. Introductory paleontology: systematics, evolution, functional morphology; paleoecology.

**Field Classes:** One-day excursions may be arranged throughout the year.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**21.213 Principles of Mineralogy**

(**Prerequisites:** 21.100 and 21.150. **Corequisite:** 08.121.

**Restriction:** 21.203)

Two lectures and 4 laboratory hours per week; first half year. 4 credits.

Crystal morphology. Principles of optical microscopy. Principles of crystal chemistry. Systematic and determinative mineralogy.

**Field Classes:** One-day excursions may be arranged during this course.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**21.215 Principles of Petrography**

(**Prerequisites:** 21.100 and 21.150. **Corequisites:** 08.121, 21.200, 21.213. **Restriction:** 21.203)

Two lectures and 4 laboratory hours per week; second half year. 4 credits.

The major rock-forming minerals. Introduction to igneous, metamorphic and sedimentary petrography.

**Field Classes:** One-day excursions may be arranged during this course.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**21.281 Geology IIA for Mining**

(**Prerequisites:** 21.100 and 21.150; 08.121; (26.120 or 26.121); (26.140 or 26.141); and 26.175. **Corequisites:** 52.231 and 21.203. **Restriction:** 21.201).

Three lectures and two laboratory hours per week; first half year. 3 credits.

Engineering geology and applied structural geology; application of methods to exploration and exploitation. Introduction to basic geophysical methods used to investigate subsurface geology.

**Field work:** Each student will be required to do at least two days of field work.

**Note:** Enrolment requires permission of Head of Geology Department for science students or Head of Department of Mining Engineering for engineering students.

**21.284 Geology IIB for Mining**

(**Prerequisites:** 21.201 or 21.281. **Corequisites:** 21.203 or 21.213 and 56.101. **Restriction:** 21.304).

Three lectures and two laboratory hours per week; second half year. 3 credits.

Fossil fuels and mineral deposits. Case history studies of major types of deposits. Exploration methods. Factors influencing formation, localisation and variation in grade in a deposit.

**Field work:** Each student will be required to do at least two days of field work.

**Note:** Enrolment requires permission of Head of Geology Department for science students or Head of Department of Mining Engineering for engineering students.

**Stage III**

Entry to each course is limited. Students who intend to enrol should make pre-enrolment application to the Registrar no later than 15 January, 1988; students are advised to consult members of the Geology staff about their intended course before pre-enrolment.

Attention is drawn to the inclusion in the BSc Schedule of 52.331 Geotechnical Engineering, 52.332 Geomechanics II, 56.312 Evaluation and Mineral Economics and 56.314 Rock Mechanics as Stage III courses relevant to those students with an interest in engineering or mining geology.

**Field Classes:** Field classes are a compulsory part of each paper and may be held anywhere in New Zealand. Students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of field excursions.

The following fifteen courses are offered:

**21.300 Field Methods for Geology**

(**Prerequisites:** 21.200. **Corequisite:** 6 Geology III credits. **Restriction:** this course may not be taken by any student who, prior to 1988, has completed the requirements for the compulsory Stage III Field Class in Geological Mapping).

At least 10 days field work and 12 laboratory hours. 2 credits.

Photogrammetry, photogeology. A field report and map of a selected area.

**Note:** This course must be taken by all Geology students taking Geology III papers (excluding 21.306) totalling 6 credits or more. Under special circumstances the Head of Department may permit a student to take 21.200 rather than 21.300.

**21.302 Sedimentology and Marine Geology**

(**Prerequisites:** 21.201, 21.203. **Corequisite:** 21.300)

Forty-six hours lectures, 69 hours laboratories, 6 credits. Physical, chemical and biological processes in the major environments of sedimentation; geomorphology, origin and structure of submarine physiographic provinces. Petrography of sedimentary rocks; process of modern marine sedimentation and erosion.

**Field Classes:** In addition to the Stage III Compulsory Field Class in Geological Mapping, a total of about five days of field work will be held throughout the year; attendance is compulsory and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of trips which may be made anywhere in New Zealand.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical work and the written paper is necessary.

**21.303 Advanced Paleontology**

(**Prerequisites:** 21.100 and 21.150 or 39.101 and either 06.102 or 38.102. **Corequisite:** 21.300)

Forty-six hours lectures, 69 hours laboratories, 6 credits. Advanced treatment of some major invertebrate groups (including Foraminiferida, Brachiopoda, Mollusca, Coelenterata) covering their

morphology, origin, evolution, paleoecology and geological history. Paleoecologic principles and practice, paleoecology of other groups of organisms (ichnofossils, Bryozoa, etc.).

**Field Classes:** In addition to the Stage III Compulsory Field Class in Geological Mapping, a total of about five days of field work will be arranged throughout the year anywhere in New Zealand; attendance is compulsory and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of these excursions.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**Note:** Since the prerequisites for this course are first-year courses it is possible to take 21.303 as a second year course; students who intend to major in Geology must obtain the permission of the Head of Department to take 21.303 in their second year.

#### **21.304 Minerals and Mineral Deposits**

(Prerequisites: 08.121 and either 21.203 or (21.200, 21.213, 21.215). Corequisite: 21.300. Restriction: 21.284)

Three lectures and two laboratory hours per week, 6 credits. Mineral deposits in sedimentary, igneous and metamorphic environments and their genesis; industrial minerals; coal, gas and petroleum deposits. Applied mineralogy. Introduction to hydrogeology.

**Field Classes:** In addition to the Stage III Compulsory Field Class in Geological Mapping, a total of about five days will be spent in the field throughout the year. Attendance at these classes is compulsory and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of these excursions which may be held anywhere in New Zealand.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

**Note:** Students are recommended to enrol concurrently in 56.101.

#### **21.305 Igneous and Metamorphic Petrology**

(Prerequisites: 08.121, and either 21.203 or (21.200, 21.213, 21.215). Corequisite: 21.300)

Forty-six hours lectures, 69 hours laboratories, 6 credits. Petrography, chemistry, petrogenesis and regional settings of igneous and metamorphic rocks.

**Field Classes:** In addition to the Stage III Compulsory Field Class in Geological Mapping, a total of about five days will be spent in the field throughout the year. Attendance is compulsory and students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of these trips which may be held anywhere in New Zealand.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

#### **21.306 Applied Geophysics**

(Prerequisites: either (26.210 or 121); (26.140 or 26.141); (31.140 or 141); 21.201 or (21.200, 21.211, 21.213 and 21.215) or 21.100, 21.150 and 31.210. Corequisite: 31.330. Restriction: 21.386)

Forty hours lectures, 3 credits. A lecture course covering physical principles, equipment and techniques used in investigating the physical composition of the earth's crust and in mineral exploration. Standard numerical and graphical interpretation methods

are discussed, and are used to interpret gravity, magnetic, seismic and DC-resistivity measurements to derive realistic geological gross structures and structures of mineral deposits.

#### **21.307 Experimental Geophysics (joint laboratory course with Physics Department).**

(Prerequisites: as for 21.306. Corequisites: 21.306, 31.330)

Seventy-two hours laboratories, 3 credits. This is a laboratory course associated with 21.306. Use and calibration of geophysical instrumentation, experiments to illustrate basic principles, analysis and interpretation of field data involving both Geology and Geophysics. This course is identical with course Physics 31.393, and those students who satisfy the prerequisites: 31.210 and 31.290 and one other paper from 31.200-31.250 should enrol in 31.393.

**Field Classes:** In addition to the Stage III Compulsory Field Class in Geological Mapping, about five days of field work will be held throughout the year anywhere in New Zealand. Students must be prepared to pay a large part of the cost of these excursions which are compulsory.

**Practical Work:** Part of the practical work is designed to prepare the students for the interpretation of the field work in the 21.307 (31.393) course.

#### **\*21.310 Geology of Australasia and the South West Pacific**

(Prerequisites: at least 8 Geology Stage II credits. Corequisites: any two Geology III papers selected from 21.303-21.318)

Thirty six lectures and 21 laboratory hours; second half year. 3 credits.

Geological evolution of Australasia, the islands of the S.W. Pacific and the Pacific and Tasman ocean crust.

**Field Classes:** A total of about five days will be spent in the field throughout the year.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

#### **21.311 Advanced Structural Geology**

(Prerequisites: 26.121 and 08.121 or (31.140 or 21.141) and either 21.201 or (21.200, 21.211). Corequisite: 21.300. Restriction: 21.301.)

Two lectures and 3 laboratory hours per week; first half year. 3 credits.

Principles of structural analysis; fault patterns; strain analysis; regional metamorphic structure.

**Field Classes:** Four one-day field excursions.

**Practical Work:** A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

#### **\*21.312 Advanced Sedimentology**

(Prerequisites: 08.121 and either (21.201, 21.203) or (21.200, 21.211, 21.213, 21.215). Restriction: 21.302)

Two lectures and 3 laboratory hours per week; first half year. 3 credits.

Modern sedimentary processes, sedimentary facies models; basin analysis, tectonics and sedimentation.

Advanced sedimentary petrography.

*Field Classes:* One day excursions may be arranged during this course.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

### **21.318 Introduction to Engineering Geology**

(*Prerequisites:* either (21.201, 21.203) or (21.200, 21.211, 21.213, 21.215). *Corequisite:* 21.300. *Restriction:* 21.201)

Two lectures and 2 laboratory hours per week; first half year. 3 credits.

Introduction to engineering geology. Characterisation of rock, soil and defects. Slope movement. Surface and subsurface engineering geological investigations.

*Field Classes:* Two one-day field excursions.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

### **21.319 Special Topics in Mineralogy and Geochemistry**

(*Prerequisites:* 08.210, either 21.203 or 21.213)

Two lectures and 2 laboratory hours per week; second half year. 3 credits.

Abundance and distribution of elements and element partitioning including kinetic and thermodynamic aspects. Chemical aspects of aqueous systems. Crystallography and crystal chemistry.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

### **21.381 Geology III for Mining**

(*Prerequisites:* 21.203; 52.231; (21.201 or 21.281); and (31.140 or 31.141).

One lecture and two laboratory hours per week; first half year. 3 credits.

Exploration and mining geophysics. Advanced surface and subsurface investigation of geologic conditions. Case histories of applied structural geology and hydrogeologic problems.

*Field work:* Each student will be required to do at least two days of field work.

*Note:* Enrolment requires permission of Head of Geology Department for science students or Head of Department of Mining Engineering for engineering students. Science students are advised to enrol concurrently in 52.332 and 56.314.

### **21.382 Coal Geology for Mining**

(*Prerequisite:* 21.281. *Corequisite:* 21.381, (21.284 or 21.304)

Two lectures and 2 laboratory hours per week; second half year. 3 credits.

Problems in coal geology related to coal exploration and mining.

*Field Classes:* Two one-day field excursions.

*Practical Work:* A pass in both the practical course and the written paper is necessary.

### **21.386 Applied Geophysics for Mining**

(*Corequisites:* 21.381. *Restrictions:* 21.306 and 21.307).

Three hours per week; second half year. 3 credits.

Equipment and techniques used in mine development and investigation of mineral deposits.

*Field work:* Each student will be required to attend a field camp and prepare a report on a geophysical project.

*Note:* Enrolment requires permission of Head of Geology Department for science students or Head of Department of Mining Engineering for engineering students.

### **21.388 Engineering Geology**

(*Prerequisite:* 52.231. *Corequisite:* 21.318)

Three lectures and one laboratory hour per week; second half year. 3 credits.

Geological principles applied to engineering problems.

*Field work:* Each student will be required to do at least two days of field work.

*Note:* Enrolment requires permission of Head of Geology Department for science students or Head of Department of Civil Engineering for engineering students. Science students are advised to enrol concurrently in 52.331 and 52.332.

### **52.231 Geomechanics I**

### **52.331 Geotechnical Engineering**

### **53.332 Geomechanics II**

### **56.101 Mineral Engineering**

### **56.312 Evaluation and Mineral Economics**

### **56.314 Rock Mechanics**

### **BSc (Hons) Part IV in Geology**

(Three papers and a research report 21.603)

The regulations which cover the BSc (Hons) course are listed elsewhere. Students enrolled for BSc (Hons) Part IV in Geology undertake course work as for first-year MSc students and will select three of the following papers prescribed for the MSc Degree (21.401 to 21.409 but not 86.100 or 86.102). In addition, they must complete a research project by the beginning of the second half of the academic year, and the marks allotted for the project report count as equivalent to one paper. Students who wish to be considered for enrolment should consult the Head of Department prior to enrolment or at any time during the preceding year. Students who have been admitted to Part IV should consult the Geology staff about textbooks and particularly about fourth-year research projects at the end of their Stage III year.

Students are reminded of the Foreign Language Reading requirement for admission to the degree of BSc (Hons). Candidates must show proficiency in a language approved by the Head of Department.

### **BSc (Hons) Part IV in Applied Geology**

[Three papers and a thesis (21.613)]

Students enrolled for BSc (Hons) Part IV in Applied Geology undertake course work as for MSc students and will select three papers from the four groups of papers specified by the Schedule for MSc in Applied Geology. In addition they must complete a thesis by the beginning of the second half of the academic year, the thesis being equivalent to one paper. Students who have been admitted to Part IV should consult the Geology staff about textbooks and particularly about fourth-year research projects at the end of their Stage III year.

Students are reminded of the Foreign Language Reading requirement for admission to the degree of BSc (Hons). Candidates must show proficiency in a language approved by the Head of Department.

## MSc and Honours in Geology

[Three papers and a thesis (21.601)]

The MSc is normally a full-time two-year degree, following the completion of a BSc, and consists of three written papers to be selected from 21.401 to 21.409 and either 86.100 or 86.102 together with a thesis which, for examination assessment, counts as two written papers.

Students are reminded of the Foreign Language Reading requirement for admission to the degree of MSc or MSc (Hons). Students must show proficiency in a language approved by the Head of Department.

### 21.401 Tectonics and Structural Geology

Analysis of complex structural sequences in metamorphic and non-metamorphic rocks. Principles of strain analysis and rock mechanics. Selected topics in regional geology as related to tectonic theory.

### 21.402 Sediments and Sedimentary Processes

Sedimentary processes and products in both ancient and modern settings. Identification and interpretation of sedimentary environments; the provenance and subsequent diagenetic history of terrigenous and carbonate sediments.

### 21.403 Stratigraphy and Paleontology

Principles and practice in stratigraphy and correlation, the fossil record and its interpretation, the historical geology of New Zealand.

### 21.404 Advanced Studies in Mineral Deposits

Advanced studies of selected types of mineral deposits with respect to their physicochemical conditions of formation and subsequent modification.

### 21.405 Genesis of Igneous and Metamorphic Rocks

Studies in the petrology of igneous and metamorphic rocks covering geological settings, PT environments, petrochemistry and mineral assemblages with emphasis on recent developments in the theoretical, experimental and observational fields.

### 21.406 Advanced Applied Geophysics

The theory and practice of the interpretation of geophysical measurements. Topics covered are: potential field theory, quantitative interpretation of gravitational and magnetic anomalies (two- and three-dimensional bodies); DC and AC resistivity measurements, seismic wave transmission, refraction and reflection studies. Practical work: The year's practical work will be assessed by means of exercises to be completed during the lecture course and two essays and discussion of a seminar topic.

**Note:** This course is the same as Physics 433 and is given jointly by the Geology and Physics Departments. Previous enrolment in Physics 330, Geology 306 and Geology 307 is desirable.

### 21.408 Advanced Engineering Geology

Application of geology to engineering practice with emphasis on the geological, physical and structural variants in rock masses and soil masses. Aspects of ground investigation methods, aggregates, relevant clay mineralogy, groundwater, sediments and soils, excavation methods, stability of slopes, foundation requirements and relationship to soil mechanics and rock mechanics.

### 21.409 Mineral Chemistry and Geochemistry

The abundance and distribution of the elements. Special topics in the chemistry of minerals, rocks and fluids.

**Note:** Students seeking enrolment in this course should have passed 21.304, 21.305, 08.210 and 08.220 or equivalent papers.

### 21.484 Economic and Mining Geology

The exploration and exploitation of mineral deposits and other economically important earth materials.

**Note:** Students seeking enrolment in this course should have passed 21.381, 21.384 or 21.304, and 56.312 or equivalent papers.

### 86.100 Geothermal Systems and Technology

Scope of geothermal projects. Geothermal systems. Introduction to geothermal exploration and technology. Reservoir engineering. Chemistry of thermal fluids. Economics, environmental and legal aspects. Case studies.

**Note:** This course includes two compulsory field trips, normally held in late February to Wairakei, and in May to Ngawha, each of about five days' duration, but timing, location, and duration may be altered from year to year.

### 86.102 Geothermal Exploration Technology

Geology of thermal areas. Hydrothermal alteration of reservoir rocks. Mapping and analyses of geothermal discharges. Geochemistry of thermal fluids. Geophysical exploration of prospects. Drillhole logging. Instrumentation.

**Note:** (a) Students seeking enrolment in this course must have passed 21.304 or 21.305 or 21.306; in addition, a pass in either 08.210 or 08.220 is desirable.

(b) This course includes a compulsory field trip, normally held in mid-term break to Wairakei and Wellington and of five days' duration, but timing, location, and duration may be altered from year to year.

## MSc and Honours in Applied Geology

(Three papers and a thesis 21.611)

**Prerequisite:** A BSc with 24 Stage III credits, including at least 12 which must be from Geology.

The MSc is a full-time two-year degree following the completion of a BSc and consists of three written papers together with a thesis which, for examination assessment, counts as two written papers. The individual Course of study of each student must be approved by the Head of the Department of Geology. The student shall select three papers from the following four groups: 21.408; (21.471-21.478); 21.484; and any approved paper listed in the ME Schedule. Students are reminded of the Foreign Language Reading requirement; the chosen foreign language must be approved by the Head of the Department of Geology; with the permission of the Head of the Department the Foreign Language Reading re-

quirement may be waived in the case of a student whose mother tongue is not English.

The papers taken for the MSc in Applied Geology must be selected from three of the following:

**21.408 Advanced Engineering Geology**

As in Schedule for MSc and Honours in Geology.

**21.484 Economic and Mining Geology**

As in Schedule for MSc and Honours in Geology.

**Any one approved paper listed in the ME Schedule** (except 86.401 which is identical to 86.100). Enrolment requires permission of the Head of Department concerned.

**(21.471-21.478) Special Topic Papers**

Only one paper may be selected from this group:

**21.471 Special Topics in Applied Geology**

Either any two papers selected from courses offered in the 3rd Professional Year of BE and/or Stage III BSc papers which have not already been taken or any approved paper from the MSc Schedule. Enrolment requires permission of the Head of Department concerned.

**21.473 Special Topics in Mineral Processing**

Any two papers selected from courses offered in the 3rd Professional Year of BE (Mineral Processing Engineering). Enrolment requires permission of the Head of Department concerned.

**21.474 Special Topic in Mining Geology**

Any two papers selected from courses offered in the 3rd Professional Year of BE (Mining Engineering). Enrolment requires permission of the Head of Department concerned.

**21.478 Special Topics in Engineering Geology**

Any two papers selected from courses offered in the 3rd Professional Year of BE (Civil). Enrolment requires permission of Head of Department concerned.

**PhD in Geology**

Thesis (21.602) and an oral examination

Facilities are available for research by PhD candidates in many branches of Geology: geochemistry, petrology, volcanology, mineralogy, structural geology, palaeontology and stratigraphy, sedimentology, marine geology, geophysics, engineering and mining geology. Students intending to work for this degree should have reached a satisfactory level of attainment in BSc (Hons) or MSc. Students working for this degree who have not already shown proficiency in a foreign language will be required to pass the Foreign Language Reading Examination in a language approved by the Head of Department.

**LEIGH LABORATORY**

The University's Marine Laboratory provides research facilities for staff and postgraduate students in any branch of marine science. Present work is centred on the ecology, reproductive biology and taxonomy of shore and shallow water organisms, fish physiology, physical & biological oceanography, and

some aspects of applied fisheries. It also provides facilities for laboratory and field exercises for advanced undergraduate courses (BSc) primarily in conjunction with the Botany and Zoology departments.

The area in the immediate vicinity of the Laboratory is a Marine Reserve, and permission is required to collect specimens. However, there are examples of most types of marine habitats within 10km of the Laboratory, from where samples can be readily collected. There are a number of small boats for work in and around the Reserve, and a 4m inflatable craft for work slightly further afield. The Laboratory's research vessel, R. V. Proteus, is equipped with diving compressor, winch, radar and accommodation for 6, and is used for offshore work. Full facilities for diving are available at the Laboratory, including scuba tanks, air compressor, and other equipment. Constantly running seawater is pumped through several tank-rooms both indoors and outdoors, and a small climate station is maintained. In addition to general laboratory and office space, there are specialised areas for culturing, computing, photography, chemical analyses, and a small library.

The Laboratory is situated in Goat Island Bay on the east coast, 100km by road north of Auckland. There is on-site bunkroom accommodation for up to 36 students, and 2 self-contained visitors' cottages. A large kitchen and dining room complex is available to all workers. The Laboratory is managed by a University committee under the chairmanship of Assoc. Prof. B. A. Foster. Inquiries concerning use of the facilities at Leigh should be directed to the Scientist-in-Charge, Dr R. G. Creese, R.D. Leigh, (Phone 26-111, or Auckland 793-534.)

**DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS**

**Stage I Courses**

**Basic skills**

A course covering basic skills in mathematics is offered by the department. It is designed for students who have not studied mathematics for some years or those whose background in mathematics is weak. It meets each week during the first term for a lecture or tutorial session; ongoing assistance is available throughout the year if required. In addition to detailed notes containing numerous worked examples, students will have access to the department's microcomputers with further examples, illustrations and exercises. No enrolment is necessary for this non-credit course.

**26.101 (6 credits) Introduction to Algebra and Calculus**

This course is a combined algebra and calculus paper. It is for those who do not intend to advance in Mathematics and whose background is weak. It is ideally suited to those students who do not wish to take both an algebra and a calculus paper.

**26.120 (6 credits) Principles of Algebra****26.121 (6 credits) Introductory Algebra****26.122 (6 credits) Finite Mathematics**

These are alternative courses and only one of them may be selected by any student. Students intending to advance in Mathematics or Engineering will take Maths 120 or 121 which are to be considered as equivalent for prerequisite purposes. Students with a strong entrance background should enrol in Maths 120 and students with a weak background in Maths 121. However, well prepared students are encouraged to enrol in Maths 221. Maths 122 is appropriate for commerce and law students and for arts and social science students not intending to major in Mathematics. However, as this is a first course in Mathematics, better prepared students are encouraged to take Maths 120 or 121 instead.

Syllabus for Maths 120 and 121: integers and induction; complex numbers; linear equations and matrices; vectors and geometry of 2 and 3 dimensions; polynomials; brief introduction to abstract algebra.

Syllabus for Maths 122: a selection of topics from logic, sets, principles of counting, vectors and matrices, linear equations, probability and Markov chains, linear programming, the theory of games, number systems.

**26.140 (6 credits) Principles of Calculus****26.141 (6 credits) Introductory Calculus****26.142 (6 credits) Concepts of Calculus**

These are alternative courses and only one of them may be selected by any student. Students intending to advance in Mathematics or Engineering will take Maths 140 or 141 which are to be considered as equivalent for prerequisite purposes. Students with a strong entrance background should enrol in Maths 140 and students with a weak background in Maths 141. However, well prepared students are encouraged to enrol in Maths 241. Maths 142 is appropriate for commerce and law students and for arts and social science students not intending to major in Mathematics.

Limits, continuity; derivatives and integrals; differential calculus of polynomials and rational functions; antiderivatives and integrals of polynomials; logarithmic, exponential and circular functions; calculus in Euclidean geometry; applications.

**26.175 (6 credits) Introduction to Mathematical Modelling**

An introduction to applied mathematics. Constructing mathematical models to problems with elementary examples from geometry, mechanics, population dynamics, conflict models, etc. Solution procedures will require methods of algebra, geometry, calculus, elementary differential equations and numerical methods. Emphasis will be placed on the complete modelling process from problem formulation to solution interpretation.

**26.180 (6 credits) Principles of Statistics**

Axioms of probability, random variables, probability distributions, expected values, discrete bivariate distributions, sampling distributions, small and large sample inference, regression.

**26.181 (6 credits) Introduction to Probability and Statistics**

The syllabus is similar to that of 26.180 but with less emphasis on mathematical proofs and more emphasis on statistical techniques and their applications. Further topics such as contingency tables, goodness of fit tests will be included. Students intending to advance in statistics to Stage III will normally take 26.180. Other students who do not have a good background of pure mathematics and statistics at the sixth or seventh form level are advised to take 26.181. If in doubt, please consult the lecturer in charge of the course. Students who pass 26.181 will require permission from the Head of the Department before they may enrol in 26.280.

**Stage II Courses**

In accordance with Regulation 5 of the BSc Regulations and Regulation 7 of the BA Regulations, the Head of Department may waive the prerequisites listed in the schedule in particular cases. This applies particularly to students who, instead of having passed the formal prerequisite, have passed a related paper with a good grade. The papers to which this applies are 122 instead of 120 or 121, 142 instead of 140 or 141 and 181 instead of 180.

**26.210 (6 credits) Principles of Mathematics**

The course consists of a wide selection of topics from various branches of Mathematics. Further information about the course may be obtained from the Administrative Secretary of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**26.220 (6 credits) Linear Algebra**

Matrices, vector spaces, linear mappings, determinants, eigenvalues and eigenvectors, non-singular reduction of quadratic forms, Sylvester's law of inertia, inner products, orthogonal reduction of real quadratic forms.

**26.221 (8 credits) Algebra (accelerated course)**

A selection of topics from Maths 120 and Maths 220 taught as a unified course. Well prepared students are encouraged to seek permission to enrol in this course rather than in Maths 120.

**26.240 (4 credits) Calculus**

Algebra and geometry of vectors in three dimensional space; calculus of vector valued functions, curves, functions of several variables, partial derivatives, chain rule, maxima and minima, div, grad and curl; multiple integrals; least upper bounds; sequences and series, introduction to power series.

**Note:** Students who intend to advance to Stage III and have obtained a grade of B- or better in papers 26.140 or 26.141 are encouraged to enrol concurrently in paper 26.330.

**26.241 (8 credits) Calculus and Analysis (accelerated course)**

A selection of topics from Maths 140 and Maths 240 taught as a unified course. Well prepared students are encouraged to seek permission to enrol in this course rather than in Maths 140.

**26.260 (4 credits) Differential Equations**

Methods for the solution of ordinary differential equations, including variation of parameters, Laplace transform methods, and power series solutions; elementary Fourier series and boundary value problems.

**26.270 (4 credits) Principles of Mechanics**

Principles of Newtonian mechanics, particle motion, projectile and planetary orbits. Simple harmonic motion and oscillations. Dynamics of systems of particles. Rigid body mechanics. Motion relative to a rotating reference frame.

**26.280 (4 credits) Statistical Theory**

Probability spaces, distribution theory of one or more variables, probability and moment generating functions, sampling theory for the normal distribution, estimation, hypothesis testing, linear models.

**26.281 (4 credits) Data Analysis**

Exploratory data analysis, introduction to analysis of variance and experimental design, goodness of fit, contingency tables, non-parametric methods, regression, simulation, miscellaneous topics.

**07.290 (4 credits) Numerical Computation**

See Department of Computer Science entry.

**Stage III Courses**

In accordance with Regulation 5 of the BSc Regulations and Regulation 7 of the BA Regulations, the Head of Department may waive the prerequisites listed in the schedule in particular cases. This applies particularly to students wishing to enrol in paper 26.330 concurrently with paper 26.240.

**†26.310 (4 credits) Special Topics in Pure Mathematics (a)**

Enrolment in this paper requires permission from the Head of Department. If this paper is offered, further information may be obtained from the Administrative Secretary of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**26.311 (2 credits) Special Topics in Pure Mathematics (b)**

Enrolment in this paper requires permission from the Head of Department. If this paper is offered, further information may be obtained from the Administrative Secretary of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**26.315 (4 credits) Formal Logic**

Formal systems, proof-theoretic and model-theoretic approaches to classical and modal sentential logic, introduction to first-order logic.

**26.320 (4 credits) Algebraic Structures****26.321 (4 credits) Introduction to Abstract Algebra**

Groups, rings, unique factorisation domains, fields. The object of these courses is to give a basic introduction to modern algebra, exclusive of linear algebra. They are alternative courses, and only one of them may be selected by any student. Both courses are acceptable and suitable as a prerequisite for Maths 420, and the Mathematics and Statistics Department reserves the right to direct which of these courses a particular student shall take.

**26.325 (4 credits) Discrete and Combinatorial Mathematics**

A selection of topics involving enumeration, graph theory, designs and codes, with applications.

**26.330 (2 credits) Introductory Analysis**

Students with good grades in Maths 140 may with the permission of the Head of Department proceed direct to Maths 330 in their second year.

Elements of set theory, the real number system, sequences and series of functions, uniform convergence, Riemann integration.

**26.331 (6 credits) Principles of Analysis (accelerated course)**

A selection of topics from 26.330 and 26.340 taught as a unified course. This course follows on from 26.241 and enrolment requires permission from the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**26.335 (2 credits) Metric and Normed Spaces**

Metric and normed linear spaces with particular reference to  $n$ -dimensional Euclidean space and  $C(a,b)$ , compactness, connectedness, completeness and their applications.

**26.340 (4 credits) Multivariable Calculus**

Differential and integral calculus of vector-valued functions of several variables and applications.

**26.345 (2 credits) Techniques of Complex Variables**

Analytic functions, power series, calculation of integrals by residues.

**26.350 (4 credits) Topics in Topology**

A selection of topics chosen from topology or differential geometry. Enrolment in this paper requires permission from the Head of Department.

**\*26.355 (4 credits) Geometry**

A selection of topics chosen from axiom systems, affine geometry, Euclidean and non-Euclidean geometry, projective geometry, inversive geometry, convexity.

**26.360 (4 credits) Applied Analysis**

Differential equations, the special functions of applied mathematics, orthogonal polynomials, Fourier series, boundary value problems.

**\*26.362 (4 credits) Special topics in Applied Mathematics (a)**

Enrolment in this course requires permission from the Head of the Department. If this paper is offered, further information may be obtained from the Ad-



ministrative Secretary of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**†26.363 (2 credits) Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (b)**

Enrolment in this course requires permission of the Head of Department. If this paper is offered, further information may be obtained from the Administrative Secretary, Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

**26.368 (2 credits) Mathematical Theory of Control**

Dynamical systems, time domain and frequency domain analysis, the exponential matrix, transfer functions, discrete-time systems. Linear control systems, feedback, stability, Nyquist and Liapunov theory.

**26.371 (4 credits) Introduction to Continuum Mechanics**

Vector and tensor analysis. Analysis of stress and strain. Constitutive relations and field equations. Introduction to fluid mechanics and linear elasticity theory.

**26.372 (2 credits) Analytical Mechanics**

Idea of the calculus of variations, Lagrange's equations for mechanical systems. Application to rigid body dynamics and vibrations.

**26.375 (2 credits) Applied Partial Differential Equations**

Mathematical and physical classification of partial differential equations into hyperbolic (propagation processes), parabolic (diffusion processes) and elliptic ('steady state' processes). Modelling with partial differential equations, illustrations of solution procedures using both analytical and numerical techniques.

**26.376 (2 credits) Theory of Waves**

Paper presents a unified treatment of wave phenomenon. Oscillations and waves, Fourier analysis, linear and nonlinear waves, dispersion. Application to sound, water and electro-magnetic wave motions.

**26.380 (4 credits) Applied Probability**

Introduction to stochastic processes, generating functions, recurrent event theory. Markov chains including applications to random walks and discrete branching processes. Poisson processes, birth and death processes including applications to queuing processes, miscellaneous topics.

**26.381 (4 credits) Linear Models**

Expectation and covariance operators for random vectors, quadratic forms, multivariate normal distribution, detailed study of multiple linear regression, analysis of variance and covariance.

**26.385 (4 credits) Advanced Data Analysis**

Multiple regression, analysis of variance, experimental design, contingency tables, log-linear models, time series methods, multivariate analysis, sample survey methods.

**07.390 (4 credits) Numerical Analysis**

See Department of Computer Science entry

**26.391 (4 credits) Optimisation in Operations Research**

Linear programming; Simplex and revised Simplex methods; duality, and the dual Simplex method; post optimal analysis; decomposition and column generation, integer programming; cutting planes and branch and bound; dynamic programming; network analysis, transportation and flow problems.

**26.395 (4 credits) Mathematical Modelling for Operations Research**

Digital simulation techniques and applications. Monte Carlo methods and related statistical analysis; introduction to deterministic and stochastic models in such areas as queuing theory, inventory control, reliability, Markov decision processes, risk analysis.

**26.399 (2 credits) Applied Mathematics Laboratory**

Definition, analysis and solution of practical problems associated with applied mathematics courses in mechanics, statistics and operations research. Emphasis will be placed on preparation of initial problem specifications, implementation of algorithms, and computer programs and presentation of results. Students shall select three appropriate topics from those offered taking into account the applied mathematics papers in which they are enrolled.

**Courses for MA, MSc and Honours**

The prerequisites for the MA and MSc Degrees are: Mathematics 26.220 or 26.221, 26.240 or 26.241, at least one of 26.260, 26.280, 26.281, plus twenty 300 or 400 level credits approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. Normally at least 16 of these credits shall be from papers in Mathematics and Computer Science, but 12 credits in Mathematics and Computer Science may be approved in special cases.

The student shall select papers, approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics, from 26.400 to 26.499 and 07.490 to 07.499 with a total credit value of 20 credits, together with a thesis (26.601) or an advanced course of study (26.605), which will count as 16 credits. Up to four of the 20 credits may be replaced by four Stage III credits from Mathematics and Computer Science papers not already taken for any other degree or diploma.

Candidates who have not passed Mathematics 26.320 or 26.321, 26.330 or 26.331 and 26.340 will normally be required to pass these papers during their first Master's year. Prospective Master's students should consult the Administrative Secretary of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics for further details, preferably when they enrol for their 300 level papers. Not all 400 level papers listed will be offered each year. The list of papers to be offered and their prescriptions will be determined each year by the

Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. The number of credits for each paper is given after the title.

A candidate must normally complete his thesis or advanced course of study not later than twenty-four months after his first enrolment for this degree.

- 26.401 Topic in Pure Mathematics A (2)
- 26.402 Topic in Pure Mathematics B (2)
- 26.403 Special Topic in Pure Mathematics (4)
- 26.404 Advanced Topic in Pure Mathematics (4)
- 26.410 Introduction to Mathematical Logic (2)
- 26.411 Topic in Mathematical Logic (2)
- 26.412 Recursive Functions (2)
- 26.413 Set Theory (2)
- 26.414 Automated Reasoning (2)
- 26.415 Automata Theory (2)
- 26.416 Combinatorics (2)
- 26.417 Graph Theory (2)
- 26.418 Lattice Theory (2)
- 26.419 Universal Algebra (2)
- 26.420 Field Theory and Galois Theory (2)
- 26.421 Rings, Modules and Categories (2)
- 26.422 Number Theory (2)
- 26.423 Commutative Algebra (2)
- 26.424 Algebraic Geometry (2)
- 26.425 Group Theory (2)
- 26.426 Applied Linear Algebra (2)
- 26.427 Topic in Algebra (2)
- 26.428 Special Topic in Algebra (4)
- 26.429 Advanced Topic in Algebra (4)
- 26.430 Measure and Integration A (2)
- 26.431 Measure and Integration B (2)
- 26.432 Functional Analysis (2)
- 26.433 Banach Algebras (2)
- 26.434 Applied Functional Analysis (2)
- 26.435 Lie Groups and Lie Algebras (2)
- 26.436 Analysis on Manifolds (2)
- 26.437 Operator Theory (2)
- 26.438 Approximation Theory (2)
- 26.439 Topological Vector Spaces (2)
- 26.440 Complex Analysis A (2)
- 26.441 Complex Analysis B (2)
- 26.442 Applied Complex Analysis (2)
- 26.443 Riemann Surfaces (2)
- 26.444 Summability Methods (2)
- 26.445 Quasiconformal Analysis (2)
- 26.446 Topics in Analysis A (2)
- 26.447 Topics in Analysis B (2)
- 26.448 Special Topics in Analysis (4)
- 26.449 Advanced Topics in Analysis (4)
- 26.450 Topology (2)
- 26.451 Algebraic Topology (2)
- 26.452 Differential Topology (2)
- 26.453 Uniform Spaces (2)
- 26.454 Differential Geometry (2)
- 26.455 Linear Geometry (2)
- 26.456 Topics in Geometry (2)

- 26.457 Topics in Topology (2)
- 26.458 Special Topics in Geometry or Topology (4)
- 26.459 Advanced Topics in Geometry or Topology (4)
- 26.460 Ordinary Differential Equations A (4)
- 24.461 Ordinary Differential Equations B (2)
- 26.462 Partial Differential Equations (4)
- 26.463 Topics in Differential Equations (2)
- 26.464 Calculus of Variations (2)
- 26.465 Fourier Analysis (2)
- 26.466 Global Analysis (2)
- 26.467 Asymptotic Methods (2)
- 26.468 Topics in Applied Mathematics (2)
- 26.469 Special Topics in Applied Mathematics (4)
- 26.470 Topics in Mechanics A (2)
- 26.471 Topics in Mechanics B (2)
- 26.472 Fluid Mechanics (4)
- 26.473 Quantum Mechanics (4)
- 26.474 Special Topic in Mechanics (4)
- 26.475 Advanced Topic in Mechanics (4)
- 26.480 Probability Theory A (2)
- 26.481 Probability Theory B (2)
- 26.482 Experimental Design (2)
- 26.483 Multivariate Analysis (2)
- 26.484 Stochastic Processes A (2)
- 26.485 Stochastic Processes B (2)
- 26.486 Topic in Probability and Statistics A (2)
- 26.487 Topic in Probability and Statistics B (2)
- 26.488 Statistical Methods (4)
- 26.489 Data Analysis (4)
- 26.490 Statistical Consulting (2)
- 26.491 Generalised Linear Models (2)
- 26.494 Nonlinear Optimisation (2)
- 26.499 Data Analysis (2)

The number of credits for each paper is given in brackets.

### **BSc (Honours) in Mathematics**

Prerequisites for Part IV of the BSc(Hons) Degree are the same as for an MA or MSc Degree in Mathematics. Normally only students of proven ability (B+ or above) may be considered for entry at either Part III or Part IV level.

The courses available at Part III level are such as will allow a candidate to satisfy the prerequisites for Part IV. The requirements for Part IV are: papers approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics, from 26.400 to 26.499 and Computer Science 07.490 to 07.499 but the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics may approve a wider selection of relevant papers, including up to 4 Stage III credits not already taken for any other degree or diploma. The comments above concerning 26.320 or 26.321 etc. with regard to the first year of the Master's Degree also apply to Part IV of the BSc(Hons).

Students who obtain the BSc(Hons) will be permitted

to complete the MSc by presenting a thesis or completing an advanced course of study as approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

### **Diploma in Mathematical Education**

See under Diploma Regulations and Prescriptions

### **Diploma in Statistics**

See under Diploma Regulations and Prescriptions

## **MEDICAL SCIENCE**

The MSc in Medical Science is taught by several Departments in the School of Medicine. Students who intend to take the course should consult as early as possible (preferably by 1 December of the preceding year) the Dean of Science, Chairman of the Committee for the MSc in Medical Science, who acts as the Head of Department for the purpose of the MSc regulations.

The course consists of three papers and a thesis 89.601 which counts as three papers. The papers are selected from: the four papers in Medical Science 89.401–404, Biochemistry 66.401–403, Cellular and Molecular Biology 40.403, Physiology 67.401–406, Psychology 32.406, 410, 416, 419 and Pharmacology 96.404–407.

### **89.401 Neuroanatomy**

An introduction to experimental techniques. The organisation of the mammalian nervous system with particular emphasis on the cellular, chemical and connective anatomy of the sensory and motor systems.

### **89.402 Immunobiology**

An intensive analysis of the ontogeny of cells that comprise the immune system, the genes and hormones that regulate differentiation and the processes underlying lymphocyte recognition. Emphasis is given to the molecular mechanisms regulating immunity.

### **89.403 Experimental Pathology**

An introduction to the experimental method used to study normal and abnormal cells and tissues. Histological, histochemical, ultrastructural and biochemical approaches to cell and tissue injury.

### **89.404 Cancer Biology**

The biological and molecular basis of cancer development and tumour growth and metastasis. Principles of radiobiology and cytotoxic therapy of cancer, with an emphasis on molecular mechanisms.

## **DEPARTMENT OF OPTOMETRY**

### **Optometry**

#### **Year I**

#### **Chemistry**

#### **08.111 Organic and Physical Chemistry**

#### **08.121 Inorganic and Physical Chemistry**

#### **Mathematics**

#### **26.101 Introduction to Algebra and Calculus**

#### **Physics**

### **31.140 Foundations of Classical Physics**

### **31.150 Foundations of Modern Physics**

#### **Psychology**

#### **32.108 Introduction to General Psychology**

#### **32.109 Introduction to Experimental Psychology**

#### **Biology**

#### **39.101 Central Concepts of Biology**

All papers as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science.

**Note:** For 31.140 a candidate may substitute 31.141.11 For 31.150 a candidate may substitute 31.151.

### **Year II**

#### **44.200 Physical Optics**

Image quality assessment, resolution of optical instruments, the optical transfer function. Interference and interferometers. Diffraction. Thin film optics. Polarisation. Sources and detectors. Coherent optical processes, holography. Fibre optics.

#### **44.201 Geometrical Optics**

Refraction at plane and spherical surfaces, limitations of Gaussian optics, thick lenses, cardinal points, equivalent and vertex powers, paraxial theory of optical instruments, stops. Magnification. Optical materials.

#### **44.203 Ocular Anatomy**

Anatomy of the eye and orbit and adjacent structures, cranial nerves, blood supply to the eye, embryology of the eye, comparative anatomy of the eye.

#### **44.205 Ocular Physiology**

The vascular supply to the eye. Formation and circulation of aqueous humour, intraocular pressure. Chemistry and metabolism of the cornea, corneal permeability, turbulence and the maintenance of transparency. Structure of the crystalline lens.

#### **22.210 Physiological Optics**

Optics of the eye, schematic eyes, accommodation, spectacle and relative spectacle magnification. Luminous efficiency, light and dark adaptation, increment thresholds. Stiles Crawford effect, temporal and spatial induction, critical fusion frequency, entoptic phenomena, visual acuity, trivariance of vision, chromaticity, theories of colour vision and colour discrimination. Classification of eye movements, local signs, corresponding points, diplopia, afferent and efferent control mechanisms, rotary movements, nystagmus, conjugate movements, vergence and stereopsis, Panum's areas, fixation disparity.

#### **Psychology**

#### **32.220 Human Experimental Psychology**

#### **Physiology**

#### **67.201 Introduction to Physiology**

All papers as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Science

#### **Biochemistry**

#### **66.204 General and Ocular Biochemistry**

#### **Year III**

#### **44.305 Ocular Pharmacology**

General principles of drug actions on organ systems

and the central and peripheral nervous systems. Characteristics of drugs producing miosis, mydriasis, cycloplegia, accommodative spasm and anaesthesia of ocular surfaces.

#### **44.306 Applied Optics**

Optical design, meridional and paraxial ray tracing, aberrations of single surfaces, lens systems. the design of optical instruments, optical tolerances, and the assessment of optical performance. Luminous transmittance. Colorimetry, the CIE colorimetric systems.

#### **44.310 Physiological Optics**

Refractive anomalies of the eye, changes in refraction with age, aetiology of refractive errors, presbyopia. Fusion and stereopsis in the human visual system. Recent advances in visual physiology.

#### **44.312 Contact Lens Practice**

Contact lens designs and principles of fitting. Disinfection procedures, patient instruction. Signs and symptoms of ill-fitting contact lenses and lens modification procedures.

#### **44.313 Environmental Vision**

Visual ergonomics in land transport, aviation and industry. The elements of illuminating engineering, photometric concepts and computational methods. Lamp types, principles and applications, atmospheric optics. Principles of industrial safety, incidence of eye injuries, eye protection programmes, visual screening.

#### **44.314 General Pathology**

An introduction to general pathology including mechanisms of disease, infection, inflammation, repair, immunological processes, cardiovascular disease, neo-plasms, processes of ageing.

#### **44.315 Ocular Pathology**

A study of the pathology and clinical manifestations of diseases of the eye, orbit, lacrimal apparatus and visual pathways. Symptomatic disturbances of vision, headache. Eye signs of general disease.

#### **44.316 Ophthalmic Optics**

Cylindrical and spherocylindrical lenses, toric lenses, simple and accurate transposition. Ophthalmic prisms. Multi-focal lens design. Ophthalmic materials, absorptive lenses. Aspheric lenses. Design of low vision aids. Optical dispensing, frame description and measurement, lens marking, cutting and edging, grooving and drilling. Prescription verification, lens manufacture, surfacing, facial measurement, frame selection and adjustment.

#### **44.330 Clinical Optometry**

The optometric examination, objective and subjective refractive techniques, Assessment of ocular health, oculomotor balance, visual fields and colour vision. Clinical problem solving and patient management. Binocular vision anomalies, heterophoria, fusion, heterotropia.

#### **32.213 Cognitive Processes: Introductory**

An introduction to the psychology of human perception memory, thinking and language.

### **Year IV**

#### **44.415 Community Health Optometry**

Organisation of health services in New Zealand, health planning and administration. Health manpower requirements. The delivery of health care, role of government statutory and voluntary agencies. Role of optometry in the team approach to health care. Optometric needs of particular groups.

#### **44.421 Project**

An investigation into some aspect of optometry or visual science.

#### **44.430 General Optometric Practice**

The optometric examination, techniques and interpretation. Management of anomalies of the visual system. Assessment of ocular health, referral procedures.

#### **44.431 Contact Lens Practice**

Contact lens fitting procedure. Aftercare and the ocular response to contact lenses. Lens care and maintenance.

#### **44.432 Low Vision Practice**

Ocular and vision problems of the elderly. Epidemiology aetiology, signs and symptoms of low vision. Optometric examination and management of the low vision patient, interdisciplinary rehabilitation resources, counselling and referral.

#### **44.433 Binocular Vision Practice**

Detection, measurement and classification of latent and manifest disorders of binocular vision. Visual training. Clinical aspects of aniseikonia.

### **Optometry for MSc**

(Two papers selected from 44.451 to 44.454 and one from another subject approved by the Head of Department and a Thesis 44.601 which shall count as three papers.) This course normally requires fifteen months to two years and necessitates full-time attendance to achieve Honours. Students who propose to undertake the MSc degree should consult the Head of Department towards the end of the year prior to enrolment.

#### **44.451 Physiological Optics**

A review of selected areas of physiological optics.

#### **44.552 Determinants of Visual Optics**

Environmental, genetic and geographical factors in the aetiology of human refractive error. The stimulus to accommodation, dark focus, mechanisms of accommodation, and presbyopia.

#### **44.453 Advanced Analysis of Visual Functions**

Assessment of visual function, contrast sensitivity functions; effects of defocus and intra-ocular scatter. Vision at low luminance levels.

#### **44.454 Special Topic**

The study of selected fields of Optometry at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field. The topic will be prescribed by the Head of Department.

## DEPARTMENT OF PHARMACOLOGY AND CLINICAL PHARMACOLOGY

### Stage III Courses

#### 96.301 Principles of Pharmacology

(One paper and practical work)

An introductory course on the principles of pharmacology. Topics are passage of drugs across membranes; drug distribution, metabolism and elimination; pharmacokinetics; mechanism of drug action; drug toxicity; drug development and evaluation.

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than three hours a week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

*Prerequisites:* 66.201 or 66.202 or 67.201 and 12 or more credits from Science papers above Stage I.

A maximum number will be determined by the available accommodation.

#### \*96.302 Systematic Pharmacology

(One paper and practical work)

This course examines specific aspects of pharmacology, particular emphasis being placed on mechanism of action, and the modification of normal function by drugs. The actions of drugs on excitable membranes, membrane bound enzymes, and cellular and bacterial replication will be considered in depth. The modification by drugs of neurotransmission, and renal, gastrointestinal and endocrinal function will be reviewed. Practical work complements the lecture course.

*Lectures:* Students will attend two lectures a week.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than three hours a week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

*Prerequisites:* 66.201 or 66.202 or 67.201 and 12 or more credits from Science papers above Stage I.

*Corequisites:* 96.301.

A maximum number will be determined by the available accommodation.

### Pharmacology for MSc and Honours

(Three papers and a Thesis (96.621) which shall count as three papers.) Two papers to be selected from 96.404 to 96.407 and one from Biochemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Medical Science or Physiology with the approval of the Head of the Department concerned, or for Medical Science, of the Chairman of the Committee for the MSc in Medical Science. Students who propose to undertake the MSc Degree should consult the Head of Department as early as possible and preferably before the end of the academic year preceding the year of enrolment for the degree. In consultation with the Head of the Department, students will select two papers among those listed below and an appropriate topic. Only two of the papers listed will be offered each year and a sufficient

number of enrolments will be required in each case. The student should normally expect to complete his thesis during the second year.

#### 96.404 Drug Disposition and Action

Absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion of drugs. Sites and mechanisms of drug action. Analysis of these processes.

#### 96.405 Transmitter and Humoral Pharmacology

Principles of effects of drugs on endogenous systems. Drugs affecting noradrenergic and cholinergic transmission. Drugs affecting synthesis, and actions of histamine, angiotensin, prostaglandins and related compounds and adenosine.

#### 96.406 Cardiovascular Pharmacology

Mechanism of action of drugs on cardiovascular system. Drugs used to treat hypertension, cardiac arrhythmias, angina pectoris and heart failure. Drugs affecting blood coagulation.

#### 96.407 Special Topics

The study of selected fields of pharmacology at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field. The topic will be prescribed by the Head of the Department.

## DEPARTMENT OF PHILOSOPHY

### Stage II Course

#### 29.203 (5 credits) Philosophy of Science

This course is available for second and third year BSc students. It provides an introduction to the logic, methodology, ontology and epistemology of science, and other problem areas where philosophy intersects with foundational issues in special sciences. No prior acquaintance with philosophy will be presupposed. However, students will be required to master some elementary logic. Full details of the course, including texts, can be found in the brochure *Department of Philosophy: Course Outlines* available from the Departmental Secretary.

## DEPARTMENT OF PHYSICS

### Stage I courses

#### 31.101-104 and 28.113

These papers present aspects of pure and applied physics of interest to students in other subjects or to students who wish to study physics for cultural rather than vocational reasons. They do not allow advancement in physics except to the Stage II papers 31.200-206 as shown in the BSc schedule.

The papers 31.101 and 102 are of general interest. They emphasise concepts and assume a background familiarity with physics and mathematics equivalent to a University Entrance level. The papers 31.104 and 28.113 are specialised papers as indicated below.

#### 31.101 (6 credits) Concepts of Classical Physics

Two lectures per week for the whole year and twelve three-hour laboratory sessions.

The course begins with the basic ideas of periodic vibrations. These are then applied to mechanical

systems such as vehicle suspensions and to the study of sound vibrations. The principles of geometric optics are discussed leading to an understanding of how telescopes and microscopes work. Lectures in the second half of the year are concerned with the fundamentals of electromagnetism and its many manifestations in nature and technology. Some of the basic concepts discussed are those of electric charge, fields, electric potential, Faraday's law of induction and the contribution of Maxwell to electromagnetism. In addition some practical electric current theory is dealt with including everyday applications. Because of limitations on numbers of pieces of apparatus it is rarely possible for physics laboratories to be in step with the lecture course. For this reason many experiments will be demonstrated in the lectures so that they will be more familiar when attempted in the laboratory.

### **31.102 (6 credits) Concepts of Modern Physics**

Two lectures per week for the whole year and twelve three-hour laboratory sessions.

The course begins by discussing the rise of Newtonian mechanics. It is found, for instance, that people untutored in physics tend to have a view of the physical world similar to that which prevailed amongst "scientists" in mediaeval times. The meaning and significance of the three laws of motion enunciated by Newton are explained. His law of gravitation is then discussed and combined with the laws of motion to show how the motions of planets and moons could be predicted. Terrestrial applications of Newton's ideas are then given, such as applications to fluid flow and the kinetic theory of gases. The 19th century concept of how light waves were propagated is discussed and how this gave a surprising result when attempts were made to determine the absolute motion of the earth; Einstein's resolution of the dilemma and the origins of the theory of relativity; the wedding of space and time and matter and energy. Ideas of quantum theory are introduced to explain atomic properties. The validity of the theory as demonstrated by its successes will then be shown. Since quantum theory seems to deny determinism, conceptual difficulties will be discussed. Although the course can be taken satisfactorily with little background in mathematics, the quantitative nature of physics will often be stressed. To this end lectures will often contain "appendices" sometimes in the form of handouts aimed at more satisfying explanations of the lecture material for those with a mathematical background.

### **31.104 (2 credits) Basic Electronics for Instrumentation**

Twelve lectures and twelve two-hour laboratory sessions. This paper is given in even numbered years. It is intended for nonphysicists who need to use and understand electronic instrumentation. It aims to provide a basic understanding of electronic circuits and electronic instruments commonly used for

scientific purposes.

The topics covered include:

- (1) the calculation, measurement and observation of direct, alternating and transient electrical signals;
- (2) a discussion of the factors which cause measurement and observational errors;
- (3) the characteristics of some active circuit devices, including transducers;
- (4) the operating principles and uses of power supplies, amplifiers and oscilloscopes;
- (5) simple logic circuits and their use in the control of experimental parameters.

The laboratory work is an integral part of the paper in which a substantial part of the instruction will take place.

### **28.113 Acoustics (Paper in Faculty of Music)**

This paper is offered as part of the course for the degree of Bachelor of Music but is available to science students under BSc Regulation 10. Topics covered include the fundamental principles of oscillations and wave propagation; stationary waves; resonance; loudness; pitch; tone quality; intervals and scales; the principles of operation of stringed, wood-wind, brass and other instruments; the electronic production and reproduction of sound; and the acoustics of rooms.

### **31.140, 141 and 150, 151**

These papers provide for general advancement to Stage II papers in physics as well as entry to engineering and various other disciplines.

The papers 31.140 and 31.150 form a combination intended for students who expect to major in physics or advance in engineering. They are calculus-based in their presentation and are appropriate for students entering university with a background achievement in physics and mathematics equivalent to an A Bursary or Entrance Scholarship standard. They allow advancement to the core Stage II physics papers 31.210, 220, 240, 250, 260 and 290, as well as to the optional papers.

The papers 31.141 and 31.151 are intended for students wishing to advance in physics, engineering, other sciences, mathematics or various other disciplines such as architecture, dentistry, medicine (Otago), optometry, surveying etc. They are similar in content to the 31.140 and 31.150 papers but will be presented with minimal calculus and correspondingly assessed at a lower level of difficulty. They are strongly recommended for students entering with the equivalent of B Bursary or UE achievement in physics and mathematics. These papers allow advancement to the optional physics papers at Stage II (31.200, 206, 270) but normally a pass at a B-grade or better will be required to qualify for entry to the core papers.

### **31.140 (6 credits) Foundations of Classical Physics**

Two lectures per week for the whole year and twelve three-hour laboratory sessions. Mechanics, wave-

motion, sound and light, electromagnetism. (Entrance Scholarship, A Bursary or equivalent standard assumed.)

### **31.141 (6 credits) Principles of Classical Physics**

Two lectures per week for the whole year and twelve three-hour laboratory sessions. Mechanics, wave-motion, sound and light, electromagnetism. (B Bursary, UE or equivalent standard assumed.)

### **31.150 (6 credits) Foundations of Modern Physics**

Two lectures per week for the whole year and twelve three-hour laboratory sessions. Thermal physics, relativity and quantum physics. (Entrance Scholarship, A Bursary or equivalent standard assumed.)

### **31.151 (6 credits) Principles of Modern Physics**

Two lectures per week for the whole year and twelve three-hour laboratory sessions. Thermal physics, relativity and quantum physics. (B Bursary, UE or equivalent standard assumed.)

### **Stage II Lecture Courses**

**Note:** Normally a course containing more than THREE of the papers 31.210, 220, 240, 250, 260 (including any already credited) will not be approved unless it also contains 31.290 (or 31.290 has already been credited).

Attendance at a fortnightly tutorial or problem solving session is required for each advancing lecture course. These sessions may also be used for extensions of the lecture material.

A list of textbooks or books for recommended reading is available from the Department Office prior to enrolment.

### **Direct Entry**

Students who have gained an Entrance Scholarship with outstanding marks in both physics and mathematics may be granted direct entry to Stage II papers in physics. Enquiries should be made to the Head of Department.

### **Core Papers**

The papers designated as core papers form part of the MSc prerequisite in physics. In addition, all students intending to take a major interest in Physics at Stage III are advised to take the Stage II core papers and appropriate Mathematics papers, whether or not they intend to proceed to Master's level.

### **Non-Advancing Papers**

The papers 31.200-206 do not lead on to any other papers in physics at Stage III and have minimal Stage I prerequisites. These papers present aspects of pure and applied physics of interest to students in other subjects, but may also be taken by students advancing in physics.

### **31.200 (4 credits) Topics in Contemporary and Applied Physics**

This paper provides an introduction to a variety of topics in physics of contemporary interest, such as space physics, astrophysics, geophysics and biophysics. It also discusses the basic physics involved in a variety of general topics such as music, photography and microscopy. The paper is descriptive in nature and makes extensive use of demonstrations, slides, films and closed circuit TV. One two-hour lecture per

week is devoted to each topic, with a different lecturer each week. The course runs throughout the year. This paper is examined by continuous assessment. The prerequisite is any one of the 6-credit Stage I physics papers, or physicochemistry for Human Biology.

### **31.206 (2 credits) Introductory Geophysics**

This paper introduces students to a broad range of topics in geophysics and is intended primarily for non-physics students with interests in geophysics and marine science. The coverage will include basic physical phenomena and processes relating to the Earth as a planet in the solar system, the atmosphere, the oceans and the solid Earth. The level of presentation is appropriate both for advancing physics students and for students in other disciplines.

### **Advancing Papers**

The papers 31.210-270 lead on to more advanced papers in physics and have more extensive Stage I prerequisites than the non-advancing papers. These papers will be of interest primarily to students majoring in physics or in a closely cognate subject, but may be taken independently as part of a wider degree programme. Students enrolling in 31.210-270 should seek advice as to concurrent enrolment in pure and applied mathematics.

Each of the papers 31.210-270 comprises two lectures each week during one half-year, plus a fortnightly tutorial session which will be used for extensions to the lecture material and illustrative problem solving.

### **31.210 (3 credits) Theoretical Methods in Physics (core paper)**

The aim of this paper is to present some typical mathematical methods which are used to describe physical systems. Specific examples will be introduced to show how a mathematical model is formulated for a given physical situation. Methods of analysing simple systems will be explained and solutions discussed in a way which will bring out their physical significance. Examples will be drawn from a variety of topics including mechanical oscillations, acoustical and optical wave propagation, electromagnetism, gravitation and quantum physics.

**Note:** The methods treated in this paper will be useful in other Stage II physics papers. Students are strongly recommended to enrol in 31.210 concurrently with any of the core papers. 31.210 is not a substitute for any of the Stage II papers in pure or applied mathematics but is intended to be complementary to them.

### **31.220 (3 credits) Optics and Acoustics (core paper)**

This paper deals with the fundamentals of optics and acoustics and with some of their applications. It will contain a discussion of such topics as: coherent sources (lasers); interference, diffraction and holography; plane, circular and elliptical polarisation; matrix methods for geometrical optics; image formation and detection; design of optical instruments; fibre optics; acoustic transducers; electromechanical and opto-acoustic analogues.

**31.240 (3 credits) Electronic Physics (core paper)**

The aim of this paper is to provide students with a fundamental understanding of basic electronic circuits and systems. Electric circuit theory, semiconductor devices, circuit applications and principles of electronic design and instrumentation.

**Note:** Students are recommended to enrol concurrently in the laboratory paper 31.290.

**31.250 (3 credits) Quantum and Statistical Physics (core paper)**

The aim of this paper is to introduce students to the concepts of quantum physics and statistical physics. The Schrödinger equation and its application to simple quantum systems. The foundations of classical statistical physics (Maxwell-Boltzmann distribution) and quantum statistics (Fermi-Dirac, Bose-Einstein).

**31.260 (3 credits) Structure of Matter (core paper)**

The aim of this paper is to give students an understanding of the structure of matter in terms of quantum concepts. The following systems will be covered: atoms, molecules, solids (including semiconductors), nuclei and particles.

**31.270 (3 credits) Astronomy and Astrophysics (optional paper)**

Techniques of optical and radio astronomy; determination of properties of the solar system and of stars such as distance, radius and mass; Hertzsprung-Russell diagram; equations of stellar structure, energy production and transport; introduction to stellar evolution, galactic structure and cosmology.

**Note:** The department operates a teaching observatory within the building which is made available to students.

**Stage II Laboratory Courses****31.290 (6 credits) Experimental Physics (core paper)**

This laboratory paper supplements the advancing Stage II lecture papers. It is a prerequisite for the laboratory papers at Stage III and forms part of the prerequisite for MSc in physics. The course occupies two three-hour periods each week throughout the year and is examined on the basis of continuous assessment.

Corequisites for this course are any two of the papers 31.210 to 270.

**31.297 (2 credits) Digital Logic Laboratory (optional paper)**

This laboratory paper is particularly designed for Computer Science students with an interest in computer hardware. It can be taken concurrently with 31.290 but on its own will not be a sufficient prerequisite for the laboratory papers at Stage III nor for MSc in physics. Physics 31.140 or 31.141 are designated prerequisites and Computer Science 07.210 is a corequisite in the course.

The course occupies two two-hour periods each week

for half the year, and is examined on the basis of continuous assessment.

**Stage III Lecture Courses**

**Note:** The prerequisite for Masters in Physics in 1989 will include all the core papers at Stage II and III and TWO of 31.390-393.

**Core Papers**

The paper 31.325 is the core paper and forms part of the MSc requirement in Physics. See also preceding Note.

**31.325-370**

The prerequisites for these papers are listed in the BSc Schedule. Students are recommended to enrol concurrently in Mathematics at Stage III level, the papers 26.340, 26.345, 26.360 and 26.375 being the most relevant. Some papers in Computer Science such as 07.100, 07.101, 07.105, 07.210 and 07.340 are also likely to be of benefit to Physics students.

Students intending to undertake graduate studies in Physics should ensure that they satisfy the MSc prerequisites listed under the MSc Regulations.

**31.325 (4 credits) Advanced Classical Physics (core paper)**

This paper covering electromagnetism, classical and statistical mechanics, contains material important to all further studies in Physics. Topics covered include the development of Maxwell's equations in differential form, and the application of these equations to: electrostatics, magnetic fields, the EM wave equation, and EM wave propagation. Some topics in classical mechanics will be covered prior to statistical mechanics which covers: the basis for thermodynamics, entropy and temperature, radiation, and the classical and quantum description of an ideal gas. The lectures comprise a condensed set of material from the courses in the Department offered before 1988 as 31.312, 313 and 320.

**31.326 (2 credits) Laser Physics and Electro Optics**

This paper is concerned with modern advances in lasers and optics with emphasis on their applications. Topics covered include: common laser systems, resonator theory, propagation of laser beams, dispersion, opto electronic devices, nonlinear optics, fibre optics, optical transmission systems, fibre optic sensors and optical detectors. The course is of value to students with interests in electrical engineering, electro optics and research in any experimental area of Physics. 31.325 is a corequisite for Physics students, but other equivalent corequisites can be substituted by electrical engineering students.

**31.330 (2 credits) Terrestrial Physics**

A general introduction to the physics of the solid Earth, including aspects of the gravitational field, the rotation and figure of the Earth, seismology and the internal structure of the Earth, the Earth's internal heat, the geomagnetic field, paleomagnetism and geodynamics.

This 2 credit option is a special arrangement for ap-



plied geophysics students and has the majority of the lectures given in common with 31.335. Geology 21.306 (Applied Geophysics) is a corequisite.

**Note:** Physics 31.330 is a corequisite for Geology 21.306 and Geology 21.307/31.393 (Experimental Geophysics).

### **31.335 (4 credits) Geophysics**

This 46 lecture course contains a subset of material offered before 1988 as courses 31.330, 331 and 332. It includes a general introduction to the physics of the solid Earth, including aspects of the gravitational field, the rotation and figure of the Earth, seismology and the internal structure of the Earth, the Earth's internal heat, the geomagnetic field, paleomagnetism and geodynamics. The physics of the ocean and atmosphere are treated by application of fluid mechanics to the relevant dynamical phenomena. Other topics include driven flow, circulation of the atmosphere and ocean, atmospheric electricity, radiation balance and optical phenomena.

### **31.342 (2 credits) Semiconductor Devices**

This paper is concerned with understanding the electrical behaviour of semiconductor devices. It contains material relating to the physics of semiconductor junctions, device fabrication and integration, electrical characteristics of discrete and integrated devices, circuit models and device applications.

Although the paper is general in nature, and is designed to follow 31.240, students will benefit from concurrent enrolment in 31.345.

**Note:** Students in this paper are encouraged to enrol concurrently in 31.390, 391 or 392.

### **31.345 (4 credits) Analogue and digital Electronics**

This paper contains all of the material offered before 1988 in 31.341 and 31.343 and is relevant to the needs of students intending to undertake experimental work in any area of Physics. Topics discussed include time and complex frequency domain analysis methods applied to electrical and physical systems, Laplace transform methods, Nyquist and Bode plots, poles and zeros, feedback, phase locked loops, oscillators, modulation and noise. A systematic introduction to modern digital techniques is given, covering pulse generation, shaping and cable transmission, active and passive switching circuits, combinational and sequential logic systems.

**Note:** Students enrolling in this paper will benefit substantially by also enrolling in 31.390, 391 or 392.

### **31.355 (4 credits) Advanced Quantum Physics**

This 46 lecture course contains a subset of material given before 1988 in papers 31.350, 352 and 353. The paper deals with the postulates of non-relativistic quantum mechanics and their application in atomic, molecular, solid-state, nuclear and particle physics. The study of these topics will be developed using the three-dimensional Schrödinger equation and will include the quantisation of angular momentum and systems in which like particles interact.

**Note:** Students in this paper will benefit greatly by enrolling also in 31.390 or 31.391 or 31.392.

### **31.356 (2 credits) Principles of Experimental Quantum Physics**

This 23 lecture course covers many topics of interest in experimental quantum physics. These are applicable to fields such as Medical Physics, Optical Communication, Radiochemistry etc. Some of the topics discussed are: the interaction of charged particles, neutrons and electromagnetic radiation with matter, the detection of particles and photons. In addition the course covers the apparatus of experimental quantum physics; particle accelerators, vacuum systems, ion and atomic beam sources, lasers.

**Note:** Students in this paper are encouraged to enrol concurrently in 31.390, 31.391 or 31.392.

### **31.370 (2 credits) Astrophysics**

This paper builds upon the second year course 31.270 and includes the following topics: stellar variability and basic stellar pulsation theory; radial velocity curves; close binary star systems and accretion processes; pulsars and gravitational radiation; white dwarfs and neutron stars; properties and detection of black holes; Newtonian cosmology and research topics of current interest.

**Note:** The department operates a teaching observatory within the building which is made available to students.

### **31.380-389 (each 2 credits) Selected Topics**

Subject to the approval of the Head of Department students may select not more than two topics from those offered at MSc level in Physics. Any necessary prerequisites or corequisites will be as determined by the Head of Department.

These papers will be examined in a fashion appropriate to Stage III as part of the Selected Topics 380-389.

From time to time special lecture courses in Physics may be offered to students in particular areas of specialisation. These papers will be announced prior to the enrolment period in the year in which they are given.

### **Stage III Laboratory Courses**

#### **31.390, 391, 392 (each 3 credits) Experimental Physics A, B, C**

Three general laboratory papers are available at Stage III level in Physics, and students may enrol for one or more of these in the same or subsequent years. Each paper normally occupies two three-hour laboratory periods for half the year, but laboratory times are flexible depending on the allocation of experiments in the Advanced Laboratory, and 31.392 may be spread over the whole year, at the discretion of the course organiser. Each paper will contain a representative selection of experiments from different branches of physics, but will in addition contain experiments selected as far as is practicable to suit the particular interests of students. Experiments are available in general physics, atomic and nuclear physics, electronic physics and pure and applied geophysics.

In view of the value to be derived towards an under-

standing of experimental physics, it is expected that all students taking any of the 390-series laboratory courses will offer themselves for a period of Stage I laboratory demonstrating.

Prerequisites for enrolment in 31.390, 391 or 392 are passes in *two* of the papers 31.210 to 31.270 and in 31.290 (special prerequisites apply for 31.393 — see below). Corequisites for all four laboratory papers are concurrent enrolment (or passes) totalling at least two credits from 31.325–356 for each one of 31.390–393. At least *two* of the papers 390 to 393 are required as a prerequisite to Masters in Physics.

### **31.393 (3 credits) Experimental Geophysics**

This is a joint paper offered by the Geology and Physics Departments and is the same as 21.307. For further information on this paper students should consult the entry under 21.307 Experimental Geophysics.

## **Physics for MSc and Honours MSc Lecture Courses**

Students are expected to attend five of the lecture courses listed below, four of which must be presented for examination. Normally, all four papers will be examined at the end of the first year of MSc enrolment, but where a paper is not available in that year it may be taken during the second year at the discretion of the Head of Department. With the approval of the Heads of Department involved a Masters paper in another subject may be substituted for one of the papers in physics.

Students will be assisted in their selection of papers at enrolment but should feel free to discuss their proposed course of study, including an area of interest for thesis work, with lecturing staff before the end of the Stage III year.

There are no specific prerequisites for the individual lecture papers, but it is desirable that students should have taken the corresponding Stage III paper where this is indicated. Concurrent enrolment in suitable Masters papers may be advised. Enrolment for COP in a supporting paper may also be recommended.

A list of textbooks or books for recommended reading is available from the Departmental Office by 1 December of the year prior to enrolment, but the advice of the lecturing staff should be sought before purchases are made.

### **31.410 Transform Methods**

This paper deals with the theory and application of transform methods to linear physical systems. Topics presented will include: convolution, continuous and discrete Fourier transforms, Laplace transforms,  $z$  transforms and Hilbert transforms; with applications selected from: electric circuits, signal processing, optics, wave theory, spectroscopy and statistics.

### **31.414 Relativity and Cosmology**

Aspects of the special and general theories of relativity. The necessary tensor calculus is developed in

the course which is designed to give an introduction to gravitation and cosmology.

## **31.420 Physics of Ionized Gases and the Ionosphere**

**Ionized Gases:** Only fully ionized gases are treated. The subject is introduced by considering the motion of charged particles under the 'guiding centre' approximation. The Boltzmann equation is introduced and used to develop fluid type equations for a two-component ionized gas. Solutions with application to astrophysics and fusion machines are considered. Electrostatic and electromagnetic waves in a homogeneous ionized gas with and without a uniform magnetic field completes the treatment.

**Ionosphere:** Studies of the upper atmosphere and ionosphere relate to the interactions with solar plasma and solar radiation, formation of the different ionized layers, use of the ionosphere for long-distance radio communications, and the use of radio waves to investigate the upper atmosphere.

**Note:** Previous enrolment in 31.325 is desirable.

### **31.431 Wave Propagation**

A general treatment of propagation of acoustic, electromagnetic, seismic and surface waves with selected applications in underwater acoustics, oceanography, radio waves in the ionosphere, geophysical exploration and earthquake analysis. Topics include rays and normal modes in inhomogeneous layered media, reflection coefficients, attenuation, WKB approximations, stress-strain tensors, Rayleigh, Love and head waves and whole Earth models.

### **31.432 Advanced Atmospheric Physics**

The microphysics of cloud development and the formation of precipitation in warm and freezing clouds. Severe storms. Scattering and absorption of radiation by aerosols and precipitation. The formation of fogs. The dynamics and thermodynamics of airflow and precipitation development over hills. Topics in current research.

**Note:** Previous enrolment in 31.335 is desirable.

### **31.433 Advanced Applied Geophysics**

The theory and practice of the interpretation of geophysical measurements. Topics covered include: potential field theory; quantitative interpretation of gravitational and magnetic anomalies (two- and three dimensional bodies); DC and AC resistivity measurements; seismic wave transmission, refraction and reflection studies.

**Practical Work:** The year's practical work will be assessed by means of exercises to be completed during the lecture course and two essays and discussion of a seminar topic.

**Note:** This paper is the same as 21.406 and is given jointly by the Geology and Physics Departments. Previous enrolment in 31.330 or 31.335, 21.306 and 31.393 is desirable.

### **31.441 Signal Processing**

This paper is concerned with the theory and application of modern techniques used in the transmission,

reception and interpretation of signals. Topics presented include: operational amplifiers and active filters, modulation and detection of signals in the presence of noise, signal analysis by analogue and digital processes, digital filtering, phased detectors and optical signal processing methods.

**Note:** Previous enrolment in 31.345 is desirable and concurrent enrolment in 31.410 is recommended.

### 31.443 Integrated Electronics

A paper in digital and high speed pulse electronics with application in instrumentation and digital systems. Topics discussed include: number systems and codes, combinational logic, sequential digital systems (synchronous and asynchronous), digital system components and high speed switching devices.

The paper is of interest to students intending to undertake experimental work in any field of study and particularly to those with an interest in Computer Science.

**Note:** Previous enrolment in 31.345 is desirable.

### 31.450 Quantum Theory

A review is given of the general formalism of quantum theory, making use of Dirac notation throughout. Particular topics covered may include scattering theory, time-dependent perturbation theory, relativistic quantum mechanics and spin, quantum theory of radiation and introductory quantum field theory, rotations and other symmetry operations. Applications are taken from atomic, nuclear and particle physics.

### 31.453 Nuclear Physics

The aim of this paper is to present a unified picture of nuclear structure and interactions. The main topics discussed are the nucleon-nucleon interaction, nuclear matter and nuclear models, and nuclear reactions.

**Note:** Previous enrolment in 31.355 and 31.356 is desirable, and concurrent enrolment in 31.450 is strongly recommended.

### 31.454 Elementary Particle Physics

Properties of the elementary particles as experimentally found and introduction to the theory of their strong, electromagnetic and weak interactions; quantum field theory; cosmic rays; survey of current experimental and theoretical research approaches.

**Note:** Previous enrolment in 31.355 is desirable, and students are recommended to enrol concurrently in 31.450.

### 31.455 Laser Physics and Quantum Optics

Semi-classical theory of simple and optical processes, light amplification and absorption. Modern developments in the basic theoretical description of light fields and of optical phenomena. Statistical properties of light fields, coherence, photon detection, photoelectron counting and correlation with applications to very high resolution spectroscopy in light-scattering processes. The laser and non-linear optical phenomena.

**Note:** Previous enrolment in 31.355 is desirable.

### 31.480-489 Selected Topics

With the approval of the Head of Department it is

possible to select one Stage III paper in physics not previously taken, or with the approval of both Heads of Departments concerned, one Stage III paper in another subject as one of the four papers required for the MSc degree in Physics. In these cases additional course work may be required and a special examination will be sat as one of the Selected Topics 31.480-489.

### Special Lectures

Short courses of lectures on special techniques and instrumentation relevant to research activities of interest to the Department will be given from time to time. These lectures are available to staff and students and do not form part of the MSc examination.

### 31.601 Thesis

An experimental or theoretical thesis is required, and will count as four papers. Students are given advice concerning theses early in the first year of MSc enrolment and are expected to familiarise themselves with research in progress in the Department during the first half-year. Staff will be ready to discuss possible thesis topics with students during this period, with a view to a final choice of topic being made prior to the end of the second term. The choice of thesis topic is subject to the approval of the Head of Department, who will consider the availability of staff and facilities over the Department as a whole. Wherever possible, the student's first choice will be approved.

With the approval of the Head of Department the thesis may be submitted by 1 February of the year following first enrolment for the Master of Science degree provided that students have commenced work on the thesis in December of their Stage III year.

Theses will otherwise be expected to be completed by 1 February following the second year of enrolment. Extensions of time under MSc Regulation 9(b) will not normally be recommended and will require justification by the candidate's supervisor on grounds of special circumstances only.

The Department is prepared to meet the cost of an additional copy of the thesis for the Departmental Thesis Library and students are asked to provide such a copy.

### Research in Physics

Facilities are available for postgraduate and postdoctoral research in Physics in a wide variety of fields. Further information is available from the Departmental Office.

The PhD degree in Physics normally requires about two and a half to three years full-time work. Part-time study is possible after the initial two years.

## DEPARTMENT OF PHYSIOLOGY

### Stage II

#### 67.201 Introductory Physiology

(one paper and practical work)

An introductory course on cellular and organ phy-

siology and relevant processes, particularly in mammalian systems. Topics are muscle, nervous system, motor control and sensory function; cardiovascular and respiratory systems and blood, with their exchange and transport functions; endocrine and reproductive systems, with humoral control of cell metabolism; alimentary system, digestion and absorption; kidney function; body fluids. This paper is complementary to paper 38.209 offered by the Zoology Department.

*Lectures:* Two lectures a week.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than three hours per week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

*Prerequisites:* 08.111 or 08.121: 6 credits from any course in Biology or Zoology.

### Stage III

#### 67.301 Systematic Physiology

(one paper and practical work)

This course examines specific aspects of physiology which demonstrate the integration of function from the level of the cell to that of the whole organism. Visceral regulatory mechanisms, regulation of body fluids, cardiovascular control, and the determinants of oxygen supply and demand are considered in depth. Special emphasis is placed on mammalian systems. Practical work complements the lecture course and provides training in a wide range of the techniques used in physiology.

*Lectures:* Two lectures a week.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than three hours per week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

*Prerequisites:* 67.201 and 12 or more credits from any science course at the Stage II or III level.

#### 67.302 Physiology of Cells and Excitable Tissues

(one paper and practical work)

This half-year course examines the physiology of excitable tissues with particular emphasis on the nature of the fundamental processes involved. The bio-physical basis of membrane potentials; the nature of voltage and time dependent ion-selective membrane channels; synaptic transmission; the regulation of contractile processes; and functional differences between skeletal, cardiac and smooth muscle will be studied in detail. The approach is quantitative and special emphasis is placed on mammalian systems. Laboratory work complements the lecture courses and introduces students to the principal physiological techniques of investigation in this field.

*Lectures:* Two lectures a week.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than 3 hours per week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

*Prerequisites:* Physiology 67.201 and 12 or more credits from any science course at the Stage II or III level.

#### 67.303 Physiology of the Nervous System

(one paper and practical work)

This half-year course examines the role of the nervous system and general pattern of its functional organisation. The physiology of the processing of sensory information, of motor outputs and their control, the integrative functions of the central nervous system, central neural mechanisms of homeostasis and aspects of the development of the nervous system are studied in detail. Special emphasis is placed on mammalian and human systems. Laboratory work complements the lecture course and introduces students to a range of neurophysiological techniques.

*Lectures:* Two lectures a week.

*Laboratories:* Students are required to attend practical classes of not less than 3 hours per week. Performance in laboratory work will contribute to the final grade for the course.

*Prerequisites:* Physiology 67.201 and 12 or more credits from any science course at the Stage II or III level.

#### Physiology for MSc and Honours

(Three papers and a Thesis (67.621) which shall count as three papers).

Students who propose to undertake the MSc Degree should consult the Head of Department as early as possible and preferably before the end of the academic year preceding the year of enrolment for the degree. In consultation with the Head of Department, students will select three papers from among those listed below and an appropriate thesis topic. Not all the papers listed may be offered each year and a sufficient number of enrolments will be required in each case. With the approval of the Senate, a Master's paper in another subject may be substituted for one of the papers in Physiology.

#### 67.401 Mechanisms of Physiological Control

Studies of physiological regulatory mechanisms.

#### 67.402 Applications of Systems Analysis in Physiology

An introduction to systems analysis and control theory, and their application to physiological systems.

#### 67.403 Neurophysiology

Central processing of sensory information. Organisation and integration of motor pathways in the brain involved in respiratory and cardiovascular control. Cellular mechanisms of synaptic function and memory.

#### 67.405 Methods in Physiology

An outline of the theory and practice of data acquisition and analysis in physiology. Principles of experimental design, instrumentation, statistics and computation are considered with respect to specific experiments.

**67.406 Perinatal Physiology**

A study of the physiology of the foetus and newborn, with an introduction to the methodology in this field. This paper will be taught in the Department of Paediatrics.

**DEPARTMENT OF PSYCHOLOGY**

**Note:** on text books: Students taking advanced courses are advised to consult with the lecturers concerned before purchasing books.

**Notes:** on courses: the Schedule attached to the Course Regulations for the Degree of BSc should be consulted for pre and corequisites.

\*This paper will not be taught during the current Calendar year.

†This paper will not be taught during the current Calendar year unless sufficient staff is available.

**Stage I Courses**

Two papers are offered for Psychology I which together provide a general introduction to the psychological study of behaviour.

The papers may be taken separately. However, a pass in 32.108 and 32.109 is necessary for entry to Stage II.

**32.108 Introduction to General Psychology**

Topics covered include: the neurobiological basis of behaviour; social behaviour and social influence; developmental psychology; mental abilities and measurement; personality; psychopathology and its treatments.

**32.109 Introduction to Experimental Psychology**

Topics covered include: learning, sensation and perception; memory and cognition; statistics.

(Laboratory attendance of 2 hours per week is required.)

**Stage II Courses**

A pass in 12 Stage II credits in Psychology is necessary for entry to Stage III.

**32.210 Learning**

Concerned with the two major aspects of learning, schedule control and stimulus control. Topics include: schedules of reinforcement, law of effect, superstition, Premack theory, choice and matching, generalisation gradients, transfer tests, transposition, blocking and overshadowing.

**32.220 Human Experimental Psychology**

An introduction to experimental design, analysis and theory, as applied to human perception and cognition.

**32.230 Brain and Behaviour**

A basic introduction to the structure and function of the brain, with applications to animal and human behaviour.

**32.240 Social and Developmental Psychology**

An introduction to the study of social behaviour and change across the lifespan in human behaviour. Half the paper will include such topics as interpersonal processes, nonverbal behaviour, small group processes, attitude and attitude change, the physical environment, social interaction and intergroup relations. The other half of the paper will be devoted to behaviour changes in infancy, adolescence and adulthood. Motor, perceptual, cognitive and socioemotional developments will all be considered.

**Stage III Courses**

A pass in 12 Stage III credits in Psychology is necessary for entry to MSc and Honours in Psychology.

**Note:** Paper 32.301 covers some of the essential skills required for professional work in psychology and should be taken by all candidates who may wish to work with clients.

**32.301 The Psychology of Individual Differences**

A study of genetic sources of individual differences of their measurement, and of the construction and use of psychometric tests.

**32.303 Cognitive Processes: Advanced**

An examination of the psychology of attention, pattern recognition, memory, problem solving, language and thinking.

**32.304 Theory and Systems of Personality**

A study of different conceptions of personality with emphasis on their relevance to personal growth and social contexts.

**32.305 Physiological Psychology**

An advanced study of the physiological bases of behaviour with emphasis on research methodology.

**32.306 The Design of Psychological Experiments**

A course to help students design and analyse experiments in psychology, including topics in the analysis of variance, multiple regression, and categorical analysis. An introduction to the use of computers in data analysis through the BMD and SAS statistical packages.

**†32.307 The Psychological Analysis of Vision and Hearing**

Aspects of visual perception affecting behaviour in a variety of environments will be discussed. A study of the effects of noise on people and some relations between normal and pathological hearing will also be covered.

**32.308 Research Topic**

A research topic undertaken under the supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation instead of a final paper.

**32.309 Learning**

A discussion of how behaviour is controlled and modified in animals by consequent reinforcers and punishers. Emphasis is on laboratory research using animals, with some human data also considered. The theoretical approach taken is mainly quantitative.

**†32.311 Social Psychology**

This course concentrates on social functioning in both intergroup and intragroup settings.

**\*32.312 Organisational Psychology**

An examination of personnel psychology, organisational psychology and human engineering.

**32.313 Special Topic in Psychology****32.314 Special Topic in Psychology****Courses for MSc and Honours**

(Four papers and a thesis 32.601 which is equivalent to three papers.)

Students in consultation with the Head of the

Department will select their papers from among the following:

**\*32.401 History of Psychology**

An historical account of psychology with special reference to the aspirations and activities of influential psychologists.

**†32.402 Quantitative Psychology**

The quantitative analysis of psychological phenomena.

**32.403 Applied Analysis of Human Behaviour**

An examination of general issues in behaviour analysis, of approaches to psychological assessment, and of the application of behavioural techniques to psychological phenomena.

**32.404 Sensation and Perception**

An advanced treatment of modern psychophysics and of the psychology of vision and hearing.

**32.406 Physiological Psychology**

A study of current issues in the physiological bases of behaviour.

**32.408 Clinical Neuropsychology**

An examination of the relation between the brain and mental functioning with an emphasis on clinical cases of brain damage.

**32.409 Abnormal Psychology**

A consideration of the psychological understanding of mental disorders, including their aetiology, classification, assessment and treatment.

**†32.410 Neuropsychology**

An advanced treatment of functional models of the human brain and neurolinguistics.

**32.411 Advanced Operant Behaviour**

An advanced study of selected topics in learning at the level of current research.

**32.412 Social Psychology**

An examination of selected research topics in social psychology with a special emphasis on the underlying theories.

**32.413 Contemporary Issues in Developmental Psychology**

An examination of current research on infant development and parenting.

**32.415 Critical Issues in Psychology**

An examination of methodological, metatheoretical and social issues affecting the study and practice of psychology.

**32.416 Cognitive Processes**

A study of selected aspects of human cognition, which includes perception, attention, memory, problem solving and language.

**32.417 Special Topic in Psychology**

Physiological psychology laboratory techniques.

**32.418 Special Topic in Psychology**

**32.419 The Design of Psychological**

**Experiments**

A course to help students design and analyse experiments in psychology, including topics in the analysis of variance, multiple regression, and categorical

analysis. An introduction to the use of computers in data analysis through the BMD and SAS statistical packages.

**Note:** Students who have already passed 32.306 are not eligible to take this paper.

**32.420 Research Topic in Psychology**

A research topic undertaken under the supervision of a staff member and written up for presentation instead of a final paper.

**32.421 Theories and Systems of Psychotherapy**

A study of the theoretical bases of various systems of psychotherapy with particular emphasis on problems associated with matching systems to individuals.

---

## DEPARTMENT OF ZOOLOGY

### Stage 1

The first year course for students in Botany, Zoology or Biology comprises three 6-credit papers, Biology 101 (paper 39.101), Botany 102 (paper 06.102) and Zoology 102 (paper 38.102).

**39.101 Central Concepts of Biology**

Biochemical concepts common to animals, micro-organisms and plants; the biochemistry of macromolecules, especially nucleic acids and proteins; enzyme action and catalysis; cellular energetics; genetic principles and mechanisms; fundamental processes of ecosystems; population and community dynamics; organic evolution. This course may be taken as part of the Stage I requirement in either Botany or Zoology, but may not receive credit in both.

**38.102 Animal Evolution and Diversity**

A survey of the evolution of animals, considering both the broad aspects of the evolutionary progression and detailed adaptations in physiology and anatomy to specific habitat and life history situations. Developmental biology.

**Otago Medical Intermediate**

Extra lectures are run to meet the requirements of the Otago Medical School.

**Advanced Courses**

**\*38.201, 301 Invertebrate Zoology**

Taught in odd numbered years only. The classification, structure and functioning of the invertebrates. A wide range of phyla will be considered; less emphasis will be given to land arthropods. (Detailed treatment of these is given in 38.205.)

**38.202, 302 Vertebrate Zoology**

Taught in even numbered years only. The evolution and biology of the hemichordates and protochordates and vertebrates from fish through to mammals. Particular emphasis is placed on the functional design of vertebrate animals and their adaptations to special environments. The practical course includes the study of vertebrate animals in the laboratory.

**38.203 Animal Orientation and Timing**

A study of the orientation behaviour involved in habitat selection, migration, homing and predation in animals, with analysis of the sensory information in-

volved. An introduction to biological timing will also be given, outlining both the role of biological clocks in the control of temporal patterns of behaviour and physiology, and the physical and biochemical nature of clocks.

### **38.204 Social Behaviour of Animals**

An evolutionary study of the behavioural ecology of social animals. Communication: evolution and ontogeny of signals, channels of communication, aggressive and courtship signalling. Social structures: use of space, territories, hierarchies; mating systems, strategies of the sexes, monogamy, polygamy, co-operative breeding; kin groupings.

### **38.205 Entomology**

The structure, evolution and systematics of the insects. An introduction to those terrestrial groups related to insects i.e. Onychopora, Myriapoda, and Arachnida, the basic structure and morphology of insects, and a systematic coverage of the insect orders. Required for 38.317.

### **38.207 Biometry**

Elementary statistical methods and concepts with particular emphasis on their application in biological research.

### **38.209 Animal Physiology and Development**

The functions of vertebrate and invertebrate animals and their developmental processes. Particular attention is given to the novel ways in which animals cope with environmental challenges. The practical course provides an introduction to methods and instrumentation of value to experimental biologists.

### **39.210 Population and Community Ecology**

Elementary demography and models of population growth with equal emphasis on plants and animals. Species interactions in multispecies associations; competition and predation. The emphasis will be on experimental ecology of plants and animals from a wide range of habitats. Examples are drawn from the New Zealand marine environment and native forests. Practical work includes a compulsory field course, normally held during the first week of the May vacation, concentrating on the description and dynamics of native forest ecosystems (see below for dates).

### **\*38.212 Marine Biology**

The shore and shallow sea as a habitat, life, and a workshop for ecologists. Habitat structure and intertidal zonation, exemplified chiefly by New Zealand shores. Descriptive schemes of community space, with underlying physical and biotic parameters. The adaptation of the various groups of plants and animals to life between tides. Coastal biogeography. The conservation and utilisation of the coastline. Practical work includes six-day field course Whangarei Heads during the May vacation (see below for dates).

### **38.310 Animal Morphogenesis**

Aspects of the cellular structure, cellular recognition, behaviour and biochemistry as these relate to

developmental processes. Practical work involves the use of both scanning and transmission electron microscopes, acquaintance with electrophoretic and cell culture techniques as well as grafting experiments designed to illustrate general aspects of animal morphogenesis.

### **39.311 Freshwater Ecology**

Animal and plant freshwater communities, particularly of lakes and rivers; the physical and chemical environment; physiography of rivers and lakes; hydrology; pollution. Part of the course will consist of a weekend field course in late April and four one-day field trips normally held in the first week of the May vacation (see below for dates).

### **39.313 Terrestrial Ecology**

Sampling, with reference to forest communities; ordination and classification. Community theory and concepts of stability and diversity. Animal-plant interactions particularly with respect to New Zealand. Forest dynamics and the study of both temporal and spatial change. A compulsory residential field class is normally held during enrolment week (see below for dates). Interpretation of the field data will take place during some Wednesday laboratory times.

### **39.314 Applied Ecology**

The application of ecological principles to resource management, including natural recreational resources, forests and fisheries; aspects of the conservation of natural ecosystems; the planning process; wildlife management.

### **\*38.315 Evolutionary Genetics**

Evolutionary Genetics is a broad discipline which includes aspects of many areas of genetics. The lecture and practical courses consider factors influencing the origin and persistence of form and the genetic differences between closely related species. Relationships among species, as estimated by techniques such as chromosome analysis and electrophoresis are discussed. The genetics of a number of speciation models are considered and recent genetical advances and challenges to neo-Darwinian theory are critically examined.

### **38.316 Biological Oceanography**

Characteristics of marine environments and communities away from the shores. Global ocean patterns and processes. Marine algology and primary productivity. Zooplankton and secondary production. Interrelationships and population biology of plankton, nekton and benthos. Fisheries biology and models. New Zealand marine science research and knowledge. Practical work includes a residential 5-day class at the Leigh Marine Laboratory, involving sampling and analytical exercises, during the mid-term break (see below for dates).

### **38.317 Applied Entomology**

The principles and practice of applied entomology, especially of modern control methods, with reference to New Zealand and South Pacific pest problems.

Medical entomology. Practical work includes laboratory study and field work.

### **38.318 Advanced Concepts of Animal Behaviour**

The evolution of cultural transmission of behaviour from one generation to the next. Decision making by individual animals including optimality models of behaviour, foraging, antipredation and spacing behaviour. The orientation behaviour of whole animals as a control system.

### **\*38.319 Ecological Physiology of Marine Animals**

(starts in 1989)

A consideration of environmental determinants of strategies in osmoregulation, metabolism, neural organisation and reproduction in various groups of marine animals. Organisms living between the tides, shallow subtidal, the deep sea, and polar regions will be considered.

Practical work includes two weekend classes at the Leigh Marine Laboratory, and two all-day classes in the Department, involving acute and acclimatory responses of organisms to environmental factors.

### **Plant Protection**

Students seeking a broad training in this discipline should take the following courses in Botany and Zoology. Together they encompass experimental design and data analysis, entomology and pest management, plant pathogens and their control.

### **38.207 Biometry**

### **06.204 Mycology and Microbial Interactions with Higher Plants**

### **38.205 Entomology**

### **06.331 Plant Pathology 1**

### **06.332 Plant Pathology 2**

### **38.317 Applied Entomology**

### **Laboratory Work**

One practical class each week for first year courses and two classes each week for advanced courses is the minimum requirement. The practical work will be assessed separately and the marks will be included in the marks schedule of the University. A pass both in the written examination and in the practical work is necessary. (BSc Regulation 7.)

All research students are required to lodge a deposit of \$20 with the Department of Zoology before being granted access to keys in the Department.

### **Field Courses in Botany/Biology, Zoology 1988**

**06.361:** 23-27 May      **39.311:** 30 April - 1 May and

**06.371:** 15-19 August      9-12 May

**39.210:** 8-13 May      **39.313:** 21-26 February

**38.212:** 15-21 May      **38.316:** 4-8 July

### **Zoology for MSc**

Three papers selected from 38.401-38.411 and a Thesis (38.601.)

This course normally requires from fifteen months to two years and necessitates full-time attendance. Students who propose to undertake the MSc Degree should consult the Head of the Department towards

the end of the previous year. Thesis research, where appropriate, can begin in the vacation before papers are taken.

### **\*38.401 Evolution**

The basic structure and logical framework of modern evolutionary theories; the ruling paradigm of neo-Darwinism, the nature of species, developmental biology and epigenetics; ways of looking at biology, e.g. functionalism versus structuralism.

### **38.402 Application of Systems Analysis in Physiology**

Zoophysiology II. Selected topics on comparative neurobiology.

### **38.403 Chronobiology**

The study of biological clocks: their adaptive significance, location, chemical nature and mathematical models.

### **38.404 Behavioural Ecology and Sociobiology**

Selected topics on the evolution of sociality in animals, including humans.

### **38.405 Entomology and Pest Management**

(a) The functional anatomy and reproductive and life history strategies that make insects so varied and abundant, and

(b) Modern views of pest management leading up to a review of integrated strategies.

### **38.406 Antarctic and Southern Oceans Ecosystem and Environment**

The tectonics and paleoclimatology of southern continents, present day ocean circulations and biogeography. Use of these to interpret biology and ecosystems of Antarctica, and its management.

### **38.407 Community Ecology**

A series of seminars leading to an understanding of community dynamics as exemplified by succession and island biogeography.

### **38.408 Marine Biology**

Part of the course is given to a personal reading of recent work on the causes of patterns of abundance, the rest is a formal presentation of selected topics on the study of the pelagos and benthos, separately, and the whole sea as a working system.

### **38.409 Zoophysiology**

Zoophysiology I. Selected topics in comparative respiration and metabolism.

### **38.410 Morphogenesis**

Recent work on membrane structure, cellular adhesion, segregation and recognition is considered and related to the overall biochemical and genetical control of morphogenetic systems, particularly to cell positioning and the formation of pattern during development.

### **38.411 Special Topic Prescribed by the Head of Department**

For 1988: Recent Advances in Systematics and Biogeography. An introduction to the theory and



practice of systematics and biogeography, including discussion of current controversies over cladistics and vicariance biogeography. Course will include practical experience in the latest techniques, and discussion of the implications of recent developments in systematics for biogeography, ecology and evolution.

**Postgraduate Research: MSc Thesis and PhD**

Staff and facilities are available for Masters and PhD research in many areas of zoology, environmental biology and the interaction of plants and animals. Although much research is field oriented, of animals in natural and experimental situations; excellent facilities are also available for physiological and ultrastructural studies.

Research by staff covers such diverse interests as marine ecology, especially of the inshore communities; the behavioural ecology of both terrestrial and aquatic animals, with emphasis on sociality and communication; entomology and pest management; the physiology of nervous and respiratory systems; chronobiology, morphogenesis, ultrastructure and cellular and organ functions.

There runs through all studies the related themes of

evolutionary change and adaptation, and of systematics and population dynamics. Encouragement is given to an experimental approach based soundly on statistical techniques.

Much of the marine research is done at the Leigh Marine Laboratory; studies of native birds and lizards occur throughout the Hauraki Gulf Islands.

**The McGregor Museum**

The museum is open daily from 10 am until 5 pm.

## ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES

### Environmental Studies

An inter-disciplinary undergraduate paper in Environmental Studies is offered at Stage II level. Responsibility for the administration of this paper has been assigned to the Department of Planning.

### 84.200 Environmental Studies (4 credits)

*Prerequisites:* 24 Stage I credits or the equivalent from any Faculty, including six credits from the Science Faculty.

Introduction to global environmental problems of population, resources and pollution, with local illustrations through tutorials and field trips.

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

### DIPLOMA IN CLINICAL PSYCHOLOGY

#### DipClinPsych

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Clinical Psychology shall at least have satisfied the prerequisites for admission to a Master's Degree in Psychology of this University.
2. Admission to the Course of study for the Diploma shall be at the discretion of the Senate on consideration of a recommendation from the Head of the Department of Psychology.
3. A candidate for the Diploma shall follow a Course of study of not less than three years by taking courses 32.500 and 32.501 as prescribed for this Diploma, and EITHER
  - (a) concurrently follow a Course of study for a Master's Degree in Psychology which shall include papers 32.403, 32.408, 32.409, and 32.421, and a thesis 32.601,
  - OR
  - (b) if all or part of the Master's Degree has already been completed, concurrently take those requirements specified in 3(a) that have not already been completed. If the candidate has already taken a Master's Degree without a thesis, paper 32.420 (Research Topic in Psychology) may be substituted for the thesis.

#### Course Content

4. The Course of study for the Diploma shall consist of two Parts

#### Part I 32.500 (two years)

This course comprises seminars in the practice of Psychology, as well as supervised clinical work with clients at the Department of Psychology Clinic and with patients at approved health and mental health institutions, for a minimum of 12 hours per week in the first year and 20 hours per week in the second year. Evaluation will be by internal assessment, and candidates must gain a pass in each year of the course.

#### Part II 32.501 (one year)

This course comprises supervised practical work of not less than 38 hours per week in an approved mental

health institution, and a weekly three-hour seminar in the Department of Psychology. Candidates will be examined on the assessment of one or more patients, including written case reports. There will also be an oral examination.

5. No candidate shall be permitted to proceed to Part II before completing Part I to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Psychology.
6. A candidate shall carry out to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Psychology such seminar, clinical, and practical work as may be required.
7. A candidate shall be deemed to have completed the requirements for the Diploma upon gaining a pass in courses 32.500 and 32.501 and upon completing the requirements of the Master's Degree.
8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1988.

### **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipClinPsych DIPLOMA IN CLINICAL PSYCHOLOGY**

The Course of study for this Diploma is designed to prepare the candidate for professional competence as a clinical psychologist, and to qualify the candidate for registration as a psychologist under the Registration of Psychologists Act.

The minimum duration of the course is three years. No more than eight candidates may be admitted to the course for the first time in any one year. Candidates wishing to enrol should make application to the Programme Co-ordinator before 31 October preceding their first enrolment for the course. Application forms are available from the Department of Psychology.

Candidates wishing to take Part II in the following year should consult the Head of Department at the end of their second year in Part I of this course.

### **DIPLOMA IN COMPUTER SCIENCE DipCompSci**

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations; for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Computer Science shall before enrolment for this Diploma
  - (a) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree, or hold a professional qualification in Computer Science, or have attained an equivalent level of practical experience in the Computing Profession
  - (b) have attained, to the Head of Department's approval, a level of technical competence in Computer Science equivalent to the prerequisites for 300 level Computer Science papers.
2. A candidate permitted by the Senate to enrol for the Diploma without having fulfilled all the prerequisite requirements may be required by the Senate to include all or any of the unfulfilled prerequisites as additional papers.
3. A candidate shall complete a Course of study approved by the Head of Department of Computer Science subject to the conditions that
  - (a) the Course of study shall comprise papers having a total credit value of at least 24 credits selected from 300, 400, or 500 level papers in Computer Science
  - (b) at least 8 credits of the course shall be at level 400 or above.
4. No candidate may present for this Diploma a paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper the candidate has already passed for any other degree or diploma.
5. These Regulations come into force on 1 January 1986.

### **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipCompSci DIPLOMA IN COMPUTER SCIENCE**

This course of study is designed for graduates in fields other than Computer Science, or candidates with equivalent status, to pursue their specialised interest in developments in the Computer field. The course of study is tailored to fit individual student needs and is made up of papers having a total credit value of 24 credits selected from 300, 400 and 500 level papers in Computer Science, and relevant papers offered by other departments. The course will normally include a Diploma Project of either 4 or 8 credits. Candidates may complete their course in one full year's study or accumulate credits on a part-time basis. Details are available from the Department of Computer Science and the Diploma Course Regulations in this *Calendar* should be

consulted.

**07.501 Diploma Project in Computer Science (a) (4 credits)** A project on a practical aspect of Computer Science relevant to the candidate's interests.

**07.502 Diploma Project in Computer Science (b) (8 credits)** A project on a practical aspect of Computer Science relevant to the candidate's interests.

## DIPLOMA IN MATHEMATICAL EDUCATION DipMathEd

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Mathematical Education shall before enrolment for this Diploma:

(1) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree, or have satisfied Regulation 2 of the Regulations for the Degree of Master of Arts or Regulation 2 of the Regulations for the Degree of Master of Science and

(2) (a) have passed in the following Mathematics courses (as prescribed for the Degree of BSc):

(i) papers 26.220 or 221 and 240 and 241 and (ii) one other 200 level course in mathematics; or (b) have to the satisfaction of the Senate reached an equivalent level of attainment and

(3) be required to have had teaching experience to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics except where the Head of that Department permits otherwise.

2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a Course of study for one year full-time or two years part-time or for such longer periods (either full or part-time) as the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics may require or permit.

3. (a) A candidate shall complete a Course of study approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics consisting of papers having a total credit value of 24 credits selected from 300, 400 or 500 level Mathematics papers. The selection must include a project, 26.500, which counts as four credits. At least 16 credits must be selected from papers 26.500-26.569.

(b) A candidate who does not have an adequate knowledge of the major areas of secondary school mathematics will be required to make up the deficiency by attending an appropriate course or courses as directed by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

4. A candidate shall deliver the project required in Regulation 3 (a) to the Registrar by not later than 1 November in the year following the year of first enrolment, or by such later date as the Senate may in exceptional circumstances permit.

5. No candidate may present for this Diploma a paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper he has already passed for any other degree or diploma.

6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1980.

## PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipMathEd DIPLOMA IN MATHEMATICAL EDUCATION

Candidates for this Diploma must have completed or almost completed a Bachelor's Degree and will normally have obtained passes in papers 26.220 or 26.221, 26.240 or 26.241 and one other 200 level paper in Mathematics. Although the Regulations also require that a candidate should normally have had some teaching experience, this requirement can be waived on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics: intending candidates without such experience are invited to consult with the Head of the Department prior to enrolment. The course of study consists of papers having a total credit value of 24 credits selected from 300, 400 or 500 level Mathematics papers. The selection must include a project, 26.500 which counts as four credits. At least 16 credits must be selected from papers 26.500-26.569. The 500 level papers are listed below together with their credit values:

**26.500 Project in Mathematical Education (4)**  
**26.505 Topics in the History of Mathematics (4)**  
**26.515 Mathematical Logic and the Philosophy of Mathematics (6)**  
**26.520 Elementary Algebra from an Advanced Standpoint (6)**  
**26.530 Elementary Calculus from an Advanced Standpoint (4)**

**26.550 Elementary Geometry from an Advanced Standpoint (4)**  
**26.560 Advanced Studies of Topics in Elementary Mathematics (4)**  
**26.561 Studies in Applied Mathematics Education (4)**  
**26.562 Topics in Mathematical Education A (4)**  
**26.563 Topics in Mathematical Education B (4)**

**26.564 Special Topics in Mathematical Education (6)****26.565 Advanced Topics in Mathematical Education (6)****DIPLOMA IN STATISTICS****DipStats**

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Statistics shall before enrolment for this Diploma have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree or have satisfied Regulation 2 for the Degree of Master of Arts or Regulation 2 of the Regulations for the Degree of Master of Science, and shall

(a) have passed in the following Mathematics courses (as prescribed for the Degree of BSc):

(i) papers 26.220 or 221 and 240 or 241 and (ii) paper 280; or

(b) have reached an equivalent level of attainment to the approval of the Senate.

2. A candidate for this Diploma shall follow a Course of study for one year full-time or two years part-time or for such longer periods (either full or part-time) as the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics may require or permit.

3. (a) A candidate shall complete a Course of study approved by the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics on the recommendation of the Head of the Statistics Unit, consisting of papers having a total credit value of 20 credits selected from 300, 400 or 500 level papers in Mathematics and Computer Science and 300 or 400 level Statistics papers in other subjects; together with a project, 26.580, which counts as four credits. At least 12 credits must be selected from papers 26.380, 26.381, 26.385, 26.391, 26.395 or 26.399, 26.480 to 26.490 and 26.581 to 26.589.

(b) A candidate who has no knowledge of computing shall be required to attend an appropriate course in computer programming.

4. A candidate shall deliver the project required in Regulation 3 (a) to the Registrar by not later than 1 November in the year following the year of first enrolment, or by such later date as the Senate may in exceptional circumstances permit.

5. No candidate may present for this Diploma a paper which is the same or substantially similar in content to any paper he has already passed for any other degree or diploma.

6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1974.

**PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipStats****DIPLOMA IN STATISTICS**

This diploma is available to students who have completed or almost completed a Bachelor's Degree, and have obtained passes in Mathematics papers 26.220, 240 and 280, or their equivalents. The course of study is tailored to fit individual student needs and is made up of papers having a total credit value of 20 credits selected from 300, 400 or 500 level papers in statistics, operations research, computer science and mathematics, and relevant papers offered by other departments, together with a project, 26.580. Candidates may complete the course of one year's full-time study or else spend two or more years on a part-time basis. Details are available from the Department of Mathematics and Statistics and the Diploma Course Regulations in this *Calendar* should be consulted. The 500 level papers are listed below together with their credit values:

**26.580 Project in Statistics (4)**

**26.581 Topics in Statistics (4)**

**26.582 Special Topics in Statistics (4)**

**26.583 Further Topics in Statistics (4)**

**CERTIFICATE REGULATIONS****CERTIFICATE IN THE PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE OF RADIOCHEMISTRY****08.350 Elementary Certificate in the Principles and Practice of Radiochemistry**

The course for this Certificate involves ten lectures and ten laboratory classes each of three hours' duration. The course will run concurrently with the first ten lectures and laboratory sessions of 08.352, or by arrangement.

*Examinations:* Candidates will be assessed on their practical work together with a written test.

*Prerequisite:* 08.210, but students having need of radiochemical techniques may be admitted to the Certificate Course without having passed 08.210 upon obtaining the approval of the Head of the Chemistry Department. A knowledge of Physics to Bursary level will be assumed.

---

# Faculty of Commerce

## *Contents*

---

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	258	Degree of Bachelor of Commerce
	267	Degree of Master of Commerce
	268	Degree of Master of Business Administration

---

<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	269	Department of Accounting and Finance
	270	Department of Commercial Law
	270	Department of Computer Science
	270	Department of Economics
	271	Department of Management Science and Information Systems
	272	Department of Management Studies and Labour Relations
	273	Department of Marketing and International Business
	274	Graduate School of Business
	274	Department of Mathematics and Statistics
	274	NZ Society of Accountants Professional Examinations

---

<b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>	275	Postgraduate Diploma in Business
	276	Postgraduate Diploma in Commerce

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF COMMERCE

#### BCom

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### Admission

1. (a) Admission to any paper in Part I of the Course of Study in Commerce shall be at the discretion of the Senate. Application for admission shall be made to the Registrar in writing before 15 January, or such other date as the Senate may determine, of the year in which the applicant proposes to enrol.

(b) Admission to any paper in Part I shall be granted or withheld upon a consideration of the past performance of the applicant at school and in university and public examinations, and upon an interview where this is required.

#### Minimum Time for Degree

2. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce shall follow a course of study of not fewer than three years.

#### Definition of a Paper

3. In these Regulations a paper means an examinable part of one year's work in a subject. Papers are classified in three Stages, I, II, III, prescribed for this Degree in the Schedule to these Regulations.

#### Course Content

4. Every candidate's Course of Study for this Degree

(a) shall comply with the requirements specified below for Part I and Part II;

(b) shall comply with the requirements specified in the Schedule to these Regulations.

#### Part I

5. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations, for Part I a candidate shall be required

(a) to pass in two papers selected with the approval of the Senate from

Mathematics, Applied 26.180, 26.181

Mathematics, Pure 26.101, 26.120, 26.121, 26.122, 26.140, 26.141, 26.142

Computer Science 07.100, 07.105

Economics 13.102, 13.105

Management Science and Information Systems 74.100;

(b) to pass the following Stage I papers

Accounting 01.100, 01.101;

Commercial Law 02.100;

Economics 13.100, 13.101;

#### Order of Presenting Course

(c) before taking any other paper for Part I of this Degree, to pass or enrol concurrently in the papers in paragraph (a) of this Regulation;

(d) before taking any paper for Part II of this Degree, to pass or enrol concurrently in the papers in paragraph

(b) of this Regulation: provided that the Senate may waive the requirements of paragraph (c) or paragraph (d) of this Regulation for a candidate

(i) who has been admitted or qualified for admission to a degree of this University; or

(ii) enrolled, under Regulation 13 (1) of these Regulations, conjointly for this Degree and the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or the Degree of Bachelor of Science; or

(iii) enrolled under Regulation 12(1) of the Regulations conjointly for this Degree and the Degree of Bachelor of Laws.

#### Part II

6. (a) Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations, for Part II a candidate shall be required to pass no fewer than fourteen papers at any stage, including no fewer than three Stage III papers selected from the subjects Accounting, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, and Marketing and International Business.

(b) A candidate may include as one, two, three or four papers for this Degree one, two, three or four papers not already passed for this Degree from any subject prescribed for any other Degree of this University; provided that (i) for Science papers to be available for credit under this clause each such Science paper must carry a minimum of four credits in the Schedule to the Regulations for the Degree of BSc, and (ii) for the purpose of

this Regulation, Science papers carrying lesser credit may be aggregated with other Science papers from the same stage of the same subject.

### **Maximum Course Load**

7. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than eight papers for this Degree.

### **Direct Entry**

8. (a) Notwithstanding anything in Regulations 4, 5 and 6 of these Regulations a candidate may with the leave of the Senate take Stage II papers of any subject to which this Regulation applies without having passed Stage I. A candidate who passes a Stage II paper in a subject shall not be credited with any prerequisite Stage I paper of that subject. If the examiner certifies that the candidate though failing a Stage II paper attained the standard of a pass in a Stage I paper the candidate shall be credited with a pass in a Stage I paper of that subject.

(b) This Regulation applies to the following subjects

Accounting  
Economics  
Mathematics

### **Credits**

9. (1) (a) A candidate who has passed for another degree of this University two Stage II level papers in Pure Mathematics or equivalent and has passed papers 13.200 and 13.201 of Economics shall be credited with papers 13.100 and 13.101 of Economics, on payment of the fees required by Regulation 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General)

(b) A candidate who, for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, has passed Engineering Mathematics I and Engineering Mathematics II shall be credited with two unspecified papers in Stage II Mathematics on payment of the fees required by Regulation 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General)

Provided that the total credits granted to a candidate under paragraphs (a) and (b) of this clause of this Regulation and Regulation 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) shall not exceed eight.

(2) A candidate who, for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, has been exempted from the Intermediate Examination shall be exempted without credit from the two papers required by Regulation 5 (a).

10. A candidate for this Degree who abandoned another course of study and passed in a paper listed in the Schedule to these Regulations without receiving credit for that paper for any degree or diploma, may be credited with that paper for this Degree.

### **Concessions**

11. (1) (a) A candidate for BCom, BCom/BA, BCom/BSc or BCom/LLB who has gained a University Bursary or Entrance Scholarship may be permitted by the Senate to substitute one or more papers for one or more of the Stage I papers in Accounting, Economics, Applied Mathematics and Pure Mathematics prescribed for Part I in Regulation 5 (a).

(b) Each Part I paper for which substitution is permitted must relate to a subject or subjects of the University Bursaries Examination or the Entrance Scholarship Examination in which he or she attained a standard of achievement approved by the Senate.

(2) Notwithstanding anything elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate who has completed the Professional Examination in Accountancy may be admitted by the Senate to the course for this Degree with credit for Accounting 01.100, 01.101, 01.200, 01.202, Commercial Law 02.100, 02.200, and two papers as required by Regulation 5 (a) on payment of the fees required by Regulation 13 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

(3) Notwithstanding anything elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate who has passed with merit in at least six subjects of the Professional Examination in Accountancy, may be admitted by the Senate to the course for this Degree with credit for up to six papers as determined by the Senate on payment of the fees required by Regulation 13 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

(4) Notwithstanding anything elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate who has qualified with merit for the New Zealand Certificate of Commerce may be admitted by the Senate to the course for this degree with credit for Accounting 01.100, 01.101, Commercial Law 02.100 and two other unspecified papers on payment of the fees required by Regulation 13 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

(5) Notwithstanding anything elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate who has qualified for the Diploma in Business and Industrial Administration may be admitted by the Senate to the course for this Degree with credit for Accounting 01.100, 01.101, Commercial Law 02.100, Management Science and Informations Systems 74.100, Management Studies and Labour Relations 72.203, Marketing and International Business 71.200 and one other unspecified paper on payment of the fees required by Regulation 13 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

**BCom/LLB, BCom/LLB (Hons)**

12. (1) With the permission of Senate a candidate may be admitted to a conjoint course of study for this Degree and the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours) (in this Regulation called "a conjoint course").

(2) A candidate taking a conjoint course shall obtain the permission of Senate to re-enrol for it in each year after admission to the conjoint course.

(3) A candidate who has taken a conjoint course and who

(a) for this Degree or for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours), has passed the following papers

(i) two papers selected with the approval of the Senate from

Mathematics, Applied, 26.180, 26.181

Mathematics, Pure, 26.101, 26.102, 26.121, 26.122, 26.140, 26.141, 26.142

Computer Science, 07.100, 07.105

Economics 13.102, 13.105

Management Science and Information Systems 74.100;

(ii) Accounting 01.100, 01.101;

(iii) Economics 13.100, 13.101;

(b) for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours) has passed

(iv) Legal System 25.103;

(v) Law of Contract 25.105;

(vi) Commercial Law 25.204 or Advanced Commercial Law 25.302;

(vii) Company Law and Partnership 25.208;

(viii) two or more papers having in aggregate at least four hours of instruction per week selected with the approval of Senate from Intellectual Property, 25.209;

Industrial Law 25.212 or Advanced Industrial Law 25.306;

Income Tax 25.221;

Competition Law 25.228;

Company Finance 25.309;

Creditors Remedies 25.312;

International Trade 25.315;

Estate and Tax Planning 25.323

Special Topic papers as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours).

(c) for this Degree has in addition passed no fewer than nine Stage II or Stage III papers selected from those specifically listed in the Schedule in the subjects Accounting, Computer Science, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, Marketing and International Business and Mathematics, including no fewer than three Stage III papers from the subjects Accounting, Economics and Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations and Marketing and International Business, shall be deemed to have satisfied the requirements for this Degree.

(4) The papers so credited to this Degree under this Regulation shall be admitted as cross-credits, exemptions, or additional cross-credits as the case may be for the purpose of Regulation 13 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

**BCom/BA, BCom/BSc**

13. (1) With the permission of Senate a candidate whose academic record is of a sufficiently high standard may be admitted to the conjoint course for this Degree and the Degree either of BA or BSc (in this Regulation called a "conjoint course").

(2) A candidate taking a conjoint course shall obtain the permission of Senate to re-enrol for it in each year after admission to the conjoint course.

(3) A candidate who has taken a conjoint course and who

(a) for Part I of this Degree has passed the seven papers prescribed in Regulation 5;

(b) for Part II of this Degree has passed no fewer than nine Stage II or Stage III papers selected from those specifically listed in the Schedule, in the subjects Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, and Marketing and International Business including no fewer than three Stage III papers selected from the subjects Accounting, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, and Marketing and International Business;

(c) has completed the requirements for either the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or the Degree of Bachelor of Science, shall be deemed to have satisfied the requirements for this Degree.



(4) The papers so credited to this Degree under this Regulation shall be admitted as cross-credits, exemptions, or additional cross-credits as the case may be for the purpose of Regulation 13 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

### Elective Papers

14. Except as provided in Regulation 6 (b), a candidate wishing to take for this Degree any unit, course or paper which is also prescribed for any other Degree, shall comply with such of the Regulations for each of those Degrees as apply to that unit, course, or paper.

### Restriction

15. No candidate shall take a subject, unit or paper the same as or substantially equivalent to any other subject, unit or paper, and obtain credit for both for this Degree.

### Savings and Transitional Provisions

16. (1) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation the course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

(2) A candidate who passed under any of the former Regulations for this Degree in any unit of which the papers are also papers under these Regulations shall be credited with passes in those papers under these Regulations provided that the Senate is satisfied that the prescription in any such paper is at least the equivalent of that prescribed under these Regulations.

(3) The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

17. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1987.

### Schedule

1. This Schedule sets out paper numbers, prerequisites, corequisites, restrictions and other conditions applying to papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce.

2. The Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.

3. The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.

4. The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.

5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.

6. A candidate may not take a further stage of a subject until he satisfies all prerequisite and corequisite requirements for that stage of the subject.

7. Where a prerequisite has been waived by the Head of Department and reimposed as a corequisite, the paper or papers as to which the corequisite is imposed may not be credited as a pass for the Candidate's Course of study unless or until that corequisite has been passed.

## SCHEDULE

Title of paper		Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications
<b>ACCOUNTING</b>					
Accounting — Stage I					
01.100	Accounting (a)		01.101	01.102	
01.101	Accounting (b)		01.100	01.103	
Accounting — Stage II					
01.200	Financial Accounting	01.100			
01.201	Accounting for Special Entities	01.100			The Head of Department may waive the prerequisites for candidates with sufficient knowledge (including candidates with a good pass in 01.102 and 01.103 as prescribed for BA etc).
01.202	Cost & Management Accounting	01.101 or 01.102; 01.103			
01.203	Accounting Information Systems	01.101; 72.100 or 07.100 and 07.105			
+01.204	Accounting & Financial Management Issues in Government	01.100; 01.101			
01.205	Financial Management	01.100; 01.101 or 01.102; 01.103			

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications
Accounting — Stage III					
01.300	Financial Accounting	01.200			
01.301	Auditing	01.200	01.203		
01.302	Cost & Management Accounting	01.202			
01.303	Investment Analysis & Planning	01.205			
01.304	Special Topic in Accounting				
01.305	Special Topic in Accounting				

## COMMERCIAL LAW

Commercial Law — Stage I					
02.100	Introduction to Law				
Commercial Law — Stage II					
02.200	Contract Law	02.100			
02.201	Finance Law	02.100	02.200		
02.202	Law of Business Organisations	02.100	02.200	02.300	
*02.203	Labour Law	02.100			
Commercial Law — Stage III					
02.300	Company Law and Partnership	02.200		02.202	This paper is available for 1988 only.
02.301	Taxation and Estate Planning	02.202			
+02.303	Corporate Rescue and Insolvency	02.202, 01.200			
02.304	Law of Marketing	02.201 or 02.200			
+02.305	Investment Law	02.201 or 02.202			

## COMPUTER SCIENCE

Computer Science — Stage I					
07.100	Introduction to Programming		07.105	07.101; 72.100	
07.101	Elements of Computing			72.100 07.100	07.101 is not acceptable as Part I paper for BCom.
07.105	Introduction to Computer Science		07.100		
Computer Science — Stage II					
07.210	Computer Organization	07.100; 07.105			
07.220	Data Structures	07.100; 07.105			
07.230	Computing Laboratory	07.100; 07.105			
07.235	Computer Applications	07.100; 07.105	07.230	72.220; 72.221	
07.290	Numerical Computation	07.100; 26.120 or 26.121 or 26.122; 26.140 or 26.141 or 26.142			
Computer Science — Stage III					
07.301	Topic in Computer Science (a)	Permission from Head of Department			07.301, 07.302 and 07.303 are 2 credit papers and must be aggregated to 4 credits before they can be credited as one paper for BCom.
07.302	Topic in Computer Science (b)	Permission from Head of Department			
07.303	Topic in Computer Science (c)	Permission from Head of Department			
07.304	Topic in Computer Science (d)	Permission from Head of Department			
07.305	Topic in Computer Science (e)	Permission from Head of Department			

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications
07.306	Topic in Computer Science (f)	Permission from Head of Department			
07.310	Advanced Computer Organization	07.210; 07.230			
07.320	Database Systems	07.220; 07.230		72.322	
07.330	Language Implementation	07.210, 07.220, 07.230		07.305 in 1984	
07.340	Operating Systems	07.210, 07.230			
07.351	Formal Languages Automata and Computability	07.100; 26.220 or 26.221		07.350 07.250	
07.352	Design and Analysis of Algorithms	07.220; 07.230		07.250; 07.350	
07.360	Introduction to Artificial Intelligence	07.220, 07.230			
07.390	Numerical Analysis	07.290; 26.220 or 26.221; 26.240 or 26.241			

## ECONOMICS

### Economics — Stage I

13.100	Microeconomics	13.101	13.103	By special permission of the Head of Department the corequisites may be waived.
13.101	Macroeconomics	13.100	13.103	
13.102	Statistical Methods		26.180; 26.181	13.102 is available only to BCom students in 1988.
*13.105	Mathematical Methods in Economics		26.101; 26.122; 26.142	Students who have passed, or are currently enrolled in, any paper in pure mathematics may not enrol in 13.105.

**Note:** Students advancing in Economics require an adequate mathematical background, and are strongly advised to take papers in the Department of Mathematics and Statistics. Paper 13.105 will not be taught in 1988.

### Economics — Stage II

13.200	Microeconomics	13.100 and 13.101		Students who passed 13.103 and 13.104 with at least a B- average prior to 1987 can proceed to any Economics II papers.
13.201	Macroeconomics	13.100 and 13.101		
13.203	Managerial Economics	13.100 and 13.101		
13.204	New Zealand Public Economics	13.100 and 13.101		
13.205	Introduction to Econometrics	13.100 and 13.101; plus one of 13.102, 26.180 or 26.181		
13.210	The Industrialisation of Britain to 1870	13.100 and 13.101	17.200	
13.211	The International Economy since 1870	13.100 and 13.101	17.201	
*13.213	Economic History of USA 1776-1940	13.100 and 13.101		
*13.214	The New Zealand Economy	13.100 and 13.101		

**Note:** Students intending to enrol at Stage III in a subsequent year are strongly advised to take 13.205, and in addition 13.205 will be required as a prerequisite for 13.309 in 1989.

### Economics — Stage III

**Note:** Students taking papers 13.300, 13.301, 13.302, 13.304 or 13.305 should have previously passed 13.105 or alternatives approved by the Head of the Department. Students are strongly advised to have taken 13.205, and this will be required for 13.309 in 1989. For 1988 students without 13.200 and 13.201 but with at least a B- average in any two of 13.203, 13.204, 13.205, 13.214 may with the permission of Head of Department enrol in Stage III papers other than 13.300, 13.301.

13.300	Theory of Value	13.200
--------	-----------------	--------

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications
13.301	Macroeconomic Theory and Policy	13.200, 13.201			
13.302	Econometrics	13.200 or 13.201		26.381	
13.304	International Trade	13.200	13.201		
13.305	Financial Economics	13.200			
13.306	Classical, Marxist and Modern Economic Ideas	13.200 or 13.201			
13.307	Public Expenditure	13.200 or 13.204			
13.308	Economics of Labour	13.200 or 13.201			
13.309	International Finance	13.200; 13.201			
13.310	Economic History of Australia and NZ	13.200 or 13.201; and one other Stage II paper		17.300	13.205 will be required as a pre-requisite for 13.309 in 1989. Enrolment in Special Topic papers requires Head of Department approval.
+13.311	Special Topic				
*13.312	Special Topic				
13.313	Management and Enterprise in the British Economy (1750-1939)	13.200 or 13.201 and one other Stage II paper			

## MANAGEMENT SCIENCE AND INFORMATION SYSTEMS

### Management Science and Information Systems — Stage I

74.100	Business Computing			07.100, 07.101 07.105	
--------	--------------------	--	--	-----------------------------	--

### Management Science and Information Systems — Stage II

74.200	Operations Management	74.100; 13.102 or 26.181			With the permission of the Head of Department, 07.100 and 07.105 may serve as a substitute for 74.100 in prerequisites.
74.220	Systems Analysis	74.100 and 01.101 (or 01.103)		07.235	
74.221	Programming Laboratory	74.100		07.235	

### Management Science and Information Systems — Stage III

74.300	Advanced Operations Management	72.203, 74.200			
*74.301	Operations Research	74.200			
74.320	Systems Design	72.203, 74.220, 74.221			
74.321	Systems Project	72.203, 74.220, 74.221			
74.322	Data Base Management Systems	72.203, 74.220, 74.221		07.320	
74.323	Management of Information Systems	72.203, 74.220, 74.221			
74.324	Data Communications	72.203, 74.220, 74.221			
+74.325	Special Topic: Expert Systems				Enrolment in Special Topic papers is subject to approval of the Head of Department.
+74.326	Special Topic: Fourth Generation Languages				

## MANAGEMENT STUDIES AND LABOUR RELATIONS

### Management Studies and Labour Relations — Stage II

**Note:** Students taking 72.203 or 72.207 must have previously passed 74.100; or 07.101; or 07.100 and 07.105; or alternatives approved by the Head of Department.

72.203	Organisation and Management	01.101 or 01.103	82.208	
--------	-----------------------------	---------------------	--------	--

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
72.207	Labour Relations	13.100, 13.101	72.203 or 82.208; 13.200 or 13.214		
Management Studies and Labour Relations — Stage III					
72.303	Advanced Labour Relations	72.203 or 82.208; 72.207; 13.200 or 13.214			In 1988 only candidates will be permitted to take 72.207 as a corequisite wherever it is requires as a prerequisite.
72.305	Organisational Behaviour	72.203 or 82.208; 72.207			
72.307	Personnel Policy and Practice	72.203 or 82.208; 72.207			
*72.310	Organisational Research Methods	72.203 or 82.208			Enrolment in Special Topic Papers is subject to approval of the Head of Department.
†72.311	Entrepreneurial Behaviour and New Venture Management	71.201, 72.203			
†72.313	Special Topic: Business and Society				
†72.314	Special Topic: Business Communication				
†72.315	Training and Development	72.203 or 82.208			
72.316	Special Topic				
72.317	Special Topic				

## MARKETING AND INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS

### Marketing and International Business — Stage II

**Note:** Students taking 71.200 or 71.201 must have previously passed 74.100; or 07.101; or 07.100 and 07.105; or other alternatives approved by the Head of Department.

71.200	Marketing Management	13.100, 13.101
71.201	International Business	13.100, 13.101

### Marketing and International Business — Stage III

71.300	Marketing Strategy	71.200, 71.201, 72.203, 74.200
71.301	Consumer Behaviour	71.200, 71.201 72.203
71.302	Marketing Research	71.200, 71.201, 72.203; 13.102 or 26.181
71.303	Computer Technology in Marketing	71.200
†71.304	Marketing Practice	71.200, 71.201 72.203
71.310	Special Topic: Societal Marketing	
71.311	Special Topic	
71.312	Special Topic	

Enrolment in Special Topic papers is subject to approval of the Head of Department.

## MATHEMATICS

### Mathematics, Applied — Stage I

26.180	Principles of Statistics	26.140 or 26.141 or 26.142 or 26.241	26.181, 13.102	No candidate may be credited with more than one of 26.180, 26.181 and 13.102.
26.181	Introduction to Probability and Statistics		26.180 13.102	

Title of paper		Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restrictions	Qualifications
<b>Mathematics, Applied — Stage II</b>					
26.280	Statistical Theory	26.180, or with approval of Head of Department, 26.181	26.240 or 26.241		
26.281	Data Analysis	26.181 or 26.180			
<b>Mathematics, Applied — Stage III</b>					
26.380	Applied Probability	26.180; 26.220 or 26.221; 26.240 or 26.241			
26.381	Linear Models	26.280; 26.220 or 26.221; 26.240 or 26.241			
26.385	Advanced Data Analysis	26.281 or 26.280; approval of Head of Department			
26.391	Optimization in Operations Research	07.100 or equivalent 26.220 or 26.221		54.251	
26.395	Mathematical Modelling for Operations Research	07.100 or equivalent 26.180; 26.240 or 26.241; or permission of Head of Department		54.351	

**Mathematics, Pure — Stage I**

**Note:** Streaming for papers: 26.120, 26.121, 26.140, 26.141 will be based on student's preparation. Students with an A Bursary are encouraged to enrol in papers: 26.120, 26.140 and students with a qualification of B Bursary or less, 26.121, 26.141 or 26.122, 26.142.

26.101	Introduction to Algebra and Calculus		26.120, 26.121 26.122, 26.140, 26.141, 26.142, 13.105
26.120	Principles of Algebra		26.101, 26.121, 26.122, 26.221
26.121	Introductory Algebra		26.101, 26.120, 26.122, 26.221
26.122	Finite Mathematics		26.101, 26.120, 26.121, 26.221, 13.105
26.140	Principles of Calculus		26.101, 26.141, 26.142 26.241
26.141	Introductory Calculus		26.101, 26.140, 26.142, 26.241
26.142	Concepts of Calculus		26.101, 26.140, 26.141, 26.241, 13.105

**Mathematics, Pure — Stage II**

One or two papers from courses as prescribed for BSc

At the discretion of the Head of Department  
of Mathematics and Statistics.

**Mathematics, Pure — Stage III**

One, two or three papers from courses as prescribed  
for BSc

At the discretion of the Head of Department  
of Mathematics and Statistics.

**ELECTIVE PAPERS — any Stage**

One, two, three or four papers as prescribed for any other  
Degree not already taken for this Degree.

The Head of Department of the subject con-  
cerned may require the candidate to pass in a  
paper or course as prescribed for any other  
Degree.

\*This paper will not be taught in the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper may not be taught during current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

# THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF COMMERCE

## MCom

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations. Students not qualified to enrol for MCom by reason of Clause 1 (a) of these Regulations may be permitted to enrol for MPhil.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Commerce shall before the candidate's enrolment for this Degree:
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce, and
  - (b) (i) have fulfilled the prerequisites for the candidate's subject as shown in the Schedule to these Regulations, and
  - (ii) have obtained a grade higher than C- in each Stage III paper in the subject which the candidate proposes to take for this Degree,
 provided that, in special circumstances where the Head of Department so recommends, the Senate may for the respective purposes of this subclause (b) of this Regulation, waive such preconditions as it thinks fit.
2. A candidate shall be required to fulfil the requirements of and pass the examination in one of the subjects prescribed in the Schedule.
3. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 2, a candidate for this Degree may with the permission of the Senate take
  - (i) one Stage III or one Master's paper or
  - (ii) one Stage III and one Master's paper, or
  - (iii) two Master's papers,
 in a subject other than the one being taken for the Degree, if each such paper is related to the candidate's research interests. Each such paper shall substitute for and be equivalent to one paper in the Master's course of the subject in which the Degree is being taken.
4. No candidate shall take for this Degree any paper the same as or substantially equivalent to any other paper the candidate has passed or is taking and obtain credit for both for this Degree.
5. A candidate shall not take for this Degree a subject in which the candidate has already passed for the Degree of Master of Arts or the Degree of Master of Philosophy.
6. Subject to Regulation 8 (d), a candidate shall complete the requirements for this Degree within twenty-four months of the date of first enrolment for the Degree.

### Honours

- 7 (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) To be eligible for the award of Honours a candidate shall pass no fewer than four papers in the first year of enrolment for this Degree.
- (c) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate sits an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory, provided, however, that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or exceptional circumstances beyond the candidate's control (certified as under the Aegrotat Pass or Compassionate Pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to present himself or herself at a subsequent written examination and still be eligible for the award of Honours, subject to the provisions of Regulation 6 above, and to Regulation 8 and 9 of the Examination Regulations.

### Thesis

- 8 (a) A thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.
- (b) A thesis may be presented in the first year of enrolment for this Degree only with the approval of the Head of Department concerned.
- (c) A candidate may enrol for a thesis in any year subsequent to the first year of enrolment for this Degree only if the candidate obtains an average grade of at least B- in the papers sat in the first year, (provided a thesis is not a compulsory requirement for the candidate's subject).
- (d) A candidate shall present the thesis not later than twenty-four months after the date of first enrolment for this Degree, provided that this period may be extended by the Head of Department concerned for not more

than one year and in exceptional circumstances for longer by the Senate.

(e) If the examiner with the concurrence of the Assessor so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to represent it subject to Regulation 8 (d) above by a later date specified by the Head of Department.

*Note:* An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

### **Personal Course of Study**

9. The personal Course of study of a candidate shall require the approval of the appropriate Head of Department.

10. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

11. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1975.

### **SCHEDULE**

#### **(1) Accounting**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Accounting including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (01.601) which shall count as two papers; or five papers and a research essay (01.603) which shall count as one paper.

The papers shall be selected from 01.400 to 01.414 and 02.400 to 02.407.

All candidates shall attend a weekly seminar in research methods and methodology as part of the requirements for 01.601 or 01.603.

#### **(2) Economics**

*Prerequisites:* Eight papers in the subject Economics including three Stage III papers.

*Requirements:* Six papers; or four papers and a thesis (13.601) which shall count as two papers; or five papers and a research essay (13.603) which shall count as one paper.

The papers shall be selected from 13.400 to 13.417.

#### **(3) Management Science and Information Systems**

*Prerequisites:* Three Stage III Management Science and Information Systems papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (74.601) which counts as two papers.

The papers shall be selected from 74.400 to 74.420.

All candidates must enrol for paper 72.410 (Research Methods) in the first year of enrolment.

#### **(4) Management Studies and Labour Relations**

*Prerequisites:* Three Stage III Management Studies and Labour Relations papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a thesis (72.601) which counts as two papers.

The papers shall be selected from 72.400 to 72.416.

All candidates must enrol for paper 72.410 (Research Methods) in the first year of enrolment.

#### **(5) Marketing and International Business**

*Prerequisites:* Three Stage III Marketing and International Business papers.

*Requirements:* Four papers and thesis (71.601) which counts as two papers.

The papers shall be selected from 71.400 to 71.412.

All candidates must enrol for 72.410 (Research Methods) in the first year of enrolment.

## **THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION MBA**

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations. Every intending new candidate must apply to the Registrar for permission to enrol in the Course not later than 15 October or such other date as the Senate may determine, of the year preceding that in which the candidate proposes to enrol. An intending candidate who seeks admission on the basis of a professional qualification must apply for admission in accordance with the requirements of the Admission Regulations.*

### **General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Master of Business Administration shall before enrolment for this Degree

(a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree and have had not less than two years of relevant employment experience, or

(b) hold an approved professional qualification in Accountancy, Engineering or other approved discipline, and



- have had not less than five years of relevant employment experience, or  
 (c) have completed the requirements for the award of the Diploma in Business and Industrial Administration with an average grade of not less than B-.
2. Admission to the Course of study shall be at the discretion of the Senate.
3. A candidate for the Degree of Master of Business Administration shall follow a course of study of not fewer than two years.

#### **Course Content**

4. The Course of study for the Degree shall consist of three parts, each of which shall be taken as a whole and the candidate shall be required to pass in each of eight papers and a thesis worth two papers.

##### **Part I**

70.400, 70.401, 70.420 Business Administration (3 papers)

##### **Part II**

70.410, 70.411, 70.421 Business Administration (3 papers)

##### **Part III**

70.500, 70.510 Business Administration (2 papers)

70.520 Management Project (value 2 papers)

#### **Credits**

5. A candidate admitted to the course of study under Regulation 1 (c)  
 (a) may be credited with Parts I and II by the Senate.  
 (b) may be required to pass in a transitional course of study consisting of topics from Parts I and II prescribed by the Senate.
6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1983.

## **DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS**

### **DEPARTMENT OF ACCOUNTING AND FINANCE**

#### **Accounting I**

##### **01.100 Accounting (a)**

Basic financial accounting method including an introduction to external reporting.

##### **01.101 Accounting (b)**

Introduction to accounting theory, management accounting and the design and operation of business information systems.

##### **01.102 Financial Accounting**

Financial statement analysis using accounting information.

##### **01.103 Management Accounting**

Budgeting and cost accounting for business planning, control and capital expansion.

#### **Accounting II**

##### **01.200 Financial Accounting**

Company accounting and finance.

##### **01.201 Accounting for Special Entities**

Trust accounting; farm accounting and other selected topics.

##### **01.202 Cost and Management Accounting**

Budgetary and standard cost control systems, internal control and divisional performance appraisal.

##### **01.203 Accounting Information Systems**

Accounting systems for information and control, commercial data processing and computer programming.

##### **01.204 Accounting and Financial Management Issues in Government**

Central, regional and local government accounting

and finance including the accounts of government trading corporations and other statutory bodies.

#### **01.205 Financial Management**

Fundamental aspects, concepts of value and risk, theory of capital structure, sources of finance and basics of capital budgeting.

#### **Accounting III**

##### **01.300 Financial Accounting**

Contemporary issues in financial accounting theory and practice.

##### **01.301 Auditing**

##### **01.302 Cost and Management Accounting**

Accounting for planning, decision-making and control.

##### **01.303 Investment Analysis and Planning**

Security analysis, and portfolio formation and evaluation. Information and the behaviour of capital markets. The regulation of capital markets.

##### **01.304 Special Topic**

##### **01.305 Special Topic**

#### **Accounting for MCom and Honours**

All candidates shall attend a weekly seminar in research methods and methodology as part of the requirements for 01.601 or 01.603.

##### **01.400 Accounting Theory**

##### **01.401 Contemporary Financial Accounting Issues**

##### **01.402 Management Accounting**

##### **01.403 Contemporary Price Level Accounting Issues**

##### **01.404 History of Accounting Thought**

##### **01.405 Accounting Information Systems**

- 01.406 Behavioural Aspects of Accounting**
- 01.407 Budgetary Control**
- 01.408 Auditing**
- 01.409 Special Topic**
- 01.410 Evaluation of Accounting Information**
- 01.411 Contemporary Issues in Accounting for the Primary Industry**
- 01.412 Theoretical and Empirical Research in Accounting**
- 01.413 Management Decision Making and Control in the Government Sector**
- 01.414 International Accounting**
- 01.601 Thesis**
- 01.603 Research Essay**

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current *Calendar* year. Students intending to read for MCom should consult the staff toward the end of the previous year about preliminary vacation reading.

## DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCIAL LAW

### Commercial Law I

#### 02.100 Introduction to Law

An introduction to the New Zealand legal system and fundamental legal concepts relevant to commerce and industry.

### Commercial Law II

#### 02.200 Contract Law

The principles of the law of contract and of agency.

#### 02.201 Finance Law

Legal methods of raising and securing finance, including chattel mortgages, agreements for hire purchase and sale of goods, suretyship, insurance, and negotiable instruments.

#### 02.202 Law of Business Organisations

The law relating to business organisations, with special emphasis on companies, partnerships, trading trusts, agency relationships and state-owned enterprises.

#### \*02.203 Labour Law

The law relating to employment and labour relations.

### Commercial Law III

#### 02.300 Company Law and Partnership

The general principles of company law and partnership in New Zealand.

#### 02.301 Taxation and Estate Planning

The law and practice of income tax, Goods and Services Tax, estate and gift duties and estate planning.

#### †02.303 Corporate Rescue and Insolvency

Schemes of Arrangement, Receivership and Liquidation.

#### 02.304 Law of Marketing

The law relating to the marketing of goods with special emphasis on competition law, intellectual property and consumer protection.

#### †02.305 Investment Law

The law relating to corporate finance and investment; offshore borrowing; takeovers and mergers, public floats, first and second board listing, futures trading

and unlawful investment practices.

### Commercial Law for MCom and Honours

#### 02.400 Special Topic

#### 02.401 Advanced Taxation

#### 02.402 Forensic Accounting

#### 02.403 International Business and the Law

#### 02.404 Computer Law

#### 02.405 Competition Law and Policy

#### 02.406 Export Law

#### 02.407 Advanced Finance Law

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current *Calendar* year. Students intending to read for MCom should consult the staff toward the end of the previous year about preliminary vacation reading.

## DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE

For Prescriptions see under BSc.

## DEPARTMENT OF ECONOMICS Economics I

Students wishing to advance beyond Stage I in Economics are strongly recommended to take 13.102 and 13.105. For 1988 acceptable alternatives to these are 26.181 and the other first year paper or papers in the Mathematics & Statistics Dept.

**Note:** Knowledge of Mathematics up to 6th form level will be assumed in Stage I Economics.

### 13.100 Microeconomics

Introduction to the economic behaviour of individuals and firms. Output and price determination in various types of market. Market structures, income distribution and public policies. Theories and selected applications will be presented.

### 13.101 Macroeconomics

The economic activity of the nation at large and its interrelationships with the rest of the world. Included are the measurement of economic activity, determination of aggregate income, money, banking and prices, government macroeconomic policy and international trade.

### 13.102 Statistical Methods

An introduction to statistical reasoning and its application to business and economics. Includes probability distributions, estimation, hypothesis testing and decision-making.

### \*13.105 Mathematical Methods in Economics

Introduction to mathematical techniques in economics and business. Includes the mathematical formulation of economic models, simultaneous equations and their uses in market analysis, series and discounting, marginal analysis and calculus with applications to optimisation in economics.

## Economics II

### 13.200 Microeconomics

Analysis of the economic behaviour of individuals, firms and industries. Introduction to the economics of uncertainty and of general equilibrium.

### 13.201 Macroeconomics

A study of the determination and interaction of basic

macroeconomic variables such as output, employment, the money supply, and the price level.

### **13.203 Managerial Economics**

A survey of the use of techniques of microeconomics and operations analysis to solve problems in business and resource management.

### **13.204 New Zealand Public Economics**

The theory of the public sector and public sector issues in New Zealand. Efficiency and equity aspects of government spending and taxation. Special topics of current interest, e.g. tax and benefit reform, also covered.

### **13.205 Introduction to Econometrics**

An introduction to model building and research methods in economics. This paper emphasises the use and interpretation of single equation regression techniques in testing both micro- and macroeconomic hypotheses.

### **13.210 The Industrialisation of Britain to 1870**

An introductory economic history of the first country to undergo industrialisation.

### **13.211 The International Economy since 1870**

The development of the institutional framework of trade, international monetary arrangements and the principal trading nations.

### **\*13.213 Economic History of USA 1776-1940**

### **\*13.214 The New Zealand Economy**

A survey of problems and issues relating to the New Zealand economy.

## **Economics III**

Students intending to take any Economics III papers are advised to see the Head of the Department before the end of the previous year for advice on available papers, prerequisites and reading guides.

### **13.300 Theory of Value**

The theory of value and distribution from both classical and neo-classical perspectives. Introduction to the philosophical foundations of economic knowledge.

### **13.301 Macroeconomic Theory and Policy**

Output, absorption employment and price level theory, experience and policy. The theoretical perspective is predominantly transaction constrained.

### **13.302 Econometrics**

Mathematical economic models and their statistical estimation, testing and uses for policy and prediction.

### **13.304 International Trade**

Theory and policy in the international economy.

### **13.305 Financial Economics**

Microeconomic theory of production extended to cover time, uncertainty, taxation, and such legal entities as companies. Economic aspects of financial intermediaries, insurance and other areas.

### **13.306 Classical, Marxist & Modern Economic Ideas**

An introduction to the history of economic ideas and to comparative economics.

### **13.307 Public Expenditure**

Efficiency criteria for the public sector. Welfare economics, social policy and public sector spending decisions.

### **13.308 Economics of Labour**

### **13.309 International Finance**

### **13.310 Economic History of Australia and New Zealand**

An introduction to research in this area through study of particular topics.

### **†13.311 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

### **\*13.312 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

### **13.313 Management and Enterprise in the British Economy 1750-1939**

### **Economics for MA, MCom and Honours**

**Note:** Except by permission of the Head of the Department no candidate shall take Economics for MA, MCom etc unless he/she has passed either 13.300 or 13.301.

Candidates proposing to take paper 13.402 should consult the lecturer in charge regarding Mathematics papers to be taken in the Bachelor's Degree course.

Students intending to take any of the Honours papers should see the Head of the Department before the end of the previous year for advice on availability of papers, prerequisites and reading guides.

### **13.400 Growth and Fluctuations**

### **13.401 Monetary Theory**

### **13.402 Econometrics**

### **†13.404 Development and Planning**

### **13.405 Public Economics**

### **13.406 The History of Economic Thought**

### **†13.407 Comparative Economics: Primitive,**

### **Peasant, Industrial and Socialist Economies**

### **†13.408 Urban Economics**

### **13.410 Special Topic – Growth of the Corporate Economy**

### **13.411 Economics of Population Change**

### **13.412 Economic Forecasting**

### **†13.413 Special Topic: Energy, Resource and Environmental Economics**

### **†13.414 Special Topic: Industrial Economics**

### **†13.415 Special Topic in NZ Economic History**

### **13.416 Special Topic – Public Policy**

### **†13.417 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of the Department.

### **13.601 Thesis**

### **13.603 Research Essay**

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current *Calendar* year.

## **DEPARTMENT OF MANAGEMENT SCIENCE AND INFORMATION SYSTEMS**

### **Management Science and Information Systems I**

### **74.100 Business Computing**

Introduction to computer hardware and software systems specific to business operations.

## **Management Science and Information Systems II**

### **74.200 Operations Management**

Methods to improve productivity and competitiveness of the organisation: forecasting and linear programming, planning and control of production and inventories, MRP and master scheduling, project management and statistical quality control.

### **74.220 Systems Analysis**

Methods of developing user requirements specifications for computer-based systems.

### **74.221 Programming Laboratory**

Practice and experimentation in the use of a major business programming language.

## **Management Science and Information Systems III**

### **74.300 Advanced Operations Management**

Advanced inventory and distribution systems, Material Requirements Planning and Master Production Scheduling, modern manufacturing technologies (JIT, FMS, CIM), quality and productivity management, facilities layout and design of production lines.

### **\*74.301 Operations Research**

Deterministic and stochastic models for inventory control, scheduling, network analysis, transportation and flow problems. Computer simulation of managerial decision-making processes, including risk analysis.

### **74.320 Systems Design**

Concepts and practices of computer software architects, with applications to the design of business systems.

### **74.321 Systems Project**

Systems analysis, design, and development techniques combined to solve a specific problem.

### **74.322 Data Base Management Systems**

Determination of information needs and patterns of data flow within a data base environment.

### **74.323 Management of Information Systems**

Planning, designing and implementing of computerised information systems from a managerial point of view, in both PC and mainframe computer environments, with special reference to New Zealand.

### **74.324 Data Communications**

An introduction to data communication technology: equipment, software, systems, services. The design methods and management of data communication networks. Managerial aspects of data communication problems in New Zealand conditions.

### **†74.325 Special Topic: Expert Systems**

Potential and limitations of commercial expert systems. Development of advisor systems. Commercial expert system shells.

### **†74.326 Special Topic: Fourth Generation Languages**

Concepts, practices and issues of end-user computing, with applications.

## **Management Science and Information Systems for MCom and Honours**

### **74.400 Operations Management**

#### **74.401 Operations Research**

#### **74.402 Mathematical Programming**

#### **74.405 Management Information Systems**

#### **74.420 Special Topic**

#### **74.601 Thesis**

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current *Calendar* year.

## **DEPARTMENT OF MANAGEMENT STUDIES AND LABOUR RELATIONS** **Management Studies and Labour Relations II**

### **72.203 Organisation and Management**

Behavioural and structural analysis of organisations and management of human resources in support of organisation goals. Individual and group behaviour in organisations.

### **72.207 Labour Relations**

Introduction to subject of labour relations with special reference to New Zealand. Institutional and legal frameworks. History and organisation of trade unions and employers' associations. Role of government. Legislation relating to employment and to resolution of industrial disputes. Procedures for determining pay and conditions of employment in the public and private sectors.

## **Management Studies and Labour Relations III**

### **72.303 Advanced Labour Relations**

1988: Labour Relations and Technological Change

### **72.307 Personnel Policy and Practice**

Strategic significance of personnel issues. Matching of organisational needs for human resources with the career aspirations of individuals. Human resource planning, job analysis and design, recruitment and selection. Employment contracts, induction and socialisation. Training, development and performance appraisal. Management of remuneration. Terminations.

### **\*72.310 Organisational Research Methods**

### **†72.311 Entrepreneurial Behaviour and New Venture Management**

Why do people behave in an entrepreneurial manner? Why do they want to run their own business? How do they set up a business? Evaluation, assessment of capital and profit potential, acquisition techniques.

### **†72.313 Special Topic: Business and Society**

### **†72.314 Special Topic: Business Communication**

### **†72.315 Training and Development**

The design and purpose of specific training interventions and their relevance to the management of change in organisations. Students will critically examine models of organisational development, gain professional skills in organisational needs analysis,

course planning, instructional design, teaching methods and cost and benefit analysis and will discuss issues such as induction, supervision and across-the-works and on-the-job training. These topics will be related to a study of the adult learner in the workplace, and the impact of organisational contexts and cultures on training effectiveness.

### **Management Studies and Labour Relations for MCom and Honours**

#### **72.402 Management of Change**

#### **72.403 NZ Labour Relations – Theory and Practice**

#### **72.405 Organisation Development**

#### **72.406 Entrepreneurial Behaviour and Small Business Management**

#### **72.407 Empirical Study in New Zealand Management**

#### **72.410 Research Methods**

#### **72.411 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department

#### **72.412 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department

#### **72.413 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department

#### **72.414 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department

#### **72.415 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department

#### **72.416 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department

#### **72.601 Thesis**

Note: There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current *Calendar* year.

## **DEPARTMENT OF MARKETING AND INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS**

### **Marketing and International Business II**

#### **71.200 Marketing Management**

Study of the principles of marketing management within the framework of the strategic management model. Identification of market opportunities, buyer behaviour, marketing research, segmentation and targeting, and planning the tactical elements of the marketing mix. Examination of relationships between marketing and other business functions.

#### **71.201 International Business**

An investigation of the environment within which international companies work; upon this framework is developed an understanding of the rationale and methods of international business. The course places an emphasis upon the formulation of marketing strategies and the particular problems and opportunities of New Zealand companies operating internationally.

### **Marketing and International Business III**

#### **71.300 Marketing Strategy**

The capstone course in marketing management, aimed at providing students with the knowledge and skills required by an effective marketing executive

assistant. The course utilises the strategic management framework and emphasises experiential learning in marketing measurement and appraisal, preparation of strategies and plans, and analysis of market performance. Students are encouraged to develop further skills for continuing appraisal of marketing theory and techniques. A major practical project is included.

#### **71.301 Consumer Behaviour**

Examination of the behaviour of the consumer through several buyer behavioural models. The following concepts are covered: group influences, including social stratification, reference groups and the family; individual influences, including information processing, learning, attitudes and personality; persuasive communication and its effect on attitudes; decision processes, including problem recognition, search evaluation and post-purchase experience; current research in consumer behaviour. Study of the implications for the practice of marketing management.

#### **71.302 Marketing Research**

The course examines the principles of marketing research and their application to marketing problems. The course will cover research problem definition, research design, data collection, data analysis and reporting.

#### **71.303 Computer Technology in Marketing**

Application of information technology in pursuit of competitive advantage. Models of marketing information systems. Microprocessors in products. Intensive hands-on use of computer personal productivity tools and marketing software packages to solve marketing problems.

#### **†71.304 Marketing Practice**

Study of marketing practice and management in selected fields of application drawn from: industrial marketing, channel management, international marketing, primary products marketing, advertising and promotions management, marketing services, and retail marketing.

#### **71.310 Special Topic – Societal Marketing**

Examination of marketing strategies for achieving a balance between the economic and social welfare of society, consumers and organisations. Applications to all types of organisations: large/small, public/private sector, profit/non-profit, co-operative/hierarchical.

#### **71.311 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

#### **71.312 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

### **Marketing and International Business for MCom and Honours**

#### **71.400 Advanced Marketing**

#### **71.401 Advanced Buyer Behaviour**

#### **71.402 Advanced Study of Computer Technology in Marketing**

**71.410 Special Topic: Futures Research****71.411 Special Topic****71.412 Special Topic****71.601 Thesis**

**Note:** There is no guarantee that all these papers will be available to students during the current *Calendar* year.

## **GRADUATE SCHOOL OF BUSINESS**

### **Business Administration for MBA**

#### **EXECUTIVE MANAGEMENT COURSE**

**70.400, 70.401, 70.420 Business Administration**

The course will be modular encompassing the following fields of study:

Accounting: financial reporting and analysis; accounting methods; valuation of assets and liabilities; accounting standards and auditing; taxation; cost accounting, management accounting and control.

Quantitative techniques for management: data analysis, optimisation models. Economics: resource allocation; industry and market structures; public sector economics; economic regulations; national production and income; inflation, growth, employment, the balance of payments and the monetary system; international economics.

Law: Legal system, contract and company law.

Organisation and management: Organisational behaviour; individual behaviour, jobs, groups, organisations; managing behaviour; principles of planning, organising, leading and control in organisations; entrepreneurship and small business management.

Marketing Management: analysis of competitive position, competitive strategy; strategies for growth and development of markets; management of innovation and product development.

Management Skills: Individual and group training in skills for information-processing, peer relationships, leadership, resource allocation, decision-making, entrepreneurship and business planning.

**70.410, 70.411, 70.421 Business Administration**

The course will be modular encompassing the following fields of study:

Finance: financial planning and budgeting; working capital management; investment decisions; cost of capital and sources of funds; financial structure; dividend policy.

Strategic Marketing: the role of marketing in business strategic management; market analysis; use of information in marketing decision making; techniques for planning, implementing and controlling marketing strategy.

Operations and Systems Management: operations strategy, forecasting techniques, aggregate production planning, materials management and MRP, just-in-time manufacturing, project management, modern manufacturing technologies (FMS, CAM, GT), managing the workforce, quality, productivity, and competitive position.

Personnel and Industrial Relations: job-design; per-

sonnel selection; training, development and performance appraisal; remuneration policies; industrial relations – theory, practice, and legislation.

Business and Society, the interrelationships of business, government, and the community; social responsibilities of business.

Strategic Management: Models and techniques for analysis of strategic condition of the business; development of business strategy. Case studies and readings focussing on management policy for operating the administrative decisions.

Management information systems: The analysis, design, and implementation of computerised information systems.

International Business environment: Economic, cultural, political, customer and competitor analysis for international business decisions.

Management Skills: Individual and group training for skills in group management, negotiation, multicultural workforce management, information systems, and the management of change.

**70.500, 70.510 Business Administration**

The course will be modular encompassing the following fields of study:

Strategic management; advanced studies in finance; taxation; management of research and development; managing information systems for competitive advantage.

International Business Management: marketing, financial management, accounting, taxation and control in an international environment.

Management Skills: Case analyses of the strategies and internal management of New Zealand business organisations.

**70.520 Management Project** (value 2 papers)

A major field investigation of strategy or organisational change in a business organisation.

## **DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND STATISTICS**

For Prescription see Index.

## **THE PROFESSIONAL EXAMINATIONS FOR MEMBERSHIP OF THE NEW ZEALAND SOCIETY OF ACCOUNTANTS**

Exemptions from the New Zealand Society of Accountants' examinations are granted to students who have passed certain degree subjects. Currently it is possible to get complete exemption from all examination requirements of the Society, apart from the Society's uniform qualifying examination, provided certain specified papers are taken for the BCom Degree. Full details are available from the Department of Accountancy.

Students should note that exemptions from the New Zealand Society of Accountants' Professional Ex-

aminations can be authorised by the Society only. Those with queries should write directly to the Education Officer, New Zealand Society of Accountants, P.O. Box 11342, Wellington. Exemptions from examinations of the Cost and

Management Accounting Division of the New Zealand Society of Accountants are also granted to students who have passed certain degree subjects. Full details are available from the Department of Accountancy.

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

### POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN BUSINESS

#### PGDipBus

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations. Every intending new candidate must apply to the Registrar for permission to enrol in the Course not later than 15 October of the year preceding that in which the applicant proposes to enrol.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Postgraduate Diploma in Business shall before enrolment for this Diploma:

- (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's degree, and have had not less than two years of relevant employment experience; or
- (b) (i) hold or have qualified for the award of either a professional qualification in Accountancy, Engineering or Science or some other approved discipline or a New Zealand Certificate in Commerce, Engineering or Science with outstanding merit and
- (ii) have had not less than two years of relevant employment experience; or
- (c) have had not less than five years of relevant employment experience.

2. Admission to the course of study for the Postgraduate Diploma in Business shall be at the discretion of the Senate.

3. A candidate may be required by the Senate to undertake a transitional course of study.

#### Course Requirements

4. A candidate for the Postgraduate Diploma in Business shall be required to

- (a) follow a course of study of not less than one year, and
- (b) pass the examinations for one of the following subjects:

Business Administration  
Marketing, and

- (c) perform laboratory and practical work in professional management practice to the satisfaction of Senate.

5. The course in each subject for this degree is:

#### Business Administration

The course of study consists of two parts, each of which shall be taken as a whole, and the candidate shall be required to pass in each of six papers.

Part I

70.400, 70.401, 70.420 Business Administration (3 papers)

Part II

70.410, 70.411, 70.421 Business Administration (3 papers)

#### Marketing

The candidate shall be required to pass in each of six papers selected with the approval of Senate from:

**70.433 Marketing Management**

**70.443 International Business**

**70.445 Business Policy**

**70.551 Strategic Marketing**

**70.552 Buyer Behaviour**

**70.553 Marketing Management Practice (a)**

**70.554 Marketing Management Practice (b)**

**70.555 International Marketing Management**

**70.556 Special Topic in Marketing**

**70.557 Special Topic in Marketing**

Note: A candidate shall be required to perform laboratory and practical work to the satisfaction of Senate.

6. These regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1988.

---

**GRADUATE SCHOOL OF BUSINESS  
PRESCRIPTIONS FOR PGDipBus**

See the prescriptions for the MBA course. There is during the current Calendar year a limitation on the number of candidates that may be enrolled in the courses for PGDipBus. The PGDipBus is designed as a two-year part-time course, or as a one-year full-time course. Further details are contained in a handbook available free from the Enquiry counter, Registry, 24 Princes St, Auckland or from the office of the Graduate School of Business. Enquiries may be made to the Director of the Postgraduate Diploma in Business course, Graduate School of Business.

---

**POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN COMMERCE  
PGDipCom**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Course of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations. Every intending new candidate must apply to the Registrar for permission to enrol in the Course not later than the date prescribed by Senate for the year in which the applicant proposes to enrol.*

**General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Postgraduate Diploma in Commerce shall before enrolment for this Postgraduate Diploma
  - (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce or such other university degree as the Senate may approve in a particular case, or
  - (b) hold or have qualified for the award of a professional qualification in Commerce approved by the Senate.
2. Admission to the course of study for the Postgraduate Diploma in Commerce shall be at the discretion of the Senate.

**Course Regulations**

3. A candidate for the Diploma in Commerce shall be required to
  - (a) follow a course of study of not less than one year, and
  - (b) pass the examinations in not less than six papers selected with the approval of Senate from 200, 300 and 400 level papers in Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, and Marketing and International Business. At least three papers at 300 or 400 level shall be selected from one, or with the permission of the Senate more than one, of the subjects Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Management Science and Information Systems, Management Studies and Labour Relations, Marketing and International Business. No more than two of the papers selected shall be at 200 level.
4. No candidate may present for this Postgraduate Diploma a paper which is the same or substantially equivalent in content to any paper the candidate has passed for another degree or diploma.
5. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1988.

---

**SCHOOL OF COMMERCE  
PRESCRIPTIONS FOR PGDipCom**

See the prescriptions for the BCom and MCom courses. The PGDipCom is designed as a two-year part-time course, or as a one-year full-time course.



---

# Faculty of Law

## *Contents*

---

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	278 Degree of Bachelor of Laws
	281 Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours)
	283 Postgraduate Legal Education Programme
	283 Degree of Master of Laws
	285 Degree of Master of Jurisprudence

---

<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	287 Degree of Bachelor of Laws
	289 Law and Practice in N.Z. Examinations
	289 Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours)
	291 Postgraduate Legal Education Programme
	291 Degree of Master of Laws and Master of Jurisprudence

---

<b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>	292 Diploma in Criminology
	292 Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF LAWS LLB

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws shall be required to
  - (a) pursue a course of study for a period of not less than four years;
  - (b) pass an Intermediate Examination and three Law Examinations;
  - (c) carry out work and undergo experience in the detailed application of law and in relation to the provision of legal services, to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Law ("the Faculty").

#### Examinations

2. (1) A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each Law Examination, so that the candidate's performance in all subjects of the examination shall be taken into consideration: provided that
  - (a) A candidate who has failed to pass any Law Examination as a whole may at the discretion of the Senate be credited with a subject or subjects of that examination and permitted in a subsequent year to present the subject or subjects not so credited together with a subject or subjects of the next succeeding Law Examination.
  - (b) A candidate who has passed the Intermediate Examination may at the discretion of the Senate be permitted to present part only of the First Law Examination, presenting the remaining part in a subsequent year together (if the candidate so wishes) with a subject or subjects of the next succeeding examination.
  - (c) A candidate who is undertaking the Degree or any part of the Degree part-time or in conjunction with any other degree shall be required to pass an examination consisting of such work, less than the full examination, as the Senate may in its discretion determine, and present the remaining part of the examination in a subsequent year, together (if the candidate so wishes) with a subject or subjects of the next succeeding examination.
- (2) A candidate to whom any of the foregoing provisos apply shall be required to pass as a whole an examination consisting of the subjects taken in any year, so that performance in all subjects taken in that year shall be considered.
- (3) A candidate who has failed only one subject of a Law Examination may be required by the Senate to pass in the following February a special examination in that subject to be credited with a pass in the examination as a whole.

#### Subjects

3. The examinations and subjects for this Degree are:

#### Intermediate Examination

25.103 The Legal System and subjects prescribed or accepted for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts ("the BA Degree") or Bachelor of Science ("the BSc Degree"), as follows-

- (a) Two arts papers (at any stage or stages) being
  - (i) any two language papers in any one subject (including English) listed in the Schedule to the Regulations for the BA Degree; or
  - (ii) Any two papers in Philosophy and
    - (b) not fewer than
      - (i) Four arts papers (at any stage or stages); or
      - (ii) Twenty-four science credits; or
      - (iii) An equivalent combination of one, two or three arts papers (at any stage or stages) with 18, 12 or 6 science credits respectively.

For the purpose of the requirement of two language papers:

- (i) Where only one language paper is available in a relevant subject, a candidate may, with the approval of the Senate, take that paper together with *either* a language paper in another subject *or* (instead of another language paper) an approved non-language arts paper.
- (ii) "language paper" includes a literature paper.
- (iii) One may be a literature paper in Classical Studies if the other is a Latin or Greek paper.

**Note:** The relevant subjects listed in the Schedule to the Regulations for the BA Degree are: Chinese, Indonesian, Russian, French, Italian, Scandinavian Studies, German, Japanese, Spanish, Greek, Latin, Hebrew, Maori Studies.

## First Law Examination

- 25.101 Criminal Law
- 25.104 The Law of Torts

- 25.105 The Law of Contract
- 25.106 Public Law

## Second Law Examination

- 25.201 Law of Property and one or more of
- 25.218 Legal History
- 25.225 Law and Society (any of which may be taken as part of the Third Law Examination)

- 25.202 Equity
- 25.226 Legal Theory and Analysis

Together with selected subjects from

- 25.204 Commercial Law
- 25.205 Administrative Law
- 25.207 Advanced Criminal Law
- 25.208 Company Law and Partnership
- 25.209 Intellectual Property
- 25.210 Criminology
- 25.211 Family Law
- 25.212 Industrial Law
- 25.213 International Institutions
- 25.214 International Law
- 25.220 Local Government Law
- 25.221 Income Tax

- 25.222 Roman Law
- 25.223 Women and the Law
- 25.224 Pacific Legal Studies
- 25.228 Competition Law
- 25.229 Advanced Contract
- 25.230 Advanced Tort
- 25.231 Problems in Civil Obligations
- 25.232 Legislation
- 25.233 Succession & Matrimonial Property
- 25.234 Welfare Law
- 25.235 Community Law Project
- 25.236, 25.237, 25.238, 25.239, 25.240 Special Topics approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law ("the Dean").

## Third Law Examination

One or more of

- 25.218 Legal History
- 25.225 Law and Society (unless at least one has been taken as part of the Second Law Examination in which case this provision will be permissive only)

- 25.226 Legal Theory and Analysis
- 25.310 Comparative Law

Together with selected subjects from

- 25.301 Advanced Administrative Law
- 25.302 Advanced Commercial Law
- 25.303 Advanced Constitutional Law
- 25.304 Advanced Criminology
- 25.305 Advanced Family Law
- 25.306 Advanced Industrial Law
- 25.307 Advanced International Law
- 25.308 Civil Procedure
- 25.309 Company Finance
- 25.311 Conflict of Laws
- 25.312 Creditors Remedies
- 25.313 Environmental Law
- 25.314 Evidence
- 25.315 International Trade
- 25.316 Law Reform
- 25.319 Planning Law

- 25.320 Restitution
- 25.321 Supervised Research
- 25.322 Vendor and Purchaser
- 25.323 Estate and Tax Planning
- 25.324 Air and Space Law
- 25.325 Maori Land Law
- 25.326 Insurance Law
- 25.328 Advocacy
- 25.329 Advanced Agency & Partnership
- 25.330 Legal Ethics
- 25.331 Remedies
- 26.332 Consumer Law
- 25.333 Negotiation, Mediation and Dispute Resolution
- 25.334 Advanced Legal Philosophy
- 25.335 Advanced Law and Society
- 26.336 Natural Resources Law
- 25.337, 25.338, 25.339, 25.340 Special Topics approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law

and any one or more optional subjects prescribed for the Second Law Examination.

**Note:** In any academic year, any optional subject for the Second or Third Law Examinations may be withdrawn if there are insufficient staff to teach it or too few enrolments to warrant its being taught.

## Intermediate Credits

4. In respect of the arts papers and science credits for the Intermediate Examination a candidate shall be required to comply with all relevant regulations for the BA Degree or the BSc Degree as the case may be (including regulations and requirements relating to corequisites, prerequisites, restrictions, combinations of subjects and practical work).

### Exemptions

5. (1) A candidate who has been credited for the BA Degree or the BSc Degree with any papers or credits required for the Intermediate Examination shall be credited with them for the purposes of this Degree also.
- (2) A candidate who is a graduate of any University in New Zealand shall be exempted from passing the Intermediate Examination but shall be required to pass 25.103 The Legal System as part of the First Law Examination and shall pursue a course of study for this Degree for a period of not less than three years.
- (3) In granting admission ad eundem statum to a candidate from an overseas University in one or more subjects of the Degree the Senate may require that the candidate shall pass an examination in the law and practice in New Zealand, covering such matters as may from time to time be prescribed by the Senate. The examination shall be at a time and place fixed by the Vice-Chancellor at a fee to be determined by the University from time to time.

### Practical Courses

6. No candidate shall be admitted to this Degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean a certificate that the candidate has complied with the requirements of Regulation 1(c).

**Note:** Legal Practice: A student completing his or her First Law Examination is required to enrol for 25.406 Legal Practice I, his or her Second Law Examination 25.407 Legal Practice II and his or her Third Law Examination 25.408 Legal Practice III.

### Approval of Courses

7. (1) The personal course of study of every candidate shall require the approval of the Senate.
- (2) The Senate may delegate to the Faculty the power to approve personal courses of study and also the discretionary powers conferred in Regulations 2 and 5 of these Regulations.
- (3) The candidate may appeal to the Senate where approval of a personal course of study has been withheld by a decision of the Faculty acting under the delegation of any of the powers referred to in the last preceding paragraph.

### Course Requirements

8. Every candidate shall be required

- (a) To undertake as part of the candidate's Third Law Examination a course of study comprising a sufficient number of advanced law courses. The Faculty shall determine from time to time which subjects shall be advanced courses for the purpose of this requirement and how many of such courses (not exceeding two-fifths of the Third Law Examination) shall be the minimum requirement.
- (b) To undertake in both the candidate's Second and Third Law Examinations a course of study comprising sufficient law subjects to amount to a full-time course of about 13 hours of instruction per week. The Faculty of Law shall from time to time determine the composition of a full-time course for these purposes.
- (c) To undertake and satisfy in any subject such tutorial, practical, writing, attendance or test requirements as the Faculty determines from time to time. A candidate who fails to comply with these requirements may be barred from sitting the final examination.

**Note:** The Handbook of the Faculty of Law will state the advanced subjects, the prerequisites if any, and the weight of each subject within a full-time course of study and the writing and other requirements of the Faculty of Law.

### Courses in Other Faculties

9. (1) In lieu of optional law subjects (totalling not more than one-fifth of the content of the Second and Third Law Examination combined) a candidate may take such papers at Stage II or above offered by other Faculties and related to the candidate's Law studies as are approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law. Before enrolling in the papers the candidate shall obtain the permission of the Head of the Department in which they are being taken and of the Dean of the Faculty of Law; but the Faculty of Law may in special cases apply this provision to a candidate who has previously taken papers in another Faculty which would have qualified under this Regulation if prior approval had been obtained.
- (2) Any paper taken by a candidate under this Regulation may be credited only to this Degree.

**Note:** Approval of papers to form part of the candidate's Third Law Examination will ordinarily be confined to those at Stage III or above.

### Research Paper

10. A candidate for this Degree may with the prior approval of the Dean elect to submit a research paper in lieu of examination in a subject of the Third Law Examination, if the teacher in the subject has certified that the research paper is related to that subject.

### BCom/LLB

11. (1) A candidate shall be credited with any subject named in the left hand column of the schedule to this paragraph of this Regulation if he or she has passed for the Degree of Bachelor of Commerce the paper or papers named opposite that subject in the right hand column of the schedule.

### Schedule

Company Law and Partnership 25.208  
Industrial Law 25.212  
Revenue Law 25.221 or Income Tax 25.221

Company Law and Partnership 02.300  
Industrial Law 02.302  
Taxation and Estate Planning 02.301

(2) Credits under this Regulation shall be additional to any permitted to a candidate under the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

### **Commencement**

12. (1) These Regulations shall apply to all students taking the Degree of Bachelor of Laws from 1 January 1988.

(2) Subject to (3) and (4) hereof passes obtained by a candidate before 1 January 1988 in any of the subjects prescribed in the 1987 Degree regulations shall be credited as passes in the corresponding subjects in the Regulations for this Degree.

(3) Passes obtained by a candidate before 1 January 1988 in any of the subjects prescribed in the 1987 Degree Regulations for which there is no direct equivalent in the Regulations for this Degree, including the Introductory courses in Commercial Law, Family Law, and Company Law and Partnership, shall be credited as passes in optional subjects of the same weighting under the Regulations for this Degree.

(4) No candidate may credit passes in both an Introductory course in Commercial Law, Family Law or Company Law and the full course in the same subject under the Regulations for this Degree or in both a subject prescribed under the 1987 Regulations and a subject prescribed under the Regulations for this Degree if, in the opinion of the Dean, the subject matter of the former forms a substantial proportion of the subject matter of the latter.

(5) A candidate who before 1 January 1988 passed Land Law but not before 1 January 1989 Commercial Law or Introduction to Commercial Law shall be required to pass 25.204 Commercial Law under the Regulations for this Degree and a candidate who before 1 January 1988 passed Commercial Law or Introduction to Commercial Law but not Land Law shall be required to pass 25.201 The Law of Property under the Regulations for this Degree.

(6) A candidate who before 1 January 1988 passed the Intermediate Examination and who has not passed Legal System, shall be required to pass 25.103 The Legal System as part of the First Law Examination in the Regulations for this Degree.

(7) A pass in 1988 in the subject 25.102 Constitutional Law as prescribed in the 1987 Regulations shall be credited as a pass in 25.106 Public Law under the Regulations for this Degree and passes in 1988 in the subjects 25.203 Introduction to Commercial Law, 25.215 Introduction to Company Law and Partnership, 25.216 Introduction to Family Law, 25.225 Law and Society, 25.226 Legal Analysis and 25.227 Legal Theory as prescribed in the 1987 Regulations shall be credited as passes in optional subjects of the same weighting under the Regulations for this Degree.

(8) A candidate who before 1 January 1988 passed not fewer than two subjects in the First Law Examination will not be required to pass any one of 25.218 Legal History, 25.225 Law and Society, 25.226 Legal Theory and Analysis and 25.310 Comparative Law under the Regulations for this Degree.

(9) For the purposes of this Regulation, a pass shall include a Conceded Pass or a pass in a February Special examination.

(10) A candidate who began his or her Law course before 1973 shall be entitled to the benefit of any transitional provisions then applicable.

(11) Where the course of any candidate is not specifically covered by the above provisions and in other cases where there is doubt concerning the course of any candidate such course shall be settled by the Dean.

## **THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF LAWS (HONOURS) LLB (Hons)**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### **General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) shall be required to

- (a) (i) pursue a course of study for a period of not less than four years and as prescribed in Regulation 2;
- (ii) pass an Intermediate Examination and three Law Examinations;
- (iii) carry out work in the detailed application of law to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Law (the "Faculty"), as prescribed in the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws ("the LLB Degree"), excepting Regulation 10 as to the substitution of a research paper in lieu of an examination in Third Law Examination; and
- (b) present the additional work specified in Regulation 3; and

(c) maintain a superior standard of work throughout the course as prescribed in Regulation 6.

### Course Requirements

2. Every candidate shall be required

(a) To take at least one of the following subjects:

25.310 Comparative Law

25.316 Law Reform

25.218 Legal History

25.317 Legal Philosophy or any two of

25.225 Law and Society, 25.226 Legal Analysis and 25.227 Legal Theory.

(b) To undertake as part of his Third Law Examination a course of study comprising a sufficient number of advanced law courses. The Faculty shall determine from time to time which subjects shall be advanced courses for the purposes of this requirement, and how many of such courses (not exceeding two-fifths of the Third Law Examination) shall be the minimum requirement.

(c) To undertake in both his Second and Third Law Examinations, a course of study comprising sufficient law subjects to amount to a full-time course of about 13 hours of instruction per week. The Faculty of Law shall from time to time determine the composition of a full-time course for these purposes.

(d) To undertake and satisfy in any subject such tutorial, practical, writing, attendance or test requirements as the Faculty determines from time to time. A candidate who fails to comply with these requirements may be barred from sitting the final examination.

**Note:** The Handbook of the Faculty of Law will state the advanced subjects, the prerequisites if any, and the weight of each subject within a full-time course of study, and the writing and other requirements of the Faculty of Law.

### Additional Work

3. In addition to the foregoing requirements, every candidate shall during his or her course undertake the following work:

(a) Two additional subjects from those listed in Regulation 4, carrying out to the satisfaction of the Faculty such written or other work as may be prescribed by the Dean in connection with those subjects.

(b) The submission, not later than twelve months after completing the Third Law Examination, of a dissertation (25.604) embodying the results of research undertaken under the direct supervision of a University teacher in the Faculty. The Senate may in its discretion extend the time for the submission of the dissertation.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with the dissertation. See Examination Regulation 14.

### Subjects

4. The additional subjects provided for in Regulation 3 shall be:

25.341 Admiralty Law

25.342 Air and Space Law

25.343 Aspects of Industrial Law

25.344 Business Regulation

25.345 Causes of Crime

25.346 Civil Rights

25.347 Commercial Letters of Credit

25.348 Consumer Law

25.349 Copyright and Patent Law

25.350 Corporation Finance

25.351 Economic Regulation

25.352 Environmental Law

25.353 Estate Planning

25.354 Insurance (other than Marine Insurance) Law

25.355 International Business and Finance, Law of

25.356 Law and Social Problems

25.357 Law of Banking

25.358 Law of Landlord and Tenant

25.359 Law Reform

25.360 Law Relating to Computers

25.361 Legal Accounting

25.362 Legal Aspects of Race Relations

25.363 Legal Education

25.364 Legal History

25.365 Legal Problems of the European Common Market

25.366 Local Government Law

25.367 Maori Land Law

25.368 Marine Insurance Law

25.369 Medico-Legal Problems

25.370 Military Law

25.371 Penology

25.372 Problems in Choice of Law

25.373 Problems in Contract and Tort

25.374 Problems in Criminal Law

25.375 Problems in Equity

25.376 Problems in Legal Philosophy

25.377 Professional Responsibility

25.378 Registration of Title to Land

25.379 Remedies against the Government

25.380 Securities Law

25.381 Selected topics in Comparative Law

25.382 Shipping Law

25.383 Social Control of Land

25.384 State and Local Taxation

25.385 The Law Relating to Damages

25.386 The Legal Process

25.387 Trial Practice

25.388 United Nations Law and Problems of World Order

25.389 Pacific Legal Studies

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 25.390 Women and the Law  | 25.395 Welfare Law   |
| 25.391 Restitution  | 25.396 Advanced Studies in Constitutional Law  |
| 25.392 Advanced studies in Administrative Law   | 25.397 Advanced studies in a selected topic<br>as prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law |
| 25.393 Advanced studies in a selected topic<br>as prescribed by the Dean of the<br>Faculty of Law | 25.398 Advanced studies in a selected topic<br>as prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law |
| 25.394 Advanced studies in a selected topic<br>as prescribed by the Dean of the<br>Faculty of Law | 25.399 Methods and Skills in Negotiation and Conflict<br>Resolution                            |
|   | 25.604 Dissertation  |

**Note:** In any academic year, any additional subject may be withdrawn if there are insufficient staff to teach it or too few enrolments to warrant its being taught.

5. Any candidate may with the approval of the Dean elect to present a research paper in lieu of an examination in a subject of the Third Law Examination or a subject listed in Regulation 4. In cases approved by the Dean, notwithstanding anything in Regulation 3, a candidate may present a dissertation in lieu of an examination in a subject of the Third Law Examination.

On condition that in either case the teacher in the subject certifies that the research paper or dissertation is related to that subject.

### **Standards**

6. This Degree shall be awarded to candidates who have fulfilled the requirements of these Regulations and whose work throughout the course has been in the opinion of the Faculty of a sufficiently high standard.

### **Transfer to LLB (Hons)**

7. The Senate may, on written application by a candidate who has completed only the First Law Examination and, in special circumstances any other candidate, and without payment of a fee, permit the candidate to transfer to a course under these Regulations; for which the candidate may then be credited with the subjects already passed for the LLB.

### **Transfer to LLB**

8. A candidate whose work does not in the opinion of the Faculty satisfy the standard prescribed in Regulation 6, or who at any stage elects to withdraw from this Degree, shall be entitled to have credited to the LLB Degree without payment of a fee those subjects (being subjects for the LLB Degree) in which the candidate has passed or been credited with a pass.

### **Commencement**

9. These Regulations shall apply to all candidates taking the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours) from January 1973, but any candidate who began his or her law course before that date or before 1967 shall be entitled to the credits prescribed in Regulation 12 of the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws.

## **PROFESSIONAL LEGAL EDUCATION PROGRAMME**

A candidate seeking admission as a barrister and solicitor of the High Court of New Zealand must satisfy the requirements of the Professional Examinations in Law Regulations 1987.

The Regulations are printed in the University Grants Committee Handbook. Details are available on request from the Director of the Institute of Professional Legal Studies or the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

## **THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF LAWS**

### **LLM**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Laws shall before enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws and also

(i) have attained an average grade of B or higher in the candidate's course of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Laws, or

(ii) have otherwise shown to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Law capacity to undertake advanced study and research in the subjects proposed to be taken for this Degree.

2. No person shall be admitted to this Degree who has been admitted to the Degree of Master of Jurisprudence.

3. (1) Every candidate for this Degree shall—

**EITHER** (a) Pass the examination in six of the papers prescribed in Regulation 4 of these Regulations—

(i) in one year in the case of a full-time student, or

(ii) in not more than two successive years in the case of a student who is not full-time.

**OR** (b) (i) in one year pass the examinations in three of the papers so prescribed, and

(ii) present a thesis (25.601) under the conditions prescribed in Regulation 5.

(2) For the purpose of this Regulation a candidate is not a full-time student if he or she—

(a) is in employment (including self-employment) for more than 20 hours in each week of the academic year throughout the two years of the work for this Degree, and

(b) furnishes such evidence, of being and of intending to continue so employed, as the Dean of the Faculty of Law ("the Dean") may from time to time reasonably require.

4. The subjects of examination for the Degree are such of the following as are from time to time offered:

25.501, 25.502 Administrative Law	25.549, 25.550 Pacific Legal Studies
25.561, 25.562 Air and Space Law	25.551, 25.552 Planning Law
25.503, 25.504 Commercial Law	25.553, 25.554 Restitution
25.505, 25.506 Comparative Law	25.555, 25.556 Sales and Sales Financing
25.507, 25.508 Constitutional Law	25.557, 25.558 Shipping Law
25.509, 25.510 Conflict of Laws	25.559, 25.560 Transport Law
25.511, 25.512 Creditors Remedies	25.563, 25.564 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
25.513, 25.514 Criminal Law	25.565, 25.566 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
25.515, 25.516 Criminology	25.567, 25.568 Civil Rights
25.517, 25.518 Environmental Law	25.569, 25.570 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
25.519, 25.520 Equity	25.571, 25.572 Welfare Law
25.521, 25.522 Family Law	25.573, 25.574 Insurance Law
25.523, 25.524 Industrial Law	25.575, 25.576 New Zealand Legal History
25.525, 25.526 International Law	25.577, 25.578 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
25.527, 25.528 Jurisprudence	25.579, 25.580 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
25.529, 25.530 Land Law	25.581, 25.582 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
25.531, 25.532 Law and Society	25.583, 25.584 Partnership
25.533, 25.534 Law of Banking and Exchange Control	25.585, 25.586 Maori Land Law
25.535, 25.536 Law of Bodies Corporate and Unincorporate	25.587, 25.588 International Trade
25.537, 25.538 Law of Contract	
25.539, 25.540 Law of Evidence	
25.541, 25.542 Law of Taxation and Estate Planning	
25.543, 25.544 Law of Torts	
25.545, 25.546 Law Reform	
25.547, 25.548 Local Government Law	

**Note:** Subjects that are offered in the current *Calendar* year will be by arrangement with the Dean.

### **Thesis**

5. When a candidate elects to present a thesis (25.601) the following conditions shall apply:

(a) The thesis shall be of the value of three papers, and shall consist of an original contribution to the history, philosophy, exposition, or criticism of the law, prepared under the supervision of a University teacher, upon a subject approved by the Dean.

(b) A candidate may submit the thesis in the year in which the examination is taken or in a subsequent year.

(c) The candidate shall deliver the thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is presented or at a subsequent date arranged with the supervising teacher.

(d) At the discretion of the Dean the candidate may be required to attend, within four weeks of the date on which the thesis was submitted, an oral examination on the subject of the thesis. For this purpose either two or three examiners shall be appointed by the Dean.

(e) Where a candidate submits a thesis which is of insufficient standard on first submission, the Senate may in exceptional circumstances, when recommended by the examiners, permit the candidate to rewrite the thesis and submit it again by a specified date.

(f) The thesis shall be presented within three years of the year in which the examination is first taken but this period may in special cases be extended by the Senate.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

### **Honours**

6. (1) This Degree may be awarded with or without Honours.

(2) A candidate who is required to re-sit a written examination or to re-submit the thesis shall not be eligible for an award with Honours.



**Transitional**

7. These Regulations shall apply to all candidates for the Degree of Master of Laws; except that any candidate for the Degree who first enrolled for it before 1982 shall complete the course under the Regulation last published in the 1981 *Calendar*.

**Note:** Students proposing to enrol for a Master's Degree are expected to discuss their enrolment with the Dean not later than the December preceding their enrolment.

**THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF JURISPRUDENCE****MJur**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Master of Jurisprudence shall before enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours).

2. No person shall be admitted to this Degree who has been admitted to the Degree of Master of Laws.

**Course Content**

3. (a) Every candidate for this degree shall either

(i) in one year pass the examinations in four papers in the subjects prescribed in Regulation 4 of these Regulations, or

(ii) submit a thesis (25.611) under the conditions prescribed in Regulation 5.

(b) The choice of subjects to be taken by each candidate proceeding under Regulation 3 (a) (i)

(i) shall be subject to the approval of the Dean of the Faculty of Law ("the Dean"), and

(ii) shall not include any subject with which the candidate has been credited for the Degree of Master of Commerce.

4. The subjects of examination for the Degree are such of the following as are from time to time offered:

25.501, 25.502 Administrative Law	25.547, 25.548 Local Government Law
25.561, 25.562 Air and Space Law	25.549, 25.550 Pacific Legal Studies
25.503, 25.504 Commercial Law	25.551, 25.552 Planning Law
25.505, 25.506 Comparative Law	25.553, 25.554 Restitution
25.507, 25.508 Constitutional Law	25.555, 25.556 Sales and Sales Financing
25.509, 25.510 Conflict of Laws	25.557, 25.558 Shipping Law
25.511, 25.512 Creditors Remedies	25.559, 25.560 Transport Law
25.513, 25.514 Criminal Law	25.563, 25.564 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
25.515, 25.516 Criminology	25.565, 25.566 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
25.517, 25.518 Environmental Law	25.567, 25.568 Civil Rights
25.519, 25.520 Equity	25.569, 25.570 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
25.521, 25.522 Family Law	25.571, 25.572 Welfare Law
25.523, 25.524 Industrial Law	25.573, 25.574 Insurance Law
25.525, 25.526 International Law	25.575, 25.576 New Zealand Legal History
25.527, 25.528 Jurisprudence	25.577, 25.578 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
25.529, 25.530 Land Law	25.579, 25.580 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
25.531, 25.532 Law and Society	25.581, 25.582 Special Topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law
25.533, 25.534 Law of Banking and Exchange Control	25.583, 25.584 Partnership
25.535, 25.536 Law of Bodies Corporate and Unincorporate	25.585, 25.586 Maori Land Law
25.537, 25.538 Law of Contract	25.587, 25.588 International Trade
25.539, 25.540 Law of Evidence	
25.541, 25.542 Law of Taxation and Estate Planning	
25.543, 25.544 Law of Torts	
25.545, 25.546 Law Reform	

**Note:** Subjects that are offered in the current *Calendar* year will be by arrangement with the Dean.

**Thesis**

5. When a candidate elects to present a thesis (25.611) the following conditions shall apply:

(a) The thesis shall consist of an original contribution to the history, philosophy, exposition or criticism of the

law, prepared under the supervision of a University teacher; upon a subject approved by the Dean.

(b) The candidate shall deliver the thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is presented, or at a subsequent date arranged with his supervising teacher.

(c) At the discretion of the Dean the candidate may be required, within four weeks of the date on which the thesis was submitted, to attend an oral examination on the subject of the thesis. For this purpose either two or three examiners shall be appointed by the Dean.

(d) Where a candidate submits a thesis which is of insufficient standard on first submission, the Senate may in exceptional circumstances when recommended by the examiners, permit the candidate to rewrite the thesis and submit it again by a specified date.

(e) The thesis shall be submitted not later than three years after the candidate's enrolment for the Degree, but this period may in special cases be extended by the Senate.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 14.

### **Distinction**

6. (1) This degree may be awarded with or without Distinction.

(2) A candidate who is required to re-sit a written examination or to re-submit the thesis shall not be eligible for an award with Distinction.

**Note:** Students proposing to enrol for a Masters degree are expected to discuss their enrolment with the Dean not later than the December preceding their enrolment.

## **DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS**

### **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR LLB AND FOR LLB (Hons)**

#### **Law Intermediate Examination**

##### **25.103 The Legal System**

An introduction to: theories of the nature, functions and origins of law and legal systems; the New Zealand legal system, including its sources of law, the nature of its courts and selected other legal institutions, and its operation in historical and contemporary New Zealand; Maori concepts of law and justice and their relationship to the New Zealand legal system; legal reasoning including both statutory interpretation and case-law reasoning.

#### **First Law Examination**

##### **25.101 Criminal Law**

The general principles of criminal liability. Selected indictable and summary offences chargeable under New Zealand Law. An introduction to the procedure upon indictment and to summary procedure (excluding the law of evidence).

##### **25.104 The Law of Torts**

General principles of civil liability. The law as to the various kinds of torts. The law relating to compensation for personal injury by accident in New Zealand.

##### **25.105 The Law of Contract**

The general principles of the law relating to agreements. Selected topics in the law of contract. An introduction to the law of agency.

##### **25.106 Public Law**

The principles and workings of the constitution, the institutions of government, the exercise of public power and relations between the citizen and the state. Controls on the exercise of public power, including an introduction to judicial review.

##### **25.406 Legal Practice 1**

#### **Second Law Examination**

##### **25.201 Law of Property**

An introduction to the law relating to property in land, goods and other tangible and intangible assets.

##### **25.202 Equity**

The general principles of equity.

##### **25.204 Commercial Law**

An introduction to the law relating to the sale of goods, hire purchase, personal property, secured transactions, credit contracts, consumer protection and negotiable instruments.

##### **25.205 Administrative Law**

The general principles of administrative law. Subordinate legislation. Discretionary powers of Ministers, officials and local bodies. Administrative tribunals and their functions. Controls over the exercise of legislative, judicial and other powers.

##### **25.207 Advanced Criminal Law**

Selected advanced problems in criminal law and criminal procedure.

##### **25.208 Company Law and Partnership**

An introduction to the principles of company law and the law of partnership. Rights and liabilities of those who form, operate and deal with companies, and partnerships.

##### **25.209 Intellectual Property**

Studies in the content and impact of copyright, patents, trademarks, and unfair competition in New Zealand and elsewhere.

##### **25.210 Criminology**

An introduction to the theory of criminology. Selected studies in crime and its causes, law enforcement, the administration of criminal justice, and the nature and purpose of the penal system.

##### **25.211 Family Law**

The law relating to cohabitation and marriage. The establishment of parenthood and the legal incidents of the relationship between parent and child. Adoption.

**25.212 Industrial Law**

Selected studies in the relationship of employer and employee; the rights, responsibilities and organisation of trade unions; the determination of industrial disputes relating to wages, conditions and rights; and the legality of industrial action.

**25.213 International Institutions**

The principles of international law as they relate to the structure and functioning of international institutions. The role of international institutions in the settlement of international disputes particularly the role of the International Court of Justice. Selected projects relating to specific international institutions.

**25.214 International Law**

An introduction to the law of nations. Selected topics in the adjudication and settlement of international disputes, the law of war, peace and neutrality, and the law of international institutions.

**25.218 Legal History**

An introduction to the history of present-day legal rules and institutions. Selected topics in English and New Zealand legal history.

**25.220 Local Government Law**

An introduction to the law governing the structure, powers and territorial definition of local government units. Selected studies in the legal problems of local government and its relationship with central government.

**25.221 Income Tax**

The principles of the law relating to income tax.

**25.222 Roman Law**

Outline of Roman private law according to Justinian and Gaius. Sources and historical development of Roman Law. The law of actions; the law of property; obligations; family and succession. Translation of substantial portions of the Latin text shall not be required.

**25.223 Women and the Law**

A study of the law as it defines women's role in society with particular emphasis on the use of the law to eliminate discrimination.

**25.224 Pacific Legal Studies**

Selected aspects of customary, private, public and international law of Pacific States and territories with particular regard to Fiji, Western Samoa, the Cook Islands, Niue, Tokelau Islands, New Zealand and Papua New Guinea.

**25.225 Law and Society**

A study of relationships between theories of law and justice and social conditions, with particular reference to empirical studies of law internationally and domestically.

**25.226 Legal Theory and Analysis**

A study of major theoretical perspectives on the nature, values and functions of law, including a study of justice; the structure of legal ideas and the nature of legal reasoning from common law and comparative

perspectives.

**25.228 Competition Law**

A study of the principles of competition law.

**25.229 Advanced Contract**

Advanced studies in the law of contract.

**25.230 Advanced Tort**

Advanced studies in the law of tort.

**25.231 Problems in Civil Obligations**

Actions which may be brought in either contract or tort. Civil rights and obligations having features similar to those of contract or tort, other than those associated with the law of restitution.

**25.232 Legislation**

The making and application of primary and subordinate legislation; legislative drafting and statutory interpretation. Selected topics from the history, evaluation, codification and judicial review of legislation.

**25.233 Succession and Matrimonial Property**

An introduction to the laws of wills and succession, testamentary promises and the administration of estates. Matrimonial and family property.

**25.234 Welfare Law**

A study of the law relating to income maintenance, physical and mental handicap, housing and homelessness, access to legal and related services.

**25.235 Community Law Project**

Participation in and report on a project involving law in a community context, and evaluation of the issues arising therefrom.

**25.236, 25.237, 25.238, 25.239, 25.240 Special Topics****25.407 Legal Practice II**

**Note:** Some of these courses will be taught for the full year and others will not. Students should refer to the current Law School Handbook to find out the size of courses they propose to take in any particular year, since this may vary from time to time.

**Third Law Examination****25.301 Advanced Administrative Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Administrative Law.

**25.302 Advanced Commercial Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of Commercial Law.

**25.303 Advanced Constitutional Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Constitutional Law.

**25.304 Advanced Criminology**

Advanced problems in the causes of crime, the administration of criminal justice, and the punishment and treatment of the offender. Selected studies in criminological methods and research.

**25.305 Advanced Family Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Family Law.

**25.306 Advanced Industrial Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of Industrial Law.

**25.307 Advanced International Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of the law of nations.

**25.308 Civil Procedure**

Advanced studies in procedure in civil actions and other proceedings, with reference to the evolution of the present form of civil action, pleadings, discovery and other pre-trial devices; joinder of parties; jurisdiction (including equitable jurisdiction), appellate procedure.

**25.309 Company Finance**

Problems in company finance law, including the raising of share and debt capital by companies.

**25.310 Comparative Law**

A study of selected systems of law with particular reference to the development of civil law on the Continent of Europe.

**25.311 Conflict of Laws**

Selected studies in the law governing transactions with elements outside New Zealand Courts, fundamental concepts of conflict of laws, and the validity and enforcement of foreign judgments.

**25.312 Creditors Remedies**

Legal problems arising where a debtor is in financial difficulties. Selected studies in the rights of unsecured creditors in bankruptcy and company liquidation; other methods of enforcing judgments.

**25.313 Environmental Law**

An analysis and criticism of the existing legal framework relating to the use and protection of the physical environment (Courts, agencies and Parliament as institutions for dealing with environmental problems. A study of specific environmental problems such as air and water pollution, agricultural chemicals, marine pollution). International aspects of environmental problems.

**25.314 Evidence**

The general principles of the law of evidence in civil and criminal cases. A critical evaluation of forensic law in New Zealand, including a comparison with systems of trial in other countries.

**25.315 International Trade**

The law relating to international business transactions.

**25.316 Law Reform**

A study of the institutions responsible for law reform and the methods by which reform is achieved. A selection of legal rules and institutions which have been, or may be, the subject of reform.

**25.319 Planning Law**

An introduction to the law relating to town and country planning. Selected studies in urban and rural planning problems, and processes and decisions of planning authorities, and the function of courts in planning matters.

**25.320 Restitution**

A study of the concept of unjust enrichment and its diverse practical applications.

**25.321 Supervised Research****25.322 Vendor and Purchaser**

Advanced problems in the sale of land. Selected case

studies examining the legal and taxation consequences of the agreement for sale and purchase and the conveyance of land, and the function and responsibility of the lawyer acting in such transactions.

**25.323 Estate and Tax Planning**

The principles of the law relating to estate and gift duties, estate planning and tax planning.

**25.324 Air and Space Law**

The principles of international and municipal law regulating airspace and outer space, aircraft, spacecraft, persons on board such craft and the rights and obligations of operators and users of aircraft and spacecraft, taking into consideration the economic and technical problems involved and aspects of national and international policies.

**25.325 Maori Land Law**

Legal problems of Maori land holding. Occupation and use.

**25.326 Insurance Law**

The principles of the law relating to insurance.

**25.328 Advocacy**

The preparation and presentation of cases; the theory and practice of advocacy.

**25.329 Advanced Agency and Partnership**

Advanced studies in the law of agency and partnership.

**25.330 Legal Ethics**

An examination of the ethical duties of legal practitioners towards their clients, the Courts and other tribunals, other practitioners, and members of the public.

**25.331 Remedies**

Advanced study of civil remedies; and their historical and philosophical backgrounds. Discretionary relief in Equity and under statutes.

**25.332 Consumer Law**

The law relating to consumer protection. Consumer remedies.

**25.333 Negotiation, Mediation and Dispute Resolution**

Studies in the theory and practice of negotiation, mediation and dispute resolution.

**25.334 Advanced Legal Philosophy**

Advanced studies in the philosophy of law.

**25.335 Advanced Law and Society**

Advanced studies in the relationship between selected legal theories and social conditions.

**25.336 Natural Resources Law**

A study of the law relating to the management and exploitation of natural resources.

**25.337, 25.338, 25.339, 25.340**

**Special Topics** to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

Any one or more optional courses prescribed for the Second Law Examination.

**25.408 Legal Practice III**

**Note:** Students should consult the current Law School Handbook to

find out the size of these courses, and any prerequisites for taking them, since these may vary from time to time.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR LAW AND PRACTICE IN NEW ZEALAND**

The prescriptions for the Examination in the law and practice in New Zealand may be obtained from the Dean of the Faculty. Written notice of a candidate's wish to take the examination should be given to the Registrar with payment of the prescribed fee.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR LLB (Hons) For the Subjects Listed in Regulation 4**

### **25.341 Admiralty Law**

Admiralty jurisdiction, extent of territorial waters, sources of maritime law, nature of maritime liens, bills of lading and charter parties, aspects of conflicts of laws in admiralty, rules established by international law in admiralty cases.

### **25.342 Air and Space Law**

Same prescription as for 25.324 (LLB).

### **25.343 Aspects of Industrial Law**

Analysis of selected problems in industrial law and industrial relations.

### **25.344 Business Regulation**

Government regulation of business, analysis of scope of control, its purposes and dangers, the common law and statutory regulations of trade and industry, restraint of trade and monopoly, restrictive trade practices.

### **25.345 Causes of Crime**

The significance of primary and secondary criminogenic factors.

### **25.346 Civil Rights**

A comparative study of recognised human rights and existing legal safeguards. Aspects include protection of minority rights, speech and assembly, police practices, race relations.

### **25.347 Commercial Letters of Credit**

The law and practice relating to commercial letters of credit.

### **25.348 Consumer Law**

A study of legislative and judicial attempts to protect the consumer.

### **25.349 Copyright and Patent Law**

Common law, statutory and international rules governing copyright and patents.

### **25.350 Corporation Finance**

Problems of corporate finance, including the rules governing raising capital and loans, rights to dividend and distribution of assets, amendment of corporate instruments, re-organisation, holding and subsidiary companies.

### **25.351 Economic Regulation**

Legal problems encountered in regulating economic behaviour and alternative techniques for resolving them; anti trust and labour problems.

## **25.352 Environmental Law**

An analysis and criticism of the existing legal framework relating to the use and protection of the physical environment. Courts, agencies and Parliament as institutions for dealing with environmental problems. A study of specific environmental problems such as air and water pollution, chemicals, marine pollution. International aspects of environmental problems.

## **25.353 Estate Planning**

An analysis of the factors which deserve consideration in planning for the future management and disposition of income and capital.

## **25.354 Insurance (other than Marine Insurance) Law**

The law governing insurance other than marine insurance.

## **25.355 Law of International Business and Finance**

A study of problems of commercial law, administrative law and international law arising from international trade, business and finance, including New Zealand's relationship with the European Economic Community.

## **25.356 Law and Social Problems**

Selected aspects of the interrelation between legal evolution and social change, interaction of legislation and social change, the role of law in the modern state.

## **25.357 Law of Banking**

The law relating to banking, with particular reference to the relationship of banker and customer and the banker's duty to third parties.

## **25.358 Law of Landlord and Tenant**

The law of landlord and tenant, including statutory tenancies and fair rents legislation.

## **25.359 Law Reform**

Methods of law reform with particular reference to New Zealand.

**Note:** Students may be required to prepare research papers for Law Reform Committees.

## **25.360 Law Relating to Computers**

An introduction to selected topics related to computers, including a brief introduction to elementary programme preparation, computerisation of statute and case law, protection of software, labour relations affected by computers and databank privacy.

## **25.361 Legal Accounting**

A critical examination of generally accepted accounting principles, an introduction to corporate financial problems, accounting problems of a law office.

## **25.362 Legal Aspects of Race Relations**

Investigation of legal efforts to combat discrimination, and an inquiry into the validity of law in this field.

## **25.363 Legal Education**

The objectives, methods and development of legal

education and the functions and obligations of the law teacher.

### **25.364 Legal History**

The effect on law of social, economic and constitutional change, with particular reference to England and New Zealand.

### **25.365 Legal Problems of the European Common Market**

The objectives, structures and functions and relationships of the European Economic Community and other European regional arrangements.

### **25.366 Local Government Law**

The law developed and applied in local government, construction and operation of statutory powers of local and public authorities, bylaws, financing, contractual and tortious liability.

### **25.367 Maori Land Law**

Legal problems of Maori land holding. Occupation and use.

### **25.368 Marine Insurance Law**

The law governing marine insurance.

### **25.369 Medico-Legal Problems**

A study of the relationship between law and medicine, preparation and presentation of medical proof in litigation, expert medical testimony.

### **25.370 Military Law**

Aspects of military law, the relation of civil to military jurisdiction, court martial procedure.

### **25.371 Penology**

An analysis of theory and practice in regard to the punishment and treatment of the offender.

### **25.372 Problems in Choice of Law**

The application of choice of law methods to specific situations, the feasibility of developing choice of law rules and principles consistent with predictability and uniformity.

### **25.373 Problems in Contract and Tort**

Analysis of selected problems arising in the law of contract and the law of tort.

### **25.374 Problems in Criminal Law**

Analysis of selected problems in criminal law.

### **25.375 Problems in Equity**

Problems relating to the equitable jurisdiction of the courts, with particular reference to the law of trusts.

### **25.376 Problems in Legal Philosophy**

Selected jurisprudential problems of definition of law; the concept of justice, relation of law and morality, the function of legal analysis.

### **25.377 Professional Responsibility**

The role of the legal profession in modern society, the obligations of a barrister and solicitor, conflict of interest, defending the unpopular client or cause.

### **25.378 Registration of Title to Land**

Legal problems of the Torrens system of title registration.

### **25.379 Remedies Against the Government**

Liability of the Crown in tort and contract, procedure for enforcing rights against the Crown.

### **25.380 Securities Law**

The law governing securities over personal and industrial property.

### **25.381 Selected Topics in Comparative Law**

Analysis of selected topics from foreign law systems, including civil and Soviet law.

### **25.382 Shipping Law**

Legal principles governing ownership of ships, limitation of liability of shippers, charter-parties and freightment, collision, salvage, towage, carriage of goods by sea.

### **25.383 Social Control of Land**

The purposes and effect of legislation controlling the use of land, housing improvement schemes, town and country planning, government and local body powers.

### **25.384 State and Local Taxation**

Analysis of property, sales, personal and corporate income taxes, tax policy and administration, local body taxation.

### **25.385 The Law Relating to Damages**

The principles governing damages in contract and in tort.

### **25.386 The Legal Process**

The function of the courts, counsel, legislature, administrative agencies and officials in decision making.

### **25.387 Trial Practice**

Advocacy, procedural and substantive law in trial proceedings, pre-trial preparation, proof.

### **25.388 United Nations Law and Problems of World Order**

The basic constitutional problems of the United Nations, regulation of the use of force, definition of aggression, punishment of crimes against the peace, disarmament, control of atomic energy, regulation of the use of outer space, an international police force.

### **25.389 Pacific Legal Studies**

Selected aspects of customary, private, public and international law of Pacific states and territories with particular regard to Fiji, Western Samoa, the Cook Islands, Niue, Tokelau Islands, New Zealand and Papua New Guinea.

### **25.390 Women and the Law**

A study of the law as it defines women's role in society with particular emphasis on the use of the law to eliminate discrimination.

### **25.391 Restitution**

Same prescription as for 25.320 (LLB).

### **25.392 Advanced Studies in Administrative Law**

#### **25.393-25.394 Special Topics**

To be prescribed by Head of Department

#### **25.395 Welfare Law**

#### **25.396 Advanced Studies in Constitutional Law**

#### **25.397-25.398 Special Topics**

To be prescribed by Head of Department

#### **25.399 Methods and Skills in Negotiation and Conflict Resolution**

#### **25.604 Dissertation**

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR ADDITIONAL SUBJECTS FOR CANDIDATES SEEKING ADMISSION AS BARRISTERS AND SOLICITORS OF THE HIGH COURT OF NEW ZEALAND**

A candidate for admission as a barrister and solicitor of the High Court of New Zealand must have completed the requirements of the LLB or LLB(Hons) degree, achieved passes in certain compulsory degree subjects, and successfully undertaken the Professional Legal Education Programme. Details of the content of the Professional course are available on request from the Director of the Institute of Professional Legal Studies or the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR LLM AND MJur**

### **25.501, 25.502 Administrative Law**

The general principles of administrative law with special reference to New Zealand.

### **25.561, 25.562 Air and Space Law**

Advanced studies in the principles of international and municipal law regulating airspace and outer space, aircraft, spacecraft, persons on board such craft and the rights and obligations of operators and users of aircraft and spacecraft, taking into consideration the economic and technical problems involved and aspects of national and international policies.

### **25.503, 25.504 Commercial Law**

Advanced studies in the law relating to the distribution and financing of goods and services, including security devices and the rights of creditors and third persons.

### **25.505, 25.506 Comparative Law**

Advanced studies in selected systems of law.

### **25.507, 25.508 Constitutional Law**

Advanced studies in constitutional and local body law.

### **25.509, 25.510 Conflict of Laws**

The nature of private international law. Fundamental conceptions; classification; renvoi; domicile; public policy. The principles of private international law relating to: (a) persons; (b) contracts; (c) torts; (d) property; (e) procedure and evidence.

### **25.511, 25.512 Creditors Remedies**

Legal problems arising where a debtor is in financial difficulties. Advanced studies in the rights of unsecured creditors in bankruptcy and company liquidation; other methods of enforcing judgments.

### **25.513, 25.514 Criminal Law**

The history and principles of criminal law, comprising selected topics on substantive and adjective criminal law, evidence in criminal cases, the aetiology of crime and the purposes and methods of punishment.

### **25.515, 25.516 Criminology**

The nature and extent of crime in our society.

Selected studies of the causes of crime: results, underlying assumptions and limitations. Political aspects of the criminal law. The interactionist approach. Selected criminological problems.

The criminal justice system. Objectives of the system. The role of the police. A critical analysis of penal measures. Sentencing. Evaluating the effectiveness of penal sanctions. Selected penological problems.

### **25.517, 25.518 Environmental Law**

An examination of the law relating to pollution and other environmental problems with an emphasis on comparative studies. An exploration of various institutional arrangements for managing the environment. The concept of environmental impact reporting.

### **25.519, 25.520 Equity**

The history and principles of equity.

### **25.521, 25.522 Family Law**

Advanced studies in the law relating to husband and wife, parent and child and family relationships generally.

### **25.523, 25.524 Industrial Law.**

Selected and comparative studies in Industrial Law.

### **25.525, 25.526 International Law**

The principles of the law of nations in peace and war including the status and relations *inter se* of the members of the Commonwealth of Nations and the Republic of Ireland and questions of nationality.

### **25.527, 25.528 Jurisprudence**

Theories concerning the origin and development of law. The history of legal theory. Modern schools of thought concerning the nature and purpose of law. Sources of law. Analysis of legal conceptions.

### **25.529, 25.530 Land Law**

The history and principles of land law.

### **25.531, 25.532 Law and Society**

Advanced studies in the interrelation between legal evolution and social change, interaction of legislation and social change, and the role of law in the modern state.

### **25.533, 25.534 Law of Banking and Exchange Control**

The law and practice relating to banking and exchange control regulations, with special reference to New Zealand.

### **25.535, 25.536 The Law of Bodies Corporate and Unincorporate**

The principles of the law as to corporations and unincorporated bodies with special reference to registered companies.

### **25.537, 25.538 The Law of Contract**

The history and principles of the law of contract, including the law as to the sale of goods, negotiable instruments, and all other special classes of contracts.

### **25.539, 25.540 The Law of Evidence**

The principles of the law of evidence in civil and criminal cases.

### **25.541, 25.542 Law of Taxation and Estate**

**Planning**

Advanced studies in the law relating to taxation and gift, death and conveyance duties.

Advanced studies in the principles and practice of estate planning.

**25.543, 25.544 The Law of Torts**

The history and principles of civil liability with special reference to the law of torts.

**25.545, 25.546 Law Reform**

A study of the institutions responsible for law reform and the methods by which reform is achieved. A selection of legal rules and institutions which have been, or may be, the subject of reform.

**25.547, 25.548 Local Government Law**

Selected studies of the history, structure, powers and practice of local government units and related aspects.

**25.549, 25.550 Pacific Legal Studies**

Selected aspects of customary, private, public and international law of Pacific states and territories with particular regard to Fiji, Western Samoa, the Cook Islands, Niue, Tokelau Islands, New Zealand and Papua New Guinea.

**25.551, 25.552 Planning Law**

Selected studies of land use regulation law, planning structure, practice, and theory.

**25.553, 25.554 Restitution**

Advanced problems focusing on situations and available remedies where benefits have been wrongfully or unfairly acquired.

**25.555, 25.556 Sales and Sales Financing**

Advanced studies in the law of sales and the financing of domestic sales in New Zealand.

**25.557, 25.558 Shipping Law**

Advanced studies in the principles of carriage of goods by sea, including containerisation.

**25.559, 25.560 Transport Law**

Advanced studies in the history, exposition and comparison of selected topics of the law of transport, including land, sea and air transport, including rules of international law and of municipal law.

**25.563, 25.564 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.565, 25.566 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.567, 25.568 Civil Rights****25.569, 25.570 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.571, 25.572 Welfare Law****25.573, 25.574 Insurance Law****25.575, 25.576 New Zealand Legal History****25.577, 25.578 Taxation****25.579, 25.580 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.581, 25.582 Special Topic**

To be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**25.583, 25.584 Partnership****25.585, 25.586 Maori Land Law****25.587, 25.588 International Trade**

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

### DIPLOMA IN CRIMINOLOGY

#### DipCrim

The Diploma in Criminology is being discontinued. Special arrangements will be made by the Department of Law to enable students already enrolled for the Diploma to complete it in 1988 or, in special circumstances, in a later year, under the Regulations published in the 1987 *Calendar* at pp 291-292.

### POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN LEGAL STUDIES

#### PG DipLS

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Postgraduate Diploma in Legal Studies shall, before enrolment, have been admitted to or be qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Laws or the Degree of Bachelor of Laws (Honours).

2. A candidate for the Diploma shall follow a Course of Instruction of not less than one year.

3. (1) Every candidate for the Diploma, either within one year in the case of a full-time student, or within not more than three successive years in the case of a student who is not full-time, shall:

(a) Fulfil the requirements of the project referred to in Regulation 4.

(b) Pass the examination in and fulfil any other requirements of each of four or more papers –

(i) which, if taken concurrently, would involve an aggregate of ten hours of instruction per week; and

(ii) which include papers listed in Regulation 5 in number sufficient when added to the project referred to in Regulation 4 to constitute at least one third of the candidate's course for this Postgraduate Diploma; and

(iii) of which the remainder are made up of papers offered from time to time for the Second or Third Law



Examination of the Degree of Bachelor of Laws; and

(iv) of which none are, or are substantially similar to, papers already credited to the candidate's Bachelor's Degree.

(2). For the purposes of this Regulation a candidate is not a full-time student if he or she:

(a) is in employment (including self-employment) for more than 20 hours in each week of the academic year throughout the three years of the work for this Postgraduate Diploma, and

(b) furnishes such evidence of being and intending to continue so employed, as the Dean of the Faculty of Law (hereinafter referred to as "the Dean") may from time to time reasonably require.

4. Every candidate shall, during his or her course, complete to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Law (hereinafter referred to as "the Faculty") a substantial exercise (carrying a weighting of three hours of instruction per week) in the detailed application of law upon the terms as to content, supervision and reporting prescribed therefore by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.

**Note:** A candidate wishing to comply with this requirement should enrol for 25.451 Legal Project.

5. The papers for which provision is made in Regulation 3 shall be:

25.452 Advanced Studies in Criminal Law

25.453 Studies in Planning Law

25.454 Advanced Studies in Administrative Law

25.455 Advanced Studies in Family Law

25.456 Advanced Studies in International Law

25.457 Studies in Company Finance

25.458 Studies in Comparative Law

25.459 Studies in the Conflict of Laws

25.460 Studies in Creditors Remedies

25.461 Studies in Restitution

25.462 Studies in the Law of Vendor and Purchaser

25.463 Studies in Estate and Tax Planning

25.464 Studies in Air and Space Law

25.465 Studies in Maori Land Law

25.466 Studies in Intellectual Property

25.467 Advanced Studies in Legal Philosophy

25.468 Advanced Studies in Law and Society

25.469 Advanced Studies in Constitutional Law

25.470 Advanced Studies in Criminology

25.471 Advanced Studies in Industrial Law

25.472 Advanced Studies in Contract

25.473 Advanced Studies in Tort

25.474 Studies in Civil Obligations

25.475-25.480 Special topics approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Law

6. A candidate who, being a full-time student, has failed within one year or, being a part-time student, has failed within three successive years, to complete the requirements of the Postgraduate Diploma may in exceptional circumstances be permitted by the Faculty to complete those requirements in a subsequent year.

7. A candidate for this Postgraduate Diploma may, with the prior approval of the Dean, elect to submit a Research Paper in lieu of examination in any one of the papers chosen for the Postgraduate Diploma if the teacher in the subject has certified that the Research Paper is related to that subject.

8. A candidate who has passed papers for a Certificate of Proficiency which meet the requirements of Regulation 3 may, subject to the approval of the Dean, credit those papers to the Postgraduate Diploma.

**Note:** Refer Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), Regulation 17.

9. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1988.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR PGDipLS**

### **25.452 Advanced Studies in Criminal Law**

Selected advanced problems in criminal law and criminal procedure.

### **25.453 Studies in Planning Law**

An introduction to the law relating to town and country planning. Selected studies in urban and rural planning problems, and processes and decisions of planning authorities, and the function of courts in planning matters.

**25.454 Advanced Studies in Administrative Law**  
Advanced problems in selected areas of Administrative Law.

### **25.455 Advanced Studies in Family Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Family Law.

### **25.456 Advanced Studies in International Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of the law of nations.

### **25.457 Studies in Company Finance**

Problems in company finance law, including the

raising of share and debt capital by companies.

### **25.458 Studies in Comparative Law**

A study of selected systems of law with particular reference to the development of civil law on the Continent of Europe.

### **25.459 Studies in the Conflict of Laws**

Selected studies in the law governing transactions with elements outside New Zealand Courts, fundamental concepts of conflict of laws, and the validity and enforcement of foreign judgments.

### **25.460 Studies in Creditors Remedies**

Legal problems arising where a debtor is in financial difficulties. Selected studies in the rights of unsecured creditors in bankruptcy and company liquidation; other methods of enforcing judgments.

### **25.461 Studies in Restitution**

A study in the concept of unjust enrichment and its diverse practical applications.

### **25.462 Studies in the Law of Vendor and Purchaser**

Advanced problems in the sale of land. Selected case studies examining the legal and taxation consequences of the agreement for sale and purchase and the conveyance of land, and the function and responsibility of the lawyer acting in such transactions.

**25.463 Studies in Estate and Tax Planning**

The principles of the law relating to estate and gift duties, estate planning and tax planning.

**25.464 Studies in Air and Space Law**

The principles of international and municipal law regulating air space and outer space, aircraft, spacecraft, persons on board such craft and the rights and obligations of operators and users of aircraft and spacecraft, taking into consideration the economic and technical problems involved and aspects of national and international policies.

**25.465 Studies in Maori Land Law**

Legal problems of Maori land holding. Occupation and use.

**25.466 Studies in Intellectual Property**

Studies in the content and impact of copyright, patents, trademarks, and unfair competition in New Zealand and elsewhere.

**25.467 Advanced Studies in Legal Philosophy**

Advanced studies in the philosophy of Law.

**25.468 Advanced Studies in Law and Society**

Advanced studies in the relationship between selected legal theories and social conditions.

**25.469 Advanced Studies in Constitutional Law**

Advanced problems in selected areas of Constitutional Law.

**25.470 Advanced Studies in Criminology**

Advanced problems in the causes of crime, the administration of criminal justice, and the punishment and treatment of the offender. Selected studies in criminological methods and research.

**25.471 Advanced Studies in Industrial Law**

Advanced studies in selected areas of Industrial Law.

**25.472 Advanced Studies in Contract**

Advanced studies in the law of contract.

**25.473 Advanced Studies in Tort**

Advanced studies in the law of tort.

**25.474 Studies in Civil Obligations**

Actions which may be brought in either contract or tort. Civil rights and obligations having features similar to those of contract or tort, other than those associated with the law of restitution.

**25.475-25.480 Special topics to be prescribed by the Dean of the Faculty of Law.**

---

# Faculty of Music

## *Contents*

---

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	296	Degree of Bachelor of Music
	299	Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)
	301	Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours
	302	Degree of Master of Music
	304	Degree of Doctor of Music

---

<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	306	Degree of Bachelor of Music
	307	Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)
	308	Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours
	308	Degree of Master of Music

---

<b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>	309	Diploma in Music
	311	Diploma in Music with Honours

---

<b>Course of Instruction in a Single Instrument Regulations</b>	312	Course of Instruction in a Single Instrument
---	-----	--

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### FACULTY OF MUSIC

Undergraduate courses offered within the Faculty comprise a general music degree, a performance degree and a diploma in performance.

#### Bachelor of Music (BMus)

This is a 3-year course which includes a broad study of all the main areas of music, but does not include courses in performance. After a common first-year course, students can follow a variety of options which allow for some degree of specialisation, in either composition, musicology, or general "skill" subjects.

#### Bachelor of Music (Performance) (BMus (Perf))

A 4-year course, of which half is devoted to performance. Students can select from various "academic" papers to make up their degree to the required total of 28 papers.

#### Diploma in Music (DipMus)

The course for the diploma extends over 3 years. Performance papers take up a little over half the course requirement, and entry to the course may be made on the basis of special merit in performance.

In addition to these courses within the Faculty of Music, courses include up to 11 papers as a major subject for BA, and there are two papers in music - 28.104 Music in the 20th Century and 28.105 Basic Musical Techniques - which are offered on a non-advancing basis.

#### Postgraduate Degrees

Graduates holding the degree of BMus (Perf) may, on application, be accepted for a further year of study leading to the degree of BMus (Perf) (Hons). Similarly, DipMus students may, in approved cases, enrol for the one-year course for DipMus (Hons).

#### Two-Year Postgraduate Courses in Music

Following the degree of BMus or BMus (Performance) students may be accepted for the degree of Master of Music (MMus) which can be taken in the area of composition, or performance, or musicology. Students who are BA graduates may elect to follow a course in musicology for a Master of Arts (MA) or a course in *either* composition *or* performance for the degree of Master of Philosophy (MPhil).

Details of other postgraduate degrees (DMus and PhD) appear in the appropriate sections of this *Calendar*.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MUSIC

### BMus

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Music shall
  - (a) before enrolling for this Degree satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that a suitable standard in music has been attained, and
  - (b) follow a Course of study of not less than three years.

#### Course Entrance

2. A candidate for entrance to the Course of study for the Degree shall give notice in writing on the prescribed form to the Registrar not later than 15 January of the year in which the candidate wishes to enrol.

#### Course Requirements

3. The Course of study for the Degree shall consist of twenty-one papers selected from those listed in the Schedule to these Regulations. Papers are classified in three stages, I, II and III.
4. Every course of study shall include
  - (a) at least four papers in Music at Stage I level
  - (b) no more than eleven papers in Music at Stage II level
  - (c) at least three papers in Music at Stage III level
  - (d) at least two and not more than four papers (not being papers in Music) from those prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts (whether Group A or Group B of the Schedule to the Regulations for that Degree).
5. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than nine papers for this Degree.
6. A candidate shall participate in approved choral or instrumental work within the University throughout enrolment for this Degree, to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Music.

7. The Senate may on the recommendation of the Head of the Department grant a credit of two unspecified Music papers at Stage I level towards this Degree to any student who has passed the examination in Performance 28.120 for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) or Diploma in Music with a grade of C-, or a credit of two unspecified Music papers at Stage II level towards this Degree to any student who has passed the examination in Performance 28.220 for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) or Diploma in Music with a grade of C-.

**Note:** See Regulations 4 and 6 of the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) and Regulation 6 of the Regulations for the Diploma in Music.

8. A candidate wishing to be enrolled in any subject which is also a subject of examination for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts shall comply with such of the course regulations for that Degree relating to prerequisites, combinations of subjects, and practical work, as are applicable to that subject, save where the Senate in individual cases allows otherwise.

9. The Senate may, in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

#### **Application of Regulations and Transitional Provisions**

10. (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the Course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

(b) A candidate who gained credit in any unit or units or was entitled to exemptions under any of the former Regulations for this Degree shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers as the Senate may determine.

(c) For candidates who enrolled for this Degree before 1976 the subject prerequisites, corequisites, and restrictions, where not covered by these Regulations, shall be determined by the Head of the Department of Music.

11. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1987.

#### **Schedule**

1. This Schedule sets out paper numbers, subjects, prerequisites, corequisites, restrictions, and other conditions applying to Courses of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Music.

2. This Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.

3. The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.





4. The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.

5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.

6. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, a candidate may not enrol for any paper until all prerequisite and corequisite requirements and other requirements listed in the Schedule are satisfied.

The papers prescribed for this Degree are:

	Title of paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>MUSIC</b>					
<b>Music 1</b>					
28.100	Harmony and Counterpoint		28.101, 28.103	28.122	A candidate must pass papers 28.100, 28.101 and 28.103 with an overall grade of at least C+ before proceeding to Music II
28.101	Musicianship and Materials of Music		28.100, 28.103		
28.103	Music in Society		28.100, 28.101		
28.110	Composition	}	28.100, 28.101, 28.103		
28.112	Keyboard Skills				
28.113	Acoustics				
28.114	Introduction to Ethnomusicology			03.103	

Title of Paper		Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications		
<b>MUSIC</b>							
<b>Music II</b>							
28.201	Materials and Analysis			28.209			
28.202	Harmony and Counterpoint				28.202; one of 28.203-208		
*28.203	History of Musical Style: The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance**				28.100, 28.101 28.103 with an overall grade of at least C+		
	28.204					The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era††	28.205
*28.207	The Classic-Romantic Era**				28.206		
28.208	The Twentieth Century††						
28.210	Composition (counts as two papers)			28.110 with an overall grade of at least C+ ; as for 28.201	28.201		
28.212	Keyboard Skills			28.112; as for 28.201			
28.214	Ethnomusicology			28.114; as for 28.201		03.209	
28.215	Orchestration			As for 28.201	28.110		
28.216	Electronic Music						
28.218	Conducting						
28.223	Musicology						
<b>Music III</b>							
28.301	Analysis					28.309	
28.302	Harmony and Counterpoint	One of 28.303-308; one other Stage III paper					
	History of Musical Style:	28.201, 28.202; one of 28.203-208					
*28.303	The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance**		28.203				
28.304	The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era††		28.205				
*28.307	The Classic-Romantic Era**		28.207				
28.308	The Twentieth Century††						
28.310	Composition (counts as 3 papers)	28.210; as for 28.301	28.301			28.208	
28.314	Ethnomusicology	28.214; as for 28.301				03.318	
+28.316	Electronic Music	28.216; as for 28.301					
+28.318	Conducting	28.218; as for 28.301					
28.323	Musicology	28.223; as for 28.301					
+28.324	Special Topic: Russian Song						

\* This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year† This paper may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

\*\* Taught in odd-numbered years

†† Taught in even-numbered years

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MUSIC (PERFORMANCE)

### BMus (Performance)

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) shall
  - (a) before enrolling for this Degree satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that a suitable standard in music, including performance, has been attained, and
  - (b) follow a Course of full-time study of not less than four years, and
  - (c) follow a Course of study continuously except where and in so far as the Head of the Department permits otherwise.

#### Course Entrance

2. A candidate for entrance to the Course of study for this Degree shall give notice in writing on the prescribed form to the Registrar not later than 30 June immediately preceding the year in which the candidate wishes to enrol.

#### Course Requirements

3. The Course of study for the Degree shall consist of twenty-eight papers selected from those listed in the Schedule to these Regulations. Papers are classified in four stages – I, II, III and IV. With the approval of the Head of the Department of Music, a candidate may take one or two papers as prescribed for BA in lieu of one or two of the Music papers. Approval will not be granted in the first year of the candidate's course of study for this Degree save in special cases.
4. For performance 28.120, 28.220, 28.320 and 28.420, a candidate shall
  - (a) carry out performance work (including the giving of class demonstrations), and
  - (b) attend all classes in individual training and such classes in ensemble training, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required, and
  - (c) pass a Performance examination, with a grade of C or better in the case of 28.120 and 28.220, in any one of the following subjects.

†Flute	†French Horn	Violin	Piano	†Recorder
†Oboe	†Trumpet	Viola	Harpsichord	†Percussion
†Clarinet	†Trombone	Cello	Organ	†Harp
†Bassoon	†Tuba	†Double Bass	Singing	†Guitar

**Note:** (i) † This instrument may not be taught during the current Calendar year.

(ii) A candidate who passes the subject Performance 28.120 with a grade of C- and is therefore not eligible to proceed with the Course of study for BMus (Performance) may in respect of that pass apply for a credit of two unspecified Stage I Music papers towards the Course of study for the Degree of BMus. A candidate who passes the subject Performance 28.220 with a grade of C- and is therefore not eligible to proceed with the Course of study for BMus (Performance) may in respect of that pass apply for a credit of two unspecified Stage II Music papers towards the Course of study for the Degree of BMus. See Regulation 8 of the Regulations for that Degree.

- (d) A candidate presenting Singing for this Degree shall attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department may require.
- (e) Organ students will also receive tuition in harpsichord. A student studying the harpsichord may elect to include studies in the classical organ, its technique and repertoire, as part of the Course.
5. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than nine papers for this Degree.
6. Except as provided in the Regulations for the Degree, a candidate shall comply with all the prerequisite and corequisite requirements and all restrictions and other conditions, set out in this Schedule.

**Note:** See note to Regulation 4 of these Regulations.

7. It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this Course of study that he or she
  - (a) shall not undertake any musical work, including musical competitions and examinations, outside the Course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music, and
  - (b) shall participate in approved choral or instrumental work within the University throughout enrolment for this Degree, to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Music.
- (c) shall not enrol for any other Course of study without the leave of the Head of the Department of Music.
8. (a) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the Course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.
- (b) The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
- (c) A candidate who gained credit in any unit or units of a Professional Examination under any of the

Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Executant) shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers as the Senate may determine.

9. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1976.

### Schedule

1. This Schedule sets out paper numbers, subjects, prerequisites, corequisites, restrictions, and other conditions applying to the Courses of study for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance).

2. This Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Degree and with the prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.

3. The heading 'prerequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be passed before the candidate may take that paper.

4. The heading 'corequisites' in relation to a paper refers to other papers which must be taken concurrently with that paper or have been passed in a previous year.

5. The heading 'restrictions' in relation to a paper refers to a paper which cannot be taken in addition to that paper.

6. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, a candidate may not enrol for any paper until all prerequisite and corequisite requirements and other requirements listed in the Schedule are satisfied.

The papers prescribed for this Degree are:

	Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications	
<b>MUSIC</b>						
<b>Note:</b> The number enrolling in certain papers is restricted. Candidates should consult Calendar Prescriptions for BMus, paragraph 2.						
<b>Stage I</b>						
28.120	Performance (counts as three papers)		28.100, 28.101 28.103		A pass of at least C in paper 28.120 and an overall pass of at least C+ in papers 28.100, 28.101 and 28.103 must be obtained before advancing to Stage II	
28.100	Harmony and Counterpoint	}	28.120	28.122		
28.101	Musicianship and Materials of Music					
28.103	Music in Society					
28.112	Keyboard Skills (a)					
Additional papers as listed in the Schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Music						
<b>Stage II</b>						
28.220	Performance (counts as three papers)	A pass of at least C in 28.120; as for 28.201	28.201, 28.202; one of 28.203-208			
28.201	Materials and Analysis	}	28.220	28.209		
28.202	Harmony and Counterpoint				}	28.205
	History of Musical Style;					
*28.203	The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance**					
28.204	The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era††					
*28.207	The Classic-Romantic Era**					28.206
28.208	The Twentieth Century††					
28.212	Keyboard Skills (a)	28.112; as for 28.201				

Additional papers as listed in the Schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Music



	Title of Paper	Prerequisites	Corequisites	Restriction	Qualifications
<b>Stage III</b>					
28.320	Performance (counts as four papers)	A pass of at least C in 28.220; as for 28.301	28.301		
28.301	Analysis	28.201, 28.202, one of 28.203-208	28.320	28.309	
*28.303	History of Musical Style: The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance**				
28.304	The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era††			28.205	
*28.307	The Classic-Romantic Era**			28.207	
28.308	The Twentieth Century††			28.208	
	Additional papers as listed in the Schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Music				
<b>Stage IV</b>					
28.420	Performance (counts as four papers)	28.301, 28.320	one of 28.303-308		
	Additional papers as listed in the Schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Music				

**Notes:**

(a) Students studying Keyboard instruments must enrol in 28.112 in their first year, and in 28.212 in the second.

\*\* Taught in odd-numbered years

†† Taught in even numbered years

\* will not be taught in the current Calendar year.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MUSIC (PERFORMANCE) WITH HONOURS

### BMus (Performance)(Hons)

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours shall before enrolling for this Degree

(a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)

(b) (i) have obtained a grade higher than C- in each compulsory paper in Music at Stage II and Stage III levels provided that in special circumstances where the Head of the Department so recommends the Senate may accept a C- pass in any paper or papers, and

(ii) have obtained a grade of B- or higher in Performance at Stage IV, 28.420, and

(c) have been accepted by a Music Department Selection Committee for study for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours, at an interview held in the November prior to first enrolment for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours.

2. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate may enrol for this Degree having completed at least 24 papers including at least three at advanced level for the Bachelor of Music (Performance) Degree, provided that

(a) the proposed course for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours is a full-time course and will extend over a period of not less than two academic years

(b) grades averaging B- or above in the Stage III level papers for the Bachelor of Music (Performance) Degree have been obtained

(c) he or she enrolls in not more than one paper in the first year of the course for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours

(d) the requirements of Regulations 1(b) and (c) above are satisfied

(e) should he or she not pass the remaining paper or papers in the first year of the Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours course, the Honours course shall be suspended until the remaining paper or papers have been passed.

3. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours shall follow a course of full-time study of not less than one year.

#### Course Requirements

4. The Course of study for this Degree shall consist of 28.525 Performance (which shall count as five papers)

and any one of the papers 28.400-402, 28.404-407, 28.409-411, 28.414-416, 28.419, 28.421- 423, 28.604 as prescribed for the Degree of Master of Music.

5. For Performance 28.525 a candidate shall

(a) carry out performance work (including the giving of class demonstrations).

(b) attend all classes in individual training and such classes in ensemble training, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required

(c) pass a performance examination in any one of the following subjects:

†Flute	†French Horn	Violin	Piano	†Recorder
†Oboe	†Trumpet	Viola	Harpsichord	†Percussion
†Clarinet	†Trombone	Cello	Organ	†Harp
†Bassoon	†Tuba	†Double Bass	Singing	†Guitar

(d) Organ students will also receive tuition in harpsichord. A student studying harpsichord may elect to include studies in classical organ, its technique and repertoire, as part of the course.

(e) A candidate presenting Singing for this Degree shall attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department of Music may require.

6. It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this Course of study that he or she

(a) shall not undertake any musical work, including musical competitions and examinations, outside the course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music.

(b) shall not enrol for any other Course of study without the leave of the Head of the Department of Music.

7. The degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours shall be awarded to candidates who have fulfilled these Regulations and whose work throughout the course has been in the opinion of the Faculty of Music of a sufficiently high standard.

8. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

9. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1980.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF MUSIC

### MMus

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Music shall before enrolling for this Degree

(a) have been admitted or qualified for admission either to the Degree of Bachelor of Music or to the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance), and

(b) (i) have obtained a grade higher than C- in each compulsory paper in Music at Stage II and Stage III levels provided that in special circumstances where the Head of the Department so recommends the Senate may accept a C- pass in any paper or papers, and (ii) if taking Performance for this Degree, have obtained a grade of B- or better in Performance at Stage IV, 28.420.

(c) have been accepted by a Music Department Selection Committee for study for the Degree of Master of Music, at an interview held in the November prior to first enrolment for the Degree of Master of Music.

2. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate may enrol for this Degree having completed at least 20 papers including at least three papers at advanced level for the Bachelor of Music Degree or having completed at least 26 papers including at least three papers at advanced level for the Bachelor of Music (Performance) degree, provided that

(a) the proposed Course for the Degree of Master of Music is a full-time Course and will extend over a period of not less than two academic years;

(b) he or she has obtained grades averaging B- or above in the Stage III level papers for the Bachelor of Music Degree or, in the case of a student taking Performance for a Masters Degree, grades averaging B- or above in the Stage III level papers for the Bachelor of Music (Performance) Degree;

(c) he or she enrolls for the paper or papers in the first year of the Course for the Degree of Master of Music;

(d) he or she satisfies the requirements in Regulations 1(b) and (c) above;

(e) should he or she not pass the remaining paper or papers in the first year of the Master of Music Course, the Masters Course shall be suspended until he or she has passed the remaining paper or papers.

3. No candidate shall be accepted for enrolment in subject (2) Performance for this Degree if the candidate has previously been awarded the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours in this University.

4. A candidate for this Degree shall pursue a course of study of not less than two years.

### **Course Content**

5. A candidate shall be required to fulfil the requirements and pass the examination in one of the subjects prescribed in the Schedule.

6. (a) A candidate for this Degree may with the approval of the Head of the Department of Music take one paper not previously taken from those listed under Music III of the Schedule to the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music.

(b) A candidate for this Degree may with the permission of the Senate take one Stage III or one Masters paper in a subject other than Music, if such paper is related to the candidate's research or professional interests. Such paper shall substitute for and be equivalent to one paper in the degree of Master of Music.

7. A candidate for this Degree shall not substitute a paper or papers for any paper or papers for which the candidate has already been examined for this Degree, nor, excepting as provided in Regulation 13, shall the candidate re-sit a paper for this Degree.

### **Composition**

8. When a Composition is required, the following conditions shall apply:

(a) The Composition shall be prepared under the supervision of a University teacher.

(b) A candidate may present the Composition in the year in which he or she takes the papers or, subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this Regulation, in a subsequent year.

(c) A candidate shall present the Composition within three years of the year in which he or she takes the papers, provided that the time may be extended in exceptional cases by the Senate.

(d) A candidate shall submit the Composition together with a certificate from the supervisor stating that the work was carried out by the candidate under supervision to the Registrar by 1 November in the year in which it is to be presented, or at a subsequent date if so arranged with the Head of the Department.

(e) If the examiner with the concurrence of the assessor so recommends, a Composition which is not satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to resubmit it by a later date to be specified by the examiner.

### **Performance**

9. When a Recital is required, the following conditions shall apply:

(a) A candidate shall present a concert Recital of approximately one hour's duration, the programme to be approved by the Head of the Department. The candidate shall submit the proposed programme to the Head of the Department for approval not later than the end of the first term.

(b) The Recital shall be restricted to ONE of the following:

(i) an approved orchestral instrument

(ii) the pianoforte

(iii) the organ and/or harpsichord

(iv) any other instrument approved by the Head of the Department

(v) singing

(c) A candidate may present the Recital in the year in which he or she takes the papers or, subject to the provisions of paragraph (d) of this Regulation, in a subsequent year.

(d) A candidate shall present the Recital within three years of the year in which he or she takes the papers, provided that the time may be extended in exceptional cases by the Senate.

(e) A candidate shall be present for the Recital on a date to be specified by the Head of the Department.

(f) If the Recital is not satisfactory and if the examiner with the concurrence of the assessor so recommends, the candidate may be permitted to present a further Recital at a later date to be specified by the examiner.

### **Thesis**

10. When a Thesis is required, the following conditions shall apply:

(a) The Thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some branch of Music.

(b) A candidate may present the Thesis in the year in which he or she takes the papers or, subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this Regulation, in a subsequent year.

(c) A candidate shall present the Thesis within three years of the year in which he or she takes the papers, provided that the time may be extended in exceptional cases by the Senate.

(d) A candidate shall submit the Thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is to be presented or at a subsequent date if so arranged with the Head of the Department.

(e) If the examiner with the concurrence of the assessor so recommends, a Thesis which is not satisfactory shall

be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to resubmit it by a later date to be specified by the examiner.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the Thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

### **Honours**

11. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.

(b) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate sits an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the Composition or Performance or Thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory; provided, however, that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond his or her control (certified under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination so that he or she shall be eligible for the award of Honours subject to the provisions of sub-clause (c) of this Regulation.

(c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if he or she completes the requirements for Honours within three years of the first enrolment for this Degree, provided that this period may in exceptional cases be extended by the Senate.

### **Special Provision**

12. The Senate may in such special circumstances as it thinks fit approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

### **Schedule**

#### **(1) Composition**

*Prerequisites:* 28.301, at least one of 28.303-308, 28.310

*Requirements:* Four papers and a Composition (28.610) which shall count as three papers.

The papers shall be selected from 28.400, 28.401, 28.402, 28.409, 28.410, 28.415, 28.416 and 28.604.

All candidates must enrol for 28.410 (Composition) and one of 28.409, 28.415 and 28.416 in their first year of enrolment.

#### **(2) Performance**

*Prerequisites:* 28.301, at least one of 28.303-308, 28.420

*Requirements:* Four papers and a Recital (28.620) which shall count as three papers.

The papers shall be selected from 28.400, 28.401, 28.402, 28.406, 28.409, 28.419, 28.520 and 28.604.

All candidates must enrol for 28.520 (Performance) and one of 28.406, 28.409 and 28.419 in their first year of enrolment.

#### **(3) Musicology**

*Prerequisites:* 28.301, at least one of 28.303-308, at least one of 28.314 and 28.323.

*Requirements:* Four papers and a Thesis (28.601) which shall count as three papers.

The papers shall be selected from 28.400, 28.401, 28.402, 28.406, 28.409, 28.414, 28.419 and 28.423.

All candidates must enrol for 28.423 (Seminar in Musicology), and one of 28.402, 28.406, 28.409 and 28.414 in their first year of enrolment.

## **THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF MUSIC**

### **DMus**

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Music shall hold the Degree of Master of Music of the University of Auckland or Bachelor of Music of the University of New Zealand.

2. The Degree of Doctor of Music shall be awarded for distinction in musical composition.

3. A candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Music shall apply to the Head of the Department of Music for registration as such, showing that he or she has:

(a) the requisite preliminary qualification set out in Regulation 1; and

(b) adequate training and ability to pursue a course of advanced study in musical composition.

4 (a) The Senate having received a recommendation from the Head of Department shall determine whether the candidate may be registered and the date and conditions of registration.

(b) A recommendation shall include:

(i) the proposed date of registration

(ii) the name of a supervisor or supervisors from members of the academic staff

(iii) satisfactory evidence of the candidate's training and ability to pursue the proposed Course of Study.

5. Having been registered as a candidate for the Degree, the candidate shall pursue a full-time course of advanced study in Composition at the University to the satisfaction of the Head of Department of Music and

the Supervisor or Supervisors, for a period of at least two calendar years from the date of registration.

6. Having completed the initial two years of full-time study, a candidate may apply to the Senate for permission to continue as a part-time candidate.

7. The Supervisor shall submit to the Senate, through the Head of Department, a brief report on the progress of the candidate at the end of each year. A candidate's registration may be terminated by the Senate if an unfavourable report is received.

8. Having complied with the conditions of the foregoing Regulations, a candidate shall, within five years from the date of registration (or such further time as the Senate may permit), apply to the Registrar to be examined for the Degree.

9. (a) A candidate shall submit for examination original and substantial work, consisting of not more than three pieces, each of which may be within any of the following classes:

(i) orchestral work

(ii) opera

(iii) work using vocal keyboard or ensemble resources

(iv) presentation of Music Theatre

(v) electronic music.

(b) Electronic resources may be included in work within classes (i), (ii), (iii) or (iv) in paragraph (a) of this Regulation.

10. No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or a major part of it, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.

11. The application to be examined shall be in writing and (accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations) shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:

(a) three copies of the work or works to be examined

(b) a statutory declaration which shall:

(i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and

(ii) state what portion (if any) of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and

(iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

12. (a) After having accepted the candidate's application to be examined, the Senate shall, upon the recommendation of the Head of Department, appoint as Examiners:

(i) the Supervisor or Supervisors

(ii) one person who shall be a member of staff of another University within New Zealand, and

(iii) one person who shall be resident outside New Zealand.

(b) The Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, appoint a further Examiner and in exceptional circumstances two further Examiners.

13. (a) A copy of the work shall be submitted to each examiner who shall:

(i) report independently to the Senate on the quality of the work;

(ii) recommend to the Senate whether or not the Degree should be awarded.

(b) Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded, the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the work at a later date. A resubmission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.

14. A candidate who has held the qualifying degree for not less than five years may, in exceptional circumstances, be permitted by the Senate to proceed direct (without complying with Regulations 3 to 8) to examination as prescribed in Regulations 9, 10 and 11.

15. (a) In the case of a candidate who qualifies for examination under the conditions of Regulation 14, the Senate shall, as soon as possible after the application has been lodged, appoint a Moderator who shall:

(i) consider the work and submit through the Registrar a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed or whether the candidate should be advised to withdraw the application; and

(ii) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable Examiners.

(b) If the Moderator recommends that the candidate should be advised to withdraw the application, the candidate shall be notified of the recommendation by the Registrar and in any such case the candidate may:

(i) withdraw the application, being then entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under the provisions of Regulation 11 of these Regulations; or

(ii) elect to proceed with examination.

16. In the case of a candidate who qualifies for examination under the conditions of Regulation 14 above, and for whom the examination is to proceed —

(a) without being restricted in choice to the persons recommended under Regulation 15(a)(ii), the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside of New Zealand, and may at its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.

(b) The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners;

(c) The examination shall proceed as prescribed under Regulation 13.

17. Where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, the Moderator, or (in the case of examination under Regulations 12 and 13) the Head of Department shall submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner; and the Senate shall then appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 13, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

### Revocation

18. (i) The course of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

(ii) The Regulations governing the Degree of Doctor of Music last published in the *University of Auckland Calendar* for 1985 are revoked.

(iii) These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1986.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BMus

#### Restrictions on Entry to Courses

1. Before enrolling for this Degree, a candidate who has little evidence of musical background is required to satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that an appropriate standard has been reached. For this purpose short interviews will be held in late January of the year for which preparatory application has been made.

2. A maximum of 60 first-year places will be available in the School of Music. Of this number, a limit of 35 is set for BMus and BA (advancing in Music) students. Restriction will be based on results in previous Music Examinations and/or interview.

3. For the following papers, restriction will be based on results in Stage I Music papers, and evidence of basic skills in the subject:—

Number	Title of Paper	Limit
28.215	Orchestration	20
28.216	Electronic Music	20
28.218	Conducting	20

4. For the following paper, restriction will be based on results in Stage II Music papers, and evidence of basic skills in the subject:—

Number	Title of Paper	Limit
28.318	Conducting	5

#### 28.100 Harmony and Counterpoint

Exercises and analyses of examples from Seventeenth and Eighteenth Century Music.

#### 28.101 Musicianship

The development of musical response, skills and sensitivity by means of a creative approach to the elements of music. Introductory keyboard sessions are also run in conjunction with this course.

#### 28.103 Music in Society

A wide perspective of Western music, with detailed

study of some musical areas of particular cultural importance.

#### 28.110 Composition

The composition of new musical material and examination of other sources.

#### 28.112 Keyboard Harmony and Score-Playing

Playing at sight from vocal and instrumental scores and from figured basses; harmonisation of melodies.

#### 28.113 Acoustics

The fundamental principles of oscillations and wave propagation; stationary waves; resonance; loudness; pitch; tone quality; intervals and scales; the principles of operation of stringed, woodwind, brass and other instruments; the electronic production and reproduction of sound; and the acoustics of rooms.

#### 28.114 Introduction to Ethnomusicology

An introduction to the history, scope and principles of music structure and behaviour; a survey of the traditional musics of selected world areas.

#### 28.201 Materials and Analysis

The study and analysis of melodic, harmonic, rhythmic, structural and other compositional elements, through the examination of a wide range of music from plainsong and early polyphony to the present.

#### 28.202 Harmony and Counterpoint

Exercises and analyses of examples from Eighteenth and Nineteenth Century Music.

#### History of Musical Style

A survey of music in the periods as shown. Work includes the examination of specific aspects and examples, set within the historical and cultural context.

#### \*28.203 The Middle Ages and Early Renaissance\*\*

#### 28.204 The Late Renaissance and Baroque Era††

#### \*28.207 The Classic Romantic Era\*\*

**28.208 The Twentieth Century††****28.210 Composition**

[Counts as two papers]

The composition of works for a wide variety of media in conjunction with analyses of short pieces. Expansion of technique and realisation of performances.

**28.212 Keyboard Harmony and Score-Playing**

For pianists the course includes playing at sight from vocal scores, including the C Clef, and orchestral scores; the realisation of figured basses; the harmonisation of melodies; transposition; improvisation. For organists and harpsichordists these studies centre on the realisation of all aspects of basso continuo.

**28.214 Ethnomusicology****Music of the World's Peoples**

Historical development of ethnomusicology; the culture concept; music as human behaviour; elementary structural analysis; folk music; introduction to music styles from Asia, the Americas and Africa.

**28.215 Orchestration**

A study of instrumentation and arranging for various ensembles with particular emphasis on orchestral usage.

**28.216 Electronic Music**

A study of the major works in this medium composed during the last thirty years. Introduction to studio techniques; tape music and different methods of sound synthesis.

**28.218 Choral Conducting**

Practical work in elementary conducting, repertoire, and choral direction, including study of rehearsal techniques.

**28.223 Musicology**

The aims and methods of musicological research. Topics include bibliography, editing and historical projects in selected areas.

**28.301 Analysis**

The study and analysis at advanced level of melodic, harmonic, rhythmic, structural and other compositional elements through the examination of a wide range of music from plainsong and early polyphony to the present.

**28.302 Advanced Harmony and Counterpoint**

Advanced Harmony and Counterpoint, and Analysis of large-scale forms from the Sixteenth to Twentieth Centuries.

**28.303-308 History of Musical Style**

As for papers 28.203-208 respectively, but taken and examined at Stage III level.

**28.310 Composition**

[counts as three papers]

Composing for a wide variety of media, voices, instruments, tape. Special assignments and study of Twentieth Century Music will be included.

**28.314 Ethnomusicology**

Music of Oceania; Maori music and music styles of Polynesia, Melanesia and Micronesia.

**†28.316 Studies in Contemporary Electronic Music**

Continuation of Studio composition in Electronic Music. Detailed study of relevant works by Stockhausen, new techniques in computer sound generation and electro-acoustic works by New Zealand composers.

**†28.318 Conducting**

The basic elements of baton technique; rehearsal planning and management, practical work with recordings and with choral and instrumental groups.

**28.323 Musicology**

Advanced musicological techniques. Topics include the scope of musicological research, specific areas of debate in the subject, and individual research projects.

Will be taught for the first time in 1988.

**†28.324 Special Topic**

For 1988 Russian Song.

An outline of Russian Song from the Eighteenth Century to the present day, placing it in its musical, cultural, and historical perspective.

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

†This paper may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

\*\*Taught in odd-numbered years

††Taught in even-numbered years

**PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BMus (Performance)****Restrictions on Entry to Courses**

A candidate before enrolment for this Degree is required to satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that he or she has attained a suitable standard in music including performance at an interview to be held during the August/September break preceding the year of enrolment.

Application to the Registrar must be made on the prescribed form and forwarded to the Secretary, Music Department, by 30 June (for entry to the course in the following year).

The prescriptions for papers for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) shall be the same as those for the corresponding subjects for the Degree of Bachelor of Music, and as follows:

**Performance**

See section 4(a), (b) and (c) of the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance)

**Performance 28.120** counts as 3 papers

**Performance 28.220** counts as 3 papers

**Performance 28.320** counts as 4 papers

**Performance 28.420** counts as 4 papers

A candidate presenting Singing shall attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department of Music may require. The prescribed papers should be taken in the first, second and third years, respectively, of a student's Performance course, and enrolment should be for

**Certificate of Proficiency (COP).**

Organ students will also receive tuition in harpsichord. A student studying the harpsichord may elect to include studies in the classical organ, its technique and repertoire, as part of the course.

**PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BMus****(Performance)(Hons)****28.525 Performance**

(five papers)

Preparation for and presentation of a public performance of a well-balanced recital programme.

**PRESCRIPTIONS FOR MMus****Restriction on Entry to Courses**

1. Interview by Board of teaching members of Music Faculty; and

2. Performance where applicable.

**Note:** The availability of these papers will depend on the number of students and their choice.

**28.400 Special Topic**

Candidates will have opportunity to deal with aspects of music not covered by other papers.

**28.401 Special Topic**

Candidates will have opportunity to deal with aspects of music not covered by other papers.

**28.402 Approaches to Music Aesthetics**

A general outline of music aesthetics, including attitudes towards music in some non-Western societies, and a survey of major writings on music aesthetics from Classical times to the Twentieth Century.

**28.406 Studies in Music Notation**

Detailed study of mensural notation of the Fourteenth to Sixteenth Centuries, lute and keyboard tablatures. Basic problems of notation, transcription and editing.

**28.409 Advanced Analysis**

The extension of analytical techniques to more complex works, and the study of analytical theories with particular attention to those of Schenker.

**28.410 Composition**

Composing for a wide variety of media, voices, instruments, tape.

**28.414 Ethnomusicology**

Field method; transcription and analysis; study of selected scholars.

**Note:** 28.314 Ethnomusicology is a prerequisite for this paper.

**28.415 Advanced Orchestration**

Study of contemporary practice in orchestration

especially as it relates to new timbral resources; analysis of recent works and recent developments in instrumental technique; scoring for various instrumental forces.

**Note:** 28.215 Orchestration is a prerequisite for this paper.

**28.416 Electronic Music**

Personal composition using electro-acoustic resources with or without conventional instruments and voices. Detailed study of recent developments in electro-acoustic music especially new analogue and computer-generated pieces.

**Note:** 28.216 Studies in Electronic Music, is a prerequisite for this paper.

**28.419 Studies in Performance Practice**

Selected topics for discussion and investigation from the field of Performance Practice. The study of source materials; individual projects; performance of music from the area(s) studied.

**28.423 Seminar in Musicology**

Musicological method; bibliographical studies; selected problems for discussion and investigation.

**Note:** 28.323 Musicology is a prerequisite for this paper.

**28.520 Performance**

Performance work as under the Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) with Honours.

**28.601 Thesis**

(see also under Degree Regulations, MMus)  
(three papers)

An investigation into some branch or area of music, under the guidance of a supervisor and embodying some elements of research.

**28.604 Dissertation**

(one paper)

Investigation of an approved topic.

**28.610 Composition**

(see also under Degree Regulations, MMus)

(three papers)

The preparation and presentation of one or more original compositions, under the guidance of a supervisor.

**28.620 Recital**

(see also under Degree Regulations, MMus)

(three papers)

The preparation for and presentation of a public performance of a well balanced recital programme.

**Note:** The availability of these papers will depend on numbers of students and their choice.



# DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

## DIPLOMA IN MUSIC

### DipMus

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations. An intending candidate who has not been granted the University Entrance qualification by the Universities Entrance Board must apply for admission in accordance with the requirements of the Admission Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Music shall

- before enrolling for the Diploma satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that a suitable standard in music including performance has been attained;
- follow a course of full-time study of not less than three years, and
- follow a course of study continuously, except where and in so far as the Head of the Department permits otherwise.

#### Course Entrance

2. A candidate for entrance to the course of study for this Diploma shall give notice in writing on the prescribed form to the Registrar not later than 30 June immediately preceding the year in which the candidate wishes to enrol.

#### Course Requirements

3. The course of study for the Diploma shall consist of not fewer than eighteen papers selected from those listed in the Schedule to these Regulations. Papers are listed in three stages – I, II and III.

4. Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate shall take in any one year more than eight papers for this Diploma.

5. A candidate with previous knowledge in Aural Training or Harmony may be required by the Head of the Department of Music to begin the course by taking subjects in Group B of the Schedule. If the candidate passes 28.100 Harmony and Counterpoint and 28.101 Musicianship and Materials of Music, he or she will be credited with a pass in each paper accordingly, and shall continue the course as outlined in Group B of the Schedule. If the candidate fails either of papers 28.100 and 28.101 (but not both) and is certified by the examiner to have attained the standard of a pass in 28.105, the candidate shall have a credit as for 28.105 and shall continue the course as outlined in Group A of the Schedule.

6. For Performance 28.120, 28.220, 28.325 a candidate shall

- carry out performance work (including the giving of class demonstrations), and
- attend all classes in individual training and such classes in ensemble training, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required, and
- pass a Performance examination, with a grade of C or better in the case of 28.120 and 28.220, in any one of the following subjects:

†Flute	†French Horn	Violin	Piano	†Recorder
†Oboe	†Trumpet	Viola	Harpsichord	†Percussion
†Clarinet	†Trombone	Cello	Organ	†Harp
†Bassoon	†Tuba	†Double Bass	Singing	†Guitar

†This instrument may not be taught during the current Calendar year.

**Note:** A candidate who passes the subject Performance 28.120 with a grade of C- and is therefore not eligible to proceed with the Course of study for DipMus may in respect of that pass apply for a credit of two unspecified Stage I Music papers towards the Course of study for the Degree of BMus if he is eligible for enrolment for that Degree. A candidate who passes the subject Performance 28.220 with a grade of C- and is therefore not eligible to proceed with the Course of study for DipMus may in respect of that pass apply for a credit of two unspecified Stage II Music papers towards the Course of study for the Degree of BMus if he is eligible for enrolment for that Degree. See Regulation 8 of the Regulations for that Degree.

(d) if presenting Singing for this Diploma attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department of Music may require;

(e) Organ students will also receive tuition in harpsichord. A student studying harpsichord may elect to include studies in classical organ, its technique and repertoire, as part of the course.

7. A candidate who (having been a candidate for this Diploma) has been granted credit towards the Degree of BMus under Regulation 8 of the Regulations for that Degree shall not at any later time re-enrol for this Diploma.

8. It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this Course of study that he or she

- (a) shall not undertake any musical work, including musical competitions and examinations, outside the course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music,  
 (b) shall participate in approved choral or instrumental work within the University throughout enrolment for this Diploma, to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department of Music, and  
 (c) shall not enrol for any other Course of study without the leave of the Head of the Department of Music.
9. (a) Except as otherwise provided the Course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.  
 (b) A candidate who has gained a credit for any subject under any former Regulations under the Diploma in Music shall be credited with such equivalent paper or papers as the Senate may determine.
10. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.
11. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1976.

### Schedule

1. This Schedule shall be read with the Regulations for the Diploma and with the Prescriptions set out elsewhere in the *Calendar*.  
 2. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations or in this Schedule, a candidate may not enrol in any paper unless the prerequisite and corequisite requirements as listed in the Schedule for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance) are satisfied.  
 3. The papers prescribed for this Diploma are:

#### Stage I

##### Group A

- 28.103 Music in Society  
 28.105 Basic Musical Techniques  
 28.120 Performance (counts as 3 papers)  
 1 Stage I paper from selection list below

#### Stage II

##### Group A

- 28.100 Harmony and Counterpoint  
 28.101 Musicianship and Materials of Music  
 28.220 Performance (counts as 3 papers)  
 1 paper from selection list below

#### Stage III

##### Group A

- 28.201 Materials and Analysis  
 28.325 Performance (counts as 4 papers)  
 1 paper from selection list below

#### Selection List

- 28.110 Composition  
 28.112 Keyboard Skills  
 28.113 Acoustics  
 28.114 Introduction to Ethnomusicology  
 28.202 Harmony and Counterpoint  
 28.203-208 History of Musical Style papers,  
 as available for BMus

##### Group B

- 28.100 Harmony and Counterpoint  
 28.101 Musicianship and Materials of Music  
 28.103 Music in Society  
 28.120 Performance (counts as 3 papers)

##### Group B

- 28.201 Materials and Analysis  
 28.220 Performance (counts as 3 papers)  
 2 papers from selection list below

##### Group B

- 28.325 Performance (counts as 4 papers)  
 2 papers from selection list below

- 28.212 Keyboard Skills  
 28.214 Ethnomusicology  
 28.215 Orchestration  
 28.216 Electronic Music  
 28.218 Conducting  
 28.223 Musicology  
 28.301 Analysis  
 28.302 Harmony and Counterpoint  
 28.314 Ethnomusicology  
 †28.316 Electronic Music  
 †28.318 Conducting  
 28.323 Musicology  
 †28.324 Special Topic as available for BMus  
 22.104 German for Singers  
 34.108 Language Comprehension in Music  
 35.104 Italian language in Opera and Song

Note: (i) Students studying keyboard instruments must include 28.112 and 28.212 in their selection.

(ii) Students studying singing must include two of these papers in their selection.

(iii) \*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

†This paper may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipMus

#### Restrictions on Entry to Courses

A candidate before enrolment for this Diploma is

required to satisfy the Head of the Department of Music that he or she has attained a suitable standard in music including performance at an interview to be held

during the August/September study break preceding the year of enrolment.

Application to the Registrar must be made on the prescribed form and forwarded to the Secretary, Music Department, by 30 June (for entry to the course in the following year).

The prescriptions for papers for the Diploma in Music shall be the same as those for the corresponding

subjects for the Degree of Bachelor of Music (Performance), and in the case of Basic Musical Techniques (28.105) as prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, and as follows:

### **Performance**

See Regulation 6 of the Regulations for the Diploma in Music.

## **DIPLOMA IN MUSIC WITH HONOURS**

### **DipMus(Hons)**

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### **General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Music with Honours shall

(a) before enrolling for this Diploma

(i) have been awarded or qualified for the award of the Diploma in Music, and

(ii) have obtained a grade of B- or higher in Performance at Stage III, 28.325, and

(iii) satisfy the Senate that in the work presented for the Diploma in Music he or she has attained a high standard, and

(b) follow a Course of full-time study of not less than one year.

#### **Course Requirements**

2. The Course of study for this Diploma shall consist of:

28.425 Performance (which shall count as four papers)

and any two of the papers listed in the selection list for the Diploma in Music but not previously taken.

3. For Performance 28.425 a candidate shall

(a) carry out performance work (including the giving of class demonstrations), and

(b) attend all classes in individual training and such classes in ensemble training, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required, and

(c) pass a performance examination in any one of the following subjects:

†Flute	†French Horn	Violin	Piano	†Recorder
†Oboe	†Trumpet	Viola	Harpichord	†Percussion
†Clarinet	†Trombone	Cello	Organ	†Harp
†Bassoon	†Tuba	†Double Bass	Singing	†Guitar

(d) Organ students will also receive tuition in Harpsichord. A student studying Harpsichord may elect to include studies in Classical Organ, its technique and repertoire, as part of the course.

(e) A candidate presenting Singing for this Diploma shall attend such language courses and do such language work as the Head of the Department of Music may require.

4. It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this Course of study that he or she

(a) shall not undertake any musical work, including musical competitions and examinations, outside the course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music, and

(b) shall not enrol for any other Course without the leave of the Head of the Department of Music.

5. A candidate shall be required to pass the Course of study as a whole so that performance in both Performance IV and the papers shall be considered.

6. Except as otherwise provided in these Regulations the Course of study of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

7. The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1976.

Note: \* This paper will not be taught during the current Calendar year.

† This paper may not be taught during the current Calendar year.

### **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipMus(Hons)**

#### **28.425 Performance**

[four papers]

Preparation for and presentation of a public performance of a well-balanced recital programme.

## REGULATIONS FOR COURSE OF INSTRUCTION IN A SINGLE INSTRUMENT

*Admission to a Course of Instruction in a single instrument with a full-time member of the staff may be granted subject to the approval of the Head of the Department of Music. Students enrolled for a Course of Instruction in a single subject must comply with the following regulations:*

### **Enrolment**

1. Enrolment shall be for a period of not less than one term and enrolment must be completed during the enrolling period immediately before the commencement of the first term.

### **Payment of Fees**

2. Tuition fees as prescribed under the Fees Regulations must be paid at enrolment.

### **Refund of Fees**

3. Should a student wish to discontinue the Course the following refund may be made where the fee for two or three terms has been paid at enrolment:

- (i) One-third refund in the case of the fee for two terms and two-thirds refund in the case of the fee for three terms provided written notice of withdrawal is received by the Registrar before the commencement of the second term;
- (ii) One-third refund in the case of the fee for three terms provided written notice of withdrawal is received by the Registrar before the commencement of the third term.

### **Unsatisfactory Work**

4. The notice of all students is drawn to Regulations 8 and 9 (i) of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

### **Declaration to Obey Statutes and Regulations**

5. The Admission Regulations shall not apply to candidates enrolling for these courses but every student enrolling for a course must sign the following declaration:

"I do solemnly promise that I will faithfully obey the Statutes and the Regulations of the University of Auckland so far as they apply to me."

### **Prescriptions**

6. Each course shall be under the direction of the Head of the Department of Music and shall consist of the following:

- (i) Weekly individual lessons of one half-hour's duration for a term of ten weeks or of one hour's duration fortnightly for five weeks, provided that arrangements may be made for one hour weekly lessons to be taken with a proportionate increase of fees.
- (ii) Tests of ability and where appropriate ensemble playing, including orchestral rehearsals, as may be required by the Head of the Department of Music.

7. It shall be a condition of a candidate's being permitted to pursue or continue this course that he or she shall not undertake any musical work, including music competitions and examinations, outside the course without the consent of the Head of the Department of Music.

8. Instruction is offered in the following subjects: Violin, Cello, Piano, Singing.

# Faculty of Architecture Property and Planning

## Contents

---

### *School of Architecture*

---

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	315	Degree of Bachelor of Architecture
	319	Degree of Bachelor of Property Administration
	322	Degree of Master of Architecture
	323	Degree of Master of Property Administration
	324	Joint Special Examination of NZIA and AERB

---

<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	325	Degree of Bachelor of Architecture
	328	Degree of Bachelor of Property Administration
	329	Degree of Master of Property Administration

---

### *Department of Planning*

---

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	331	Degree of Bachelor of Planning
	334	Degree of Master of Planning

---

<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	336	Degree of Bachelor of Planning
	337	Degree of Master of Planning
	338	Environmental Studies

---

<b>Diploma Course Regulations</b>	338	Diploma in Town Planning
-----------------------------------	-----	--------------------------

---

## FACULTY OF ARCHITECTURE PROPERTY AND PLANNING

Three professional degrees are offered within the Faculty.

### **Bachelor of Architecture (BArch)**

The degree of Bachelor of Architecture is recognised by the New Zealand Institute of Architects and the Architects Education & Registration Board for professional membership and registration. It is also recommended for recognition by the Commonwealth Association of Architects to all member institutes in the Commonwealth. The course comprises an Intermediate of six varied papers and a folder of drawings, from which students are selected for entry to the first of four professional years. Half the coursework of each professional year is spent in Studio, developing design skills, the balance being subjects in drawing, theory, history, technology, practice and other core subjects, with electives available in the later years.

### **Bachelor of Property Administration (BPA)**

The degree of Bachelor of Property Administration is recognised by the New Zealand Institute of Valuers, the Valuers Registration Board, the Property Management Institute and the Real Estate Institute of New Zealand. The course has an Intermediate and two professional years, and provides a synthesis of studies concerned with the use, management, valuation, development, acquisition and transfer of primarily urban land and buildings, and with the economic, legal, sociological and technological factors which affect the ownership of the proprietary interests involved.

### **Bachelor of Planning (BPlan)**

The degree of Bachelor of Planning is recognised by the New Zealand Planning Institute. The course has a one-year Intermediate of seven papers; followed by three professional years of studies in which the principal continuing components are Studio (practical work) and the Environmental Planning lecture series. Graduates with qualifications in approved subject areas may complete the BPlan degree in two years.

### **Master of Architecture (MArch)**

The degree of Master of Architecture is essentially a research degree based on thesis, and may include an examination in an advanced stage of building science, design theory, or practice and law. It may be completed in one year full-time or two years part-time. The degree of BArch is prerequisite.

### **Master of Property Administration (MPA)**

The degree of Master of Property Administration consists of four papers in advanced aspects of property administration (two may be Masters papers in a related department) and a thesis. It may be completed in one year of full-time study, or in up to four years part-time. The prerequisite is BPA with grades averaging B-, or DipVal or DipUrbVal subject to special conditions.

### **Master of Planning (MPlan)**

The degree of Master of Planning, for which BPlan is prerequisite, consists of five papers in advanced planning or planning-related subjects and a research essay, or four papers and a thesis. The course may be taken part-time over up to three years.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### SCHOOL OF ARCHITECTURE THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARCHITECTURE BArch

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations and except as otherwise provided in these regulations, a candidate for the degree of Bachelor of Architecture shall be required to
  - (i) pursue a course of study of not less than five years; and
  - (ii) pass the Intermediate Examination and complete to the satisfaction of the Senate the requirements of the four Professional Examinations.
- (b) A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole the Intermediate Examination and each Professional Examination so that the candidate's performance in all subjects of the Examination shall be considered. Where a candidate fails to pass a Professional Examination as a whole the candidate may at the discretion of the Senate be credited with a subject or subjects of that Examination, and be permitted in a subsequent year to present the subject or subjects not so credited together with such subjects of the next succeeding Professional Examination, if any, as the Senate may permit. Where a candidate's course in any year consists of more or fewer subjects than a full Examination the candidate's performance in all subjects taken in that year shall be considered as a whole.

#### Honours

2. The Degree of Bachelor of Architecture may be awarded with or without Honours according to the standard of the candidate's work in the Fourth Professional Examination (taking into account also the candidate's record in the other Professional Examinations).

#### Concessions

3. The Senate may exempt a candidate from the Intermediate Examination
  - (a) who has reached a standard satisfactory to the Senate in the University Entrance Scholarship Examination, provided that one of the subjects is Applied Mathematics, Pure Mathematics, or Physics; or
  - (b) who has been admitted or has qualified for admission to a Degree or, on the special recommendation of the Head of the School of Architecture, a Diploma, in any Faculty of this University; or
  - (c) who has by examination qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate in Building, or the New Zealand Certificate in Engineering (Civil Option), or the New Zealand Certificate in Quantity Surveying, and who has completed the practical requirements for the award of such Certificate.

**Note:** A candidate seeking admission to the First Professional Examination under the provisions of this clause is advised to submit with the required application form, the folder of work in prescribed form in Regulation 5(a).

4. (a) Where a candidate
  - (i) has been awarded or has qualified for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering (Civil) with a record in that Degree of sufficiently high standard in the opinion of the Head of the School of Architecture; or
  - (ii) has by examination qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate of Draughting (Architecture) and has completed the practical requirements for that Certificate
 the Senate may exempt that candidate from the Intermediate Examination and up to a total of 36 credits from the First and Second Professional Examinations.
- (b) Where a candidate
  - (i) has qualified by examination for the New Zealand Certificate in Draughting (Architecture) but without outstanding merit and completed the practical requirements for it; and
  - (ii) has completed the Intermediate Examination with results sufficient to secure a place in the First Professional Examination
 the Senate may exempt that candidate from up to a total of 36 credits from the First and Second Professional Examinations.

**Note:** A candidate granted exemption under Regulations 3 or 4 shall pay the fees required under Regulation 12 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

**Intermediate**

5. (a) The Intermediate Examination shall comprise:

a folder of work in prescribed form;

and

two papers or 12 credits in a subject (or with the approval of the Head of the School of Architecture, two related subjects) from each of the Groups A, B and C listed in the Schedule to this Regulation, of subjects prescribed for the Degree of BA or BSc as the case may be; provided that

(i) in the case of any or each of the subjects in the Schedule a candidate may substitute for that subject an equivalent subject passed at another New Zealand University;

(ii) a candidate who, in the Universities Bursaries Examination, has obtained a 'B' Grade or better and has gained not less than 50 marks in one of the subjects Pure Mathematics, Applied Mathematics or Physics, may choose instead of a subject from Group A an additional subject from Group B or Group C;

(iii) in exceptional circumstances and on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty of Architecture, Property and Planning, the Senate may permit a candidate to choose the three subjects from those appearing in the Schedule to this Regulation without restriction as to Groups, save that one shall be chosen from Group A unless the foregoing proviso (ii) applies;

(iv) subjects available in more than one group may be offered in either but not in both.

(b) In respect of each subject chosen from the schedule to this Regulation, a candidate shall be required to comply with such of the course regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science as are applicable (including all requirements as to practical work and all prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions).

**Note:** The folder of work and results in the subjects from the schedule shall be taken into account in any selection that may be required because of a restriction in the number of places available.

**Schedule***Group A*

Mathematics/Computer Science  
Physics

*Group B*

Anthropology  
Botany/Biology/Zoology  
Chemistry  
Economics  
Geology  
Geography  
Mathematics/Computer Science  
Philosophy  
Physics  
Psychology  
Sociology

*Group C*

Ancient History/Classical Studies  
Biblical History & Literature  
Anthropology/Maori Studies  
Art History  
Asian Geography/History/Politics  
Economics  
Education  
English  
Geography/Asian Geography  
History/Asian History  
any Language  
Music  
Philosophy  
Political Studies/Asian Politics  
Psychology  
Sociology

6. (a) For each Professional Examination a candidate shall be required to gain credits from the subjects set out in the Schedule to Regulation 10, including core subjects for that Professional Examination set out in Part A of that schedule and other subjects from Part B of that schedule, in accordance with the following:

**First Professional Examination**

Studio 1 (18 credits) and at least 18 further credits including 18 credits in other core subjects.

**Second Professional Examination**

Studio 2 (18 credits) and at least 18 further credits including 18 credits in other core subjects.

**Third Professional Examination**

Studio 3 (18 credits) and at least 18 further credits which shall include 12 credits in other core subjects and may include credits in other subjects.

**Fourth Professional Examination**

Studio 4 (18 credits including 9 credits in a thesis) and at least 18 further credits which shall include 4 credits in other core subjects and may include credits in other subjects; *or*

Studio 4 Extended (27 credits including 9 credits in a thesis) and at least 9 further credits which shall include 4 credits in other core subjects and may include credits in other subjects.



**Note:** (i) A candidate who does not attain the standard required for a pass in Studio 4 Extended (27 credits) may be credited with a pass in Studio 4 (18 credits).

(ii) Students who fail to pass Studio 2 are advised to consult the Dean before seeking to enrol in core subjects for Third and Fourth Professional Examinations and subject electives.

(iii) At the discretion of the Head of the School of Architecture, an alternative approved subject may be offered to meet the core requirement in architectural history in the First Professional Examination, in place of 15.121 Western Architecture 1.

(b) The Senate may permit a candidate to take a subject or subjects as defined in the Regulations for a degree in any Faculty, in lieu of a subject or subjects set out in Part B of the Schedule to Regulation 10, up to an equivalent of 10 credits for this degree, and credits will be awarded for a pass in such subjects in accordance with the following:

<i>Faculty</i>	<i>Segment of Study</i>	<i>Equivalent credits for this degree</i>
Arts & Commerce	Paper	5 credits
Engineering	Subject	3 credits
Law	Instruction hour/week	2 credits
Science	Credit	1 credit

7. A candidate may not gain credits for any Professional Examination in any subject for which credits were gained in a previous Professional Examination; provided that

(a) where a candidate has in any year gained more credits than required to complete a Professional Examination, the additional credits to a maximum of six may be credited to the next succeeding Professional Examination.

(b) A candidate who has failed to gain the required number of credits in the subjects of a Professional Examination and enrolls to repeat subjects or take other subjects to make up the required number of credits for that Professional Examination, may at the discretion of the Head of the School of Architecture take additional subjects to provide not more than 6 credits; and such of those credits as the candidate gains in excess of the credits required to complete that Professional Examination may to a maximum of six be credited to the next succeeding Professional Examination.

8. A candidate shall not enrol for more than 42 credits in any Professional Examination; provided that a candidate who has failed to gain 6 or fewer of the required number of credits in a Professional Examination, may, at the discretion of the Head of the School of Architecture, enrol in subjects for the remainder of the required number of credits, together with the subjects of the next succeeding Professional Examination, up to a total of not more than 42 credits.

9. A candidate may not take a subject unless he or she has passed or been exempted the prerequisite subject for that subject as provided in Regulation 10, and the Schedule to it; provided that

(a) where the prerequisite subject and the advanced subject are taught consecutively in one year, the candidate may enrol for both, but may not take the advanced subject if a pass is not gained in the prerequisite subject; and

(b) where the candidate has been exempted from one or more of the subjects of the course for this Degree under Regulation 4 or the Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, the Senate may at its discretion exempt the candidate from the requirements of this Regulation.

**Note:** A candidate who is ineligible under proviso (a) to take an advanced subject should withdraw from that subject in accordance with Regulation 7 of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General).

10. (a) The subjects of the Professional Examination shall be as listed and numbered under the headings *Title of subject* and *Number of paper* in the Schedule to this Regulation, (the core subjects being in Part A, and the other subjects in Part B). The credits to be awarded and the prerequisite or corequisite for each subject shall be as shown in the appropriate column opposite the name of the subject.

(b) Each subject referred to in the Schedule to this Regulation as 'Special Topic' and the prerequisite or prerequisites for it shall be as determined by the Head of the School of Architecture.

(c) Each subject named or referred to in the Schedule to this Regulation shall be an independently assessed segment of work, the successful completion of which shall result in the award of the number of credits shown.

## Schedule

<i>Paper Number</i>	<i>Title of Subject</i>	<i>Credits</i>	<i>Prerequisites</i>	<i>Corequisites</i>
---------------------	-------------------------	----------------	----------------------	---------------------

### Part A (Core Subjects)

#### First Professional Examination

15.101	Studio 1	18		
15.111	Architectural Design 1	3		
15.112	People-Environment Studies 1	1		
15.113	Construction 1	4		
15.114	Environmental Control 1	3		
15.115	Structure 1	2		

<i>Paper Number</i>	<i>Title of Subject</i>	<i>Credits</i>	<i>Prerequisites</i>	<i>Corequisites</i>
15.116	Drawing 1	3		
15.121	Western Architecture 1	2		
<i>Second Professional Examination</i>				
15.201	Studio 2	18	15.101 Studio 1	
15.211	Architectural Design 2	3	15.111 Arch Des 1	
15.212	People-Environment Studies 2	2	15.112 People-Env Studies 1	
15.213	Construction 2	4	15.113 Constr 1	
15.214	Environmental Control 2	3	15.114 Env Control 1	
15.215	Structure 2	2	15.115 Structure 1	
15.218	Professional Practice 1	1	15.113 Constr 1	
15.216	Drawing 2	3	15.116 Drawing 1	
<i>Third Professional Examination</i>				
15.301	Studio 3	18	15.201 Studio 2	
15.311	Architectural Design 3	3	15.211 Arch Des 2	
15.314	Construction 3	4	15.213 Construction 2	
15.319	Building Economics	3	15.213 Constr 2	
15.320	Contract Documentation	2	15.213 Constr 2	
<i>Fourth Professional Examination</i>				
15.401	Studio 4 or	18	15.301 Studio 3	
15.402	Studio 4 Extended	27	15.301 Studio 3	
15.418	Professional Practice 2	2	15.218 Prof Prac 1	
15.421	Building Law	2	15.218 Prof Prac 1	
<b>Part B (Other Subjects)</b>				
15.117	20th Century Architecture	2		
15.120	History of Building Technology	2		
15.122	Western Architecture 2	2		
15.134	History of Building	2		
15.137	Medieval Architecture	2		
15.138	Oceanic Architecture	2		
15.221	Introduction to Computing	2	15.113 Constr 1	
15.222	Computer Graphics	2	15.221 Intro to Computing	
15.223	Beginnings of Modern Architecture	2	15.121 Western Arch 1	
15.315	Structure 3	2	15.215 Structure 2	
15.317	Domestic Design	2	15.211 Arch Des 2	
15.322	Advanced Design Methods	3	15.211 Arch Des 2	
15.324	Architectural Aesthetics	2	15.211 Arch Des 2	
15.325	History of Architectural Theory	1	15.211 Arch Des 2	
15.331	Town Planning	2	15.211 Arch Des 2	
15.333	NZ Architecture	2	15.211 Arch Des 2	
15.334	Contemporary Architecture	2	15.211 Arch Des 2	
15.338	Commercial Practice & Mgt.	2	15.218 Prof Practice 1	
15.339	Cost Control	2	15.213 Construction 2	
15.340	Sound	2	15.214 Env Control 2	
15.342	People-Environment Studies 3	2	15.212 People-Env Studies 2	
15.343	Energy Efficient Design	3	15.214 Env Control 2	
15.344	Audio Systems Design	1	15.340 Sound	or 15.340 Sound
15.345	Construction Management	2	15.213 Construction 2	
15.346	Timber Technology	2	15.213 Construction 2	
15.351	Lighting	2	15.214 Env Control 2	
15.357	Urban Design	2	15.201 Studio 2	
15.410	Presentation Elective	1		15.401 Studio 4 or 15.402 Studio 4X
15.411	Publication Elective	2		15.401 Studio 4 or 15.402 Studio 4X

<i>Paper Number</i>	<i>Title of Subject</i>	<i>Credits</i>	<i>Prerequisites</i>	<i>Corequisites</i>
15.412	People-Environment Elective	3	15.342 People-Env Studies 3	or 15.342 People-Env Studies 3
15.413	Industrialised Building	2	15.213 Construction 2	
15.426	Design Theory Elective	3	15.311 Arch Des 3	or 15.311 Arch Des 3
15.428	Practice Elective	3	15.320 Contract Documentation	or 15.320 Contract Documentation
15.439	Acoustics	3	15.340 Sound	or 15.340 Sound
15.444	Noise Control	3	15.340 Sound	or 15.340 Sound
15.445	Construction Mgt. Elective	3	15.345 Constr Management	or 15.345 Constr Management
15.447	Energy Efficient Design Elective	3	15.343 Energy Eff. Design	or 15.343 Energy Eff. Design
15.513	Construction Elective	3	15.314 Construction 3	
15.519	Building Economics Elective	3	15.319 Bldg Economics	or 15.319 Bldg Economics
15.540	Acoustics Elective	3	15.439 Acoustics	or 15.439 Acoustics
15.542	Noise Control Elective	3	15.444 Noise Control	or 15.444 Noise Control
15.160 - 15.169, 15.260 - 15.269				
15.360 - 15.369	Special Topics, content to be determined	1		
15.170 - 15.189, 15.270 - 15.289,				
15.370 - 15.389	Special Topics, content to be determined	2		
15.390 - 15.399	Special Topics, content to be determined	3		

**Note:** Subjects listed in Part B of the Schedule will be taught only if sufficient staff are available and if enrolments are adequate to warrant teaching the subject.

### Exceptions

11. The Senate may, in such cases as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF PROPERTY ADMINISTRATION BPA

*The general course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for General provisions affecting their Course of Study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations, and except as elsewhere provided in these Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Property Administration shall:

- (i) pursue a course of study for a period of not less than three years; and
- (ii) pass an Intermediate Examination and two Property Administration Examinations.

(b) Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate for this degree shall take in any one year Property Administration Examination subjects worth more than 42 credits.

### Examinations

2. (1) A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole the Intermediate Examination and each Property Administration Examination so that performance in all subjects of the Examination shall be considered; but —(a) a candidate who fails to pass an Examination (whether Intermediate or Property Administration) as a whole may at the discretion of Senate be

- (i) credited with a subject or subjects of that Examination, and
- (ii) permitted in a subsequent year to present the subject or subjects not so credited, together with a subject or subjects of the First or Second Property Administration Examination as the case may be.

(b) A candidate who is studying for this Degree part-time or in conjunction with any other degree, may be required to pass an examination consisting of such work, less than the full Examination, as the Senate may in its discretion determine and to present the remaining subjects of the full Examination in a subsequent year, together with a subject or subjects of the next succeeding Examination.

(c) A candidate to whom either of the foregoing paragraphs (a) and (b) applies shall be required to pass as a whole an Examination consisting of the subjects taken in any year, so that the candidate's performance in all subjects taken in that year shall be considered.

(2) No candidate may enrol for any paper of the First Property Administration Examination without having passed at least six papers for the Intermediate Examination.

**Intermediate Examination**

3 (1) The subjects of the Intermediate Examination shall be:

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Paper Nos.</i>
Introduction to Property	37.100
Statistics	26.181 or 26.180 (or 13.102)
Economics (2 papers)	13.100 and 13.101
Geography	20.102
Sociology	82.101
One elective paper from	
Accounting	01.103
History	24.120, 24.121
Political Studies	30.102, 30.107
Commercial Law	02.100
Geology	21.100
English	18.101, 18.103

(2) (a) A candidate at another New Zealand University may substitute for any or each of the above papers an approved equivalent paper available at that University.

(b) Where a subject equivalent to the subject 37.100 is not available the candidate

(i) shall take an additional elective paper in the Intermediate Examination; and

(ii) shall, if admitted to the First Property Administration Examination, take 37.100 only as a required paper in Part B of that Examination.

**Note:** See note to Regulation 6.

**First Property Administration Examination**

4. The First Property Administration Examination shall comprise

**Part A**

<i>Paper No.</i>	<i>Subject</i>	<i>Credits</i>
37.200	Principles of Valuation	4
37.210	Principles of Land Administration	3
37.202	Property Law I	3
37.203	Residential Construction	4
37.204	Financial Appraisal	4
37.205	Land Use Planning	3
37.209	Building Economics	3
37.206	Building Technology	3

**Part B**

Two papers – (a) from those in the following Schedule except that one may be a paper not previously passed from those listed in Regulation 3 (1); and

(b) of which at least one shall be a paper at 200 level or higher

**Schedule to Regulation 4 Part B**

<i>Department</i>	<i>Paper No.</i>	<i>Subject</i>
Anthropology	03.102	Introduction to Maori Society (or Introduction to Maori Society 04.101)
	03.304	Anthropology of Law (or Maori Studies 04.308)
	03.331	Archaeological Resource Management
Economics	13.204	New Zealand Public Economics
	13.203	Managerial Economics
	13.214	The New Zealand Economy
	13.307	Public Expenditure
Geography	20.101	Introductory Physical Geography
	20.202	Geographical Perspectives on Urban-Industrial Societies
	20.302	Regional Processes and Development
	20.305	Population Processes Policies and Techniques
	20.314	Geographic Information Systems and Image Processing
	20.320	Resources & Environmental Management

<i>Department</i>	<i>Paper No.</i>	<i>Subject</i>
Management Studies	72.100	Business Computing
	72.205	Operations Management
	72.203	Organization and Management
Political Studies	30.310	Public Administration: Theory & Process
	30.211	Public Administration: Central & Local
	30.402	Topic on Urban Government & Politics
Sociology	82.202	New Zealand Community Studies
	82.309	Planning & Development
Planning	36.251	Environmental Planning I
	36.351	Environmental Planning II

Or other papers approved by the Head of the School of Architecture as relevant to this Degree.

## **Second Property Administration Examination**

5. The Second Property Administration Examination shall comprise

### **Part A**

<i>Paper No.</i>	<i>Subject</i>	<i>Credits</i>	<i>Prerequisite</i>	<i>Corequisite</i>
37.300	Advanced Valuation	4	37.200	
37.310	Advanced Land Admin.	4	37.210	
37.302	Property Law 2	3	37.202	
37.303	Commercial Construction	4	37.206	
37.304	Advanced Financial Appr.	2	37.200 and 37.204	
37.305	Urban Land Economics	4	37.209	
37.306	Building Contracts	2	37.303	
37.325	Property Finance	2	37.210 and 37.204	
37.312	Research Project	8	1st PA Exam	2nd PA Exam

### **Part B**

Two papers from those in the Schedule to Part B of Regulation 4 (not already taken) of which

(a) one shall be at 300 level or higher

(b) the other shall be at 200 level; but in place of this paper one Special Topic of 2 credits may be substituted.

### **Schedule of Special Topics**

<i>Paper No.</i>	<i>Subject</i>	<i>Credits</i>	<i>Prerequisite</i>	<i>Corequisite</i>
37.321	Development Process	2	37.210	37.310
37.322	Real Estate Markets	2	37.210	37.305
37.323	Introduction to Rural Valuation & Management	2	37.200 and 37.210	37.300 and 37.310
37.324	Project Management	2	37.210	37.310
37.326	Land Subdivision	2	37.210	37.310
37.327 to 37.329	Special topics approved by Head of Department	each 2		

### **Prerequisites and Restrictions**

6. A candidate shall comply with the prerequisites and restrictions relating to any paper taken for Part B of the First or of the Second Property Administration Examination; except so far as the Head of Department concerned may otherwise permit.

**Note:** Candidates should before the beginning of the Intermediate year ascertain what prerequisites and restrictions may be applicable under this Regulation.

### **Substitutions**

7. (1) A candidate for this Degree who has been credited for another Degree with any paper prescribed for the First or the Second Property Administration Examination (including any paper substantially the same) – shall substitute for each paper so credited such additional paper or papers (in Part B of that Examination) as the Head of Department may approve and as may be equivalent to it in credits.

(2) For the purpose of this Regulation –

(a) A paper in the Faculty of Arts or Commerce at 100 level shall count for 5 credits; above 100 level, 4 credits;

(b) Science credits shall count for the same number of credits for this Degree; and

(c) The credits for any paper taken in any other Faculty shall be determined by the Head of Department.

### **Exemption**

8. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate who being a graduate of any New Zealand University has passed at least three papers (at least two of which shall not be elective papers) meeting the requirements of Regulation 3 shall –

- (a) be exempted from the Intermediate Examination except for Paper 37.100;
- (b) take Paper 37.100 as a required paper in Part B of the First Property Administration Examination; and
- (c) pursue a course of study of not less than two years.

9. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1984.

**Note:** Subjects listed in the Schedule of Special Topics in Part B of the Second Property Administration Examination will be taught only if sufficient staff are available and if enrolments are adequate to warrant teaching the subject.

## **THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF ARCHITECTURE MArch**

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Architecture shall before enrolment for this Degree

- (a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture, or
- (b) (i) have been awarded or qualified for the award of the Diploma in Architecture, and
- (ii) satisfy the Senate that he or she is qualified to pursue the course for the degree by reason of professional work or by reason of having pursued a further course of study or investigation since qualifying for the award of the Diploma, provided that the Senate may in addition require a person seeking enrolment under this provision to pass a special examination.

2. A candidate for the Degree of Master of Architecture shall

- (a) (i) follow a course of full-time study of not less than one year, or
  - (ii) follow a course of part-time study of not fewer than two years;
- provided that such full-time or part-time study may be carried out in an approved institution outside the University for such period or periods as may be determined by the Senate from time to time, and
- (b) submit a thesis, and
  - (c) except as provided in Regulation 6, pass a written examination.

3. The following conditions shall apply to the preparation and presentation of the thesis (15.601): (a) the thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate of an original investigation or design or advanced study relative to Architecture. Its title and an outline of the proposed work shall be submitted to the Faculty of Architecture, Property and Planning for approval not later than 1 February of the year in which the candidate enrolls provided that approval may be given to a title and outline submitted or resubmitted not later than 31 March of that year. The work shall be carried out solely by the candidate under the supervision of a Supervisor appointed by the Senate from the School of Architecture.

(b) The candidate shall submit the thesis, accompanied by a certificate from the Supervisor stating that the work has been carried out wholly by the candidate under his or her supervision, to the Registrar not later than 1 November in the year in which it is presented, or at a subsequent date if so arranged with the Dean of the Faculty of Architecture, Property and Planning. The Registrar shall hand the thesis to the Dean of the Faculty of Architecture, Property and Planning.

(c) If the Examiner with the concurrence of the Assessor so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to resubmit it at a later date, to be specified by the Examiner. A thesis that has been submitted twice may not be submitted for a third time.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

4. (a) A candidate who has not been exempted from presenting the written examination shall take such examination not later than in the fourth year after enrolling for the degree.

(b) Every candidate shall submit the thesis by 1 November of the fourth year after enrolment for the degree, provided that this period may in special cases be extended by the Senate.

5. Except as provided in Regulation 6 a candidate shall be required to pass in one of the following subjects:

- (1) 15.502 Building Science
- (2) 15.503 Design Theory
- (3) 15.506 Practice and Law

6. Each candidate will be advised on enrolment whether or not a written examination will be required, provided that, if exemption is granted and if the thesis when presented is not considered to be satisfactory, a candidate may be required either to: (a) pass the written examination, or (b) pass the written examination in addition to resubmitting the thesis.

7. Where a candidate has been required to take the written examination the Senate shall take into consideration the combined results of the thesis and the written examination in recommending a candidate for admission to the Degree of Master of Architecture.

## **THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF PROPERTY ADMINISTRATION MPA**

*The personal course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### **General Provisions**

1. (1) Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Property Administration shall before enrolment for this degree

(a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Property Administration and have:

(i) attained an average grade of B- or higher in the course of study for that Degree; or

(ii) had at least two years' relevant postgraduate experience in the field of study for this Degree; or

(iii) otherwise shown to the satisfaction of the Head of Department capacity to undertake advanced study and research in the subjects proposed to be taken for this Degree; or

(b) have been awarded the Diploma in Valuation with Honours and have completed two papers at 200 level or higher from those available for Part B of the First or Second Property Administration Examination; or

(c) have been awarded the Diploma in Valuation at a standard acceptable to the Head of Department, have had at least two years' relevant postgraduate experience in the field of study for this Degree, and have completed two papers at 200 level or higher and two papers at 300 level from those available for Part B of the First or Second Property Administration Examination.

(2) Where the Head of Department so recommends, the Senate may approve the enrolment for this Degree of a candidate who has (with or without Honours) completed the Diploma in Valuation or in exceptional circumstances the Diploma in Urban Valuation; and who has, through other university study, through relevant practical experience, or otherwise, shown capacity to undertake advanced study and research in the subjects proposed to be taken for this Degree.

### **Course Content**

2. Every candidate for this Degree shall:

(i) in one year take the examinations in four of the papers prescribed in Regulation 3 of these Regulations, except that a candidate who provides evidence of being engaged in full time employment may be permitted by the Head of Department to present two papers in the first year and two in the second year; and

(ii) present a thesis (37.601) under the conditions prescribed in Regulation 4.

### **Papers**

3. The papers for this Degree are such of the following as are from time to time offered:

37.401 Building Construction

37.402 Land Administration

37.403 Property Law

37.404 Urban Land and Building Economics

37.405 Valuation

37.406 Appraisal

37.407 Real Estate Financing

37.408 Property Marketing

37.409 Building Restoration

37.410 Construction Management

and not more than two from

(i) the following papers

Economics

13.404 Development and Planning

13.408 Urban Economics

Geography	20.430 Land Use Studies 20.432 Regional Development Studies 20.436 Urban Geography
Management Studies	72.405 Organisational Development 72.406 Entrepreneurial Behaviour and Small Business Management
Political Studies	30.402 A Topic on Urban Government and Politics 30.413 Public Administration
Sociology	82.403 Advanced Topics in Economic Sociology 82.404 Advanced Topics in Political Sociology 82.406 Urban Sociology and Ecology

- or  
(ii) any other 400 level papers (from any department) approved by the Head of the Department.

### **Thesis**

4. (a) The thesis shall be of the value of three papers, and shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation relating to some aspect of Property Administration.
- (b) A candidate shall present the thesis in the year in which the last papers are taken, or in a subsequent year within three years of the year in which the candidate was first enrolled; but this period may in exceptional circumstances be extended by the Senate.
- (c) The candidate shall deliver the thesis to the Registrar by 1 November of the year in which it is presented or at a later date with the permission of the Head of Department.
- (d) Where a candidate submits a thesis which is of inadequate standard on first submission, the Senate may on the recommendation of the examiners permit the candidate to revise it and resubmit it at a later date specified by the examiners.

### **Honours**

5. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Where (i) on first examination, a candidate fails a paper; or  
(ii) on first submission, a candidate's thesis is of inadequate standard,  
Honours shall not be awarded: but a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances (certified as under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination so as to be still eligible for the award for Honours subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this Regulation.
- (c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if the requirements for Honours are completed within three years of the candidate's first enrolment for this Degree; but this period may in exceptional circumstances be extended by the Senate.
6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1986.

## **JOINT SPECIAL EXAMINATION OF NZIA AND AERB**

**Note:** These regulations are prescribed by the Council of the New Zealand Institute of Architects and administered by a Special Examination Committee representing both the NZIA and the Architects Education and Registration Board.  
The Joint Special Examination is recognised by the AERB as a qualification for registration (see AERB ordinances).  
Persons who complete the Joint Special Examination are required to make separate application for registration to the AERB in accordance with the Board's ordinances, and are required to attend the Board's professional interview.  
The Joint Special Examination is recognised by the NZIA for unclassified corporate membership. Registration is a prerequisite for corporate membership as an Associate.

1. Persons who fulfil the conditions set out in Clause 2 or Clause 3 may apply to the Special Examination Committee for admission to this Examination.
2. The Committee will consider applicants who:
  - (a) hold an overseas qualification acceptable in the country in which it was obtained as being of professional standard in architecture;
  - (b) make application on the form provided;
  - (c) provide documentary evidence of the qualification obtained, including where possible details of the course prescriptions and grades obtained;
  - (d) provide details of their experience and examples of their work, together with suitable corroborative evidence. The extent of the applicant's personal involvement in the preparation of the material shall be certified by affidavit;



(e) provide a written report, thesis, review or article, the sole work of the applicant, on some architectural or related topic, as an indication of the candidate's ability to study or analyse a topic and write clearly upon it.

3. The Committee will consider applicants who:

(a) by their work have demonstrated a level of achievement worthy of an architect;

(b) are not less than 35 years of age and have not less than 10 years' suitable architectural experience;

(c) make application on the form provided;

(d) provide details of their experience and examples of their work, together with suitable corroborative evidence. The extent of the applicant's personal involvement in the preparation of the material shall be certified by affidavit;

(e) provide a written report, thesis, review or article, the sole work of the applicant, on some architectural or related topic, as an indication of the candidate's ability to study or analyse a topic and write clearly upon it;

(f) provide evidence of age;

(g) provide statements from at least three registered architects attesting to the applicant's experience, achievements and suitability for the profession;

(h) provide any further information that may be requested by the Committee.

4. A fee shall be paid by the applicant to the NZIA upon making formal application to the Examination, as follows:

(a) For overseas candidates under clause 2, \$100.00.

(b) For New Zealand resident candidates under clause 3, \$300.00.

This fee is not refundable.

5. Each applicant shall be interviewed by the Committee or by a Sub-Committee comprising at least two members thereof.

6. Following such interview, the Committee shall admit applicants to the Examination or refuse admission at its discretion.

7. On admitting a candidate to the Examination the Committee:

(i) shall require the candidate to pass a written examination in professional practice as set out in Clause 8, provided that where the Committee is satisfied that the candidate has passed an approved written examination in professional practice the candidate may be exempted from this requirement; and

(ii) may at its discretion require the candidate to pass any other subject or subjects prescribed for a recognised qualification in architecture in New Zealand, and

(iii) shall require of the candidate such further period of approved practical experience (up to 140 weeks from the date of application) as it sees fit.

8. The following examinations are recognised by the Committee for the purposes of Clause 7(i):

(i) 15.418 Professional Practice 2 and 15.421 Building Law, as conducted for the BArch Degree of the University of Auckland (may be taken extramurally by candidates outside Auckland); or

(ii) ARCH 361 Professional Practice and ARCH 362 Professional Practice, as conducted for the BArch Degree of the Victoria University of Wellington.

9. On passing the required subjects and satisfying the Committee that any further period of required practical experience has been satisfactorily completed, the candidate shall be entitled to a Certificate stating that he or she has completed the requirements of the Joint Special Examination.

10. On refusing admission to the Examination the Committee shall advise the applicant in writing of reasons for its decision. The Committee will consider a further application after not less than three years from the date of the previous application.

11. Application forms for admission to the Examination may be obtained from the Chief Executive, NZIA, PO Box 438, Wellington, or from the Secretary, Joint NZIA/AERB Special Examination Committee, School of Architecture, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland.

12. These Regulations shall come into effect on 1 January 1987.

---

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BArch**

The prescriptions for the subjects named in the preceding Regulations for BArch are listed below.

#### **Architecture Intermediate**

##### **Folder of Work**

A paper detailing requirements for the folder of work may be obtained from the Administration Officer at

the School of Architecture.

#### **Professional Years**

##### **15.101 Studio 1**

A course of study and practice in Architectural Design in the studios and laboratories of the School of Architecture, with related lectures and seminars. Its scope includes the development of architectural skill

and understanding and the co-ordination of subject matter of the course.

#### **15.201 Studio 2**

Advanced  
stages of the

#### **15.301 Studio 3**

work in

#### **15.401 Studio 4**

Studio 1

#### **15.402 Studio 4 Extended**

#### **15.111 Architectural Design 1**

Introductory consideration of the main aspects of architecture, design processes, methods, and notation systems. Formal aspects of architectural space, and human living. Intention, meaning, and imagery in architecture. Philosophical directions.

#### **15.112 People-Environment Studies 1**

An introduction to physical, social and cultural aspects of people's relation to the natural and built environment.

#### **15.113 Construction 1**

Principles of Building Construction, material studies, building services.

#### **15.114 Environmental Control 1**

Climate, human and energy considerations in buildings. Introduction to psychophysics, including lighting and vision, hearing and noise control, thermal comfort and ventilation.

#### **15.115 Structure 1**

A study of movement through space – material constraint on such freedom; material organisation to define and preserve three dimensional form, particularly for human habitation. Joints categorised in terms of release. Practical examples throughout, mostly small and familiar constructions. Structographs is introduced as a means of communicating structural intention. Emphasis is on observing existing structure.

#### **15.116 Drawing 1**

A study of the relationship between drawing and architectural form. Freehand and instrumental drawing. Basic descriptive geometry and conventional projections.

#### **15.121 Western Architecture 1**

An examination of western architecture together with relevant theory and criticism, from the early Middle Ages to the Renaissance.

#### **15.211 Architectural Design 2**

Further consideration of architectural design processes and methods. Formal aspects of material, environment, and building systems. Architectural intentions in relation to human perception, society, history, landform, and technical means. Implications for change and growth. Architectural evaluation. Introduction to urban design.

#### **15.212 People-Environment Studies 2**

Human factors in environmental design. Environmental perception, cognition and meaning. Social interaction and the environment. An introduction to current environmental research methods and findings with conclusions for architectural theory.

#### **15.213 Construction 2**

An introduction to the New Zealand building industry. Current techniques of structure, fabric, materials, services and finishes. Fire in buildings.

#### **15.214 Environmental Control 2**

An architectural approach to room acoustics, daylighting and artificial lighting. Principles of energy conservation and energy-conscious design of buildings.

#### **15.215 Structure 2**

Emphasis is on design and therefore on devising structure. Particular consideration is given to seismic demands, and the various building configurations which do this most effectively. Case studies are given in detail, at which stage consideration of secondary structure and seismic release is made.

#### **15.216 Drawing 2**

Selected freehand techniques; instrumental drawing; advanced descriptive geometry; perspective, scia-graphy. Life drawing. Studio related, commercial rendering, and communication techniques.

#### **15.218 Professional Practice 1**

The architectural profession in New Zealand. Historical background and controlling legislation. Codes of professional practice.

#### **15.311 Architectural Design 3**

Advanced studies of architecture and architectural design. Development of architectural theory and its application to complex composition and experience of architectural settings and case-studies. Current directions.

#### **15.314 Construction 3**

Multi-storey construction methods, techniques, services and their integration as determinants of architectural form.

#### **15.319 Building Economics**

Microeconomics as parameters in building decisions. Urban building economics. Building efficiency. Energy considerations in design, materials and services. Buildings as investments.

#### **15.320 Contract Documentation**

Preparation of documentation at all stages of architectural service; briefs, feasibility studies, reports, working drawings, certification; developments in this area. Principles and practice involved in the preparation of specifications, interpretation; performance specifications. Computer assistance in documentation.

#### **15.418 Professional Practice 2**

The appointment, authority, duties, responsibilities and liabilities of the architect. Control administration. Financing of building projects. Relationships with clients and related professions.

#### **15.421 Building Law**

Aspects of law as they affect the practice of architecture, building, land and related property.

#### **15.117 20th Century Architecture**

Description of principal architectural movements and

personalities of contemporary architecture from c. 1900 to c. 1970.

### **15.120 History of Building Technology**

Macrohistory of science and technology from Çatal Huyuk to present as the setting for study of history of building technology. Process of innovation and substitution as major formative force in human history. Long range modelling of alternative futures as framework for policy. Limits to growth; sustainability, low impact options. Possible future settlement patterns.

### **15.122 Western Architecture 2**

An examination of Western architecture together with relevant theory and criticism, from the Renaissance to the Enlightenment.

### **15.134 History of Building**

Studies in the development of built environment in settlements, buildings and technology.

### **15.137 Medieval Architecture**

Characteristic medieval architectural forms in their setting and context.

### **15.138 Oceanic Architecture**

A study of the indigenous architecture of the Pacific Ocean region. The main emphasis is on Polynesia, with the architecture of New Zealand studied in depth, and is extended to Melanesia and Micronesia and comparisons made with the traditional architecture of Asia.

### **15.221 Introduction to Computing**

An introduction to computer applications in architecture. Word processing, spread sheets, thermal calculations, etc.

### **15.222 Computer Graphics**

Applications in computer aided draughting (CAD) and 3-dimensional modelling techniques.

### **15.223 Beginnings of Modern Architecture**

An examination of selected architectural works, writings and philosophies that contributed to the development of modern architecture.

### **15.315 Structure 3**

Content influenced by student requirements. The areas encouraged are: mathematical modelling of structure by computer; laboratory testing of structural systems; study of structural design codes; extension of Structographic analysis.

### **15.317 Domestic Design**

A study of activity relationships within the house and its location within the natural environment landscape, with emphasis on the quality of life.

### **15.322 Advanced Design Methods**

A study of techniques for problem stating, survey, analysis, production of alternatives, evaluation and testing, plus critical path analysis techniques and a look at some strategies.

### **15.324 Architectural Aesthetics**

Discussion of aesthetic principles as they relate to the visual arts, especially to architecture and to individual

experience, and to architectural design. Further development of architectural form perception.

### **15.325 History of Architectural Theory**

History of western architectural theories from Greek to modern times.

### **15.331 Town Planning**

The evolution of modern town planning theory and practice. The planning process. Contemporary town planning in New Zealand.

### **15.333 New Zealand Architecture**

Studies in Architecture in New Zealand with reference to historical influences and particular developments.

### **15.334 Contemporary Architecture**

Critical discussions and lectures on world architecture post-1970 and New Zealand post-war. Study of popular architecture in New Zealand.

### **15.338 Commercial Practice & Management**

A general appreciation of the principles and practice of accounting and commercial practice relevant to the practice of architecture. Management theory organisation; administration, production, distribution and control aspects; economic, financial and investment theories and techniques.

### **15.339 Cost Control**

Cost planning and control in relation to the design team and design process. Economic feasibility. Cost in use studies. The quantity surveyor. Pricing.

### **15.340 Sound**

A consolidation of the material previewed in the Environmental Control subjects on acoustics and noise control, i.e. the origins, behaviour, description and measurement of sound, and the elements of noise control, room acoustics and the hearing process.

### **15.342 People-Environment Studies 3**

Further investigation of the principles from the behavioural sciences related to the use, perception, evaluation, research and design of the built environment. Statistical analysis of findings and theories about human response, preferences and behaviour in environmental settings.

### **15.343 Energy Efficient Design**

Heating, cooling, lighting and ventilation of buildings using natural ambient energy (sun and wind).

### **15.344 Audio Systems Design**

An introduction to the design of sound systems for use in auditoria and theatres.

### **15.345 Construction Management**

Introduction to quantitative techniques in management of construction projects.

### **15.346 Timber Technology**

Rationalisation of timber performance in structure, and discussion of engineering use including both current and predicted techniques.

### **15.351 Lighting**

Advanced studies in natural and artificial lighting in buildings.

**15.357 Urban Design**

Focuses on urban design theory and practice, with particular emphasis on design of space between buildings, and strategies for implementation of design schemes.

**15.410 Presentation Elective**

Individual project requiring the presentation of a research report or design project to a public seminar.

**15.411 Publication Elective**

Individual project requiring the preparation of a research report or design project in a form suitable for publication in an approved journal.

**15.412 People-Environment Elective**

A fourth year Studio project emphasising theory and techniques from People-Environment Studies in its concept, synthesis and evaluation.

**15.413 Industrialised Building**

Methods of building construction, conventional and unconventional. Site organisation, office, labour, plant and materials handling.

**15.426 Design Theory Elective**

A critical investigation of the processes followed and/or an appraisal of the decisions reached in the briefing, design and development of either an actual building project, or a studio design project. This work may support further work for the 4th year thesis.

**15.428 Practice Elective**

Individual project in Professional Practice.

**15.439 Acoustics**

Advanced studies in room acoustics. Control of reverberation, electronic assistance of reverberation, theory and measurements for reflection masking and integration, application in design, acoustical models, mathematical models of rooms.

**15.444 Noise Control**

Advanced studies in noise control. Mathematical treatment of theory.

**15.445 Construction Management Elective**

Individual project in Construction Management.

**15.447 Energy Efficient Design Elective**

Individual project in Energy Efficient Design.

**15.513 Construction Elective**

A field survey and report on an agreed topic related to advanced Construction.

**15.519 Building Economics Elective**

Individual project in Building Economics

**15.540 Acoustics Elective**

Individual project in Acoustics.

**15.542 Noise Control Elective**

Individual project in Noise Control.

**15.160-15.169 Special Topics****15.260-15.269 Special Topics****15.360-15.369 Special Topics****15.170-15.189 Special Topics****15.270-15.289 Special Topics****15.370-15.389 Special Topics****15.390-15.399 Special Topics**

Courses which may be taught in any year, on topics in architecture; the availability, content, prerequisites and corequisites to be determined each year by the Head of the School of Architecture.

Some special topics which are offered regularly are:

**15.260 Ergonomics**

The limitations and capacities of people as applied to the design of buildings, equipment, and the environment.

**15.271 Measured Drawings**

Techniques involving measurement, photography, collation, filing/recording, drawing skills, and other related techniques.

**15.272 The Human Figure in Architecture**

Study of the human figure, in movement and at rest, singly and in small and large groups, in relation to architecture and landscape.

**15.385 Introduction to Landscape**

Introduction to natural landscape, ecology, landscape design, to provide a basis for formulating individual philosophy and direction in designing in a wider context.

---

**PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BPA**

Prescriptions for the subjects named in the preceding Regulations for BPA are given below:

**37.100 Introduction to Property**

The nature of property interests and their role in society. The profession of the land. Professionalism and report writing. Urbanisation. Land economics and market forces. Concepts of value.

**37.200 Principles of Valuation**

Valuation methodologies and processes in relation to land and improvements. Valuation of income producing properties. The effect of the legal estate on values.

**37.210 Principles of Land Administration**

Property Management principles and techniques. The stewardship of all descriptions of real property. The national estate. The urban/rural fringe. Maori perceptions. Property consultancy. The development process.

**37.202 Property Law 1**

The legal system; central and local government. The law relating to real property. Legal personality.

**37.203 Residential Construction**

The house building industry. Dwelling site considerations. Design, construction and materials. Domestic building services, maintenance and repairs. Defects in existing structures. Drainage and sanitation.

**37.204 Financial Appraisal**

An introduction to business structures and procedures. Accounting principles. Company reports. Principles of taxation.

**37.205 Land Use Planning**

Planning practice in New Zealand. An examination of

planning techniques, the statutory planning process and the effect of planning on property rights and values. An evaluation of selected current planning issues.

### **37.209 Building Economics**

Micro economic criteria for development and investment decisions. The mathematics of the time value of money in property, project and finance evaluations. Interest tables, DCF, inflation.

### **37.206 Building Technology**

Principles of environmental control. Buildings and climate. Human comfort in buildings. Principles of structure. Structural steel. Reinforced concrete. Prestressed concrete.

### **37.300 Advanced Valuation**

Investment yields and returns. Ground leases and leasehold interests. Rental valuation and lease analysis. Specialist properties. Computer applications. Compulsory acquisition, compensation and other statutory valuations.

### **37.310 Advanced Land Administration**

Advanced studies in property and building management. Landlord and tenant. The social responsibilities of ownership control. The professional management office. Computer applications. Feasibility studies. Marketing.

### **37.302 Property Law 2**

The law of contracts. Real property sale and purchase. Leases. Mortgages. Agency and commissions. Arbitrations. Professional liability.

### **37.303 Commercial Construction**

The construction of large and high rise buildings. Building, earthquake and health regulations. Building services and service contracts. Programmed and remedial maintenance.

### **37.304 Advanced Financial Appraisal**

Business structures. Taxation of property and property ownership. Valuation of going concerns.

### **37.305 Urban Land Economics**

The economics of urbanisation. Theories of urban structure. The urban land market. Role of the financial institutions. Economic aspects of urban valuation.

### **37.306 Building Contracts**

Contract processes, procedures and documentation. Specifications. Quantities, measuring, prices and estimates. Working drawings.

### **37.312 Research Project**

The topic for research must be approved by the Head of the School. The essay (or equivalent written work) must embody the results of an individual investigation into a property-related field, urban or rural, and must be the sole work of the student. The essay, which will count as one paper, must be of the order of 5,000 words (or equivalent) in length and must be submitted in the style and form required.

### **37.321 Development Process**

Advanced studies in property development and land

subdivision. The professional interface. Feasibility studies. Finance. Project management and co-ordination.

### **37.322 Real Estate Markets**

An exploration of the urban and rural property market and sub-markets. Price and value. Financial performance indices. Real estate cycles.

### **37.323 Introduction to Rural Valuation & Management**

The rural environment. Management and valuation of farms, forests, small holdings. Horticulture, viticulture, aquaculture. Factors affecting primary production and rural industries.

### **37.324 Project Management**

Concept evaluation. The professional team. Contract management and programming. Investment imperatives and cash flow control. Project control group procedures.

### **37.325 Property Finance**

The national and international money market. The financial intermediaries. Source of finance for property construction, development and investment and for tourist facilities. Economic factors and government policies.

### **37.326 Land Subdivision**

The land subdivision planning and development processes. Structure, scheme, survey, deposit and title plans. Residential communities. Commercial and industrial estates. Marketing.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR MPA**

The prescriptions for the subjects named in the preceding Regulations for MPA are listed as follows:

### **37.401 Building Construction**

Advanced studies in methods of construction, materials used, and services included with reference to issues such as long term maintenance, energy management.

### **37.402 Land Administration**

Advanced studies in land economy and property management from national, regional and local viewpoints, including traditional and alternative land tenure systems and philosophies.

### **37.403 Property Law**

Selected aspects of the law relating to property ownership, contractual relationships, leasing, development agreements and marketing contracts.

### **37.404 Urban Land and Building Economics**

Advanced studies in the economic systems of the built environment.

### **37.405 Valuation**

Advanced valuation techniques including investment appraisal, computerised valuation methods and overseas alternatives used in commercial and financial studies.

### **37.406 Appraisal**

The study of the role of advanced analytical tech-

niques in valuation, development and property management.

**37.407 Real Estate Financing**

Directed readings on advanced real estate financing techniques. Consideration of legal and taxation implications. The role of joint ventures.

**37.408 Property Marketing**

Marketing principles and methods. The presentation of real estate proposals for sale, lease, development, investment, consultancy. Market research. Professional services in the integrated firm.

**37.409 Building Restoration**

Studies of recent New Zealand and overseas examples in terms of marketability, economics, controls and tenant perceptions. Specific guidelines for particular project types will be developed.

**37.410 Construction Management**

A critical assessment of local project management experiences in terms of timing, framework and professional skills involved. Future directions, along with present deficiencies, will be discussed.

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### DEPARTMENT OF PLANNING THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF PLANNING BPlan

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Planning shall
  - (i) pursue a course of study for a period of not less than four years;
  - (ii) pass an Intermediate Examination and three Professional Examinations.
- (b) Except with the permission of the Senate no candidate for this Degree shall take in any one year more than 44 credits or their equivalent under Regulation 8(c).

#### Examinations

2. (a) A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole the Intermediate Examination and each Professional Examination so that the candidate's performance in all papers of the Examination shall be considered; but
  - (i) Where a candidate fails to pass a Professional Examination as a whole the candidate may at the discretion of the Senate be credited with a paper or papers of that Examination, and be permitted in a subsequent year to present the paper or papers not so credited, together with a paper or papers of the Second, or Third Professional Examination as the case may be;
  - (ii) a candidate who has not passed or been exempted from the Intermediate Examination but has passed 6 papers of that Examination (including all of the papers required by subparagraphs (i), (ii), and (iii) of paragraph (a) of Regulation 3) may enrol for a paper or papers of the First Professional Examination as well as the remaining paper of the Intermediate Examination.
- (b) A candidate whose course in any year consists of more or less papers than a full Examination or whose course is taken from more than one Examination shall have his or her performance in all papers taken in that year considered as a whole.

#### Intermediate Examination

3. (a) Subject to paragraph (b) of this Regulation, the Intermediate Examination shall consist of seven papers comprising:—
  - (i) One paper from:  
Mathematics 26.101, 26.180, 26.181
  - (ii) Geography 20.101 and 20.102
  - (iii) Economics 13.100 and 13.101
  - (iv) Two other papers as listed for the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, or the equivalent from any subjects prescribed for any other degree; but subject in any case to the approval of the Head of the Department.
- (b) (i) A candidate who has gained not less than 50 marks in a University Bursaries Examination paper in mathematics which includes statistics may take an additional paper under subparagraph (iv) of paragraph (a) of this Regulation instead of the paper required under subparagraph (i) of that paragraph.
- (ii) The Head of the Department may in exceptional circumstances approve the substitution for any of the papers listed in subparagraphs (i) to (iv) of paragraph (a) of this Regulation of any other paper or equivalent credits from any subjects prescribed for any other degree.
- (c) A candidate may, with the approval of the Senate, be exempted from the requirements of the Intermediate Examination in any of the following cases:—
  - (i) Subject to Regulation 7 of these Regulations, where the candidate is a graduate of any university;
  - (ii) where the candidate has passed the First Professional Examination for Bachelor of Architecture, Bachelor of Engineering or Bachelor of Property Administration, or the First Law Examination for Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Laws (Honours); or the first professional year for a similar degree of another New Zealand university;
  - (iii) where the candidate has qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate in Draughting (Town and Country Planning) or the New Zealand Certificate in Town Planning;
  - (iv) where the candidate holds a professional qualification in Architecture, Engineering, Surveying, or Town Planning, or has been awarded or qualified for the award of a Diploma in Architecture or Surveying or Valuation: but any candidate so exempted under any of the foregoing subparagraphs (i) to (iv) of this paragraph

may be required to take up to 6 additional credits as part of each of the First and Second Professional Examinations, if the Head of Department determines that the candidate has inadequate background in areas covered by the Intermediate Examination.

### First Professional Examination

4. The First Professional Examination shall consist of:

<i>Paper No.</i>	<i>title of paper</i>	<i>credits</i>	<i>restriction</i>
------------------	-----------------------	----------------	--------------------

#### PART A

36.250	Studio I	4	
--------	----------	---	--

36.251	Environmental Planning I	4	
--------	--------------------------	---	--

36.252	Law, Government & Planning	4	
--------	----------------------------	---	--

#### PART B

36.260	Social Issues	4	82.202
--------	---------------	---	--------

36.261	Political Organisation	4	30.203
--------	------------------------	---	--------

36.262	Environmental Studies	4	84.200
--------	-----------------------	---	--------

36.263	Economic Issues	4	13.204
--------	-----------------	---	--------

36.264	Settlement Studies	4	20.202
--------	--------------------	---	--------

#### PART C

Not less than four credits from any of the papers prescribed for or Special Topics available in the First Professional Examination for the Degree of Bachelor of Architecture.

### Second Professional Examination

5. The Second Professional Examination shall consist of:

<i>Paper No.</i>	<i>title of paper</i>	<i>credits</i>
------------------	-----------------------	----------------

#### PART A

36.350	Studio II	9
--------	-----------	---

36.351	Environmental Planning II	4
--------	---------------------------	---

36.352	Planning Law and Controls	4
--------	---------------------------	---

36.353	Planning and Design	4
--------	---------------------	---

36.354	Quantitative Planning Techniques	1
--------	----------------------------------	---

36.355	Public Utilities	1
--------	------------------	---

36.356	Traffic Engineering and	1
--------	-------------------------	---

	Transport Planning	
--	--------------------	--

#### PART B

36.361	Community Participation Project	2
--------	---------------------------------	---

36.362	Field Project	1
--------	---------------	---

36.363	Presentation for Planners	1
--------	---------------------------	---

36.364	Graphics for Planners	1
--------	-----------------------	---

36.365	Planning Case Studies	1
--------	-----------------------	---

#### PART C

(i) Papers in the School of Architecture:

Architecture: 15.211, 15.212, 15.213, 15.214, 15.260;

Property Administration: 37.100, 37.210, 37.206, 38.206, 37.310 and any of the Special Topics listed in Part B of the Second Property Administration Examination.

(ii) Papers in other Faculties (if available);

Anthropology/Maori Studies: 03.102/04.101; Engineering: 52.151, 52.271, 52.391, 55.231; Law: 25.313;

Management Studies: 72.203, 72.205; Political Studies: 36.203.

(iii) Special Topics approved by the Head of the Department:

36.370	Special Topic	1
--------	---------------	---

36.371	Special Topic	2
--------	---------------	---

36.372	Special Topic	3
--------	---------------	---

36.373	Special Topic	4
--------	---------------	---

36.374	Special Topic	5
--------	---------------	---

In exceptional circumstances the Head of the Department may allow a candidate to substitute for any of the papers prescribed for Parts A and B of this Examination a paper or papers taken from paragraphs (i) or (ii) of Part C.

### Third Professional Examination

6. The Third Professional Examination shall consist of:



<i>Paper No.</i>	<i>title of paper</i>	<i>credits</i>
<b>PART A</b>		
36.450	Studio III	12
36.451	Environmental Planning III	4
36.452	Planning Organisation and Management	4

**PART B**

Not less than 16 credits from the following:

36.453	Research Study	4
36.454	Major Project	2
36.455	Minor Project	1
36.456	Urban Planning	2
36.457	Maori Planning Issues	2
36.458	Planning Theory Review	1
36.459	Housing	1
36.460	Recreation & Reserves Planning	1
36.461	Pacific Development Issues	1
36.462	Future Studies	1

Special Topics approved by the Head of Department:

36.470	Special Topic	1
36.471	Special Topic	2
36.472	Special Topic	3
36.473	Special Topic	4

In exceptional circumstances the Head of Department may allow a candidate to substitute up to 6 credits from a paper prescribed for any other degree or diploma for the equivalent credits from the Special Topics listed above.

**Graduate Entry**

7. (1) Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate to whom this Regulation applies may complete this degree by:

- (i) substituting for the First and Second Professional Examinations a Graduate Professional Examination which shall consist of Part A from each of the First and Second Professional Examinations; and
  - (ii) completing the Third Professional Examination:
- but the candidate may, where the Head of Department determines that he or she has inadequate background in the areas covered by the Intermediate Examination or by Part B of the First or Part B of the Second Professional Examination, be required to take up to 8 credits from appropriate papers in those areas in each of the Graduate and Third Professional Examinations.

(2) This Regulation applies:

(a) to a candidate who has been admitted (or has qualified for admission) to:

- (i) any of the Degrees of Bachelor of Architecture, Bachelor of Laws or Bachelor of Property Administration; or
- (ii) the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, where taken in Civil Engineering; or
- (iii) the Degree of Bachelor of Arts, or

Bachelor of Science, or

Bachelor of Commerce; he or she having complied with the Stage III requirements of that Degree by passing papers in Anthropology, Biology, Botany, Economics, Geography, Geology, History, Management Studies, Maori Studies, Political Studies, Sociology or Zoology; and

(b) to a candidate who has been—

- (i) admitted (or has qualified for admission) to a degree of any other University, *either* in any of the disciplines Architecture, Civil Engineering, Law, Property Administration or Surveying *or* having a sufficient content of advanced work in the subjects set out in paragraph (2) (a) (iii) of this Regulation; and (ii) approved by the Senate for the purpose of this Regulation.

**Restrictions, Requirements and Substitutions**

8. (a) in any case where Regulation 4(j) of the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) applies, the candidate may be required to take in substitution for the disallowed paper or subject such paper or papers or credits of equivalent value prescribed for any degree as the Head of the Department determines.

(b) A candidate enrolled in a paper presented for another degree shall comply with the relevant parts of the Regulations for that degree, including those relating to pre-enrolment, corequisites, prerequisites, restrictions, combinations of subjects and practical work.

(c) For subjects taken in other Faculties, credits shall be awarded for passes in accordance with the following:

<i>Faculty</i>		<i>Equiv. Credits for this Degree</i>
Arts	For each paper	5
Commerce	For each paper	5
Engineering	For each half-year subject	4
	For each full-year subject	6
Law	For each hour of instruction per week	2
Science	For each credit	1

### Transitional Provisions

9. The Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Town Planning last published in the University of Auckland Calendar for 1985 ("the old Regulations") are revoked, except that the relevant parts concerning the old Examinations (that is, the Intermediate Examination and the First and Second Town Planning Examinations under the old Regulations) shall remain in force so far as is necessary to give effect to Regulations 10 and 11 of these Regulations.

10. (a) A candidate who at 1 January 1988 has partly completed the old Second Town Planning Examination shall complete that Examination with equivalent papers in accordance with the schedule Regulation 11 (a) no later than the end of the 1988 academic year.

(b) Upon completing the old Second Town Planning Examination under paragraph (a) of this Regulation a candidate shall be deemed to have completed the Degree.

### Schedule

11. (a) Where substitution of any papers is required by Regulation 10 (a) for 1988 the papers on the right in the following schedule shall be taken in substitution for the papers on the left.

<i>Old Regulations</i>		<i>Paper(s) to be taken in substitution</i>
36.203	Urban Settlements	) for each Paper
		) 2 Credits
36.204	Society & Settlements	) from 36.206 to
		) 36.264 inclusive
36.205	Communications & Utilities	36.355 Public Utilities
	and	36.356 Engineering & Transport Control
36.300	Advanced Planning Theory	36.451 Environmental Planning III
	and	36.458 Planning Theory Review
36.301	Advanced Planning Techniques	36.450 Studio
36.302	Advanced Planning Law and Administration	36.452 Planning Organisation and Management
36.303	Special Topic Research )	36.453 Research Study
	Essay )	
36.304	Special Topic )	
36.310	Urban Design	36.353 Urban Planning
36.311	History of Town Planning	) for each paper 2
36.312	Resource Management	) Credits from
36.313	Housing	) 36.457 to
36.314	Rural Planning	) 36.462
36.315	Landscape Planning	) inclusive

12. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1986.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF PLANNING MPlan

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Planning shall before enrolment:

(a) have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Planning, and

(b) have obtained, in the opinion of the Head of the Department, a sufficiently high standard in Part A of the Third Professional Examination, with no paper graded lower than C.

2. Except as provided elsewhere in these Regulations a candidate shall take all papers required for this Degree in the same year. A candidate who is engaged in full-time employment, or with other demanding responsibilities, may be permitted by the Head of the Department to present three or four papers in the first year, or in special circumstances two papers in the first year; and shall present all papers within three years of first enrolment for the Degree.

3. No candidate shall take for this Degree any paper that is the same or substantially equivalent to any other paper being taken or already passed and obtain credit for both for this Degree.

#### **Course Content**

4. Every candidate for the Degree of Master of Planning shall be required to pass in five papers and a research essay (36.603) which shall count as one paper; or four papers and a thesis (36.601) which shall count as two papers. At least two papers and the Thesis or three papers and the research essay shall be chosen from Part A; not more than two papers can be chosen from Part B.

#### **PART A**

36.500 Planning Theory

36.501 Planning Techniques

36.502 Planning Law and Administration

36.503-512 Special Topics approved by the Head of Department of Planning

36.601 Thesis

36.603 Research Essay

#### **PART B**

52.491 Public Health Engineering Seminar (as prescribed for the Degree of ME)

52.473 Transportation Planning (as prescribed for the Degree of ME)

20.436 Urban Geography (as prescribed for the subject Geography for the Degree of MA)

30.402 A topic on Urban Government and Politics (as prescribed for the subject Political Studies for the Degree of MA)

82.406 Urban Sociology and Ecology (as prescribed for the subject Sociology for the Degree of MA)

25.383 Social Control of Land (as prescribed for the Degree of LLB (Hons))

15.503 Design Theory (as prescribed for the Degree of MArch) provided that the Head of the Department of Planning approves the relevance of paper 15.503 to the subject of investigation for the thesis before a candidate may enrol in that paper.

#### **Thesis**

5. Where a thesis (36.601) is required the following conditions shall apply:

(a) the thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of Planning.

(b) A candidate shall present the thesis in the final year in which the papers are taken or within the next three years, provided that the time may be extended in exceptional cases by the Senate.

(c) If the examiner with the concurrence of the assessor so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to resubmit it by a later date to be specified by the examiner.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

#### **Honours**

6.(a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.

(b) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate takes an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory; provided that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond his or her control (certified as under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination so as to be still eligible for the award of Honours, subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this Regulation.

(c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if the requirements for Honours are completed within three years of his first enrolment for this Degree.

7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1988.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BPlan

#### First Professional Examination

##### PART A

##### 36.250 Studio (4 Credits)

Introduction to basic skills; drawing; graphic communication; report writing; photography; data presentation; group work. Elementary planning exercises; surveying and mapping; measuring and drawing landscapes; buildings and sites, designing minor urban components.

##### 36.251 Environmental Planning I (4 Credits)

A descriptive history of settlement patterns in selected countries; British colonial settlement and the Wakefield influence; the evolution of planning thought; public policy and environmental change; ecosystem-settlement interactions. Planning processes; paradigms of planning; the role of knowledge in planning; cybernetics and systems; aspects of process, procedural and substantive theory; distinguishing planning and design process.

##### 36.252 Law, Government & Planning (4 Credits)

Introduction to law-government; law-government and planning; law related to town and country planning; property rights in land.

##### PART B

##### 36.260 Social Issues (4 Credits)

This course will comprise elements of an existing course 82.202 (NZ Community Studies) taught by the Department of Sociology.

##### 36.261 Political Organisations (4 Credits)

This course will comprise elements of an existing course 30.203 (NZ Government and Policy Making) taught by the Department of Political Studies.

##### 36.262 Environmental Studies (4 Credits)

Introduction to global environment problems of population, resources and pollution, with local illustrations through tutorials and field trips.

##### 36.263 Economic Issues (4 Credits)

This course will comprise elements of existing course(s) taught by the Department of Economics.

##### 36.264 Settlement Studies (4 Credits)

This course will comprise elements of existing course(s) taught by the Department of Geography.

#### Second Professional Examination

##### PART A

##### 36.350 Studio (9 Credits)

Introduction to planning skills; mapping from aerial photographs; land use surveys; noise measurement studies; specialised drawing and draughting techniques; urban component design, including environmental area concepts; exercises in computer usage. The application of principles of environmental legislation and planning techniques to problems.

##### 36.351 Environmental Planning II (4 Credits)

Comparative planning systems; externalities and social costs; the concept of public amenity value; policies and strategies; social indicators. The nature of, and comparative approaches to, regional planning; definitions of regions and regional planning functions in New Zealand; issues in regional development.

Trends in rural activity and their physical and social implications; rural information systems; the New Zealand land inventory; land capability concepts; development issues in the rural and coastal environments. Legislative concepts of resources and their utilisation and conservation; maintenance of environmental quality; methods of environmental management.

##### 36.352 Planning Law and Controls (4 Credits)

The Town and Country Planning Act 1977, the National Development Act 1979, the Public Works Act 1981, the Local Government Act 1974, Part XXI, and related case law. Land use regulation: bylaws; zoning; use and bulk and location controls; performance standards; the evolution of such controls in New Zealand.

##### 36.353 Planning and Design (4 Credits)

Goals for urban planning; development issues in the urban environment; the role of the private and public sectors. Land subdivision, housing layout, and shopping centre design; relationships between buildings; the spaces between buildings; solar access criteria. Landscape concepts and components. Techniques of landscape inventory and evaluation; current practices and theory in the development and conservation of urban and rural landscapes.

##### 36.354 Quantitative Planning Techniques (1 Credit)

Statistical methods for planners. Measurement and survey data analyses; computer applications for capturing and processing planning data including packages for statistical analysis and modelling and graphical display. Land use classification, coding and sorting systems; land use surveys.

##### 36.355 Public Utilities (1 Credit)

The role of public utility services in urban development: alternative designs and costs; public health engineering; refuse: sources, control and disposal.

##### 36.356 Traffic Engineering & Transport Planning (1 Credit)

Relationships between land use and traffic; principles of traffic engineering; design for parking and vehicle movement; public and private transport systems; transportation planning; the Urban Transport Act 1980. Communications planning.

##### PART B

### **36.361 Community Participation Project (2 Credits)**

Applied project in response to a community-based request or identified need for planning assistance.

### **36.362 Field Project (1 Credit)**

Field assignment on a selected planning issue; on-site investigations and reports.

### **36.363 Presentation for Planners (1 Credit)**

Preparation of reports: word processing, printing and publication; public displays; audio-visual techniques; verbal, written and graphic communication skills.

### **36.364 Graphics for Planners (1 Credit)**

Graphics and visual communications; design and layout of planning documents; computer graphics applications. Display graphics.

### **36.365 Planning Case Studies (1 Credit)**

Topical issues in urban, rural and regional planning.

### **36.370 Special Topic (1 Credit)**

### **36.371 Special Topic (2 Credits)**

### **36.372 Special Topic (3 Credits)**

### **36.373 Special Topic (4 Credits)**

### **36.374 Special Topic (5 Credits)**

## **Third Professional Examination PART A**

### **36.450 Studio (12 Credits)**

Practical studies in the interpretation of course material and the application of skills to a selection of planning problems and the presentation of proposals for their solution.

### **36.451 Environmental Planning III (4 Credits)**

Current issues in regional government: planning and policy-making; statutory arrangements and emerging planning practice; case studies in regional development. The principles and processes involved in developing and using resources; a corporate or private enterprise view of physical planning. Rural land use competition and goal conflict resolution; case studies on topical issues.

### **36.452 Planning Organisation & Management (4 Credits)**

Organisation and management of planning personnel; administrative procedures and public relations in planning; corporate planning structures. Principles and techniques of planning data management; information technology; the New Zealand land information system. The nature of professions; professionalism and planning; dilemmas for professional planners; accountability; professional ethics; conflicts of interest; disclosure of information; the development of professional skills.

## **PART B**

### **36.453 Research Study (4 Credits)**

A study embodying the results of an original investigation in the field of environmental planning.

### **36.454 Major Project (2 Credits)**

A supervised study developing in detail a particular aspect of environmental planning covered in pre-

scribed courses for the Third Professional Examination.

### **36.455 Minor Project (1 Credit)**

A supervised study reporting on an aspect of environmental planning covered in prescribed courses for the Third Professional Examination.

### **36.456 Urban Planning (2 Credits)**

Principles of urban design; alternative city forms; energy issues and urban form. Planning for urban components; employment, transport, trade, precincts and neighbourhoods.

### **36.457 Maori Planning Issues (2 Credits)**

Traditional land and social concepts in Aotearoa; the 19th century land wars; the Waitangi Tribunal; the Maori Land Courts; contemporary Maori land issues; the Maori Affairs Act; district and regional planning scheme provisions for Maori interests.

### **36.458 Planning Theory Review (1 Credit)**

Emerging and alternative views about the nature, scope and purpose of environmental planning.

### **36.459 Housing (1 Credit)**

Housing issues; central and local government housing policies; housing finance.

### **36.460 Recreation & Reserves Planning (1 Credit)**

Trends in leisure and recreation; assessment of community needs; open space systems; national regional and local reserves; management techniques; provisions for protection and public access; reserves legislation and alternative legal structures.

### **36.461 Pacific Development Issues (1 Credit)**

Planning issues in developing countries; studies, with particular emphasis on development projects and their consequences in the South West Pacific.

### **36.462 Future Studies (1 Credit)**

Utopian thought and ideal communities; views of the future and alternative societal directions; alternative future scenarios for New Zealand.

### **36.470 Special Topic (1 Credit)**

### **36.471 Special Topic (2 Credits)**

### **36.472 Special Topic (3 Credits)**

### **36.473 Special Topic (4 Credits)**

---

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR MPlan**

The prescriptions of the subjects named in the preceding Regulations for MPlan are given below:

### **36.400 Planning Theory**

National, regional and metropolitan planning. National resources and policies for development. Case studies of important projects. The role of forecasting.

### **36.401 Planning Techniques**

Evolution of planning techniques. Special land use and development controls. Methods of assessing and testing planning proposals.

### **36.402 Planning Law and Administration**

Evolution of statutory planning. Methods of land use regulation. Public participation in planning.

Development and functions of local government and other planning agencies.

<b>36.403</b>	<b>36.408</b>
<b>36.404</b>	<b>36.409</b>
<b>36.405</b>	<b>36.410</b>
<b>36.406</b>	<b>36.411</b>
<b>36.407</b>	<b>36.412</b>

### **Special Topics**

Approved by the Head of the Department of Planning

### **36.603 Research Essay**

#### **52.491 Public Health Engineering**

As prescribed for the Degree of ME.

#### **52.475 Transportation Planning**

As prescribed for the Degree of ME.

#### **20.436 Urban Geography**

As prescribed for the subject Geography for the Degree of MA.

#### **30.402 A Topic on Urban Government and Politics**

As prescribed for the subject Political Studies for the Degree of MA.

#### **82.406 Urban Sociology and Ecology**

As prescribed for the subject Sociology for the Degree of MA.

### **25.383 Social Control of Land**

As prescribed for the Degree of LLB (Hons).

### **15.503 Design Theory**

As prescribed for the Degree of MArch, provided that the Head of the Department of Planning must approve the relevance of paper 15.503 to the subject of investigation for the thesis before a candidate may enrol in that paper.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES**

### **Environmental Studies**

An inter-disciplinary undergraduate paper in Environmental Studies is offered at Stage II level. Responsibility for the administration of this paper has been assigned to the Department of Planning as paper 36.262.

#### **84.200 Environmental Studies (4 Credits)**

*Prerequisites:* 24 Stage I credits or the equivalent from any Faculty, including six credits from the Science Faculty.

Introduction to global environment problems of population, resources and pollution, with local illustrations through tutorials and field trips.

## **DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS**

### **DIPLOMA IN TOWN PLANNING (DISCONTINUANCE) REGULATIONS**

#### **DipTP**

1. The Regulations for the Diploma of Town Planning ("the Diploma Regulations") last published in the University of Auckland *Calendar* for 1985 are revoked; except that the Diploma Regulations remain in force so far as is necessary to give effect to Regulation 2 of these Regulations

2. (a) Any candidate who before 2 January 1986 had enrolled for the Diploma in Town Planning under the Diploma Regulations may at any time before the last day of February 1989 (or with the approval of the Senate the last day of February 1990) complete the Diploma as if the Diploma Regulations were still in force, subject to such modifications of them and the taking of such additional papers (if any) as are required by the Head of the Department;

(b) A candidate in so completing the Diploma shall take papers as near as possible equivalent to papers the candidate would have taken to complete the Diploma under the Diploma Regulations, in accordance with the Schedule to Regulation 11 (b) for the Degree of Bachelor of Town Planning.

3. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1986.

---

# Faculty of Engineering

## *Contents*

---

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	340	Degree of Bachelor of Engineering
	346	Degree of Master of Engineering

---

<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	349	Degree of Bachelor of Engineering
	362	Degree of Master of Engineering

---

<b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>	367	Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology
---	-----	---

---

<b>Certificate Regulations</b>	368	Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology
--------------------------------	-----	---

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ENGINEERING BE

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. (a) Subject to the Admission Regulations and except as otherwise provided in these Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering shall be required to
  - (i) pursue a Course of study of not less than four years, and
  - (ii) pass an Intermediate Examination and the three Professional Examinations, and
  - (iii) perform Practical Work to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Engineering, and
  - (iv) perform Laboratory and Field Work to the satisfaction of the Faculty of Engineering.
- (b) Except as otherwise provided in this paragraph, a candidate shall be required to pass as a whole the Intermediate Examination and each Professional Examination (including an Examination under Regulation 5); so that the candidate's performance in all subjects of the Examination shall be taken into consideration. A candidate who has failed to pass any Examination as a whole may, at the discretion of the Senate, be credited with a paper or papers forming part of that Examination; and may in a subsequent year take the remaining papers of that Examination together (subject to Regulation 9) with such papers of the succeeding Examination, if any, as the Senate may permit. The candidate shall then be required to pass a composite Examination under the same conditions as those in this paragraph.

#### Honours

2. The Degree of Bachelor of Engineering may be awarded with or without Honours according to the standard of the candidate's work. There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in either First Division or Second Division.

#### Concessions

3. (a) A candidate who has been credited for the Degree of Bachelor of Science with any papers for the Intermediate Examination or with any of the substitute papers authorised by paragraph (b) of this Regulation, shall be credited with them for the purpose of this Degree also.
- (b) For the purpose of this Regulation only
  - (i) two of the papers Chemistry 08.210, 08.220 and 08.230 may be substituted for Chemistry 08.111 and 08.121
  - (ii) Stage II Physics papers totalling 6 credits may be substituted for each of the papers Physics 31.140 and 150
  - (iii) Stage II Pure Mathematics papers totalling 6 credits may be substituted for each of the papers Mathematics 26.120 and 140
  - (iv) Stage II or Stage III Applied Mathematics papers totalling 6 credits may be substituted for Engineering Mechanics 55.001.
4. (a) The Senate may exempt from the Intermediate Examination a candidate
  - (i) who has reached a satisfactory standard in the Entrance Scholarships Examination, if the subjects the candidate has taken include Chemistry, Physics, Pure Mathematics and Applied Mathematics or
  - (ii) who has reached an exceptional standard in the Entrance Scholarships Examination, if the subjects taken include Chemistry, Physics and Pure Mathematics.
- (b) The Senate may permit a candidate who has gained a pass in the Universities Bursaries Examination to substitute papers totalling or equivalent to 12 credits for the papers of the Intermediate Examination which relate to one subject of the Bursary Examination in which he or she attained a standard of achievement approved by the Senate. But substitution for Engineering Mechanics shall not be permitted.
5. A candidate for this Degree who
  - (i) has qualified for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Science or
  - (ii) has completed within two years the examination requirements for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Science or
  - (iii) was permitted to enrol for Stage II or Stage III papers in a subject without first presenting that subject at Stage I and who, if the Stage I papers not taken were included, would have qualified within two years for the Degree of Bachelor of Science, shall be required to pursue a Course of study for a period of not less than two years in such papers for the Degree as the Senate may prescribe and to pass Examinations in each year in the papers so prescribed for that year; and the following provisions shall apply:
    - (a) The Examination for the first year shall be such that the amount of necessary study shall be substantially the



same as for the Second Professional Examination;

(b) All the papers of the Third Professional Examination shall be included in the candidate's Course of study but none such in the first year;

(c) The candidate shall be exempt from the papers of the Intermediate Examination and from such other papers of the Degree as are not prescribed under this Regulation.

6. (a) A candidate who has by examination qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate in Engineering, and who has completed the practical requirements for the award of that Certificate, may be exempted by the Senate from the Intermediate Examination and the First Professional Examination or from such papers of those examinations as the Senate thinks fit.

(b) A candidate who has by examination qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate in Science (Metallurgy) or (Chemistry), and who has completed the practical requirements for the award of that Certificate, may for the Courses in Chemical and Materials Engineering and Metallurgical and Materials Engineering be exempted by the Senate from the Intermediate Examination and the First Professional Examination or from such papers of those examinations as the Senate thinks fit.

(c) A candidate who has by examination qualified with outstanding merit for the New Zealand Certificate in Science (Physics) in the Applied Electronics option, and who has completed the practical requirements for the award of that Certificate, may for the Course in Electrical and Electronic Engineering be exempted from the Intermediate Examination and the First Professional Examination or from such papers of those examinations as the Senate thinks fit.

### **Practical Work**

7. A candidate shall not be admitted to the Degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering a certificate that the candidate has complied with the requirements of the Faculty as to Practical Work.

### **Laboratory and Field Work**

8. A candidate shall not be admitted to the Degree unless the Registrar has received from the Dean of the Faculty of Engineering a certificate that the candidate has complied with the requirements of the Faculty as to Laboratory and Field Work.

### **Prerequisites**

9. No candidate may enrol (a) for any paper of the First Professional Examination without having completed the whole of the Intermediate Examination;

(b) for any paper of the Third Professional Examination without having completed the whole of the First Professional Examination.

### **Elective Papers**

10. (a) The Third Professional Examination shall include elective papers where specified in Regulation 13.

(b) A candidate's choice of elective papers shall require approval by the Senate.

(c) An elective paper chosen from another degree course shall be of an appropriate weight and academic level. The syllabus for it shall not be the same as or substantially overlap that of any other paper in the candidate's course.

**Note:** (i) Approval of a candidate's choice of elective papers will generally depend on the compatibility of the chosen papers with the candidate's personal aptitudes and interests, their mutual compatibility and the coherence of the proposed course as a whole. There should be no timetable conflict in the proposed course.

(ii) An elective paper in this Degree course will be considered equivalent to one Stage II or Stage III paper from the BA or BCom schedules or to 3 credits from Stage II or Stage III papers of the BSc schedule or to 4 credits from subjects of the Third or Fourth Professional Examinations of the BArch Degree course.

### **Approval of Courses**

11. (a) The personal Course of study of every candidate shall require the approval of the Senate.

(b) The Senate may delegate to the Faculty the power to approve personal Courses of study and also the discretionary powers conferred in Regulations 4, 5, 6 and 10 of these Regulations.

(c) The Senate may in such special circumstances as it thinks fit approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to these Regulations.

### **Professional Courses**

12. The candidate shall follow one of the following professional courses:

Chemical and Materials Engineering

Civil Engineering

Electrical and Electronic Engineering

Engineering Science

Mechanical Engineering

Metallurgical and Materials Engineering

Mineral Process Engineering

Mining Engineering

13. The papers for this Degree are:-

**Intermediate Examination**

08.111 Chemistry	31.140 or 31.141 Physics
08.121 Chemistry	31.150 or 31.151 Physics
26.120 or 26.121 Mathematics	55.001 Engineering Mechanics
26.140 or 26.141 Mathematics	

**Professional Examinations**

*Arrangement:*

*First half year papers*                      *Full year papers*                      *Second half year papers*

**Chemical and Materials Engineering**

*First Professional Examination*

	50.111 Engineering Design	
	54.111 Engineering Mathematics I	
51.111 Introductory Process Engineering		50.101 General Studies I
51.121 Materials I		51.112 Process Thermodynamics and Fluids
55.101 Mechanics of Solids I		51.141 Applied Chemistry

*Second Professional Examination*

	54.211 Engineering Mathematics II	
	51.232 Process Analysis and Synthesis	
	51.221 Materials II	
	51.215 Chemical Reactor Engineering	
51.213 Heat and Mass Transfer Operations		51.214 Separation Processes
51.243 Applied Organic Chemistry		53.111 Electrical Engineering 1G

*Third Professional Examination*

	51.361 Project in Chemical and Materials Engineering	
	51.322 Materials IIIA	
50.201 General Studies II		51.314 Particulate Technology
51.311 Process Control		51.333 Chemical Engineering Design Project
51.332 Equipment and Plant Design		55.231 Industrial Administration

**Transitional**

A candidate whose course was begun under the Regulations set forth in the *University of Auckland Calendar* for 1985 shall complete the course under those Regulations but, where required by the Senate, with such substitute papers as it may determine.

**Civil Engineering**

*First Professional Examination*

	50.111 Engineering Design	
	52.141 Structures I	
	54.111 Engineering Mathematics I	
51.121 Materials I		50.101 General Studies I
52.121 Fluid Mechanics I		52.111 Mechanics of Materials
52.131 Introductory Geology for Engineers		52.151 Surveying

*Second Professional Examination*

52.211 Properties of Materials and Design
52.221 Fluid Mechanics II
52.231 Geomechanics I
52.241 Structures II
52.271 Traffic and Highway Engineering
54.211 Engineering Mathematics II

*Third Professional Examination*

	52.381 Civil Engineering Administration	
50.201 General Studies II		<i>Three elective papers from the list below</i>
52.321 Hydrology		52.301 Special Topic in Civil Engineering
52.331 Geotechnical Engineering		52.311 Mechanics & Properties of Materials
52.361 Civil Engineering Design I		52.322 Fluid Mechanics III

**52.391 Public Health Engineering****52.323 Water Resources Engineering****52.332 Geomechanics II****21.388 Engineering Geology****52.341 Structures III****52.362 Civil Engineering Design II****52.371 Traffic Systems Design****52.382 Management Techniques****52.383 Accounting for Engineers****52.392 Water Quality Engineering****52.393 Maritime Engineering****53.312 Electrical Engineering for Civil****Engineers****54.314 Engineering Analysis B**

An approved paper from another University course.

**Electrical and Electronic Engineering***First Professional Examination***53.121 Networks****53.181 Digital Electronics & Computing Systems****54.111 Engineering Mathematics I****50.112 Graphics****51.121 Materials I****53.141 Power Apparatus & Systems I***Second Professional Examination***53.204 Electrical Engineering Design****54.211 Engineering Mathematics II****51.222 Electrical Engineering Materials****53.222 Networks & Signals****53.232 Analogue Electronics****53.241 Power Apparatus & Systems II***††Third Professional Examination***53.301 Project in Electrical Engineering****50.201 General Studies II**

Three elective papers from the list below

**53.313 Analytical Techniques in Electrical Engineering****53.322 Signal Processing****53.342 Power Systems****53.352 Communications Systems****53.363 Electromagnetic Fields & Waves****53.382 Software Engineering**

An approved paper from another University course

Four elective papers from the list below

**53.304 Special Topic in Electrical & Electronic Engineering****53.321 Applied Network Synthesis****53.332 Custom Integrated Electronic Design****53.343 Advanced Power System Topics****53.344 Power System Plant****53.353 Digital Communications****53.362 Microwave & Optical Engineering****53.371 Advanced Control Engineering****53.383 Computer Systems****53.390 Power Semiconductor Applications****55.333 Engineering Economics**

An approved paper from another University course

**Transitional**

A candidate whose course was begun under the Regulations set forth in the *University of Auckland Calendar* for 1986 shall complete the course under those Regulations but, where required by the Senate, with such substitute papers as it may determine.

††Note: The Third Professional course to be offered in 1988 is detailed in the 1988 School of Engineering Handbook.

**Engineering Science***First Professional Examination***50.111 Engineering Design****54.112 Engineering Mathematics IS**

51.121	Materials I	55.111	Thermodynamics and Fluid Mechanics I	50.101	General Studies I
55.101	Mechanics of Solids I			53.111	Electrical Engineering IG
<i>Second Professional Examination</i>					
		54.241	Continuum Mechanics I		
		54.251	Operations Research I		
		54.291	Engineering Science Design		
53.211	Electrical Engineering IIS			54.213	Engineering Mathematics IISB
54.212	Engineering Mathematics IISA			55.222	Control Engineering I
55.241	Mechanics of Solids II			55.231	Industrial Administration
<i>Third Professional Examination</i>					
		54.304	Project in Engineering Science		
		54.341	Continuum Mechanics II		
		54.351	Operations Research II		
50.201	General Studies II		<i>Two</i> elective papers from the list below		
<i>Two</i> elective papers from the list below					
54.301	Special Topic in Engineering Science			54.302	Special Topic in Engineering Science B
54.312	Engineering Mathematics III SA			54.315	Engineering Mathematics III SB
54.321	Computational Techniques for Partial			54.343	Mechanics of Structures
2	Differential Equations			54.352	Stochastic Methods in Operations Research
				54.361	Control Theory
				One or two approved papers from other University courses.	

**Note** In addition to the papers listed for the Engineering Science Third Professional Examination, candidates are required to attend the Engineering Science Laboratory (three hours per week or equivalent), carry out assignments and submit reports, to a required standard.

### Mechanical Engineering

#### *First Professional Examination*

	50.111 Engineering Design	
	54.111 Engineering Mathematics I	
	55.111 Thermodynamics & Fluid Mechanics I	
51.121 Materials I		50.101 General Studies I
55.101 Mechanics of Solids I		53.111 Electrical Engineering IG

#### *Second Professional Examination*

	54.211 Engineering Mathematics II	
	55.211 Thermodynamics & Fluid Mechanics II	
	55.261 Mechanical Engineering Design I	
50.201 General Studies II	55.222 Control Engineering I	
55.221 Engineering Dynamics	55.231 Industrial Administration	
55.241 Mechanics of Solids II	55.271 Production Technology I	

#### *Third Professional Examination*

	55.301 Project in Mechanical Engineering	
	55.361 Mechanical Engineering Design II	
<i>Six</i> elective papers chosen from the lists below		
55.311 Applied Fluid Mechanics	55.303 Special Topic in Mech. Eng.	
54.313 Engineering Analysis A	53.311 Applied Electricity	
55.321 Control Engineering II	55.312 Applied Aerodynamics	
55.322 Mechanical Vibrations	54.314 Engineering Analysis B	
55.331 Industrial Engineering	55.323 Microprocessors in Mechanical Control Systems	
55.341 Mechanics of Deformation Processing	55.324 Acoustics	
55.342 Strength of Materials	55.332 Manufacturing Systems	
55.351 Thermal Engineering	55.333 Engineering Economics	
One or two approved papers from another University course		
	55.352 Applied Thermodynamics	
	55.371 Production Technology II	
	One or two approved papers from another University course	

**Note:** In normal circumstances three elective papers are to be chosen from those taught in the first half-year and three from those taught in the second half-year.

**Metallurgical and Materials Engineering***First Professional Examination*

	50.111	Engineering Design		
	54.111	Engineering Mathematics I		
51.111	Introductory Process Engineering	50.101	General Studies I	
51.121	Materials I	51.112	Process Thermodynamics and Fluids	
55.101	Mechanics of Solids I	51.141	Applied Chemistry	

*Second Professional Examination*

	51.221	Materials II		
	51.225	Physical Metallurgy		
	51.251	Chemical Materials		
	54.211	Engineering Mathematics II		
51.213	Heat and Mass Transfer Operations	53.111	Electrical Engineering IG	
55.241	Mechanics of Solids II	55.271	Production Technology I	

*Third Professional Examination*

	51.334	Materials Engineering Design		
	51.362	Project in Metallurgical and Materials Engineering		
50.201	General Studies II	51.324	Metallurgical Engineering	
51.311	Process Control	51.326	Non-metallic Materials	
51.323	Materials IIIB	55.231	Industrial Administration	
51.325	Solid State Materials			

**Mineral Process Engineering***First Professional Examination*

	50.111	Engineering Design		
	54.111	Engineering Mathematics I		
	56.101	Mineral Engineering		
51.113	Applied Thermodynamics and Fluids I	50.101	General Studies I	
52.131	Introductory Geology for Engineers	51.114	Applied Thermodynamics and Fluids II	
55.101	Mechanics of Solids I	56.111	Geology I for Mining	

*Second Professional Examination*

	54.211	Engineering Mathematics II		
	56.201	Mineral Processing I		
51.122	Materials IA	51.141	Applied Chemistry	
51.213	Heat and Mass Transfer Operations	56.202	Coal Preparation	
56.203	Introduction to Mineralogy	21.284	Geology IIB for Mining	
		53.112	Electrical Engineering for Mining	

*Third Professional Examination*

	51.251	Chemical Materials		
	56.303	Mineral Process and Plant Design		
	56.304	Project in Mineral Process Engineering		
50.201	General Studies II	55.231	Industrial Administration	
51.311	Process Control	56.302	Mineral Processing IIB	
56.301	Mineral Processing IIA	56.318	Bulk Materials Handling	

**Mining Engineering***First Professional Examination*

	50.111	Engineering Design		
	54.111	Engineering Mathematics I		
	56.101	Mineral Engineering		
51.113	Applied Thermodynamics and Fluids I	50.101	General Studies I	
52.131	Introductory Geology for Engineers	51.114	Applied Thermodynamics and Fluids II	
		56.111	Geology I for Mining	

55.101 Mechanics of Solids I  
Second Professional Examination

21.281 Geology IIA for Mining  
51.122 Materials IA  
56.212 Mine Environment and Ventilation

Third Professional Examination

21.381 Geology III for Mining  
50.201 General Studies II  
56.314 Rock Mechanics  
56.317 Mine Production Engineering

52.231 Geomechanics I  
54.211 Engineering Mathematics II  
56.214 Unit Operations in Mining

21.284 Geology IIB for Mining  
53.112 Electrical Engineering for Mining  
56.231 Mine Surveying

56.312 Evaluation and Mineral Economics  
56.313 Mine Design  
56.315 Project in Mining Engineering

55.231 Industrial Administration  
56.318 Bulk Materials Handling  
One elective paper from the list below  
21.386 Applied Geophysics for Mining  
21.388 Engineering Geology  
52.383 Accounting for Engineers  
52.332 Geomechanics II  
56.316 Environmental Planning for Mining  
Other approved paper

**Savings and Transitional Provisions**

14. These Regulations shall govern the course of every candidate; but any candidate whose course was begun under the Regulations set forth in the *University of Auckland Calendar* for 1981 shall be credited for the purpose of these present Regulations with such papers as the Senate may determine.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF ENGINEERING ME

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**General Provisions**

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Engineering shall
  - (a) before enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Engineering, and
  - (b) follow a Course of study of not less than one year.
2. Every candidate for this Degree shall
  - (a) pass in each of eight papers where those papers do not include Project D, or
  - (b) pass in Project D and six other papers, or
  - (c)(i) pass in each of three papers, and
  - (ii) pass in respect of a thesis (which shall count as equivalent to five papers).

**Papers**

3. The following conditions shall apply to the choice of papers
  - (a) Every candidate shall choose papers in consultation with the Head of his or her Department from those listed in clause (b) of this Regulation; provided that no paper that has been credited to another degree shall be taken for this Degree.
  - (b) The papers of examination for the Degree are:
    - (i) 50.401 Project A
    - 50.411 Project B
    - 50.421 Project C
    - 50.431 Project D (value 2 papers)

**Note:** Not all of the following papers will be available in a given year.

51.411 Advanced Process Control

51.412 Chemical Engineering Seminar  
51.413 Studies in Chemical Engineering  
51.414 Biochemical Engineering Seminar  
51.415 Advanced Chemical Engineering  
51.421 Advanced Materials  
51.422 Materials Seminar  
51.423 Studies in Materials Engineering  
52.401 Special Seminar in Civil Engineering A  
52.402 Special Seminar in Civil Engineering B  
52.411 Mechanics and Properties of Materials Seminar  
52.421 Fluid Mechanics Seminar  
52.422 Advanced Fluid Mechanics  
52.423 Coastal Engineering  
52.424 Advanced Water Resources  
52.431 Earthquake Engineering  
52.432 Geomechanics Seminar  
52.433 Applied Geomechanics  
52.434 Earth Structures  
52.441 Structural Dynamics  
52.442 Structures Seminar  
52.443 Structural Analysis  
52.444 Space Structures  
52.451 Environmental Law  
52.461 Structural Design  
52.471 Traffic Engineering  
52.472 Transportation Engineering Seminar  
52.473 Transportation Planning  
52.474 Transportation Systems Analysis  
52.481 Project Management A  
52.482 Case Studies in Project Management  
52.483 Project Management B  
52.491 Public Health Engineering Seminar  
53.401 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering A  
53.402 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering B  
53.403 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering C  
53.432 Electronic Circuits and Systems  
53.441 Heavy Current Electronics  
53.451 Digital Signal Processing  
53.452 VHF and UHF Radio Communication  
53.461 Electromagnetic Theory  
53.471 Advanced Control Systems  
53.482 Advanced Microprocessor Techniques  
54.401 Studies in Engineering Science  
54.411 Studies in Engineering Mathematics  
54.421 Finite Element Methods  
54.422 Nonlinear Optimisation  
54.441 Studies in Continuum Mechanics A  
54.442 Studies in Continuum Mechanics B  
54.451 Studies in Operations Research A  
54.452 Studies in Operations Research B  
54.453 Advanced Systems Analysis  
54.454 Random Processes  
54.461 Studies in Control Theory  
54.481 Geothermal Modelling  
54.491 Bio-Engineering  
55.401 Studies in Mechanical Engineering  
55.411 Fluid Dynamics  
55.412 Aerodynamics

- 55.413 Wind Engineering
- 55.422 Mechanical Control Systems
- 55.431 Manufacturing Analysis
- 55.432 Manufacturing Automation and Robotics
- 55.433 Manufacturing Management
- 55.441 Mechanics of Materials
- 55.442 Stress Waves and Vibrations
- 55.452 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines
- 55.461 Computer Graphics and Computer Aided Design
- 55.471 Production Technology
- 55.472 Metal Forming
- 55.491 Heat Transfer Analysis
- 55.492 Convective Heat Transfer
- 55.493 Geothermal Heat and Mass Transfer
- 56.401 Advanced Mineral Processing
- 56.402 Seminar in Mineral Processing
- 56.403 Advanced Flotation
- 56.404 Magnetic and Electrical Separation
- 56.405 Industrial Minerals
- 56.411 Advanced Mining Engineering
- 56.412 Seminar in Mining Engineering
- 56.413 Advanced Mine Ventilation
- 56.414 Advanced Geostatistics and Resource Evaluation
- 56.415 Advanced Rock Mechanics
- 56.416 Tunnelling and Quarrying Engineering
- 86.401 Geothermal Systems and Technology
- 86.402 Geothermal Production Technology
- 86.403 Geothermal Energy Utilisation

(ii) those papers approved by the Head of Department from any of those offered at Third Professional level for the BE Degree.

(iii) Subject to the permission of the Heads of Departments concerned, one or two papers chosen from those offered in any other Faculty at the final-year undergraduate level or the Master's level provided

- (a) that prerequisite and timetabling requirements can be met, and
- (b) that the syllabus is not the same as or substantially overlapping with any paper prescribed for this Degree, and
- (c) that the paper has a weight not less than that of an Engineering paper.

#### **Project Work**

4. (a) No candidate shall take

- (i) Project A, B, C or D if he or she submits a thesis for this Degree;
- (ii) more than one of the Projects A, B or C, if Project D is also taken.
- (b) A candidate who takes Project D must submit the project report not later than twelve months after enrolment for this project provided that the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, extend this period.
- (c) A candidate who takes Project A, B or C must submit the project report on the last day of the period in which the project is taken provided that the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, extend this period.

#### **Thesis**

5. The following conditions shall apply to the thesis (50.601):

- (a) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in a subject approved by the Head of the Department.
- (b) The investigation shall be carried out personally by the candidate at the University under the direct supervision of a member of the academic staff; provided that
  - (i) laboratory work may be carried out in an approved institution outside the University for such limited period or periods as may be determined from time to time by the Senate;
  - (ii) field work may be carried out at such places and for such periods as the Senate may determine.
- (c)(i) The supervisor shall be the principal examiner.
- (ii) The Senate acting on the advice of the Head of the Department shall appoint either an external assessor or a second internal examiner.
- (d) At the discretion of the Head of the Department the candidate may be required to attend an oral examination on the subject of the thesis, which shall take place within four weeks of the date on which the thesis was



submitted, or within such longer period as the Senate may in special circumstances approve.

(e) If the supervisor with the consent of the assessor or second examiner as the case may be so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to submit it again at a later date to be specified by the supervisor.

(f) A candidate shall present the thesis not later than 18 months, or if he or she is a part-time candidate not later than 36 months, after the first enrolment for this Degree, provided that the Senate may, in exceptional circumstances, extend this period.

Note: An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

### Classes of Pass

6. The Degree of Master of Engineering may, on the recommendation of the Senate, be awarded with Distinction.

7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1972.

## RESEARCH IN ENGINEERING

Facilities are available for research by PhD students and postdoctoral fellows in each of the Departments of Engineering in a wide range of topics.

Attention is drawn to the fact that the Honours Degree qualifying a PhD student for registration need not necessarily be one in Engineering. Graduates with a good Honours Degree in Physics, Chemistry, or Mathematics, for example, could be considered for registration in Engineering.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BE

#### Intermediate Examination

08.111 Chemistry

08.121 Chemistry

26.120 Mathematics or

26.121 Mathematics

26.140 Mathematics or

26.141 Mathematics

31.140 Physics or

31.141 Physics

31.150 Physics or

31.151 Physics

55.001 Engineering Mechanics

(Two lectures per week and problem clinics)

An introductory course dealing with the principles of Newtonian rigid-body mechanics and the analysis of simple mechanical systems. Topics to be treated are

(a) statics of particles, rigid bodies, and collections of rigid bodies including the concepts of contact and body forces, moments of forces, couples, free-body diagrams, equivalent force systems, centroids, equilibrium conditions, and Coulomb friction, (b) kinematics of particles and rigid bodies including velocity, acceleration, angular velocity, and angular acceleration, and (c) kinetics including the concepts of moment of inertia, inertia force, and inertia torque and the principles of D'Alembert, impulse-momentum, and work-energy as applied to planar motion of particles and rigid bodies.

#### Professional Examinations

21.203 }

21.281 } Geology papers for Mining

21.284 } and Civil Engineering

21.381 } See Degree Course

21.386 } Prescriptions for BSc

21.388 }

#### 50.101 General Studies I

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

A course that considers aspects of human development; origins, societies, politics, human nature, and creativity.

#### 50.111 Engineering Design

[One lecture and one three-hour drawing office class per week]

The elements of engineering draughting and graphics. Introduction to the application of mechanics to the design of mechanical and structural components.

#### 50.112 Graphics

[One lecture and one three-hour drawing office class per week. First half-year]

The elements of engineering draughting and graphics and an illustrative design application.

#### 50.201 General Studies II

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

A course that gives some insights into the problems of contemporary society. Economic, ecological, social and resource constraints affecting the work of the engineer are examined as is the impact of technology and engineering on the environment and the future of society.

#### 51.111 Introductory Process Engineering

[Four lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Fluid properties and definitions. Hydrostatics and stability of floating bodies. Fluid flow, energy and continuity relationships. Viscosity. Compressible flow. Force and momentum relationship. Flow-measurement. Dimensional analysis and similarity. Introduction to turbomachinery. Material balances with and without chemical reactions and with re-cycle. The first and second laws of thermodynamics. Energy balances in reacting and non-reacting systems. Simultaneous mass and energy balances.

#### **51.112 Process Thermodynamics and Fluids**

[Four lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Classical chemical thermodynamics including the concept of chemical potential, fugacity and activity; their applications to reacting systems. Thermodynamics of power and refrigeration cycles, and flow processes. Application of graphical methods to steady state mass and energy balances. Incompressible Newtonian flow; turbulent flow; pumping and piping networks. Non-Newtonian fluid flow.

#### **51.113 Applied Thermodynamics and Fluids I**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Fluid properties and definitions. Hydrostatics and stability of floating bodies. Fluid flow, energy and continuity relationships. Viscosity. Compressible flow. Force and momentum relationship. Flow measurement. Dimensional analysis and similarity. Introduction to turbomachinery.

Material balances in process flows. First law of thermodynamics. Energy balances. Ideal and real gas behaviour. Simultaneous mass and energy balances. Heats of reaction. Combustion.

#### **51.114 Applied Thermodynamics and Fluids II**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Second law of thermodynamics. Entropy. Elements of classical chemical thermodynamics including concepts of chemical potential, fugacity, activity. Steadyflow open systems. Elements of power and refrigeration cycles. Graphical methods in mass and energy balancing. Incompressible Newtonian flow; turbulent flow. Pumping; piping networks. Introduction to non-Newtonian flow.

#### **51.121 Materials I**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Mechanical properties and testing of engineering materials; atomic and structural aspects; deformation and strengthening mechanisms; annealing; working processes; temperature dependent properties of materials; microstructures; solidification and phase equilibria; heat treatment; non-destructive testing; corrosion; non-metallic materials including polymers, wood, ceramics and concrete.

#### **51.122 Materials IA**

[Two lectures a week and one tutorial fortnightly.

#### **First half-year]**

Mechanical properties and testing of engineering materials, tensile test, hardness test, toughness measurement, fatigue behaviour, damping. Deformation; structure of materials, elastic deformation, plastic deformation, viscoelastic deformation. Forming processes. Selection, specification, testing and inspection. Corrosion. Metallic and non-metallic materials including steels, non-ferrous alloys, polymers, wood, ceramics, concrete.

#### **51.141 Applied Chemistry**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Molecular structure including the structure of atoms, bonding and motion of molecules, forces between molecules. Applied physical chemistry including the physical chemistry of interfaces, solid surfaces and adsorption. Surface and colloid chemistry, surfactants, micelles, stability of emulsions, flocculation, froth flotation and wetting. Kinetics and reaction mechanisms. Heterogeneous catalysts, physico-chemical methods of analysis, UV, IR, AA and NMR spectroscopy. An accompanying laboratory programme must be completed satisfactorily.

#### **51.213 Heat and Mass Transfer Operations**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Heat transfer via steady-state conduction, convection and radiation. Conduction through simple shapes and composite materials. Forces and natural convection. Dimensionless correlation of heat transfer processes with flow processes. Film and overall heat transfer coefficients. Heat transfer with phase change. Film and dropwise condensation. Nucleate and Film boiling of liquids. Heat transfer to particulate solids. Radiation emission. Absorption, reflection and transmission. Radiation exchange in systems of simple geometry. Heat exchanger thermal design. Mass transfer via equimolar diffusion, diffusion through a stagnant gas. Interphase mass transfer theory: mass transfer coefficient, overall coefficient, transfer units.

#### **51.214 Separation Processes**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

General principles of continuous processes. Equilibrium stages, stagewise analysis and cascades. Differential contact processes applied to packed tower. Characteristics of packed columns and stagewise contact processes; pressure drops, flooding and loading. Studies in depth of selected separation processes such as absorption, adsorption, crystallisation, ion exchange. Simple batch and continuous distillation processes. Liquid-liquid and solid-liquid extraction. Evaporation including evaporator types, sizing and performance. Drying mechanisms, drying equipment and the application of drying curves. An accompanying laboratory programme must be completed satisfactorily.

**51.215 Chemical Reactor Engineering**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

A review of thermodynamics; thermodynamics of solutions; various stability zone diagrams. The constraints thermodynamics and kinetics place on reactions, the effect of temperature and pressure on equilibria and rates. Batch, continuous stirred tank and plug flow reactors as they apply to homogeneous reactions. Adiabatic, isothermal and varying temperature conditions. Recycle in reactor engineering. Limitations of idealised models and the use of the residence time analysis. Heterogeneous reactions and catalysis. Reactor engineering for biological systems and applications of biochemical engineering to selected process industries. Electrochemical reactor engineering.

**51.221 Materials II**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

Kinetics of metallurgical reactions; diffusion, point defects, nucleation and growth, annealing, Imperfections and plastic flow and dislocation theory. Mechanical behaviour of materials; X-ray diffraction; corrosion, oxidation degradation of materials.

**51.222 Electrical Engineering Materials**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Free electron theory; zone theory; electron conduction in metals and alloy. Theory of semiconductors. Semiconducting materials. Superconductivity. Electron emission. Dielectric processes. Magnetic processes. Optical processes. Thermo-electricity.

**51.225 Physical Metallurgy**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

A treatment of modern metallographic methods including optical and electron optical techniques such as transmission and scanning electron microscopy. Interpretation of images, macro and micro structures, quantitative metallography, fractography. Modern analytical techniques such as spark emission, EDAX, Auger, SIMS etc. X-ray diffraction theory and applications.

Solid state transformations; Diffusion, kinetics, precipitation, eutectoid reactions, shear transformations, metastable transition phases, effect of alloying. Thermomechanical treatments. Commercial heat treatments.

**51.232 Process Analysis and Synthesis**

[One lecture and one tutorial, one drawing office per week]

Flow sheets and line diagrams, standard symbols and conversions. Presentation of information via mass and energy flow sheets. Numerical methods for material and energy balancing including degrees of freedom analysis. Use of charts. The process industries: raw materials and resources, recovery and recycle. Energy sources, conversion and conservation. Products and choice of process routes. Strategies for process synthesis: heuristics morphological an-

alysis, functional analysis. The generation and screening of alternatives. Case studies in process analysis and synthesis. Elementary profitability calculations. Introduction to process modelling and simulation. Use of computer-aided-process-design packages for process material and energy balancing, flow-sheet development and economics.

**51.243 Applied Organic Chemistry**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Organic reaction mechanisms; nucleophilic and electrophilic reagents and reactions, types of reaction, substitution, elimination and rearrangement. Petrochemistry and selected organic syntheses based on natural gas, as building blocks. Characteristics of important organic unit processes. Introductory biochemistry. Carbohydrates, proteins, and enzymes. Structure and classification of micro-organisms; growth; metabolism and nutrition. Biochemical processes and the kinetics of enzyme catalysed reactions.

**51.251 Chemical Materials**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

Thermodynamics and its application to equilibrium involving multi-component solutions such as polymers solutions, liquid metals and slags. Use of diagrams to represent zones of stability or likely reaction. Surface excess properties; phase equilibria and phase diagrams. Fuels and combustion. Aspects of hydrometallurgy. Kinetics of interphase transfer in metallurgical systems with examples associated with selected extractive metallurgical processes. Aspects of reactor design. Electrochemical engineering applied to extractive processes.

**51.311 Process Control**

[Five lectures per week. First half-year]

Dynamic modelling of linear open-loop systems; transfer functions; linear closed-loop systems; analysis and control; control theory; stability analysis using root-locus and frequency response methods. Controller tuning; industrial application with simple and complex control systems.

**51.314 Particulate Technology**

[Four lectures per week. Second half-year]

A course on particulate technology, including characterisation of particles; fluid dynamics; analysis of separation processes; separation mechanisms; size reduction; particle size measurement; sedimentation; fluidisation; conveying; filtration; packed beds; solid/solid separations; gas cleaning; agglomeration; storage; atomisation; mixing.

**51.322 Materials III A**

[Three lectures per week first half-year and two lectures per week second half-year]

Deformation processing. Solidification and casting. Joining. Metallurgical properties of engineering alloys. Surface properties of materials; treatment of metal surfaces. The structure, physical properties and mechanical properties of polymers. Plastics in

chemical engineering plant. Properties of ceramic materials.

### 51.323 Materials IIIB

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Deformation processing: forging, rolling, drawing, extrusion, etc. Defects. Solidification and casting: theory and application. Joining: Adhesives, soldering, brazing, welding methods. N.D.T. Metallurgical properties of engineering alloys: steels, cast irons, alloy steels, tool steels, stainless, nickel alloys, aluminium alloys, copper alloys, zinc and other alloys. Selection and specification of materials.

### 51.324 Metallurgical Engineering

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Mechanical properties: creep, fatigue, fracture mechanics and other topics. Advanced topics in materials processing including welding. Structure and properties of metals and alloys including process treatment. Failure analysis. Materials selection: cost, properties, processing, design, specification and codes. Case studies. Surface properties of materials and treatment processes.

### 51.325 Solid State Materials

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

A course dealing with the theory of metals and non metals. Conduction in metals, alloys and semiconductor materials. Superconductivity. Dielectric processes and materials. Magnetic processes.

### 51.326 Non Metallic Materials Engineering

[Four lectures per week. Second half-year]

The structure, physical properties and mechanical properties of polymers. Temperature dependence and transition from rubbery to glassy states. Analysis and identification of polymers. Degradation and stabilisation of polymer systems. Fabrication processes. Polymers in engineering. Ceramics: Ternary phase diagrams, raw materials, properties of clay-water systems, structure, microstructure, mechanical and thermal properties, glasses, concrete, bricks. Composites. Carbon and carbon technology.

### 51.332 Equipment and Plant Design

[Three lectures and one drawing office per week. First half-year]

Materials for construction of equipment. Role and use of codes and standards. Principles and design consideration of multicomponent distillation. Design of pressure vessel and selected process equipment. Use of CAD packages. Plant layout, utilities and environmental considerations. Safety and loss prevention. Hazard analysis. Waste disposal and pollution control. Briefing professional teams during construction. Plant start-up and shut down. Economics of processing.

### 51.333 Chemical Engineering Design Project

[One lecture and five drawing office hours per week. Second half-year]

A single design project undertaken by students working in groups. The objective of the project is to

integrate the design principles taught in 51.232 Process Analysis and Synthesis, and in 51.332 Equipment and Plant Design. A series of complementary lectures on special aspects of the assigned project will be given.

### 51.334 Materials Engineering Design

[One lecture, one drawing office hour. First half-year. One lecture, two drawing office hours. Second-half year]

Design of a process route for the fabrication of a metallurgical or materials product or the refining of metals and materials. Detailed consideration will be given to particular items of plant within the process route.

### 51.361 Project in Chemical and Materials Engineering

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of the staff.

### 51.362 Project in Metallurgical & Materials Engineering

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of the staff.

### 52.111 Mechanics of Materials

[Three lectures and one shared tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Stress, strain and stress/strain relationships; application of these concepts to simple structural members. Properties of civil engineering materials.

### 52.121 Fluid Mechanics I

[Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week. First half-year]

Fluid properties and definitions. Hydrostatics and stability of floating bodies. Fluid flow, energy and continuity relationships. Viscosity. Compressible flow. Force and momentum relationship. Flow measurement. Dimensional analysis and similarity. Introduction to turbomachinery.

### 52.131 Introductory Geology for Engineers

[Three lectures per week and 15 hours laboratory. First half-year]

Principles of physical and structural geology. Elementary stratigraphy. Applied geomorphology. Geologic surveying and mapping. Elementary seismology; microzoning and seismotectonic hazard evaluation. Engineering properties, description and identification of geologic materials. Geology of water supply and the general applications of geology to engineering.

### 52.141 Structures I

[Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week]

Analysis of determinate structures; approximate analysis of indeterminate structures, plastic analysis of

framed structures; appreciation of structural systems.

### **52.151 Surveying**

[Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Introduction to land surveying theory and practice for Civil Engineers. Principles of typical surveying equipment and of its operation and application.

### **52.211 Properties of Materials and Design**

[Three lectures and two hours drawing office per week]

The analysis and design of components of civil engineering structures. Further properties of civil engineering materials.

### **52.221 Fluid Mechanics II**

[Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week]

Laminar viscous flows and elements of lubrication.

Turbulent viscous flows. The nature of turbulent fluid flow.

Fundamentals of external flows, laminar and turbulent boundary layers, separation, lift and drag, velocity distribution and resistance to flows.

Internal flows, velocity distribution and resistance in pipe flow, pipe networks, unsteady flows in pipelines. Compressive flows in pipelines and pipeline conveyance.

Open channel flow. Energy and momentum concepts applied to steady and unsteady open channel flow. Gradually and spatially varied flow. Open channel transitions. Resistance in open channel flows.

Loose Boundary Hydraulics: threshold of motion, movement by wind and water, bed forms, resistance to flow and calculation of rating curves, sediment transport, stable channel design, elements of river control works. Water waves: simple linear waves, wave celerity, orbital motion, interference, refraction, diffraction, wave energy and wave forces, shoaling waves.

### **52.231 Geomechanics I**

[Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week]

Nature and classification of soils. Physical properties of soils and rocks: density, permeability, stress-strain relationships, strength. Fluid flow in soils. Consolidation theory. States of stress in earth masses. Settlement analysis. Stability problems: bearing capacity, slope stability, earth pressures on retaining structures.

### **52.241 Structures II**

[Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week]

Analysis of indeterminate structures by force and displacement methods. Moment distribution and moment area methods for framed structures. Analysis of frames subject to dynamic loads.

### **52.271 Traffic and Highway Engineering**

[Two lectures and one shared tutorial per week]

Basic elements of intersection and highway capacity, intersection design, signal control design, theoretical analysis of traffic flow. Introduction to traffic and transportation planning. Transport in NZ.

Highway location, geometrics and alignment design. Earthwork volumes. Setting out works. Pavement design. Roading materials. Construction techniques.

### **52.301 Special Topic in Civil Engineering**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

A course on a topic in Civil Engineering to be determined each year by the Head of Department of Civil Engineering.

### **52.311 Mechanics and Properties of Materials**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

A selection of topics from the following:

Elasticity and plasticity; experimental methods; beams, plates and shell theory; stability of structural sections, analysis of joints; shear walls and deep beams; civil engineering materials; further material on traditional materials as well as information on modern advances.

### **52.321 Hydrology**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Introduction to hydrology, precipitation, interception, evaporation, transpiration, infiltration, groundwater, runoff and hydrographs, storage, flood estimation and flood routing, soil erosion. Elements of river control work. Introduction to concepts of coastal engineering.

### **52.322 Fluid Mechanics III**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Introduction to the generalised form of equations of motion and to concept of potential flow. Introduction to flow through porous medium and application of potential flow techniques to analysis of flow through porous media, unsteady groundwater flow and leaky aquifers, intrusion of salt water.

Introduction to the theory of water waves, wave forces and coastal processes.

Introduction to the elements of dispersion and diffusion into water and atmosphere.

### **52.323 Water Resources Engineering**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Introduction to synthetic hydrology, reservoir capacity and yield analysis, design of flood control structures, irrigation and drainage, urban drainage, introduction to coastal engineering, water resources systems engineering, and related topics.

### **52.331 Geotechnical Engineering**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Site investigation. Application of engineering geology. Foundation engineering: selection; design; construction. Problems associated with house foundations. Foundation instrumentation and observed performance. Geotechnical processes, compaction. Applications of rock mechanics.

**52.332 Geomechanics II**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

A selection from the following:

Further strength and stress strain properties of soils and rocks. Numerical methods applied to steady and transient fluid flow in soils. Soil dynamics applied to earthquake engineering and foundation vibrations. Earth and rock fill dams: design and construction. Soil structure interaction: beams on elastic foundations, laterally loaded piles, flexible bulkheads, tunnels, culverts, conduits and silos: design loadings. Reinforcement of soil and rock masses. Computer-oriented design methods.

**52.341 Structures III**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Direct stiffness method for truss and frame structures; energy theorems; approximate methods for asymmetrical buildings, multibeam bridges, simple cable networks and shell structures.

**52.361 Civil Engineering Design I**

[Two lectures and one two-hour drawing office class per week. First half-year]

Civil Engineering design with emphasis on concrete and steel structures involving continuity.

**52.362 Civil Engineering Design II**

[Two lectures and one two-hour drawing office class per week. Second half-year]

Introduction to further design techniques including structures in which seismic considerations are important.

**52.371 Traffic Systems Design**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Signal control design, linking and area control. Traffic management techniques. Driver characteristics and safety. Traffic control devices and design application. Design of parking and street lighting. Introduction to traffic flow and queueing theory, systems simulation and applications.

**52.381 Civil Engineering Administration**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week, first half-year. Three lectures and one tutorial per week, second half-year]

An introduction to financial, legal and managerial principles, and their application to problems in civil engineering management. Systems approach to decision making. Topics related to professional engineering practice.

**52.382 Management Techniques**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Introduction to project planning and the making and implementation of decisions.

**52.383 Accounting for Engineers**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

An introduction to the principles of accounting practice.

**52.391 Public Health Engineering**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Water use, supply and treatment. Urban drainage. Waste-water treatment and disposal. Water pollution control. Solid waste management. Air pollution control. Planning and environmental factors relevant to provision of public health engineering works.

**52.392 Water Quality Engineering**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Chemistry and microbiology of water. Unit operations and process design in water and waste-water treatment. Engineering management of natural water quality.

**52.393 Maritime Engineering**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Waves, tides and currents. Wave forces. Wave-structure interaction. Floating structures. Offshore structures. Pipeline design and construction. Coastal processes. Ports and harbours. Breakwaters.

**53.111 Electrical Engineering IG**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

An introductory course, with principal emphasis on electric circuit theory and electronics.

**53.112 Electrical Engineering for Mining**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Introduction to electric power generation, transmission and distribution systems. Motor characteristics, theory and control and application in mining and mineral processing plants. Special problems of electrical equipment in mines, flame proofing, intrinsic safety, earth leakage protection. Concepts of instrumentation in mining and mineral processing plants. Control systems. Telemetry in instrumentation. Electrical safety regulations in mines.

**53.121 Networks**

[Two lectures in the first half-year, one in the second half-year and one tutorial per week]

Basic network theory and network theorems. Signal waveforms. Network response. Introduction to single and three-phase A.C. circuits. A.C. bridges.

**53.132 Linear Electronics**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half year]

Biasing BJTs and FETs, SOAR curves, hybrid  $\pi$  circuits,  $h$  and  $y$  parameters, active circuit analysis, operational amplifiers – biasing, simple low-pass all-pass and high-pass filters, feedback amplifiers, frequency response of linear amplifiers.

**53.141 Power Apparatus and Systems I**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Review of electromagnetic theory. Magnetic mate-

rials and their properties with D.C. and A.C. excitation. The magnetic circuit. The single phase transformer. Introduction to electrical machines.

### **53.181 Digital Electronics and Computer Systems**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

Digital electronics: decision elements, basic logic systems, logic memory elements, logic families, sequential logic systems. Computer systems: finite-state systems, microprocessor systems, mathematical operations, operations on analogue signals, microprogramming.

### **53.204 Electrical Engineering Design**

[Three hours per week]

Electric wiring conventions. Regulations, standard and codes. The protection of circuits and equipment. The properties and selection of materials. Thermal design. Reliability of circuits and systems. Printed circuit techniques. Electromagnetic shielding. Computer-aided circuit analysis.

### **53.211 Electrical Engineering IIS**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Electronic devices, small signal amplifier theory. Analogue computing systems, simulation. Electronic logic elements, digital systems, digital arithmetic, microprocessor operation. Hybrid computation.

### **53.222 Networks and Signals**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year.]

Bridge circuits; resonance,  $Q$ , gain bandwidth considerations, tuned coupled circuits; Laplace transforms; pole-zero diagrams and applications; Two Port coupling networks; filter design using Image Parameters, frequency and impedance transformation; filter design using appropriate methods; active filter design. Signal levels and logarithmic units, signal spectrum and transmission in band limited channels, modulation techniques, electrical noise.

### **53.232 Analogue Electronics**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Noise, bandwidth, power amplifiers, switching circuits, thyristors, power supplies, linear and switched mode, non-linear operational amplifier circuits, multipliers, dividers, log amplifiers, analogue-digital and digital-analogue conversion, sample-and-hold.

### **53.241 Power Apparatus and Systems II**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Multi-circuit and polyphase transformers. Motor starting and speed control. Power electronics. Synchronous machines: infinite busbar operation; load sharing; stability. Elements of power supply systems.

### **53.251 Transmission Lines and Fields**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Vector analysis revision; static fields; the electric field and materials; fields varying in time; Maxwell's equations; electromagnetic waves; Poynting's theorem; skin effect. Transmission lines with distributed constants; surges on lines; AC lines; standing waves, resonance and antiresonance; Smith chart; common transmission lines, parameters, higher order modes; high frequency lines, communication lines and high power lines. Introduction to antennas and radio systems.

### **53.271 Control Systems**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Analysis of linear control systems. Stability criteria. Design methods based on Nyquist, Bode, and Nicols plots. Root locus methods. Analogue computer simulation.

### **53.281 Microcomputer Engineering**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Central processor architecture, memory systems, input-output, system buses, assemblers and assembly language programming, development systems, real-time industrial control using microprocessors, examples.

### **53.301 Project in Electrical Engineering**

[Six hours per week in the first half-year, seven in the second half-year]

A student is required to submit a report on project work carried out on a topic assigned by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering. The work shall be supervised by a member of the staff. The report shall carry the weight of three papers.

### **53.302 Advanced Electrical Engineering A**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Two modules chosen from the following list of three: **Advanced Electronics A.** High frequency device models; transient and frequency response of basic amplifier configurations; power amplifiers; stability and frequency response of feedback amplifiers; oscillators; mixers; computer-aided active network analysis.

**Power Systems.** Power system components; control of power and frequency; reactive power and voltage control; introduction to load flow and fault analysis; steady state, transient, and dynamic stability; AC and DC power transmission; protection; load forecasting and management; reliability.

**Communication Systems.** Modulation techniques, AM and FM, intermodulation; filtering and equalisation; electrical noise, noise figure, noise in cascaded networks; introduction to digital techniques, sampling theorems, anti-aliasing, linear and log-PCM, quantisation-noise; wideband techniques, FM-FDM, PCM-TDM.

### **53.303 Advanced Electrical Engineering B**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Two modules chosen from the following list of three:

**Advanced Electronics B.** Topics selected from:

Linear voltage regulators; switch-mode regulators; Cuk converter; difference amplifiers; operational amplifiers; phase locked loops; A/D and D/A conversion; sample and hold circuits; charge-coupled devices; opto-electronics; transducers; integrated circuit techniques.

**Radio Systems.** VHF/UHF/microwave systems; instrumentation and measurement techniques; transmission lines and distributed circuit elements; devices and components; antennas; propagation; noise and system dynamic range.

**Microprocessors and Control.** Proportional control using a microprocessor; sampling considerations; D/A and A/D conversion; stability considerations; integral control; the digital integrator; proportional and integral control; 3-term digital controller; computer control; z-transforms; discrete data systems; controller design for microprocessor systems.

**53.304 Special Topic in Electrical and Electronic Engineering**

[Three hours per week. Second half-year]

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

**53.311 Applied Electricity**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

A course on electrical and electronic components and circuits leading to the study of industrial instrumentation, control systems and application of electrical energy.

**53.312 Electrical Engineering for Civil Engineers**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

A descriptive introduction to electric power generation, transmission and distribution systems. Three phase theory and practice. Elementary theory of the induction motor, its control, and practical applications in civil engineering systems. Electrical safety and regulations. Concepts of instrumentation in engineering; transducers, digital logic and systems; aspects of solid state devices, analogue computers and applications; microprocessors and microcomputers; control systems; telemetry in instrumentation.

**53.313 Analytical Techniques in Electrical Engineering**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

The study of a number of advanced mathematical techniques appropriate to the broad field of electrical engineering applications.

**53.321 Applied Network Synthesis**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Passive Network Synthesis: Filter concepts and Network Functions, Review of approximation techniques including Butterworth, Chebyshev, Elliptic and Bessel approximations. Frequency transforma-

tions. Foster and Cauer synthesis. Synthesis of singly and doubly terminated LC networks. Design of LC filters using filter tables.

Active Filter Synthesis: Basis of active filter synthesis. Single amplifier Biquad circuits. The 3 amplifier Biquad. Gytrators and generalised Imittance Converters. Multiple feedback filter structures. Sensitivity considerations. The effects of finite operational amplifier bandwidth on filter performance. Allpass circuits and delay equalisation. Constant phase difference networks. Operational simulation of LC ladder networks. Switched capacitor filters.

**53.322 Signal Processing**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Analysis and processing of continuous signals. Quantitative and statistical treatment of signal distortion, random signals and electrical noise. Discrete-time signals and introduction to digital signal processing.

**53.332 Custom Integrated Electronic Design**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Semiconductor device modelling. Thick film circuits. Surface mounting techniques. Gate arrays. Programmable gate arrays. LSI/VLSI technology. Computer aided design of printed circuits, thick film circuits, and gate arrays. Computer aided design, checking and simulation of VLSI circuits. Testing of VLSI circuits. Applications of these technologies.

**53.342 Power Systems**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Broad overview of the generation, transmission, and distribution systems. Characteristics of load and generation. System economics. The power transmission line. Plant models. Behaviour under normal and abnormal conditions.

**53.343 Advanced Power System Topics**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Computer analysis, control and protection. State estimation. Economic optimisation. Reliability. Dynamic behaviour.

**53.344 Power System Plant**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Thermodynamic energy cycles and thermal power plant. Hydraulic pumps and turbines. Control and instrumentation.

**53.352 Communication Systems**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Basic principles and techniques required for the design of an information transmission system.

**53.353 Digital Communications**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Advanced principles and techniques in digital transmission systems: signal coding, data compression, digital modulation, digital transmission, error detection and correction. Digital networks. Information theories. Traffic theories.

**53.362 Microwave and Optical Engineering**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]



Microwave systems; waveguides, passive components, resonators and filters. Microwave network theory, waveguide discontinuities. Microwave sources. Aperture antennas. Optical communication systems; propagation in optical fibres, attenuation, step-index and graded-index fibres, sources and detectors.

### **53.363 Electromagnetic Fields and Waves**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Systematic approach to electromagnetics as a basis for more advanced work in electromagnetic wave propagation, antennas, and microwaves.

### **53.371 Advanced Control Engineering**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

State-space analysis, relationship to transfer function methods and analogue computer simulation. Controllability, observability and decomposition of state-space. Eigenvalue assignment using state variable feedback. Observers. Digital control systems, design and realisation of digital controllers and their relationship to digital filters. Nonlinear systems, phase-plane and describing function techniques. Design of controllers for nonlinear systems.

### **53.382 Software Engineering**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Programming languages. Data structures. Principles and practices of software reliability and design methodologies.

### **53.383 Computer Systems**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Computer Architecture – Main frames/micro-processors; Multiprocessing systems; Memory systems – disk, main, virtual, distributed processing; Special purpose processors; Commercial computer networking.

### **53.390 Power Semiconductor Applications**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Power devices and device physics; thyristors, GTOs, transistors, FETs, IGTs. Conversion processes: AC-DC, DC-DC, DC-AC, UPS, switched mode power supplies.

DC motor drives: thyristor control, chopper control. AC motor drives: current source inverters, voltage source inverters.

Motor control techniques: inverter control, reduced voltage starters.

Drive system economics.

### **54.111 Engineering Mathematics I**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week]

Basic algebra and calculus of elementary functions of a real variable, introduction to complex arguments, linear algebra and matrix methods, geometrical properties such as curvature and arc length, power-series and indeterminate forms, differentiation and integration. Application to engineering problems will be stressed and assisted by curve sketching in rectangular and polar forms and by numerical methods. Ordinary differential equations including first order,

second order constant coefficient and elementary simultaneous equations. Introduction to Laplace transforms.

Partial differentiation, evaluation of multiple integrals, vector analysis, grad, div, curl and integral theorems.

Statistical and probabilistic methods, sampling theory, estimation and confidence intervals, regression and correlation, exploratory data analysis.

Problem solving, formulation and representation of algorithms, the FORTRAN language, use of the undergraduate computer system.

### **54.112 Engineering Mathematics IS**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week]

As for 54.111 Engineering Mathematics I, plus:

Introductory Computer modelling.

### **54.211 Engineering Mathematics II**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

A selection from the following topics.

Ordinary differential equations, Laplace transforms, systems of equations, analytical and numerical methods.

Linear algebra: vector spaces, computational methods for solving systems of equations and eigenproblems.

LU factorization. Applications.

Linear programming, simplex procedure.

Nonlinear optimisation.

Complex variable theory, analytic functions, conformal mappings, evaluation of integrals, Laurent expansions, residues.

Partial differential equations. Derivation of equations, one-dimensional heat and wave equations.

Fourier series. Separation of variables, boundary conditions, solution of Laplace's equations in rectangular and polar co-ordinates, Bessel functions. Numerical Methods for solving PDEs.

### **54.212 Engineering Mathematics IISA**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week, first half-year]

Ordinary differential equations: Laplace transforms; linear differential equations and applications, boundary value problems for wave, diffusion and Laplace's equation, Fourier Series and separation of variables methods. Numerical methods for ordinary and partial differential equations. Computational linear algebra, eigenvalues and eigenvectors.

### **54.213 Engineering Mathematics IISB**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week, second half-year]

Engineering statistics. Model fitting, linear models and the least-squares principle. Linear regression, least-squares estimates, Gauss-Markov Theorem, parameter prediction, multiple regression. Analysis of variance, confidence intervals, paired and multiple comparison problems.

### **54.241 Continuum Mechanics I**

[Two lectures in the first half-year, three in the

second half-year, and one tutorial per week]

Vector and tensor analysis; analysis of stress and strain; constitutive relations and field equations; analytical and numerical solutions of problems in fluid mechanics and linear elasticity; finite difference and finite element methods. Open channel flow.

#### **54.251 Operations Research I**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

Linear programming, simplex and revised simplex methods, duality and dual simplex, sensitivity and post-optimal analysis, modelling and applications. Integer programming, including cutting planes and branch and bound techniques; dynamic programming with applications; network analysis, transportation and flow problems.

#### **54.291 Engineering Science Design**

[One lecture and one two-hour drawing office class per week in the first half-year; three contact hours per week in second half-year]

Analysis of simple structures; design of steel beams, columns and trusses and reinforced concrete beams: effects of earthquakes.

Systems analysis and design concepts applied to the computer solution of engineering problems, particularly in continuum mechanics and operations research, including preparation of initial specifications, implementation of algorithms and presentation of results.

#### **54.301 Special Topic in Engineering Science A**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics.

#### **54.302 Special Topic in Engineering Science B**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics.

#### **54.304 Project in Engineering Science**

[Equivalent in weight to two elective papers]

An investigation carried out under the supervision of a member of staff on a topic assigned by the Head of the Department of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics. A written report on the work must be submitted.

*No final examination. Grade assessed on the work done and the report.*

#### **54.312 Engineering Mathematics IIISA**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

A course in advanced engineering mathematics including such subjects as variational calculus, advanced linear algebra, computational linear algebra, nonlinear optimisation, solution of nonlinear equations, statistics.

#### **54.313 Engineering Analysis A**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

An approved choice of three modules from a list prepared each year by the Head of the Department of

Theoretical and Applied Mechanics. The list will include modules from the subject areas of Engineering Mathematics, Computational Techniques, Engineering Statistics, Mechanics and Operations Research.

#### **54.314 Engineering Analysis B**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

An approved choice of three modules from a list prepared each year by the Head of the Department of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics. The list will include modules from the subject areas of Engineering Mathematics, Computational Techniques, Engineering Statistics, Mechanics and Operations Research.

#### **54.315 Engineering Mathematics IIISB**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

A course in advanced engineering mathematics including such subjects as the theory and application of complex variables, integral transforms and integral equations.

#### **54.322 Computational Techniques for Partial Differential Equations**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Classification of partial differential equations. Method of characteristics. Similarity solutions, use of integral transforms. Finite boundary element methods.

#### **54.341 Continuum Mechanics II**

[Two lectures per week]

(a) Mechanics of solids including such topics as elastostatics in two and three dimensions, elastodynamics, thermoelasticity, principles of structural analysis, etc.

(b) Mechanics of fluids including such topics as potential flow, vorticity dynamics, boundary layer analysis and an introduction to compressible flow, turbulence, wave motion, and hydrodynamic stability.

#### **54.343 Mechanics of Structures**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Such topics as the static, stability and dynamic analysis of framed structures, shells, membrane and cable structures.

Assignments will require a reasonable facility at computer programming.

#### **54.351 Operations Research II**

[Two lectures per week]

Introduction to deterministic and stochastic models in such areas as inventory control, reliability, decision processes, scheduling; digital computer simulation, Monte Carlo methods. (Professional practice in O.R., case studies, and computer packages with applications will be covered in Engineering Science Laboratory)

#### **54.352 Stochastic Methods in Operations Research**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

The application of non-deterministic methods in Operations Research, including topics such as Markov

processes, stochastic programming, time series analysis, forecasting.

#### **54.361 Control Theory**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]  
As for 53.371 Advanced Control Engineering.

#### **55.101 Mechanics of Solids I**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Dynamics; kinematics and kinetics in two and three dimensions. Vibrations. Mechanics of solids and structures; bending moment and shear-force diagrams of determinate beams and frames, stresses in beams, deflection of beams. Stresses in shafts. Thin-walled pressure vessels. Buckling of columns. Analysis of stress, Mohr's circle diagram.

#### **55.102 Mechanical Engineering IE**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Introduction to the fundamentals of thermodynamics, power cycles and heat transfer. Elementary stress analysis. Miscellaneous topics.

#### **55.111 Thermodynamics and Fluid Mechanics I**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week]

Thermodynamic variables, thermostatics and hydrostatics. Integral equations of conservation of mass, momentum and energy, equations of state. Applications to turbomachinery, power and refrigeration cycles.

#### **55.211 Thermodynamics and Fluid Mechanics II**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week]

Thermodynamic relations, dimensional analysis, advanced thermodynamic cycles. Integral equations of conservation of mass, momentum and energy, with application to energy conversion and heat transfer. Compressible flow in pipes and nozzles. Mixtures and solutions, combustion. Laminar and turbulent flow, elements of external flows.

#### **55.221 Engineering Dynamics**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Kinetics of particles and rigid bodies: force and acceleration, work and energy, impulse and momentum. Motion in three dimensions, gyroscopic motion. Applications to machines, friction devices, balancing. Free and forced vibration of single degree of freedom systems. Damping. Multiple degree of freedom and continuous systems.

#### **55.222 Control Engineering I**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Modelling of components, linearisation, system equations. Block diagrams, transfer functions, feedback. Control devices. Time response, performance characteristics. Stability, Routh-Hurwitz test. Frequency response, Bode and Nyquist diagrams.

#### **55.231 Industrial Administration**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

An introductory course for engineering students on the

organisational, financial and human relations aspects of management theory and practice.

#### **55.241 Mechanics of Solids II**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Analysis of stress and strain. Constitutive relations. Yield and fracture in metals. Bending of beams, elastic and plastic analysis of simple indeterminate beams and frames; torsion of shafts, non-circular and thin-walled sections; stability. Experimental stress analysis, testing methods; non-destructive testing.

#### **55.261 Mechanical Engineering Design I**

[One lecture and one two-hour drawing office class per week]

The concept, design and specification of machines, mechanical plant and structures. Relationship of production and design.

#### **55.271 Production Technology I**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

An introduction to the casting process including metallurgical and thermodynamic considerations, casting design and quality control, casting economics and the selection of casting and moulding methods; bulk forming processes, selection of methods and tools; an introduction to sheet forming; metal cutting, machinability and tool life; friction and lubrication; surface finish, metrology and inspection; an introduction to CAD/CAM.

#### **55.301 Project in Mechanical Engineering**

[Equivalent in weight to two elective papers]

A comprehensive investigation and report on a topic assigned by the Head of the Department of Mechanical Engineering.

*No final examination: Grade assessed on project report and year's work.*

#### **55.303 Special Topic in Mechanical Engineering**

[Three lectures per week. Either first or second half-year]

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mechanical Engineering.

#### **55.311 Applied Fluid Mechanics**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Differential equations of fluid motion and simple solutions, boundary layers, turbulent flow, heat transfer, lubrication. Turbomachinery. Two-phase flow.

#### **55.312 Applied Aerodynamics**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Wing theory, aircraft performance and stability. VTOL and STOL aircraft, ground effect vehicles. Propellers, windmills. Natural winds, the earth's boundary layer. Wind effects on buildings and structures. Aeroelasticity. Compressible flow.

#### **55.321 Control Engineering II**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Classical linear control theory as applied to mechanical and other relevant systems: an introduction to state-space methods and to digital control techniques.

### **55.322 Mechanical Vibrations**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Vibration of multiple degree of freedom and continuous systems. Vibrations in rotating machinery. Vibration control: isolation, absorption, damping. Vibration measurement, frequency analysis and modal analysis. Sound and structural vibration.

### **55.323 Microprocessors in Mechanical Control Systems**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

An introduction to modern control methods as applied to mechanical and other systems. Digital control algorithms and state-space techniques. Incorporation of microprocessors into mechanical systems.

### **55.324 Acoustics**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Subjective reactions. Noise control, absorption, dissipation, insulation and planning. Performance of materials. The acoustics of enclosures, rooms and electroacoustics.

### **55.331 Industrial Engineering**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

An introduction to the problems associated with effective industrial management and the techniques used to solve them. The course considers both the human and technological aspects of productivity improvement procedures, applied to NZ industry.

### **55.332 Manufacturing Systems**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

An introduction to current concepts in the design and operation of modern manufacturing systems. This includes the technological, economic and social aspects surrounding the use of computer integrated manufacturing and robotic systems.

### **55.333 Engineering Economics**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

A course intended to familiarise the student with the financial aspects of engineering management. Emphasis will be placed on topics such as alternative forms of costing, budgeting and profit planning, breakeven analysis, transfer pricing, replacement and maintenance policies, make or buy decisions and project cost estimation.

Techniques of evaluating project and capital equipment expenditure, including consideration of the sociological and environmental factors, will be studied for both private and public sector investments.

### **55.341 Mechanics of Deformation Processing**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Elastic stress analysis, theory of macroscopic and microscopic plasticity, strengthening mechanisms, fatigue, fracture, creep; visco-elasticity and behaviour of polymers; composites; selection of engineering materials.

### **55.342 Strength of Materials**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Analysis of stress and deformation in flat plates, axisymmetric shells, pressure vessels; structural frames; thermal stresses; stress waves in solids; failure analysis (including case studies).

### **55.351 Thermal Engineering**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Energy resources: their use and consequent environmental impacts. Economics of energy conversion. Engine cycles, emissions. Heat and mass transfer and applications: heat exchanger and drier design.

### **55.352 Applied Thermodynamics**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Combustion processes, equilibrium. Properties of mixtures and solutions; application in cycles. 2-phase flow. Magnetohydrodynamics and other advanced cycles. Heat transfer: radiation.

### **55.361 Mechanical Engineering Design II**

[Two lectures and one two-hour drawing office class per week]

*EITHER A. Plant and process design:* Design of mechanical structures. Handling of unit loads and bulk materials. Building services and environmental equipment. Selected plant equipment, e.g. pressure vessels.

*OR B. Machine design:* Manufacturing machinery. Engines, turbo machines, rotating assemblies. Vehicles. Dynamic structures. Jig and tool design. Product design.

*AND Lectures on professional mechanical engineering practice.*

*No final examination: Grade assessed on course assignments.*

### **55.371 Production Technology II**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Further studies in metal cutting processes. Metal forming processes: extrusion, drawing, rolling, swaging, stretching and deep drawing. Lubrication and metal-working. Vacuum forming, injection moulding and extrusion of plastics. The economics of manufacturing processes. Machine control systems. Case studies.

### **56.101 Mineral Engineering**

[Two lectures per week]

An introduction to the mineral industry as a basis for subsequent studies in mining and mineral processing. Mineral industry, world/New Zealand; economic importance. Stages in a mineral enterprise - exploration, development, production. Selection of method of exploitation - surface, underground, in situ. Importance of reserve and grade. Introduction to the processing of minerals. Principles governing underground and surface mining methods and processing. Environmental aspects and impact of mining and processing. Computer application in the mineral industry.

**56.111 Geology I for Mining**

[Two lectures per week and 25 hours laboratory. Second half-year]

Introductory petrology. Physical properties of rocks and interpretation of simple stress/strain phenomena in rocks. Geochemical systems. Introduction to mineral deposits and fossil fuels. Industrial rocks and minerals.

**56.201 Mineral Processing I**

[Four lectures per week, first half year. One lecture per week, second half year. One tutorial per week throughout the year]

Principles of characterisation and behaviour of particulate matter. Comminution physics and industrial crushing and grinding. Methods of mineral separation and selected plant practice. Principles of reliability and maintenance.

**56.202 Coal Preparation**

[Two lectures and one tutorial per week. Second half-year]

Coal properties and utilisation. Washability assessment and practice. Comminution and sizing and gravimetric separation techniques. Coal flotation. Environmental and economic considerations.

**56.203 Introduction to Mineralogy**

[Two lectures per week and three hours laboratory per week. First half year.]

Crystal morphology. Principles of optical microscopy. Principles of crystal chemistry. Systematic and determinative mineralogy.

**56.212 Mine Environment and Ventilation**

[Three lectures and one tutorial per week. First half-year]

Introduction to heat and mass transfer, assessment of underground comfort conditions; gases, dusts, humidity, heat flow and cooling.

Air flow distribution; networks, mechanical and natural ventilation. Methane drainage. Mine lighting. Noise. Environmental considerations of surface mining. Environmental statements.

**56.214 Units Operations in Mining**

[Two lectures per week first half-year. Three lectures per week, second half year. One tutorial per week throughout the year]

Principles of characterisation and behaviour of particulate matter. Hoisting and haulage. Rock breaking: cutting, ripping, drilling and blasting. Tunnelling and shaft sinking. Equipment used in unit operations and principles of reliability and maintenance.

**56.231 Mine Surveying**

[Three lectures per week and field work. Second half-year]

Introduction to land (including topographic) surveying theory and practice. Principles of typical surveying equipment and its operation and application. Introduction to mine surveying. Photogrammetry.

This paper will include attendance at a four-day field exercise prior to third professional year.

**56.301 Mineral Processing IIA**

[Three lectures per week. First half-year]

Modelling, mathematical descriptions, simulation and modelling of separation and comminution processes and circuits, on-stream analyses and mill control in mineral processing plants.

**56.302 Mineral Processing IIB**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Flotation; solution and surface chemistry as related to flotation reagents, conditioners, equipment, kinetics and plant practice. Design and operation of flotation circuits.

**56.303 Mineral Process and Plant Design**

[Two lectures per week first half-year, one lecture and three design office hours per week second half-year]

Ore body evaluation; feasibility studies and development economics. Design studies in mineral processing operations and circuits, process integration and flow sheet development. Evaluation of laboratory and pilot plant data. Equipment and process selection.

**56.304 Project in Mineral Process Engineering**

The candidate is required to submit a report on a topic in mineral engineering assigned by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering. The work will be supervised by a member of staff.

**56.312 Evaluation and Mineral Economics**

[Two lectures per week and 12 hours laboratory first half-year, two lectures per week second half-year]

Orebody evaluation, geostatistics. Mineral economics feasibility, taxation, metal pricing and marketing. Concept of exhaustibility and cut-off grade.

**56.313 Mine Design**

[One lecture per week and 12 laboratory hours first half-year, one lecture and three design office hours per week second-half year]

Design of mine layouts including services; environmental and economic assessments. Students will be required to do design exercises in surface and underground mining in both metalliferous and coal.

**56.314 Rock Mechanics**

[Three lectures per week and 15 laboratory hours. First half-year]

Behaviour of rock masses; rock properties, strength, deformation and failure. Laboratory and in situ testing, instrumentation. Analytical models of rock as linear elastic, plastic and visco-elastic media, numerical solutions. Underground excavation stability, rock-support interaction and slope stability. Ground control, rock improvement techniques and subsidence.

**56.315 Project in Mining Engineering**

The candidate is required to submit a report on a topic in mining engineering assigned by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering. The work will be supervised by a member of staff.

**56.316 Environmental Planning For Mining**

[Three lectures per week. Second half-year]

Physical, chemical and biological impacts associated with mining and mineral processing. Environmental controls. Legislative provisions. Rehabilitation planning and maintenance. Drainage and sediment control. Erosion control.

#### **56.317 Mine Production Engineering**

[Three lectures per week. First half year]

Mine production techniques in coal and metalliferous mining. Special topics in coal and metalliferous mining. Safety.

#### **56.318 Bulk Materials Handling**

[Three lectures per week. Second half year]

Analysis of bins, hoppers, conveyors. Flow and mixing of mineral slurries: thickening, filtration and drying. Pelletising. Stacking, blending, homogenising, reclaiming.

#### **Practical Work**

1. Before enrolling for papers of the Second Professional Examination, candidates for the BE Degree are required to have completed to the approval of the Faculty of Engineering a recognised course in Workshop Practice. A candidate who has attended a similar course elsewhere before enrolling at the University of Auckland may apply to the Faculty for that course to be approved. Candidates who have been exempted by the Senate from the First Provisional Examination are not required to complete a course in Workshop Practice.

2. (a) Except as otherwise provided, candidates may not be admitted to the Degree until they have obtained approved practical experience in workshops and engineering works for at least 1200 hours.

It is expected that they will undertake such practical experiences during Summer vacations and that they will have completed at least one period of such work before enrolling for papers of the Second Professional Examination. All practical work must be approved by Faculty and shall meet the requirements of the appropriate department as set out in the current School of Engineering Handbook.

(b) The first period of practical work should permit candidates to become familiar with engineering processes and trade skills, particularly those appropriate to the branch of engineering being followed. Subsequent periods shall be related to the particular branch of engineering and may include work of a sub-professional nature. It is expected that the experience gained will be as broad as possible. The advice of the appropriate departmental member of the Practical Work Committee of the Faculty of Engineering may be sought before employment is accepted.

(c) At the conclusion of each period of practical work a candidate must submit to the Faculty: (i) a certificate signed by the employer showing the type of work carried out, the dates covered, the number of hours worked and the standard of attendance and performance; (ii) a satisfactory report on the work performed.

Official certificates and instructions on the form of report required may be obtained from the School of Engineering office. Reports shall be submitted not later than 31 July following completion of the work period. They will then be assessed and graded. Only in exceptional circumstances will late submissions be accepted. In order to allow sufficient time for assessment, final reports for candidates who wish to take part in the graduation ceremony should be submitted before 1 March.

(d) The Faculty of Engineering may approve the reduction in the 1200 hours practical work requirement for candidates who have been exempted by the Senate from the First Professional Examination. Any such reduction will depend on the nature and extent of employment undertaken before enrolment in the BE Degree Course. Evidence of such work may be required. In all cases at least one report on a total work period of not less than 400 hours must be submitted. Candidates must make application in writing to the Faculty by 1 April in the year of first enrolment in order to ascertain the requirements that must be fulfilled in each case. They are advised to consult a member of the Practical Work Committee of the Faculty of Engineering before submitting such application.

#### **Laboratory and Field Work**

1. Laboratory work related to papers of the First and Second Professional Examinations of the course is undertaken in integrated programmes designated First Professional Laboratories and Second Professional Laboratories.

2. In order to gain the formal recognition of having completed the laboratory work necessary for admission to the Degree, a candidate shall attend the First Professional Laboratory and Second Professional Laboratory courses, carry out the experiments and submit reports, to a required standard.

3. Laboratory work related to papers of the Third Professional Examination is an integral part of each paper. A candidate's satisfactory attendance and performance, including the submission of reports, forms a part of the requirement for a pass in each paper.

4. Candidates taking the papers Surveying and Traffic and Highway Engineering shall, to a required standard, undertake Field Work, including the submission of reports.

5. As part of their Degree course, candidates may be required to go on field trips to study engineering plant and works. The requirements in respect of such plant visits will be specified each year.

---

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR ME**

**50.401 Project A**

**50.421 Project C**

**50.411 Project B**

**50.431 Project D**

(Value two papers)

A candidate may take the equivalent of three single

paper projects. For example, a candidate may take Projects A, B, and C, or Project D and one of Projects A, B, and C. A candidate is required to submit a report on each project carried out. These projects may include design studies, a survey and evaluation of modern advances in a branch of engineering, a small experimental or theoretical research project, the development of a new design procedure, the development of a computer package.

#### **51.411 Advanced Process Control**

Advanced concepts of control, stability and optimisation. Analysis of non-linear systems. Computer control.

#### **51.412 Chemical Engineering Seminar**

A graduate course on a topic or topics from the advanced fields of fluid mechanics, transport phenomena, heat transfer, particulate technology, chemical reactors and fuel technology.

#### **51.413 Studies in Chemical Engineering**

An advanced course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.

#### **51.414 Biochemical Engineering Seminar**

A graduate course on selected topics in biochemical engineering; biological reactors, fermentation, protein processing and enzymology.

#### **51.415 Advanced Chemical Engineering**

An advanced course on selected topics such as fluid flow, rheology, heat transfer, mass transfer, separation processes.

#### **51.421 Advanced Materials**

An advanced course on selected topics in materials science or materials engineering.

#### **51.422 Materials Seminar**

A graduate course on a topic or topics in the field of materials to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.

#### **51.423 Studies in Materials Engineering**

An advanced course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Chemical and Materials Engineering.

#### **52.401 Special Seminar in Civil Engineering A**

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Civil Engineering.

#### **52.402 Special Seminar in Civil Engineering B**

An advanced course on a topic to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Civil Engineering.

#### **52.411 Mechanics and Properties of Materials Seminar**

Special topics selected from recent developments in the mechanics and properties of selected materials used in civil engineering.

#### **52.421 Fluid Mechanics Seminar**

Special topics selected from fluid dynamics, water resources engineering, statistics and numerical methods.

#### **52.422 Advanced Fluid Mechanics**

Selected topics from applied fluid mechanics and hydraulics.

#### **52.423 Coastal Engineering**

Waves, wave theories, wave forces on structures. Breakers, tsunamis, flow induced oscillations, resonance problems, tidal estuaries. Sediment transport by waves. Topics from coastal and harbour engineering.

#### **52.424 Advanced Water Resources**

Selected topics from hydrology and water resources engineering.

#### **52.431 Earthquake Engineering**

The fundamentals of seismology including earthquake waves, magnitudes and felt-intensities. The damaging effects of earthquake upon land and the constructions of man. Study of some relevant historical earthquakes. Strong earthquake motions and the vibratory response of land and buildings. Fundamentals of the earthquake-resistant design of engineering structures.

#### **52.432 Geomechanics Seminar**

Advanced studies of recent developments in theoretical soil mechanics.

#### **52.433 Applied Geomechanics**

Application of the principles of soil mechanics, rock mechanics and engineering geology to practical problems in civil engineering.

#### **52.434 Earth Structures**

The stability, deformation, design and construction of earth structures.

#### **52.441 Structural Dynamics**

Vibration theory. Linear theory of discrete and continuous systems including the shear beam and coupled shear walls. Introduction to the non-linear theory of vibration. Response of structures to earthquake, traffic and wind loading. Response spectra concepts. Normal mode analysis. Numerical integration techniques.

#### **52.442 Structures Seminar**

Selected topics from recent developments in structural analysis and design.

#### **52.443 Structural Analysis**

Analytical methods for some or all of the following structures: space frames and grids, shear wall systems, folded plate structures, bridge superstructures. Solution techniques will include approximate methods, matrix and computer methods. Optimisation techniques and computer-aided design may also be included.

#### **52.444 Space Structures**

Selected topics in the analysis of space structures such as cable structures, plate and shell structures. Special consideration for stability, elasticity and plasticity may also be included.

#### **52.451 Environmental Law**

See prescriptions for LLB, paper 25.313

#### **52.461 Structural Design**

Design philosophies. Special considerations in steel, reinforced concrete, prestressed concrete and masonry

structural design. The background to and the use of design codes.

#### **52.471 Traffic Engineering**

Design and capacity of highways and intersections, motorways and interchanges, weaving sections and rotaries. Traffic control and safety. Accident studies and analyses. Co-ordination of traffic signals and area traffic control. Travel and delay studies. Planning and design for pedestrian and vehicular traffic. Large-scale parking.

#### **52.472 Transportation Engineering Seminar**

Selected topics from recent developments in the planning and design of transport facilities and systems.

#### **52.473 Transportation Planning**

Land use, transport and travel. Spatial interaction models. Data surveys. Forecasting techniques. Analytical models for trip generation/attraction, distribution, assignment and modal split. Urban planning models. Model and network tests. Operational, economic and environmental evaluations. Computer programmes.

#### **52.474 Transportation Systems Analysis**

Selected analytical techniques taken from: probability and statistics, queuing theory, simulation, linear and dynamic programming, network flow and allocation algorithms, as applied to the planning and design of transport facilities. Characteristics of transport systems and urban structure. Economic evaluation of transport projects. Transport systems planning techniques applied to urban planning.

#### **52.481 Project Management A**

Planning, organisation and control of large engineering projects.

#### **52.482 Case Studies in Project Management**

Analysis of the management of some large engineering projects currently in hand or recently completed.

#### **52.483 Project Management B**

Estimating and cost control, contracts and decisions.

#### **52.491 Public Health Engineering Seminar**

Selected topics from water and wastewater engineering pollution control.

#### **53.401 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering a**

#### **53.402 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering B**

#### **53.403 Studies in Electrical and Electronic Engineering C**

Advanced courses on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering.

#### **53.432 Electronic Circuits and Systems**

A graduate course covering state of the art topics in Advanced Electronics including: computer aided circuit analysis; non-linear circuit concepts; oscillators; mixers; power amplifiers; stability; noise.

#### **53.441 Heavy Current Electronics**

Selected topics in the utilisation of thyristor devices in industrial electrical engineering applications.

#### **53.451 Digital Signal Processing**

Fast Fourier transform (FFT) discrete operations via FFT digital filters, finite impulse (FIR) and infinite impulse response (IIR); design techniques for FIR and IIR filters; hardware implementations and noise analysis. State-space synthesis and non-linear behaviour of digital filters. Signal coding and bandwidth compression techniques. Two dimensional signal and image processing.

#### **53.452 VHF and UHF Radio Communication**

A course concerned with the planning and design of VHF and UHF Radio Communications Systems. Consideration will be given to analogue and digital systems, and both mobile and point-to-point services.

#### **53.461 Electromagnetic Theory**

Selected topics in electromagnetic theory. The emphasis is on mathematical analysis.

#### **53.471 Advanced Control Systems**

Theory of modern control systems with emphasis on optimisation techniques for both deterministic and stochastic processes. State-space modelling of dynamic systems and choice of suitable performance criteria. Examples of applications and discussion of computational problems.

#### **53.482 Advanced Microprocessor Techniques**

Review of the hardware and architecture of 8 and 16-bit devices; introduction to bit-slice technology, microprogrammed control. Input-output interfacing techniques, DMA control, interrupts etc. Development tools - both hardware and software; assemblers, high level languages. Application devices, e.g. digital signal processors, single-chip micro controllers.

#### **54.401 Studies in Engineering Science**

A graduate course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics.

#### **54.411 Studies in Engineering Mathematics**

A graduate course in Mathematics applied to Engineering problems on such topics as the theory of ordinary differential equations, partial differential equations, perturbation methods, advanced numerical analysis, etc.

#### **54.421 Finite Element Methods**

A graduate course on finite element formulations and applications to problems such as stress analysis, seepage, heat transfer and fluid flows.

#### **54.422 Nonlinear Optimisation**

A study of theoretical conditions for optimality in nonlinear optimisation and numerical methods for the solution of systems of nonlinear equations and constrained and unconstrained optimisation problems including the nonlinear least-squares problem.

#### **54.441 Studies in Continuum Mechanics A**

#### **54.442 Studies in Continuum Mechanics B**

Graduate courses in Continuum Mechanics covering topics in the mechanics of solids and fluids and other continua.

#### **54.451 Studies in Operations Research A**



**54.452 Studies in Operations Research B**

Graduate courses in recent developments in Operations Research and applications.

**54.453 Advanced Systems Analysis**

A graduate course on a selection of topics from systems analysis and operations research. This subject cannot be credited if 54.251 or 54.351 have previously been credited towards a degree.

**54.454 Random Processes**

A graduate course in the theory and application of discrete and continuous random processes including topics such as queuing models, Markov processes, information theory, Monte Carlo simulation, turbulence and random vibration.

**54.461 Studies in Control Theory**

A graduate course in modern Control Theory including such topics as optimal control, stochastic and nonlinear systems.

**54.481 Geothermal Modelling**

A study of mathematical methods currently used in geothermal reservoir engineering, and an introduction to the computer modelling of geothermal flows.

**54.491 Bio-engineering**

An introduction to the application of engineering principles and methods in biomedical research. Mechanical properties of living tissue: constitutive laws, structure/function relationships, myocardial and lung mechanics, haemodynamics. Biological control mechanisms. Electrophysiology. Instrumentation and measurement: principles and applications.

**55.401 Studies in Mechanical Engineering**

[Either half-year]

An advanced course on topics to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mechanical Engineering.

**55.411 Fluid Dynamics**

[First half-year]

Equations of fluid motion, laminar duct flow, laminar boundary layers and free shear layers, structure of turbulence, turbulent duct flow and turbulent shear layers.

**55.412 Aerodynamics**

[Second half-year]

Thin-airfoil theory, distributed singularity methods, lifting-line and lifting-surface theory, vortex lift; computation of boundary layers, prediction of drag and separation; bluff body flows, wind loading.

**55.413 Wind Engineering**

[Second half-year]

Basic meteorology and extreme wind speed analysis; planetary boundary-layer flow; wind structure; loads on engineering structures; dynamic response to turbulence; vortex shedding and aeroelastic effects; wind-tunnel testing.

**55.422 Mechanical Control Systems**

[Second half-year]

A selection of topics from modern control theory,

directed towards the application of appropriate techniques in the description and simulation of mechanical systems. Emphasis will be placed on a structured approach to the analysis of control systems.

**55.431 Manufacturing Analysis**

[First half-year]

Manufacturing engineering topics and advanced concepts of manufacturing analysis. Topics include industry studies, production management, CAD/CAM, manufacturing systems, automation quality assurance, reliability and economics.

**55.432 Manufacturing Automation and Robotics**

[Second half-year]

Advanced, yet practical automation measures for manufacturing industry, with major emphasis on flexible automation and industrial robots. Analytical aspects and application concepts, economics and case studies are considered, as well as general factors.

**55.433 Manufacturing Management**

[Second half-year]

A participative course of lectures and simulation exercises on topics including maintenance, production control, productivity measurement, quality control, purchasing, research and development of manufacturing projects. The material will be presented as a series of interactive manufacturing management problems for student evaluation.

**55.441 Mechanics of Materials**

[First half-year]

Theory of elasticity: equations of elasticity, stress functions, energy theorems, stress waves, elastic instability.

Theory of plasticity: criteria for yield and plastic flow, load bounding, the slip-line field theory. Fracture mechanics. Composite materials.

**55.442 Stress Waves and Vibrations**

[Second half-year]

Stress waves in elastic media: longitudinal, torsional and flexural waves in rods and bars, waves in bulk media. Elastic-plastic and viscoelastic waves. Vibration of multiple degree of freedom and continuous structures: matrix and approximate methods. Fluid-structure interaction.

**55.452 Reciprocating Internal Combustion Engines**

[Second half-year]

Combustion processes; calculations for Diesel and Otto cycles, including turbocharging; ideal, fuel-air and real cycles; use of alternative fuels as supplements or replacements.

**55.461 Computer Graphics and Computer Aided Design**

[Second half-year]

Fundamentals of computer graphics as related to applications in engineering, the mathematics of surface and solid geometry as applied to design and manufacturing, computer-aided draughting and design systems.

**55.471 Production Technology**

[First half-year]

Tribology and lubrication applied to metal working. Joining and assembly processes. Tool and die design. Metal cutting. Deformation processing.

**55.472 Metal Forming**

[Second half-year]

Plasticity, analysis of deformation processes, application of upper bound and slip-line field techniques to bulk forming of metals. Properties and behaviour of sheet metals, anisotropy, strain mapping, determination of forming limits.

**55.491 Heat Transfer Analysis**

[First half-year]

Analytical and numerical methods for solving problems of heat transfer by conduction, radiation and convection.

**55.492 Convective Heat Transfer**

[Second half-year]

Conservation equations for mass, momentum and energy; laminar flow in ducts; forced laminar boundary layer flows; turbulent flow in ducts; forced convection turbulent boundary layers; natural convection turbulent boundary layers; natural convection in enclosures.

**55.493 Geothermal Heat and Mass Transfer**

[Second half-year]

The application of the principles of heat and mass transfer to geothermal energy technology. Topics include transmission of geothermal fluids within the reservoir and through pipe networks; heat exchangers; condensers; waste heat rejection; economic considerations.

**56.401 Advanced Mineral Processing**

An advanced paper on a topic or topics in mineral processing to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering.

**56.402 Seminar in Mineral Processing**

A graduate-level paper on a selected aspect or aspects of mineral process engineering to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering.

**56.403 Advanced Flotation**

Surface chemistry and energetics of minerals in relation to flotation. Hydration, adsorption and particle bubble attachment. Flotation kinetics. Models of batch and continuous flotation. Simulation of flotation circuits. Flotation of ultrafine materials.

**56.404 Magnetic and Electrical Separation**

Magnetic and electrical properties of minerals. Dynamics of ore particles in magnetic and electrical fields. Models of magnetic electrostatic and electrodynamic

separation. Magnetic coagulation and filtration. Recent advances in magnetic and electrical separation equipment.

**56.405 Industrial Minerals**

The evaluation, processing, utilisation and development of non-metallic mineral resources.

**56.411 Advanced Mining Engineering**

An advanced paper on a topic or topics in mining engineering to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering.

**56.412 Seminar in Mining Engineering**

A graduate-level paper on a selected aspect or aspects of mining engineering to be determined each year by the Head of the Department of Mining Engineering.

**56.413 Advanced Mine Ventilation**

Advanced topics in underground environmental assessment and control. Optimisation of ventilation requirements.

**56.414 Advanced Geostatistics and Resource Evaluation**

Theoretical and practical geostatistics, including the application of commercial-scale computer packages to problems of natural resource evaluation. Further study of extraction policy formulation and cutoff grade decisions.

**56.415 Advanced Rock Mechanics**

Further topics in rock mechanics.

**56.416 Tunnelling and Quarrying Engineering**

The design and methods of excavation and support of tunnels. Operational aspects of quarries in New Zealand.

**86.401 Geothermal Systems and Technology**

Scope of geothermal projects, features of geothermal systems, properties of geothermal fluids. Introduction to geothermal exploration, production and utilisation technology. Reservoir engineering, economics, environmental and legal aspects. Case histories.

*Either***86.402 Geothermal Production Technology**

Drilling technology and completion tests, fluid transmission, thermodynamics and fluid mechanics of geothermal fluids, well operation and analysis. Reservoir modelling and assessment, corrosion and deposition, materials.

*or***86.403 Geothermal Energy Utilisation**

Applied thermodynamics. Industrial, agricultural and domestic use of heat, process heat. Power cycles and electricity generation. Waste disposal, land erosion, subsidence, environmental effects and reporting, tourist development, wilderness protection. Development planning and costing.

## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

### DIPLOMA IN GEOTHERMAL ENERGY TECHNOLOGY

#### DipGeothermTech

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology shall before enrolment for this Diploma

(a) have been admitted or have qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree in Science or Engineering or  
(b) have reached an equivalent level of attainment in science or engineering to the approval of the Senate.

2. Admission to the Course of study shall be at the discretion of the Senate on consideration of a recommendation from the Board of Studies, Geothermal Institute.

3. A candidate for the Diploma shall follow a Course of study of one year.

4. The Course of study for the Diploma shall consist of three parts. The Diploma shall be granted by examination.

#### Part I

A core paper in Geothermal Systems and Technology (86.100)

#### Part II

EITHER (a) Geothermal Exploration for Earth Scientists (86.101) and

(b) Geothermal Exploration Technology (86.102) OR

(c) Geothermal Production Technology (86.103) and

(d) Geothermal Energy Utilisation (86.104)

#### Part III

A project (86.606) on some aspect of Geothermal Energy

5. The project (86.606) shall be delivered to the Registrar by October 25 of the year of the candidate's enrolment for the Diploma, or such later date as may be approved by Senate.

6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1985.

#### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipGeothermTech

##### DIPLOMA IN GEOTHERMAL ENERGY TECHNOLOGY

The Course of study for this Diploma is taught under the auspices of the Geothermal Institute which has been set up within the University of Auckland by special funding from the United Nations Development Programme and the New Zealand Government. Teaching will be carried out within the Faculty of Science and the School of Engineering by the academic staff, and by visiting lecturers from Government agencies and private organisations engaged in geothermal exploration and development.

Applications for admission to this Diploma course by foreign students must be made to the Board of Studies, Geothermal Institute by 1 September (15 October for New Zealand students) for entry to the course in the following year. The number of students accepted for the course will be restricted each year.

**Note:** Any prospective student who has not passed the University Entrance Examination, who has been previously enrolled at a New Zealand University other than the University of Auckland, or who last attended an overseas university must apply for admission under the Admission Regulations as defined elsewhere in the Calendar.

Part I will be the equivalent of two papers. The examination for the Diploma shall be in three parts and must be passed as a whole.

#### Part 1 Geothermal Systems and Technology (86.100)

Scope of geothermal projects. Basic facts of geothermal systems. Introduction to geothermal exploration and technology. Reservoir engineering. Chemistry of thermal fluids. Economic, environmental and legal aspects. Case Studies.

#### Part 2 EITHER (a) Geothermal Exploration for Earth Scientists (86.101)

Petrology, secondary mineralisation and alteration. Drillhole logging. Geochemistry of geothermal fluids. Geophysical investigation of geothermal fields. Estimation and assessment of thermal field potential, and

(b) Geothermal Exploration Technology (86.102)

Planimetric and geological mapping techniques. Mapping and sampling of geothermal discharges. Geophysical prospecting techniques. Geochemical analysis. Drillhole logging techniques and instrumentation, OR

(c) Geothermal Production Technology (86.103)

Drilling techniques and completion tests, fluid transmission, thermodynamics and fluid mechanics of geothermal

fluids, well operation and analysis, reservoir modelling and assessment, corrosion and deposition, materials for geothermal plant, and

(d) Geothermal Energy Utilisation (86.104)

Applied thermodynamics. Industrial, agricultural and domestic use of heat. Process heat. Power cycles and electricity generation. Waste disposal, land erosion, subsidence. Environmental effects of geothermal wastes. Environmental Impact Report preparation. Assessment of geothermal fields as undeveloped natural resources, tourist development, wilderness protection. Development planning and costing.

### **Part 3**

A written project on some aspect of geothermal energy including some degree of original research by the candidate (86.606).

## **CERTIFICATE REGULATIONS**

### **CERTIFICATE IN GEOTHERMAL ENERGY TECHNOLOGY CertGeothermTech**

Each candidate for the Certificate has to enrol for the Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology. The course for the Certificate in Geothermal Energy Technology normally involves attendance at all lectures, laboratories and field trips of the papers 86.100 and *either* 86.101 and 86.102 *or* 86.103 and 86.104. However, during the year the candidate may be advised by Director of the Institute *EITHER* not to submit the project (86.606) and to continue with only those courses proceeding to a final written examination (i.e. 86.100, and *either* 86.101 and 86.102 *or* 86.103 and 86.104), *OR* to submit the project 86.606 and to continue with only two of the courses proceeding to a final written examination (86.100, 86.101, 86.102, 86.103, 86.104).

*Examinations:* Candidates will be assessed on their practical work and written tests during the course. The Certificate may be awarded for a pass in the following papers: 86.100 and *either* 86.101 and 86.102 *or* 86.103 and 86.104. *Alternatively*, the Certificate may be awarded for a pass in two of the following papers: 86.100, 86.101, 86.102, 86.103, 86.104, and a pass in the 86.606 project.

*Prerequisites:* As for Diploma in Geothermal Energy Technology.

---

# Faculty of Fine Arts

## *Contents*

---

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	370	Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts
	372	Degree of Master of Fine Arts

---

<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	374	Department of Art History
	374	Elam School of Fine Arts
	374	Studio Theory
	375	Studio for BFA
	376	Studio for MFA

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### ELAM SCHOOL OF FINE ARTS

The Elam School of Fine Arts offers the Bachelor of Fine Arts Degree of four years' duration, and the Master of Fine Arts Degree and the Master of Philosophy Degree, each of two years' duration. Courses of study for each of these degrees involves a proportion of studio activities and theoretical studies which can be varied to accommodate the needs of individual students.

#### Bachelor Of Fine Arts (BFA)

All students entering the first year of the BFA course take a common programme which consists of practical studio activities conducted in the School of Fine Arts and two papers presented by the Department of Art History. Studio sessions are held in the morning from 9 am – 1 pm and the Art History study in the afternoons between 2 pm and 4 pm.

The first year studio programme consists of assignments and concentrated workshop sessions in design, drawing, painting, photography, printmaking and sculpture. The first year class is divided into smaller groups for these workshop periods, which operate on a rotating basis through the various sections of the School.

Upon the completion of the first year, some degree of specialisation is normally expected. It is also possible to vary the proportion of practical to theoretical studies by selection of either Option I (Studio emphasis), or Option II (Theory emphasis). Regular seminars and personal tutorials are essential features of the courses, as are studio theory papers dealing with historical, critical and technical topics.

#### Master Of Fine Arts (MFA)

Any person wishing to enrol for the Master of Fine Arts Degree shall have passed the final year of the Bachelor of Fine Arts course with a Studio grade higher than B-.

Two course options allow the proportion of practical to theoretical studies to be varied. Studio work consists of a practical performance in an aspect of painting, sculpture, printmaking, photography or design.

Candidates are required to present a course outline of their proposed programme to the Dean prior to 31 March. Graduate students are expected to base their activities in their studios during School hours, and to participate in a series of seminars on theoretical, critical and historical issues. In addition they are required to present a dissertation on a topic other than the main subject of their studio work, and to present an exhibition of their work at the end of the final year.

#### Master of Philosophy (MPhil)

The course requirements are the same as for the MFA Degree.

## THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF FINE ARTS BFA OPTION I AND OPTION II

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts shall
  - (a) follow a course of study of not fewer than four years, taking either Option I or Option II prescribed in these Regulations and
  - (b) pass four Professional Examinations.
2. In these Regulations:
 

'Papers' includes Studio I, Studio II, Studio III and Studio IV.

'Prescribed or approved papers' in relation to any candidate means the following papers:

Studio Theory: 27.201-27.206, 27.209-27.211, 27.213-27.216, 27.301, 27.302

Art History I: 19.151, 19.152, 19.153

Art History II: 19.259, 19.260 and 19.261

Art History III: 19.301, 19.302, 19.304, 19.305, 19.306, 19.307, 19.308, 19.309, 19.310, 19.311 and any other paper (or the equivalent credits)

- (i) prescribed for the Degree of BA, BSc or any other Degree and
- (ii) approved by the Head of the Department of Fine Arts for the course of that candidate for this Degree and by the Head of the Department in which the paper is taken.

3. The subjects of Examination for the Degree shall be:

*First Professional Examination* 6 papers, consisting of:

- (i) Studio I: 27.150 having the value of 4 papers, and
- (ii) Art History I: Two papers from the following: 19.151, 19.152, 19.153.

#### **Option I**

*Second Professional Examination* 9 papers, consisting of:

- Either (a) (i) Studio II: 27.250 having the value of 6 papers and
- (ii) Three prescribed or approved papers.
- Or (b) (i) Studio II: 27.251 having the value of 7 papers and
- (ii) Two prescribed or approved papers.

**Note:** Students planning to take Studio III Sculpture must have passed 27.216.

*Third Professional Examination* 9 papers, consisting of:

- Either (a) (i) Studio III: 27.350 having the value of 6 papers and
- (ii) Three prescribed or approved papers.
- Or (b) (i) Studio III: 27.351 having the value of 7 papers and
- (ii) Two prescribed or approved papers.

**Note:** 27.216 is a prerequisite for entry to Studio III Sculpture but with special permission of the Head of Department may be taken as a corequisite.

*Fourth Professional Examination* 9 papers, consisting of:

- Either (a) Studio IV: 27.450 having the value of 9 papers
- Or (b) (i) Studio IV: 27.451 having the value of 7 papers and
- (ii) Two prescribed or approved papers.

#### **Option II**

*Second Professional Examination* 9 papers, consisting of:

- Either (a) (i) Studio II: 27.252 having the value of 3 papers; and
- (ii) Six prescribed or approved papers. Or (b) (i) Studio II: 27.253 having the value of 4 papers; and
- (ii) Five prescribed or approved papers.

**Note:** Students planning to take Studio III Sculpture must have passed 27.216.

*Third Professional Examination* 9 papers, consisting of:

- Either (a) (i) Studio III: 27.352 having the value of 3 papers; and
- (ii) Six prescribed or approved papers.
- Or (b) (i) Studio III: 27.353 having the value of 4 papers; and
- (ii) Five prescribed or approved papers.

**Note:** 27.216 is a prerequisite for entry to Studio III Sculpture but with special permission of the Head of Department may be taken as a corequisite.

*Fourth Professional Examination* 9 papers, consisting of:

- (i) Studio IV: 27.452 having the value of 6 papers; and
- (ii) Three prescribed or approved papers.

4. All students will be required to make a formal presentation of work in Studio, or to fulfil the course work in any subject or tutorial as may be determined by the Faculty from time to time. A student who fails to comply with these requirements may be declined permission to sit the final examination.

#### **Studio**

5. In each Professional year work for Studio shall consist of:

- (a) a formal presentation of work at the conclusion of each study period; and
- (b) a final formal presentation of work; which may include written examination papers, as required by the Dean of the Faculty.

6. A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each Professional Examination consisting of more than one subject, so that his/her performance in all the papers of the Examination shall be considered; provided that

- (a) a candidate who has failed to pass any such Examination as a whole may, at the discretion of the Senate, be credited with a paper or papers of that Examination, and permitted in a subsequent year to take the papers not so credited; and
- (b) a candidate who does not pass the Second Professional Examination as a whole, but is credited with a paper or papers of that Examination may, if the Senate permits, take with the papers being re-presented for that Examination a paper or papers for the Third Professional Examination.

7. In respect of every prescribed or approved paper prescribed for a Degree other than this (that is, every paper taken for this Degree other than Studio I, II, III and IV and the papers in Studio Theory) a candidate shall be required to comply with all Regulations applicable thereto for the Degree of BA, BSc or other Degree (including all prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions).

### Revocations

8.(1) The course of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

(2) The Regulations governing the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts last published in the University of Auckland *Calendar* for 1974 are hereby revoked.

(3) The Regulations governing the Diploma in Fine Arts and the Diploma in Fine Arts (Honours) respectively, last published in the University of Auckland *Calendar* for 1974 are hereby revoked.

9. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1975.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF FINE ARTS MFA

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Fine Arts shall

(a) before his/her enrolment for this Degree have been admitted or have qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts, and

(b) have passed with a higher Grade than B- in Studio IV in their Bachelor of Fine Arts course provided that in special circumstances where the Head of the Department recommends the Senate may accept a B- pass, and

(c) follow a course of study of not less than two years, taking either of the Options prescribed under these Regulations.

2. In these Regulations:

'prescribed or approved papers' in relation to any candidate means the following papers:  
Studio Theory

Any paper other than a paper in Art History, prescribed for any Degree other than this Degree and approved by the Head of the Department of Fine Arts for the Course of that candidate and by the Head of the Department in which the paper is taken.

### Course Content

3. The subjects of examination for the Degree shall be:

#### Option I

First Year; Part I: Advanced Studio V Practice and Theory 27.550 having the value of four papers.

Second Year; Part II: Studio VI 27.650 having the value of four papers. A candidate shall carry out work satisfactory to the Dean of the School of Fine Arts within an individually planned programme approved by the Head of the Department including the presentation of an exhibition of his/her work and an adequate printed catalogue thereof not later than 1 November in the year in which the work is undertaken or such later date as may be approved by the Head of the Department.

#### Option II

First Year; Part I: (a) Art History IV: Two papers approved by the Head of Department of Fine Arts being either two papers chosen from 19.400 – 19.412, or one paper chosen from 19.400 – 19.412 and one of the papers prescribed for Art History III not already credited to the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts; provided that papers 19.305 and 19.401 may not both be taken for this Degree, or

(b) Any two prescribed or approved papers not already credited to the Degree of Bachelor of Fine Arts.

First Year; Part II: Studio V 27.551 which shall have the value of three papers. A candidate shall carry out work satisfactory to the Dean of the School of Fine Arts within an individually planned programme approved by the Head of the Department including the presentation of an exhibition of his/her work and an adequate printed catalogue thereof not later than 1 November in the year in which the work is undertaken or such later date as may be approved by the Head of the Department.

Second Year; Part III: One of the following which shall have the value of three papers:



(a) Thesis 19.601 on a special topic of Art History approved by the Head of the Department of Art History, or  
 (b) Thesis 27.601 on a special topic related to the candidate's programme of work for Studio V and approved by the Head of the Department of Fine Arts.

4.(1) No candidate taking Option I shall take Studio VI without having first passed in Studio V unless the Head of the Department permits the work for Studio V to be examined with the work for Studio VI in the second year of the course.

(2) A candidate taking Option II shall not take Art History IV unless he/she has either passed 8 papers in Art History including three Stage III papers or complied with such prerequisites as the Head of the Department of Fine Arts may otherwise prescribe for him/her.

(3) In respect of any prescribed or approved paper taken in Option II and prescribed for a Degree other than this, a candidate shall be required to comply with all Regulations applicable thereto for that other Degree (including all prerequisites, corequisites and restrictions).

### **Savings and Transitional Provisions**

5.(1) Except as otherwise provided in this Regulation, the course of every candidate shall be governed by these Regulations.

(2) The Regulations governing the Degree of Master of Fine Arts which were last published in the University of Auckland *Calendar* for 1974 (in this Regulation called "the old Regulations") are hereby revoked.

(3) A candidate who began the course for the Degree of Master of Fine Arts in 1974 shall be entitled to the following credits:

(a) If he/she passed Art History IV and Studio IV under the old Regulations and chooses Option I, he/she shall be credited with Studio V and one prescribed or approved paper.

(b) If he/she passed Art History IV under the old Regulations and chooses Option II, he/she shall be credited with Art History IV.

### **Honours**

6.(a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions: First Division and Second Division.

(b) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate is examined in Art History for this Degree are unsatisfactory or either the work in Studio V, VI, or the thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory: provided that, subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this Regulation, a candidate whose performance at the written examination has been seriously impaired by illness (certified as under the aegrotat Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat award, to present himself/herself at a subsequent written examination and still be eligible for the award of Honours.

(c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only upon completion of the requirements for Honours within three years of his/her first enrolment for this Degree; but this period may be extended in exceptional circumstances by the Senate.

7. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1976.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### DEPARTMENT OF ART HISTORY

#### Art History I

(Two papers).

**19.151 Renaissance Art to c.1520**

**19.152 Western Art from c.1840 to the present day.**

**19.153 Maori and other Polynesian Arts**

#### Art History II

(Three papers).

**19.259 Topics in 18th and early 19th Century Art**

Prerequisites: Any two of 19.151, 19.152 or 19.153.

**19.260 Topics in Baroque Art**

Prerequisites: Any two of 19.151, 19.152 or 19.153.

Restriction 19.257.

**19.261 Topics in 17th and Early 18th Century Art in Northern Europe**

Prere-Kquisites: Any two of 19.151, 19.152, 19.153.

Restriction 19.258.

#### Art History III

(Three papers).

**\*19.301 Special Topic in Medieval Art**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251-19.253, or two of 19.257-19.261.

**19.302 Mid-19th Century Painting in France and Britain**

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251-19.253, or two of 19.257-19.261.

**19.304 Dürer and his Sources and Influence**

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251-19.253, or two of 19.257-19.261.

**19.305 New Zealand Art (General)**

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251-19.253, or two of 19.257-19.261, corequisite 19.308, or 19.302, or 19.307.

**†19.306 Special Topic in Western Art after 1500**

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251-19.253, or two of 19.257-19.261

**19.307 Art in the USA, 1945 to the present day**

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251-19.253, or two of 19.257-19.261.

**19.308 Topics in early 20th Century Art (Sculpture)**

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251-19.253, or two of 19.257-19.261.

**19.309 Women in Art**

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251-19.253 or two of 19.257-19.261.

Restriction: Paper 19.306 under 1981 Regulations.

**\*19.310 Topics in 17th Century Graphic Art**

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251-19.253, or two of 19.257-19.261

**19.311 Contemporary New Zealand Art**

Prerequisites: Two of 19.251-19.253, or two of 19.257-19.261.

#### Art History for MFA

**\*19.400 Topics in 17th Century Drawing**

**19.401 Topics in Australian and New Zealand Art (advanced)**

**†19.402 Special Topic in Western Art before 1600**

To be prescribed by the Head of Department.

**\*19.403 Watteau and his Sources and Influence**

**\*19.404 Film Studies**

**19.405 Nicholas Poussin and 17th Century Classicism.**

Note: A candidate who has been credited with a pass in 19.303 may not take this paper.

**†19.406 Art Historiography**

**19.407 A Topic in Medieval Art**

**19.408 A Topic in 19th Century Art**

**19.409 Topics in The Theory of Modern Art**

**19.410 Topics in 19th and 20th Century Sculpture**

**19.411 Modern Literature and the Visual Arts**

**\*19.412 Women in Art (Advanced)**

### ELAM SCHOOL OF FINE ARTS

In celebration of the University Centenary, the name of the School reverted in 1983 to Elam School of Fine Arts, acknowledging John Edward Elam who, when he died in 1888, bequeathed funds to establish an art school in Auckland. Elam School of Art & Design opened in 1890 in rooms at the Auckland Art Gallery, with E. W. Payton its first Director. The School quickly became an important influence on the artistic life of the city, becoming registered in 1900 and adding evening classes in 1902. A new building in Rutland Street provided space for the growing School from 1914, and, in 1925, A. J. C. Fisher was appointed Director, remaining in that post until his death in 1959. During the mid-30s the School moved to more spacious accommodation in the Old Grammar School in Symonds Street, using the Old Newton West Primary School after the January 1949 fire. In 1950 the School became part of Auckland University College, and began offering Diploma courses. The First Chair of Fine Arts was established in 1961 and Professor Paul J. Beadle was appointed. In 1962 the School moved to its present building in Whitaker Place. Degree courses began in 1967, and, in 1968, a separate Department of Art History was established. Professor Jolyon D. Saunders became Head of the Faculty of Fine Arts in 1977 when Professor Beadle assumed the first Personal Chair in Fine Arts. The Elam School of Fine Arts Centenary will be celebrated in 1990.

#### Studio Theory

**\*27.201 Art Critique**

The objective is twofold; (a) to foster the student's

ability to formulate and communicate concepts and opinions about art; (b) to know what is at present happening in the art community. Written reviews of contemporary art events, such as exhibitions in the city, and verbal participation during meeting sessions are essential components of the paper.

#### **\*27.202 Comparative Studies**

A reading/seminar programme concerned with ideas, philosophy and attitudes.

#### **†27.203 Design Methodology**

The study of methods used in the collection and collation of information, the recognition, analysis and description of complex problems, and the generation and presentation of solutions.

#### **\*27.204 Two-Dimensional Development**

The evolution and communication of ideas and information through drawings based on formal conventions.

#### **\*27.205 History of 19th Century Photography**

#### **\*27.206 History of 20th Century Photography**

#### **†27.209 History of Photography in New Zealand**

The aim of this paper is to encourage research, documentation and dialogue on aspects of the History of Photography in New Zealand. Working on individual and/or group projects, the emphasis will be on the study and documentation of available primary source material: photographs, albums and literature. Interviews with photographers and their contemporaries may also be undertaken.

#### **27.214 Oceanic Arts Studies**

A seminar programme that introduces Fine Arts students to the living traditions of material and performing arts in Oceania, with an emphasis on Maoritanga.

#### **†27.215 Art and Society**

A seminar programme which considers the creative, professional and social-economic dimensions of the visual arts. It also involves a workshop undertaking for candidates to explore or advance in some idiom distinct from their primary Studio method/s. All candidates are expected to maintain seminar and workshop notations and collate information pertaining to topics considered.

#### **27.216 Workshop Practice (Sculpture)**

Paper 27.216 is a prerequisite for entry to Studio III Sculpture.

**Special Topics in painting, sculpture, print-making, photography or design approved by the Head of the Department.**

#### **††27.210 Special Topic**

#### **††27.211 Special Topic**

#### **††27.213 Special Topic**

#### **\*27.301 Professional Practice for Designers**

Business methods and procedures commonly used by professional designers; topics may include:

(a) Preparation of a portfolio; (b) What to expect after graduation; (c) Correspondence; (d) Reports and

report writing; (e) Fee structure; (f) Estimating fees, fee letters and contracts; (g) Business structure; (h) Setting up an office; (i) Running an office; (j) Budgeting (overheads etc.); (k) Securing work and clients; (l) Accountants and taxation; (m) Design and the Law; (n) Ethics; (o) Design organisations; (p) Special topics related to the individual student's requirements.

#### **†27.302 History of Photography in New Zealand (Advanced)**

The research, documentation and analysis of aspects of the history of photography in New Zealand. Working on individual and/or group projects, the emphasis will be on the study of primary source material: photographs, albums, literature.

Interviews with photographers and their contemporaries may also be undertaken.

### **Studio for BFA**

#### **Studio I**

##### **27.150**

Exploration of those disciplines which are fundamental to the development of the artist and designer. Basic elements of two and three-dimensional design (space, shape, line, rhythm, texture) and the varied properties and qualities of colour and light. The creative potential and characteristic limitations of various media such as wood, stone, plastic, metal, glass and pigment. Methods of techniques such as welding, casting, print-making, painting and photographic media. Observation and analysis of the structure of the natural world and human environment. Drawing as an expressive means of communication, and as a vital stimulus to personal development.

#### **Studio II**

##### **Option I 27.250, 27.251 and Option II 27.252, 27.253**

Individually planned programme as approved by the Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts, with content related to the student's requirements. For example, drawing and one or more of the following: painting, print-making, photography, sculpture and design. Advanced experimentation in techniques and materials.

**Note:** Students planning to take Studio III Sculpture must have passed 27.216.

#### **Studio III**

##### **Option I 27.350, 27.351 and Option II 27.352, 27.353**

Development of Studio II in selected fields.

**Note:** Prerequisite for Studio III Sculpture: 27.216. With special permission of the Head of Department 27.216 may be taken as a corequisite.

#### **Studio IV**

##### **Option I 27.450, 27.451 and Option II 27.452**

Development of Studio III in selected fields.

**Studio for MFA****Studio V****Option I 27.550 and Option II 27.551**

The candidate's programme shall be a practical performance in some aspect of the fine arts. The proposed programme shall be submitted for approval to the Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts by 31 March.

**Studio VI****Option I 27.650**

The work in Studio VI may be in an aspect of the fine arts other than that approved for Studio V. The proposed programme shall be submitted for approval to the Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts by 31 March.

**Thesis for MFA****Option II Either****19.601**

A thesis on a topic in Art History, to be approved by the Head of the Department of Art History. The thesis must be submitted to the Registrar by 1 November

or

**27.601**

A thesis to embody the results obtained by the candidate of an original investigation or advanced study relative to the candidate's programme in Studio V. The proposed topic shall be submitted for approval to the Dean of the Faculty of Fine Arts by 31 March.

**Notes:**

\*This paper will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

†This paper may not be taught during the current *Calendar* year.

††Not all electives will be available in a given year.

# Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology

## Contents

---

### 378 *School of Medicine*

---

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	380	Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology
	381	Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery
	382	Degree of Master of Human Biology
	383	Degree of Master of Medical Science
	384	Degree of Doctor of Medicine

---

<b>Degree Course Prescriptions</b>	385	Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology
	386	Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery
	388	Degree of Master of Human Biology

---

<b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>	389	Diploma in Paediatrics
---	-----	------------------------

---

### 389 *Post Graduate School of Obstetrics and Gynaecology*

---

<b>Diploma Course Regulations and Prescriptions</b>	389	Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics
	391	Diploma in Obstetrics

---

	392	Higher Academic Training in Obstetrics and Gynaecology
	392	Refresher Training for Family Doctors and Specialists

---

### 392 *Post Graduate Medical Committee*

---

## SCHOOL OF MEDICINE

The medical Course in the University of Auckland is of six years' duration. The degree of Bachelor of Human Biology (BHB) is awarded upon completion of the first three years, and the degrees of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery (MBChB) upon completion of the full course.

### **Bachelor of Human Biology**

The curriculum in Human Biology covers a spectrum of studies from molecular biology to social psychology and the processes of disease. Introductory studies of chemistry, physics and biology lead to specialised studies of the human body and the integration of its responses. During the first year, courses in biology, chemistry and physics provide the language and concepts needed for the understanding of the applications of these sciences in medical biology. Biochemistry, immunobiology and selected aspects of anatomy and physiology are introduced. Opportunities are provided for hospital visits where lectures and case presentations relate the basic and clinical sciences.

The course in Behavioural Science extends over three years, the first focused on general principles, the second on issues of medical risk and the third on medical treatment. Topics include communication, decision-making, culture, behaviour and health, individual psychology and development, and brain-behaviour relationships.

During the second and third years, the course presents a detailed analysis of human structure and function, of the ways in which body mechanisms are disturbed, and of the ways in which disturbances are corrected. Fundamental biochemical and physiological mechanisms – largely expressed at cellular levels – and their structural bases are considered first, then the principal organ systems. The study of the locomotor and nervous systems, of the complex control of body activity, metabolism and nutrition, of reproduction and growth, and of fundamental aspects of pathology, immunobiology and pharmacology form further major units of the course. Over this period students maintain a continuing study of growth and progress of a normal child.

Admission to the first year of the course is restricted to those students who intend to complete the six year Course for entry into the medical profession.

### **Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery**

The clinical triennium follows qualification for the award of the Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology. The Auckland Hospital Board has made available for teaching purposes all hospitals under its control; at present instruction has been arranged at the five major hospitals – Auckland, Green Lane, Middlemore, National Women's and North Shore. The Waikato Hospital Board also provides teaching facilities at Waikato Hospital for students.

Subjects studied include medicine, surgery, obstetrics and gynaecology, paediatrics, pathology, immunobiology, behavioural science, psychiatry, clinical pharmacology, general practice and community health together with their main sub-specialities. During their final year Trainee Interns are expected to undertake some supervised responsibility for the care of patients.

The Clinical Methods course of six weeks' duration introduces the students to the clinical examination of patients particularly physical examination and history taking. This is followed by an introductory series of lectures and symposia preceding the sequence of ward attachments in the next two years. These practical studies in hospital wards and outpatient clinics enable the student to observe and increasingly participate in the care of patients with diverse health problems in the general and special fields of medicine and surgery. During formal instruction emphasis is placed on topic teaching in which a particular disease or health problem is studied in its various aspects – medical, surgical, pathological and social.

During the Clinical Course students spend a proportion of their time in elective studies, that is pursuing in depth, subjects of particular interest to them. They also serve a period in general practice under the direction of family doctors.

### **Research**

Each department in the School of Medicine has a range of active research programmes. These cover areas of basic medical science to clinical medicine. Opportunities exist for students to undertake supervised studies leading to a Master's degree, or to a Doctor of Philosophy. Students interested in research in the School of Medicine are encouraged to consult with the Head of Department of interest, or seek general information concerning financial support or opportunities available from the Chairman of the Graduate Studies Committee or the Research Sub-Dean.

### **Master of Human Biology (MHB)**

This degree is undertaken after completion of BHB and usually before commencement of studies for MBChB. The degree can be taken in any of the basic medical science departments. Like comparable courses in other Commonwealth Universities (BMedSc, BSc(Med) etc) it offers a year of advanced study and supervised research in a restricted field of medical science.

**Master of Medical Science (MMedSc)**

This is a one-year Master's degree that may be taken in clinical subjects after completion of the second year of the MBChB.

Both these are supervised research degrees embodying both papers and a thesis.

**Doctoral Degrees. Doctor of Philosophy (PhD)**

All departments undertake graduate teaching for the research Degree of Doctor of Philosophy (PhD) in accordance with the regulations of the University.

**Doctor of Medicine (MD)**

This is offered as a non-supervised research degree by thesis alone and may not be submitted until five years after graduation MBChB. The degree is usually based on clinical research work which may be undertaken outside the University. It is normally available to medical graduates of the University of Auckland and, under the Ad Eundem Admission Regulations to graduates of other medical schools who are working as members of the University of Auckland academic staff or who are conducting research in a Department of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology.

Candidates do not enrol in the normal fashion but at an appropriate stage in their research seek the recommendation of the Faculty to enrol for the degree. Faculty's recommendation is based on a preliminary review of the topic, the methods involved in the investigation and the contribution of this work to medical knowledge. Permission to submit the thesis may be obtained after the work is completed or before it is undertaken but there is a five-year upper limitation of time between permission to submit and the actual submission of the thesis.

**Diplomas**

Diploma courses are offered in the Postgraduate School of Obstetrics and Gynaecology and by the Department of Paediatrics. All clinical departments are associated with the basic and advanced vocational training for the examinations and diplomas offered by the various colleges.

**Materials Fees (See Fees Regulations)**

BHB I	\$20.00	} for learning material (major texts, tapeslides, reprints and notes) largely provided in the A. V. Carrell.
BHB II and III	\$40.00	
MBChB I and II	\$40.00	
MBChB I and II	\$31.50	for provision and laundering of white coats.

**Note:** All fees are subject to GST.

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

---

### THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF HUMAN BIOLOGY BHB

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology shall follow a Course of study of not fewer than three years.

#### Admission

2. (a) Admission to the Course of study in Human Biology shall be at the discretion of the Senate. Application for admission to the Course shall be made to the Registrar in writing before 1 October or such other date as the Senate may determine, of the year preceding that in which the applicant proposes to enrol.

(b) Admission to Part I of the Course of study shall be granted or withheld upon a consideration of the past performance of the applicant at school and in public examinations, and upon an interview where this is required.

(c) In such exceptional circumstances as the Senate may approve or under the Admission Ad Eundem Statum Regulations, admission may be granted to an applicant to Part II and Part III.

#### Course Content

3. The Course of study shall consist of three Parts. A candidate shall be required to pass as a whole each Part of the Course of study: provided that a candidate, who re-enrols for a Part of the Course of study having failed to pass it as a whole at the first attempt, may be allowed to carry out, to the satisfaction of the Heads of Departments concerned, alternative work in lieu of the work in that Part where his previous performance was satisfactory.\* For the purpose of assessing the grade of this candidate as a whole for a Part of the Course of study the Senate may approve that the satisfactory pass grade in that previous work be carried forward.

\*Normally a B-grade or better.

4. Except as provided in Regulation 2 (c) hereof no candidate shall be permitted to enrol in Part II of the Course until he has passed Part I, or in Part III until he has passed Part II.

5. A candidate shall carry out to the satisfaction of the Senate such practical written and tutorial work in each Part of the Course of study as may be required.

6. The papers prescribed for examination for the Course of study in Human Biology are:

#### Part I

Biology 60.100, 60.101, 60.102

Physico-Chemistry 60.103, 60.104, 60.105

Behavioural Science I 60.108

#### Part II

Anatomy 60.205

Biochemistry 60.206

Physiology (Medical) II 60.207

Behavioural Science II 60.208

#### Part III

General Pathology and Immunobiology 60.301

Neurolocomotor Systems 60.302, 60.303

Human Reproduction and Development 60.304

Physiology (Medical) III 60.305, 60.306

Pharmacology 60.307

Behavioural Science III 60.308

7. (a) The Senate may in such exceptional cases as it thinks fit approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

(b) Every application for approval under this Regulation shall be submitted by the candidate in writing to the Registrar.

8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1979.



# THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF MEDICINE AND BACHELOR OF SURGERY MBChB

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

## General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery shall before enrolment have qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology not more than one academic year previously, except where the Senate otherwise permits.
2. Each candidate shall follow a Course of study of not fewer than three years.
3. (a) No candidate shall be permitted to proceed to Part II until the work prescribed for Part I has been completed to the satisfaction of the Senate.  
(b) No candidate shall be permitted to proceed to Part III until the work prescribed for Parts I and II has been completed to the satisfaction of the Senate.
4. Each candidate shall follow the course of Study for Part I, Part II and Part III continuously. Interrupted study may be resumed only with the approval of Senate and on such conditions as the Senate may determine.

## Practical Work

5. A candidate shall carry out to the satisfaction of the Senate, such practical and clinical work in each year of the course as may be required.

## Course Content

6. The Course shall consist of three parts:

### Part I (Year IV of the medical course)

Year Code: 90.100

Lectures, laboratory and practical work, and clinical instruction in the diagnosis and management of patients in the hospital and in the community and the provision of health services in the population at large. Disciplines taught will include Medicine, Surgery, Paediatrics, Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Psychiatry, Behavioural Science, Community Health, General Practice, Pathology, Microbiology, Immunology and Haematology and Clinical Pharmacology.

At the end of Part I (Year IV) there will be a written examination consisting of papers in Behavioural Science, in Community Medicine and in General Medicine and Surgical topics and an interdisciplinary clinical and oral examination.

### Part II (Year V of the medical course)

Year Code: 90.200

Lectures, laboratory and practical work, and further clinical instruction in all disciplines building on the work of Part I (Year IV), with increasing emphasis on special areas in Medicine and Surgery.

At the conclusion of Part II (Year V) there will be a major examination, consisting of (a) written papers in Pathology, Clinical Pharmacology, Obstetrics and Gynaecology, General Practice, Behavioural Science and two papers in General Medical and Surgical topics; (b) an inter-disciplinary clinical/oral examination in Medicine Surgery and Pathology; (c) an interdisciplinary objective structured clinical examination in practical topics.

### Part III (Year VI of the medical course)

Year Code: 90.300

Clinical work as a trainee intern and with responsibility under supervision for patients during a period of nine months together with a further three-month elective period.

7. (a) A candidate shall be deemed to pass Parts I and II of the course when the Senate so resolves after consideration of a report from the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology as to the candidate's performance and results in his work for those Parts.  
(b) A candidate shall be deemed to have completed Part III successfully on obtaining passing assessments from each of the periods of that academic year.

8. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1987.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF HUMAN BIOLOGY MHB

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**Note:** Any student wishing to enrol for this degree must consult the Head of the appropriate Department and obtain his approval before attending to enrol. This consultation should normally take place prior to 1 December preceding the year of intended enrolment.

### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Human Biology shall before his enrolment for this degree have been admitted or qualified for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Human Biology.

### Course Content

2. Every candidate for the degree shall

(a) pass the examinations, and

(b) pass in respect of a thesis (which shall count as four papers) in one of the following subjects:

65.405, 65.406 Anatomy (two papers and a thesis 65.601)

63.403, 63.404 Behavioural Science (two papers and a thesis 63.601)

66.405, 66.406 Biochemistry (two papers and a thesis 66.611)

98.400, 98.401 Immunobiology (two papers and a thesis 98.601)

68.403, 68.404 Pathology (two papers and a thesis 68.601)

67.415, 67.416 Physiology (two papers and a thesis 67.601)

96.400, 96.401 Pharmacology (two papers and a thesis 96.601)

### Thesis

3. The following conditions shall apply to the thesis:

(a) The Senate shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate upon the recommendation of the Head of Department.

(b) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.

(c) In the case of a thesis recording laboratory work, the Supervisor shall certify to the Registrar in writing that the laboratory work has been carried out within the University, or within such other institution as may be approved by the Senate for the purposes of this Regulation. Laboratory work for the degree in Biochemistry shall be conducted in the Department of Biochemistry.

(d) A candidate shall submit his thesis to the Registrar by 1 November in the year in which he first enrolls for the degree or at such later date in that or the next year as may be arranged by the Head of Department in consultation with the Supervisor. An extension of time beyond two years from the date of first enrolment for the degree may in exceptional circumstances be approved by the Senate.

(e) If the Supervisor, after consultation with the Head of Department and with the consent of the Assessor, so recommends, a thesis which is not considered satisfactory will be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise and resubmit the thesis at a later date to be specified by the Head of Department after consultation with the Supervisor.

**Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis; see Examination Regulation 15.

### Honours

4. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.

(b) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in which a candidate takes an examination for the degree are unsatisfactory; provided, however, that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond his control (certified under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination, so that he shall still be eligible for the award of Honours subject to the provisions of sub-clause (c) of this Regulation.

(c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if he completes the requirements for Honours within two years of his first enrolment for this degree provided that this period may be extended, in exceptional cases, by the Senate.

5. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1977.

## THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF MEDICAL SCIENCE

### MMedSc

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

**Note:** Any student wishing to enrol for this degree must consult the Head of the appropriate Department and obtain his approval before attending to enrol. This consultation should normally take place prior to 1 December preceding the year of intended enrolment.

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Master of Medical Science shall
  - (a) before his enrolment for this Degree have passed year II of the course prescribed for the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery; and
  - (b) follow a Course of study of not less than one year.
2. A candidate who is not devoting his full time to University study shall if the Senate so requires follow a two-year course of part-time study of such content as the Senate may prescribe.

#### Course Content

3. Every candidate for the Degree shall
  - (a) pass the examinations, and
  - (b) pass in respect of a thesis (which shall count as four papers) in one of the following subjects:
    - 96.402, 96.403 Clinical Pharmacology (Two papers and a thesis 96.611)
    - 91.400, 91.401 Community Health (Two papers and a thesis 91.601)
    - 69.400, 69.401 General Practice (Two papers and a thesis 69.601)
    - 98.402, 98.403 Immunobiology (Two papers and a thesis 98.611)
    - 92.400, 92.401 Medicine (Two papers and a thesis 92.601)
    - 47.400, 47.401 Obstetrics and Gynaecology (Two papers and a thesis 47.601)
    - 93.400, 93.401 Paediatrics (Two papers and a thesis 93.601)
    - 68.405, 68.406 Pathology (Two papers and a thesis 68.611)
    - 94.400, 94.401 Psychiatry (Two papers and a thesis 94.601)
    - 95.400, 95.401 Surgery (Two papers and a thesis 95.601)
    - 90.400, 90.401 A Medical subject approved by the Senate on the recommendation of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology (Two papers and a thesis 90.601)

#### Thesis

4. The following conditions shall apply to the thesis:
    - (a) The Senate shall appoint a supervisor for the candidate upon the recommendation of the Head of the Department.
    - (b) The thesis shall embody the results obtained by the candidate in an investigation in some branch of the subject.
    - (c) In the case of a thesis recording laboratory work, a supervisor shall certify to the Registrar in writing that the laboratory work has been carried out within the University, or within such other institution as may be approved by the Senate for the purposes of this Regulation.
    - (d) A candidate shall present his thesis in the same year as that in which he first takes his examination (if any) or with the consent of the Head of the Department and subject to paragraph (g) of this Regulation, in any subsequent year.
    - (e) The candidate shall submit his thesis to the Registrar by 1 November in the year in which it is presented or at such later date as may be arranged with the Head of the Department.
    - (f) If the supervisor with the consent of the Assessor so recommends a thesis which is not considered satisfactory shall be returned to the candidate, who may be permitted to revise it and to submit it again at a later date to be specified by the supervisor.
    - (g) No thesis shall be presented later than the third year after that in which the candidate first takes his examination for this Degree provided that this period may in special cases be extended by the Senate.
- Note:** An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis; see Examination Regulation 15.
5. A candidate shall not enrol for a subject which he has already passed for the Degree of Master of Science.
  6. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1972.

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF MEDICINE MD

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following Regulations.*

### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Medicine shall hold the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery of the University of Auckland.

**Note:** Except in special cases, admission ad eundem statum is granted only to medical graduates of other Universities who are members of the academic staff of the University of Auckland, or who are conducting research in a Department of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology.

2. A candidate shall be required to present a thesis (90.701) in any branch of medicine or medical science. The thesis shall be specially written for the purposes and shall embody a critical account of original studies carried out by the candidate which may include previously published work.

3. No candidate shall submit a thesis for this degree until at least five years after graduation to the degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery.

### Application to be Examined

4. A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined. The application shall be lodged with the Registrar. It shall state the title of the thesis to be examined and be accompanied by an outline of the proposed or actual scope of the work and the methods involved.

5. As soon as reasonably possible, the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology shall examine the application and shall make its recommendation thereon to the Senate. The Senate shall then determine whether or not the application and the title and outline of the thesis should be approved.

### Submission of the Thesis

6. The candidate shall (subject to Regulation 3) be required to submit the thesis by lodging three copies of it with the Registrar within five years of the date on which the Senate approves the title and outline of the thesis (or within such further time as the Senate may permit).

7. The thesis shall be accompanied by a Statutory Declaration which shall:

- (i) state the extent to which the thesis is based on the candidate's own work and identify as clearly as possible any parts which are not so based;
- (ii) state what portion (if any) of the thesis submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma; and
- (iii) declare that the thesis in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

### Examination of the Thesis

8. On receipt of the thesis, the Senate, on the recommendation of the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology, shall appoint two External Examiners (of whom at least one is resident outside New Zealand) and one Examiner who is a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.

9. The duties of each Examiner shall be:

- (i) to report independently on the quality of the thesis and its value as a significant contribution to learning, and
- (ii) to recommend whether or not the degree should be awarded. Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to resubmit the thesis at a later date.

10. The candidate may be required to take an oral or a written examination, or both, in the field of knowledge in which the thesis lies.

11. The reports of the Examiners shall be placed before the Senate which shall determine whether or not the Degree should be awarded.

## DEGREE COURSE PRESCRIPTIONS

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR BHB

#### Course of Study in Human Biology –

##### Part I

Departments of Anatomy, Biochemistry, Cellular and Molecular Biology, Chemistry, Immunobiology, Physics, Physiology, Psychiatry and Behavioural Science, Zoology.

##### Biology

(Three papers and practical work)

**60.100, 60.101, 60.102**

Cells and histology; invertebrates, parasitology and zoonoses; embryology, vertebrate biology; primates and palaeoanthropology; microbiology; genetics; evolution; animal behaviour; introductory physiology.

##### Physico-Chemistry

(Three papers and practical work)

**60.103, 60.104, 60.105**

A study of the structure and properties of matter covering the following areas:

*Organic Chemistry* (nomenclature, structure, isomerism, functional group reactivity, polymers, lipids, carbohydrates, amino acids, nucleic acids).

*Biochemistry* (proteins, enzymes, polysaccharides, intermediary metabolism).

*Analytical and Physical Chemistry* (spectrophotometry, spectrometry, chromatography, radiochemistry, chemical energetics, solution chemistry, reaction kinetics).

*Physics* (mechanics, thermodynamics, gases, fluids, surfaces, solids, electromagnetism, oscillations and waves, light and sound, optics, modern physics).

*Computing* (computers in the medical environment, microcomputer operation, analysis of medical records, computer networks and communications).

##### Behavioural Science I

(One paper and practical work).

**60.108**

The aim of the course is the acquisition and practical application of behavioural science knowledge to medicine. Year I focus: the healthy individual. Stream topics: (1) Psychology and Development, (2) Society, Culture and Environment, (3) Communication and Social Interaction, (4) Behaviour and Health, (5) Brain and Behaviour, (6) Research Methods, (7) Problem-solving and Decision-making, (8) Integrative.

#### Course of Study in Human Biology –

##### Part II

Departments of Anatomy, Biochemistry, Physiology, Psychiatry and Behavioural Science.

##### Anatomy

(1 paper and course work)

**60.205**

The study of the tissue organisation, microscopic and

gross anatomy of the trunk and its organ systems, and the biology of the blood and immune system.

##### Biochemistry

(2 papers and course work)

**60.206**

Extension of subject-matter taught in Part I and the Biochemistry of major topics with particular reference to those relevant to Medicine.

##### Physiology (Medical) II

(2 papers and course work)

**60.207**

The study of circulatory, respiratory, alimentary and renal function and associated topics.

##### Behavioural Science II

(One paper and practical work)

**60.208**

Material in each of the eight teaching streams (see 60.108) is now applied to various groups under medical risk such as adolescents, the elderly, smokers, the obese, cultural minorities, and doctors themselves. Focus is on behavioural science aspects of etiology, assessment, and prevention.

#### Course of Study in Human Biology –

##### Part III

Departments of Anatomy, Biochemistry, Immunobiology, Pathology, Physiology, Psychiatry and Behavioural Science, Pharmacology/Clinical Pharmacology.

##### General Pathology and Immunobiology

(One paper and practical work)

**60.301**

A study of the principles of Pathology.

##### Neurolocomotor System

(Two papers and practical work)

**60.302, 60.303**

A study of the limbs, back, head and neck and of the nervous system including the special senses.

##### Human Reproduction and Development

(One paper and practical work)

**60.304**

A study of the biology of human reproduction and sexuality; aspects of human genetics, foetal development, growth and ageing; biochemical aspects of endocrinology and nutrition.

##### Physiology (Medical) III

(Two papers and course work)

**60.305, 60.306**

Studies of the integrated physiology of human organs systems including their control and the correction of disturbances.

##### Pharmacology

(One paper and course work)

**60.307**

This course covers the absorption, distribution and fate of administered drugs; drug toxicity and abuse;

the evaluation of new drugs; and the mechanisms of action of drugs that affect the various homeostatic control systems of the body.

### **Behavioural Science III**

(One paper and practical work)

**60.308**

Material in each of the eight teaching streams is applied to issues of patient management and treatment. Topics include interviewing and counselling skills, behavioural medicine, working with minority patients, and effects of organisational structures of hospitals.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR MBChB**

The duration of the course will be three years.

### **MBChB (Part I)**

#### **(Fourth year of the Medical Course)**

##### **Clinical Methods**

An introduction to clinical medicine is provided during the first section of the first term. Methods of history taking and physical examination are demonstrated and practised by students. Students are also introduced to the principles underlying the application of laboratory techniques and organ imaging to solving of patients' problems. The disciplines of behavioural science, medicine, surgery, paediatrics, psychiatry, obstetrics and gynaecology, pathology and radiology (organ imaging) contribute to the course. Lectures, symposia, case demonstrations, tutorial teaching, and bedside instruction, all play a part in this section of the course.

##### **Ward Attachments**

During the first and second year of the Course, there are eight ward attachments, each of which is of four weeks' duration. These ward attachments are not combined with whole class teaching, so that each ward experience is uninterrupted. The first four of these ward attachments take place in the first year. During the two years each student rotates through Paediatrics, Obstetrics & Gynaecology, and Psychiatry once each, through Surgery and Medicine twice each and once through a four-week period of Special Clinical Teaching which includes Geriatrics, Family Medicine, Dermatology, Ophthalmology and Radiology. During each ward rotation a discussion on the application of Behavioural Science to clinical medicine takes place.

##### **Campus Teaching**

Between ward attachments there are periods of Campus Teaching. During this time the Community Health Programme in Occupational and Environmental Health, Epidemiology and Provision of Health Care is presented. Topic teaching covering Systems of Medicine and principles of Obstetrics & Gynaecology, of Paediatrics and of Geriatrics appropriate to subsequent ward attachments is developed. Subjects appropriate to the topic teaching are covered

in Pathology and Clinical Pharmacology programmes.

At the conclusion of the year there is a composite examination consisting of two written papers, and for nominated students only, a clinical/oral (viva) examination.

### **MBChB (Part II)**

#### **(Fifth year of the Medical Course)**

##### **Ward Attachments**

In four ward attachments students complete the series described in Part I. There is no associated whole class teaching but with each 4-week ward block there is for each student a small group seminar in patient-related topics in Behavioural Science.

##### **Campus Teaching**

The combined topic teaching in the systems of medicine is completed. A number of symposia on topics not included in the Systems of Medicine are covered. These include Medico-legal aspects of practice, a short course in Ethics, management of head injuries, management of patients with malignant disease, alcoholism, aspects of rehabilitation medicine and topics in Behavioural Science.

Community Health projects, small group teaching in Radiology and half class studies in General Practice take place in the last two terms. At the conclusion of the year, there is a composite examination consisting of six written papers, a clinical/oral and an interdisciplinary objective structured clinical examination.

### **MBChB (Part III)**

#### **(Sixth year of the Medical Course)**

This is a trainee intern year of 52 weeks divided into four quarters of 12 weeks each and 4 weeks' holiday. One of these quarters is an "Elective" period when the student may take optional training in special disciplines of medicine. A list of approved electives is provided from which to choose or students may generate new protocols.

The remaining 36 weeks are spent participating, under supervision, in the responsibility for the care of sick people in hospital and in the home.

Assessment, including clinical and oral examinations where appropriate, of the student's progress will be made at the end of each assignment.

A salary will be paid to the trainee intern by the Hospital Board.

##### **Community Health**

The Community Medicine Course covers selected topics in preventive medicine, health education, epidemiology and occupational health. The object is to emphasise the importance of prevention, and to give the student an understanding of the health service and how the various arms of the service, both hospital and community based, interact with the population. In Part II students undertake an investigation of some aspects of community medicine which entails practical experience in dealing with health problems.

### General Practice

There are a series of seminars and visits concerning Primary Health Care and General Practice.

In the Trainee Intern Year the students are attached to an approved teaching practice for four weeks, during which time they see patients and discuss their management with the general practitioner, attend house visits and take part in a weekly seminar conducted by a member of the Department of General Practice.

### Gynaecology and Obstetrics

Gynaecology and Obstetrics will deal with the physiology, endocrinology and pathology of human reproduction and their application to the clinical practice of gynaecological and obstetric medicine. The teaching will emphasise the incorporation of the principles of this subject into total medical practice. The theoretical teaching will be included in whole class Topic Teaching during the first and second years of the course. Practical patient management will be taught during a four-week ward attachment. During the third (Trainee Intern) year, there will be a six-week attachment at National Women's Hospital, Middlemore Hospital, Waikato Hospital, or other selected base hospital. Within this period is a week of attachment to Neonatal Paediatrics.

### Immunobiology

Teaching in Immunobiology includes the disciplines of Microbiology, Immunology and Haematology. An introduction to microbiology and molecular genetics is taught in the first year and an introduction to concepts in immunology is taught in the second year of the course in Human Biology. In the third year of the course, medical microbiology and haematology, and clinical immunology are taught in the third term. These courses provide an integrated basis for the clinical teaching which continues throughout the course for MBChB. During the first year of the course for MBChB, clinical microbiology is taught as part of the principles of pathology, while immunology, haematology and infectious disease teaching is integrated with teaching programmes of other clinical departments.

An elective programme in Immunobiology is available for periods of up to three months during the third year of the course for MBChB.

### Medicine

Various common medical diseases affecting different organ systems of the body will be considered with emphasis on their natural history, clinical presentation, methods of diagnosis, together with principles of treatment and prevention. Clinical clerkship will provide experience both in acute general medicine and, during the second year of the course, on selected aspects of different specialities within internal medicine. Tutorial teaching will play an important part in this teaching programme in which emphasis

will be placed on the quality of the written as well as the verbal case presentations.

### Paediatrics

The undergraduate course in Paediatrics commences with an interdisciplinary child development and family study in the second and third years of the course in Human Biology. Patient-based teaching in Paediatrics is carried out in the hospital and community setting over the three years of the clinical course.

Prevention of disease and the effect of disease on the developing child are emphasised in the departmental contribution to the course of lectures given in the first two years of the clinical course on the organic and psycho-social basis of ill health. At the end of this course of lectures students are examined in their knowledge and comprehension of the principles of Paediatrics. In the third year of the clinical course there is a period of trainee internship in Paediatrics which is mandatory and a term of elective study in the broad field of child health is offered.

### Pathology

Teaching in Pathology commences in the third term of the third year of the course in Human Biology, and continues throughout the first, second and third years of the course for MBChB. Subjects under the aegis of Pathology include the Morphological Basis of Disease, Chemical Pathology, and Forensic Medicine. During the first part of the first year of the Course for MBChB the principles of pathology are taught on the basis of the teaching in these subjects undertaken during the latter part of the course in Human Biology. During the remainder of the first year, and through the second year, the teaching in pathology is largely integrated with the teaching programmes of other clinical departments.

An elective programme in pathology is available for periods of up to 3 months during the third year of the course.

### Psychiatry and Behavioural Science

With a background in normal human behaviour and the neurosciences from the Human Biology course, students will receive instruction during the clinical triennium in psychopathology and in the application of the behavioural sciences to medicine.

Psychiatry teaching, focused on the diagnosis and management of patients with psychiatric and psychological disturbance, is incorporated in full time rotations combining theory and clinical work in the 4th or 5th and 6th years. The emphasis is on giving students a set of concepts and clinical skills to enable them to recognise psychological and psychiatric disorders in the practice of medicine in all its branches and a sound grasp of psychopharmacology. Behavioural Science teaching takes place in whole class sessions and ward seminars. It aims to continue at the applied clinical level the themes covered in the

first three years as well as to prepare the student to recognise behavioural aspects of medical cases, and be able to plan appropriate behavioural medicine and psychosocial interventions in general medicine.

### **Surgery**

Surgical diseases will be taught covering their natural history, pathology, methods of diagnosis (including special investigations such as radiology and clinical biochemistry), and general principles of treatment. Included in the surgical diseases will be those related to eye, ear, nose and throat, the musculo-skeletal system, the genito-urinary system, the nervous system and those related to plastic surgery. The theoretical teaching of these subjects will be done within the Topic Teaching course.

Clinical clerkships will be required in general surgery and the special divisions of surgery listed above, including the Accident and Emergency Department. Theoretical and practical teaching in anaesthesia will be given.

The examination in surgery will be part of the composite examination at the end of the second year together with assignments during the first and third years.

## **PRESCRIPTIONS FOR MHB**

### **Department of Anatomy**

**65.405, 65.406, 65.601** The study of selected fields of Anatomy at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field.

The thesis will be based on a research project and will be the major feature of the year's work. The topic must be arranged with the Head of the Department before the end of the preceding academic year.

### **Department of Biochemistry**

(Two papers and a thesis)

**66.405, 66.406, 66.611** The general study of Biochemistry at an advanced level with particular reference to topics of medical relevance.

Candidates for the Master's Degree should consult the Head of the Department as soon as possible after completion of course prerequisites in order to select a thesis topic and obtain advice on vacation reading. Research work for the thesis will be the major feature of the year's work and will be carried out in the Department. Attendance at departmental seminars and informal group discussions is obligatory.

### **Department of Immunobiology**

(Two papers and a thesis)

**98.400, 98.401, 98.601** The study of selected fields of Immunobiology at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field.

The thesis will be based on a research project and will be the major feature of the year's work. The topic must be arranged with the Head of the Department before the end of the preceding academic year.

### **Department of Pathology**

(Two papers and a thesis)

**68.403, 68.404, 68.601** The study of selected fields of Pathology at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field.

The thesis will be based on a research project and will be the major feature of the year's work. The topic must be arranged with the Head of the Department before the end of the preceding academic year.

### **Department of Physiology**

(Two papers and a thesis)

**67.415, 67.416, 67.601** The study of selected fields of Physiology at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field.

The thesis will be based on a research project and will be the major feature of the year's work. The topic must be arranged with the Head of the Department before the end of the preceding academic year.

### **Department of Pharmacology/Clinical Pharmacology**

(Two papers and a thesis)

**96.400, 96.401, 96.601** The study of selected fields of Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology at an advanced level with detailed study of one particular field.

The thesis will be based on a research project and will be the major feature of the year's work. The topic must be arranged with the Head of the Department before the end of the preceding academic year.

### **Department of Psychiatry and Behavioural Science**

(Two papers and a thesis)

**63.403, 63.404, 63.601** The study of selected fields of Behavioural Science at an advanced level, with detailed study of one particular field.

The thesis will be based on a research project. An outline of the project must be submitted for the approval of the Head of the Department before the end of the previous academic year after discussion with the Head of the Behavioural Science Section.



## DIPLOMA COURSE REGULATIONS AND PRESCRIPTIONS

### †DIPLOMA IN PAEDIATRICS

#### DipPaed

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Diploma in Paediatrics shall
  - (a) enrol not later than 1 October or such later date as the Senate approves;
  - (b) on 31 December following his or her enrolment for this Diploma have held a medical qualification registrable in New Zealand, for three years or more, or have been a graduate from the Central Medical School of Fiji for three years or more;
  - (c) sit the examinations in the year following his enrolment.

#### Course Content

2. Every candidate for the Diploma shall
  - (a) follow the prescribed course of study
  - (b) before 30 June of the year in which he or she sits the examinations, have completed six months' resident paediatric appointment in a hospital or hospitals approved for this purpose.

#### Examinations

3. The examinations for the Diploma shall be
  - †(a) Written 93.404, 93.406
  - †(b) Clinical
  - †(c) Oral
4. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1974.

**Notes:** (i) †This Course will not be taught during the current *Calendar* year unless sufficient staff is available.

(ii) The Diploma in Paediatrics is a qualification which serves to recognise general medical practitioners who have been trained to manage the common paediatric abnormalities encountered in practice. The course is limited to two candidates in 1988 and preference for inclusion will be given to those practitioners who do not have easy access to paediatric consultant services. The prerequisite of at least a six months' appointment in an approved teaching hospital is mandatory.

Approved teaching hospitals:

1. Princess Mary Hospital for Children, Auckland and
  2. National Women's Hospital, Auckland and the neonatal units at St. Helens Hospital and Middlemore Hospital, Auckland.
- (for a maximum of three of the six months required under the Regulations for the Diploma).
- This list may be extended or varied from time to time with the approval of Senate.
- (iii) The examination for the Diploma will test knowledge and ability in the areas of Child Development, Preventive Paediatrics, and Management of Common Disorders of Childhood with emphasis on those aspects encountered in remote and medically developing areas.
- The examinations will normally be held in June each year at the School of Medicine.

## POSTGRADUATE SCHOOL OF OBSTETRICS AND GYNAECOLOGY

### Within the Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology

The Department is situated at the National Women's Hospital, Claude Road, Auckland 3. In addition to training Auckland medical students there are extensive facilities for postgraduate education in obstetrics and gynaecology.

### DIPLOMA IN GYNAECOLOGY AND OBSTETRICS

#### DipG&O

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. A candidate for the Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics shall
  - (a) enrol not later than 1 March for the June examination and 1 September for the December examination, or such later dates as the Senate approves; and
  - (b) before sitting for Part 2 of the examination:

- (i) hold a qualifying degree or diploma approved by the Medical Council of New Zealand for four years and be registered in New Zealand or hold equivalent Commonwealth registration for three years, or
  - (ii) be a medical diplomate of the Fiji School of Medicine of six years' standing; and
  - (c) hold for at least one year the Diploma of Obstetrics of the University of Auckland or of Otago or of the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists; and
  - (d) have undertaken at least two years' training in the specialty of gynaecology and obstetrics in posts approved by the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists provided that only one year of service at the Colonial War Memorial Hospital, Suva, shall count towards the total, and
  - (e) prior to his acceptance for Part 2 of the examination, have submitted dissertations on an obstetrical and on a gynaecological subject which has been approved by the Head of the Department.
- Notwithstanding anything in this Regulation, the Vice-Chancellor may on the recommendation of Senate relax or modify these conditions.

### Examinations

2. The examinations for the Diploma in Gynaecology and Obstetrics shall consist of two parts which may be taken separately or together.

*Part 1* shall consist of a written examination (two papers), 47.101, 47.102 on reproductive biology and basic medical sciences as applied to gynaecology and obstetrics. The Part 1 examination may be taken during the training period specified above in 1 (d).

#### *Part 2*

(a) Written (two papers), 47.103, 47.104

(b) Clinical

(c) Oral.

The examinations shall be held at the Postgraduate School of Obstetrics and Gynaecology during June and December.

3. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1972.

## PREScriptions FOR DipG&O

### Part 1

The subjects covered by two papers will include basic sciences such as anatomy, biochemistry, cell biology, embryology, endocrinology, genetics, immunology, medical sociology, microbiology, pathology, pharmacology, physiology and elementary statistics. The examination will deal with those aspects of these subjects which should form part of the general education of any specialist and particularly those aspects which are applicable to obstetrics and gynaecology.

### Dissertations

Candidates are advised to discuss the preparation of their dissertations with the Head of the Department at an early stage in their training period. Both obstetric and gynaecological dissertations are designed to give candidates the opportunity to study in detail conditions of their own choice and to express their own views based on personal experience and on a study of the literature. The dissertations should show clear evidence of ability to make use of a reference library and of the English language. Socio-medical topics may be particularly suitable for one or other of the dissertations. The dissertations should be accurately typed in good English and simply bound. In general the size of the dissertations should be in the order of 3000-4000 words each and credit will be given for original contributions.

### Part 2

Two written papers

(a) Obstetrics, and such aspects of endocrinology, medicine, neonatal paediatrics and surgery as are relevant to the practice of obstetrics.

(b) Gynaecology, and such aspects of endocrinology, medicine, medical sociology and surgery as are relevant to the practice of gynaecology.

A clinical examination which will include presentation and discussion of obstetric and gynaecological cases.

An oral examination in obstetrics and gynaecology. In this candidates should be prepared to discuss their dissertations, to be examined on applied anatomy, physiology and pathology, and to be shown radiographs, instruments, specimens and histological slides for comment.

## DIPLOMA IN OBSTETRICS

### DipObst

*The personal Course of study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. A candidate for the Diploma in Obstetrics shall enrol not later than 1 February or 1 August for the next succeeding examination.
    - (i) a candidate for admission to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Obstetrics must have held a medical qualification for one year before commencing the course and must satisfy the Faculty of Medicine that previous training and experience fit the candidate to undertake the course.
    - (ii) during the course the candidate must hold a resident appointment in obstetrics and gynaecology in a hospital recognised for this purpose by Senate.
    - (iii) the duration of the course shall be at least six months. For those candidates commencing the course after 1 November 1986 the total time engaged in clinical training during the course and excluding leave, shall be at least 1600 hours. This minimum time may include up to 100 hours of formal education and up to 400 hours may involve a specific attachment to neonatal paediatrics.
    - (iv) Auckland candidates shall enrol for the course on the first day of taking up their training at the School.
    - (v) candidates from other approved centres (see Prescriptions for approved hospitals) may be excused the lecture course providing they attend the intensive course of ten days at the School prior to the examination.
- Notwithstanding anything in this Regulation the Senate may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal Course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

#### Examinations

2. The examinations for the Diploma in Obstetrics shall be in three parts.
  - (a) Written (one three-hour paper – 47.500)
  - (b) Clinical
  - (c) Oral or objective structured Clinical Examination.
3. The examinations shall be held at the Postgraduate School of Obstetrics and Gynaecology twice yearly.
4. Candidates shall apply to sit for the examination not later than 1 February or 1 August for the next succeeding examination.

### PRESCRIPTIONS FOR DipObst

This is a general practitioner qualification and serves to distinguish those general practitioners who have been trained to handle the common abnormalities encountered in obstetric practice. A six months' resident appointment to the staff of a teaching obstetric and gynaecological unit is required before candidates are allowed to sit the examination, but see also provision 1 (iii) of the preceding Regulations. Details of such appointments are available on application.

The examinations shall include questions on the anatomy, physiology, pathology and management of normal and abnormal pregnancy, labour and puerperium, including the care of the new-born during the first month of life. In addition, the candidates will be required to have a knowledge of the physiology and pathology of medical gynaecology, including abnormal menstruation, amenorrhoea and dysmenorrhoea, endocrine therapy, abortions, infertility and contraception, ectopic pregnancies and moles, vaginal discharges, the diagnostic facets of malignancy, and such minor surgical procedures as may be encountered in a predominantly obstetric practice.

The following are approved Hospitals for the purpose of Regulation 1 (ii):

- (1) Auckland: National Women's with or without rotation to Middlemore and St Helens Hospital
- (2) Christchurch Women's (3) Dunedin (4) Invercargill: Kew Hospital
- (5) Lower Hutt (6) New Plymouth (7) Palmerston North
- (8) Rotorua (9) Waikato (10) Wanganui
- (11) Wellington (12) Whangarei
- (13) Any other hospital which meets the current criteria for approval during the full tenure of the post.
- (14) Any hospital recognised by the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists or the Royal Australian College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists.

That approval of hospitals will be recognised on criteria of:

- (i) Specialist and registrar staff in obstetrics, gynaecology and neonatal paediatrics.

- (ii) The number of normal and abnormal patients attending the hospital clinics.
- (iii) The provision of graduate teaching in antenatal, postnatal and gynaecological clinics, wards and delivery rooms, including teaching in neonatal paediatrics and family planning. The post must be a continuous one of six months or more if under Regulation I (iii).

---

## **HIGHER ACADEMIC TRAINING IN OBSTETRICS AND GYNAECOLOGY**

### **(i) Membership of the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists, the New Zealand College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists, and the Royal Australian College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists**

Resident posts providing specialist training suitable for the Membership examination are available at the National Women's and associated hospitals. A formal teaching programme for both Part I and Part II examinations is provided for residents. Elective time post in neonatal paediatrics, anaesthesia and pathology can also be arranged.

### **(ii) MSc or PhD Degrees**

Research appointments are available at the National Women's Hospital and afford the opportunity of preparing for the MSc and PhD Degrees of the University of Auckland.

Applications will be welcome from scientists and medical graduates who wish to carry out research in biochemistry, endocrinology, or the scientific background of obstetrics, gynaecology, and neonatal paediatrics.

---

## **REFRESHER TRAINING FOR FAMILY DOCTORS AND SPECIALISTS**

(i) Practitioners with interests in the fields covered at the School may attend for periods of up to four weeks as visiting postgraduates. During the time they are attending the Postgraduate School attachments to the Auckland Hospital board as Honorary Medical Officers can be made in order to facilitate the performance of practical procedures. Visitors may attend the daily teaching sessions as well as gain practical experience tailored to their needs.

(ii) Short courses usually of a week's duration are held at regular intervals. In addition to teaching at Diploma level advanced courses are provided.

(iii) Departmental staff are available to participate in courses throughout New Zealand by arrangement with the Head of the Department.

---

## **THE POSTGRADUATE MEDICAL COMMITTEE**

The Postgraduate Medical Committee, under the Chairmanship of the Associate Dean of Postgraduate Affairs in Medicine, accepts responsibility for the organisation and supervision of both graduate vocational training and continuing medical education for doctors in the Auckland region. The activities of the Committee are linked with the School of Medicine and with the hospitals under the control of the Auckland Hospital Board. Vocational training courses are run in each major discipline under the general supervision of Specialty Advisory Sub-Committees made up of practising members of the disciplines concerned including members of the academic staff. In the case of Family Medicine the programme is run under the aegis of the Royal New Zealand College of General Practitioners.

The Committee arranges in addition a wide range of courses and meetings throughout the academic year in the field of continuing medical education in all disciplines. Visits by overseas medical speakers in both the School of Medicine and the associated teaching hospitals are also arranged through the Postgraduate Office in the School under the general co-ordination of the Postgraduate Committee. A monthly bulletin of postgraduate and continuing educational activities, *This Month*, is also circulated to all doctors in the Auckland region.

Within the Postgraduate Office in the School of Medicine there is a separate section dealing with continuing education in family medicine under the supervision of the Goodfellow Director of Continuing Medical Education in General Practice. The Goodfellow Director is ex officio a member of the Committee, and is responsible for the whole range of educational programmes arranged in the field of general practice, and also the administration of a special educational resource service for general practitioners based on the Philson Library of the School of Medicine.

The members of the Postgraduate Committee for 1988 are the Chairman, the Associate Dean of Postgraduate Affairs in Medicine, Dr C. H. Maclaurin; the Deputy Chairman, Dr P. M. Barham; the Honorary Treasurer, Dr N. H. G. Holford; the Honorary Secretary (vacant); Dr K. Bannister; Dr J. Birbeck; Professor D. G. Bonham; Professor D. S. Cole; Dr A. Davis; Dr A. L. Honeyman; Dr R. K. Haydon; Dr R. McIlroy; Dr J. R. D. Matthews; Dr P. Ockelford; Dr P. Patten; Associate Professor J. G. Richards.

# Higher Degrees

## *Contents*

---

<b>Degree Course</b>	394	Degree of Doctor of Literature
<b>Regulations</b>	395	Degree of Doctor of Science
	396	Degree of Doctor of Laws
	397	Degree of Doctor of Engineering

---

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF LITERATURE

#### LittD

##### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Literature shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of the University of New Zealand.
2. No candidate shall present himself for the Degree of Doctor of Literature until at least eight years after graduation to his first degree.
3. The Degree of Doctor of Literature shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence to linguistic, literary, philosophical, social or historical knowledge.
4. The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation.
5. No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or a major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.
6. A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined, and such application, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - (a) three copies of the work to be examined;
  - (b) a statutory declaration which shall
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

##### Examination Procedure

7. As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall:
  - (a) consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his opinion, the examination should proceed or whether the candidate should be advised to withdraw his application; and
  - (b) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted, provided that the Senate in appointing examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
8. If the Moderator recommends that the candidate should be advised to withdraw his application, the candidate shall be notified of the recommendation by the Registrar and in such case the candidate may
  - (a) withdraw his application, whereupon he shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under the provisions of Regulation 6 of these Regulations; or
  - (b) elect to proceed with the examination.
9. (a) If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand, provided that the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
- (b) The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
10. The duties of each Examiner shall be:
  - (a) to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded, provided that where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded, the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to re-submit the work with further published work at a later date. A re-submission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
11. All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
12. The Moderator shall place the reports of the Examiners before the Senate which shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.
13. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations the Moderator shall, where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with

the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF SCIENCE

### DSc

#### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Science shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of the University of New Zealand.
2. No candidate shall present himself for the Degree of Doctor of Science until at least eight years after graduation to his first degree.
3. The Degree of Doctor of Science shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence in some branch of pure or applied science.
4. The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation.
5. No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or a major portion thereof, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.
6. A candidate shall make application in writing to be examined, and such application, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - (a) three copies of the work to be examined;
  - (b) a statutory declaration which shall
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

#### Examination Procedure

7. As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall:
  - (a) consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his opinion, the examination should proceed or whether the candidate should be advised to withdraw his application.
  - (b) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable Examiners in the field covered by the work submitted, provided that the Senate in appointing Examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
8. If the Moderator recommends that the candidate should be advised to withdraw his application, the candidate shall be notified of the recommendation by the Registrar and in such case the candidate may:
  - (a) withdraw his application, whereupon he shall be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under the provisions of Regulation 6 of these Regulations; or
  - (b) elect to proceed with the examination.
9. (a) If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand.
- (b) The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
10. The duties of each Examiner shall be:
  - (a) to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded, provided that where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded, the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to re-submit the work with further published work at a later date. A re-submission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
11. All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
12. The Moderator shall consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report based upon them which, together with the reports of the Examiners, shall be placed before the Senate and the Senate shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.
13. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations the Moderator shall, where the Examiners' recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner, and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an

additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

## **THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF LAWS LLD**

### **General Provisions**

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Laws shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of the University of New Zealand.
2. No candidate shall be eligible for the award of Degree of Doctor of Laws until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.
3. The Degree of Doctor of Laws shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence to the history, philosophy, exposition or criticism of law.
4. The Degree shall be awarded on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation, but in addition to the published work the candidate may submit unpublished work in support of the application.
5. No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work or a major portion of it has previously formed the basis of an award of any Degree or Diploma in this or any other University.
6. Written application to be examined for the Degree, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - (a) three copies of the work to be examined; and
  - (b) a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

### **Examination Procedure**

7. As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall:
  - (a) consider the work and submit, through the Registrar, a preliminary report, which shall indicate whether, in his opinion, the examination should proceed or whether the candidate should be advised to withdraw the application; and
  - (b) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted but the Senate in appointing examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
8. If the Moderator recommends that the candidate should be advised to withdraw his application, the candidate shall be notified of the recommendation by the Registrar. The candidate may then:
  - (a) withdraw the application, and shall then be entitled to a refund of one half of the fees paid under the provisions of Regulation 6 of these Regulations; or
  - (b) elect to proceed with the examination.
9. (a) If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand, and the Senate may in its discretion appoint an additional Examiner who may be a member of the teaching staff of the University of Auckland.
- (b) The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
10. The duties of each Examiner shall be:
  - (a) to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning; and
  - (b) to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded. Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded the Examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to re-submit the work together with further published work at a later date. A re-submission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
11. All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
12. The Moderator shall place the reports of the Examiners before the Senate which shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.
13. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations the Moderator shall, where only two Examiners have been appointed and their recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a



further person qualified to act as an Examiner and in such case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

## THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF ENGINEERING

### DEng

#### General Provisions

1. Except as provided in the Admission Regulations, a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Engineering shall be a graduate of the University of Auckland, or of the University of New Zealand.
2. No candidate shall present himself or herself for the Degree of Doctor of Engineering until at least eight years after graduation to his or her first degree.
3. The Degree of Doctor of Engineering shall be awarded for an original contribution (or contributions) of special excellence in some branch of Engineering or Technology.
4. The Degree shall be awarded only on work, whether sole or conjoint, published in book form or in scholarly journals in general circulation or as designs and inventions; but in addition the candidate may submit unpublished work in support of the application.
5. No work shall be considered for the Degree if the work, or a major portion of it, has previously formed the basis of an award of any degree or diploma in this or any other University.
6. Written application to be examined for the Degree, accompanied by the fees prescribed in the Fees Regulations, shall be lodged with the Registrar together with:
  - (a) three copies of the work to be examined;
  - (b) a statutory declaration which shall:
    - (i) state the extent to which the work is the candidate's own, and (in the case of a conjoint work) identify as clearly as possible which parts are the candidate's own; and
    - (ii) state what portion (if any) of the work submitted has been previously presented for a degree or diploma of the University of Auckland or any other University; and
    - (iii) declare that the work in substantially its present form has not been previously accepted for the award of a degree or diploma in this or any other University and is not being concurrently submitted for a degree or diploma in any other University.

#### Examination Procedure

7. As soon as possible after the application has been lodged, the Senate shall appoint a Moderator who shall:
  - (a) consider the work and submit (through the Registrar) a preliminary report, which shall state whether in his or her opinion, the examination should proceed or whether the candidate should be advised to withdraw the application, — and
  - (b) state the names of not fewer than two persons recommended as suitable examiners in the field covered by the work submitted; but the Senate in appointing examiners under Regulation 9 of these Regulations shall not be restricted to the persons so named.
8. Where the Moderator recommends that the candidate should be advised to withdraw the application, the candidate shall be informed of the recommendation and may then —
  - (a) withdraw the application (and obtain a refund of one half of the fees paid under Regulation 6 of these Regulations); or
  - (b) elect to proceed with the examination.
9. (a) If the examination is to proceed the Senate shall appoint two independent External Examiners of whom at least one shall be resident outside New Zealand.
- (b) The contents of the Moderator's report shall not be communicated to the Examiners.
10. The duties of each Examiner shall be:
  - (a) to report independently on the quality of the work and its value as a significant contribution to learning and
  - (b) to recommend whether or not the Degree should be awarded. Where the recommendation is that the Degree should not be awarded, the examiner may recommend that the candidate be permitted to re-submit the work together with further published work at a later date. A re-submission shall be accompanied by a further full examination fee.
11. All reports and other communications shall be sent to the Registrar who shall refer them to the Moderator.
12. The Moderator shall consider the reports of the Examiners and prepare a final report based upon them which, together with the reports of the Examiners, shall be placed before the Senate; and Senate shall determine whether or not the Degree shall be awarded.

13. Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 12 of these Regulations, the Moderator shall, where the Examiners' recommendations are conflicting, submit to the Senate the name of a further person qualified to act as an Examiner. In that case the Senate shall appoint the person so named or some other suitable person to be an additional Examiner to furnish an independent report in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 10 of these Regulations, which shall be considered by the Senate together with the other reports.

# Inter Faculty

## *Contents*

<b>Degree Course Regulations</b>	400	Degree of Master of Philosophy
	400	Degree of Doctor of Philosophy
<b>Certificate Course Regulations</b>	402	Certificate of Proficiency
	403	Transitional Certificate
<b>Inter Faculty Studies</b>	403	Operations Research
<b>Intermediate Course for other Universities</b>	404	Intermediate Courses for Degrees and Diplomas

## DEGREE COURSE REGULATIONS

### THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF PHILOSOPHY MPhil

**Note:** A student who has qualified for a Bachelor's Degree in one Faculty but who wishes to take a Masters course which is only available in another faculty may be permitted by Senate to do so for the degree of Master of Philosophy.

Permission will normally be given where the Senate is satisfied that the student holds qualifications at least equivalent to the prerequisites for the Masters course concerned. In some cases, instead of MPhil, the Master's Degree of the Faculty will be approved as the course for a student particularly appropriately qualified, (e.g. a student qualified in Engineering but with a Bachelor's Degree in another Faculty may be permitted to take a Masters course in Engineering for ME instead of MPhil.)

*The personal Course of Study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of Study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

#### General Provisions

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations, a candidate before his enrolment for this Degree shall have been:

- (a) admitted or qualified for admission to a Bachelor's Degree of this or any other University; and
- (b) have been approved by the Senate as qualified to pursue a Course of study for a Master's degree in a particular Faculty, but the content of whose first degree is, in the opinion of the Senate, not sufficiently similar to the normal Bachelor's degree in that Faculty.

#### Course Content

- 2. Every candidate for the Degree of Master of Philosophy shall comply with the Course Regulations for a Master's Degree prescribed in the Faculty in which he is pursuing his Course of study.
- 3. The Degree shall be awarded by the Senate after receipt of a certificate from the Head of the Department in which the Course for the Degree has been taken, stating that the candidate has completed the prescribed requirements.

#### Honours

- 4. (a) There shall be two classes of Honours: First Class Honours and Second Class Honours. Second Class Honours shall be awarded in two divisions, First Division and Second Division.
- (b) Honours shall not be awarded if the papers in the first year in which a candidate takes an examination for the Degree are unsatisfactory or if the thesis at its first presentation is unsatisfactory: provided, however, that a candidate whose performance at a written examination has been seriously impaired by illness or injury or exceptional circumstances beyond his control (certified under the aegrotat or compassionate pass provisions of the Examination Regulations) may elect, instead of applying for an aegrotat or compassionate pass, to take a subsequent written examination so that he shall still be eligible for the award of Honours, subject to the provision of subclause (c) of this Regulation.
- (c) A candidate shall be eligible for the award of Honours only if he completes the requirements for Honours within three years of his first enrolment for this Degree: provided that this period may be extended, in exceptional cases, by the Senate.
- 5. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January, 1971.

### THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY PhD

*The personal Course of Study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted or Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of Study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Every candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy shall apply to the Head of his Department for registration as such, showing:

- (a) that he has the requisite preliminary qualification set out in Regulation 2 hereof; and
- (b) that he has adequate training and ability to pursue a Course of advanced study and research.

2. The preliminary qualification shall be:

- (a) qualification for admission to a Bachelor's Degree with Honours, or a Bachelor's (Honours) Degree, or a Master's Degree with Honours of this University, or
- (b) qualification for admission to a Master's Degree First Class or Second Class, or
- (c) qualification for admission to the Degree of Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery together with evidence that the candidate has carried out research which, in the opinion of the Senate, is satisfactory evidence

of the candidate's ability to pursue a Course of advanced study and research for this Degree

(d) in the case of a graduate of another University, admission to the Course under the provisions of the Admission Regulations, or

(e) any other qualification approved by the Senate in the particular case of any candidate.

3. (a) The Senate (Deans Committee) having received a recommendation from the Head of the Department concerned (or in Engineering and Medicine and Human Biology, from the Dean concerned) shall determine if the candidate may be registered and the date and conditions of that registration.

(b) A recommendation for registration shall include: (i) the field of study (ii) the date of registration (iii) the name of a supervisor or supervisors from members of the academic staff (iv) satisfactory evidence of the candidate's training and ability to pursue the proposed Course of Study (v) a statement of any language or other requirement which the candidate must satisfy as part of the Course of Study (vi) where submitted by the Dean of Engineering, a description of the papers required in terms of clause 8(a) of these Regulations.

4. A candidate for a Master's Degree may, after the completion of at least one year's work for that Degree at a standard considered satisfactory by the Senate, be registered as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. Any such candidate so registered may be allowed credit for the work for the Master's Course if that work can form part of the doctoral thesis. The date of registration shall not be earlier than the end of the academic year in which he completed papers for a Master's or Bachelor's Degree with Honours.

5.(a) After being registered as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy the candidate shall pursue a Course of advanced study and research at the University to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department and the Supervisor for a period of at least two calendar years from the date of registration, during which he shall work at his advanced study and research full time under the supervision of a teacher in the University; provided that

(i) laboratory work may be carried out in an approved institution outside the University for such limited period or periods as may be determined from time to time by the Senate;

(ii) field work may be carried out at such places and for such periods as the Senate may determine;

(iii) research requiring the use at first hand of documents or books not available within the University may be undertaken in an approved institution outside the University, for such period or periods and on such conditions as may be determined from time to time by the Senate;

(iv) when a candidate has completed the initial period of two years full-time study and research he may apply to the Senate for permission to continue as a part-time candidate. Any such application must be supported by the Supervisor and the Head of the Department.

(b) For the purpose of this Regulation a candidate shall be deemed to work full time if he has no occupation other than his study or research; provided that he may

(i) with the approval of his Supervisor and the Head of the Department engage for an average period of not more than six hours per week in academic work other than his study or research;

(ii) take such statutory, recreational and other holidays as are normally incidental to full-time occupation.

6.(a) Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a part-time member of the academic staff

(i) engaged in teaching or in laboratory supervision (or in both) for not more than twelve hours a week on average over the teaching weeks of the year, and

(ii) with no other occupation may register as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. After being so registered he shall pursue a course of advanced study and research at the University over a period which shall, except in special circumstances to be determined by the Senate, be of at least three calendar years from the date of his registration, to the satisfaction of the Head of his Department and the Supervisor.

(b) Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a full-time member of the academic staff, other than a Head of the Department, may register as a candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. After being so registered he shall pursue a Course of advanced study and research at the University over a period which shall, except in special circumstances to be determined by the Senate, be of at least four calendar years from the date of his registration to the satisfaction of the Head of his Department and the Supervisor.

(c) Notwithstanding anything in Regulation 5, a full-time member of the teaching staff of a Teachers' College in the Auckland area or a Technical Institute in the Auckland area or member of the staff of a recognised Research Organisation may apply for registration for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy and shall submit with such application a statement from the Principal of the College or Institute or head of Research Organisation that the candidate's College or Institute or Research Organisation work is such as to allow him/her to pursue a course at the University for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy. After being registered the candidate shall pursue to the satisfaction of the Head of his/her Department and the Supervisor, a Course of advanced study and research at the University over a period of at least four calendar years from the date of registration.

7. The Supervisor shall submit to the Senate, through the Head of the Department, a brief report on the

progress of the candidate at the end of each year, provided that in the case of a candidate who is a member of the teaching staff of a Teachers' College or Technical Institute or member of the staff of a recognised Research Organisation the Supervisor shall submit a report at the end of each six months. A candidate's registration may be terminated by the Senate if an unfavourable report is received.

8.(a) A candidate for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Engineering shall take three papers prescribed for the Degree of Master of Engineering or papers deemed by the Deans Committee to be equivalent provided that the Senate on the recommendation of the Deans Committee may waive or modify this requirement.

(b) A candidate shall not be eligible to enrol for any other course while registered for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy unless he obtains the prior permission of the Senate.

9.(a) A candidate who has fulfilled the conditions required by these Regulations may apply at any time within six years from the date of registration to the Registrar to be examined provided that a full-time member of the academic staff, or a member of the teaching staff of a Teachers' College or Technical Institute or a member of the staff of a recognised Research Organisation, may apply at any time within eight years and this period may in special circumstances be extended by the Senate for a full-time member of the academic staff who has not while registered for the Degree been a full-time research student.

(b) A candidate shall submit to the Registrar three bound copies of a thesis embodying the results of his research which shall be retained by the University.

*Note:* An abstract is to be submitted with each copy of the thesis, see Examination Regulation 15.

10.(a) After having accepted the candidate's application to be examined the Senate shall, upon the recommendation of the Head of the Department, approve the title of the thesis and shall appoint as examiners:

- (i) the Supervisor or Supervisors,
- (ii) one person, who shall also act as Oral Examiner, and who may be a member of the staff of this University if there is no specialist in the field at another University in New Zealand, and
- (iii) one person who may not be a member of the staff of this University except in such circumstances as the Senate thinks fit.

(b) The Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department, appoint a further Examiner and in exceptional circumstances two further Examiners.

11. The Supervisor shall forward to the Registrar a certificate stating that the work described in the thesis was carried out by the candidate under his supervision and that the conditions laid down in Regulation 5 or 6 have been fulfilled.

12. (a) A copy of the thesis shall be submitted to each examiner who shall report on the thesis independently. Except where the Vice-Chancellor acting on the advice of the Examiners otherwise authorises, the Supervising Examiner and one External Examiner shall together examine the candidate orally in the subject of the thesis and on the general field to which the subject belongs. The oral examination shall be held after the reports from all the examiners have been received, and not sooner than six weeks after the submission of the thesis, except in very special circumstances and with the approval of the Senate. At the request of the Oral Examiners the candidate may be required to take a written examination. The Oral Examiners shall make a joint report to the Senate on the whole examination. The Examiners may recommend that a thesis, not considered entirely suitable by them for acceptance, may be revised by the candidate for re-submission on one further occasion only.

(b) Where a candidate registered for this Degree who has not qualified for or been awarded a Master's Degree of this University submits or re-submits a thesis not considered entirely suitable to the examiners, the Senate may recommend that the thesis be submitted for a Master's Degree without Honours in the appropriate Faculty provided that the candidate satisfies all other requirements for that Master's Degree.

13. Senate may, in such exceptional circumstances as it thinks fit, approve a personal course of study which does not conform to the foregoing Regulations.

---

## CERTIFICATE COURSE REGULATIONS

---

### CERTIFICATE OF PROFICIENCY COP

*The personal Course of Study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted for Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of Study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. In these Regulations a "pass" means a pass in any paper or subject or in any examinable part of a subject.

"Certificate of Proficiency" means a Certificate issued by the University as to a pass otherwise than for a Degree or Diploma.

2. With the permission of the Senate a matriculated student may be enrolled under the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General) for the purpose of obtaining a Certificate of Proficiency.

3. To obtain a Certificate of Proficiency a student who is enrolled under Regulation 2 must comply with the provisions of the Examination Regulations and pass the appropriate examinations.

4. Where a candidate has sat a paper for Certificate of Proficiency that paper may not be credited towards or repeated for a Master's Honours degree.

5. Except as provided by Regulation 4 of these Regulations a candidate who has obtained a pass for Certificate of Proficiency may at any time have that pass credited to a degree or diploma; on condition that any pre-requisite, co-requisite conditions or other requirements prescribed for that degree or diploma have been complied with; but in exceptional circumstances the Senate may exempt the candidate from this requirement.

6. A candidate who (a) has obtained a pass in any subject at Master's level for a Certificate of Proficiency and (b) would have been eligible for Honours if that subject had been presented under the appropriate Master's Degree Regulations, may be awarded a Certificate of Proficiency with Honours of the appropriate class provided in those Regulations.

7. A candidate who (having completed a Course of Study) has been admitted to a Degree, may, subject to the approval of the Senate, enrol for a further Course of Study prescribed for that Degree; and on completing it shall be entitled to be awarded a Certificate of Proficiency.

Note: A member of the permanent academic staff of this University with overseas university qualifications may be permitted to enrol for a paper or a subject for Certificate of Proficiency without having to make a formal application for Admission Ad Eundem Statum.

## TRANSITIONAL CERTIFICATE

### TCert

*The personal Course of Study of every candidate must be approved by the Senate. Approval will normally be granted or Courses which are in accordance with the following regulations: for general provisions affecting their Courses of Study students are referred to the Enrolment and Course Regulations (General), and the Examination Regulations.*

1. Subject to the Admission Regulations a candidate for a Transitional Certificate shall (a) have qualified for admission to a degree in this University and (b) with the approval of the Senate be enrolled in a course prescribed for a Transitional Certificate and (c) follow a course of study of not less than one year and pass the prescribed examinations and (d) comply with such of the prerequisites for that course as shall be specified in each case by the Senate.

2. The completion of the prerequisites for a Transitional Certificate shall have the effect of meeting whichever of MA Regulation 1, MSc Regulation 1, MCom Regulation 1, MBA Regulation 1, LLB Regulation 1, MJur Regulation 1, MPlan Regulation 1, ME Regulation 1, MFA Regulation 1, or MPhil Regulation 2, the Senate shall determine is appropriate, and shall have no other purpose or effect whatever.

3. To be eligible for the award of a Transitional Certificate a candidate shall be required to enrol for the degree to which it leads.

4. The subjects for examination shall be those prescribed for the degree of BA, BSc, BCom, LLB, BMus, BMus (Performance), BArch, BPA, BPlan, BE, BFA.

## INTER FACULTY STUDIES

### Operations Research

Operations Research can be defined briefly as the application of scientific methods to the management problem. It is widely used in areas such as optimal scheduling, inventory control, decision analysis and many similar applications, both on a short-term basis and to assist in long-range planning.

Training for Operations Research is frequently inter-disciplinary and in the University there are several paths along which Operations Research may be approached. Because of this, major routes are described here, and further reference should be made to relevant prescriptions in the Faculties of Commerce, Engineering and Science.

1. In the Faculty of Science, the Department of Mathematics and Statistics offers courses which contain topics dealing with the theory and methodology of basic stochastic and deterministic techniques in Operations Research. In particular the following Courses are relevant:

Applied Probability	26.380
Optimization in Operations Research	26.391
Mathematical Modelling for Operations Research	26.395

Related papers are available at undergraduate and graduate level towards the Degrees BSc, BSc(Hons), MSc or towards the Diplomas DipCompSci, DipStats. Interested students should consult the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Statistics.

2. In the Faculty of Commerce students wishing to specialise in Operations Research for the BCom degree should consider the following papers offered by the Department of Management Science and Information Systems:

Operations Management	74.200
Operations Research	74.301
Operations Research	74.401
Mathematical Programming	74.402

together with related papers in Accounting, Computer Science, Economics, Engineering, Management Science and Information Systems and Mathematics.

At the graduate level students may choose courses in Operations Research towards the degrees of MCom or MPhil which may include a thesis or a research essay in this area. Interested students should consult the Head of the Department of Management Science and Information Systems or of Economics.

3. In Engineering students may specialise in Operations Research within the professional degree by taking the Engineering Science Course, which includes:

Operations Research I	54.251
Operations Research II	54.351
Engineering Science Design	54.291
Project in Engineering Science	54.303
Stochastic Models in Operations Research	54.352

Appropriate papers in such areas as computation, statistics, industrial administration and transportation are also available. The project topic can be chosen from a wide area of application in industry and corporate administration.

At the graduate level, students may specialise in Operations Research for the degrees of ME, MPhil and PhD by choosing from:

Nonlinear Optimization	54.422
Studies in Operations Research A	54.451
Studies in Operations Research B	54.452
Random Processes	54.454

and related papers (offered by several Engineering Departments) such as Control, Transportation, Micro-processors and Minicomputers.

Interested students should consult the Head of the Department of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics.

## **INTERMEDIATE COURSE FOR DEGREES OR DIPLOMAS FOR OTHER NZ UNIVERSITIES**

### **Intermediate Courses for Degrees or Diplomas of other New Zealand Universities**

Intermediate courses may be taken at the University of Auckland for a number of degrees and diplomas offered by other New Zealand Universities. Enquiries in the first instance must be made to the University concerned before any enrolment for that University is made at the University of Auckland.

A student wishing to enrol at Auckland for an Intermediate course for a degree or diploma at another University is required to include on the enrolment forms the Course of study and the University for which it is being taken as an Intermediate e.g. Forestry Intermediate (Canterbury).

A student who decides to remain at Auckland after having passed Intermediate papers for another University's course may apply to have those papers credited to an Auckland course by completing the appropriate form (Abandonment) and paying the prescribed fee of \$10.



---

# **Centre For Continuing Education Computer Centre**

## *Contents*

---

406	Centre for Continuing Education
406	Computer Centre
407	Computer System Regulations

---

## CENTRE FOR CONTINUING EDUCATION

The Centre for Continuing Education is a Department of the University, the special function of which is to create opportunities for the whole community to attend courses and other activities for personal enjoyment and development or advancement of professional knowledge. Nearly all courses are conducted by university academic staff or outside specialists. It makes available to the general public a wide variety of courses in the humanities, sciences, music and the arts. These are usually of ten weeks or longer. Day or weekend seminars are also promoted at the Centre.

Adults contemplating degree studies after some years away from formal education, are offered "New Start" programmes in Arts, Commerce and Science designed to introduce them to university study methods and facilities. Alongside the basic New Start 10-week course are introductory courses in specific subjects, study skills, workshops and other supportive activities to assist adults recommence formal studies. A specific New Start programme for physically disabled people is offered each year.

Certificate courses are conducted in (i) Personnel Management and Industrial Relations, (ii) Adult Education. Short courses providing professional development for workers in health, education, welfare, recreation, community development are also available. Aspects of the theory and practice of Adult Education are taught in short courses within the Centre and at Stage III and Master's level within the Education Department. The Centre also promotes a wide-ranging series of seminars, courses and conferences for such professional groups as engineers, businessmen, teachers, surveyors, valuers.

Publicity brochures about the Centre's activities are available on request from the Centre for Continuing Education. More information can be obtained by telephoning the Centre 737-999 extensions 7831 or 7832, writing to the Centre for Continuing Education, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland or calling at the General Office of the Centre, Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street.

---

## COMPUTER CENTRE

The Computer Centre provides a digital computing service for users throughout the campus. The two main computer systems are an IBM 4341 and a DEC VAXCluster. Asynchronous terminals and remote printers connected to the two systems are installed at key locations on the campus. Further terminals are connected to a data switch exchange, providing access to either system. Terminals in use include Visual 200s, DEC VT240s and microcomputers (mostly IBM PC-compatible machines) running terminal emulator programs.

The operating systems used are VM/CMS on the 4341 and VMS on the VAXCluster. The DEC/Shell is also available on the VAXCluster, providing a Unix-style user environment.

### USER SERVICES

**Undergraduate classes** are expected to use terminals to the VAX system, or small computers installed in various teaching departments. Limited access to the IBM 4341 is available for the specialised requirements of small, advanced classes.

**Research Services** for staff members and post-graduate students are based on the IBM 4341.

**Microcomputers** are widely used on campus. The Centre provides support (both hardware and software) for a variety of microcomputer systems such as the IBM PC and the Apple Macintosh. The Centre has a 'demonstration room' where users can try out microcomputers and microcomputer software packages. A wide variety of personal computer hardware and software is sold to departments, staff and students. Price Lists are available from the office.

**Key-Data Services** are available, to enter data directly to either of the mainframe systems or on to floppy disks.

**Advisory Services** are provided throughout the day by a roster of staff members. Introductory courses and lectures on more advanced aspects of computer use are given at intervals through the year.

University departments are charged for all use of the IBM system, and are provided with fixed resource allocations for their students' use of the VAX system. Information about charging rates, budget and student resource allocations and access controls generally is available through the Computer Centre office. The Centre has prepared documentation which is free to users and may be selected from racks outside the office.

The Computer Centre building is open between 8 am and 11.30 pm week-days only, including all vacations. The computer systems operate continuously, and access to them through terminals in other buildings is available whenever these buildings are open.

## COMPUTER SYSTEM REGULATIONS

Pursuant to section 22 of the University of Auckland Act, 1961 the Council of the University makes the following Regulations: 1. These Regulations may be cited as the Computer System Regulations 1975 and shall come into force on 1 January 1976.

2. In these Regulations, unless the context otherwise requires – “System” means any Computer System controlled and operated by the Council whether at the Computer Centre established in the University or elsewhere. “Director” in relation to any System means the person authorised by the Council to control it.

3. No student or any other member of the University shall:

- (a) without authority of the Director gain access or attempt to gain access to the System;
- (b) obtain or attempt to obtain from the System any information to which he is not entitled;
- (c) wilfully impede the operation or activity of any other user;
- (d) use or attempt to use the System so as to cause costs to be incurred;
- (i) by the University, without the consent of his Head of Department and the Head of any other Department concerned;
- (ii) by any person other than the University, without the consent of that other person.

4. (a) Any breach of Regulation 3 of these Regulations shall be deemed to be a breach of the Disciplinary Regulations of the University.

(b) (i) Without prejudice to paragraph (a) of this Regulation, the Director may exclude from use of the System, for such period as the Director thinks fit, any person who has done anything in breach of Regulation 3 or has misused or attempted to misuse the system in any way.

(ii) The Director shall forthwith report any such exclusion to the Vice-Chancellor.

(iii) Any person so excluded may appeal to the Council against the exclusion.

**Note:** (i) Application to use a Computer System must be made to the person in control – that is, to the Director of the Computer Centre or, in the case of a system under the control of a Head of Department, to that Head of Department or his nominee.

---

# General Student and Staff Information

## *Contents*

---

<b>Student Services</b>	409 Academic Dress
	409 Careers Advisory Service
	409 The Chapel
	410 Accommodation Service
	410 Halls of Residence
	410 Applied Research Office
	410 Intellectual Property: Inventions and Patents
	411 Lost Property
	411 Parking
	411 Press Correspondence
	411 Counselling Service
	411 Department of Psychology Clinic
	411 Student Learning Unit
	412 Student Health Service
	412 Recreation Centre
	412 The Crèche
	412 Harassment Procedures
	413 Telephones
	413 Students' Association
	414 New Zealand University Students' Association
	415 Auckland University District Graduates' Association (Inc.)
	415 Auckland University Club (Inc.)
	415 New Zealand Universities Graduates' Association (U.K.)
<b>Lecture and Laboratory Timetables</b>	416 Lecture Timetable 1988
	436 Laboratory Timetable 1988

---

---

## STUDENT SERVICES

---

### ACADEMIC DRESS

The Auckland Branch of the New Zealand Federation of University Women owns a stock of Academic Gowns, Hoods and Caps (black trencher with a tassel and Tudor Bonnets). These are available for hire at all times during the year. Details may be obtained at the Registry. A student completing the requirements for a degree or diploma will receive information regarding the hire of academic dress for the Graduation Ceremony with his or her result card.

---

### CAREERS ADVISORY SERVICE

The Careers Advisory Service has five main functions:

1. To give advice and information to students and graduates of the University about career opportunities, and to put them in touch with prospective employers.
2. To maintain a 'Situations Vacant' service, informing students and graduates of specific opportunities offered by employers – circulating this information through direct referrals, noticeboards and the student newspaper.
3. To arrange the Employer Campus Visit programmes – CAREERS EXPO (held throughout the second term) and CAREERS WEEK (held in November after the exams). These programmes provide opportunities for students to meet employers on the campus and discuss employment prospects. An additional special programme, L.E.A.P., Legal Employment Advisory Programme, providing for law students to meet representatives of law firms is arranged during the May vacation.
4. To increase the awareness of the community of the potential benefits of employing University graduates. To report on the first destination of graduates of the University. Students are encouraged to visit the Careers Advisory Service in the early stages of their University course to discuss employment prospects available to them on completion of their study programmes.

The Careers Advisory Service is located in the suite of offices behind the Upper Lecture Theatre – inquiries to the Secretary in Room 14. The Service is open during normal University administrative hours. (Phone 737-702/703).

---

### THE CHAPEL

The Maclaurin Chapel was established under a deed of trust by Sir William Goodfellow, Hon. LLD, in memory of his son, Richard Maclaurin Goodfellow, killed during service with the Fleet Air Arm in World War II, and of Professor Richard Cockburn Maclaurin, one of Auckland's most distinguished graduates.

University representatives are included in the Board of Management which is responsible for administering the trust.

Services conducted in the University Chapel are non-denominational in character, and all members of the University are welcomed. Regular services are held during term time as follows: Morning Prayer Tuesday and Thursday at 9 a.m.; Communion Service, 1.00 pm on Thursdays. Special Services as advertised.

---

### CHAPLAINS

There are three chaplains to the University – two of whom represent those denominations which have membership in the National Council of Churches, and the Roman Catholic chaplain who works in a chaplaincy team of students and staff at Newman Hall. The Maclaurin Chaplain, the Rev. R.J. Galvin who is appointed by the Richard Maclaurin Goodfellow Foundation, may be contacted in his office in the Chapel complex (phone 737-732).

The Chaplain appointed by the Auckland Council of Churches, the Rev. J.M. Ker, has his rooms in Old Choral Hall (Room 114) (phone 737-999, extension 7495).

The Roman Catholic Chaplaincy Team is Sr. Teresa Roughan, Sr. Clare Conaglen, Miss Moira Gallagher and Fr. Michael Shires.

All the chaplains work together as the University Chaplaincy service. They are available to any member of the University for consultation.

---

### NEWMAN HALL

Newman Hall is the Catholic Tertiary Centre at 16 Waterloo Quadrant. It is named for Cardinal John Henry Newman, the nineteenth century scholar.

Newman Hall is the centre for the University Parish, which is the community of students, graduates and staff. As Newman Hall is to undergo redevelopment during 1987-88 there will be no residential students.

Details and information as to our mass times and programmes can be obtained from the Chaplains Office, Old Choral Hall B144.

## ACCOMMODATION SERVICE

An accommodation service is provided without charge for students of the University. The office, which is situated in the Northern Wing of the first floor of the Old Arts Building, has noticeboards giving details of accommodation available for occupation by students.

## HALLS OF RESIDENCE

The University administers one Hall of Residence and one other Hall works within the University system. These Halls are primarily for young first year students.

The two Halls offer three meals a day. There are also two other University administered establishments which offer students furnished accommodation but do not provide meals. All establishments accommodate both men and women. Applications for admission, which close on 16 October 1987 should be addressed to the Accommodation Officer, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland. Late applications are accepted for the waiting list.

**Grafton Hall**, Seafield View Road, Grafton, administered by the Presbyterian Methodist Congregational Foundation Inc and within 15 minutes' walk of the University. Accommodation and full board is provided for 160 students.

**International House**, 27 Whitaker Place, administered by the University and within seven minutes' walk of the campus. Accommodation and full board is provided for 164 students.

### Self Catering Accommodation

**Norman Spencer Senior Student Apartments**, 9 St Stephens Avenue, Parnell. Accommodation is available for approximately 50 graduate students in single study bedrooms with use of well equipped communal cooking and bathroom facilities. There are a few double rooms available for married couples.

**Park Road Student Flats**, Grafton. Accommodation is provided for 44 students (12 in single rooms and 32 in shared rooms). Each room has its own bathroom but residents must share the communal kitchen. The single rooms are reserved for post-graduate students.

## APPLIED RESEARCH OFFICE (ARO)

The basic objective of the Applied Research Office is to bring together interested academic staff and outside organisations so that University expertise and facilities can be made available to the community and so the University will benefit from an increased flow of research funds. The experience of working on projects carried out through the ARO can often be of considerable benefit to individual academic staff involved and also of general benefit to the University.

The ARO will also arrange for the patent protection of inventions made by University staff and students where there is a good possibility of commercialisation of the invention.

The ARO is headed by an Executive Officer who reports to the ARO Management Subcommittee of Research Committee. The office is located on the sixth floor of the School of Engineering and is open during normal University administration hours. (Phone 737-999 extensions 7808 and 7809).

## INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY INCLUDING INVENTIONS AND PATENTS

When staff or students consider that during the course of their University activities a discovery or innovation has occurred which may have possibilities for commercial exploitation, the University requires them to disclose such a discovery to the University by informing the Applied Research Office. The Applied Research Office Management Subcommittee would, in due course, make a decision as to its assignment to the University, its protection and its course of commercialisation. An agreement between the discoverer(s) and the University would then be entered into, such an agreement describing the obligations of the parties and the division of any income and expenditure.

Members of staff and students should know that prior to the granting of a provisional patent, publication is likely to render any research result unpatentable. It is not the wish of the University, however, that this circumstance should inhibit the free publication of research work.

Copyright of journal articles and books are not included in the above requirements and the copyright will remain with the author(s).

Where research contract agreements are being negotiated on behalf of the University with clauses regarding the ownership of any future inventions or patents arising from the proposed research, then the University requires

that the Applied Research Office be consulted at an early stage of these negotiations to ensure that no commitments regarding such ownership are made to funding agencies which are in conflict with University policy.

Staff or students are not to use for commercial purposes any invention or development or computer program to which they have had access while at the University without the specific approval of the University obtained through the Head of Department concerned.

---

## **LOST PROPERTY**

All enquiries regarding lost property should be referred to the Head Custodian or the Enquiries counter in the Registry.

---

## **PARKING**

An area in lower Grafton Road (area No. 17) has been set aside for students' cars. Admission is on production of student identity card and payment in 1987 of \$1.00 — up to two persons per car, three or more per car 50c — the 1988 fee being under review. No charge is made for this area during the weekend or after 4pm on weekdays. Students may use the parking facilities in Wynyard Street (between Grafton and Alten Roads) without charge after 5.45 p.m. any day, and at any time during the weekends.

The parking building at 36 Princes Street is available for general parking after 5.45 each evening and weekends.

---

## **PRESS CORRESPONDENCE**

Members of the University are reminded that it is normal practice to sign Press correspondence as from the University only when the writer has some special competence in the subject discussed. For members of the teaching staff, such subjects would normally be those within the area of their academic competence, and for students, matters of general student concern. Student members should indicate their student status either in the body of the letter or in the address given. On matters of general public interest, all members of the University write in their private capacity.

---

## **COUNSELLING SERVICE**

The Counselling Service is located on the upper floor of the eastern extension of the Old Arts Block, and is staffed by both full-time and part-time Counsellors all of whom are registered psychologists. In addition the service has an Adviser for Overseas Students.

Personal counselling and a variety of group activities are available, preferably by appointment. Any enquiries should be made to the secretary, phone 737-895 (for internal extension 7895). The Service is free to all enrolled students, but staff pay a fee of \$20 per consultation. Clients may discuss any personal or social problems in complete confidence, without judgement criticism or coercion. The Service seeks to help students learn skills for improved relationships and living, to complement their focus upon academic learning. The Service also incorporates a Student Learning Unit, described below, and accommodates the half-time Mediator in Harassment Procedures. Head of the Service is David Simpson.

---

## **THE DEPARTMENT OF PSYCHOLOGY CLINIC**

The Psychology Clinic functions as part of the training programme for graduate students enrolled in the Diploma in Clinical Psychology. Psychological services are offered in the areas of assessment, counselling and therapeutic intervention. The Clinic is staffed by trainee clinical psychologists, supervised by staff members who are experienced and registered psychologists. The Clinic is open to the general public, and students and staff of the University are welcome to make appointments. Clients are assured of complete confidentiality. Fees are charged for each session on a sliding scale dependent on income. All initial sessions are \$11, and the student rate is \$11 per session. The Clinic is located in the Psychology Department on level 5 of the Human Sciences Building. Appointments can be made by phoning 737-999 Exts. 8412/8413/8562.

---

## **STUDENT LEARNING UNIT**

The SLU is located in Rooms 1.48, 1.51 on the upper floor at the eastern end of Old Choral Hall, and is staffed by part-time academic tutors with special skills for helping students with varied problems of learning. Individual consultations are available free to enrolled students by appointment, phone 737-999 extensions 7321, 7322 or 7323. Varied groups dealing with problems of essay writing, notetaking, basic maths, reading for science, improving memory and concentration, etc. are available each term. Specialised educational testing and evaluation are also available, to assist remedial tuition. The SLU also deals with wider issues relating to attitudes and values in education, notably including problems of choice, and of motivation.

---

## STUDENT HEALTH SERVICE

The University of Auckland Student Health Service is available to all students and is designed to help them maintain an optimum state of health. There is a full-time Director, a nursing sister and eleven part-time doctors including a Psychiatrist and those in the Family Planning and Physical Medicine fields. A full clinical service is provided as well as immunisation against infectious disease and for those going on overseas travel.

The hours of appointment are as follows:

Monday to Friday: 9am to 4.30pm.

During the evening and at weekends an emergency service is available and the doctor on duty can be contacted by phoning 597-119.

Emergency medical services are available

(1) 156 Newton Road, City

(2) 1956 Great North Road, Avondale

(3) 736 Manukau Road, Royal Oak. Open 9am to 6pm weekends and public holidays only

(4) 4 Great South Road, Papatoetoe.

---

## RECREATION CENTRE

The Recreation Centre has been planned to meet a comprehensive range of sporting and recreational needs. The facilities available include seven squash courts, a health and fitness studio, a martial arts studio, a dance studio and the main hall which may be used for basketball, hockey, soccer, volleyball, badminton, cricket, netball, table tennis and cricket practice. The operating costs of the centre are met by membership charges paid by users of the centre.

---

## UNIVERSITY PARK

The University Park is a 40 acre sports complex situated in Glen Innes. Sports facilities include rugby, soccer, hockey, athletics and tennis. The Clubrooms contain changing rooms and extensive social facilities.

---

## THE CRÈCHE

The University operates two crèches primarily available for the children of students but with a limited number of places for those of staff. Based on hourly use with a maximum of up to four hours at any one time, both crèches are open from 7.45am to 5pm Monday to Friday during the University term. Holiday care is available during May and August. The licence is for children aged from 0-5 yrs. Staff are trained in Early Childhood Care and Education. Enrolments are accepted during enrolment week, and early enrolment at that time is advised. Both crèches will be open for casual use from the beginning of February.

For further information telephone Mrs McCulloch Ext. 7755.

---

## HARASSMENT PROCEDURES

The University of Auckland is committed to the prevention of harassment whether it is sexual, racial or religious and which it defines as "the interference by offensive behaviour or unwanted attention in the pursuit of work or study or proper enjoyment of the University's amenities by students, officers or members of the University." Harassment procedures have been established to facilitate the quick, equitable and confidential resolution of harassment complaints.

**CONTACT PEOPLE:** Throughout the University there is a network of contact people drawn from staff and the student body to hear complaints in the first instance. Their role is to listen to the complaint, provide support for the complainant and describe the options available to the complainant for the resolution of the problem. Their names and contact numbers can be found on the back of the University internal telephone directory, at each departmental administrative office, at the Students' Association offices and on the harassment brochure distributed to each student and each department at the beginning of each academic year.

**MEDIATOR:** The University also has a mediator on the staff to support the contact network, to assist in the resolution of complaints of a more serious nature or which for one reason or another cannot be resolved at contact network level and to assist in the establishment of education programmes throughout the University aimed at preventing the occurrence of harassment. The mediator may be contacted through the Counselling Service.

These procedures provide a completely confidential and sympathetic forum for the hearing and solution of sensitive complaints of this nature.



THE UNIVERSITY FINDS HARASSMENT TOTALLY UNACCEPTABLE. NO PERSONS USING THE UNIVERSITY'S FACILITIES SHOULD HESITATE TO USE THE PROCEDURES IF THEY FEEL THEY ARE THE VICTIM OF HARASSMENT.

---

## TELEPHONES

Telephones for the use of students are provided by the Students' Association in the Student Union Building. In addition, Public Telephones are provided in the Arts Building (adjacent to the Post Office), the Library Building (first floor by the lifts), the Thomas Building and at the School of Engineering (adjacent to the Library), Human Science Building (adjacent to lecture theatres), School of Architecture (adjacent to lecture theatres), Physics Building basement, Arts/Commerce Building Block 1 level 2, Block 2 level 2, Chemistry Building foyer and School of Medicine near cafeteria.

Students are not permitted to make or receive outside calls through the University main telephone system except on University business.

---

## STUDENTS' ASSOCIATION

The Association is an Incorporated Society which was founded in 1891. The aim of the Association is to further the interests of the student body within the University and without. The student body is an integral part of the University community and the Association and its members are involved not only in the government of the University but also in fostering social, intellectual, political, cultural and sporting activities within the University.

In recent years the Association has changed from a merely social and service organisation catering for the needs of students on Campus to an organisation concerned with student problems in their widest context.

The control of the business and affairs of the Association rests with the Executive Committee elected annually and comprising a full-time President and fifteen portfolio holders together with the Association Secretary — a full-time administrative post. The Executive is the official mouthpiece for the Association and takes official action on behalf of the Association in the interests of the student body. Through this Executive which acts as a co-ordinating body the Association undertakes a wide and varied number of activities.

The Association is a link between individual students and the academic and administrative staff of the University. Students elect four representatives to Senate, one representative to University Council, representatives to departmental and faculty committees as well as representatives to committees of Senate and Council. The President also sits ex officio on the Council and the Senate. Through its Executive, the Association represents students in matters involving their interest within the University and the community at large.

The Student Representative Council (SRC) was set up in 1969 and membership is open to all students. The political and policymaking body of the Association, SRC is empowered to act on any matter of concern to students.

There are over one hundred clubs and societies affiliated to the Association covering many spheres of student interest. The sports clubs cater for almost all sporting interests and most participate in the local Auckland inter-club competitions and in the NZUSU tournaments. The cultural societies cater for a wide range of religious, academic, social, cultural and political interests. Information about these clubs and societies is available in the *Orientation Handbook*. The Association employs a full-time Social Activities Officer and organises a large number of social functions and cultural activities during the course of the year. These include informal dances, the formal Graduation Ball, film festivals and the annual Capping Festival. During the first two weeks of the academic year the Association organises the Orientation Festival to acquaint new students with the varied facets of University life. The Association organises student concessions for its members with a number of city firms and with the promoters of attractions of interest to students.

Various welfare activities (e.g. school visits, blood days, emergency accommodation) are co-ordinated by the Welfare Officer. The Association runs an Employment Bureau to obtain part-time and vacation work for students. The Association also employs a Disabled Students Resource Officer who is responsible for giving practical help and support to physically disabled students, as well as arranging access improvements, enrolling, parking and examination needs and a part-time Student-Parent Resource Officer to look after the needs of student parents.

The Association is responsible for various publications co-ordinated by the Media Officer, including a newspaper *Craccum* which appears weekly during term and traditionally expresses students' views and features news and viewpoints of significance to students; such publications as *Discount Book*, *The Other Calendar* and *BiFiM* magazine, and as well distributes the various publications of the national body, NZUSA. "Radio BFM", the Associations' FM radio station, broadcasts on 91.8MHz throughout the academic year and is staffed by students.

The Association occupies the Student Union Building whose control and use is subject to management by the Student Union Management Committee consisting of six students and five representatives of the University including representatives of the Senate, Council and Sub-Professorial staff.

The Student Union is made up of five blocks. The cafeteria block is under the general supervision of the Catering Manager and contains a basement and kitchen and the ground floor cafeteria seating 400 where a full hot and cold food service is available. The Restaurant which seats 100 provides a higher quality evening meal for students and staff. The Coffee Lounge next door to the Restaurant specialises in percolated coffees, gateaux and croissants. The Milk Bar on the basement level offers sweets, milkshakes, ice-creams, etc, and has indoor and outdoor seating for 70. The Coffee Bar, also on the basement level, which seats 90, is open for extended hours and serves coffee, tea and light snacks. On the top floor of the cafeteria block the Association runs a licensed club "Shadows". This is open to all Association members aged 18 or over and provides a nightly programme of entertainment and a range of refreshments. The Association also operates cafeterias in the Human Sciences Building, the Engineering School and the Medical School.

The Administration block of the Student Union contains the Association offices, Council Room, general meeting rooms, and the Executive offices along with the offices of the President and the Association Secretary, Union Manager and Accountant.

The public office is open from 9 am to 5 pm for Association business. Alongside this stands the block housing the University Book Shop Auckland Ltd, in which the Association has a half interest, above which are the main common rooms. Underneath both these blocks is the basement, storage, toilets and student locker area. The two blocks nearest Alfred Street contain the TV room, billiards room, the sick bay, an interim Marae, meeting rooms, womenspace and video games room.

All students are required to pay the annual Students' Association fee of \$85.80, a portion of which is paid into the building fund. The building fund levy is payable for 5 years of attendance at the University of Auckland, credit being given for attendance at other New Zealand Universities for any full year. The building fund is used to finance present and future buildings in the Student Union.

The Maidment Arts Centre, on the corner of Princes Street and Alfred Street, caters for the cultural activities of the Association and the University. The centre contains two theatres, the large being the Kenneth Maidment Theatre seating 450, while the smaller Little Theatre is suitable for audiences of up to 120. The Centre is managed by the Theatre Management Committee which comprises five Association and four University members.

The Recreation Centre has been planned to meet a comprehensive range of sporting and recreational needs. The facilities available include seven squash courts, a health and fitness studio, a martial arts studio, a dance studio and the main hall which may be used for basketball, hockey, soccer, volleyball, badminton, netball, table tennis and cricket practice. The operating costs of the centre are met by membership charges paid by the users of the Centre. The centre is managed by the Student Recreation Committee which comprises four Association and six University members. The Committee also supervises the facilities at University Park, a 40 acre sports complex situated in Glen Innes. Sports facilities include rugby, soccer, hockey, athletics and tennis. The Clubrooms contain changing rooms and extensive social facilities.

The official Association noticeboard outside the Bookshop carries information on Association activities and meetings, as well as details on Association appointments to various bodies and committees.

### Hours of Catering Services

#### Term

Cafeteria	7.30 am – 3.00 pm	Shadows	4.00 pm – 10.00 pm
Coffee Lounge	9.00 am – 4.00 pm	HSB Cafeteria	8.30 am – 4.00 pm
Restaurant	5.00 pm – 8.00 pm	Medical School Cafeteria	8.30 am – 3.00 pm
Milk Bar	8.30 am – 5.30 pm	Engineering School Cafeteria	9.00 am – 2.00 pm

The Milk Bar, Coffee Bar, Restaurant and Main Cafeteria are also open for limited hours during Study Breaks and Vacation times.

## THE NEW ZEALAND UNIVERSITY STUDENTS' ASSOCIATION

Formed in 1929, the New Zealand University Students' Association is the national union of New Zealand's university students, to which all seven local university students' associations are affiliated, giving a total membership of approximately 50,000.

NZUSA acts for students in all matters of national concern. Education and student welfare are NZUSA's major concerns, but it also takes stands on wider social and political issues on which students, through their representatives, have expressed their collective views.

NZUSA's National Office is in Wellington and is headed by the President along with General, Women's, Maori and Education and Welfare Vice-Presidents and two Research Officers. In addition there is one part-time officer, the National Overseas Students' Action Committee Co-ordinator.

NZUSA's policies are made by representatives of its constituent students' associations at Council Meetings twice a year. These policies are carried out under the guidance of the National Executive consisting of the Presidents of the constituent associations and the full-time elected officers of NZUSA.

NZUSA's activities are funded by an annual levy of approximately \$9 paid by constituent students' associations on account of each individual member. More information about NZUSA can be gained by contacting AUSA or by writing to the President, PO Box 9047, Courtenay Place, Wellington.

## **AUCKLAND UNIVERSITY DISTRICT GRADUATES' ASSOCIATION (INC.)**

*President:* R. H. Lockstone, BA, N.Z.

*Secretary:* M. A. Perkinson, MCom, ACA.

The Graduates' Association was formed in 1951 with the primary aim of assisting the Court of Convocation to carry out its function of electing six members of the Court to the University Council, the governing body of the University of Auckland, and to make representations to the Council on any matter concerning the interests of the University.

Other objects of the Graduates' Association are the provision of facilities for intellectual and social intercourse among University graduates, the promotion of interest in University affairs among graduates and others, the publishing of magazines, periodicals, etc dealing with matters concerning graduates or University affairs, and generally furthering the interests of University graduates who are, or have been, members of the Court.

The Association also concerns itself with the interests of undergraduates, particularly in relation to welfare, accommodation, etc. A recent Association project was the setting up of a student loan fund for short-term loans to students in temporary financial difficulties. (Applications for these are made through the Student Counsellors.)

Membership of the Association is open to graduates and diploma holders of any University (in or out of New Zealand).

Those eligible to join the Association who have not already done so would be welcomed as members. The President, Mr R. H. Lockstone, 40 Landscape Rd, Mt Eden, phone 689-519, or Mr M. Perkinson of the Department of Accountancy Auckland University, will be pleased to receive membership inquiries or to give further information about the activities of the Association and the Court of Convocation.

## **AUCKLAND UNIVERSITY CLUB (INC.)**

*Phone:* 732-279.

The Auckland University Club Inc., provides the means by which former graduates can maintain close links with other graduates, with present students and with members of the University Staff. It encourages a closer relationship between the University and the professional and business community. The Club is located in its own premises at 23/25 Princes St where the facilities include a restaurant, two bars, private function room, reading room and a pool room.

Membership is open to persons over the age of 20 who are members of the Court of Convocation of the University of Auckland, graduates or diploma holders of other Universities, members of professional societies who have gained a substantial portion of their professional qualifications as students of the University of Auckland, and members of The Auckland University Students' Assn (Inc.) and other suitable persons. Numbers are limited in terms of the Club Charter to 2250. Application forms are available from the Secretary.

## **THE NEW ZEALAND UNIVERSITIES GRADUATES ASSOCIATION (UK)**

The New Zealand Universities Graduates Association (UK) was formed in 1967 with the main aim of creating and fostering opportunities for graduates of New Zealand Universities to establish contacts with other New Zealand graduates in the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.

Other objects of the Association are the establishment of links with Universities and University organisations throughout the United Kingdom and New Zealand, and to make known to visitors the names of individuals or organisations who might be helpful to them.

Membership is open to holders of a degree or equivalent professional qualifications and associate membership is available to all members of NZUSA who are not yet graduates. Subscriptions are subject to review and in

1981-82 were member £2, Associate member £1.50, Student £0.75, husband and wife (both qualified) £3. The Secretary will be pleased to receive membership inquiries and give further information. Postal Address: Secretary Jocelyn Cook, 132 Woodward Road, Dulwich, London SE 22 UK.

## LECTURE AND LABORATORY TIMETABLE

The following section contains lecture and laboratory times for students taking Courses in the Faculties of Arts, Commerce, Music and Science.

Timetables for lectures in the Faculty of Architecture, Property and Planning and the Schools of Engineering, Fine Arts, Law, Medicine, will appear on departmental noticeboards at the beginning of the session.

### Notes:

(1) The timetable is a basic structure only; additional information is available from each Department.

(2) Certain classes are held at times arranged by the Department concerned, in particular these are:

(i) lectures for Masters degree courses;

(ii) tutorials, oral and practical classes (this applies to a large number of subjects).

In general such classes are not included in this printed timetable;

details of all the above are placed on Departmental noticeboards or given out at early class meetings.

(3) Stage I Science lectures are given in sets. Before the beginning of the session students should consult Departmental noticeboards to see which sets of lectures they are required to attend and to confirm the hours shown in the timetable.

(4) Departments will announce the allocation of individual courses to particular lecture hours. Some of the lecture hours shown will be used for optional or alternative courses and in some cases all the lecture hours allocated may not be utilised.

(5) Students will not be permitted to enrol in Courses of Study that have a clash in lecture times, except with the approval of the Senate.

(6) Bracketed papers. Each bracketed paper will be taught at one or more of the times listed. Details are available from the Departments concerned.

### ABBREVIATIONS

For Building locations see map at the front of this *Calendar*.

Arts	(New) Arts Building, 14A Symonds Street
ALR	Architecture Lecture Room
Bot LT	Botany Lecture Theatre, Old Biology Building (access from 3A Symonds Street)
Chem	Chemistry Building (corner Symonds and Wellesley Streets) contains the Large and Medium Lecture Theatres (Lge Chem, Med Chem) and smaller Chemistry rooms
CB	Classics Building, 5 Symonds Street
CMBio LT	Cellular and Molecular Biology Lecture Theatre, Room 220 Thomas Building (access from 3A Symonds Street)
Comm	Commerce Building, 14A Symonds Street
Eng	Engineering School, 24 Symonds Street
HSB	Human Sciences Building (entry from 10 Symonds Street)
Lib	Library Building, corner Princes and Alfred Streets (for theatres B10, B15, B28)
ULT }	Upper and Lower Lecture Theatres,
LLT }	behind Old Arts building (access from 22 Princes Street or 1A Symonds Street)
MLT	Mathematics Lecture Theatre, Physics/Maths Building, 36 Princes Street
OA	Old Arts Building, 22 Princes Street
OCH	Old Choral Hall, corner Symonds and Alfred Streets
Uni Hall	University Hall (Old Arts Building), 22 Princes Street
PLT	Physics Lecture Theatre, Physics/Maths Building, 36 Princes Street
Zoo LT	Zoology Lecture Theatre, Old Biology Building (access from 3A Symonds Street)
Dept	Departmental Room
(i)(ii)	Class Streams

### For Science

1-4 Quarters of year. Where teaching is for the full year, quarters are not shown.

1st Quarter - Monday 29 February - Wednesday 13 April

2nd Quarter - Thursday 14 April - Friday 17 June

3rd Quarter - Monday 20 June - Friday 5 August

4th Quarter - Monday 8 August - Friday 7 October

### For Arts and Commerce

(A) - first HALF year only, commencing approx 29 February

(B) - second HALF year only, commencing approx 20 June

(C) - first THIRD year only, commencing approx 29 February

(D) - second THIRD year only, commencing approx 2 May

(E) - third THIRD year only, commencing approx 25 July

As these are approximate dates, Departmental noticeboards or information handouts should be checked for exact dates.

**Note:** The University reserves the right to introduce such changes including the addition or withdrawal of courses as it may judge to be necessary or desirable. The following Timetable is subject to change as class numbers and staff teaching commitments become stabilised.

## LECTURE TIMETABLE 1988

**Note:** All lectures last one hour unless a finish on the half hour is indicated (in brackets) and unless two consecutive hours are listed — thus T 4 indicates a one-hour lecture commencing at 4pm on Tuesdays whereas T 4,5 indicates a two-hour lecture commencing at 4pm and finishing at 6pm on Tuesdays.

### ACCOUNTING

I	01.100	Section I	(i)	M W 10	LLT
			(ii)	M W 11	LLT
			(iii)	T Th 10	LLT
			(iv)	T Th 11	LLT
		Section II	(i)	M T 10	Uni Hall
			(ii)	M T 11	Uni Hall
		Students will be advised prior to enrolment whether they have been accepted for Section I or II of 01.100. Workshops will be offered weekly; times to be advised at enrolment.			
		01.101	(i)	M W 9	LLT
			(ii)	M W 2	Lib B28
			(iii)	M W 3	LLT
			(iv)	T Th 9	LLT
			(v)	T Th 3	LLT
	01.102			T 9,10	HSB 2
	01.103			W 9,10	Uni Hall
II	01.200	(i)		W 11,12	A-L Lge Chem
				W 11,12	M-Z Uni Hall
				W 3	clinic Lib B10
		(ii)		Th 11,12	A-L Uni Hall
				Th 11,12	M-Z Bot LT
				Th 3	clinic Lib B10
	01.201	(i)		Th 4	Arts 202
		(ii)		F 9	Arts 206
	01.202	(i)		M 9,10	Lib B28
		(ii)		M 2,3	Lib B10
	01.203	(i)		M 4,5	LLT
		(ii)		W 4,5	HSB 2
				Th 2	clinic Lib B10
	01.204			T 9	Arts 723
				F 9,10	Arts 723
	01.205	(i)		W 3,4	A-L Lge Chem
				W 3,4	M-Z Bot LT
		(ii)		Th 9,10	A-L OA 029
				Th 9,10	M-Z OA 123
III	01.300	(i)		M 11,12	A-L Zoo LT
				M 11,12	M-Z Bot LT
				Th 9	clinic OCH 2
		(ii)		M 4,5	A-L HSB 2
				M 4,5	M-Z Uni Hall
				Th 5	clinic Uni Hall
	01.301	(i)		W 10,11	A-L Chem 1050
				W 10,11	M-Z Bot LT
				Th 3	clinic OA 123
		(ii)		Th 10,11	A-L OCH 2
				Th 10,11	M-Z Arts 215
				F 9	clinic OA 123
	01.302	(i)		T 10,11	A-L OCH 1

		(ii)	W 4,5	OCH 1
	01.303	(i)	T 2,3	OA 123
		(ii)	W 2,3	Uni Hall
		(iii)	Th 4,5	HSB 2
<b>ANCIENT HISTORY</b>				
I	12.100		M W 5	Lib B10
	12.102		T Th 2	ULT
	12.103		W F 10	Lib B15
II	12.200		M W 2	CB 115
	12.201		T Th 4	CB 115
	12.210		M W 4	CB 116
	12.211		T Th 11	CB 116
	12.213		T Th 11	CB 114
	12.222		Th F 12	Arts 206
III	12.301		T Th 4	CB 115
	12.310		M T 12	CB 115
	12.313		T Th 11	CB 114
	12.314		F 4,5	CB 115
	12.320		M W 2	CB 115
	12.322		Th F 12	Arts 206
<b>ANTHROPOLOGY</b>				
I	03.100	(i)	T 10	HSB 1
		(ii)	T 4	Lib B28
	03.101	(i)	M 12	HSB 1
		(ii)	M 5	HSB 1
	03.102		F 9	HSB 1
	03.103		T 2,3	Music
II	03.200		M 4,5	Arts 209
	03.201	(i)	M 11,12	Dept
		(ii)	M 6,7	Dept
	03.206		F 11	HSB 2
	03.207		T 2	LLT
	03.208		Th 2	Uni Hall
	03.209		Th 11,12	Music
	03.210	(i)	T 6,7	Dept
		(ii)	W 11,12	Dept
	03.212		M 4,5	Dept
	03.213		Th 2,3	Dept
	03.214		W 4,5	Uni Hall
	03.215		T 12	OA 029
	03.216		M 2,3	OA 029
III	03.300		F 11,12	Dept
	03.302		M 4,5	Dept
	03.305		M 2,3	Dept
	03.306		M 9,10	Dept
	03.307		Th 11,12	Dept
	03.308		W 4,5	Dept
	03.309		W 11,12	Dept
	03.311		F 4,5	Arts 201
	03.313		W 4,5	Dept
	03.314		Th 11,12	Dept
	03.315		T 4,5	Dept

	03.318		T 11,12	Music	
	03.320		W 6,7	Dept	
	03.323		F 9,10	Dept	
	03.325		T 9,10,11	Dept	
	03.326		M 4,5	Dept	
	03.327		M 9,10	Dept	
	03.331		M 2,3	Dept	
	03.338		W 2,3	Dept	
	03.339		Th 11,12	Dept	
	03.340		M 11,12	Dept	

**ART HISTORY**

I	19.151		W 3	Lib B28	
	19.152		M 3	Lib B28	
	19.153		F 3	Lib B28	
II	19.259		W 3	ALR 1	
	19.260		Th 3	ALR 1	
	19.261		F 3	ALR 1	
III	19.302		W 10	Dept	
	19.304		M 11	Dept	
	19.305		T 10	Arts 209	
	19.306		F 11	Fine Arts LT	
	19.307		Th 11	Dept	
	19.308		M 10	Dept	
	19.309		F 10	Dept	
	19.311		Th 10	Dept	

**ASIAN GEOGRAPHY**

I	20.130	B	M T W Th 12	Dept	
---	--------	---	-------------	------	--

**ASIAN HISTORY**

I	24.130	B	M W F 12	CB 15	
	24.132	A	M W F 12	CB 15	
	24.133	All year	T Th 11	ULT	
II	24.222	A	W F 11	Dept	
	24.223	A	M W 2	Dept	
	24.224	B	M W 2	Dept	
III	24.312	A	M 4. W 4,5	Dept	
	24.330	A	Th 2. F 2,3	Dept	
	24.340	B	Th 2. F 2,3	Dept	

**ASIAN POLITICS**

II	30.210	A	W Th 2	Arts 716	
----	--------	---	--------	----------	--

**BIOCHEMISTRY**

II	66.202		W 9,2	Med Chem	
	66.203		T F 2	Med Chem	
III	66.301		M T Th F 2	Chem 1050	1,2
	66.302		M T Th F 2	Chem 1050	3,4

**BIOLOGY**

I	39.101	(i)	M T Th F 2	Lib B15	1,2
		(ii)	M T Th F 4	Lib B15	1,2

II	39.210		M T Th F 2	Zoo LT	2,3
III	39.311		M T Th F 9	Bot LT	2
	39.313		M T Th F 9	CMBio LT	1
	39.314		M T Th F 9	Bot LT	4
<b>BOTANY</b>					
I	06.102		M T Th F 3	Lib B15	3,4
II	06.202		M T Th F 3	Zoo LT	1,2
	06.205		M T Th F 3	Bot LT	3,4
	06.221		M T Th F 2	Bot LT	4
III	06.302		M T Th F 3	Zoo LT	1,2
	06.321		M T Th F 2	Bot LT	1
	06.325		M T Th F 4	Bot LT	3
	06.331		M T Th F 2	Bot LT	3
	06.332		M T Th F 2	Dept	4
	06.341		M T Th F 4	Bot LT	4
	06.361		M T Th F 2	Bot LT	2
	06.371		M T Th F 3	Dept	3
<b>CELLULAR &amp; MOLECULAR BIOLOGY</b>					
III	40.303		T 5, W 9, 12, Th 5	Bot LT	1,2
	40.304		M 5, W 9, 2, F 5	Bot LT	3,4
	40.305		T 8, 5, Th 5, F 8	Bot LT	3,4
<b>CHEMISTRY</b>					
I	08.111	(i)	M Th 9	Lge Chem	
		(ii)	M Th 11	Lge Chem	
		(iii)	M Th 2	Lge Chem	
	08.121	(i)	T F 9	Lge Chem	
		(ii)	T F 11	Lge Chem	
		(iii)	T F 2	Lge Chem	
II	08.210	(i)	T F 11	Med Chem	
		(ii)	M Th 2	Med Chem	
	08.220		M Th 9	Med Chem	
	08.230		T F 9	Med Chem	
	08.250		Th 1	Chem 1056	1,2
III	08.310		W 9	Chem 1056	
	08.311		W 2	Chem 1056	
	08.320		M 9	Chem 1056	
	08.321		Th 9	Chem 1056	
	08.330		T 9	Chem 1056	
	08.331		F 9	Chem 1056	
	08.340		T Th 2	Chem 1056	
	08.352		F 3	Chem 1056	1,2,3
	08.360		M 2	Chem 1056	
	08.370		F 2	Chem 1056	
<b>CHINESE</b>					
I	48.100	{	M W F 11	Arts 206	
			T 12	Arts 206	
		{	T 12	Arts 206	
	48.101		T 10, 11	{ 8 Grafton Rd: Lab 1	
			Th 10, 11		



	48.102	A	M W F 10	Arts 206
	48.104	B	M W F 10	Arts 206
II	48.200 } 48.201 }		{ M T W Th 3 T 2(lab)	Dept 8 Grafton Rd: Lab 1
	48.202	D,E	Th F 2 W 2 (lab)	Dept Arts 214
III	48.300 } 48.301 } 48.302 }		{ M F 12 T Th 11,12 W 12 (lab) W 2	Dept Dept Arts 213 Dept

**CLASSICAL STUDIES**

I	73.105		T Th 5	ULT
---	--------	--	--------	-----

**COMMERCIAL LAW**

I	02.100	(i) (ii) (iii)	M T 10 W Th 9 M Th 2	Lib B15 Lib B15 PLT 1	
II	02.200	(i) (ii)	T Th 10 T Th 10 T Th 3 T Th 3	A-L M-Z A-L M-Z	Med Chem Zoo LT Lge Chem Uni Hall
	02.201	(i) (ii)	M W 9 M W 11		Lib B10 Med Chem
	02.202	(i) (ii)	T 12 W 12 T 12 W 12 T 4,5 T 4,5	A-L A-L M-Z M-Z A-L M-Z	Lge Chem Lib B15 Bot LT Lib B10 MLT 1 Uni Hall
III	02.300	(i) (ii)	T 12 W 12 T 12 W 12 T 4,5 T 4,5	A-L A-L M-Z M-Z A-L M-Z	Lge Chem Lib B15 Bot LT Lib B10 MLT 1 Uni Hall
	02.301	(i) (ii)	Th 8,9 W 4,5 M 2,3		Arts 215 MLT 1 Arts 613
	02.304				
<b>COMPUTER SCIENCE</b>					
I	07.100	(i) (ii) (i) (ii)	T Th F 11 T 3. W 2. F 3 T F 2 M Th 4	PLT 1 PLT 1 PLT 1 PLT 1	1,2 1,2
	07.101	(i) (ii)	T Th F 11 T 3. W 2. F 3	PLT 1 PLT 1	3,4 3,4
	07.105	(i) (ii)	T Th F 11 T 3. W 2. F 3	PLT 1 PLT 1	3,4 3,4
II	07.210		T F 9	Lib B10	
	07.220		M Th 3	PLT 1	
	07.230		M W 11	PLT 1	1,2
	07.235		M W 11	PLT	3,4
	07.290		T F 3	Med Chem	

III	07.302			M Th 12	OCH 2	1,2
	07.303			M Th 12	OCH 2	3,4
	07.310			W 9. F 2	PLT 2	
	07.330			M Th 9	OA 220	
	07.340			M Th 4	MLT 1	
	07.351			M Th 11	CB 115	
	07.352			T F 12	PLT 3	
	07.360			T Th 2	HSB 2	
	07.390			W 4. F 9	Physics 423	

**ECONOMICS**

I	13.100	A	(i)	M T W Th 10	Lge Chem	
			(ii)	M 12	Lge Chem	
				T W Th 12	HSB 1	
			(iii)	M T W Th 12	LLT	
			(iv)	M T W Th 2	HSB 1	
	13.101	B	(v)	M W Th 4	HSB 1	
				T 4	PLT 1	
			(i)	M T W Th 10	Lge Chem	
			(ii)	M 12	Lge Chem	
				T W Th 12	HSB 1	
			(iii)	M T W Th 12	LLT	
			(iv)	M T W Th 2	HSB 1	
			(v)	M W Th 4	HSB 1	
				T 4	PLT 1	
				W Th F 10	HSB 1	
II	13.200			T Th 11	Lib B15	
	13.201			M W 11	ULT	
	13.203			W Th 2	LLT	
	13.204			T Th 12	Lib B10	
	13.205			T W 10	Arts 202	
	13.210	A		M W 12	OCH 1	
	13.211	B		M W 12	OCH 1	
III	13.300			M Th 2	CB 15	
	13.301			M Th 4	CB 114	
	13.302			T W 2	CB 116	
	13.304			T 10. Th 9	Chem 1050	
	13.305			M Th 10	CB 114	
	13.306			T 2,3	OA 029	
	13.307			M T 11	CB 15	
	13.308			W Th 12	CB 115	
	13.309			M Th 3	HSB 2	
	13.310			W 10,11	OCH 2	
	13.313			T 12. W 9	CB 15	

**EDUCATION**

I	14.100	(i)	T 10	Lib B28	
		(ii)	T 5	Lib B15	
	14.101	(i)	W 10	Lib B28	
		(ii)	W 5	Lib B28	
	14.102	(i)	Th 10	Lib B28	
		(ii)	Th 5	Lib B15	
II	14.200		T 4	CB 15	
	14.202		Th 4	OA 123	
	14.204		W 4	Lib B15	

	14.206		T 12	Uni Hall
	14.208		W 2	OA 220
III	14.300		M 2,3 (-3.30)	Dept
	14.301		W 4	CB 114
	14.302	D,E	T 5,6	Dept
	14.303		W 12	Dept
	14.306		Th 11,12	OCH 1
	14.308		W 10,11	CB 114
	14.309		M 10,11	Arts 202
	14.311		Th 4	Arts 206
	14.314		Th 2	Dept
	14.316		M 4	Dept
	14.317		W 2,3	Dept
	14.318		W 5	Dept
	14.319		Th 4	CB 15
	14.322		W 10,11	OA 029
	14.324		W 5	Dept
	14.326		Th 4,5	Dept
	14.327		M 4,5	Arts 202
	14.328		Th 11,12	Dept
	14.329		W 4,5	Dept
	14.330		M 5	Dept
	14.331		W 4,5	CB 115

**ENGINEERING MECHANICS**

I	55.001	(i)	T F 11	Eng 1.401
		(ii)	T F 2	Eng 1.401

**ENGLISH**

I	18.100		W 4	Lib B28
	18.101	All year	T 3	Lib B28
		B	Th 12	Lib B28
		All year	T 5	Lib B10
		B	Th 5	Lib B10
	18.103	All year	M 12	Lib B28
		A	Th 12	Lib B28
		All year	M 5	OCH 1
		A	Th 5	Lib B10
	18.104	All year	W 12	Lib B28
		A	F 11	Lib B28
	18.105	All year	T 12	Lib B28
		A	F 12	LLT
II	18.200		T 3	Lib B10
	18.201	All year	W 5	Arts 215
		B	F 12	LLT
	18.210		T 5	Arts 215
	18.213		W 2	Lib B15
	18.220		Th 5	LLT
	18.222		Th 12	Zoo LT
III	18.300		M 2	Arts 209
	18.301		T Th 10	Arts 509
	18.302		Th 4	Arts 215
	18.303		Th 11	Arts 509
	18.304		M 10,11	Arts 509
	18.306		T 11	Arts 215

18.307		T 4	Arts 215
18.310		F 2	Arts 209
18.314		M 3	Arts 509
18.320		W 5	Arts 209
18.323		W 11	Arts 215
18.326		Th 12	Arts 215
18.327		W 3	Arts 206
		W 4	Dept
18.328		F 10,11,12	Dept

**ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES**

II	84.200	T F 9	OA 029
----	--------	-------	--------

**FRENCH**

I	34.100	(i)	T Th 10	Arts 708
		(ii)	T Th 10	Arts 214
		(iii)	T Th 11	Arts 214
		(iv)	T Th 11	Arts 708
		(v)	T Th 11	Arts 213
		(vi)	T Th 3	Arts 708
		(vii)	T Th 3	Arts 213
	34.101		W 3,4	Arts 215
	34.102		W 12	Arts 206
			Th 9	Arts 708
	34.104/501		W 4	Arts 701
	34.108		T 2	Arts 611
	34.110	(i)	T Th 10	Arts 723
		(ii)	T Th 11	Arts 723
II	34.200	(i)	M W 12	Arts 723
		(ii)	M W 12	Arts 609
		(iii)	M W 2	Arts 723
		(iv)	M W 2	Arts 609
	34.201		T 12	Arts 607
	34.205		T 9	Arts 607
	34.210		T 2	Arts 203
			Th 2	Arts 213
	34.214		W 4	Arts 611
	34.218		M T 4	Arts 723
III	34.300	(i)	M 11	Arts 611
		(ii)	M 2	Arts 611
	34.302		T 10	Arts 613
	34.306		T 11	Arts 203
	34.308		Th 12	Arts 611
	34.309		Th 10	Arts 609
	34.318		W 3	Arts 609

**GEOGRAPHY**

I	20.101	B	T W Th 9	HSB 1
	20.102	A	T W Th 9	HSB 1
	20.130	B	M T W Th 12	Dept
II	20.201		M W 11	HSB 2
	20.202		M W 2	HSB 2
	20.203		W 4	Dept
	20.204		T Th 12	HSB 2

	20.205		Th 4,5	Dept	
	20.206		T Th 2	Dept	
III	20.302		M 11,12	Dept	
	20.303		T Th 11	Dept	
	20.304		M 3,4	Dept	
	20.305		M 2. W 3	Dept	
	20.306		T Th 2	Dept	
	20.313		W 9,10	Dept	
	20.314		M T 10	Dept	
	20.315		T 3,4	Dept	
	20.320		Th 9,10	Dept	
<b>GEOLOGY</b>					
I	21.100		M T F 2	OCH 1	
	21.150		Th 2	OCH 1	
II	21.200		Consult Dept		
	21.211		M W Th 8	Dept	1,2
	21.212		M W Th 8	Dept	3,4
	21.213		T F 3	Dept	1,2
	21.215		T F 3	Dept	3,4
III	21.300		Consult Dept		
	21.302		M F 9	Dept	
	21.303		T 12. Th 10	Dept	
	21.304		M 3. W 9. Th 2	Dept	
	21.305		T Th 9	Dept	
	21.306		W 11. Th 10, 12	Dept	2,3
	21.311		T 2. W 10	Dept	1,2
	21.318		T 12, 3	Dept	1,2
	21.319		T F 8	Dept	3,4
<b>GERMAN</b>					
I	22.100	(i)	M W Th 10	Dept	
		(ii)	M W Th 4	Dept	
	22.101	(i)	M 12	OA 220	
			T 10	Dept	
		(ii)	M 12	OA 220	
			W 12	Dept	
	22.102		T Th 12	Dept	
	22.103		M Th 5	Dept	
	22.104		M Th 10	Dept	
	22.105	(i)	M W Th 10	Dept	
		(ii)	M W Th 4	Dept	
II	22.200	(i)	T W 11	Dept	
		(ii)	W 3	Dept	
	22.202	(i)	M 2	OCH 2	
			T 2	Dept	
		(ii)	M 2	OCH 2	
			W 10	Dept	
	22.203	(i)	M 3	Dept	
			W 12	OA 220	
		(ii)	W 12	OA 220	
			Th 2	Dept	
III	22.300		M 12. W 2	Dept	
	22.301		Th F 2	Dept	
	22.302		W Th 3	Dept	
	22.303		M Th 10	Dept	
<b>GREEK</b>					
I	10.100		M T W Th F 10	CB 115	
	10.101				

II	10.200 } 10.201 } 10.202 }		M T W Th F 10	CB 116
III	10.300 } 10.301 } 10.302 }		{ M T W Th F 10 { M 2, 5	Arts 203 CB 116

**HISTORY**

I	24.100	A	T Th F 10	Lib B10
	24.101	A	T W F 2	Lib B10
	24.103	A	T W Th 4	Lib B10
	24.105	B	T W F 2	Lib B10
	24.106	B	T W Th 4	Lib B10
	24.107	B	T Th F 10	Lib B10
	24.120	A	M W F 11	Lib B15
	24.121	B	M W F 11	Lib B15
	24.130	B	M W F 12	CB 15
	24.132	A	M W F 12	CB 15
	24.133	All year	T Th 11	ULT
	24.140	B	T W Th 3	OCH 1
	24.141	B	M T W 5	Arts 716

II	24.200	A	Th F 4	OA 029
	24.201	B	Th F 4	OA 029
	24.214	B	M 10	Arts 716
		B	Th 10	Lib B15
	24.216	A	M 10	Arts 716
		A	Th 10	Lib B15
	24.222	A	W F 11	Dept
	24.223	A	M W 2	Dept
	24.224	B	M W 2	Dept
	24.230	A	T W 4	OA 029
	24.232	A	T F 3	Dept
	24.233	B	T F 3	Arts 215
	24.234	B	T W 4	OA 029

III	24.307	A	T 4,5. Th 4	Dept
	24.309	A	M 2,3. W 2	Dept
	24.310	A	M 11. F 11,12	Dept
	24.312	A	M 4. W 4,5	Dept
	24.314	B	Th 10,11. F 10	Dept
	24.315	A	Th 10,11. F 10	Dept
	24.327	A	T 9,10. F 9	Dept
	24.328	B	M 2,3. W 2	Dept
	24.330	A	Th 2. F 2,3	Dept
	24.331	A	T 11. W 11,12	Dept
	24.333	B	T 11. W 11,12	Dept
	24.334	B	T 4,5. Th 4	Dept
	24.338	B	M 11. F 11,12	Dept
	24.340	B	Th 2. F 2,3	Dept

**INDONESIAN**

I	80.100 } 80.101 }		{ M 11. T W Th 9 { W F 10 { F 11 (lab)	Dept Dept Arts 213
	80.104		M W 12	Dept

II	80.200		{M Th 10	Dept
			{F 12 (lab)	Arts 213
	80.201		M Th 11	Dept
	80.202		T W 11	Dept

III	80.300			
	80.301			
	80.302			
	80.306			
	80.307			
			Consult Dept	

**ITALIAN**

I	35.106			M 11, F12	Arts 215
	35.107		(i)	T 11	Arts 509
			(ii)	W 12	Arts 607
			(iii)	T 10	Arts 206
			(iv)	Th 10	Arts 607
				W Th 2	Arts 509
				M T 9	Arts 206

Students attend M 11 and F 12 plus the hours shown for one of the four streams. In addition students attend one conversation class (details from the department) and one language laboratory chosen from the following:

			M 12	8 Grafton Rd: Lab 1
			M 2	Arts 214
			Th 12	8 Grafton Rd: Lab 1
			F 9	8 Grafton Rd: Lab 1
			F 11	8 Grafton Rd: Lab 1
35.110			M 4	Arts 206
		(i)	Th 11	Arts 607
		(ii)	Th 12	Arts 609
		(iii)	F 11	Arts 607

(Students attend M 4 plus one of the three streams)

II	35.200		(i)	M 11	Arts 609
			(ii)	W 2	Arts 213
				Th 11	Arts 201
				Th 10	Arts 201
				T 2	Arts 214
				Th 12	Arts 613
35.204	A			T 4, 5	Arts 209
	A			Th 3	Arts 215
35.209				M 3	Arts 723
				W 12	Arts 209
35.210				W 12	Arts 209
			(i)	T 2	Arts 723
			(ii)	T 3	Arts 723

(Students attend W 12 plus one of the two streams)

35.230	B			T 11, 12	Arts 611
	B			Th 10	Arts 611

III	35.300			M 2	Arts 607
				T 12	Arts 214
			(i)	T 2	Arts 201
			(ii)	Th 2	Arts 607

(Students attend M 2 and T 12 plus one of the two streams)

35.302	A			T 10	Arts 611
	A			Th 10, 11	Arts 611
35.321				W 2, 3	Arts 701
35.322				M 11, 12	Arts 701

	35.331		T 10, 11	Arts 719
	35.332		M 10	Arts 609
			Th 12	Arts 607
<b>JAPANESE</b>				
I	81.100	(i)	M 9, M T 10	OA 123
		(ii)	M 2, 3, T 2	Arts 215
	81.101	(i)	W Th 9, F 9, 10	Arts 209
		(ii)	W F 2, Th 2, 3	OA 029
		(iii)	M T Th F 4	OA 123
	81.103		W F 3	Arts 716
II	81.200		M T 9	Arts 209
	81.201		W F 9	Arts 716
	81.202	A	T 10	CB 15
		B	T 10	Consult Dept
		All year	Th 9	CB 15
III	81.300		W 12, F 11	CB 114
	81.301		T 12, Th 10	Arts 209
	81.302		M 12, F 10	Arts 716
	81.303		W 10	Arts 209
			Th 12	Arts 202
<b>LATIN</b>				
I	09.100 }		M T Th F 3	CB 116
	09.101 }			
	09.102		M T F 3	CB 15
	09.103		W 3	OA 029
			Th 3	CB 15
II	09.200 }			
	09.201 }			
	09.202 }		M T W Th F 12	CB 116
III	09.300 }		M 9	CB 116
	09.301 }		M T W Th F 12	PLT 4
	09.302 }			
<b>LEGAL SYSTEM</b>				
I	25.103	(c)	M W F 8	ULT
		(d)	M W F 10	ULT
		(e)	M W F 12	ULT
		(f)	M W F 2	ULT
		(g)	M W F 4	ULT
<b>LINGUISTICS</b>				
I	83.102	A	T 12	Lib B28
		A	F 12	LLT
		B	T 12	Dept
		B	F 12	Dept
	83.103		T W 4	Dept
II	83.202		M 4, 5	Dept
	83.203		Th 9, 10	Dept
	83.204		F 10, 11	Dept
III	83.300		W 2, 3	Dept
	83.302		Th 11, 12	Dept



83.303	W 11, 12	Dept
83.304	M 12, 2	Dept
83.305	Th 11	Arts 509
83.307	M 10, 11	Arts 509

**MANAGEMENT SCIENCE & INFORMATION SYSTEMS**

I	74.100	(i)	T Th 9	Lib B28
		(ii)	W 11	HSB 1
			F 11	LLT
II	74.200		T Th 12	Med Chem
	74.220		W 2	Arts 209
			F 2	Arts 215
	74.221		T Th 8	Arts 209
III	74.300		T Th 2	Arts 202
	74.320		Th 10, 11	Arts 202
	74.321		W 10, 11	Arts 201
	74.322		T 8, 9	Arts 202
	74.323		W 8, 9	Arts 202
	74.324		F 8, 9	Arts 202
	74.325		W 2, 3	Arts 202
	74.326		F 10, 11	Arts 202

**MANAGEMENT STUDIES & LABOUR RELATIONS**

II	72.203	(i)	M 12, Th 10	Uni Hall
		(ii)	T Th 2	Lib B28
	72.207		M T 11	Arts 209
III	72.303		M 2	Arts 202
			Th 10	Arts 716
	72.305		F 9, 10, 11	Arts 201
	72.307		T 3, W 4	Arts 209
	72.311		Th 2	Arts 215
			F 2	Arts 206
	72.313	All year	T 4, 5	Arts 206
		A	Th 3	Arts 206
		All year	Th 4	Arts 607

**MAORI STUDIES**

I	04.100	(i)	M 9, 10	HSB 1
		(ii)	T 5, 6	HSB 1
			F 9	HSB 1
			Consult Dept	
II	04.203		Th 2	Uni Hall
	04.204		T 10, 11	OA 029
	04.205		Consult Dept	
	04.207		M 2, 3	OA 029
III	04.302		M 9, 10	Dept
	04.305		W 11, 12	Dept
	04.306		Th 11, 12	Dept
	04.307		W 9, 10, 2	Dept
	04.309		F 10, 11	Dept
	04.312		T 10, 11	Dept

**MARKETING & INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS**

II	71.200	(i)	T 5. Th 11	HSB 2
		(ii)	T 5. Th 11	Zoo LT
		(iii)	T 5. Th 11	Med Chem
		(iv)	W 8. Th 5	Arts 215
	71.201	(i)	T 9, 10	OCH 2
		(ii)	W 9, 10	Arts 215
		(iii)	F 9, 10	Arts 215
III	71.300	(i)	M 9, 10	Arts 215
		(ii)	M 4, 5	Arts 215
	71.301	(i)	T 9, 10	Arts 215
		(ii)	W 2	Arts 215
			W 3	Arts 209
	71.302		Th 3, 4	Arts 209
	71.303		M W 12	Arts 215
	71.304		W 11. Th 9	Arts 202
	71.310		Th 11, 12	Arts 209
	71.311		Consult Dept	
	71.312		Consult Dept	

**MATHEMATICS**

I	Basic Skills		M Th 1	Maths 322
	26.101	(i)	M Th 11	MLT2
		(ii)	M Th 3	MLT3
	26.120	(i)	M Th 9 (W9 odd weeks)	MLT1
		(ii)	M Th 11	Lib B10
			W 11 (odd weeks)	Lib B28
	26.121	(i)	M Th 10 (W10 odd weeks)	MLT1
		(ii)	T F 12 (W12 odd weeks)	MLT1
		(iii)	T F 3 (W3 odd weeks)	MLT1
		(iv)	M Th 5 (W5 odd weeks)	MLT3
		(v)	T F 10. W2	MLT2
	26.122	(i)	M Th 10	MLT2
		(ii)	T Th 5	MLT2
	26.140	(i)	T F 9 (W 9 even weeks)	MLT1
		(ii)	T F 12 (W 12 even weeks)	MLT2
	26.141	(i)	T F 10 (W 10 even weeks)	MLT1
		(ii)	M Th 12 (W 12 even weeks)	MLT1
		(iii)	M Th 3 (W 3 even weeks)	MLT1
		(iv)	T F 5 (W 5 even weeks)	MLT3
	26.142	(i)	M Th 9	PLT2
		(ii)	M W 5	MLT2
	26.175	(i)	M Th 11	MLT3
			W 11	MLT2
	26.180	(i)	T F 12	PLT2
			W 12	PLT1
	26.181	(ii)	T W F 4	MLT3
		(i)	T W F 9	MLT2
		(ii)	T W F 2	MLT1
		(iii)	T W F 4	MLT2
		(iv)	T W F 11	MLT1
II	26.210		T F 9. W 11	MLT3
	26.220	(i)	M Th 9	MLT2
			W 9	MLT3
		(ii)	M Th 11	MLT1

	26.220	(ii)	W 10	MLT2	
	26.221		M Th 9. W 11	PLT5	
	26.240	(i)	M Th 2	MLT1	
		(ii)	M Th 3	MLT2	
	26.241		T F 9. W 10	PLT5	
	26.260	(i)	T F 11	MLT2	
		(ii)	M Th 12	MLT2	
	26.270		T F 9	PLT4	
	26.280		T F 2	MLT2	
	26.281		T F 12	MLT3	
III	26.311		M W 4	PLT5	1,2
	26.315		M W Th 3	PLT2	
	26.320		T F 12	PLT5	
			W 12	MLT3	
	26.321		M Th 2	MLT3	
			W 12	PLT3	
	26.325		T F 2	MLT3	
			W 11	PLT3	
	26.330		M Th 12. W 2	MLT3	1,2
	26.331		T F 9	Maths 322	
			W 9	PLT3	
	26.335		M Th 12. W 2	MLT3	3,4
	26.340		M W Th 10	MLT3	
	26.345		M W 4	MLT3	1,2
	26.350		T Th 4	PLT5	
	26.360		T F 10	MLT3	
	26.363		M 4	MLT2	3,4
			W 4	PLT3	3,4
	26.368		M Th 2	PLT5	3,4
	26.371		M Th 12	Eng	
	26.372		M Th 2	PLT5	1,2
	26.375		T F 12	CB114	1,2
	26.376		T F 12	CB114	3,4
	26.380		T F 3 (W 3 odd weeks)	MLT3	
	26.381		M Th 3 (W 3 even weeks)	PLT5, PLT5, (MLT3)	
	26.385		M 11. T F 10	PLT5	
	26.391		M Th 9 (W 11 odd weeks)	MLT3, MLT3, (Eng 3.407)	
	26.395		T F 11 (W 11 even weeks)	MLT 3, MLT3, (Eng 3.407)	
	26.399		W 9	Eng	3,4

## MUSIC

I	28.100	(i)	M 12. F 11	Dept
		(ii)	M F 12	Dept
		(iii)	M 12. T 10	Dept
	28.101	(i)	T 11, 12 and one of the following sessions: Th 2 or Th <u>2.40</u> or Th <u>3.20</u>	Dept
		(ii)	T 11. T <u>12.30</u> and one of the following sessions: Th 2 or Th <u>2.40</u> or Th <u>3.20</u>	Dept
	28.103		M Th 11	Dept
	28.104		T 4,5	Dept
	28.105	(i)	M Th 10	Dept

		(ii)	M Th 11	Dept
	28.110	(i)	M 2. F 2.30, 3	Dept
		(ii)	M 2.30. F 2.30, 3	Dept
		(iii)	M 3. F 2.30, 3	Dept
		(iv)	M 3.30. F 2.30, 3	Dept
	28.112		W 12	Dept
	28.113		W 2	PLT2
	28.114		T 2,3	Dept
II	28.201		W 9,10	Dept
	28.202	(i)	W 2,3	Dept
		(ii)	W 2,4	Dept
	28.204		T 2,3	Dept
	28.208		T 9,10	Dept
	28.210		Th 9,10,11(-11.30). F 2.30,3	Dept
	28.212		W 11	Dept
	28.214		Th 11,12	Dept
	28.215		M 9,10	Dept
	28.216		Th 4,5	Dept
	28.218		Th 2,3	Dept
	28.223		W 11,12	Dept
III	28.301	(until Easter)	Th 4.30,5	Dept
		(after Easter)	T 4.30,5	Dept
	28.302		W 2,3	Dept
	28.304		T 2,3	Dept
	28.308		T 9,10	Dept
	28.310		Th 9	Dept
	28.314		T 11,12	Dept
	28.316		F 12	Dept
	28.318		T 2,3	Dept
	28.324		M 11,12	Dept
<b>PACIFIC STUDIES</b>				
I	79.101	B	T W Th 3	Chem 1050
<b>PHARMACOLOGY</b>				
III	96.301		M Th 3	Chem 1048
<b>PHILOSOPHY</b>				
I	29.100	All year	F 9	ULT
		A	T 9	ULT
	29.101		T Th 4	ULT
	29.102	All year	Th 11	HSB 1
		A	F 11	HSB 1
	29.103	All year	M 11	HSB 1
		A	T 11	Lib B28
II	29.201		M 4. T 2,3	CB 115
	29.203		M Th 5	OA 029
	29.204		T 4,5	CB 114
	29.205		W 2,3	CB 15
	29.207		Th 2,3	CB 115
	29.208		M 11,12	OA 123
	29.211		Th 9,10	OCH 1
	29.212		M 2,3	OA 123
III	29.301		W 4,5	Dept

29.303		T 9,10	Dept
29.304		T 11,12	Dept
29.305		M W Th 3	PLT 2
29.306		F 11,12	Dept
29.307		M 4,5	Dept

**PHYSICS**

I	31.100		T F 4	PLT 2	
	31.101		M Th 4	PLT 2	
	31.102		T F 4	PLT 2	
	31.104		M 2	PLT 2	2,3
	31.140		M Th 10	PLT 1	
	31.141	(i)	M Th 9	PLT 1	
		(ii)	M Th 12	PLT 1	
	31.150		T F 10	PLT 1	
	31.151	(i)	T F 9	PLT 1	
		(ii)	T F 12	PLT 1	
II	31.200		W 3,4	PLT 1	
	31.206		T F 3	PLT 2	1,2
	31.210		M Th 10 (W 10 alt weeks)	PLT 2	1,2
	31.220		M Th 10 (W 10 alt weeks)	PLT 2	3,4
	31.240		M Th 12 (W 12 alt weeks)	PLT 2	1,2
	31.250		T F 10 (W 10 alt weeks)	PLT 2	3,4
	31.260		T F 10 (W 10 alt weeks)	PLT 2	1,2
	31.270		M Th 12 (W 12 alt weeks)	PLT 2	3,4
III	31.325		T F 9	PLT 2	
	31.326		T F 11	PLT 2	3,4
	31.330		M Th 2	Physics 423	1,2
	31.335		M Th 2	Physics 423	
	31.342		T F 11	PLT 2	1,2
	31.345		M Th 11	PLT 2	
	31.355		M Th 9	Physics 423	
	31.356		T F 2	Physics 423	1,2
	31.370		T F 2	Physics 423	3,4

**PHYSIOLOGY**

II	67.201		M Th 2	MLT 2	
III	All Stage III lectures are held in the Medical School:				
	67.301		M W 5	Lewis	
	67.302		T F 9	Rm 2284	1,2
	67.303		T F 9	Rm 2284	3,4

**POLITICAL STUDIES**

I	30.100	B	T W Th 4	LLT	
	30.101	A	M T W 3	ULT	
	30.102	B	M 12. T W 11	Lib B10	
	30.106	A	T W Th 4	LLT	
	30.107	A	M 12. T W 11	Lib B10	
II	30.201	B	W Th 11	Arts 716	
	30.204	B	T W 4	Arts 716	
	30.209	A	W Th 11	Arts 716	
	30.210	A	W Th 2	Arts 716	
	30.211	A	T W 2	Arts 206	
	30.212	A	M T 4	Arts 716	

III	30.301	B	M T 2	OA 220
	30.302	A	W Th 4	Arts 716
	30.303	All year	Th 10,11	Arts 206
	30.304	A	T W 12	Arts 716
	30.305	A	T Th 3	Arts 716
	30.307	B	W 4	Arts 206
		B	Th 4	Arts 716
	30.309	B	T Th 3	Arts 206
	30.311	B	T W 12	Arts 716

**PSYCHOLOGY**

I	32.108	(i)	M Th 11	Lib B28
		(ii)	M Th 4	Lib B28
	32.109	(i)	T 11	HSB 1
		(ii)	T 4	HSB 1
II	32.210		M 12	Arts 209
	32.220		W 12	HSB 2
	32.230		T 12	Lib B15
	32.240	A	F 11	Lib B10
		All year	F 12	Lib B10
III	32.301		W 2	HSB 370
	32.303		T Th 10	ULT
	32.304		F 10	OA 029
	32.305		F 2	CB 15
	32.306		M 11. Th 9	Arts 716
	32.307		F 11	Arts 209
	32.309		M 10. F 12	Dept
	32.311	Term 1	Th 3	Arts 202
		Terms 2 & 3	T 2	Arts 716
	32.313		Th 1,2	Dept
	32.314		W 9,10,11	Dept

**RUSSIAN**

I	43.100 }		M T W Th F 12. M 2	Dept
	43.101 }			
	43.112		W 10,11	Dept
	43.113		M 10,11	Dept
II	43.210		T 10,11. W 12,2	Dept
	43.211	C	M 2	Dept
		D & E	M Th 2	Dept
	43.212	C	Th F 2	Dept
		D & E	F 2	
II	43.310		T 2. Th 10,11	Dept
	43.311		W 2,3	Dept
	43.312		T 2,3	Dept

**SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES**

I	46.100	(i)	M T Th 12	8 Grafton Rd: Lab 2
		(ii)	M T Th 2	8 Grafton Rd: Lab 2
	46.101		T W 11	Dept
II	46.200		T 9. Th 9,10	Dept
	46.203		W 9,10	Dept
	46.204		M 9,10	Dept

III	46.300		T 9,10. Th 11	Dept
	46.303		W 9,10	Dept
	46.304		M 9,10	Dept

**SOCIOLOGY**

I	82.100	A	W F 9	Lib B28
	82.101	B	W F 9	Lib B28
	82.103	B	M W 5	Lib B15
II	82.200	A	M 10. T 2,3	OA 220
	82.201	B	M 10. T 3	OA 220
	82.202	B	T 9,10. Th 12	CB 15
	82.204	A	Th 9,10. F 10	HSB 2
	82.205	A	M 11,12. W 2	Dept
	82.207	A	M 2,3. Th 11	Dept
	82.208	B	W 4. Th 10,11	Dept
	82.209	A	T 12. F 11,12	Dept
	82.210	B	M 11,12. W 2	Dept
	82.211	B	T 2. Th 2,3	Dept
	82.212	B	T 11. F 2,3	Dept
III	82.300	B	Th 12,3,4	Dept
	82.301	B	M 9,10. Th 2	Dept
	82.302	B	M 11,12. Th 11	Dept
	82.304	B	T 12,3,4	Dept
	82.305	B	T 11. F 2,3	Dept
	82.307	A	T 12,3,5	Dept
	82.308	B	F 9,10,11	Dept
	82.312	B	T 9,10. F 12	Dept
	82.316	All year	W 2,3	Dept
	82.318	A	M 2,3,4	Dept

**SPANISH**

I	45.102	(i)	T W 10	Arts 607
			Th 10	Arts 213
		(ii)	M W 11	Arts 719
			Th 10	Arts 719
	45.103		M 10	Arts 209
	45.104 }	(i)	M T W Th 9	Arts 509
	45.105 }	(ii)	M T W Th 9	Arts 701
		(iii)	M T W Th 12	Arts 509
		(iv)	M T W Th 4	Arts 509
	45.107 }		T 11,12	Arts 611
	45.108 }		W 12	Arts 719
II	45.200	(i)	T 2	Arts 607
			Th 2	Arts 719
		(ii)	T 4	Arts 607
			Th 4	Arts 719
	45.202		Th 10,11	Arts 613
	45.204		W 3	Arts 611
			Th 3	Arts 609
	45.208		M 10. T 11	Arts 607
			T 10	Arts 609
			W 9	Arts 708
	45.209		M 11	Arts 607
			M 3	Arts 609

III	45.300		M 10. T 11	Arts 607	
			T 10	Arts 609	
			W 9	Arts 708	
	45.302		T 3	Arts 611	
			W 3	Arts 613	
	45.305		M 3,4	Arts 607	
	45.307		Th 10,11	Arts 607	
	45.309		T 10	Arts 701	
			Th 2	Arts 613	
<b>ZOOLOGY</b>					
I	38.102	(i)	M T Th F 2	Lib B15	3,4
		(ii)	M T Th F 4	Lib B15	3,4
II	38.202		M T Th F 4	Zoo LT	1,2
	38.203		M T Th F 4	Zoo LT	4
	38.204		M T Th F 4	Zoo LT	3
	38.205		M T Th F 2	Zoo LT	4
	38.207		M T Th F 2	Zoo LT	1
	38.209		M T Th F 3	Zoo LT	3
	38.212		M T Th F 9	Zoo LT	2
III	38.302		M T Th F 4	Zoo LT	1,2
	38.310		M T Th F 3	Zoo LT	4
	38.316		M T Th F 9	Bot LT	3
	38.317		M T Th F 2	CB 114	1
	38.318		M T Th F 4	Bot LT	2

## LABORATORY TIMETABLE 1988

Note: Laboratories are taken over the same period as the corresponding lectures, unless otherwise stated.

The length of laboratories is shown as follows:

F 10-1 indicates a lab beginning at 10 am and finishing at 1 pm on Fridays.

Where only one figure is given, e.g. W 3, the lab indicated lasts from 3 pm to 4 pm on Wednesdays.

### BIOCHEMISTRY

				(ii)	T F 10-1	2
				(i)	M 10-1	3
				(ii)	T 10-1	3
II	66.202	(i)	W 10-1	Consult Botany Dept		
		(ii)	F 10-1			
	66.203	(i)	T 10-1	III	39.311	W 10-1, 2-5
		(ii)	Th 10-1		39.313	W 10-1, 2-5
						Consult Botany Dept
III	66.301		M Th 10-1		39.314	W 10-1, 2-5
	66.302		M Th 10-1			Consult Zoology Dept

### BIOLOGY

I	39.101	(i)	T 10-1	I	06.102	(i) T 10-1
		(ii)	T 10-1			(ii) W 10-1
		(iii)	W 10-1			(iii) Th 10-1
		(iv)	W 10-1			(iv) F 10-1
		(v)	Th 10-1	II	06.202	Group A M T 10-1, W 9-12
		(vi)	Th 10-1			Group B W 2-5, Th F 10-1
		(vii)	F 10-1	(Students attend one laboratory from each group)		
		(viii)	F 10-1		06.205	(i) M Th 10-1
						(ii) T F 10-1
II	39.210	(i)	M Th 10-1		06.221	(i) M Th 10-1
						(ii) T F 10-1



III	06.302	Group A	MT 10-1, W 9-12
		Group B	W 2-5, Th F 10-1
(Students attend one laboratory from each group)			
	06.321		TF 10-1
	06.325		M Th 10-1
	06.331		TF 10-1
	06.332		TF 10-1
	06.341		M Th 10-1
	06.361		M Th 10-1
	06.371		W 10-1, 2-5
			Consult Dept

**CELLULAR & MOLECULAR BIOLOGY**

III	40.303	(i)	M Th 10-1
		(ii)	TF 10-1
	40.304	(i)	M Th 10-1
		(ii)	TF 10-1
	40.305		W 10-1, 3-6

**CHEMISTRY****I 08.111/121**

Chemistry I students will be assigned to one 3-hour laboratory session chosen from the following times:

- (i) M 10-1
- (ii) M 3-6
- (iii) T 10-1
- (iv) T 3-6
- (v) Th 10-1
- (vi) Th 3-6
- (vii) F 10-1

II	08.210	(i)	M Th 3-6	1,2
		(ii)	M Th 3-6	3,4
		(iii)	M Th 10-1	1,2
		(iv)	M Th 10-1	3,4
	08.220	Two times, in Q1,2 or Q3,4		

Either M 10-1 and one time chosen from:

- M 3-6
- W 10-1
- W 3-6
- Th 10-1
- Th 3-6

Or M 3-6 and one time chosen from:

- W 10-1
- W 3-6
- Th 10-1
- Th 3-6

08.230 Two times, in Q1,2 or Q3,4

Either T 10-1 and one time chosen from:

- T 3-6
- Th 10-1
- Th 3-6
- F 10-1
- F 3-6

Or T 3-6 and one time chosen from:

- Th 10-1
- Th 3-6
- F 10-1
- F 3-6
- (i) M 10-1
- (ii) T 2-5
- (iii) F 10-1

08.250

III 08.310, 08.311, 08.320, 08.321: Two times, in Q1, 2, 3 or 4 chosen from:

- (i) T 10-1
- (ii) T 3-6
- (iii) W 10-1
- (iv) W 3-6

In no case must 08.310 & 311, or 08.320 & 321 be taken in the same quarters.

08.330 Two times, in Q1 or 2

W 10-1 and one time chosen from:

- (i) Th 10-1
- (ii) Th 3-6
- (iii) F 3-6

08.331 Two times, in Q3 or 4

W 10-1 and one time chosen from:

- (i) Th 10-1
- (ii) Th 3-6
- (iii) F 3-6

08.340 Consult Dept

08.352 (i) M 10-1 2,3,4  
(ii) T 2-5 2,3,4  
(iii) F 10-1 2,3,4

08.360 Three times, in Q1,2 or 3 chosen from:

- (i) M 10-1
- (ii) M 3-6
- (iii) Th 10-1
- (iv) Th 3-6
- (v) F 10-1

08.370 F 10-1 3,4

**COMPUTER SCIENCE**

Consult Dept

**GEOGRAPHY**

I	20.101/2	(i)	T 11-1
		(ii)	T 2-4
		(iii)	T 4-6
		(iv)	W 10-12
		(v)	W 2-4
		(vi)	W 4-6
		(vii)	Th 10-12
		(viii)	Th 2-4
		(ix)	Th 4-6
		(x)	F 9-11
II	20.201	(i)	T 9
		(ii)	T 10
		(iii)	T 11

		<b>PHYSICS</b>	
20.202	(iv) T 3	I 31.101 & 102	T 10-1
	(v) T 4	31.101 or 102	T 10-1 1,2
	(i) T 9	31.104	Attend one from:
	(ii) T 10		(i) W 10-12 2,3
	(iii) W 8		(ii) W 2-4 2,3
	(iv) W 9		Attend one from:
	(v) W 12	31.140 & 150}	(i) M 10-1
	(i) Th 9-11	31.141 & 151}	(ii) Th 10-1
	(ii) Th 11-1		(iii) F 10-1
	(iii) Th 2-4		(iv) M 3-6
20.203	(iv) Th 4-6		(v) T 3-6
	(i) M 10		(vi) Th 3-6
	(ii) M 12		(vii) F 3-6
	(iii) M 3		Attend one from:
	(iv) M 4	31.140 or 150}	(i) M 10-1 1,2
20.204	(v) M 5	31.141 or 151}	(ii) Th 10-1 1,2
	Consult Dept		(iii) F 10-1 1,2
20.205	Th 3		(iv) M 3-6 1,2
III 20.302	T 12		(v) T 3-6 1,2
	(i) W 9-11		(vi) Th 3-6 1,2
	(ii) W 11-1		(vii) F 3-6 1,2
	M 5		
	W 4	II 31.290	Attend one from:
	Th 3		(i) M Th 3-6
	M 9		(ii) T F 3-6
	T 9	31.297	Attend one from:
	T 5		(i) M Th 4-6 1,2
	Th 4		(iii) T F 4-6 3,4
<b>GEOLOGY</b>		III 31.390	Attend one from:
I 21.100	(i) W 2-4		(i) M Th 3-6 1,2
	(ii) Th 11-1		(ii) T F 3-6 1,2
	(iii) Th 3-5	31.391	Attend one from:
	(i) T 3-6 2,3,4		(i) M Th 3-6 3,4
	(ii) W 10-1 2,3,4		(ii) T F 3-6 3,4
II 21.200	Consult Dept	31.392	Attend one from:
	M 10-1 1,2		(i) M Th 3-6 1,2
	M 10-1 3,4		(ii) T F 3-6 1,2
	(i) W 11-1, 4-6 1,2		(iii) M Th 3-6 3,4
	(ii) T 4-6, Th 3-5 1,2		(iv) T F 3-6 3,4
	(i) W 11-1, 4-6 3,4		(v) M 3-6
	(ii) T 4-6, Th 3-5 3,4		(vi) T 3-6
			(vii) Th 3-6
III 21.300	Consult Dept	31.393	(viii) F 3-6
	M 10-1		Th F 3-6 3,4
	W 2-5		
	M 4-6	<b>PHYSIOLOGY</b>	
	T 10-1	II 67.201	(i) M 10-1
	Th F 3-6 3,4		(ii) Th 10-1
	F 10-1 1,2		
	Th 10-12 1,2	III 67.301	W 2-5
	F 10-12 3,4	67.302	F 10-1
		67.303	F 10-1
<b>PHARMACOLOGY</b>		<b>PSYCHOLOGY</b>	
III 96.301	(i) T 10-1	I 32.109	(i) M 9-11
	(ii) W 10-1		(ii) M 2-4
	(at Medical School)		

- (iii) T 9-11
- (iv) T 2-4
- (v) W 8-10
- (vi) W 10-12
- (vii) W 4-6
- (viii) Th 9-11
- (ix) Th 3-5

- II 32.210
- (i) M 10-12
  - (ii) T 10-12
  - (iii) W 10-12
  - (iv) Th 10-12
  - (v) F 10-12

For other Stage II and Stage III laboratories: Consult the department.

## ZOOLOGY

- I 38.102
- (i) T 10-1
  - (ii) W 10-1
  - (iii) W 2-5
  - (iv) Th 10-1
  - (v) F 10-1
- II 38.202
- Group A M T W 10-1
- Group B W 2-5.
- Th F 10-1
- (Students to choose one laboratory from each group)
- 38.203 Two times, selected from:
- (i) M 10-1
  - (ii) T 10-1
  - (iii) W 10-1
  - (iv) Th 10-1
  - (v) F 10-1
- 38.204 Two times, selected from:
- (i) M 10-1
  - (ii) T 10-1
  - (iii) W 10-1
  - (iv) Th 10-1
  - (v) F 10-1
- 38.205 M Th 10-1
- 38.207
- Group A M T W 10-1
- Group B W 2-5.
- Th F 10-1
- (Students to choose one laboratory from each group)
- 38.209
- (i) M Th 10-1
  - (ii) T F 10-1
- III 38.302
- Group A M T W 10-1
- Group B W 2-5.
- Th F 10-1
- (Students to choose one laboratory from each group)
- 38.310 T F 10-1
- 38.316 W 10-1, 2-5
- Consult Dept
- 38.317 W 10-1, 2-5
- 38.318 T Th 10-1

---

# Scholarships, Tertiary Assistance Grants and Awards

## *Contents*

---

441	Tertiary Assistance Grants
442	Definitions of Full-Time Study, 1988
444	Scholarships and Prizes
445	National Scholarships 1987
445	University of Auckland Scholarships 1987
447	University of Auckland Prizes 1986

---

# SCHOLARSHIPS, TERTIARY ASSISTANCE GRANTS AND OTHER AWARDS

## TERTIARY ASSISTANCE GRANTS

For the convenience of students a brief outline of grants available through the Department of Education is printed below.

The official information is contained in a booklet available from the Registry entitled *Applicants Guide for Tertiary Assistance Grants*.

All enquiries should be made in the first instance to the Tertiary Grants Section, Registry building.

**Note:** Values stated are the figures as at July, 1987.

### ELIGIBILITY

A Study Grant may be awarded only to a person who is:

- (1) A New Zealand citizen; or
- (2) a person from overseas who is entitled to reside permanently in New Zealand and who signs a statutory declaration stating their intention to do so.

Persons admitted to New Zealand on a study permit issued by the Department of Labour are *not* eligible for bursary assistance.

### 1. FEES GRANT

#### (A) FEES GRANT

A fees grant may be awarded to a student who is enrolled for a recognised course of study at a university in New Zealand provided that he/she is taking in that year at least one-third of a full-time programme.

#### (B) VALUE OF A FEES GRANT

A fees grant meets 75% of the tuition fees for all of the courses that normally constitute the course of study for which the grant is awarded.

#### (C) INCOME RESTRICTION

Students are not eligible for a fees grant if they have a personal gross income from any source in excess of \$4,000.

#### (D) TERM OF A FEES GRANT

The maximum fees grant assistance available is for two courses or the equivalent of five years of a full-time study, whichever is the lesser.

#### (E) SUSPENSION OF A FEES GRANT

##### (a) *Full-time study*

A fees grant is suspended if a student fails to pass more than half the course for which they receive assistance or more than half a full-time programme, whichever is the *lesser*.

##### (b) *Part-time study*

A fees grant is suspended if the student fails to pass more than half the papers for which they receive assistance or at least one third of a full-time programme whichever is the *greater*.

#### (F) REINSTATEMENT OF FEES GRANT

A fees grant is reinstated if in a subsequent year of study the student passes one-third of a full-time programme.

### 2. STUDY GRANT

#### (A) STUDY GRANT

A study grant is available where the following conditions are met:

- (i) for full-time study at a university;
- (ii) enrolled in an approved course;
- (iii) the course is a recognised course of study
- (iv) must attend all lectures, laboratories and tutorials.

#### (B) VALUE OF STUDY GRANT

The value is \$41 a week for the period of the academic year.

#### (C) INCOME RESTRICTION

Students are not eligible for the full study if they are in receipt of a personal income of over \$4,000 p.a.

#### (D) TERM OF STUDY GRANT

A study grant is available for recognised courses only, subject to a maximum of two courses or a limit of five years (unless the course has been specifically recognised as a long course). Each recognised course has a minimum tenure in which a full-time student could complete the recognised course.

**(E) SUSPENSION OF A STUDY GRANT**

A study grant is suspended if in any year, the student fails to gain passes in more than half the work of a full-time course.

**(F) REINSTATEMENT OF STUDY GRANT**

A suspended study grant can be reinstated if students, at their own expense, gain passes in more than half the work of a full-time course in any subsequent year of study.

**3. A AND B BURSARIES**

These are worth \$200 p.a. and \$100 p.a. respectively. They may be gained by passing Bursary examinations or sufficiently high grades in final examinations for a full-time course of study.

**4. ACCOMMODATION GRANT**

An accommodation grant of \$37.50 per week may be claimed by students under the age of 20 years on 31 January, provided they are eligible to claim a study grant, if it is necessary for them to live away from either parent whose normal place of residence is outside the accommodation grant boundary, in order to attend the tertiary institution offering their course of study.

Students over the age of 20 years on 31 January may, provided they are eligible to claim a study grant, claim an accommodation grant if they are not residing at the home of either parent.

**5. HARSHIP GRANT**

A hardship grant is available to students who are in receipt of a tertiary study grant and who would be unable to study full-time without additional financial assistance. The maximum amount payable is \$58 weekly bringing the total grant payable to a maximum of \$136.50 weekly. Applications for the hardship grant are assessed on a case by case basis and awards are made in accordance with the needs of individual students. In general, single students under the age of 20 on 31 January in the year in which the application is made are required to make joint application with their parents or guardians. This may be waived in exceptional circumstances.

Additional information may be obtained by writing to the Registrar, University of Auckland, Private Bag, Auckland.

---

## DEFINITIONS OF FULL-TIME STUDY 1988

**Architecture, Property and Planning**

Architecture Intermediate	All subjects required for the Intermediate under BArch Reg 5(72 bursary points)*
BArch	36 credits
Planning Intermediate	72 bursary points*
BPlan	7 papers
Property Administration Intermediate	72 bursary points*
BPA	A professional year or equivalent

**Arts**

BA	72 bursary points*
DipBrC	All work as specified under DipBrC Reg 3
DipDrama	All work as specified under DipDrama Reg 3 and 4
DipEd	The required 4 papers and Original Investigation. In the case of a student taking Education 14.100 and 14.101 as well as Diploma subjects: 14.100 and 14.101 and either 4 papers or 3 papers and Original Investigation
DipEdPsych	Pt I or Pt II
DipELT	All papers as specified under DipELT Reg 3
DipGuid	Pt I or Pt II

**DipLGA**

All subjects required under DipLGA Reg 5

**Commerce**

BCom	72 bursary points*
PGDipBus	6 papers as specified under PGDipBus Reg 4 and 5
PGDipCom	6 papers as specified under PGDipCom Reg 3

**Engineering**

Engineering Intermediate  
BE

72 bursary points\*  
A Professional year or equivalent.

**Fine Arts**

BFA

6 papers in the first Professional year  
9 papers in the second, third and fourth Professional years

**Law**

Law Intermediate  
LLBI/LLB Hons  
LLB2 and LLB3  
DipCrim  
PGDipLS

All subjects required under LLB Reg 3, (72 bursary points\*)  
First Law examination or equivalent  
72 bursary points\*  
Division I or II equivalent  
All subjects required under PGDipLS Reg 3 and 4

**Medicine and Human Biology**

BHB  
MBChB

Part I, II or III  
Part I or II

**Music**

BMus  
BMus (Performance)  
BMus (Performance) (Hons)  
DipMus  
DipMus (Hons)

72 bursary points\*  
Performance and 3 papers  
All work as specified under Reg 4  
6 papers  
6 papers

**Science**

BSc  
BSc (Hons)  
BOptom  
DipClinPsych

72 bursary points\*  
Part III or IV  
Year I, II, III or IV or equivalent  
All subjects required under DipClinPsych  
Reg 3

DipCompSci

All subjects required under DipCompSci  
Reg 4

DipGeothermTech  
DipMath Ed  
DipOpt  
DipStats

Parts I, II and III  
All subjects required under DipMath Ed Reg 3  
Division I, II, III or IV or equivalent  
All subjects required under DipStats Reg 3  
72 bursary points\*

**Transitional Certificate****Prerequisites for Postgraduate Courses**

A course of papers, prescribed to fulfil prerequisites for entering a postgraduate degree, may, with the approval of Senate, be deemed full-time for the purpose of these regulations.

**Masters' Courses**

The student must be pursuing a full-time programme approved by the Head of the Department.

**Notes: (i)\* Bursary Points**

(a) Papers in the Schedules for BA, BCom, BMus:

at Stage I and II 12 bursary points per paper  
at Stage III 16 bursary points per paper

(b) Papers in the Schedule for BSc

at Stage I 2 bursary points per credit  
at Stage II 3 bursary points per credit  
at Stage III 4 bursary points per credit

(c) Papers in the Schedule for LLB Second and Third Law Examinations 8 bursary points per hour

(ii) For the purpose of the Tertiary Assistance Grants Regulations the following exceptional combinations of papers/credits have been approved as one third or more of a full-time programme

BE Either 3 half-year papers  
or 1 full-year paper and 1 half-year paper

BPlan, PGDipBus, PGDipCom

2 papers

A full list of definitions is available from the Tertiary Grants Section, Registry.

(iii) The following course requirements are *NOT* included in the definition of full-time study for Tertiary Assistance Grants purposes:

LLB and LLB (Hons)  
BE

Legal Practice  
Laboratory requirements

## TENURE

In general, students have a standard entitlement to assistance for two recognised courses or five years, whichever is the lesser. (The entitlement to fees grant is for assistance for two recognised courses or the equivalent of five years of full-time study, whichever is the lesser.) The period of tenure for the various courses that have been recognised for tertiary grants purposes is as follows:

- One Year: DipBrC, DipBIA, DipCompSci, DipDrama, DipEd, DipELT  
DipGeothermTech, DipGuid, DipLGA, DipMus (Hons),  
DipStats, DipMathEd, PGDipSocRes, MPlan, MArch, MJur, LLM (papers only),  
MMedSc, MHB, BMus (Performance) (Hons), ME (papers only), Transitional Certificate
- Two Years: DipCrim, DipTP, MBChB, MA, MCom, MSc, MPhil, MFA, ME  
(papers and thesis) MMus, LLM (papers and thesis), MA/DipClinPsych, DipEdPsych
- Three Years: BA, BCom, BHB, BMus, BPA, BSc, DipMus
- Four Years: BE, BFA, BMus (Performance), BOptom, BSc (Hons),  
BPlan, DipOpt, LLB, LLB (Hons), BCom/BSc†, BCom/BA†
- Five Years: BArch, BA/BSc, BA/LLB†, BA/LLB (Hons)†, BA/BMus†, BA/BMus (Performance)†,  
BA/DipMus†, BA/DipMus (Hons)†, BCom/LLB†, BCom/LIB (Hons)†,  
BHB/MBChB, BMus DipMus†, BMus/DipMusHons†, BSc/DipOpt†,  
BMus (Performance)/BMus (Performance) (Hons), BA/MA,  
BA/MA/DipClinPsych.  
BSc/MSc, BSc (Hons)/MSc, BCom/MCom, LLB/LLM (papers only),  
LLB (Hons)/MJur, BMus/MMus, BE/ME (papers only), BPlan/MPlan
- Six Years: LLB/LLM (papers and thesis)\*, BFA/MFA\*, BHB/MBChB/MMedSc\*,  
BHB/MHB/MBChB\*, BArch/MArch\*, BE/ME (papers and thesis)\*, BMus (Perf)\*/MMus  
(Perf)\*, DipOpt/MSc (in Psych)\*
- Seven Years BSc/BHB/MBChB, BA (Bio or Chem)/BHB/MBChB

**Notes:** (i) Conjoint courses, marked with a dagger (†), count as two courses. Other combined courses count as one course only.

(ii) Those combinations of courses marked with an asterisk(\*) have been approved as "long" courses and can qualify for a sixth year of tenure.

(iii) Certain courses have been designated as Courses of National Importance with a tenure of 6-7 years. Students may apply to the Director-General to receive assistance for combinations of courses regardless of any previous assistance which has been granted. A combination of a paramedical course and a suitable undergraduate course is designated as a Course of National Importance.

(iv) A further year's fees assistance is available for Law Professionals in the following combinations only: LLB/LLM/LawProf and LLB (Hons)/MJur/LawProf, LLB/LawProf and LLB (Hons)/LawProf.

(v) Seven years, long course in Medicine, requires student to be admitted to BHB II on the basis of credits for the first Degree.

## SCHOLARSHIPS AND PRIZES

A booklet entitled *Awards Handbook* is available without charge from the enquiry counter at the Registry, Princes Street. This booklet gives full details of the regulations governing scholarships, bursaries, prizes and other awards administered by the University and details of funds available for special assistance.

A handbook published annually entitled *University Grants Committee Handbook* gives full details of the regulations governing awards administered by the University Grants Committee. This handbook is available from Whitcoulls Ltd, booksellers, and for reference in the University library.

### REVIEW OF SCHOLARSHIP

The Council, in awarding any scholarship, reserves the right to reduce the annual value of such scholarship at any time and from time to time during the tenure of it by any holder should the annual income of the funds of such scholarship, in the opinion, of the Council, render such reduction expedient. All scholarships offered are subject to review in the event of the candidate being awarded other scholarships. Every holder of a scholarship shall be deemed to accept the award of same, subject to the above reservation, and notwithstanding that the value of such scholarship is set out specifically in the Regulations.

### RE-AWARD OF A SCHOLARSHIP DISCONTINUED BY THE ORIGINAL HOLDER

Fresh applications may be called for in any scholarships discontinued after a period of three months or more from the original date of award; the re-award in the event of this discontinuation of the scholarship to be made on the basis of the original application if possible.



## NATIONAL SCHOLARSHIPS — 1987

*Cambridge Commonwealth Trust Prince of Wales  
Scholarship*

*William Georgetti Scholarship*

*Frank Knox Memorial Fellowship  
NZ/Japan Foundation Fletcher Challenge  
Scholarship*

*Postgraduate Scholarships*

Adair, Vivienne A.  
Battley, M.A.  
Carter, Frances A.  
Carter, S.J.  
Chua, K.C.  
Clark, N.H.  
Clement, R.P.  
Cole, R.G.  
Coleman, S.E.  
Cowan, B.R.  
de Castro-Robinson, Eve K.  
Dempster, H.L.  
Ellis, M.S.  
Falkner, Julie C.  
Finnigan, S.M.

Fraser, G.B.F.  
Gavey, Nicola J.  
Grove, A.J.  
Hammer, P.E.J.  
Harris, J.G.  
Hickey, K.A.  
Hill, A.N.  
Hollis, C.J.  
Hookings, A.G.  
Jennings, W.L.  
Lipscombe, P.R.  
Lum, R.  
Mander, R.I.  
Marshall, Yvonne M.  
Milich, J.S.

Stone, M.J.  
Clement, R.P.  
Segerberg, K.K.  
Tolmie, Julia R.

Hollis, C.

Montgomerie, Deborah A.  
Ng, Mabel M.P.  
Oliver, Pam  
Palmer, G.N.  
Robb, D.J.  
Ruddock, R.S.  
Sewell, Mary A.  
Shieff, Sarah  
Sowerby, K.W.  
Stone, M.J.  
Sutton, P.J.H.  
Williamson, Anne E.  
Wong-Toi, H.  
Yee, K.S.

*Rhodes Scholarship  
Shircliffe Fellowship  
L.B. Wood Travelling Scholarship*

Woods, Ngaire T.  
Hollis, C.  
Stone, M.J.

## UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND SCHOLARSHIPS — 1987

*Casement Aickin Memorial Bursary  
Association of Accredited Advertising Agencies Scholarship  
Auckland Centennial Music Festival Scholarship  
Auckland City Council Bursary in Town Planning  
Auckland City Council Scholarship in Botany  
Auckland City Council Queen Elizabeth II Scholarships:*

Calvert, Isobel R.  
Cole, Gina A.  
Jones M.N.  
Kingstone, C.T.  
Mafi, Lolisi  
Mailei, Rosetta  
Maoate, T.

Mason, G.D.  
Ott, Tania  
Parekowhai, Theresa M.  
Schaaf, Amelia  
Silao, M.C.  
Sione, S.F.  
Taliai, O.M.

*Auckland Savings Bank Scholarship*

*AWA Scholarship in Radio Communications Engineering  
Marie d'Albini Scholarship  
Anne Bellam Scholarship  
Bishop Music Scholarships*

*Frances Briggs Memorial Bursaries in Botany*

*F.D. Brown Postgraduate Science Research Scholarship  
Sir Peter Buck Memorial Bursary  
Chamber of Commerce Scholarship  
Comalco Limited Scholarship in Engineering  
John Court Scholarship  
A.G. Davis Scholarship  
Deltec Scholarship*

No Award  
Childs, Reva C.  
Bennet, M.P.  
Jennings, Jayne A.  
No Award

Thomson, M.A.  
Tonga, T.  
Toso, Aiga P.  
Tufuga, F.L.S.R.  
Tugia, Ruth F.  
Vivili, Soana A.  
Wolffgramm, Ema A.  
Hammer, P.E.J.

No Award  
Weston, R.M.  
Thomson, J.A.  
Gordon, Catherine G.  
Utting, C.M.  
Iball, Susan D.  
McKenzie, R.J.  
Stone, M.J.  
No Award  
Hardie, B.G.S.  
No Award  
No Award  
Sprott, Alison M.  
No Award

Elam Art Scholarship  
 Estate Realities Postgraduate Scholarship  
 F/O Alfred P. Fogerty Memorial Scholarships

#### Geology Centennial Awards

#### Gillies Scholarships

Winifred Gimblett Scholarship  
 Belinda Godfrey Memorial Organ Scholarship  
 Sir George Grey Scholarship  
 Sir James Gunson Scholarship  
 James Hardie & Co. Pty. Ltd. Bursary in Architecture  
 Constance Herbert Memorial Music Scholarship  
 Hollinrake Memorial Scholarship  
 Robert Horton Engineering Scholarship  
 Evan Gibb Hudson Scholarship in Engineering  
 Institution of Professional Engineers New Zealand Postgraduate Scholarship  
 T.W.J. Johnson Scholarship in Clinical Medicine  
 T.R. Johnston Scholarship  
 Walter Kirby Singing Scholarship  
 KRTA University of Auckland Foundation Scholarship  
 Duffus Lubecki Scholarship  
 Janet Bain Mackay Memorial Scholarship  
 McConnell Dowell Postgraduate Scholarship  
 Medical Research Council of NZ Research Award in Medical Sciences

Mercer Memorial Scholarship  
 National Roads Board Postgraduate Scholarship  
 NZ Federation of University Women (Auckland Branch) Postgraduate Fellowship  
 NZ Planning Institute Bursary  
 NZ Portland Cement Association Postgraduate Scholarship  
 NZ Pottery and Ceramics Research Association  
 NZ Steel Research Scholarship  
 Phyllis Paykel Memorial Scholarship  
 Pears-Britten Scholarship in Singing  
 Wilhelm Pensler Scholarships in Music

#### Elizabeth Mary Phillips Scholarships:

Cox, Madeline E.  
 Ferguson, Carol  
 Frusin, A.  
 Gavin, Adrienne E.  
 Hookings, Elizabeth L.  
 Keestra, Jennifer E.  
 Leilua, R.C.

Grace Phillips Memorial Bursary  
 Lissie Rathbone Scholarships

Lissie Rathbone Additional Scholarship  
 Joe Raynes Scholarship  
 Kathleen Mary Reardon Memorial Music Scholarship  
 Reardon Postgraduate Scholarship in Music  
 Rive Memorial Scholarship  
 Sagar Scholarship for String Players  
 Sanders Memorial Scholarship  
 Michael Joseph Savage Memorial Scholarship  
 Senior Scholarships:

Anderson, Margaret  
 Armstrong, G.P.  
 Baker, A.L.  
 Bendall, A.J.  
 Blaicklock, K.E.  
 Blythe, Helen L.

Brown, D.L.  
 Brown, Lynn E.  
 Davidson, P.K.  
 Dudley, J.M.  
 Geron, Linda R.  
 Griffin, R.K.

Hunt, Jennifer H.  
 Jordan, M.P.  
 Borich, Mary-Rose  
 McDermott, C.J.  
 Martin, H.R.  
 McIntosh, S.M.  
 Ives, C.D.  
 Masters, B.P.  
 Gavey, Nicola J.  
 No Award  
 Dudley, J.M.  
 Thomson, Beverley C.  
 Edwards, Megan B.  
 Johnstone, Katherine  
 Baas, W.P.  
 Ng, W.K.  
 Fraser, S.D.  
 No Award  
 Fenton, Anna J.  
 Scott, A.D.  
 Loftus, D.H.  
 No Award  
 Sutton, Bridget M.  
 Iball, Susan D.  
 Bates, G.J.  
 Brew, S.K.  
 Liley, D.T.J.  
 Mayne, A.S.D.  
 Morris, S.A.  
 No Award  
 Salisbury, Mary C.  
 No Award  
 No Award  
 No Award  
 No Award  
 No Award  
 Campbell, Barbara L.  
 Knuferrmann, Kirsten  
 Haddock, Tanya M.

Moyland, Philippa M.  
 Reeve, S.J.  
 Seaboyer, Judy A.  
 Smith, C.P.  
 Stevens, H.D.  
 Turner, S.F.  
 Yeats, Joanne V.  
 Mucalo, M.R.  
 Gambrill, C.W.  
 Langridge, A.B.  
 No Award  
 Thomson, Margaret E.  
 Weston, Rachel D.M.  
 Crawshaw, Sandra N.  
 Sheward, D.B.  
 Bennett, M.P.  
 No Award  
 Young, Jane

Haddock, Tanya M.  
 Halstead, M.A.B.  
 Hammer, Margaret A.E.  
 Hanson, Anna D.  
 Hardie, B.G.S.  
 Heaven, D.J.

Hulme, Hanne  
Hutt, J.P.D.  
Iball, Susan D.  
Jansen, M. McN.  
King, K. J.  
Kingsford, D.P.  
Lawson, A. J.  
Levin, Petia L.  
Lipscombe, P.R.  
Lucas, Jennifer A.  
Meads, C.S.  
Milich, J.S.

*Sinclair Scholarships**S.P.E.L.D. Association Scholarship**Maxwell Walker Memorial Scholarship**Ivon Watkins-Dow Bursaries in Chemical and Materials Engineering*

Moore, S.B.  
Mucalo, M.R.  
Poletti, N.C.  
Pool, Felicity J.  
Pound, P.C.  
Power, Helen C.  
Price, D.J.  
Pullan, M.C.  
Purdie, Jennifer M.  
Rasheed, Razia S.  
Ropiha, Joan P.K.  
Sadelar, Christiane

Salvador, Paula E.  
Short, W.M.  
Smith, Robyn C.M.  
Stephenson, Diane J.  
Sutherland, B.A.  
Todd, P.D.  
Tooley, Deborah A.  
Trotter, Julie A.  
Van Dolleweerd, C.J.  
Williams, G.A.  
Wright, M.R.  
Wrightson, Charlotte E.  
Moore, Suzanne J.  
Waterhouse, Emma J.  
No Award  
Goodyer, C.  
Hollewand, M.P.  
Stevens, Fiona J.

---

## UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND PRIZES — 1986

---

### *AHI Prize in Glass Design Annual Prizes*

*Accounting*  
*Ancient History*  
*Anthropology*  
*Applied Mathematics*  
*Architecture*  
*Art History*  
*Asian History*  
*Asian Politics*  
*Biblical History and Literature*  
*Biochemistry*  
*Botany*  
*Cell Biology*  
*Chemistry*  
*Chinese*  
*Commercial Law (Commerce)*  
*Commercial Law (Law)*  
*Computer Science*  
*Economics*  
*Education*

*Engineering — Chemical & Materials*  
*Civil*  
*Electrical & Electronic*  
*Engineering Science*  
*Mechanical*

*English*  
*Equity and Succession*  
*Fine Arts*  
*French*  
*Geography*  
*Geology*  
*German*  
*Greek*

*Hebrew*

No Award

MacCulloch, R.J.  
Williams, Rebecca A.  
Crosby, A.D.  
Yee, T.  
Moloney, C.J.  
Pound, P.C.  
White, G.S.  
Birdsall, Jane I.  
No Award  
Lucas, Jennifer A.  
McRae, Karen G.  
Gruijters, T.  
Belcher, W.J.  
Akakura, Motoko A.  
Shadgett, Susan J.  
McIlraith, R.J.  
Halstead, M.A.B.  
Nixon, Catherine J.  
Brown, Lynnette D.  
McNee, Elizabeth M.  
Hollewand, M. P.  
Williamson, Anne E.  
Wong, K. H.  
Mason, A. J.  
Maltby, T. C.  
Bieleski, Lisa C.  
Wagner, Gabrielle J.  
de Boer, A. J.  
de Calonne, Danielle  
John, Sian A.  
Newson, Juliet A.  
Field, Penelope A.  
Cornford, Rosa M.  
Gilmour, S. J.  
Heffernan, Joan-Mary B.  
Levene, R.  
Lindstrom, Catherine L.

*Annual Prizes*

*History*  
*Human Biology*

*Indonesian*  
*Italian*  
*Japanese*  
*Land Law*  
*Latin*

*Linguistics*  
*Management Studies*  
*Maori Studies*  
*Medicine*  
*Music*  
*Optometry*  
*Philosophy*

*Physics*  
*Physiology*  
*Political Studies*  
*Property Administration*  
*Psychology*  
*Pure Mathematics*  
*Russian*  
*Scandinavian Studies*  
*Sociology*

*Spanish*

*Town Planning*  
*Zoology*

*Philip Sidney Arden Memorial Prize*

*Asian History Award*

*Auckland Brick Manufacturers' Prize*

*Auckland District Law Society's Centennial Prizes*

*Auckland Stock Exchange Prize*

*Auckland Town Planning Assoc. Prize in Town Planning*

*Bartrum Memorial Prizes in Geology*

*Beecham Research Laboratories' Prize*

*L. H. Briggs Memorial Prize*

*Vernon Brown Memorial Award*

*Alice Bush Memorial Prize*

*Butland Prize*

*Butterworth Prize*

*J. P. Campbell Bursary*

*R. Morrison Cassie Memorial Prize*

*Chisholm Memorial Prize*

*Ciba-Geigy Prize in Applied Pharmacology & Therapeutics*

*Clarkson Measured Drawing Prize*

*Coopers & Lybrand Prizes in Accounting*

*First:*  
*Second:*

*Honours Year:*  
*Stage III:*

Husbands, P.  
Peon, P. C.  
Irvine, Helen M.  
Ooi, Christina L. S.  
Daja, Mirella  
Pirie, Joanne L.  
Stephenson, Diane J.  
Bates, J. J.  
Ross, A. J.  
Symons, Louise R. B.  
Brown, D. L.  
Hardie, B. G. S.  
Te Aho, W. S.  
Thomson, A. D.  
Naden, L. P. D.  
No Award  
Ryan, M. J.  
Joyce, R. J.  
Beckinsale, N. J.  
Dance, Monica C.  
Lyne, C. J.  
Paltridge, A. J.  
Todd, P. D.  
Fisher, M. W.  
Cooper, S.  
Lothian, S. G.  
Walker, Caroline M.  
Rust, Alison R.  
Tulloch, Linley K.  
McFadyen, Marilyn  
Lane, Maria S.  
Spargo, G. D.  
Roberts, R. D.  
Turner, Sarah K.  
Cawte, Janet C.  
Moloney, C. C.  
Simmons, Lynda S.  
Attrill, W. J.  
Weatherell, D. G.  
Davis, G. R.  
No Award  
Hollis, C. J.  
Wallis, R. B.  
Kingsford, D. P. W.  
Craw, P. A.  
Hindmarsh, L. J.  
Mills, Clair  
Thomson, A. D.  
Snow, J. L.  
Matthews, M. D.  
Simester, A. P.  
Jaffe, K.  
Roberts, R. D.  
Jones, Annette P.  
Hollister-Jones, M. E.  
McColl, M. R.  
Bell, J.  
Harrison, Julie A.

*Cost and Management Accounting Prizes**Tony Cotton Memorial Prizes**Phillip Graham Crabbe Memorial Prize**Marian Cranwell Prize**K. B. Cumberland Prize**Gary Davies Memorial Prizes**Davies-Sproule Memorial Prize**Deloitte, Haskins & Sells Prizes**David Fleming Memorial Prize**Forensic Medicine Essay Prize**Fowlds Memorial Prizes**Graduate Award:**Undergraduate Award:**First Prize:**Second Prize:*— *Architecture, Property & Planning*— *Arts*— *Commerce*— *Engineering*— *Fine Arts*— *Law*— *Medicine & Human Biology*— *Music*— *Science**Eric Hector Goodfellow Memorial Prize**James Gordon Goodfellow Memorial Prize**Rosemary Grice Memorial Prize**Habens Prize**James Hardie Prize**Haydon Prize**W. E. Henley Prize in Clinical Medicine**George S. Holmes Memorial Prize**George Hopkins Prize**IEE Prize**Institute of Chartered Secretaries & Administrators' Prize**Institution of Production Engineers' Prize**Investment Finance Corporation Prize**Kupe Investments Prize**T.L. Lancaster Memorial Prize in Botany**Law Book Company Ltd. Prize**Arnold Lillie Prize in Geology**Mainzeal Construction Studies Prize**F.A. de la Mare Prize**S.R. de la Mare Prize**Dr. R.G. McElroy Prize**R.E.F. Matthews Prize in Cellular and Molecular Biology**Janetta McStay Prize for Pianists**Douglas Mews Prize**Monier Prizes**Montgomery Memorial Prize**John Mulgan Memorial Prize**N.Z. Automobile Assoc. Prize in Traffic Engineering**N.Z. Computer Society Prize**N.Z. Fellowship of Artists (Inc.) Award*

Hine, Sarah J.

MacCulloch, R. J.

Van Wichen, Maria E.

Chow, K.

Haddon, G. C.

Joyce, Barbara H.

Barrington, B.

Parkes, Fritha G.

Purdie, Jennifer M.

No Award

MacDonald, Wendy L.

Jagose, P. R.

Perkins, S. R.

Kovacevich, J. I. S.

Brown, Lyn E.

Tucker, H. R.

No Award

Hern, Annemarie

Lamplough, J. M.

Hammer, P. E. J.

Gatti, R. J. J.

McDougal, Andrea

Ponti, Giovanna

Huscroft, G. A.

No Award

Naden, L. P. D.

Grove, A. J.

Kingsford, D. P. W.

Purdie, Jennifer M.

Ellery, S.

Jessop, C.M.

Piercy, Maureen T.

Rodhouse, M.D.

Goodfellow, Kate

Casey, Jane E.

Furley, G. L.

Johnstone, Katherine A.

Stewart, G. R.

Hardie, B. G. S.

Holmes, Jennifer G.

Davis, G.R.

Chua, B.E.

No Award

Cooper, G.J.

Cameron, J.K.

Auchterlonie, D.

Tolmie, Julia R.

No Award

Shera, R.J.S.

Gruitjers, T.

Millar, A.P.

No Award

Dalkie, G.C.

Dickinson, D.P.

Twose, S.J.

Grove, A.J.

Hammer, Margaret A.E.

Yeo, E.H.

McDougal, W.W.

Caro, Nikola

## N.Z. Institute of Architects' Prizes —

## First Professional:

Downey, S.G.

Hoete, A.J.

Rozaly, M.Z.

## Second Professional:

Hindmarsh, L.J.

## Third Professional:

Davidson, P.K.

## Fourth Professional:

Budgett, Jeannette A.

Clapham, Linda M.

Howell, D.N.

O'Donnell, R.G.

Mucalo, M.R.

Auckett, A.L.

## N.Z. Institute of Chemistry (Auckland Branch) Prize

## N.Z. Institute of Valuers' Prize

## N.Z. Society of Accountants' Prizes

## Accounting I:

Hine, Sarah J.

## Accounting II:

MacCulloch, R.J.

## F.E.R. Noble Memorial Prize

Chua, B.E.

## Pacific Venture Capital Prizes

Denham, P.G.

Priest, R.A.

## Pathology Prize

Gilchrist, K.M.

## Peat, Marwick, Mitchell &amp; Co. Prizes

## First Prize:

Brown, Lyn E.

## Second Prize:

Gavin, Sue E.

## Potter Interior Systems Prizes in Architecture

## Second Professional:

Twose, S.J.

## Third Professional:

Hendriksen, D.M.

## Geoffrey Powell Prize

Jagose, P.R.

## Property Management Institute Prize

Cooper, B.D.C.

## D.W. Pullar Prize

Greenway, A.J.

Wu, Fiona T.

## Real Estate Institute Prize

Bridgman, Gina A.

## Douglas Robb Prize

Brick, M.J.

## Carrick Robertson Prize

Brick, M.J.

## Roche Prize in Psychiatry

Hagen, Elizabeth H.

## Christine Roigard Memorial Prize

Caughy, Rachel K.A.

## Royal N.Z. College of General Practitioners' Prize

Harding, Elizabeth G.

Horsburgh, R.J.

Christie, K.W.

## Rudd, Watts and Stone Prizes

Wetherell, D.G.

## Sagar Geophysics Prize

Sutton, P.J.H.

## Sandoz Prize in Pharmacology

Kingsford, D.P.W.

Pool, Felicity J.

## S.E.T.M.A. Timber Engineering Prize

Marriott, A.H.

## Arthur Sewell Prize in English

Rea, Barbara

## Lallu Ram Sharma Prize

No Award

## Smith, Kline &amp; French Prize in Cardiology

No Award

## Smith, Kline &amp; French Prize in Gastroenterology

No Award

## Squire Speedy Prize

Todd, P.D.

## John Tinline Prize in English

Blythe, Helen L.

## A.L. Titchener Prize

Finnigan, S.M.

Purdie, Jennifer M.

## Touche Ross Prize in Taxation

Shadgett, Suzanne

## H. B. Turbott Prize in Community Health

Horsburgh, R.J.

## Paul Turtill Memorial Awards In Geology — Best Student:

Price, Linda J.

## Second Award:

Fraser, I.R.

## Unity Group Prize

Caldwell, G.B.

## Valuers' Registration Board Prize

Cooper, B.D.C.

## Seiichi Waki Prize in Physics

Carter, S.J.

## Wallath Prize

Reid, A.

## W.D. Wilson Prize

O'Leary, G.J.

## Wilson-Allison Memorial Prize in Dermatology

Sinclair, Jan P.

## Maharata Winiata Memorial Prize

No Award

## Arthur Young Prize in Cost &amp; Management Accounting

Kerr, Jennifer A.

## Arthur Young Prize in Financial Accounting

MacCulloch, R.J.

## 1928 Staff Award in Mechanical Engineering

Farley, S.H.

# Legislation

## Contents

<b>Act of Parliament</b>	452	University of Auckland Act 1961
<b>University Statutes</b>	467	Court of Convocation Statute 1962
<b>University Regulations</b>	467	Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) Regulations
	470	Council Elections (Representative of Governing Bodies of Secondary Schools) Regulations
	472	Council Elections (Lecturers' Representative) Regulations
	474	Senate Elections (Lecturers' Representatives of Faculties) Regulations
	477	Senate Elections (Lecturers' Representatives at Large) Regulations

# LEGISLATION

## UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND ACT 1961

### ANALYSIS

#### *Title*

1. Short Title and commencement
2. Interpretation
3. Constitution of the University
4. University District and Court of Convocation
5. Visitor of the University

#### *The Council*

6. Constitution of Council
7. Transitional provisions
8. Term of office
9. Employees as Council members
10. Disqualification of members of Council
11. Casual vacancies in Council
12. Proceedings of Council not affected by vacancies, etc.
13. Election of members
14. Meetings of Council
15. Special meetings of Council
16. Council may appoint committees

#### *Powers of the Council*

17. Council to be governing body of University
18. Appointment of professors, lecturers, etc.
19. Conferment of degrees
20. Award of certificates, etc.
21. Lectures to members of the public
22. Power to make statutes and regulations
23. Seal of the University
24. Admission of students

#### *The Chancellor and Pro-Chancellor*

25. Election of Chancellor
26. Election of Pro-Chancellor
27. Right to preside at meetings of Council

#### *The Vice-Chancellor and Deputy Vice-Chancellor*

28. Vice-Chancellor
29. Deputy Vice-Chancellor

#### *The Senate*

30. Constitution of Senate
31. Chairman of Senate
32. Meetings of Senate
33. Proceedings of Senate not affected by vacancies, etc.
34. Functions of Senate
35. Senate may appoint committees
36. Council to consult Senate on academic matters

#### *Affiliated Institutions*

37. Admission of affiliated institutions

#### *Financial Provisions*

38. Benefactions to be strictly applied
39. Application of income and capital of University
40. Money to be paid into bank
41. Loan money to be paid into a separate account
42. Investment of money
43. Provision for Common Fund investment
44. Travelling allowances and expenses of members of Council
45. Council may insure members against personal accident while engaged in duties
46. Unauthorised expenditure of Council
47. Council to prescribe fees
48. Fees payable to associations of students
49. Grants by Council to associations of staff or students
50. Powers of Council in respect of property
51. Power to borrow by way of overdraft or temporary loan
52. Annual report and statement of accounts

#### *Repeals and Savings*

53. Repeals and savings Schedules



# AN ACT TO CONSOLIDATE AND AMEND CERTAIN ENACTMENTS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY RELATING TO THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

BE IT ENACTED by the General Assembly of New Zealand in Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:

**1. Short Title and commencement** – (1) This Act may be cited as the University of Auckland Act 1961.

(2) This Act shall come into force on the first day of January, nineteen hundred and sixty-two.

**2. Interpretation** – In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, –

“The Chancellor” means the Chancellor of the University of Auckland elected under this Act:

“The Council” means the Council of the University of Auckland:

“Financial year” means the financial year of the University fixed by the Council with the concurrence of the University Grants Committee:

“General course of study” means the structure of any course for a degree or other academic qualification and the subjects of study in the course; and includes the content of any subject in the course, any set works or periods to be studied, the extent and nature of any practical work required for any such subject, any prerequisites to the course or to the subjects of study in the course, and the types of examination:

“Lecturer” means a member of the staff of the University of Auckland who is in terms of his appointment an associate professor, a reader, a senior lecturer, or a lecturer of the University; and includes such other persons and classes of persons the Council from time to time determines:

“Personal course of study” means the subjects which an individual student selects for a degree or other academic qualification in accordance with the general course of study for the time being prescribed for all students for the degree or other academic qualification:

“The Pro-Chancellor” means the Pro-Chancellor of the University of Auckland elected under this Act:

“Professor” means a professor of the University of Auckland; but does not include an associate professor:

“The Registrar” means the Registrar of the University of Auckland:

“The Senate” means the Senate of the University of Auckland:

“Students’ Association” means the Auckland University Students’ Association Incorporated:

“The University” means the University of Auckland constituted under this Act:

“The Vice-Chancellor” means the Vice-Chancellor of the University of Auckland appointed under this Act.

**3. Constitution of the University** – (1) For the advancement of knowledge and the dissemination and maintenance thereof by teaching and research there shall be in the Auckland University District a University to be called the University of Auckland.

(2) The University shall consist of the Council, the professors emeriti, the professors, lecturers, junior lecturers, Registrar, and librarian of the University for the time being in office, the graduates and undergraduates of the University, the graduates of the University of New Zealand whose names are for the time being on the register of the Court of Convocation of the Auckland University District, and such other persons and classes of persons as the Council may from time to time determine.

(3) The University shall be a body corporate with perpetual succession and a common seal, and may hold real and personal property, and sue and be sued, and do and suffer all that bodies corporate may do and suffer.

(4) The University established under this Act is hereby declared to be the same institution as the institution of that name existing immediately before the commencement of this Act under the University of Auckland Act 1954 (as amended by the University of Auckland Amendment Act 1957), which institution was originally established under the name of the Auckland University College under the Auckland University College Act 1882.

**4. University District and Court of Convocation** – (1) For the purposes of this Act there shall be a district to be called the Auckland University District, comprising the area specified in the First Schedule to this Act.

(2) The boundaries of the Auckland University District may be altered from time to time by the Governor-General by Order in Council.

(3) There shall be a Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District.

(4) The said Court of Convocation shall consist of the persons whose names are enrolled on a register to be kept by the Registrar.

(5) Every person shall be entitled to have his name enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation who –

(a) Is a graduate of the University; or

- (b) Being a graduate of the University of New Zealand either by examination at any time or by reason of having been admitted *ad eundem gradum* before the first day of January, nineteen hundred and forty-three, is not, by reason of that qualification, enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation for any other University District in New Zealand, and is otherwise qualified in accordance with statutes made by the Council to be enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District; or
- (c) Not being such a graduate, is a professor or graduate full-time member of the staff of the University or a graduate member, approved by the Council as being of University status, of the staff of an institution affiliated to the University; or
- (d) Is otherwise entitled in accordance with statutes made by the Council to have his name enrolled on the said register.
- (6) The Council may from time to time make statutes for the keeping of the register of the Court of Convocation, which statutes may include provisions prescribing the persons and classes of persons who are eligible under paragraph (b) or paragraph (d) of subsection (5) of this section for membership of the said Court of Convocation and the conditions (whether as to payment of fee or otherwise) on which persons are entitled to have their names enrolled in the register of the said Court; and, subject to this Act and to the said statutes, if any, the said Court shall have power to make such rules for the conduct of its business as it thinks fit as the Council may determine.
- (7) The said Court may make representations to the Council on any matter concerning the interests of the University.

**5. Visitor of the University**— The Governor-General shall be the Visitor of the University, and shall have all the powers and functions usually possessed by Visitors.

#### *The Council*

**6. Constitution of Council** — (1) There shall be a Council of the University, to be called the Council of the University of Auckland.

(2) The Council shall consist of —

- (a) Three members to be appointed by the Governor-General:
- (b) The Vice-Chancellor or, while there is no Vice-Chancellor in office or during the absence or incapacity of the Vice-Chancellor,—
  - (i) The Deputy Vice-Chancellor; or
  - (ii) While there is no Deputy Vice-Chancellor in office during the absence or incapacity of the Vice-Chancellor, the Chairman of the Senate:
- (c) Five members to be appointed by the Senate, of whom four shall be professors, and one shall be a lecturer appointed by the Senate from its sub-professorial members:
  - (ca) One full-time lecturer to be elected by the full-time lecturers:
  - (d) Six members to be elected by the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District:
  - (e) One member to be elected by the governing bodies of State secondary schools, technical schools, and combined schools, and such registered private secondary schools as the Council may from time to time determine, being in all cases schools situated in the Auckland University District, each governing body to have one vote for the purposes of any such election:
  - (f) One member, to be appointed by the Executive Committee of the Students' Association, who shall be, at the time of his appointment, enrolled for a degree or diploma as a full-time or part-time internal student of the University and shall, before being appointed, have been enrolled for at least 2 academic years at a university or universities in New Zealand:
  - (fa) The president for the time being of the Students' Association:
- (g) Such numbers of members (not exceeding three) as the Council from time to time after the commencement of this Act thinks fit, to be appointed by the Council:
- (h) The Mayor of Auckland:
  - (i) One member to be appointed by the Council of the University of Albany. The first member shall be appointed as soon as practicable after such date as shall be prescribed by Order in Council for a term which shall be deemed to have commenced on the date so prescribed.
- (3) The Mayor of Auckland may from time to time nominate a member of the Auckland City Council to be his alternate on the Council; and the alternate for the time being may act in place of the Mayor at any meeting of the Council not attended by the Mayor.
- (3a) Notwithstanding anything in subsection (2) of this section, the membership of the Council shall also include for a single term expiring with such date as shall be prescribed by Order in Council, one additional member who shall be appointed by the Council of the University of Albany as soon as practicable after the commencement of the University of Albany Act 1972.

**7. Transitional provisions – (Repealed)**

**8. Terms of office –** (1) Subject to the provisions of this Act, the members of the Council elected under paragraph (d) of subsection (2) of section 6 of this Act shall hold office for a term of four years, the members of the Council appointed under paragraphs (c), (ca), and (f) of subsection (2) of section 6 of this Act shall hold office for a term of two years, and all other elected or appointed members of the Council shall hold office for a term of three years. All elected or appointed members of the Council may from time to time be re-elected or reappointed.

(2) Elections or appointments of members of the Council to take the place of members whose terms are due to expire with the thirtieth day of June in any year shall be held or made not later than the third Monday in June in that year; and members so elected or appointed shall come into office on the first day of July following the date specified in this subsection for their election or appointment.

(3) Appointments of members of the Council to take the place of members whose terms are due to expire with the thirty-first day of December in any year shall be made not later than the third Monday in December in that year; and members so appointed shall come into office on the first day of January following the date specified in this subsection for their appointment.

(4) If at the time prescribed by this section for the election or appointment of any member or members of the Council no member or members or insufficient members are elected or appointed, the Council may itself appoint a suitable person in the place, and for the term or the remainder of the term, of the member who should have been elected or appointed.

(5) Every member of the Council elected or appointed under any of the provisions of paragraphs (a), (c), (ca), (d), (e), and (f) of subsection (2) of section 6 of this Act, unless he sooner vacates his office under section 11 of this Act, shall continue to hold office until his successor comes into office. Every member of the Council appointed under paragraph (g) of subsection (2) of section 6 of this Act shall go out of office at the expiration of his term of office.

**9. Employees as Council members–** (1) No person in the employment of the University shall be eligible for office as a member of the Council, otherwise than under paragraph (b) or paragraph (h) of subsection (2) of section 6 of this Act, unless he is a member appointed by the Senate:

Provided that the Council may pay to any member for the time being of the Council who has acted, at the request of the Council, as an examiner, assessor, or moderator in any subject or examination a fee or stipend determined in accordance with paragraph (c) of section 18 of this Act, and no person to whom any such fee or stipend is paid shall be ineligible as aforesaid:

Provided also that no person shall be ineligible as aforesaid by reason of any other employment by the University if the amount paid to him in any financial year in respect of that employment does not exceed such amount as the Minister of Education from time to time determines.

**10. Disqualification of members of Council –** The following persons shall be incapable of being elected or appointed to be members of the Council:

(a) A mentally defective person within the meaning of the Mental Health Act 1911:

(b) A bankrupt who has not obtained his order of discharge or whose order of discharge has been suspended for a term not yet expired or is subject to conditions not yet fulfilled:

(c) A person convicted of any offence, punishable by imprisonment, unless he has received a free pardon or has served his sentence or otherwise suffered the penalty imposed on him.

**11. Casual vacancies in Council –** (1) Subject to subsections (1A) and (1B) of this section if any elected or appointed member of the Council –

(a) Dies; or

(b) Resigns his office by writing under his hand delivered to the Registrar; or

(c) Is absent without leave from three consecutive meetings of the Council; or

(d) Becomes ineligible for election or appointment to the Council under the provisions of this Act under which he was elected or appointed; or

(e) Becomes a mentally defective person within the meaning of the Mental Health Act 1911; or

(f) Is adjudged a bankrupt; or

(g) Is convicted of any offence punishable by imprisonment for a term of 2 years or more; or

(h) Is convicted of any offence punishable by imprisonment for a term of less than 2 years and is sentenced to imprisonment or that offence, he shall thereupon cease to be a member and the vacancy thereby created shall be deemed to be a casual vacancy.

(1A) In any case to which paragraph (g) of subsection (1) of this section applies –

(a) The disqualification shall not take effect until the expiration of the time for appealing against the conviction and, in the event of an appeal conviction, until the appeal is determined; and

(b) The member concerned shall be deemed to have been granted leave of absence until the expiration of that

time, and shall not be capable of acting as a member during the period of that leave of absence.

(1B) In any case to which paragraph (h) of subsection (1) of this section applies —

(a) The disqualification shall not take effect until the expiration of the time for appealing against the conviction or the sentence and, in the event of an appeal against conviction or against the sentence or both, until the appeal is determined; and

(b) The member concerned shall be deemed to have been granted leave of absence until the expiration of that time, and shall not be capable of acting as a member during the period of that leave of absence.

(2) If any elected or appointed member of the Council becomes the Mayor of Auckland or the Vice-Chancellor, a casual vacancy shall arise in respect of the office previously held by him.

(3) Every casual vacancy in the office of an elected or appointed member of the Council (other than a member appointed under paragraph (g) of subsection (2) of section 6 of this Act) shall, as soon as practicable, be filled by the election or appointment of a new member, in place of the vacating member, in the same manner as in the case of the vacating member, and the member elected or appointed to fill any casual vacancy shall hold office for only the residue of the term of the vacating member.

**12. Proceedings of Council not affected by vacancies, etc.** — No act or proceeding of the Council, or any committee thereof, or of any person acting as a member of the Council, shall be invalidated in consequence of there being a vacancy in the number of the Council at the time of that act or proceeding, or of the subsequent discovery that there was some defect in the election or appointment of any person so acting, or that he was incapable of being or had ceased to be such a member.

**13. Election of members** — (1) The Registrar of the University, or such other person as the Council appoints, shall be the Returning Officer for the purpose of conducting elections of members of the Council.

(2) The elections of members of the Council shall be conducted and determined, and rolls for the elections shall be prepared in the manner prescribed by statutes or regulations of the University.

**14. Meetings of Council** — (1) The Council shall meet at such times and places as it determines: Provided that it shall meet at least once in the month of July in each year.

(2) At any meeting of the Council six members shall form a quorum, and no business shall be transacted unless a quorum is present.

(3) At any meeting of the Council the person presiding at the meeting shall have a deliberative vote, and in the case of an equality of votes shall also have a casting vote.

(4) Every question before the Council shall be decided by a majority of the votes of the members present at the meeting of the Council and entitled to vote on that question.

**15. Special meetings of Council** — (1) The Chancellor may at any time, of his own motion, call a special meeting of the Council, and the Chancellor shall call a special meeting on the requisition in writing of any five members.

(2) Notice of any such meeting shall be posted to each member at his usual address at least forty-eight hours before the time fixed for the meeting.

**16. Council may appoint committees** — (1) The Council may from time to time appoint standing or special committees.

(2) The council may delegate any of its powers and duties, including any powers, and duties which it has by delegation from any other body or person, but (except as provided in subsection (2) of section 35 of this Act) not including this power of delegation, and not including the power to make statutes and regulations, to any such committee or to the Senate or any person; and the committee or the Senate or person, as the case may be, may, without confirmation by the Council, exercise or perform the delegated powers or duties in like manner and with the same effect as the Council could itself have exercised or performed them.

(3) Every such delegation shall be revocable at will, and no such delegation shall prevent the exercise of any power or the performance of any duty by the Council.

(4) Unless and until any such delegation is revoked, it shall continue in force according to its tenor.

(5) It shall not be necessary that any person who is appointed to be a member of any such committee, or to whom any such delegation is made, shall be a member of the Council.

#### *Powers of the Council*

**17. Council to be governing body of University** — The Council shall be the governing body of the University through which the corporation of the University shall act, and shall have the entire management of and superintendence over the affairs, concerns, and property of the University; and, subject to the provisions of this Act and any other Act, shall in respect of all such matters have authority to act in such manner as appears to it to be best calculated to promote the interests of the University and of any other institution controlled by the Council and to promote and foster adult education:

Provided that the Council shall not make any final decision on any matter mentioned in section 36 of this Act

until it has first consulted the Senate or in the case of any appointment or removal of academic staff the committee of the Senate specified in the second proviso to that section, and considered any recommendations the Senate or committee may make in that belief, unless the Senate or committee, having had reasonable opportunity to make such recommendations, has failed so to do.

**18. Appointment of professors, lecturers, etc.** — Subject to the provisions of section 36 of this Act, the Council shall have power —

(a) To institute the offices of professor and lecturer and such other offices as it thinks fit in connection with the University and any other institution controlled by the Council:

(b) To appoint, upon such conditions, for such term, and upon such notice, as it thinks fit, all professors, lecturers, teachers, officers, and servants of the University and of all other institutions controlled by the Council.

(c) To appoint and remove examiners, assessors, and moderators:

Provided that the fee or stipend which the Council may pay to any examiner, assessor, or moderator shall be in accordance with a scale fixed by the Council with the concurrence of the University Grants Committee.

**19. Conferment of degrees** — (1) The Council shall have power to confer any degree or to award any other academic qualification specified in the Second Schedule to this Act.

(2) The Council may from time to time, by statute, add to or omit from the list of degrees and other academic qualifications specified in the said Second Schedule the name or description of any degree or other academic qualification or otherwise amend the list; and every such statute shall have effect according to its tenor:

Provided that no statute adding to the said list of degrees shall come into force until it has been approved by the University Grants Committee.

(3) The Council shall, in accordance with such conditions as it may prescribe, have power to confer any degree or to award any academic distinction as an honorary degree or academic distinction:

Provided that no honorary degree or academic distinction shall be conferred on or awarded to any person by the Council unless that person has been recommended theretofore by a joint committee of the Council and the Senate set up in accordance with the statutes or regulations of the University.

**20. Awards of certificates, etc.** — The Council shall have power, under such conditions as it thinks fit, to award certificates, fellowships, scholarships, bursaries and prizes, and to make other awards.

**21. Lectures to members of the public** — The Council shall have power to provide such lectures and instruction for any persons, whether or not they are members of the University, as it thinks fit, and on such conditions as it thinks fit, and may award certificates to any of them.

**22. Power to make statutes and regulations** — (1) Subject to the provisions of this Act and any other Act, the Council may from time to time make such statutes of the University as may in its opinion be necessary or expedient for the administration of the affairs of the University.

(2) Subject to the provisions of this Act and any other Act and to the statutes (if any) of the University, the Council may from time to time make such regulations of the University as may in its opinion be necessary or expedient for the administration of the affairs of the University.

(3) Without limiting the generality of the foregoing provisions of this section it is hereby declared that statutes and regulations so made may prescribe any matters which by this Act are required or permitted to be prescribed or with respect to which statutes or regulations are, in the opinion of the Council, necessary or expedient for giving effect to this Act.

(4) Subject to the provisions of section 36 of this Act and, where so required by any Act, to the consent of the University Grants Committee or the Curriculum Committee, the Council may make statutes or regulations with respect to all or any of the degrees and other academic qualifications, certificates, fellowships, scholarships, bursaries, prizes and awards of the University which the Council may confer or award, and with respect to general courses of study for the same.

(5) All such statutes and regulations shall be in writing.

(6) No statute passed by the Council of the University as aforesaid shall come into force until it has been approved by the Governor-General.

(7) All such statutes and regulations shall have effect according to their tenor, and shall be published by the Council.

(8) A copy of any such statute or regulation under the seal of the University shall be sufficient evidence in all Courts of the same and of its having been made and (where necessary) approved in accordance with this section.

**23. Seal of the University** — The seal of the University shall be in the custody of the Registrar or such other officer as the Council may appoint, and shall not be affixed to any document except pursuant to a resolution of the Council, or by the authority of a resolution of a committee of the Council acting in accordance with an authority for that purpose conferred upon it by the Council.

**24. Admission of students** — (1) Every person who is academically qualified for entrance to a University in New Zealand in accordance with the requirements of the Universities Entrance Board shall be eligible to matriculate at the University without further examination.

(2) The Council shall have power to decline to enrol any student at the University, or in a particular course or courses, or in classes in a particular subject or subjects on the ground of —

(a) The person not being of good character; or

(b) Misconduct or a breach of discipline on the part of the student; or

(c) The person not having attained the age of sixteen years on the previous thirty-first day of December, or the person not having attained any other age prescribed in respect of any course of study by any course regulations within the meaning of the Universities Act 1961; or

(d) The person being enrolled for full-time instruction in a secondary school, technical school, combined school, district high school, or registered private secondary or technical school; or

(e) Insufficient academic progress by the student after a reasonable trial at the University or at any other University or University College of Agriculture; or

(f) Insufficiency of accommodation or of teachers in the University or in a faculty, department, class, or course of the University;

Provided that the Council shall exercise its power under this paragraph in accordance with criteria and procedures prescribed from time to time by it after consultation with the University Grants Committee.

(g) The person not having satisfied any conditions prescribed by any course regulations within the meaning of the Universities Act 1961.

(3) The Council shall, as soon as practicable after the commencement of this Act, make a statute or statutes governing the persons and classes of persons who may be enrolled or refused enrolment as external students of the University, and the conditions under which, and the subjects and course for which, they may be so enrolled or refused enrolment. The Council may from time to time make further statutes for all or any of the purposes specified in this subsection, and may by statute repeal or amend any statute made under this subsection. No statute made under this subsection shall come into force until it has been approved by the University Grants Committee.

(4) For the purposes of paragraph (f) of subsection (2) of this section the Council may, if it thinks fit, from time to time make statutes defining the circumstances in which insufficiency of accommodation or of teachers in the University or in a faculty, department, class, or course of the University shall be deemed to exist, and the maximum number of students who may be admitted to any faculty, department, course or class. No such statute shall come into force until it has been approved by the University Grants Committee. Every such definition that is made by statute under this subsection shall be conclusive for all purposes.

(5) Where any person has obtained in any University or other place of learning any degree or other academic qualification or part thereof which the council is empowered to confer or award, the Council may admit that person at its discretion *ad eundem statum* in the University without further examination and may withdraw any such admission at any time.

(6) A person admitted to the status of the holder of a degree or other academic qualification or part thereof to the University shall not be deemed to be the holder of the degree or other academic qualification or part thereof, nor shall he be entitled to be enrolled as a graduate of the University, but he shall be entitled to proceed to any degree or other academic qualification of which the degree or other academic qualification or part thereof to the status of which he has been admitted is a prerequisite upon the same terms and conditions as those upon which a holder of the degree or other academic qualification or part thereof is entitled so to proceed.

(7) Where a person who has been a student of another University and has matriculated at any university in New Zealand is admitted to the University of Auckland, the Council of that University shall give him such credits as it considers appropriate for any units or subjects which he has already passed in New Zealand and with which he has been credited towards a degree or other academic qualification in his former University or grant him such exemptions as it considers appropriate, so that he may complete his course without suffering undue hardship as a consequence of his transfer.

(8) Any person who is eligible to be admitted or who has been admitted to a degree of the University of New Zealand, or who has been admitted *ad eundem* at graduate status by the Senate of the University of New Zealand shall be deemed to be of equivalent status in the University of Auckland for the purpose of proceeding to a degree or other academic qualification of the University of Auckland, and shall, subject to the course regulations for the degree or other academic qualification for which he is a candidate, be eligible to proceed to the degree or other academic qualification.

Provided that, in approving his personal course of study, the Senate may, at its discretion, require any such person to complete such supplementary courses as it thinks fit either as a prerequisite to or concurrently with his course of study for the degree or other academic qualification for which he is a candidate.

(9) The provisions of subsection (8) of this section shall, with the necessary modifications, apply to any person who is eligible to be awarded or who has been awarded a diploma of the University of New Zealand, or to any person who has been admitted *ad eundem* by the Senate of the University of New Zealand to the status of a holder of a diploma of that University.

*The Chancellor and Pro-Chancellor*

**25. Election of Chancellor** — (1) At its first meeting held in the month of July in the year nineteen hundred and sixty-two, and in every third year thereafter, the Council shall elect one of its members to be the Chancellor of the University of Auckland:

Provided that the Vice-Chancellor or any other person who is for the time being a member of the Council under paragraph (b) of subsection (2) of section 6 of this Act or a member of the Council appointed by the Senate shall not be so elected.

(2) The Chancellor shall be the ceremonial head of the University and the Chairman of the Council.

(3) Unless the Chancellor resigns from that office or vacates his office as a member of the Council under subsection (1) of section 11 of this Act, he shall continue to hold the office until his successor is elected, and (subject to the provisions of section 10 of this Act) shall be eligible for re-election:

Provided that, upon any person completing two consecutive terms each of three years as Chancellor, he shall cease to be eligible for re-election as Chancellor until after the lapse of a period of three years during which he did not hold that office.

(4) If the Chancellor resigns from that office or vacates his office as a member of the Council under subsection (1) of section 11 of this Act, the Council shall elect some eligible person to be the Chancellor for the remainder of the term for which the vacating Chancellor was elected.

(5) For the purpose of the election of the Chancellor for any term, the Registrar of the University shall preside at the meeting, but shall not be entitled to vote. In the event of an equality of votes the election shall be determined by lot.

**26. Election of Pro-Chancellor** — (1) At its first meeting held in the month of July in each year, the Council shall elect one of its members who is eligible to be elected as Chancellor to be the Pro-Chancellor of the University of Auckland.

(2) Unless the Pro-Chancellor sooner resigns from that office or vacates his office as a member of the Council under subsection (1) of section 11 of this Act, he shall continue to hold the office of Pro-Chancellor until his successor is elected, and (subject to the provisions of section 10 of this Act) shall be eligible for re-election.

(3) If the Pro-Chancellor resigns from that office or vacates his office as a member of the Council under subsection (1) of section 11 of this Act or is elected to be the Chancellor he shall thereupon vacate the office of Pro-Chancellor, and the Council shall elect one of its members who is eligible to be elected as Chancellor to be the Pro-Chancellor of the University of Auckland for the remainder of the term.

(4) During any vacancy in the office of Chancellor, or in the absence of the Chancellor from New Zealand, or while he is incapacitated by sickness or otherwise, the Pro-Chancellor shall have and may exercise and perform all the powers and duties of the Chancellor, other than his powers in relation to the conferring of degrees and the award of other academic qualifications and distinctions.

**27. Right to preside at meetings of Council** — The Chancellor shall preside at every meeting of the Council at which he is present. If at any meeting of the Council the Chancellor is not present or there is no Chancellor, the Pro-Chancellor shall preside at the meeting; and if the Pro-Chancellor also is not present at the meeting or there is no Pro-Chancellor, the Council shall appoint some member present to preside at that meeting. The Pro-Chancellor or person so appointed shall have and may exercise in any such case all the powers and functions of the Chancellor for the purposes of the meeting.

*The Vice-Chancellor and Deputy Vice-Chancellor*

**28. Vice-Chancellor** — (1) The Council may from time to time appoint some fit and proper person to be the Vice-Chancellor of the University of Auckland.

(2) The Vice-Chancellor shall have the following functions, powers and duties:

(a) He shall be the academic and administrative head of the University:

(b) He shall, by virtue of his office, be a member of the Council, Chairman of the Senate, a member of every faculty, and a member of every committee set up by the Council or the Senate:

(c) He shall have such duties as the Council, subject to the provisions of this Act, may from time to time specify:

(d) He may, during the intervals between meetings of the Senate, exercise alone (but subject always to the control of the Council and to a right of appeal to the Senate) such of the powers of the Senate as to maintain the discipline of the University as may be prescribed in that behalf by statutes or regulations made under the authority of this Act:

(e) On the occurrence from any cause of a vacancy in the office of Chancellor, or in the absence of the Chancellor from New Zealand, or while he is incapacitated by sickness or otherwise, the Vice-Chancellor shall exercise the powers of the Chancellor in relation to the conferring of degrees and the award of other academic qualifications and distinctions.

(3) The Vice-Chancellor may appoint any member of the Senate to attend in his place the meeting of any board, committee, or other body which is not constituted by or under this Act (whether created by or under any other Act or otherwise) of which the Vice-Chancellor is a member. Any person so appointed shall while so attending be deemed for all purposes to be a member of the board, committee, or other body and may exercise all the rights and powers which the Vice-Chancellor could have exercised had he been personally present. The fact that any member of the Senate so attends shall be sufficient evidence of his authority so to do.

**29. Deputy Vice-Chancellor** – (1) The Council may from time to time appoint a professor as the Deputy Vice-Chancellor of the University of Auckland.

(2) The Deputy Vice-Chancellor shall hold office for such period as may be determined by the Council.

(3) The Deputy Vice-Chancellor may exercise such of the Vice-Chancellor's functions, powers, and duties, whether arising under any Act or otherwise, as the Council, upon the recommendation of the Vice-Chancellor or (in the absence of such a recommendation) of its own motion, may from time to time either specially or generally delegate to the Deputy Vice-Chancellor.

(4) In addition to the powers conferred upon him by subsection (3) of this section, the Deputy Vice-Chancellor shall, during any vacancy in the office of Vice-Chancellor, or in the absence of the Vice-Chancellor from New Zealand, or while he is incapacitated by sickness or otherwise, be Chairman of the Senate and may exercise such other of the Vice-Chancellor's functions, powers and duties, whether arising under any Act or otherwise, as the Council may determine.

#### *The Senate*

**30. Constitution of Senate** – (1) There shall be a Senate of the University of Auckland.

(2) The Senate shall consist of:

(a) The Vice-Chancellor;

(b) The professors of the University;

(c) The Librarian of the University;

(d) As many full-time lecturers, and each to be elected in such manner, as the Council may from time to time determine;

(e) As many students, to be appointed by the Executive Committee of the Students' Association, as the Council may from time to time determine;

(f) As many and such other officers or members of the University as the Council may from time to time appoint.

(2) The elections of members of the Senate under subsection (2) (d) of this section shall be conducted and determined in the manner prescribed by statutes or regulations of the University, which statutes or regulations shall, in relation to any such election, specify –

(a) The time the election is to be held; and

(b) The classes of person eligible to vote; and

(c) The number of members each such class may elect; and

(d) The terms of office of the members to be elected.

(3A) For the purposes of this section, 'student' means a person who is enrolled for a degree or diploma as a full-time or part-time internal student of the University.

(3B) The term of office of every member of the Senate pursuant to paragraph (e) or paragraph (f) of subsection (2) of this section shall be the term specified in statutes or regulations of the University.

(3C) Before making any determination or appointment under paragraph (d) or paragraph (e) or paragraph (f) of subsection (2) of this section, the Council shall seek and consider the advice of the Senate.

(4) The Senate of the University of Auckland is hereby declared to be the same body as the Professorial Board of the University of Auckland constituted by section 23 of the University of Auckland Act 1954; and every reference in any enactment or document to the Professorial Board of the University shall hereafter be read as a reference to the Senate of the University of Auckland.

**31. Chairman of Senate** – (1) Whenever there is no Vice-Chancellor or Deputy Vice-Chancellor in office, the Senate shall, at its first meeting held thereafter and at its first meeting in each year, elect one of its members, being a professor, to be the Chairman of the Senate; and if it fails to do so the Council may appoint a professor to be the Chairman of the Senate.

(2) The person so appointed shall hold office until the appointment of a Vice-Chancellor or Deputy Vice-Chancellor or until the election or appointment of his successor under this section, whichever happens first, and shall be eligible for re-election or reappointment, but shall not hold office for more than two terms in succession.



**32. Meeting of Senate** — (1) The person who is entitled in accordance with the provisions of sections 28, 29, and 31 of this Act to be the Chairman of the Senate at any meeting thereof at which he is present shall preside at that meeting. In the absence of any such person from any such meeting, the members present shall elect one of their number to be the Chairman for the purposes of that meeting and the person so elected shall preside at that meeting.

(2) At any meeting of the Senate the person presiding shall have a deliberative vote, and in the case of an equality of votes shall also have a casting vote.

(3) Every question before the Senate shall be decided by a majority of the valid votes recorded thereon.

(4) At every meeting of the Senate a quorum shall consist of such number of members as the Senate from time to time determines, and no business shall be transacted unless a quorum is present.

(5) Save as expressly provided in this Act, the Senate shall have power to make rules as to the time and place of its meetings and the procedure thereat:

Provided that it shall meet at least once in each year.

**33. Proceedings of Senate not affected by vacancies, etc.** — No act or proceeding of the Senate, or of any committee thereof, or of any person acting as a member of the Senate, shall be invalidated in consequence of there being a vacancy in the number of the Senate at that time of that act or proceeding, or of the subsequent discovery that there was some defect in the appointment of any person so acting, or that he was incapable of being or had ceased to be such a member.

**34. Functions of Senate** — (1) The Senate shall have power of its own motion, or at the request of the Council, to make recommendations or reports to the Council on any matter affecting the University.

(2) The Senate shall be specially charged with:

(a) The duty of furthering and co-ordinating the work of faculties and departments and of encouraging scholarship and research; and

(b) The control of the Library.

(3) The Senate shall have power to deal with all matters relating to the maintenance of discipline amongst the students of the University, and shall have such powers of fining, suspending, and expelling students guilty of misconduct or breaches of discipline, and such other powers of whatsoever kind as may be conferred on it by statutes or regulations made under the authority of this Act:

Provided that any person aggrieved by any action of the Senate may appeal to the Council, whose decision shall be final.

(4) The Senate shall have power to approve personal courses of study proposed by individual students:

Provided that the Senate shall not approve personal courses of study for a degree or other academic qualification in such a way as to introduce general restrictions not provided for in the course regulations governing the course of study for that degree or other academic qualification.

**35. Senate may appoint committees** — (1) The Senate may from time to time appoint standing or special committees.

(2) The Senate may delegate any of its powers and duties (including any powers and duties which it has by delegation from the Council or any other body or person) to any such committee or to any person; and the committee or person may, without confirmation by the Senate, exercise or perform those powers or duties in like manner and with the same effect as the Senate could itself have exercised or performed them:

Provided that the Council may prohibit, or impose conditions in respect of, the delegation by the Senate of any power or duty that is delegated to the Senate by the Council.

(3) Every such delegation shall be revocable at will, and no such delegation shall prevent the exercise of any power by the Senate.

(4) Unless and until any such delegation is revoked, it shall continue in force according to its tenor.

(5) It shall not be necessary that any person who is appointed to be a member of any such committee, or to whom any such delegation is made, shall be a member of the Senate.

**36. Council to consult Senate on academic matters** — (1) The Council shall not make any statute or regulation or decision in relation to entrance to the University or to any course of study or to the prescription of any subject for any degree or other academic qualification or certificate, or to any fellowship, scholarship, bursary, prize, or award or the examination or qualification therefore, or to the admission, attendance, and discipline of students, or to examinations and other academic tests, or to the institution of the offices of professor or lecturer, or to the appointment or removal of academic staff, including the Vice-Chancellor and Deputy Vice-Chancellor, or to the appointment of examiners, assessors, or moderators, or to honorary degrees and other academic distinctions, or to the affiliation of any institution or branch or department thereof, until it has first received and considered any recommendation that the Senate may make in that behalf, unless the Senate, having had a reasonable opportunity to make such a recommendation, has failed to do so:

Provided that a decision to confer an honorary degree or academic distinction shall be made in the manner

provided in subsection (3) of section 19 of this Act, and nothing in this section shall apply to such a decision: Provided also that in the case of appointments to the academic staff, or the removal of academic staff, the Council shall need only to secure a recommendation from a committee of the Senate appointed under section 35 of this Act.

(2) Nothing in the foregoing provisions of this section shall limit any power conferred on the Senate by section 35 of this Act to delegate any of its powers and duties.

#### *Affiliated Institutions*

**37. Admission of affiliated institutions** — (1) The Council may, on such terms and conditions and subject to such inspections, reports, and inquiries as it thinks fit, affiliate other institutions or branches or departments thereof situated within the Auckland University District, or recognise selected members of the staffs thereof as teachers of the University, or admit the members thereof as teachers of the University, or admit the members thereof to any of the privileges of the University and accept attendance at courses of study in such institutions or branches or departments thereof in place of such part of the attendance at courses of study in the University and upon such terms and conditions and subject to such regulations as may from time to time be determined by the Council.

(2) The Council may at any time revoke any such affiliation, recognition, admission, or acceptance.

#### *Financial Provisions*

**38. Benefactions to be strictly applied** — Subject to the provisions of the Charitable Trust Act 1957, all benefactions at any time vested in or enjoyed by the University with a declaration of trust, or as an endowment for the promotion of any particular branch of science or learning, shall be applied strictly by the Council accordingly.

**39. Application of income and capital of University** — (1) Subject to the provisions of this Act and any other act and to the terms of any trust or endowment, the income and capital of the University shall be applied in doing whatever the Council thinks expedient in order that the University may best accomplish the purpose for which it is established.

(2) Without limiting the generality of the foregoing provisions of this section it is hereby declared that the Council may from time to time, out of income which may be applied in accordance with those provisions, create, maintain, and add to a fund or funds for any one or more of the purposes for which that income may be applied.

**40. Money to be paid into bank** — (1) All money received by the University amounting to twenty dollars and upwards shall, as soon as practicable after it has come into the hands of the proper officer of the University, be paid into such bank account or accounts of the University as the Council from time to time determines.

(2) No such money shall be withdrawn from the bank except by authority of the Council and by cheque, or other instrument, signed by an officer of the University approved by the Council, and countersigned by a member of the Council, or by another officer of the University, approved by the Council:

Provided that it shall be lawful, with the prior consent in writing of the Audit Office and subject to such conditions as the Audit Office prescribes, for any money to be paid by the Council by cheque issued by means of a cheque-writing machine, and every such cheque issued by means of such a machine and bearing a facsimile of the signatures, of the persons authorised pursuant to the provisions of this section to sign and countersign cheques shall be deemed to have been duly signed and countersigned in accordance with the provisions of this section.

**41. Loan money to be paid into a separate account** — All money borrowed by the Council on behalf of or for the purposes of the University, other than money borrowed under Section 51 of this Act, shall be paid into a separate bank account in the name of the loan, and shall not be drawn out of the bank or expended except for the special purposes for which it was borrowed.

**42. Investment of money** — Subject to the terms of any trust or endowment, any money belonging to or vested in the University and available for investment may be invested in accordance with the provisions of the Trustee Act 1956 as to the investment of trust funds, or in such other manner as the Minister of Finance from time to time approves.

**43. Provision for Common Fund investment** — (1) The Council may at any time, if it thinks fit, establish the following funds and account:

(a) A Common Fund to be known as the University of Auckland Common Fund:

(b) A Reserve Fund to be known as the University of Auckland Common Fund Reserve Fund:

(c) A Common Fund Income Account to be known as the University of Auckland Common Fund Income Account.

(2) Subject to the provisions of this section, if the Council has established the said funds and account, it may invest any trust funds in its possession, whether at the time in a state of investment or not, whether they came into its possession before or after the commencement of this Act, and whether they comprise the whole or part of the trust estate to which they belong, either –

(a) On a separate account in respect of the trust estate to which the funds belong; or

(b) If the funds are not directed to be invested in some other specified manner, and investment in the said Common Fund is not inconsistent with the terms of the trust instrument (if any) governing the funds, as part of the said Common Fund.

(3) All funds forming part of the said Common Fund shall be invested in the manner required by Section 42 of this Act.

(4) Where any funds of a trust estate are in the possession of the Council and are lawfully invested in any investment in which the said Common Fund may be invested as aforesaid, then, if in accordance with paragraph (b) of subsection (2) of this section the funds could be invested as part of the said Common Fund, the Council may transfer that investment to the said Common Fund and give credit in that Fund to the trust estate for such amount as it considers proper, having regard to its duty to be fair to all those interested in the said Common Fund and to those beneficially interested in the capital and income of the trust estate to which the investment belongs. Upon any investment being so transferred it shall cease to form part of the trust estate to which it formerly belonged.

(5) Investments made from funds forming part of the said Common Fund shall not be made on account of or belong to any particular trust estate, but the Council shall cause to be kept an account showing at all times the entitlement of each trust estate in the said Common Fund.

(6) All income derived from the said Common Fund and from the investments and money included therein shall be paid into the said Common Fund Income Account.

(7) In each year interest on the amount of the entitlement of each trust estate in the said Common Fund shall be transferred from the said Common Fund Income Account and credited to that trust estate at such uniform rate as may from time to time be determined by the Council:

Provided that in no case shall the rate so determined be lower than one half per cent below the rate which would be so paid if all the income paid into the said Common Fund Income Account in that year was so transferred.

(8) The Council shall also each year pay into the said Reserve Fund –

(a) All income in the said Common Fund Income Account which is not transferred to any trust estate in that year in accordance with subsection (7) of this section:

(b) All capital gains arising in connection with the said Common Fund.

(9) The funds forming part of the said Reserve Fund shall be kept separate from all other trust funds, and shall be invested in the manner authorised by section 42 of this Act.

(10) All income paid into the said Reserve Fund as aforesaid, and all income derived from the said Reserve Fund and from the investments and money included therein shall be applied as the Council thinks fit in any one or more of the following ways:

(a) Towards augmenting the capital of the said Reserve Fund:

(b) Towards stabilising or increasing the income of the said Common Fund:

(c) Towards reinstating any losses of capital in the said Common Fund.

(11) The capital of the said Reserve Fund may, if the Council thinks fit, be applied in reinstating any losses of capital in the said Common Fund.

(12) The Council may at its discretion at any time withdraw from the said Common Fund any amount for the time being to the credit of any trust estate in the said Common Fund; and where any amount is being so withdrawn –

(a) If the capital of the said Reserve Fund has increased while the said amount was in the said Common Fund, the Council shall pay out of the said Reserve Fund and add to the amount so withdrawn, as capital, such amount (if any) as it considers equitable having regard to the length of the period during which the amount was in the said Common Fund and to the proportion which the said amount bears to the average amount of the total assets of the said Common Fund during that period:

(b) If losses of capital in the said Common Fund have occurred during the said period, then, so far as those losses have not been reinstated and cannot be reinstated from the amounts in the said Reserve Fund at the time of the withdrawal, that amount shall bear its proportion of those losses, as determined by the Council, and the amount being so withdrawn shall abate accordingly.

**44. Travelling allowances and expenses of members of Council** – (1) The Council may pay to each of its members travelling allowances and expenses; and, in respect of travel in New Zealand, those allowances and expenses shall not exceed those payable in accordance with the Fees and Travelling Allowances Act 1951, and the provisions of that Act shall apply accordingly.

(2) In respect of travel in New Zealand the Council is hereby declared to be a statutory Board within the meaning of the Fees and Travelling Allowances Act 1951.

**45. Council may insure members against personal accident while engaged in duties** — The Council may from time to time enter into contracts of insurance of a type for the time being approved by the Minister of Education insuring members of the Council against loss from personal accident arising out of and in the course of the exercise of their powers or duties as members of the Council, and may pay the premiums payable in respect of those contracts.

**46. Unauthorised expenditure of Council** — The Council may in any financial year of the University expend out of the general fund of the University for purposes not authorised by any law for the time being in force any sum or sums not exceeding in the aggregate a one-thousandth part of the revenue of the University from all sources for the immediately preceding financial year.

**47. Council to prescribe fees** — There shall be payable by the students of the University or any of them such fees as the Council from time to time prescribes:

Provided that scales of tuition and of examination fees may be so prescribed only with the concurrence of the University Grants Committee.

**48. Fees payable to associations of students** — The Council shall have power to impose and collect from time to time from students of the University or from any of them such fees as it considers reasonable for the benefit of any association or organisation of students of the University, and to dispose of those fees accordingly.

**49. Grants by Council to associations of staff or students** — The Council may from time to time make grants or loans from its funds on such terms and conditions as it thinks fit to any association or organisation of staff or students of the University.

**50. Powers of Council in respect of property** — (1) Without limiting or in any way affecting any other powers conferred upon the Council by the Auckland University College Reserves Act 1885 or this Act or any other Act or bylaw, it is hereby declared that, subject to the provisions of this section, the Council may do all or any of the following things on behalf of and for the purposes of the University, namely:

(a) Establish, build, maintain, repair, add to, alter, rebuild, reinstate, conduct, manage, and control halls of residence for students and academic staff, and houses for academic staff and any other of its employees whatsoever, and buildings and rooms and other facilities for the recreation or social use of students, academic staff and other employees:

(b) Purchase, take on lease, or otherwise acquire any real or personal property for any purposes whatsoever in connection with the University or any institution controlled by the Council:

(c) With the consent of the Minister of Education in the case of land and in other cases without his consent, sell or otherwise alienate any right, title, estate, or interest in any real or personal property vested in the University:

(d) With the consent of the Minister of Education, borrow money from the Crown or, on such terms and conditions as may be fixed by the Minister of Finance, from any corporation or person; and (for the purpose of securing any money so borrowed) mortgage, charge, or pledge any right, title, estate, or interest in any land vested in the University:

(e) Grant leases of any land vested in the University; and for that purpose the Council is hereby declared to be a leasing authority within the meaning of the Public Bodies' Leases Act 1908:

(f) On such conditions as may be prescribed by the Minister of Finance, guarantee loans made to members of the staff for housing purposes by other persons and bodies.

(2) Notwithstanding anything to the Contrary in the Public Bodies' Leases Act 1908 or in any lease granted by the Council, the Council may —

(a) In its absolute discretion, at any time not earlier than three years nor later than one year before the date of the expiration of any lease of any land vested in the University that does not confer a right of renewal, grant a renewal of the lease upon such terms as it thinks fit; and the provisions of this paragraph shall apply to any such lease whether granted before or after the commencement of this Act:

(b) With the consent of the Minister of Education, grant leases of land vested in the University upon such terms as that Minister may approve.

(c) Grant leases and licences for the extraction and removal of coal and other minerals from land vested in the University at such rent or royalties and upon such terms and conditions as the Council may determine.

(3) The Minister of Education is hereby empowered to make advances upon such terms as the Minister of Finance may approve to the Council for the purposes of the University out of money appropriated by Parliament for the purpose.

**51. Power to borrow by way of overdraft, or temporary loan** — In addition to the powers conferred by section 50 of this Act, it shall be lawful for the Council, in anticipation of its revenue, from time to time to borrow money by way of overdraft or on temporary loan on behalf of and for the purposes of the University: Provided that the amount so borrowed shall not at any time exceed one-twelfth of the revenue of the University

from all sources during the immediately preceding financial year of the University:

Provided also that at the end of any financial year of the University the amount of the overdraft or loan shall not exceed the outstanding revenue due to the University in respect of that financial year.

**52. Annual report and statement of accounts** — (1) The Council shall, during the month of April, in every year, furnish to the Minister of Education and to the University Grants Committee a report on the University during the immediately preceding year.

(2) The Council shall also, as soon as practicable after the end of every financial year of the University, furnish to the Minister of Education and to the University Grants Committee a statement of the assets and liabilities of the University as at the end of that financial year, together with an account of income and expenditure showing the financial transactions for that year, which statement and account shall be audited by the Audit Office.

*Repeals and Savings*

**53. Repeals and savings** — (1) The enactments specified in the Third Schedule to this Act are hereby repealed.

(2) All bylaws which originated under any of the enactments hereby repealed or under the corresponding provisions of any former enactment and are subsisting or in force on the commencement of this Act shall enure for the purposes of this Act as fully and effectually as if they had originated as regulations under the corresponding provisions of this Act, and accordingly shall, where necessary, be deemed to be regulations and to have so originated; and every reference to any such bylaw in any Act, regulation, order, or other enactment, or in any instrument or document whatsoever shall, after the commencement of this Act, unless inconsistent with the context, be read as a reference to a Regulation made under the corresponding provisions of this Act.

## SCHEDULES

### FIRST SCHEDULE

#### THE AUCKLAND UNIVERSITY DISTRICT

Section 4 (1)

The Provincial District of Auckland and those portions of the Provincial District of Taranaki which are within the boundaries of the Counties of Waitomo and Taumarunui.

### SECOND SCHEDULE

#### DEGREES AND OTHER ACADEMIC QUALIFICATIONS

Section 19 (1)

*Degrees:*

Bachelor and Master of Architecture  
 Bachelor and Master of Arts  
 Master of Business Administration  
 Bachelor and Master of Commerce  
 Bachelor, Master and Doctor of Engineering  
 Bachelor and Master of Fine Arts  
 Bachelor and Master of Human Biology  
 Master of Jurisprudence  
 Bachelor, Bachelor with Honours, Master, and Doctor of Laws  
 Doctor of Literature  
 Bachelor of Medicine and Bachelor of Surgery  
 Doctor of Medicine  
 Master of Medical Science  
 Bachelor, Bachelor (Performance), Bachelor (Performance) with Honours, Master, and Doctor of Music  
 Bachelor of Optometry  
 Bachelor, Bachelor with Honours, Master, and Doctor of Science  
 Bachelor and Master of Property Administration  
 Master and Doctor of Philosophy  
 Bachelor and Master of Planning

*Diplomas in:*

Broadcast Communication  
 Business and Industrial Administration  
 Clinical Psychology  
 Computer Science  
 Criminology  
 Drama  
 Education  
 Educational Psychology  
 English Language Teaching  
 Geothermal Energy Technology  
 Guidance and Counselling  
 Gynaecology and Obstetrics  
 Local Government and Administration  
 Mathematical Education  
 Music and Music with Honours  
 Obstetrics  
 Optometry  
 Paediatrics  
 Postgraduate Diploma in Social Research  
 Psychiatry  
 Statistics

### THIRD SCHEDULE

Section 53 (1)

#### ENACTMENTS REPEALED

1954, No 74 – The University of Auckland Act 1954.

1975, No 25 – The University of Auckland Amendment Act 1957.

## COURT OF CONVOCATION STATUTE 1962

Pursuant to section 4 of the University of Auckland Act 1961

1. This Statute may be cited as the Court of Convocation Statute 1962.

2. The Registrar of the University shall prepare and maintain a register to be known as the Register of the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District and shall (subject to section 5 hereof) enrol thereon the names and addresses (so far as such addresses are known) of all persons entitled to be so enrolled under section 4 of the said Act and under section 3 of this Statute.

3. Under and for the purposes of subsection 5 of section 4 of the said Act each person shall be entitled to have his name enrolled on the Register of the Court of Convocation (without fee) who being a graduate of the University of New Zealand either by examination at any time or by reason of having been admitted *ad eundem gradum* before the 1st day of January, 1943, is not by reason of that qualification enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation for any other University District in New Zealand, and

(i) under section 23A of the New Zealand University Act 1908 was enrolled or entitled to be enrolled on the register of the District Court of Convocation of the Auckland University District at the 31st day of December, 1961, or

(ii) was an undergraduate member of the University of Auckland at the 31st day of December, 1961, and became a graduate of the University of New Zealand after that date, or

(iii) at a date after the 31st day of December, 1961, and immediately before had resided in the Auckland University District for a period of not less than three calendar months.

4. Except as provided in section 5 hereof it shall not be necessary for any person to be so enrolled on the register to apply for enrolment.

5. Every person who is entitled to be enrolled on the register under paragraph (iii) of section 3 of this Statute may apply to the Registrar for enrolment and upon making that application and producing such evidence of the facts and matters entitling him to enrolment as the Registrar may reasonably require shall be enrolled on the register.

6. Any enrolled member of the Court may, by notice under his hand delivered to the Registrar, object to the register on the ground that any person whose name is on the register does not possess the necessary qualifications.

7. The Registrar shall enquire into and dispose of any such objection forthwith after receiving it.

8. Any person aggrieved by any decision or act of the Registrar relating to the register may appeal therefrom to the Council by notice under his hand, addressed to the Chancellor, and delivered at the University not later than 5 o'clock on the afternoon of the seventh day on which the register is to be closed for the purposes of an impending election.

9. Every such appeal shall be heard and determined by the Council or a Committee appointed by the Council and the Registrar shall amend the register in such manner as the Council or the Committee when disposing of the appeal directs.

10. (a) Any member of the Court having changed his address shown on the register may request the Registrar to amend the register in respect of that address and the Registrar shall make such amendment accordingly.

(b) The Registrar being satisfied (otherwise than under the preceding paragraph (a) of this section) that the address of a member of the Court has been changed may amend the register in respect of that address provided that he shall forthwith post notices of that amendment to the member at both the old and the new address.

11. The Registrar shall expunge from the register the name of any person who has died or has ceased to be entitled to be enrolled thereon, and he shall be entitled to make any amendment of name made necessary by marriage.

## THE COUNCIL ELECTIONS (COURT OF CONVOCATION REPRESENTATIVES) REGULATIONS

1. These regulations may be cited as the Council Elections (Court of Convocation Representatives) Regulations.

2. For the purposes of conducting the elections to the Council by the Court of Convocation an electoral roll shall be prepared and revised from time to time of the names of those members of the Court who are eligible to vote in accordance with these regulations.

3. The members of the Court who are eligible to vote at an election by the Court are those members (but no other members) who

(a) voted at the last two preceding elections

- (b) (having had their names entered on the Court register since the penultimate election) voted at the last preceding election.
  - (c) have had their names entered on the Court register since the last preceding election
  - (d) (not being in any of the foregoing categories) apply for a voting paper by letter delivered or posted to the Returning Officer so as to be received by him on or before 5 o'clock in the afternoon of the twenty-first day preceding the day on which the election is to be held.
4. In these Regulations and the forms contained herein:  
 'the roll' means the electoral roll prepared in accordance with this regulation  
 'elector' and 'voter' respectively refer to those members of the Court whose names are for the time being entered on the electoral roll.
5. The date of election shall be determined by the Returning Officer and reported to the Council.
6. Whenever any election is to be held the Returning Officer shall (not less than forty days before the election) by notice in at least two newspapers, published in the City of Auckland, call for nominations of candidates to be lodged with him on or before a day, to be fixed by him, being not less than ten days from the date of the first advertisement, which notice shall be in the following form (or a form to the like effect).

#### THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election of Member(s) of the Council by the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District.

An election of member(s) will be held at 5.00 pm on the ..... day of ..... 19 ..... at the office of the Registrar of the University, Princes Street, in the City of Auckland.

No person shall be recognised as a candidate at this election unless he shall have been previously nominated in a document signed by two electors, and unless such nomination paper shall have been delivered to the Returning Officer by postal delivery or otherwise not later than 5.00 pm on the ..... day of ..... 19 .....

The roll of electors will remain open for inspection and additions until 5.00 pm on the twenty-first day before the election and will then be closed. Immediately thereafter the Returning Officer will issue the voting paper to such voters as are shown on the roll with sufficient postal address (of which the Returning Officer shall be the sole judge).

.....  
Returning Officer

7. The roll shall be closed at five o'clock in the afternoon of the twenty-first day immediately preceding the day on which an election is to be held and shall continue to be closed until the election is completed; and no name shall be entered on the roll while it is closed. Immediately thereafter the Returning Officer shall issue the voting papers simultaneously to such voters as are shown in the roll with sufficient postal address (of which the Returning Officer shall be the sole judge); nor shall any voting paper be sent to any person whose address is not within New Zealand, Cook Islands, Fiji, Western Samoa or Australia.
8. Notwithstanding anything above set out, the Returning Officer shall issue a voting paper to any elector whose name appears on the roll and who shall apply in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the ground that his voting paper is lost or destroyed or defaced or that no voting paper has been issued to him.
9. At every election the votes shall be given by sealed voting papers issued by the Returning Officer in the form prescribed by these regulations, delivered to the Returning Officer on or before the day and time fixed for holding the election, or posted to him in a sealed envelope on or before that day.
10. In any election to fill a casual vacancy the notice of advertisement calling for nomination shall state that the vacancy is a casual one.
11. If an election for filling a casual vacancy be appointed to be held at the same time as an election for the filling of a vacancy occurring by rotation, hereinafter called an ordinary vacancy, separate voting papers shall be issued for each election and each nomination and each voting paper shall specify to which election it relates, and at the time of election the Returning Officer shall first complete the election for filling the casual vacancy or vacancies; and when such election shall be complete, he shall at once proceed to complete the election for filling the ordinary vacancy.
- Note:** The voting papers for overseas members to be posted airmail.
12. When two or more elections are to take place as contemplated in the last preceding Regulation, then in every advertisement relating to such an election, notice shall be given that no nomination paper will be valid, unless it distinctly indicates to which of the vacancies it shall relate.
13. Nomination shall be made by two persons qualified to vote and shall contain the written consent of the candidate to his nomination.
14. Nomination shall be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):



## THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election to be held on ..... the ..... day of ..... 19...  
of Members of the Council by the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District.

We, ..... and ..... being duly qualified voters, hereby nominate

of .....  
for election to the Council by the Court of Convocation for the Auckland University District.

Date .....  
I consent to the above nomination.

15. If the nominations received do not exceed the number of vacancies, the Returning Officer shall declare the candidate(s) duly elected.

16. Every voting paper shall be in the form following or to the like effect, that is to say:

A. Front of voting paper

## VOTING PAPER

## COUNCIL OF THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND ELECTION OF MEMBERS

By the Court of Convocation  
for the Auckland University District.


## Directions

There are ..... vacancies. The voter may vote for any number of candidates up to the maximum number of candidates to be elected.

The voter is to put a cross (X) in the square opposite to the name or names of the candidates for whom he desires to vote.

17.A Every voting paper shall be forwarded to the voter accompanied by an envelope, addressed to the Returning Officer.

B. Back of envelope:

THE VOTER MUST SIGN HIS/HER NAME AND ADDRESS BELOW.  
(Full name in block letters)

I, .....  
declare that I am not, by reason of my being a graduate of the University of New Zealand (either by examination at any time or by admission *ad eundem gradum* before 1 January, 1943), enrolled on the register of the Court of Convocation of any University District in New Zealand other than the Auckland University District.

SIGNATURE OF VOTER: .....

ADDRESS: .....

(I request the Registrar to record my address on the roll as above.)

If recorded on University records under another name, e.g. maiden name, please state

18. The poll shall close at 5 o'clock on the afternoon of the day of the election; but all voting papers shall be included and counted which are received by the Returning Officer in due course by post before the close of the sixth day after the day of the election, provided the Returning Officer is satisfied that the paper was posted in accordance with the provisions of Section 9. On the seventh day after the day of the election the Returning Officer shall open and count the votes. As soon as the voting papers have been checked with the Roll the name and address shall be removed from each voting paper before the votes are counted.

19. Each candidate shall be entitled to nominate a scrutineer, who shall have the same rights and duties as those vested at the date of the poll in a scrutineer at any polls of the Auckland City Council.

20. Upon completion of the counting of votes, the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the results of the poll.

21. The Returning Officer shall, subject to the provisions herein contained, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning the election.

22. The Returning Officer is authorised to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of three months from the date of the official announcement of the result.

The Council at its meeting held on 18 August, 1975 resolved:

That in respect of elections of members of the Council by the Court of Convocation, Council adopt the following procedure in order to ensure that electors are notified of the qualifications of candidates:

(1) That each candidate for election be invited to send to the Registrar with his nomination paper a short statement, not exceeding 250 words, for inclusion with the voting papers.

(2) That the statement shall include the name, occupation, residence, degrees, academic posts held, publications, and any other relevant information provided by the candidate.

(3) That the Council arrange that a copy of these statements be forwarded to each elector with the voting paper.

## **THE COUNCIL ELECTIONS (REPRESENTATIVE OF GOVERNING BODIES OF SECONDARY SCHOOLS) REGULATIONS**

1. These regulations may be cited as the Council Elections (Representative of Governing Bodies of Secondary Schools) Regulations 1962.

2. For the purpose of Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (e) of the University of Auckland Act 1961 the Governing Bodies of only such registered private secondary schools as are entitled to accredit persons for entrance to a University shall be entitled to vote for the member of Council elected under that paragraph.

3. Each of the Governing Bodies entitled under Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (e) of the said Act and the foregoing paragraph 2 of these regulations shall be enrolled on the Roll of Electors. The Roll shall be revised in each year as at the 30th April.

4. The date of an Election by the Governing Bodies shall be determined by the Returning Officer and reported by him to the Council.

5. Whenever an Election is to be held, the Returning Officer shall (not less than 40 days before the Election), by notice addressed to each Elector upon the Roll, call for nominations of candidates to be lodged with him on or before a date fixed in such notice, being not less than ten days from the date of the notice. The notice shall be in the following form (or in a form to be the like effect):

### **THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND**

Election of one Member of Council by the Governing Bodies of certain Secondary Schools situated within the Auckland University District, under Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (e) University of Auckland Act 1961.

An election of one member will be held at 5.00 pm on the ..... day of ..... 19 .....  
at the Office of the Registrar of the University, Princes Street, in the City of Auckland.

No person shall be recognised as a candidate at this Election unless he has been previously nominated by an Elector in a paper signed by the Chairman of that Governing Body in pursuance of a resolution in that behalf and signed also by the person nominated, and unless that nomination paper has been delivered to the Returning Officer by postal delivery or otherwise not later than 5.00 pm on the ..... day of .....  
19 .....

.....  
Returning Officer

6. Nominations shall be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

## THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election to be held on the ..... day of ..... 19 .....  
 of one Member of Council by the Governing Bodies of certain Secondary Schools situated in the Auckland  
 University District under Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (e) University of Auckland Act 1961.

..... being the Governing Body of ..... School and being a duly  
 qualified Elector hereby nominate ..... of

..... (address)  
 ..... (occupation)

for election to the Council by the Governing Bodies of State Secondary Schools, Technical Schools and  
 Combined Schools, and such registered Private Schools as the Council of the University has determined by  
 regulation in that behalf, being in all cases schools situated in the Auckland University District.

Dated this ..... day of ..... 19 .....

Chairman

I consent to the above nomination

7. A nomination shall be made by an Elector and shall contain the written consent of the candidate to his nomination.

8. If not more than one nomination is received the Returning Officer shall forthwith after the closing date for the receipt of nominations declare the candidate duly elected.

9. If more than one nomination is received the Returning Officer shall immediately after the closing date for receipt of nominations issue a voting paper to each Elector shown in the Roll as revised.

10. The Returning Officer shall also issue a voting paper to any Elector whose name appears upon the Roll, and who shall apply in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the ground that its voting paper is lost or destroyed or defaced or that no voting paper has been issued to it.

11. At every Election the votes shall be given by sealed voting papers issued by the Returning Officer in the form prescribed by these Regulations, delivered to the Returning Officer on or before the day and time fixed for holding the Election, or forwarded to him by post or otherwise, so as to reach him not later than that day and time.

12. In any Election to fill a casual vacancy the notice calling for nominations shall state that the vacancy is a casual one.

13. Every voting paper shall be in the form following (or to the like effect), and shall include occupations and addresses, as well as the names of candidates:

## THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election of one Member of Council by the Governing Bodies of certain Secondary Schools situated within the  
 Auckland University District, Under Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (e) University of Auckland Act 1961.

.....  
 .....  
 .....

## Directions

The voter is to cause a cross (X) to be put in the square opposite to the name of the candidate for whom he has resolved to vote.

THE CHAIRMAN OF THE VOTER MUST COMPLETE THE CERTIFICATE ON THE BACK OF THIS CARD.

## B. Back of voting paper:

I certify that the vote made on this paper was made in pursuance of a resolution of .....  
 Governing Body of ..... School passed at a fully constituted meeting thereof.

Chairman

14. Every vote shall be made by an Elector in pursuance of a resolution passed at a meeting of the Elector.
  15. Every voting paper shall be forwarded to the Elector accompanied by a stamped envelope, addressed to the Returning Officer.
  16. All such envelopes shall be forwarded to the Elector accompanied by a stamped envelope, addressed to the Returning Officer.
  17. Upon completion of the counting of votes, the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the results of the poll.
  18. The Returning Officer shall, subject to the provisions herein contained, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning the election.
  19. The Returning Officer is authorised to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of three months from the date of the official announcement of the result.
- Council at its meeting on 19 July 1982 adopted the following procedures to ensure that electors are notified of the qualifications of candidates:
1. That each candidate for election be invited to send to the Registrar with his nomination paper a short statement, not exceeding 250 words, for inclusion with the voting papers.
  2. That the statement shall include the name, occupation, residence, degrees, academic posts held, publications, and any other relevant information provided by the candidate.
  3. That the Council arrange that a copy of these statements be forwarded to each elector with the voting paper.

---

## **THE COUNCIL ELECTIONS (LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVE) REGULATIONS**

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Council Elections (Lecturers' Representative) Regulations 1978.
2. For the purposes of these Regulations, the Council determines that a person appointed for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor, are lecturers within the definition of that term contained in Section 2 of the Act.
3. In these Regulations, unless the context otherwise requires -
  - 'the Act' means the University of Auckland Act 1961;
  - 'the Council' means the Council of the University;
  - 'election' means an election conducted under these Regulations;
  - 'elector' means a full-time lecturer and includes a person appointed full-time for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed full-time for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor; but does not otherwise include any person holding a temporary appointment.
  - 'Returning Officer' refers to the Registrar of the University.
4. In the election of one member of the Council pursuant to paragraph (ca) of Subsection (2) of Section 6 of the Act -
  - (a) All electors shall be eligible to nominate candidates and to vote; and
  - (b) All electors, except those who are temporary lecturers appointed for less than two years, shall be eligible to be nominated as candidates.
5. The election shall be by secret ballot.
6. The date of the election shall be determined by the Returning Officer and reported to the Council.
7. Whenever an election is to be held the Returning Officer shall (not less than thirty-five days before the election) by notice addressed to all electors call for nomination for candidates to be lodged with him on or before the date fixed in that notice but being not less than twenty-one days from the date of the notice. The notice shall be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

## THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

Election of one Member of Council by the full-time lecturers under Section 6 Subsection (2) paragraph (ca) of the University of Auckland Act 1961.

I hereby call for nominations for the Lecturers' representative on the Council. Nominations must be delivered to the Returning Officer by personal delivery or otherwise not later than 5.00 pm on .....

Every full-time lecturer (including a person appointed for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor) is eligible to be an elector and to nominate candidates at this election. All electors, except those who are temporary lecturers from less than two years, are eligible to be nominated as candidates.

Every candidate must be nominated by two electors on a nomination form which must also be signed by the nominee.

Should an election be necessary it will be held at 5.00 pm on .....  
at the office of the Registrar of the University in Princes Street. The election will be conducted as a postal ballot. The person elected will hold office for a term of two years [or as required, in the case of a casual vacancy].

Nomination forms are available from the undersigned.

**RETURNING OFFICER**

8. Each nomination shall:

- (a) be made by two electors;
- (b) contain the signature of the person nominated;
- (c) be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect);

## THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

## ELECTION FOR REPRESENTATIVE OF LECTURERS ON COUNCIL

ELECTION to be held on the ..... day of ..... 19..... of one Member of the Council by the full-time Lecturers of the University.

We ..... and  
.....  
being duly qualified electors, hereby nominate

.....  
of the Department of .....  
for election to the Council by the full-time Lecturers of the University.

Date .....

I consent to this nomination .....

NOMINATIONS CLOSE AT 5.00 P.M. ON .....

9. If not more than one nomination is received for the vacancy, the Returning Officer shall forthwith after the closing date of nominations declare the candidate duly elected.

10. If more than one nomination is received for the vacancy, the Returning Officer shall immediately after the closing date for nominations issue a voting paper in the prescribed form to each elector.

11. The Returning Officer shall issue a voting paper to any elector who applies in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the grounds that his voting paper is lost or destroyed or defaced, or that no voting paper has been issued to him.

12. The voting paper shall be returned to the Returning Officer on or before the day and time fixed for holding the election, or sent to him by post or otherwise so as to reach him not later than that day and time.

13. In any election for a casual vacancy the notice calling for nominations shall state that the vacancy is a casual one.

14. Every voting paper shall be in the form following (or to the like effect):

<b>THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND</b>	
<b>REPRESENTATIVE OF LECTURERS ON COUNCIL</b>	
Election to be held at 5.00 p.m. on ..... 19 ..... of .....	
ONE Member of Council by the full-time Lecturers of the University.	
<b>DIRECTIONS</b>	
The voter must put an "X" in the square opposite the name of the candidate for whom he wishes to vote.	
THE VOTER MUST SIGN HIS NAME, AND PRINT HIS NAME AND DEPARTMENT ON THE BACK OF THE ENCLOSED SPECIAL ADDRESSED ENVELOPE.	
Voting papers, in sealed envelopes, must be addressed to the Returning Officer and reach him by the above day and time.	
<b>RETURNING OFFICER</b>	

15. On completion of the counting of votes the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the results of the poll by notice published within the University.

16. The Returning Officer shall, subject to these regulations, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning an election.

17. Where there is an equality of votes between candidates and the addition of a vote would entitle any of those candidates to be declared elected, the Returning Officer shall determine by lot which candidate shall be elected.

18. The Returning Officer is authorised to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of three months from the date of the notices announcing the result of the poll.

19. The University shall be deemed a sufficient address for the issuing of notices and voting papers to electors under these regulations.

## THE SENATE ELECTIONS (LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVES OF FACULTIES) REGULATIONS

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Senate Elections (Lecturers' Representatives) Regulations 1978\*.

2. For the purpose of these Regulations, the Council determines that a person appointed for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor, are lecturers within the definition of that term contained in section 2 of the Act.

3. In these Regulations, unless the context otherwise requires –

'the Act' means the University of Auckland Act 1961;

'election' means an election conducted under these Regulations;

'elector' means a full-time lecturer and includes a person appointed full-time for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed full-time for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor; but does not otherwise include any person holding a temporary appointment.

'member' and 'lecturers' representative' means a member of the Senate elected by the full-time lecturers in a Faculty under section 30 of the Act and these Regulations;

'Returning Officer' refers to the Registrar of the University.

4. For the purpose of these Regulations –

The Centre for Continuing Education is deemed to be a Faculty of the University;

Each member of the staff of each of the Departments of Art History, Geography, Mathematics, and Psychology

shall respectively be allocated by the Senate to an appropriate Faculty.

5. (i) The number of members of the Senate to be elected by the full-time lecturers under section 30 (2)(d) of the Act shall be eighteen, of which thirteen shall be elected under these Regulations.

(ii) Those thirteen members shall be elected by secret ballot from and by the full-time lecturers of the respective Faculties of the University, as follows:-

The Faculty of Arts; three members.

The Faculty of Science; two members.

Each of the eight other Faculties of the University – that is:

the Faculty of Architecture, Property and Planning,

the Faculty of Commerce,

the Faculty of Engineering,

the Faculty of Fine Arts,

the Faculty of Law

the Faculty of Medicine and Human Biology,

the Faculty of Music, and

the Centre for Continuing Education; one member.

6. In every election in a Faculty, held under these Regulations –

(a) All electors in that Faculty shall be eligible to nominate candidates and to vote; and

(b) All such electors, except those who are temporary lecturers appointed for less than two years, shall be eligible to be nominated as candidates.

7. Each member (other than a member elected to fill a casual vacancy) shall hold office on the Senate for a term of two years beginning on the 1st of February next following that member's election.

8. The term of office of each of the present lecturer members of the Senate shall, according to the Faculty from which that member was appointed and (in the Faculty of Arts and in the Faculty of Science) according to seniority of appointment, end as follows:

Faculty of Architecture, Property and Planning (one member)	31 January 1979
Faculty of Arts (three members)	
The member from that Faculty whose present term of office began first	31 January 1979
The two remaining members	31 January 1980
Faculty of Commerce (one member)	31 January 1980
Faculty of Engineering (one member)	31 January 1980
Faculty of Fine Arts (one member)	31 January 1979
Faculty of Law (one member)	31 January 1979
Faculty of Medicine & Human Biology (one member)	31 January 1980
Faculty of Music (one member)	31 January 1979
Faculty of Science (two members)	
The member from that Faculty whose present term of office began first	31 January 1979
The remaining member	31 January 1980
Centre for Continuing Education (one member)	31 January 1979

9. If any member –

(a) dies; or

(b) resigns his office by writing under his hand delivered to the Registrar; or

(c) ceases to be a full-time lecturer; or

(d) is appointed Acting Head of a Department for a period of more than three months he shall thereupon cease to be a member, and the vacancy so created shall be deemed to be a casual vacancy.

10. (a) Elections other than elections to fill casual vacancies shall take place in the respective faculties not later than July each year so that the names of all lecturers' representatives for the subsequent year are known at the August meeting of the Senate.

(b) An election to fill a casual vacancy shall take place within two calendar months of the arising of the casual vacancy.

11. The Registrar shall be the Returning Officer for the purpose of conducting the elections.

12. Subject to Regulation 10, the date of an election shall be determined by the Returning Officer and shall be reported to the Senate.

13. Whenever an election is to be held, the Returning Officer shall, not less than thirty-five days before the election, by notice addressed to each elector in the appropriate Faculty call for nominations of candidates to be lodged with him on or before the date fixed in that notice but being not less than twenty-one days from the date of the notice. The notice shall be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

# THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

## LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVES ON SENATE

I hereby call for nominations for the following vacancies which will occur on 1.2.19 .....

Faculty of ..... 2 vacancies

Faculty of ..... 1 vacancy

Nominations for vacancies for representatives must be delivered to the Returning Officer by personal delivery or otherwise **not later than 5.00 p.m.** ..... 19 ..... Every full-time lecturer in the appropriate Faculty (including a person appointed for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor) is eligible to be an elector and to nominate candidates at this election.

All electors in the Faculty, except those who are temporary lecturers for less than two years, are eligible to be nominated as candidates in that Faculty.

Every candidate must be nominated by two electors in the Faculty on a nomination form which must also be signed by the nominee.

In the Departments of Art History, Geography, Mathematics and Psychology, members of staff shall be regarded as being members of the Faculty to which they have been allocated.

**Elections** should they be necessary, will be held at **5.00 p.m. on** ..... 19 ..... at the office of the Registrar of the University in Princes Street. The election will be conducted as a postal ballot.

The persons elected will hold office for a term of two years.

Nomination forms are available from the undersigned.

**RETURNING OFFICER**

14. Each nomination shall:

- (a) be made by two electors;
- (b) contain the signature of the person nominated;
- (c) be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect);

# THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

## ELECTION FOR LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVE ON SENATE

ELECTION is to be held on the ..... day of ..... 19 ..... of .....

Member(s) of the Senate by the full-time Lecturers of the University teaching in the Faculty of .....

We ..... , and  
..... being duly qualified electors, hereby  
nominate: .....  
of the Department of ..... for election to the  
Senate by the full-time Lecturers of the University teaching in the Faculty of .....

Date .....

I consent to this nomination .....

NOMINATIONS CLOSE AT 5.00 p.m. ON THE ..... DAY OF ..... 19 .....

15. If not more than one nomination is received for a vacancy, the Returning Officer shall forthwith after the closing date of nomination declare the candidate duly elected.

16. If more than one nomination is received for a vacancy, the Returning Officer shall immediately after the closing date for nominations issue a voting paper in the prescribed form to each elector in the appropriate faculty.

17. The Returning Officer shall also issue a voting paper to any elector who applies in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the ground that his voting paper is lost or destroyed or defaced or that no voting paper has been issued to him.



18. The voting papers shall then be returned to the Returning Officer on or before the day and time fixed for holding the election, or sent to him by post or otherwise so as to reach him not later than that day and time.
19. In any election for a casual vacancy the notice calling for nominations shall state that the vacancy is a casual one.
20. Every voting paper shall be in the form following (or to the like effect):

<b>THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND</b> <b>LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVES ON SENATE</b> <b>FACULTY OF</b>	
<b>VOTING PAPER</b>	
Election to be held at 5.00 pm on ..... day, the ..... day of ..... 19 ....., of ..... Member(s) of the Senate by the full-time Lecturers in the Faculty of ..... which for the purpose of this Election includes the Departments of .....	
<b>DIRECTIONS</b>	
The Voter must put an X in the square opposite the name of the one candidate for whom he desires to vote. THE VOTER MUST SIGN HIS NAME AND STATE HIS DEPARTMENT ON THE BACK OF THE ENCLOSED SPECIAL ADDRESSED ENVELOPE. Voting papers, in sealed envelopes, must be addressed to the Returning Officer and reach him by the above day and time.	
<b>RETURNING OFFICER</b>	

21. On completion of the counting of votes the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the results of the poll by notice published within the University.
22. The Returning Officer shall, subject to these Regulations, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning an election.
23. Where there is an equality of votes between candidates and the addition of a vote would entitle any of these candidates to be declared elected, the Returning Officer shall determine by lot which candidate shall be elected.
24. The Returning Officer is authorised to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of two weeks from the date of the notices announcing the result of the poll.
25. The University shall be deemed a sufficient address for the issuing of notices and voting papers to electors under these Regulations.

\* Amended by Council 21 April, 1980 and 15 November, 1982.

## THE SENATE ELECTIONS (LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVES AT LARGE) REGULATIONS

Pursuant to sections 22 and 30 of the University of Auckland Act 1961, the Council of the University makes the following Regulations:

1. These Regulations may be cited as the Senate Elections (Lecturers' Representatives at Large) Regulations.
2. For the purpose of these Regulations, the Council determines that a person appointed for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor, are lecturers within the definition of that term contained in section 2 of the Act.
3. In these Regulations, unless the context otherwise requires —  
 'the Act' means the University of Auckland Act 1961;

'the Council' means the Council of the University;

'election' means an election conducted under these Regulations;

'elector' means a full-time lecturer and includes a person appointed full-time for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed full-time for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor; but does not otherwise include any person holding a temporary appointment.

'Member' and 'lecturers' representative' means a member of the Senate elected by the full-time lecturers under section 30 of the Act and these Regulations;

"Returning Officer" refers to the Registrar of the University.

4. (i) The number of members of the Senate to be elected by the full-time lecturers under section 30 (2)(d) of the Act shall be eighteen, of which five shall be elected under these Regulations (the other thirteen being elected under the Senate Elections (Lecturers' Representatives of Faculties) Regulations.)

(ii) Those five members shall be elected by secret ballot from and by the full-time lecturers of the University.

5. In every election held under these Regulations:

(a) All electors shall be eligible to nominate candidates and to vote; and

(b) All such electors, except those who are temporary lecturers appointed for less than two years, shall be eligible to be nominated as candidates.

6. Subject to Regulation 7, each member (other than a member elected to fill a casual vacancy) shall hold office on the Senate for a term of two years beginning on the 1st day of February next following that member's election.

7. The term of office of each of the lecturer members of the Senate first elected under these Regulations shall be determined by lot so that of those members –

(a) The terms of 3 shall expire on 31 January 1986; and

(b) The terms of 2 shall expire on 31 January 1985.

8. If any member –

(a) dies; or

(b) resigns office by written notice delivered to the Registrar; or

(c) ceases to be a full-time lecturer; or

(d) is appointed Acting Head of a Department for a period of more than three months;

he or she shall thereupon cease to be a member, and the vacancy so created shall be deemed to be a casual vacancy.

9. (a) Elections other than elections to fill casual vacancies shall take place not later than May in each year so that the names of all lecturers' representatives for the subsequent year are known at the June meeting of the Senate.

(b) An election to fill a casual vacancy shall take place within two calendar months of the arising of the casual vacancy.

10. The Registrar shall be the Returning Officer for the purpose of conducting the elections.

11. Subject to Regulation 9, the date of an election shall be determined by the Returning Officer and shall be reported to the Senate.

12. Whenever an election is to be held, the Returning Officer shall, not less than thirty-five days before the election, by notice addressed to each elector call for nominations of candidates to be lodged with him on or before the date fixed in that notice but being not less than twenty-one days from the date of the notice. The notice shall be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect):

### THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

#### LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVES (AT LARGE) ON SENATE

I hereby call for nominations for ..... vacancies which will occur on .....

Nominations for vacancies for representatives must be delivered to the Returning Officer by personal delivery or otherwise **not later than 5.00 p.m.** ..... **19** .....

Every full-time lecturer (including a person appointed for a term of not less than one year as a temporary lecturer and a person appointed for a term of not less than three years as an assistant lecturer, senior tutor or tutor) is eligible to be an elector and to nominate candidates at this election.

All electors, except those who are temporary lecturers for less than two years, are eligible to be nominated as candidates.

Every candidate must be nominated by two electors on a nomination form which must also be signed by the nominee.

**Elections** should they be necessary, will be held at **5.00 p.m. on** ..... **19** ..... at the office of the Registrar of the University in Princes Street. The election will be conducted as a postal ballot.

The persons elected will hold office for a term of two years.

Nomination forms are available from the undersigned.

**RETURNING OFFICER**

13. Each nomination shall:

- (a) be made by two electors;
- (b) contain the signature of the person nominated;
- (c) be in the following form (or in a form to the like effect);

### THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND

#### ELECTION FOR LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVE (AT LARGE) ON SENATE

ELECTION is to be held on the ..... day of ..... 19 ..... of .....

Member(s) of the Senate by the full-time Lecturers of the University.

We ..... , and  
..... being duly qualified electors, hereby  
nominate:

of the Department of ..... for election to the  
Senate by the full-time Lecturers of the University.

Date .....

I consent to this nomination .....

NOMINATIONS CLOSE AT 5.00 p.m. ON THE ..... DAY OF ..... 19 .....

14. If not more than one nomination is received for a vacancy, the Returning Officer shall forthwith after the closing date of nomination declare the candidate duly elected.

15. If more than one nomination is received for a vacancy, the Returning Officer shall immediately after the closing date for nominations issue a voting paper in the prescribed form to each elector.

16. The Returning Officer shall also issue a voting paper to any elector who applies in writing to the Returning Officer for a voting paper on the ground that his voting paper is lost or destroyed or defaced or that no voting paper has been issued to him.

17. The voting papers shall then be returned to the Returning Officer on or before the day and time fixed for holding the election, or sent to him by post or otherwise so as to reach him not later than that day and time.

18. In any election for a casual vacancy the notice calling for nominations shall state that the vacancy is a casual one.
19. Every voting paper shall be in the form following (or to the like effect):

**THE UNIVERSITY OF AUCKLAND  
LECTURERS' REPRESENTATIVES (AT LARGE)  
ON SENATE**

**VOTING PAPER**

Election to be held at 5.00 pm on ..... day, the ..... of .....  
19 ..... of ..... Member(s) of the Senate by the full-time Lecturers of the University.


**DIRECTIONS**

There are ..... vacancies. The voter may vote for any number of candidates up to the maximum number of candidates to be elected.

The Voter must put an X in the square opposite the name or names of the candidates for whom he/she desires to vote.

**THE VOTER MUST SIGN HIS/HER NAME AND STATE HIS/HER DEPARTMENT ON THE BACK OF THE ENCLOSED SPECIAL ADDRESSED ENVELOPE.**

Voting papers, in sealed envelopes, must be addressed to the Returning Officer and reach him by the above day and time.

**RETURNING OFFICER**

20. On completion of the counting of votes the Returning Officer shall forthwith declare the results of the poll by notice published within the University.
21. The Returning Officer shall, subject to these Regulations, determine conclusively all questions of detail concerning an election.
22. Where there is an equality of votes between candidates and the addition of a vote would entitle any of these candidates to be declared elected, the Returning Officer shall determine by lot which candidate shall be elected.
23. The Returning Officer is authorised to destroy the voting papers after a lapse of two weeks from the date of the notices announcing the result of the poll.
24. The University shall be deemed a sufficient address for the issuing of notices and voting papers to electors under these Regulations.
25. These Regulations shall come into force on 1 January 1983.

# Prescribed Texts

## Contents

482 Prescribed texts	493 Japanese
482 Accounting	494 Latin
482 Ancient History	494 Law
483 Anthropology	494 Linguistics
483 Architecture	494 Management Science and Information Systems
483 Art History	494 Management Studies and Labour Relations
483 Asian Geography	494 Maori Studies
483 Asian Politics	495 Marketing and International Business
483 Biology	495 Mathematics
483 Botany	496 Medicine
484 Cellular and Molecular Biology	496 Music
484 Chemistry	496 Optometry
484 Chinese	497 Pharmacology
485 Classical Studies	497 Philosophy
485 Commercial Law	497 Physics
485 Computer Science	497 Physiology
485 Drama	497 Planning
485 Economics	497 Political Studies
486 Education	498 Property Administration
486 Engineering	498 Psychology
486 English	499 Russian
489 Environmental Studies	499 Scandinavian Studies
489 French	500 Sociology
490 Geography	500 Spanish
490 Geology	500 Zoology
490 German	501 Summary of Subject Codes
492 Greek	
492 History	
492 Human Biology	
493 Indonesian	
493 Italian	

## PREScribed TEXTS

### Prescribed Texts

Prescribed texts are those texts that students should purchase.

The list of Prescribed texts for 1988 which is set out below in alphabetical subject order is not exhaustive. Additional books may be prescribed during the year. Further lists of such prescribed books may be obtained from the appropriate department.

Recommended books are those books which students may purchase if desired. Lists of recommended books and additional reading guides may be obtained from the appropriate departments.

### ACCOUNTING

#### Accounting I

**01.100** Material to be purchased from the Department.

**01.101** De Coster, Schafer and Burrows, *Australian Management Accounting: A Decision Emphasis*, 1st edn, Australian Edition (Jacaranda Wiley).

**01.102** Gibson/Frishkoff, *Financial Statement Analysis using Financial Accounting Information*, 3rd edn, (Kent Publishing).

**01.103** Horngren, C.T. *Introduction to Management Accounting*, 6th edn, (Prentice-Hall).

#### Accounting II

**01.200** To be advised at enrolment.

**01.201** Barton, H. D. W. *Executorship Law and Accounts*, 8th edn, (Butterworths); New Zealand Society of Accountants, *Management Accounting for the New Zealand Farmer*, *Management Accounting for Horticulture* (R406 New Zealand Society of Accountants). Additional material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department.

**01.202** Helmkamp, J.C., *Managerial Accounting*, 1st edn, (Wiley). Additional material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department.

**01.203** Cushing, B. E. & Romney, M.B., *Accounting Information Systems and Business Organisations*, 4th edn, 1987.

**01.204** To be advised at enrolment.

**01.205** Van Horne, J., *Financial Management and Policy*, p/back 7th edn, (Prentice-Hall).

#### Accounting III

**01.300** Wolk, H.I., Francis, J.R. & Tearney, M.G., *Accounting Theory: A Conceptual and Institutional Approach*, 1st edn, (Kent Publishing Co.).

**01.301** Arens, Loehbecke Best and Shailer, *Auditing in Australia: An Integrated Approach*, (Prentice-Hall); New Zealand Society of Accountants, *Statements of Standard Accounting Practice and Auditing Standards G9*.

**01.302** To be advised at enrolment.

**01.303** Sharpe, W.F., *Investments*, 3rd edn,

(Prentice-Hall). Additional material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department.

### ANCIENT HISTORY

#### Ancient History I

**12.100** Either *Readings in World History* Vols I (The Origins of Civilisation) and II (The Ancient Near East), McNeill & Sedlar, (Oxford) or *The Ancient Near East* (ed.) Pritchard (Princeton); plus G. Roux, *Ancient Iraq* (Pelican); W.K. Simpson (ed.) *Literature of Ancient Egypt* (Yale U.P., New Haven); A.H. Gardiner, *Egypt of the Pharaohs* (O.U.P.).

**12.102** One of A. R. Burn, *Pelican History of Greece*; or J. B. Bury, *History of Greece*, revised by Russell Meiggs, (Macmillan); or N. G. L. Hammond, *A History of Greece* (Oxford); or J. V. A. Fine, *The Ancient Greeks: A Critical History* (Harvard, p/back); plus Thucydides, *The Peloponnesian War* (Penguin Classics or Everyman's Library); Plutarch, *The Rise and Fall of Athens*, (Penguin Classics).

**12.103** M. Cary & H.H. Scullard, *A History of Rome* (Macmillan); plus Suetonius, *The Twelve Caesars*, (Penguin Classics).

#### Ancient History II

**12.200/12.320** A. Gardiner, *Egypt of the Pharaohs* (O.U.P.); D.B. Redford, *History and Chronology of the Eighteenth Dynasty of Egypt* (Toronto) and *Akhenaten* (Princeton); R.O. Faulkner, *Middle Egyptian Dictionary* (Oxford).

**12.201/12.301** G. Roux, *Ancient Iraq* (Pelican); Henri Frankfort, *Art and Architecture of the Ancient Orient* (Pelican); H.W. F. Saggs, *The Might that was Assyria* (Sidgwick & Jackson).

**12.210** A. Gardiner, *Egyptian Grammar* (Oxford); R. O. Faulkner, *A Concise Dictionary of Middle Egyptian* (Oxford). Texts of documents in Egyptian will be supplied by the Department.

**12.222/12.322** A. Andrewes, *The Greek Tyrants* (Hutchinson); Herodotus, *The Histories* (Penguin); Plutarch, *The Age of Alexander* (Penguin).

#### Ancient History III

**12.301** As for 12.201.

**12.320** As for 12.200.

**12.310** A. Gardiner, *Egyptian Grammar* (Oxford); R. O. Faulkner, *A Concise Dictionary of Middle Egyptian* (Oxford). Texts of documents in Egyptian will be supplied by the Department.

**12.314** Sallust, *Jugurthine War: Conspiracy of Catiline*; Livy, *The War with Hannibal*; Caesar, *The Civil War*; A. Marcellinus, *The Later Roman Empire* (all Penguin Classics); M. Hadas (ed.), *The Complete Works of Tacitus* (Random House).

**12.322** As for 12.222.

#### Ancient History for MA & Honours

**12.400** D. S. Russell, *The Jews from Alexander to Herod* (Oxford); Emil Schurer *History of the Jewish People in the Age of Jesus Christ*, (rev. edn, T. & T.

Clark, Edinburgh 1973) *The Works of Josephus*, trans. Whiston (Everyman's Library, Dent); *The First and Second Books of the Maccabees*, (ed.) J.R. Bartlett (Cambridge Bible Commentaries); C. K. Barrett, *The New Testament Background: Selected Documents* (SPCK p/back), 1974.

**12.401** S. N. Kramer, *The Sumerians* (Chicago, 1963) and *History Begins at Sumer* (Thames & Hudson, 1957).

**12.410** Paul Frandsen, *An Outline of the Late Egyptian Verbal System* (Academisk Forlag Copenhagen, 1974).

**12.419** Otto Neugebauer, *The Exact Sciences in Antiquity* (Dover Publications); A. Aaboe, *Episodes from the Early History of Mathematics*.

**12.422** Xenophon, *History of My Times*, ed. Cawkwell (Penguin Classics).

## ANTHROPOLOGY

### Anthropology I

**03.100** Bowen, E. G., *Return to Laughter* (Doubleday Anchor, 1964); Murphy, Yolanda & Robert F., *Women of the Forest* (Columbia, 1974 or 1985, paperback); Hostetler, J. A. & Huntington, G. E. *The Hutterites in North America* (Holt, 1980, paperback); Chagnon, N. *Yanomamo: The Fierce People*, (Holt, paperback, any edn.) Additional reading listed in Anthropology Department handouts will include sections of Keesing, Roger M., *Cultural Anthropology: A Contemporary Perspective* (2nd edn, Holt, 1981).

**03.101** Fagan, Brian M., *People of the Earth; an Introduction to World Prehistory* (Little, Brown, 5th edn 1983, paper).

### Anthropology II

**03.200** Firth, R., *We, the Tikopia*, (any edn).

**03.206** Weaver, M. P., *The Aztecs, Maya and their Predecessors. Archaeology of Mesoamerica* (Academic Press, 2nd edn 1981); Fagan, B.M., *People of the Earth: an Introduction to World Prehistory*, 5th edn, (Little, Brown, 1983, paperback).

**03.207** Kelso, A. J. & Trevathan, W., *Physical Anthropology* (Prentice-Hall, 3rd edn, 1984); Gould, S. J., *The Panda's Thumb* (Pelican, 1983).

**03.208** Davidson, J., *Prehistory of New Zealand* (Longman Paul, 1984); Anderson, A., *When All the Moa Ovens Grew Cold* (Otago Heritage Books, 1982); Leach, B. F., *The Prehistory of The Southern Wairarapa* (Reprint Otago University 1981).

**03.210** Epstein, A. L., *Ethos and Identity* (Tavistock 1978); Barth, F. (ed.), *Ethnic Groups and Boundaries* (Little, Brown, 1969).

**03.212** Labov, W., *Sociolinguistic Patterns* (Univ. of Pennsylvania, 1972).

**03.214** Wolf, E., *Europe and the People Without History* (University of Calif. Press, 1982).

## Anthropology III

**03.300** Kuper, A., *Anthropologists and Anthropology*, (Peregrine, 1975 or later edn).

**03.309** Passingham, R., *The Human Primate* (Freeman, 1982); Jolly, A., *The Evolution of Primate Behaviour* (Collier-MacMillan, 2nd edn, 1985).

**03.314** Chang, K.C., *The Archaeology of Ancient China*, 4th edn (Yale Univ. Press, 1987); Bellwood, P., *Prehistory of the Indo-Malaysian Archipelago*, (Academic Press, 1985).

**03.320** Massal, Emile and Jacques Barrau, *Food Plants of the South Sea Islands* (South Pacific Commission Technical Bulletin).

**03.325** Coles, John, *Experimental Archaeology* (Academic Press 1979).

## ARCHITECTURE

Details of any prescribed texts and reading lists will be published in the Department prior to commencement of lectures.

## ART HISTORY

**19.260** Wittkower, R., *Art and Architecture in Italy 1600-1750* (Pelican History of Art, 1986, paperback).

**19.401** Smith, B., *Australian Painting 1788-1980* (Oxford).

## ASIAN GEOGRAPHY

See Geography

## ASIAN POLITICS

See Political Studies

## BIOLOGY

### Biology I

**39.101** Keeton, W. T., *Biological Science*, 4th edn (Norton).

### Biology II

**39.210** Krebs, J. C., *Ecology: The Experimental Analysis of Distribution and Abundance*, 2nd edn, (Harper & Row); Silvertown, J. W. *Introduction to Plant Population Ecology*, (Longman 1982).

## BOTANY

### Botany I, II & III

**06.102** Raven, P.H., Evert, R. F. & Eichhorn, S.E., *Biology of Plants*, 4th edn, (Worth).

**06.221** Sutcliffe, J., *Plants and Water*, 2nd edn, (Arnold).

**06.371** Dring, M. J., *The Biology of Marine Plants*, (Arnold).

### Botany For MSc

**06.410** Harper, J. L., *Population Biology of Plants*, 2nd edn, (Academic Press); Grime, J. P., *Plant Strategies and Vegetation Processes*, (Wiley).

**CELLULAR AND MOLECULAR BIOLOGY****Cellular & Molecular Biology III**

**40.303, 304, 305** There are no prescribed texts for 40.303, 40.304, or 40.305. A list of books that are recommended reading may be obtained from the Departmental Office after 1 December.

**CHEMISTRY****Chemistry I**

**08.111, 08.121** Moore and Barton, *Organic Chemistry: An Overview* (Saunders); Mahan and Myers, *University Chemistry* 4th edn, (Benjamin Cummings); *Chemistry I Laboratory Manual* (available from the Department at enrolment).

**Chemistry II**

**08.210** Laidler and Meiser, *Physical Chemistry* (Benjamin); Levitt and Kitchener, *Findlay's Practical Physical Chemistry*, 9th edn. (Longman); Aylward and Findlay, *SI Chemical Data* 2nd edn (Wiley); Fritz and Schenk, *Quantitative Analytical Chemistry*, 4th or 5th edn (Allyn and Bacon).

**08.220** Huheey, *Inorganic Chemistry*, 3rd edn (Harper International S.I. Edition).

**08.230** Streitwieser Jr and Heathcock, *Introduction to Organic Chemistry*, 3rd edn (Macmillan, 1985) *Chemistry 08.230 Laboratory Manual* (available from Department at enrolment).

**08.250** *Laboratory Manual* (available from the Department at enrolment).

**Chemistry III**

**08.310** Atkins, *Physical Chemistry* (Oxford); Levitt and Kitchener, *Findlay's Practical Physical Chemistry*, 9th edn (Longman); Aylward and Findlay, *SI Chemical Data*, 2nd edn (Wiley).

**08.311** Atkins, *Physical Chemistry* (Oxford); Levitt and Kitchener, *Findlay's Practical Physical Chemistry*, 9th edn (Longman); Aylward and Findlay, *SI Chemical Data* 2nd edn (Wiley).

**08.320** Cotton and Wilkinson, *Advanced Inorganic Chemistry*, 3rd or 4th edn (Interscience).

**08.321** Cotton and Wilkinson, *Advanced Inorganic Chemistry*, 3rd or 4th edn (Interscience).

**08.330** Streitwieser Jr. and Heathcock, *Introduction to Organic Chemistry*, 3rd edn (Macmillan, 1985).

**08.331** Carey and Sundberg, *Advanced Organic Chemistry A, Structure and Mechanisms*, 2nd edn Paperback edn (Plenum).

**08.340** Dyke, Floyd, Sainsbury and Theobald, *Organic Spectroscopy - An Introduction*, 2nd edn (Longman).

**08.352** Malcolme-Lawes, *Introduction to Radiochemistry*, Paperback edn (Macmillan). *Chemistry 08.352 Laboratory Manual* (available from the Department at enrolment).

**Chemistry for MSc and Honours**

**08.410** Bard & Faulkner, *Electrochemical Methods* (Wiley).

**08.411** Harris, *Nuclear Magnetic Resonance Spectroscopy* (Pitman).

**08.420** Cotton and Wilkinson, *Advanced Inorganic Chemistry*, 3rd or 4th edn (Interscience).

**08.421** Cotton & Wilkinson, *Advanced Inorganic Chemistry*, 3rd or 4th edn (Interscience).

**08.430** Carey and Sundberg, *Advanced Organic Chemistry B, Reactions and Synthesis*, 2nd edn Paperback edn (Plenum).

**08.431** Carey and Sundberg, *Advanced Organic Chemistry A, Structure and Mechanisms*, 2nd edn Paperback edn (Plenum).

**CHINESE****Chinese I**

**48.100 and 48.101** *Practical Chinese Reader*, Vol. I (Commercial Press, Peking) *Chinese Character Exercise Book*, Vol. I (Commercial Press, Peking); *Vocabulary List: Key to Exercises for Practical Chinese Reader*, Vols. I and II (Commercial Press, Peking).

**48.102** De Bary, W. T. (ed.), *Sources of Chinese Tradition* Vol. I (Columbia Univ. Press); Chan Wing-tsit, *A Source Book in Chinese Philosophy* (Princeton Univ. Press).

**48.104** Cao Xueqin, *The Story of the Stone*, Vols. I and 5, trans. D. Hawkes and J. Minford (Penguin); further materials supplied by the Department.

**Chinese II**

**48.200** *Practical Chinese Reader*, Vol. II (Commercial Press, Peking); *Chinese Character Exercise Book*, Vol. II (Commercial Press, Peking). *Vocabulary List: Key to Exercises for Practical Chinese Reader*, Vols. I and II (Commercial Press, Peking).

**48.201** Materials supplied by the Department.

**48.202** Dawson, R., *A New Introduction to Classical Chinese* (Oxford Univ. Press); Liu, J. J.-Y., *Essentials of Chinese Literary Art* (Duxbury Press); Lau, D.C. (trans.), *Mancius* (Penguin); further materials supplied by the Department.

**48.203** Lau, D.C. (trans.), *Confucius, The Analects* (Penguin); Lau, D.C. (trans.) *Lao Tzu, Tao-te Ching* (Penguin); further materials supplied by the Department.

**Chinese III**

**48.300** *Practical Chinese Reader*, Vols. III and IV (Commercial Press, Peking).

**48.301** G. Barmé and J. Minford, *Seeds of Fire* (Far Eastern Economic Review, Hong Kong); further materials supplied by the Department.

**48.302** Creel, Chang and Rudolph, *Literary Chinese by the Inductive Method*, Vol. III, *The Mencius* (Univ. of Chicago Press); further material supplied by the Department.

**Chinese for MA & Honours**

**48.400-48.417** Materials supplied by the Department.



**CLASSICAL STUDIES****Classical Studies I**

**73.105** Homer, *Odyssey*, trans. R. Lattimore (Harper Row); Herodotus, *Histories*; Aristophanes, *Lysistrata* and *Acharnians* (Penguin); Horace, *The Satires of Horace and Persius*; trans. N. Rudd (Penguin), and *The Complete Odes and Epodes*, trans. W.G. Shepherd (Penguin); Euripides, *Medea and Alcesteis* (Chicago U.P. p/back); Virgil, *Aeneid*, trans. C. Day-Lewis (The World's Classics).

**COMMERCIAL LAW****Commercial Law I**

**02.100** Mulholland, *Introduction to the New Zealand Legal System*, 6th edn, (Butterworths); Glanville Williams, *Learning the Law*, 11th edn, with New Zealand Supplement 1982, (Stevens & Sons). Additional material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department.

**Commercial Law II**

**02.200** Cheshire & Fifoot, *Law of Contract*, 6th edn, (Butterworths, 1984).

**02.201** Farrar, *Commercial Law in New Zealand* (Butterworths, 1985); *Insurance Law Reform Act 1977*, (Government Printing Office); *Insurance Law Reform Act 1985*, (Government Printing Office); *Sale of Goods Act 1908 & Amendments*, (Government Printing Office); *Hire Purchase Act 1971 & Amendments*, (Government Printing Office); *Chattels Transfer Act 1924 & Amendments*, (Government Printing Office); *Credit Contracts Act 1981*, (Government Printing Office); *Insolvency Act 1967 & Amendments*, (Government Printing Office); *Bills of Exchange Act 1908 & Amendments* (1979 Reprint), (Government Printing Office); *Cheques Act 1960*, (Government Printing Office); *Door to Door Sales Act 1967 & Amendments*, (Government Printing Office); *Layby Sales Act 1971 & Amendments*, (Government Printing Office).

**02.202** *New Zealand Companies & Securities Legislation*, 5th or later edn, (Commerce Clearing House).

**Commercial Law III**

**02.300** *New Zealand Companies and Securities Legislation*, 5th or later edn, (Commerce Clearing House).

**02.301** *New Zealand Master Tax Guide*, 1986, (Commerce Clearing House); *New Zealand Income Tax Legislation*, 1986, 13th edn, (Commerce Clearing House).

**02.304** To be advised at enrolment.

**COMPUTER SCIENCE****Computer Science I**

**07.100** Refer to Department.

**07.101** J.S. Coan, L. Coan, *Basic Microsoft BASIC for the Macintosh* (Hayden).

**07.105** A.M. Tenenbaum, M.J. Augenstein, *Data Structures Using Pascal* (Prentice-Hall).

**Computer Science II**

**07.210** R.W. Sebesta, *PDP-11 Structured Assembly Language*, (Benjamin Cummings).

**07.220** A.V. Aho, J.E. Hopcroft, J.D. Ullman, *Data Structures and Algorithms* (Addison-Wesley).

**07.230, 07.235, 07.290** Refer to Department.

**Computer Science III**

**07.301 to 07.306** Refer to Department.

**07.310** Refer to Department.

**07.320, 07.330** Refer to Department.

**07.340** H.M. Deitel, *An Introduction to Operating Systems*, (Addison-Wesley).

**07.351, 07.352** Refer to Department.

**07.360** E. Rich, *Artificial Intelligence*, (McGraw-Hill).

**07.390** Refer to Department.

**Computer Science for MSc**

**07.401 to 07.409** Refer to Department.

**07.410, 07.430** Refer to Department.

**07.442** F. Halsall, *Introduction to Data Communications and Computer Networks*, (Addison-Wesley).

**07.452** Refer to Department.

**07.460** E. Rich, *Artificial Intelligence*, (McGraw-Hill).

**07.473, 07.483, 07.490, 07.492, 07.493, 07.494** Refer to Department.

**DRAMA, DIPLOMA IN**

A booklet will be available from the English Department.

**ECONOMICS****Economics I**

**13.100, 13.101** W.J. Baumol & A.S. Blinder, *Economics Principles and Policy*, 3rd edn (Harcourt, Brace, Jovanovich).

**13.102** Moskowit & Wright, *Statistics for Management and Economics*, (Merrill, 1985).

**Economics II**

**13.200** W. Nicholson, *Microeconomic Theory – Basic Principles and Extension*, 3rd edn, (Dryden Press 1985).

**13.201** S.A. Morley, *Macroeconomics* 1st edn, (Dryden).

**13.203** R.D. Blair & L.W. Kenny, *Microeconomics for Managerial Decision Making* latest edn, (McGraw-Hill).

**13.204** J. Stiglitz, *Economics of the Public Sector*, 1st edn, (Norton 1986).

**13.205** D. Gujarati, *Basic Econometrics* (McGraw-Hill, 1979 or latest edn).

**13.210** P. Mathias, *The First Industrial Nation*, 2nd edn, (Methven).

**13.211** A.G. Kenwood and A.L. Glouheed, *Growth of the International Economics*, 2nd edn, (George Allen and Unwin).

**Economics III**

**13.306** R. Ekelund & R. Herbert, *A History of Econ-*

omic Theory and Method, 2nd edn, (McGraw-Hill, 1983); R. Backhouse, *A History of Modern Economic Analysis*, 1st edn, (Butterworths, paperback).

**13.308** J.T. Addison & W.S. Siebert, *The Market for Labor; An Analytical Treatment*, (Goodyear, 1979).

**13.313** L. Hannah, *Rise of Corporate Economics*, (Paper, Methven).

## EDUCATION

### Education I

**14.100** Marshall, *Why Go to School* 1st edn, (Dunmore).

**14.101** Hetherington and Parke, *Child Psychology: A Contemporary Viewpoint*, 3rd edn, (McGraw-Hill, 1986).

### Education II

**14.200** Holmes (ed.), *Equality and Freedom in Education* 1st edn, (Geo Allen and Unwin).

**14.202** Lawton, *Curriculum Studies and Educational Planning* (Hodder and Stoughton, 1983).

**14.204** Mehrens and Lehmann, *Measurement and Evaluation in Education and Psychology*, 3rd edn, (Holt Rinehart Winston paperback).

**14.208** Dewey, *Experience and Education*, 1st edn, (Collier-Macmillan).

### Education III

**14.300** Phillips and Cleverley, *Visions of Childhood*, 1st edn (Teachers College Columbia University).

**14.301** Holmes, (ed.) *Equality and Freedom in Education*, 1st edn (Allen and Unwin).

**14.306** Belkin, *An Introduction to Counselling*, 2nd edn (Brown, 1984).

**14.308** Sulzer-Azaroff and Mayer, *Applying Behaviour Analysis Procedures with Children and Youth* (Holt Rinehart and Winston).

**14.309** Donaldson, *Children's Minds*, 2nd edn (Fontana Paperback).

**14.311** Hallahan and Kauffman, *Exceptional Children: Introduction to Special Education*, 3rd edn (Prentice Hall); Tuckman, *Conducting Educational Research*, 2nd edn (Harcourt Brace & Jovanovich, 1978).

**14.314** Cazden, *Classroom Discourse: the language of teacher and child* 1st edn (Heinemann).

**14.317** Bolman and Deal, *Modern Approaches to Understanding and Managing Organizations* (Jossey Bass, 1984).

**14.319** Clay, *Reading: The Patterning of Complex Behaviour*, 3rd edn (Heinemann Educational Books); Clay, *The Early Detection of Reading Difficulties*, 3rd edn (Heinemann Educational Books, 1985); McNaughton, *Being skilled: The Socialization of Learning to Read* 1st edn (London Methuen).

**14.327** Reid and Hodson, *Science for all. Teaching Science in the Secondary School* (Cassell, 1987).

**14.328** Jagger, *Feminist Politics and Human Nature* (Rowman and Allenheld).

**14.331** Kelly (ed.) *Microcomputers and the Cur-*

*riculum* (Harper and Row, 1984).

### Education for MA and Honours

**14.400** Foucault, *Discipline and Punish*, 1st edn (Vintage, 1979); Dewey, *Democracy and Education*, 1st edn (MacMillan).

**14.401** Holmes, *Comparative Education: Some Considerations of Method*, 1st edn (Allen and Unwin, 1981).

**14.407** McNaughton, *Being Skilled: the socialization of learning to read*, 1st edn (Methuen, London).

**14.410** Corsini (ed.), *Current Psychotherapies*, 3rd edn (Peacock, 1984); Egan, *The Skilled Helper*, 3rd edn (Wadsworth, 1986); Argyris and Schon, *Theory in Practice: Increasing Professional Effectiveness* (Jossey-Bass, San Francisco, 1974).

**14.412** Barlow and Hersen, *Designs: Strategies for Studying Behaviour Change*, 2nd edn (Pergamon).

**14.413** Zigler and Hodapp, *Understanding Mental Retardation*, 1st edn (Cambridge University Press); Singh and Wilton, *Mental Retardation in New Zealand: Provisions, Services, and Research*, 1st edn (Whitcoulls, 1985).

**14.414** Taylor (ed.) *Recent developments in Curriculum Studies*, (F.E.R. Nelson, 1986); Skilbeck (ed.), *Evaluating Curriculum in the Eighties* (Hodder and Stoughton, 1984).

**14.418** Goldenberg, *Family Therapy*, 2nd edn (Brooks/Cole, 1985).

**14.421** Brown, Cooper, Horton, Toates, and Zeldin (eds.) *Science in Schools* (Open University Press, 1986).

## ENGINEERING

Lists of prescribed texts are available from the School of Engineering.

## ENGLISH

### English I

**18.100** Chaucer: *The Prologue* (ed.) R.T. Davis (Harrap); *The Pardoner's Tale* (ed.) N. Coghill & C. Tolkien (Harrap's English Classics); *The Nun's Priest's Tale* (ed.) N. Coghill & C. Tolkien (Harrap); Muriel Bowden, *A Commentary on the General Prologue of the Canterbury Tales* (Macmillan); Shakespeare: *King Richard III* (New Penguin Shakespeare); *The Merchant of Venice* (ed.) W. Moelwyn Merchant (New Penguin Shakespeare); *Macbeth* (ed.) G.K. Hunter (New Penguin Shakespeare).

**18.101** Lawrence, *The Prussian Officer* (Penguin); Joyce, *Dubliners* (Granada); Faulkner, *As I Lay Dying* (Penguin); Pynchon, *The Crying of Lot 49* (Pan/Bantam); Jean Rhys, *The Wide Sargasso Sea* (Penguin); *The Penguin Book of American Verse* (ed.) Geoffrey Moore (revised edition); Bertolt Brecht, *Mother Courage* (Methuen paperback); Samuel Becket, *Waiting for Godot* (Faber paperback); Caryl Churchill, *Cloud Nine* (Methuen paperback); Harold

Pinter, *Old Times* (Methuen); Howard Brenton, *Epson Downs* (Methuen paperback).

**18.103** *An Anthology of 20th Century New Zealand Poetry* (ed.) Vincent O'Sullivan (O.U.P.); Katherine Mansfield, *Selected Stories* (ed.) D.M. Davin (O.U.P.) OR *Collected Stories* (Penguin); Helen Shaw, *The Gypsies and Other Short Stories* (VUP); Maurice Gee, *In My Father's Den* (OUP/Fabers); Patricia Grace, *Potiki* (Penguin); Janet Frame, *Faces in the Water* (Women's Press-Hutchinson); Jean Devanny, *The Butcher's Shop* (AUP); Frank Sargeson, *Collected Stories* (Penguin); Keri Hulme, *The Bone People* (Picador); Albert Wendt, *Pouliuli* (Penguin); Carolyn Burns, *Objection Overruled* (VUP); Greg McGee, *Foreskin's Lament* (VUP).

**18.104** Blake, *Selected Poems and Letters* (Penguin); Wordsworth *Selected Poems* (ed.) Walford Davies (Dent paperback); Hardy, *Tess of the D'Urbervilles* (Macmillan); Keats, *Selected Poems and Letters* (ed.) Robert Gittings (Heinemann); T. Hughes (ed.), *A Choice of Emily Dickinson's Verse* (Faber); Hawthorne, *Great Shorter Works of Hawthorne* (Harper & Row); Twain, *Huckleberry Finn* (Penguin); Eliot, *The Mill on the Floss* (OUP World's Classics); Jane Austen, *Emma* (OUP World's Classics); Dickens, *Great Expectations* (Penguin); Bronte, *Wuthering Heights* (OUP World's Classics).

**18.105** Dennis Freeborn, *Varieties of English: An Introduction to Language Studies* (Macmillan); Charles L. Barber, *The Story of Language* (Pan Books); Peter Trudgill, *Sociolinguistics: An Introduction* (1983 rev. Pelican).

## English II

**18.200** F.N. Robinson, *The Works of Geoffrey Chaucer* (Oxford paperback); Malory, *Le Morte Darthur* (ed.) P.J.C. Field (London Medieval & Renaissance Series - Hodder & Stoughton); Everyman and Medieval Miracle Plays (ed.) A.C. Cawley (Everyman's Library, Dent); *Three Late Mediaeval Morality Plays* (ed.) G.A. Lester (New Mermaid, Benn); N. Davis, D. Gray et al, *A Chaucer Glossary* (Clarendon Press Oxford paperback); *Middle English Verse Romances* (ed.) Donald B. Sands (University of Exeter).

**18.201** Noel Burton-Roberts, *Analysing Sentences: An Introduction to English Syntax* (Longman); Kenneth Sisam, *Fourteenth-Century Verse and Prose (with a Middle English Vocabulary by J.R.R. Tolkien)* (Clarendon); *The Sounds of English* (obtainable from the Department).

**18.205** W. Labov, *Sociolinguistic Patterns* (Univ. of Pennsylvania, 1972).

**18.210** *The Norton Anthology of English Literature*, Vol. 1 (Norton).

**18.213** Hamlet, *Othello*, *King Lear*, *Antony and Cleopatra* (all New Penguin Shakespeare paperbacks); Marlowe, *Dr Faustus* (Methuen); Anon., *Arden of Faversham* (New Mermaid); Webster, *The*

*Duchess of Malfi* (New Mermaid); Tourneur, *The Revenger's Tragedy* (New Mermaid); Middleton, *The Changeling* (New Mermaid); Andrew Gurr, *The Shakespearean Stage* (Cambridge paperback).

**18.220** E.M. Forster, *A Passage to India* (Penguin); James Joyce, *A Portrait of the Artist as a Young Man* (Granada); Joseph Conrad, *Heart of Darkness* (Penguin); Henry James, *What Maisie Knew* (OUP); Antonia White, *Frost in May* (Virago); Willa Cather, *My Antonia* (Virago); Virginia Woolf, *Mrs Dalloway* (Granada); D.H. Lawrence, *Sons and Lovers* (Penguin); Robin Hyde, *The Godwits Fly* (OUP); Vladimir Nabokov, *Lolita* (Penguin); Maurice Gee, *Plumb* (OUP).

**18.222** Yeats, *Selected Poetry* (ed.) Jeffares (Pan); Robert Frost, *Selected Poems* (ed.) I. Hamilton (Penguin); Ezra Pound, *Selected Poems 1908-1959* (Faber paperback); W.C. Williams, *Selected Poems* (New Directions); Wallace Stevens, *Selected Poems* (Faber paperback); W.H. Auden, *Selected Poems* (Faber paperback).

## English III

**18.300** C.L. Barber, *The Story of Language* (Pan); A.C. Baugh, *A History of the English Language* (Routledge & Kegan Paul). Xeroxed material may be issued.

**18.301** Sweet, *Anglo-Saxon Primer*, (rev.) Davis, 9th edn, (Clarendon Press); Sweet, *Anglo-Saxon Reader*, rev. D. Whitelock, 15th edn, (Clarendon Press).

**18.302** F.N. Robinson, *The Works of Geoffrey Chaucer* (OUP); *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight* (ed.) J. Burrows (Penguin); William Dunbar, Xeroxed poems supplied by the Department; Robert Henryson, *Poems*, (ed.) C. Elliott (Clarendon Press); *One Hundred Middle English Lyrics* (ed.) Robert D. Stevick (Macmillan).

**18.303** Geoffrey N. Leech, *A Linguistic Guide to English Poetry* (Longman); Geoffrey N. Leech and Michael H. Short, *Style in Fiction, A Linguistic Introduction to English Fictional Prose* (Longman paperback).

**18.304** A.C. Gimson, *An Introduction to the Pronunciation of English*, 2nd edn, (Arnold paperback); *The Principles of the International Phonetic Association* (University College, London); P. Ladefoged, *A Course in Phonetics* (Harcourt Brace & Jovanovich).

**18.306** G. Salgado, *Three Restoration Comedies* (Penguin); Defoe, *Robinson Crusoe* (Penguin); Richardson, *Pamela* (Penguin); Swift, *Gulliver's Travels* (Penguin); Fielding, *Joseph Andrews & Shamela* (OUP paperback); Ann Radcliffe, *Mysteries of Udolpho* (OUP).

**18.307** Blake, *The Portable Blake*, (ed.) Kazin (Penguin); Wordsworth, *Selected Poems* (ed.) Davies (Everyman); Coleridge, *Selected Poetry and Prose* (Modern Library College edn.); Keats, *The Complete Poems* (ed.) Barnard (Penguin); Scott, *The Bride of Lammermoor* (Everyman); Hogg, *Confessions of a*

*Justified Sinner* (Oxford paperback); Byron, *Don Juan* (Penguin); Shelley, *Selected Poetry and Prose* (ed.) Harold Bloom (Meridian paperback).

**18.310** Shakespeare: *Pericles* (Arden); *Cymbeline* (Arden); *The Winter's Tale* (Penguin); *The Tempest* (Penguin); *Henry VIII* (Penguin); *The Two Noble Kinsmen*, (Penguin); *The Taming of the Shrew* (ed.) Ann Thompson (New Cambridge Shakespeare); *Love's Labour's Lost* (Penguin); *A Midsummer Night's Dream* (Penguin).

**18.314** Bunyan, *Pilgrim's Progress* (Everyman paperback); *Grace Abounding* (Everyman paperback); *Edmund Spenser's Poetry* (ed.) H. MacLean (Norton); Milton, *Poetical Works* (Oxford Standard Authors); *Collected Poems of Thomas Wyatt* (ed.) R. Rebholz (Yale UP); Philip Sidney, *Selected Prose and Poetry* (ed.) R.M. Kimbrough (University of Wisconsin Press).

**18.320** Charles Dickens, *David Copperfield*, *Bleak House* (both Penguin English Library); George Eliot, *Middlemarch*, (Penguin English Library); W.M. Thackeray, *Vanity Fair* (Oxford World's Classics); Charlotte Brontë, *Jane Eyre* (OUP World's Classics); Thomas Hardy, *The Mayor of Casterbridge*, *Jude the Obscure* (both Penguin English Library); Lewis Carroll, *The Annotated Alice* (ed.) M. Gardner (Penguin); Alfred Tennyson: *Selected Poetry* (ed.) Douglas Bush (Random House, Modern Library); Robert Browning *Men and Women and Other Poems* (ed.) J.W. Harper (Everyman paperback); Elizabeth Barrett Browning, *Aurora Leigh* (ed.) C. Kaplan (Women's Press).

**18.323** A. Poulin, *Contemporary American Poetry* (Houghton Mifflin 3rd edn).

**18.327** Henry Lawson, *The Bush Undertaker and Other Stories*, (ed.) C. Roderick (Angus and Robertson); Henry Handel Richardson, *The Fortunes of Richard Mahony*, (*Australia Felix*, *The Way Home*, *Ultima Thule*) (all in Penguin); Judith Wright, *Collected Poems* (Angus and Robertson); A.D. Hope, *Selected Poems* (Angus and Robertson); Patrick White, *A Fringe of Leaves* (Penguin), *Riders in the Chariot* (Penguin); Gwen Harwood, *Selected Poems* (Angus and Robertson); Elizabeth Jolley, *Miss Peabody's Inheritance* (University of Queensland paperback); Jack Davis, *Kullark and the Dreamers* (Currency Press); Colin Johnson, *Dr Wooreddy's Prescription for Enduring the End of the World* (Hyland House Publishing); Arthur Weller, *Day of the Dog* (Pan); Ray Lawler, *Summer of the Seventeenth Doll*; Dorothy Hewett, *The Chapel Perilous*; Jack Hibberd, *A Stretch of the Imagination*; (all Currency Press paperbacks).

### English for MA and Honours

**18.400** Prescribed texts will include: *Beowulf* (ed.) C.L. Wrenn, 3rd edn, revised by W.F. Bolton (Harrap paperback).

**18.401** *Piers Plowman*, (ed.) A.V.C. Schmidt (Everyman); Peter Happé (ed.) *English Mystery Plays*

(Penguin English Library); M. Eccles (ed.) *The Macro Plays* (EETS O.S. 262, 1969); Xeroxed texts of plays to be distributed by the Department.

**18.402** Prescribed texts will include: Gordon, *Introduction to Old Norse*, revised edn (Clarendon Press), together with duplicated material from the Department.

**18.405** Yeats, *Collected Poems* (Macmillan); Ezra Pound, *Selected Poems 1908-59*, *Selected Cantos*, (Faber paperbacks); T.S. Eliot, *Collected Poems* (Faber paperback); William Carlos Williams, *Selected Poems and Paterson* (both New Direction paperbacks); Allen Curnow, *Selected Poems* (Penguin), *The Loop in Lone Kauri Road* (AUP).

**18.406** *Sonnets* (ed.) John Kerrigan (Penguin); *Titus Andronicus*, (ed.) Eugene Waith (Oxford paperback); *Henry IV, Parts 1 and 2* (ed.) A.R. Humphreys (Arden paperback); *Richard II* (ed.) Stanley Wells (Penguin); *Henry V* (ed.) Gary Taylor (Oxford paperback); *Troilus and Cressida* (ed.) K. Palmer (Arden paperback); *Timon of Athens*, (ed.) H.J. Oliver (Arden paperback); *Measure for Measure* (ed.) J.W. Lever (Arden paperback); *All's Well that Ends Well* (ed.) Barbara Everett (Penguin); *The Poems* (ed.) F.T. Prince (Arden). Texts for bibliographic study may be prescribed at a later date; titles will be available from the Department.

**18.411** *The Complete Works of Geoffrey Chaucer* (ed.) Robinson (2nd revised edn) (OUP); John Gower *Confessio Amentis* (ed.) R.A. Peck, (University of Toronto); N.Davis, *A Chaucer Glossary* (OUP).

**18.414** James Joyce, *Ulysses* (Penguin Student's edition), *Dubliners*, *A Portrait of the Artist as a Young Man*, *Exiles*, (all Granada), *Finnegan's Wake* (Faber or any other edition).

**18.416** Gertrude Stein, *Look at Me Now and Here I Am: Writings and Lectures 1909-45* (Penguin); Wystan Curnow, *I Will Need Words: Colin McCahon's Number and Text Paintings* (National Art Gallery); W.T.J. Mitchell, *Iconology: Image, Text, Ideology* (Chicago University Press).

**18.417** Katherine Mansfield, *Collected Stories* (Penguin or Oxford); Frank Sargeson, *The Stories of Frank Sargeson* (Longman Paul or Penguin); Janet Frame, *Living in the Maniototo*; (Women's Press/Hutchinson); Maurice Gee, *The Plumb Trilogy* (*Plumb*, *Meg*, *Sole Survivor* — OUP); (ed.) V. O'Sullivan *An Anthology of 20th Century New Zealand Poetry* (OUP 3rd edn, 1987); Witi Ihimaera and D.S. Long (eds.), *Into the World of Light* (Heinemann); Albert Wendt (ed.) *Lali: An Anthology of Pacific Literature* (Longman Paul).

**18.418** Congreve, *The Double Dealer*, (ed.) John Ross (New Mermaid); Rochester, *Poems*, (ed.) Pinto (Muses Library) [Class set in the Department]; *Seventeenth-Century Poetry*, (ed.) Hugh Kenner (Rinehart paperback); Hobbes, *Leviathan*, (ed.) MacPherson (Penguin); *Five Restoration Comedies*,

(ed.) Brian Gibbons (New Mermaid); Dryden, *A Selection*, (ed.) Conaghan (Methuen paperback).

**18.419** L. Benson, *King Arthur's Death* (Bobbs-Merrill); Thomas Malory, *Works* (ed.) E. Vinaver (OUP); B. Windeatt (ed.) *Book of Margery Kemp* (Penguin); John Skelton, *Complete English Poems*, (ed.) J.V. Scattergood (Penguin); J. Norton-Smith (ed.) *John Lydgate, Selected Poems* (OUP); J. Norton-Smith (ed.) *The Kingis Quair* (OUP) [Class set available in the Department]; Thomas Wyatt, *Complete Poems* (ed.) R. Rebholz (Yale UP); Thomas More, *History of King Richard III* (ed.) R. Sylvester (Yale UP).

**18.422** Margaret Atwood, *The Edible Woman*, *Life Before Man*, *The Handmaid's Tale* (all Virago) and *Survival*; Joy Kogawa, *Obasan* (Penguin); Robert Kroetsch, *The Studhorse Man*, *What the Crow Said* (both New Press); Rudy Wiebe, *The Blue Mountains of China*, *The Temptations of Big Bear* (McLelland and Stewart); Tim Findley, *The Wars*, *Famous Last Words* (both Penguin); Marie-Claire Blais, *A Season in the Life of Emmanuel*; Alice Munro, *Lives of Girls and Women*, *The Moons of Jupiter* (both Penguin).

**18.430** Jane Austen, *Persuasion* (Penguin); Harriet Martineau, *Deerbrook* (Virago); Anne Brontë, *The Tenant of Wildfell Hall* (Penguin); Charlotte Brontë, *Vilette* (Penguin); Elizabeth Gaskell, *Granford*, *North and South* (both Penguin/World's Classics), *Four Short Stories* (Pandora Press); George Eliot, *The Mill on the Floss* (World's Classics), *Middlemarch* (Penguin); Margaret Oliphant, *Hester* (Virago); Olive Schreiner, *The Story of an African Farm* (Penguin); George Egerton, *Keynotes and Discords* (Virago); Elizabeth Robins, *The Convert* (Women's Press); Charlotte Perkins-Gilman, *The Yellow Wallpaper* (Virago).

## ENVIRONMENTAL STUDIES

### Environment 200

**84.200** Turk, *Introduction to Environmental Studies* (Saunders, 1985).

## FRENCH

### French I

**34.100** Ollivier, *Grammaire française* (HBJ); *Coursebook* from Department.

**34.101** Rostand, *Cyrano de Bergerac* (Blackwell); Mauriac, *Thérèse Desqueyroux* (Livres de Poche); Prévert, *Paroles* (Folio, Gallimard) (and Departmental material); Triolet, *les Amants d'Avignon* (in *le Premier Accroc coûte deux cents francs* – Folio, Gallimard); Memmi, *Portrait du Colonisé*, *Portrait du Colonisateur* (Gallimard, NRF); Camus, *Noces*, *Retour à Tipasa* (Departmental material); Etcherelli, *Elise ou la Vraie Vie* (Methuen).

**34.102** Departmental Material.

**34.104** *Coursebook* from Department.

**34.108** *Coursebook* from Department.

**34.110** Ollivier, *Grammaire française* (HBJ); *Coursebook* from Department.

**34.501** *Coursebook* from Department.  
For dictionaries see Department leaflet.

### French II

**34.200** Ollivier, *Grammaire française* (HBJ); Bescherelle, *L'art de Conjuguer Huit Mille Verbes* (Harrap/Hatier).

**34.201** Maupassant, *Boule de suif* (LP); Aymé, *Le passe-muraille* (Folio); France, Departmental material; Camus, *Noces*, *suivi de L'Été* (Folio); Hugo, *Le dernier jour d'un condamné* (Folio).

**34.203** Chateaubriand, *René* (Garnier – Flammarion); Hugo, *Ruy Blas* (Classiques Bordas), and Departmental material; Musset, *Lorenzaccio* (Classiques Bordas) and Departmental material; Sand, *La Mare au Diable* (Garnier – Flammarion).

**34.205** Bowen, *Four Farces* (Blackwell); Marie de France, *Lois* (ed.) Ewert (Blackwell); Villon, *Poésies Complètes* (LP); *La farce de Maître Pathelin* (Nouveaux Classiques Larousse).

**34.210** Lécuyer & Virey, *Advanced Non-Literary Texts for Translation from and into French* (Harrap); Dany, Geliot & Parizet, *Le Français du Secrétariat Commercial* (Hachette); Dany & Laloy, *Le Français de l'hôtellerie et du Tourisme* (Hachette); Larousse de la Langue Française: *Lexis* (Larousse); and Departmental material.

**34.214** McCarthy, *The Pronunciation of French* (OUP); Léon, *Introduction à la phonétique Corrective* (Hachette/Larousse); Roulet, *Linguistic Theory, Linguistic Description and Language Teaching* (Longmans); Wilkins, *Linguistics in Language Teaching* (Arnold).

For dictionaries see Departmental leaflet.

**34.218** Rickard, *A History of the French Language* (Hutchinson); Carton et al., *Les Accents des Français* (Hachette); *Coursebook* from Department.

### French III

**34.300** Ollivier, *Grammaire française* (HBJ); Bescherelle, *L'art de conjuguer Huit Mille Verbes* (Harrap/Hatier).

**34.302** The Enlightenment: Departmental Material; Laclos, *Les Liaisons Dangereuses* (G-F); Prévert, *Manon Lescaut* (Harrap); Rousseau, *Discours sur l'inégalité* (Ed. Sociales); Voltaire, *Candide* (OUP).

**34.306** Einhorn, *Old French: a concise handbook* (CUP); Benedikt, *The Anglo-Norman Voyage of St Brendan* (MUP); Aebischer (ed.) *Le pèlerinage de Charlemagne* (Ed. Scolaire, Genève, 1965).

**34.308** Stendhal, *Le Rouge et le Noir* (Garnier); Zola, *Nana* (G-F); Balzac, *Illusions Perdues* (Grund); Flaubert, *Madame Bovary* (Cl. Garnier); Maupassant, *Bel Ami* (Folio).

**34.309** Aymé, *Le Chemin des Écoliers* (L.P.); Colette, *Le Blé en Herbe* (G-F); Merle, *Derrière la Vitre* (Folio); Poirot-Delpéch, *Le Grand Dadais* (Folio);

Radiguet, *Le Diable au Corps* (L.P.).

**34.318** *Coursebook* from Department.

For dictionaries see Departmental leaflet.

## GEOGRAPHY

For papers not listed below, see the Department of Geography *Students' Guide* available from the Secretary.

### Geography I

**20.102** R.J. Johnston (ed.) *The Dictionary of Human Geography* (Blackwell, 2nd edn, 1986).

### Geography II

**20.203** T.E. Avery & G.L. Berlin, *Interpretation of Aerial Photographs*, 4th edn (Burgess, 1985); G.R. Cochrane, *LANDSAT Images of New Zealand* (Action Publications, 1981).

### Geography for MA, MSc and Honours

**20.440** R.N. Colwell (ed.), *Manual of Remote Sensing*, 2nd edn, Vols 1 & 2 (Am. Soc. Photogrammetry, 1983).

## GEOLOGY

### Geology I

**21.100** F. Press & R. Siever, *Earth* (Freeman) 4th edn, 1985.

**21.150** *Geological Map of New Zealand*, scale 1:250,000 Sheet 3, Auckland (Government Printer); *Geological Maps of New Zealand*, scale 1:1,000,000 (Government Printer), but note: purchase only the maps and not the Geological Survey Bulletin of the same name.

### Geology II

**21.200** K.A. Rodgers, K.B. Spörli, J.A. Grant-Mackie, *Field Geology* (AU Geology Department Publication) 1987; *R13 1:50,000 topographic map, N51 1:63,360 Geological map* (NZ Geological Survey — B.C. Waterhouse, Government Printer).

**21.211** D.H. Griffiths and R.F. King, *Applied Geophysics for Geologists and Engineers* (Pergamon) 2nd edn; B.E. Hobbs, W.D. Means and P.F. Williams, *An Outline of Structural Geology* (Wiley International Edition, J. Wiley & Sons), 1986.

**21.212** D.L. Clark, *Fossils, paleontology and evolution* 2nd edn (W.C. Brown) 1976. J.W. Harbough, *Stratigraphy and the geologic time scale* 2nd edn (W.C. Brown) 1974. A.R. Lillie, *Strata and structure in New Zealand* (Tohunga Press), 1982. I.G. Speden and I.W. Keyes, *Illustrations of NZ Fossils* (Government Printer, DSIR Information Series 150), 1981.

**21.213** T. Zoltai and J.H. Stout, *Mineralogy: Concepts and Principles* (Burgess, Minneapolis, Minnesota), 1985.

**21.215** E.G. Ehlers and H. Blatt, *Petrology igneous, sedimentary and metamorphic* (Freeman), 1982. M.E. Tucker, *Sedimentary Petrology: an introduction* (Blackwell Scientific Publications), 1981.

### Geology III

**21.300** J.A.E. Allum, *Photogeology and Regional*

*Mapping* (Pergamon) 1966.

**21.301** A.R. Lillie, *Strata and Structure in New Zealand* (Tohunga Press) 1982; J.A.E. Allum, *Photogeology and Regional Mapping* (Pergamon) 1966.

**21.302** R.L. Folk, *Petrology of Sedimentary Rocks* (Hemphills, Austin, Texas); *Either* M.R. Leeder, *Sedimentology: Process and Product* (George Allen and Unwin) 1982; *or* for students advancing to Honours Blatt, Middleton and Murray, *Origin of Sedimentary Rocks* (Prentice-Hall) 2nd edn 1980.

**21.303** L.F. Laporte, *Ancient Environments* (Prentice-Hall); N. de B. Hornibrook, *A Handbook of N.Z. Microfossils*, (NZ Government Printer); E.N.K. Clarkson, *Invertebrate Paleontology and Evolution* (W.C. Brown) 2nd edn. 1984; I.G. Speden & I.W. Keyes, *Illustrations of NZ Fossils* (Government Printer, DSIR Information Series 150) 1981.

**21.305** W.A. Dear, R.A. Howie, J. Zussman, *An Introduction to Rock Forming Minerals* (Longmans) 1966; F.J. Turner, *Metamorphic Petrology* (McGraw-Hill) 2nd edn, 1980; S. Maaloe, *Principles of Igneous Petrology* (Springer Verlag) 1985.

**21.306** P. Kearney and M. Brooks, *An introduction to Geophysical Exploration* (Blackwell) 1984.

**21.307** P. Kearney and M. Brooks, *An introduction to Geophysical Exploration* (Blackwell) 1984.

**21.308** J.E. Costa and V.R. Baker, *Surficial Geology. Building with the Earth* (John Wiley and Sons) 1981; C.C. Mathewson, *Engineering Geology* (Merrill; Bell-Howell).

**21.311** B.E. Hobbs, W.D. Means and P.F. Williams *An outline of structural Geology* (Wiley International Edition, J. Wiley & Sons) 1986.

**21.319** J.I. Drever, *The Geochemistry of Natural Waters* (Prentice-Hall) 1982; *Either* K.B. Krauskopf, *Introduction to Geochemistry* 2nd edn (McGraw-Hill), *or* P. Henderson, *Inorganic Geochemistry* (Pergamon) 1982.

**21.382** C.R. Ward, *Coal Geology and Coal Technology* (Blackwell) 1984.

**21.386** P. Kearney and M. Brooks, *An introduction to geophysical exploration* (Blackwell) 1984.

**21.388** F.G. Bell, *Engineering Geology and Geotechnics* (Newnes-Butterworths) 1980.

## GERMAN

### German I

**22.100** Neuner et. al., *Deutsch Aktiv 2: Lehrbuch* (Langenscheidt); *Deutsch Aktiv 2: Arbeitsbuch* (Langenscheidt); Funk and Kohl, *Deutsch Aktiv 2: Glossar Englisch* (Langenscheidt); Arnsdorf, *Deutsch Aktiv 2: Sprechübungen* (Langenscheidt); Terrell et. al., *Collins German-English/English-German Dictionary* (Collins); Asher, *The Framework of German* 13th edn, (A.U., 1985).

**22.101** Swales (ed.) *German Poetry: an Anthology from Klopstock to Enzensberger* (C.U.P. P/back); Peck and Coyle, *Literary Terms and Criticism* (Macmillan).

Selected texts supplied by the Department.

**22.102** Pasley (ed.), *Germany: a Companion to German Studies* (Methuen); Dube, *The Expressionists* (Thames & Hudson); Thomas Mann, *Death in Venice* (Penguin); Kafka, *Metamorphosis* (Penguin); Grimm, *Selected Tales* (Penguin); Fontane, *Effi Briest* (Penguin); Böll, *The Lost Honour of Katharina Blum* (Penguin).

**22.103** Apelt, *Reading Knowledge in German for Art Historians and Archaeologists* (Erich Schmidt); Collins-Klett *German-English Dictionary, Vol. I* (German-English) (Collins).

**22.104** *The Penguin Book of Lieder* (Penguin); Collins-Klett *German-English Dictionary Vol. I* (German-English) (Collins).

**22.105** Neuner et. al., *Deutsch Aktiv 1: Lehrbuch*, (Langenscheidt); *Deutsch Aktiv 1: Arbeitsbuch* (Langenscheidt); Zirkel et. al., *Deutsch Aktiv 1: Glossar Englisch*, (Langenscheidt); Arnsdorf, *Deutsch Aktiv 1: Sprechübungen* (Langenscheidt); Malone et. al., *Deutsch Aktiv 1: Companion Grammar* (Langenscheidt).

## German II

**22.200** Edelhoff/Funk et. al., *Deutsch Aktiv 3: Materialien für die Mittelstufe, Teil 1 und 2* (Langenscheidt); P. Terrell et al., *Collins German-English/English-German Dictionary* (Collins); Asher, *The Framework of German*, 13th edn (A.U., 1985).

**22.202** Thomas Mann, *Buddenbrooks* (Fischer Taschenbuch); Rilke, *Neue Gedichte* (Insel Taschenbuch); Frisch, *Biedermann und die Brandstifter* (Suhrkamp); Brecht, *Mutter Courage* (Heinemann); Dürrenmatt, *Der Besuch der alten Dame* (Methuen); Peck and Coyle, *Literary Terms and Criticism* (Macmillan); Böll, *Im Tal der donnernden Hufe. Erzählungen 1953-1962* (KiWi); Böll, *Zum Tee bei Dr. Borsig* (dtv).

**22.203** Clyne, *Language and Society in the German-speaking Countries* (C.U.P. P/back); Chambers and Wilkie, *A Short History of the German Language* (Methuen).

## German III

**22.300** Hammer, *German Grammar and Usage* (Arnold); Terrell et. al., *Collins German-English/English-German Dictionary* (Collins).

**22.301** Grimm, *Kinder- und Hausmärchen* Vol. 1. (Reclam); Paul/Bonath (eds.), *Hartmann von Aue, Der arme Heinrich* 15th edn (Niemeyer); Goethe, *Faust. Der Tragödie erster Teil* (Reclam); Boyle, *Goethe: Faust: Part One* (C.U.P.).

**22.302** Hauptmann, *Bahnwärter Thiel* (Reclam); Hofmannsthal, *Das Märchen der 672. Nacht/Reitergeschichte/Das Erlebnis des Marschalls von Bassompierre* (Fischer Taschenbuch); Pinthus (ed.), *Menschheitsdämmerung* (Rowohlt Taschenbuch); Wedekind, *Frühlings Erwachen* (Goldmann); Fontane, *Irrungen, Wirrungen* (Ullstein); Kafka,

*Amerika* (Fischer Taschenbuch).

**22.303** Grass, *Kopfgeburt* (Sammlung Luchterhand); Wolf, *Störfall* (Sammlung Luchterhand); Frischmuth, *Bindungen* (dtv); Andersch, *Die Rote* (Diogenes Taschenbuch); Aichinger, *Die grössere Hoffnung* (Fischer Taschenbuch); Walser, *Ein fliehendes Pferd* (Suhrkamp Taschenbuch); F.D. Walter, *Wie wird Beton zu Gras* (rororo). Further texts will be supplied by the Department.

## MA and Honours

**22.400** Hammer, *German Grammar and Usage* (Arnold); Terrell et. al., *Collins German-English/English-German Dictionary* (Collins).

**22.401** Bartsch, de Boor and Wisniewski (ed.), *Das Nibelungenlied* 21st edn (Brockhaus); Paul/Bonath (ed.), *Hartmann von Aue, Der arme Heinrich* 15th edn (Niemeyer).

**22.402** Wolfram von Eschenbach, *Parzival*, Studienausgabe, (de Gruyter).

**22.405** Rilke, *Duineser Elegien* (Bibliothek Suhrkamp).

**22.408** Andersch, *Sansibar oder der letzte Grund* (Diogenes Taschenbuch); Andersch, *Der Vater eines Mörders* (Diogenes Taschenbuch); Walser, *Brandung* (Suhrkamp Taschenbuch); Handke, *Wunschloses Unglück* (Suhrkamp Taschenbuch); Wolf, *Kassandra* (Sammlung Luchterhand); Wolf, *Voraussetzungen einer Erzählung: Kassandra* (Sammlung Luchterhand); Grass, *Die Blechtrommel* (Sammlung Luchterhand); Kirsch/Morgner/Wolf, *Geschlechtertausch: drei Geschichten über die Umwandlung der Verhältnisse*, (Sammlung Luchterhand).

**22.410** *Der grosse Duden, Vol 4, Grammatik der deutschen gegenwartssprache* 4th edn (Duden).

**22.411** Grimm, *Kinder- und Hausmärchen* 3 Vols. (Reclam); Hetmann, *Traumgesicht und Zauberspur: Märchenforschung, Märchenkunde, Märchen-diskussion* (Fischer Taschenbuch); Bettelheim, *The Uses of Enchantment* (Penguin).

**22.413** Thomas Mann, *Buddenbrooks: Der Zauberberg: Die Erzählungen* (Fischer Taschenbuch).

**22.415** Braun, *Tendenzen in der deutschen Gegenwartssprache* (Kohlhammer [urbantb]); von Polenz, *Geschichte der deutschen Sprache* 9th edn (de Gruyter [Göschel]).

**22.421** Horvath, *Geschichten aus dem Wienerwald* (Suhrkamp Taschenbuch); Trota/Francia, *Das zweite Erwachen der Christa Klages* (Fischer Taschenbuch); Sanders-Brahms, *Deutschland, bleiche Mutter* (rororo); Kratz, *Lebenslinien* (Knaur Taschenbuch); Schlöndorff/Trota, *Die verlorene Ehre der Katharina Blum: Transcript von Andrea Park* (Narr); Böll, *Ansichten eines Clowns: Die verlorene Ehre der Katharina Blum* (dtv); Zwerenz, *Die Ehe der Maria Braun* (Goldmann); Heinrich Mann, *Professor Unrat* (rororo); Mann, *Der Untertan*, (dtv).

**GREEK****Greek I**

**10.100, 10.101** *Reading Greek and The Intellectual Revolution* (JACT Publications) available from the Department. Strongly recommended is: *Index to Cambridge Reading Greek Course*, (ed.), C.E. Gruzelier and R.H. Allison (Auckland University, Dept. of Classics).

**Greek II**

**10.200, 10.201, 10.202** Euripides, *Hippolytus*; Xenophon, *Symposium*, (ed.) S.R. Winans (B.C.P.); Plato, *Apology*, (ed.) Doherty (B.C.P.); A.E. Hillard and W.W. Goodwin, *Greek Grammar* (Macmillan).

**Greek III**

**10.300, 10.301, 10.302** (i) As for Greek II with the addition of:

Homer, *Odyssey* VI and VII (ed.) G.M. Edwards (Bristol Classical Press); Aristophanes, *Wasps* (ed.) Sommerstein (Aris & Phillips).

**Greek for MA and Honours**

Intending students should consult the Department.

**10.404** Any edition of *The Greek New Testament* (British and Foreign Bible Society).

**HISTORY**

The Department will issue leaflets entitled *Books Recommended for Student Purchase* relating to these papers and to others not listed below.

**History I**

**24.101** A. Nove, *An Economic History of the U.S.S.R.* (Penguin); L. Kochan, *Russia in Revolution* (Paladin, 1970); Sheila Fitzpatrick, *The Russian Revolution* (Oxford, 1982).

**24.103** F.L. Carsten, *The Rise of Fascism* (Batsford paperback); K.D. Bracher, *The German Dictatorship* (Pelican); D.M. Smith, *Mussolini* (Paladin).

**24.105** Frank Freidel & Alan Brinkley, *America in the Twentieth Century*; Barton Bernstein & Allen Matusow, *Twentieth Century America: Recent Interpretations* (2nd edn, HBJ).

**24.106** R. Tucker (ed.), *Marx-Engels Reader* (Norton, revised).

**24.107** Barbara Brookes, Charlotte Macdonald & Margaret Tennant, (eds.), *Women in History: Essays on European Women in New Zealand* (Allen & Unwin, 1986); Glenda Riley, *Inventing the American Woman: A Perspective on Women's History 1607-1877, Vol. 1* (Harlan Davidson, 1986).

**24.140** Either D. Maland, *Europe in the Sixteenth Century* (Macmillan) and D. Maland, *Europe in the Seventeenth Century* (Macmillan); or H.G. Koenigsberger & G.L. Mosse, *Europe in the Sixteenth Century* (Longman) and D.H. Pennington, *Seventeenth Century Europe* (Longman).

**History II**

**24.201** P.N. Sawyer, *From Roman Britain to Norman England* (Methuen paperback 1978); M. Clanchy, *England and its Rulers, 1066-1272* (Fontana, 1983).

**24.214** A.R. Myers, *Parliaments and Estates in Europe to 1789* (London, 1975).

**24.233** R. Ward, *The Australian Legend* (O.U.P. paperback).

**History III**

**24.309** H. Pelling, *A History of British Trade Unionism* (Pelican); E.J. Hobsbawm, *Labouring Men* (Weidenfeld Goldback).

**24.328** A.D. Gilbert, *The Making of Post-Christian Britain* (Longman paperback, 1980).

**MA and Honours**

**24.404** G.R. Elton, *The Tudor Constitution* (CUP, 1982); M.A.R. Graves, *The Tudor Parliaments* (Longman, 1985).

**HUMAN BIOLOGY****Part I**

**60.100, 60.101, 60.102** Ham & Cormack, *Histology*, 8th edn, (J.B. Lippincott & Co.); or Snell, *Clinical and Functional Histology for Medical Students* (Little Brown).

**60.103, 60.104, 60.105** Cameron & Skofronick, *Medical Physics*, 1st edn (Wiley); T.W. Gordon Solomons, *Organic Chemistry* 3rd edn (Wiley).

**60.108** *Psychology Today*, 5th or 6th edn (CRM books); R. Bolton, *People Skills*, 1979 (Prentice-Hall).

**Part II**

**60.205** Ham & Cormack, *Histology*, 8th edn 1979, (J.B. Lippincott & Co., hardback or softcover version) or Snell, *Clinical and Functional Histology for Medical Students*, 1st edn 1984 (Little Brown & Co.); Moore, *Before We Are Born* (W.B. Saunders); *Notes on Anatomy* (Department of Anatomy). Also one of the following texts, either Woodbourne, *Essentials of Human Anatomy*, 7th edn (Oxford University Press), or Grant's *Method of Anatomy*, 10th edn J.V. Basmajian, ed., (Williams & Wilkins); or Gardner, Gray and O'Rahilly, *Anatomy*, 4th edn (W.B. Saunders). An anatomical atlas such as Grant, *Atlas of Anatomy*, 10th edn (Williams & Wilkins) or Jamieson, *Illustrations in Anatomy: Section III Abdomen, Section IV Pelvis and Section V Thorax*, (E. & S. Livingstone) is desirable.

**60.207** A.C. Guyton, *Textbook of Medical Physiology*, 7th edn, 1986 (W.B. Saunders).

**60.208** R. Bolton, *People Skills* 1979 (Prentice-Hall); K.S. Berger, *The Developing Person Through The Life Span*, 1983 (Worth).

**Part III**

**60.301** Robbins Angell and Kumar, *Basic Pathology*, 3rd edn, 1981 (Saunders) or Robbins and Cotran, *Pathologic Basis of Disease*, 3rd edn, 1985 (Saunders) or Anderson, *Muir's Textbook of Pathology*, 12th edn, 1985 (Arnold); Joklik Willett and Amos, *Zinsser Microbiology*, 18th edn, 1984 (Appleton-Century Crofts); *Course Manual in Pathology* (Department of Pathology); *Course Manual in Immunobiology* (Department of Immunobiology).



**60.302, 60.303** Noback and Demarest, *The Human Nervous System, Basic Principles of Neurology*, 3rd edn, (McGraw-Hill); Carman, *Notes on the Anatomy of the Head and Neck*, 1984 (Department of Anatomy). Also one of the following texts: Woodbourne or Grant's *Method or Gardner*, Gray & O'Rahilly as listed for Part II.

**60.304** Ham & Cormack, *Histology*, 8th edn, 1979 (J.B. Lippincott & Co., Hardback or softcover version) or Snell, *Clinical and Functional Histology for Medical Students*, 1st edn 1984 (Little Brown & Co); Moore, *Before We Are Born* (W.B. Saunders); A.L.R. Findlay, *Reproduction and the Fetus*, 1984 (Arnold, London).

**60.305, 60.306** Ganong, *Review of Medical Physiology*, 12th edn, 1985 (Lange).

**60.307** Katzung, B.G. (ed.), *Basic and Clinical Pharmacology*, 3rd edn 1986 (Lange). Required reading will be placed on reserve at the Philson Library.

**60.308** Required reading will be placed on reserve at the Philson Library.

## INDONESIAN

### Indonesian I

**80.100 and 80.101** Johns, Y., *Bahasa Indonesia; Langkah Baru, A New Approach* Vol. I (A.N.U., 1981).

**80.104** Materials will be supplied by the Department.

### Indonesian II

**80.200** Wojowasito S. & Poerwadarminta W.J.S., *Kamus Indonesia Inggris*, (Penerbit Tiara, Jakarta). Materials will be supplied by the Department.

**80.201 and 80.202** Materials will be supplied by the Department.

### Indonesian III

**80.300, 80.301, 80.302, 80.305, 80.306** Materials will be supplied by the Department.

### Indonesian for MA and Honours

**80.400-409** Materials will be supplied by the Department.

## ITALIAN

### Italian I

**35.106, 35.107** *Dizionario italiano-inglese/inglese-italiano* (Garzanti) or *Concise Cambridge Italian Dictionary* (Penguin); J. Germano & C. Schmitt, *Italian Grammar* (McGraw-Hill).

**35.110** G. Deledda, *Cosima* (Italcia Press, 1987); S. Aleramo, *A Woman* (University of California Press, 1980); L. Pirandello, *Six Characters in Search of an Author* (Eyre Methuen, 1979); A. Moravia, *Erotic Tales* (Futura, 1987); D. Maraini, *Woman at War* (Lighthouse Books, 1984); O. Fallaci, *Letter to a Child Never Born* (Hamlyn, 1982); D. Fo and F. Rame, *Female Parts: One Woman Plays* (Methuen, 1981).

### Italian II

**35.200** J. Germano & C. Schmitt, *Italian Grammar* (McGraw-Hill); *Dizionario italiano-inglese/inglese-italiano* (Garzanti).

**35.204** L. Sciascia, *Il giorno della civetta* (Einaudi); I. Calvino, *Fiabe Italiane* (Selections) (M.U.P.).

**25.209** Machiavelli, *Il Principe* (Manchester); Castiglione, *Il Libro del cortegiano* (Mursia).

**35.210** Machiavelli, *The Prince* (Penguin Classics); Castiglione, *The Courtier* (Anchor).

**35.230** Departmental material.

### Italian III

**35.300** K. Katerinov, *La lingua italiana per stranieri Corso Superiore* (Ed. Guerra).

**35.302** Dante, *Inferno* (La Nuova Italia).

**35.321** Departmental material.

**35.322** Departmental material.

**35.331** Departmental material.

## JAPANESE

### Japanese I

**81.100 and 81.101** Akima, T., Henshall, K., and Takagaki, T. *An Intensive Approach to Japanese* (Auckland University).

**81.102** Seidensticker, E.G. (tr.), *The Gossamer Years* (Tuttle); Miner, E., *Introduction to Japanese Court Poetry* (Stanford).

**81.103** de Bary, T.W. (ed.), *Sources of Japanese Tradition*, (Columbia University).

### Japanese II

**81.200 and 81.201** Ogawa, K., *New Intensive Japanese*, (Hokuseido); McClaim, Y., *Handbook of Modern Japanese Grammar* (Hokuseido).

### Japanese III

**81.300 and 81.303** Materials will be provided during lectures.

**81.301** Ogawa, K., *New Intensive Japanese* (Hokuseido, Tokyo).

**81.302** Selections from classical Japanese literature (to be prescribed during lectures). Keene, D. (ed.), *Anthology of Japanese Literature* (Penguin Classics).

### Japanese for MA and Honours

**81.401** Webb, H., *Research in Japanese Sources: A Guide* (Columbia Univ. Press); *Nihon no Sanko Toshō* (Nihon Toshokan Kyokai), *Nihon Bungaku Kenkyū Hikkei* (ed.) by Nihon Bungaku Kyokai (Iwanami Shoten).

**81.402** Selections from the works of modern authors such as Natsume Soseki, Koda Rohan, Akutagawa Ryunosuke, Nagai Kafu, Kawabata Yasunari, Mishima Yukio and others. Specific texts will be prescribed during lectures.

**81.403** Selections from Heian monogatari, Gunki monogatari, Zuihitsu, Nikkimono, Setsuwa and others. Specific texts will be prescribed during lectures.

**81.404** Selections from Japanese poetry, including theory. (To be prescribed during lectures).

- 81.405** Selections from Japanese drama, including theory. (To be prescribed during lectures).  
**81.407** Photostat and cyclostyled texts will be provided by the Department when necessary.  
**81.408** Photostat and cyclostyled texts will be provided by the Department when necessary.  
**81.409** Photostat and cyclostyled texts will be provided by the Department when necessary.

## LATIN

### Latin I

**09.100** Ovid, *Metamorphoses III*, (ed.) A.A.R. Henderson (Bristol Classical Press, p/back); Chambers-Murray, *Latin-English Dictionary* (W.K. Chambers, Edinburgh).

**09.101** Composition: texts will be issued by the Department. Chambers-Murray, *Latin-English Dictionary* (W.K. Chambers, Edinburgh), or C. Lewis and C.T. Short, *Latin Dictionary* (Oxford); Kennedy's *Latin Primer* (Longmans).

**09.102** W.F. Richardson, *An Introductory Course in Latin* (Classics Department University of Auckland). Students are advised to purchase a copy of Chambers-Murray *Latin-English Dictionary* (W. K. Chambers, Edinburgh), which they will be permitted to take into the examination as a 'restricted book'.

**09.103** Texts will be supplied by the Department.

### Latin II

**09.200/09.201/09.202** Juvenal, *Satires I, III, X*, ed. N. Rudd & E. Courtney (B.C.P. p/back); Tacitus, *Dialogus de Oratoribus*, ed. C.E. Bennett (Caratzas, New York, p/back). Other texts will be supplied by the Department.

### Latin III

**09.300/09.301/09.302** As for 09.200, 09.201, 09.202. Materials for the Language course will be issued by the Department. Students planning to advance to M.A. should consider the purchase of the *Oxford Latin Dictionary*.

### Latin for MA and Honours

Intending students should consult the Department.

## LAW

### Second Law Examination

- 25.205** Taggart (ed.), *Judicial Review of Administrative Action in the 1980's; Problems and Prospects* (Oxford University Press).  
**25.208** Webb and Webb, *Principles of the Law of Partnership*, 4th edn, 1987 (Butterworths).  
**25.215** Webb and Webb, *Principles of the Law of Partnership*, 4th edn, 1987 (Butterworths).  
**25.216** *Butterworths Family Law Guide* (Butterworths); Webb & Adams, *Family Law 1987 Style* (Legal Research Foundation); His Honour Judge Inglis, Q.C., *Practice and Procedure in the Family Court* (Legal Research Foundation, 1984).

### Third Law Examination

**25.319** Palmer, *Planning and Development Law in New Zealand*, 1984 (Law Book Co.).

## LINGUISTICS

### Linguistics I

**83.102** V. Fromkin, and R. Rodman, *An Introduction to Language* (Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1978); Freeborn, D., *Varieties of English: an introduction to Language Studies*, (Macmillan paperback).

### Linguistics II

**83.202** Labov, W., *Sociolinguistic Patterns* (Univ. of Pennsylvania, 1972).

**83.203** Hawkins, P., *Introducing Phonology* (Hutchinson, 1984).

### Linguistics III

**83.303** Clark, R., *Aspects of Proto-Polynesian Syntax* (Linguistic Society of N.Z., 1976).

## MANAGEMENT SCIENCE AND INFORMATION SYSTEMS

**74.200** Norman Gaither, *Production and Operations Management*, 2nd edn (Dryden Press, Holt Saunders Ltd, 1984).

**74.221** Grauer, R.T. *Structured Cobol Planning*, 1st edn (Prentice-Hall).

**74.300** R.G. Schroeder, *Operations Management Decision making in the Operations Functions*, 2nd edn (McGraw-Hill, 1985).

## MANAGEMENT STUDIES AND LABOUR RELATIONS

**72.203** J.A.F. Stoner, *Management in Australia*, 1st edn (Prentice-Hall, 1985).

**72.307** Boxall, P. et al., *Personnel Practice-Managing Human Resources*, new edn (Longman Paul, 1986).

**72.311** Calvin Kent, *The Environment for Entrepreneurship*, (Lexington Books 1984), and Stevenson, Roberts and Grousbeck, *New Business Ventures and the Entrepreneur*, 2nd edn (Richard R. Irwin Pub., 1985).

**72.314** R.C. Huseman, M.Galvin, D. Prescott, J. Lahiff, J. Penrose & J. Hatfield, *Business Communication: Strategies and Skills*, 2nd Australian edn (Sydney, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1986).

## MAORI STUDIES

### Maori Studies I

**04.100** Biggs, Bruce, *Let's Learn Maori* (Reed, 1974); Ryan, P.M., *The Revised Dictionary of Modern Maori*, (Heinemann, 1983).

**04.104** Biggs, Bruce, *Let's Learn Maori* (Reed, 1974); Biggs, Bruce, *English-Maori Dictionary* (Reed, 1979).

### Maori Studies II

**04.203** Davidson, J., *Prehistory of New Zealand* (Longman Paul 1984); Anderson, A., *When all the Moa Ovens Grew Cold* (Otago Heritage Books 1982); Leach, B. F., *The Prehistory of the Southern Wairarapa* (Reprint, Otago University, 1981).

**04.204** Biggs, Bruce, *Let's Learn Maori* (Reed, 1974); Biggs, Bruce, *Complete English-Maori Dictionary* (Auckland University Press, 1980); Biggs, Bruce, S., M. Mead, P. W. Hohepa, *Selected Readings in Maori* (copies available from the Anthropology Department); Biggs, B., C. Lane, H. Cullen, *Readings from Maori Literature* (copies available from the Anthropology Department); Williams, H. W., *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975).

**04.205** Waititi, Hoani, *Te Rangatahi II* (copies available from the Anthropology Department); Williams, H. W., *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); Biggs, Bruce, *Complete English-Maori Dictionary* (Auckland University Press, 1980).

### Maori Studies III

**04.303** Mahuta, R. te K., *Whaikorero* (available from Anthropology Department); Salmond, Anne, *Hui* (Reed, 1975); King, Michael, *Te Puea* (Hodder & Stoughton, 1977); King, Michael, *Te Ao Hurihuri* (Hicks, Smith & Sons, 1975); King, Michael (ed.) *Tihe Mauri Ora* (Methuen, 1978).

**04.305** Clark, R., *Aspects of Proto-Polynesian Syntax* (Linguistic Society of N.Z., 1976).

**04.306** Biggs, Bruce, *Let's Learn Maori* (Reed, 1974); Grey, Sir George, *Nga Mahi a nga Tupuna* (Reed, 1971); Williams, H.W., *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); Biggs, Bruce, P.W. Hohepa, S.M. Mead, *Selected Readings in Maori* (copies available from Department).

**04.307** Williams, H.W. *A Dictionary of the Maori Language* (Government Printer, 1975); Grey, Sir George, *Nga Mahi a nga Tupuna* (Reed, 1971); *Te Paipera Tapu*; Biggs, Bruce, *Complete English-Maori Dictionary* (Auckland University Press, 1980).

## MARKETING AND INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS

**71.200** E.J. McCarthy and W.D. Perreault, *Basic Marketing*, 9th edn (Irwin 1987).

**71.201** J.D. Daniels and L.H. Radebaugh *International Business: Environments and Operations*, 4th edn (Addison-Wesley, 1986).

**71.300** H. Assael, *Marketing Management Strategy and Action*, (Kent, 1985); G.S. Day, *Strategic Market Planning*, (West, 1984).

**71.301** J.F. Engel, R.D. Blackwell & P.W. Miniard, *Consumer Behaviour*, 5th edn (Dryden Press).

**71.302** D.S. Tull & D.I. Hawkins, *Marketing Research: Measurement and Method*, 3rd edn (Macmillan, 1984).

## MATHEMATICS

### Maths I

**26.101** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department at enrolment.

**26.120, 26.121** Printed material relevant to these

courses may be purchased from the Department at enrolment.

**26.122** Mizrahi, A., Sullivan, M., *Finite Mathematics with Applications* (Wiley International Edition, 3rd or 4th edn).

**26.140** Edwards & Penney, *Calculus and Analytical Geometry* (Prentice-Hall Inc.), 2nd edn.

**26.141, 26.142** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department at enrolment.

**26.175** Spiegel, M.R., *Theoretical Mechanics* (Schaum outline - McGraw-Hill & Co.)

**26.180** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department at enrolment. Calculators: see footnote. Statistical tables are required. Either Eton Four-Figure Mathematical and Statistical Tables or Tables in the optional text; Strait, P.T., *A first course in Probability & Statistics with Applications* (Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, 1983).

**26.181** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department at enrolment. Calculators: see note.

### Maths II

**26.220** Bradley, G.L., *A Primer of Linear Algebra* (Prentice-Hall Inc.)

**26.221** Bradley, G.L., *A Primer of Linear Algebra* (Prentice-Hall Inc.)

**26.240** Grossman, Stanley, I., *Calculus*, 2nd or 3rd edn (Academic Press - International Edition).

**26.241** Apostol, T.M., *Calculus*, vol. 1., 2nd edn (John Wiley & Sons, Inc. - student edn).

**26.260** Powers, David L., *Elementary Differential Equations with boundary value problems* (Prindle, Weber & Schmidt).

**26.280** a reading list will be provided.

**26.281** A reading list for this course will be available from the course Study Guide.

### Maths III

**26.321** Fraleigh, John B., *A first course in Abstract Algebra*, 3rd edn (Addison-Wesley).

**26.325** Grimaldi, R.P. *Discrete and Combinatorial Mathematics* (Addison-Wesley, 1985).

**26.330** Binmore, K.G., *Mathematical Analysis*, 2nd edn (Cambridge University Press 1982 - paperback).

**26.331** Printed material relevant to this course may be purchased from the Department.

**26.340** Apostol, T.M., *Calculus Vol. II*, (John Wiley & Sons, Inc. - student edn).

**26.345** Paliouras, J.L.D., *Complex Variables for Scientists and Engineers* (Collier Macmillan 1975 Student Edition).

**26.376** Carlson, C.A., & Jeffrey, A., *Waves* 2nd edn. (Longman).

**26.391** Ravindran, Phillips and Solberg, *Operations Research: Principles and Practice*, 2nd edn (Wiley).

**26.395** Ravindran, Phillips and Solberg, *Operations Research: Principles and Practice*, 2nd edn (Wiley).

**Note:** Students taking course 26.180, 26.181 and 26.280 are required to

have a battery powered calculator which has at least the following facilities: (i) Square roots, (ii) at least one memory, (iii) exponential and logarithmic functions statistical functions including mean and standard deviations.

## MEDICINE

Reading lists for MBChB are published in *The Handbook of the Faculty of Medicine & Human Biology*.

## MUSIC FOR BA AND BMUS

### Music I

**28.101** Trubitt, A. & Hines, R., *Ear Training and Sight Singing* (Schirmer).

**28.103** Grout, D.J., *A History of Western Music* (3rd edn, Norton); Palisca, C. (ed.), *Norton Anthology of Western Music* (2 vols., Norton, 1980).

**28.104** Griffiths, P., *A Concise History of Modern Music* (Thames & Hudson); Copland, A., *What to Listen for in Music* (Mentor); Belz, C., *The Story of Rock* (O.U.P.).

**28.105** Karolyi, O., *Introducing Music* (Penguin).

**28.113** Backus, *The Acoustical Foundations of Music* (Murray, London).

### Music II

**28.201** Palisca, C. (ed.), *Norton Anthology of Western Music* (2 vols, Norton).

**28.202** Riemenschneider, *371 Harmonised Chorales* (Chappell/Schirmer); Bach, J.S., 2, 3 part *Inventions* (Miniature score).

**28.204** Texts: Grout, D.J., *A History of Western Music* (3rd edn, Norton); Brown, H.M., *Music in the Renaissance* (Prentice-Hall, 1976); Strunk, O., *Source Readings in Music History: The Renaissance* (Norton paperback, 1963); Blume, F., *Renaissance and Baroque Music* (Norton paperback).

Scores: Davison & Apel, *Historical Anthology of Music*, Vol 1 (Harvard U.P.)\*; Josquin de Prez, *Missa Ave Maris Stella* (ed. Drake) (obtainable from Dept).

**28.208** Texts: Grout, D.J., *A History of Western Music* (3rd edn, Norton); Salzman, E., *Twentieth Century Music: An Introduction* (2nd edn, Prentice-Hall).

Scores: Bartok, *String Quartet No. 6*\*; Schoenberg; *Pierrot Lunaire*\*.

**28.210** Smith-Brindle, R., *Serial Composition* (C.U.P.).

**28.215** Adler, S., *Workbook for the Study of Orchestration* (Norton, 1982).

**28.216** Keane, D., *Tape Music Composition* (O.U.P.).

**28.218** McElheran, B., *Conducting Technique* (O.U.P.).

### Music III

**28.301** As for 28.201.

**28.304** As for 28.204.

**28.308** As for 28.208.

**28.310** As for 28.210.

### Music for Masters & Honours

**22.415** Blatter, *Orchestration/Instrumentation*

(Longmans) or Adler, S., *The Study of Orchestration* (Norton).

\*Some Department copies available.

## OPTOMETRY BOptom Optometry II

**44.200** Longhurst, R.S., *Geometrical and Physical Optics* (Longmans).

**44.201** Fincham, W.H.A. and Freeman, M.H., *Optics* 9th edn (Butterworth, 1980).

**44.203** Last, R.J., *Wolff's Anatomy of the Eye and Orbit* (Lewis).

**44.205** Davson, H., *Physiology of the Eye*, 4th edn (Churchill Livingstone, 1980).

**44.210** Moses, R.A., *Adler's Physiology of the Eye* 8th edn (Mosby 1986); Davson, H., *Physiology of the Eye* 4th edn (Churchill Livingstone, 1980).

### Optometry III

**44.305** Vale, J. & Cox, B., *Drugs and the Eye* 2nd edn (Butterworths).

**44.306** Bennett, A.G. & Rabbetts, R.B., *Clinical Visual Optics* (Butterworths, 1984).

**44.310** Davson, H., *Physiology of the Eye* 4th edn (Churchill Livingstone, 1980); Moses, R.A., *Adler's Physiology of the Eye* 8th edn (Mosby 1986).

**44.312** Stone, J. and Phillips, A.J., *Contact Lenses: Textbook for Practitioner and Student*, Combined 2nd edn (Butterworth, 1984) or Mandell, R.B., *Contact Lens Practice* 3rd edn (Thomas).

**44.313** Stevens, *Building Physics: Lighting* (Pergamon, 1976).

**44.314** Robbins and Angell, *Basic Pathology* 3rd edn (Saunders).

**44.315** Newell, F., *Ophthalmology, Principles and Concepts* 6th edn (Mosby 1978).

**44.316** Jalie, M., *The Principles of Ophthalmic Lenses* (Association of Dispensing Opticians, UK); Standards Association of New Zealand NZS1563:1963 *Spectacle Lenses*.

**44.330** Grosvenor, T.P., *Primary Care Optometry*, (Professional Press); Griffin, J.R., *Binocular Anomalies; Procedures for Therapy* 2nd edn (Professional Press); Bennett, A.G. & Rabbetts, R.B., *Clinical Visual Optics* (Butterworths, 1984).

### Optometry IV

**44.415** Davis P., *Health and Health Care in New Zealand* 1st edn (Longman Paul, 1981).

**44.430** Egan, G., *The Skilled Helper* 2nd edn (Brooks-Cole).

**44.431** Stone, J. and Phillips, A.J., *Contact Lenses: Textbook for Practitioner and Student*, Combined 2nd edn (Butterworth, 1984) or Mandell, R.B., *Contact Lens Practice*, 3rd edn (Thomas).

**44.432** Mehr, E. and Freid, A., *Low Vision* (Professional Press).

**44.433** Griffin, J.R., *Binocular Anomalies; Procedures for Therapy* 2nd edn (Professional Press).

**PHARMACOLOGY**

**96.301** Katzung, B.G. (ed.), *Basic and Clinical Pharmacology*, 3rd edn (Lange) 1986.

**PHILOSOPHY****Philosophy I**

**29.100** Plato, *The Last Days of Socrates* (Penguin); Plato, *The Symposium* (Penguin); Plato, *Protagoras and Meno* (Penguin); R. Descartes, *Discourse on Method and the Meditations* (Penguin); B. Davies, *An Introduction to the Philosophy of Religion* (O.U.P. Opus).

**29.102** V. Grassian, *Moral Reasoning* (Prentice-Hall paperback); J.S. Mill, *Utilitarianism, On Liberty and Considerations on Representative Government* (Dent-Everyman).

**29.103** J.S. Mill, *Utilitarianism, On Liberty and Considerations on Representative Government* (Dent-Everyman).

**Philosophy II**

**29.203** C.G. Hempel, *Philosophy of Natural Science* (Prentice-Hall); A. Chalmers, *What is this thing called Science?* (Queensland U.P.); T.S. Kuhn, *The Copernican Revolution* (Harvard U.P.); D. Miller, (ed.), *The Pocket Popper* (Fontana).

**29.204** Plato, *Gorgias Phaedrus*, (Library of Liberal Arts); P. Wheelwright, (ed.) *The Presocratics* (Odyssey Press).

**29.207** D. Stewart, *Exploring the Philosophy of Religion* (Prentice-Hall paperback).

**29.208** Berkeley et al., *The Empiricists* (Doubleday paperback).

**29.211** M. Warnock, *Existentialism* (O.U.P. paperback).

**29.212** J. Margolis, (ed.) *Philosophy Looks at the Arts* (Temple University Press).

**Philosophy III**

**29.301** P. Churchland, *Matter and Consciousness*, 1984 (M.I.T. Press).

**29.303** A. Schopenhauer, *The World as Will and Representation*, Vol I, tr. E. Payne, (Dover).

**29.306** A.C. Grayling, *An Introduction to Philosophical Logic*, 1982 (Harvester Paperback).

**29.307** F. Nietzsche, *The Will to Power*, tr. W. Kaufman and R. Holingdale, (Vintage/Random); F. Nietzsche, *The Gay Science*, tr. W. Kaufman, (Random); E. Husserl, *Cartesian Meditations* (M. Nijhoff).

**PHYSICS****Physics I**

**31.100** Serway and Faughn, *College Physics*, (Holt-Saunders International, 1985).

**31.101** Serway and Faughn, *College Physics*, (Holt-Saunders International, 1985); *Laboratory Manual of First Year Practical Physics*, published by and available from the Department of Physics.

**31.102** as for 31.101.

**31.140** Tipler, *Physics*, 2nd edn (Worth, 1982); *Laboratory Manual of First Year Practical Physics*, published by and available from the Department of Physics.

**31.141** Wolfson and Pasachoff, *Physics*, 1st edn (Oxford University Press, 1987); *Laboratory Manual of First Year Practical Physics*, published by and available from the Department of Physics.

**31.150** as for 31.140.

**31.151** as for 31.141.

**Physics II, III, MSc and Honours**

Lists of prescribed texts are available from Department Office by 1 December of the year prior to enrolment.

**PHYSIOLOGY****Physiology (Science) II**

**67.201** For students intending to proceed to Stage III Physiology, Selkurt, *Physiology*, 5th edn, (Little Brown), 1984.

For students not intending to proceed in Physiology, Guyton, *Physiology of the Human Body*, 6th edn (Saunders).

**Physiology (Science) III**

**67.301, 67.302, 67.303** Either Selkurt, *Physiology*, 5th edn (Little Brown) or Schmidt & Thews, *Human Physiology* (English Translation), 1st edn (Springer Verlag) supplemented by directed reading.

**PLANNING**

**36.251, 36.351, 36.451**, Faludi, A. (ed.) *A Reader in Planning Theory* (Pergamon); Riddell, R.B., *Regional Development Policy* (Gower, 1985); Riddell, R.B., *Ecodevelopment* (Gower, 1981); DSIR *Land Alone Endures* (DSIR).

**36.252, 36.352, 36.452** Williams, B., *District Planning in N.Z.* (NZPI); Sheppard and McVeagh, *Town Planning* (Brooker).

**36.353, 36.456** Chapin, F.S., and Kaiser, E.J., *Urban Land Use Planning* (University of Illinois); Lynch, K., *A Theory of Good City Form* (MIT Press); McHarg, I., *Design With Nature* (Doubleday).

**POLITICAL STUDIES****Political Studies I**

**30.100** W.D. Burnham, *Democracy in the Making*, (Prentice-Hall, 2nd edn, 1986); B. Stinebrickner (ed.), *American Government 87/88*, (Dushkin Pub. Gp., 1987, ppr.).

**30.101** V. Medish, *The Soviet Union*, (Prentice-Hall, 2nd edn, ppr., 1984).

**30.102** Some of: John Locke, *Two Treatises* (Mentor or any full edn); J.J. Rousseau, *Social Contract and Discourses* (Everyman, ppr.); R.C. Tucker, *The Marx-Engels Reader* (Norton); S. Lukes, *Individualism* (Blackwell); Thomas Paine, *The Rights of Man*, (Penguin); I. Hampsher-Monk, *The Political*

*Philosophy of Edmund Burke*, (Longman 1987); A. Reeve, *Property* (Macmillan 1986, ppr.).

**30.106** D.J. Murray & P.R. Viotti, (eds), *The Defence Policies of Nations: A Comparative Study*, (The Johns Hopkins University Press, ppr., 1982).

**30.107** H. Gold (ed.), *New Zealand Politics in Perspective* (Longman Paul, ppr. 1985); Palmer, *Unbridled Power*, 2nd edn, (Oxford, 1987); Boston and Holland, *The Fourth Labour Government* (Oxford 1987).

### Political Studies II

**30.201** D. Coates, *The Context of British Politics* (Hutchinson, ppr. 1984); N. Deakin, *The Politics of Welfare* (Methuen, ppr. 1987).

**30.204** Henderson, Jackson & Kennaway (eds), *Beyond New Zealand: The Foreign Policy of a Small State* (Methuen, ppr., 1980); D. Ball, (ed.), *The Anzac Connection* (Allen and Unwin, ppr. 1985).

**30.209** R.N. Berki, *Socialism* (J.M. Dent, 1975); D. McLelland, *The Thought of Karl Marx* (Macmillan, ppr., 2nd edn, 1980).

**30.210** R.A. Scalapino & J. Wanandi (eds.), *Economic, Political and Security Issues in Southeast Asia* (Calif. U.P., 1980).

**30.211** J. Greenwood & D. Wilson, *Public Administration in Britain* (Allen & Unwin, ppr. 1984) or J. O. Derbyshire, *An Introduction to Public Administration* (McGraw-Hill, ppr. 1984); G.W.A. Bush, *Local Government & Politics in New Zealand* (Allen & Unwin, ppr. 1980).

**30.212** Woodward et. al. (eds.), *Government, Politics and Power in Australia*, 3rd edn (Longman Cheshire, 1985).

### Political Studies III

**30.301** T.L. Brewer, *American Foreign Policy* (Prentice-Hall, new edn 1985).

**30.302** T. Lodge, *Black Politics in South Africa Since 1945* (Longman, ppr., 1983); D. Martin & P. Johnson, *Destructive Engagement*, (Zimbabwe Publishing House, 1986).

**30.303** Denis J. Palumbo, *Statistics in Political and Behavioural Science* (Revised edn, Columbia U.P., 1977).

**30.304** Harrop & Miller, *Elections and Voters: A Comparative Introduction*, (Macmillan, 1987).

**30.305** Some of: W.E. Connolly, *The Terms of Political Discourse* (Martin Robertson, ppr., 1983); N.P. Barry, *An Introduction to Modern Political Theory* (Macmillan, 1981).

**30.307** Either A. Daltrop, *Politics and the European Community*, (Longman ppr., 1982) or J. Lodge, *Institutions and Policies of the European Community*, (Frances Pinter, ppr., 1983).

**30.309** R. Trigg, *Understanding Social Science* (Blackwell, ppr., 1985); T. Skocpol, *States and Social Revolutions*, (Cambridge University Press, 1979).

**30.311** Castles, *The Working Class and Welfare*

(Allen and Unwin, 1985); or Offe, *Disorganised Capitalism* (Polity, 1985); or Evans, Rueschemeyer, and Skocpol *Bringing the State Back In* (Cambridge, 1985); or Therborn, *Why are Some Peoples more Unemployed than Others* (Verso, 1986); or R. Rose, *Understanding Big Government* (Sage, 1984).

### Political Studies for MA and Honours

**30.403** J. Curran, *Power Without Responsibility* (2nd edn, Methuen, ppr. 1985); G. Murdock, *The Political Economy of Mass Communication* (Polity Press, ppr., 1987).

**30.404** James Jupp, *Party Politics, Australia 1966-1981*, (Allen & Unwin, ppr., 1982); Graham Maddox, *Australian Democracy in Theory and Practice* (Longman-Cheshire, ppr., 1985).

**30.407** Thomas Hobbes, *Leviathan*, (Penguin); D.D. Raphael, *Hobbes*, (Allen & Unwin, 1977); A. Sharp, *Political Ideas of the English Civil Wars*, (Longman, 1983).

**30.408** H. Newcomb, (ed.) *Television: The Critical View*, 3rd edn, (Oxford University Press, 1982); K. Windschuttle, *The Media* (Penguin, 1984).

**30.411** S. White, J. Gardner, G. Schopflin, *Communist Political Systems: An Introduction* (Macmillan, ppr., 1982).

**30.412** L.J. Barker & T.W. Barker (eds.), *Civil Liberties and the Constitution: Cases and Commentaries* (5th edn, Prentice-Hall, 1986).

**30.413** J. Roberts, *Politicians, Public Servants & Public Enterprise* (1987); M. Clark (ed.) *Purpose, Performance & Profit* (NZ Inst Pub Admin, 1986).

**30.415** Pierson, *Marxist Theory and Democratic Politics* (Polity, 1986); or Wright, *Socialisms* (Oxford, 1986); or Wright, *British Socialism* (Longmans, 1983); or Roemer, *Analytical Marxism* (Cambridge, 1986).

**30.500** G.W.A. Bush, *Local Government & Politics in New Zealand* (Allen & Unwin, ppr. 1980).

### PROPERTY ADMINISTRATION

**37.100, 37.200** R.L. Jefferies, *Urban Valuation in New Zealand*, Vol 1, (N.Z. Institute of Valuers, Wellington, 1978).

Reading lists will be published in the Department prior to the commencement of lectures.

### PSYCHOLOGY

#### Psychology I (for Arts and Science)

**32.108** Carlson, N.R., *Psychology: The Science of Behavior*, 2nd edn (Allyn & Bacon, Inc., 1987); Leveille, M., Carlson, E. & Carlson, M., *Study Guide for Psychology: The Science of Behavior*, 2nd edn (Allyn & Bacon, Inc., 1987).

**32.109** Carlson, N.R., *Psychology: The Science of Behavior*, 2nd edn (Allyn & Bacon, Inc., 1987); Leveille, M., Carlson, E. & Carlson, M., *Study Guide for Psychology: The Science of Behavior*, 2nd edn (Allyn & Bacon, Inc., 1987); *Psychology I Laboratory Manual* (available from the University Bookshop).

**Psychology II (for Arts and Science)**

**32.210** Beale, I., Davison M., Alsop B. and Elliffe D., *Reinforcement and Stimulus Control* (Psychology Department U.A.) available at enrolment.

**32.220** Coren, S., Porac, C. and Ward, L.M., *Sensation and Perception*, 2nd edn (Academic Press, 1984); Irwin, R.J., *Laboratory Work in Sensory Psychology* (available from the University Bookshop); Martin, D.W., *Doing Psychology Experiments*, 2nd edn (Brooks/Cole, 1985).

**32.230** Refer to Psychology Department Handbook.

**32.240** Refer to Psychology Department Handbook.

**Psychology III (for Arts and Science)**

**32.301** Anastasi, A., *Psychological Testing*, 5th edn (Macmillan, 1982).

**32.303** Best, J.B., *Cognitive Psychology*, (West Publishing Co).

**32.304** Monte, C.F., *Beneath the Mask*, 3rd edn (Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1987); Millon, T. (ed.), *Theories of Personality and Psychopathology*, 3rd edn (Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1983).

**32.306** Howell, D.C., *Statistical Methods for Psychology*, 2nd edn. (Duxbury/PWS).

**32.307** Moore, B.C.J., *Introduction to the Psychology of Hearing*, 2nd edn. (Academic Press, 1982).

**Psychology for MA, MSc and Honours**

**32.403** Kazdin, A., *Single Case Research Design*, (OUP, 1982).

**32.408** Luria, A.R., *The Working Brain*, (Harmondsworth, Penguin, 1973); Lezak, M.D., *Neuropsychological Assessment*, 2nd edn. (OUP, 1982).

**32.419** Howell, D.C., *Statistical Methods for Psychology*, 2nd edn. (Duxbury/PWS).

**32.421** Clarke, C.J. and Jackson, J.A., *Hypnosis and Behavior Therapy*, (Springer, 1983); Corsini, R.J. (ed.), *Current Psychotherapies*, 3rd edn. (Peacock, 1984); Johnstone, K., *Impro*, (Methuen, 1979); Ernst, S. and Goodison, L., *In Our Own Hands*, (The Women's Press, 1981).

**RUSSIAN**

Only prescribed books for Russian I, II and III and certain MA papers are indicated below. A handbook, reading lists and additional teaching materials are available from the Department.

**Russian I**

**43.100** — **101** V. Kostomarov (ed.), B. Baker (adapt.), *Russkii iazyk dlia vsekh*, 3 vols. (Russkii iazyk); B.A. Lapidus, S.V. Shevtsova, *The Learner's Russian-English Dictionary for Foreign Students* (Russkii iazyk); H. Weiser, S. Folomkina, *The Learner's English-Russian Dictionary for English-Speaking Students* (Russkii iazyk).

**43.112** N.V. Riasanovsky, *A History of Russia* (Oxford, any edition).

**Russian II**

**43.210** P.A. Davis, D.V. Oprendeck, *Making Progress*

*in Russian* (Xerox Publishers); *Practical Course of Functional Russian Grammar*, 3 vols., with 25 records (Russkii iazyk).

**43.211** Ch. E. Gribble, *Russian Root List* (Slavica); G.L. Browning, *Workbook to Russian Root List* (Slavica); D. Obolensky (ed.), *The Heritage of Russian Verse* (Indiana).

**43.212** N.M. Karamzin, *Bednaia Liza* (Prideaux); A.S. Pushkin, *Povesti Belkina* (Blackwell or Bradda); N.V. Gogol', *Shinel'* (Bradda); I.S. Turgnev, *Zhivye moshchi* (available from Department); A.P. Chekhov, *Dama s sobachkoi* (Bradda) D.S. Mirsky, *A History of Russian Literature from its Beginnings to 1900* (Vintage).

**Russian III**

**43.310** C. Townsend, *Continuing with Russian* (Slavica).

**43.311** A reading list will be available from Department Office by December 1 of the year prior to enrolment; material available from Department.

**43.313** D. Obolensky (ed.), *The Heritage of Russian Verse* (Indiana), with additional poetry texts by Blok, Pasternak, Esenin, Akhmatova and Akhmadulina available from the Department; I. Babel', *Konarmia* (Prideaux), with prose texts by Bunin, Zoshchenko and Shukshin available from the Department.

**Russian for MA and Honours**

**43.410** A.D. Nakhimovsky and R.L. Leed, *Advanced Russian* (Slavica).

**43.411** as for 43.311.

**43.412** Material available from Department.

**43.419** Material available from Department.

**SCANDINAVIAN STUDIES****Scandinavian Studies I**

**46.100** U. Göransson-Lindholm, *Nybörjarsvenska-Textbok* (Kursverksamheten).

**46.101** Turner and Nordquist, *The Other European Community*, (Weidenfeld & Nicholson); Odelbert (et. al.), *Viking Ways* (Swedish Institute); Ibsen, *Hedda Gabler and Other Plays* (Penguin); Strindberg, *Three Plays*, (Penguin); Bergman, *Wild Strawberries*, (Lorrimer, P/back); Bergman, *Fanny & Alexander*, (Pantheon Books, P/back).

**Scandinavian Studies II**

**46.200** Beite et al, *Basic Swedish Grammar* (Almqvist & Wiksell); Nyborg, *Svenska som mål Bok I* (Folkuniversitetet); *Modern svensk-engelsk ordbok* (Prisma); *Modern engelsk-svensk ordbok* (Prisma).

**46.203** Claesson, *Vem älskar Yngve Frej?*, (Bonnierpocket); Jersild, *Barnens ö*, (Bonnierpocket); Sjöwall-Wahlöö, *Den vedervärdige mannen från Säffle*, (Nordstedts).

**46.204** Gustafsson (ed.), *Svensk dikt — Från troll-former till Lars Norén*, (Wahlström & Widstrand).

**Scandinavian Studies III**

**46.300** Beite et. al., *Basic Swedish Grammar* (Almqvist & Wiksell); Lindholm, *Svensk grammatik*;

Bruzaeus et. al., *Mera svenska Textbok* (Kursverksamheten); *Modern svensk-engelsk ordbok* (Prisma); *Modern engelsk-svensk ordbok* (Prisma).

**46.303** Claesson, *Vem älskar Yngve Frej?*, (Bonnierpocket); Jersild, *Barnens ö*, (Bonnierpocket); Sjöwall-Wahlöö, *Den vedervärdige mannen från Säffle*, (Nordstedts); Tunström, *Juloratoriet*, (Bonnierpocket).

**46.304** Gustafsson (ed.), *Svensk dikt — Från trollformler till Lars Norén*, (Wahlström & Widstrands); Tidestrom (ed.), *Lyrik från vår egen tid*, (Liber).

## SOCIOLOGY

### Sociology I

**82.100** Giddens, A., *Sociology — A Brief but Critical Introduction*, (Macmillan, 2nd edn, 1986); Vander Zanden, J.W., *Sociology — The Core*, (KNOPF, 1986).

**82.101** Bedgood, D., *Rich & Poor in New Zealand* (available from Department); Spoonley, P., Pearson, D., and I. Shirley, (eds.), *New Zealand: Sociological Perspectives* (Dunmore Press, 1982).

**82.103** Reading List available from the Department.

### Sociology II

**82.200** Durkheim, E., *The Division of Labour in Society* (Macmillan, 1984); Gerth, H.H. & Mills C.W., (ed.) *From Max Weber* (Routledge, 1970); McLelland, D., *Karl Marx: Selected Writings* (O.U.P., 1977) OR Tucker, R.C., (ed.) *The Marx-Engels Reader* (Norton, 1972).

**82.201** Nachmias, C. & P. Nachmias, *Research Methods in the Social Sciences*, (Edward Arnold, 1981, alternate edn); OR de Vaus, D.A., *Surveys in Social Research*, (Allen and Unwin, 1985).

**82.202** Wild, R.A., *Australian Community Studies and Beyond* (Allen & Unwin, Sydney, 1981).

**82.204** Pearson, G., *Hooligan, A History of Respectable Fears*, (Macmillan, 1983).

**82.205** Reading List available from the Department.

**82.207** Reading List available from the Department.

**82.208** Perrow, C., *Complex Organizations. A Critical Essay*, (McGraw-Hill, 3rd edn., 1986).

**82.209** Reading List available from the Department.

**82.210** Reading List available from the Department.

**82.211** Reading List available from the Department.

### Sociology III and MA

Reading lists are available from the Department.

## SPANISH

### Spanish I

**45.102** Da Silva, *Beginning Spanish*, 6th edn (Harper & Rowe); *First Year Departmental Workbook* (supplied).

**45.103** Eduardo Galeano, *Open veins of Latin America* (Monthly Review Press).

**45.104, 45.105** Da Silva, *Beginning Spanish* 6th edn (Harper & Rowe); *First Year Departmental Workbook* (supplied).

### Spanish II

**45.200** Da Silva, *On with Spanish* 3rd edn (Harper & Rowe); *First Year Departmental Workbook* (supplied).

**45.202** García Lorca, *La casa de Bernarda Alba* (Cátedra); Adelaida García Morales, *El sur* (Seix Barral); Sender, *Mosén Millán* (Destino Libro); Delibes, *El Camino* (Harrap); Buero Vallejo, *El concierto de San Ovidio/El tragaluz* (Castalia).

**45.204** Modernist poetry (supplied); Sábato, *El túnel* (Harrap); Solórzano (ed.), *Teatro hispanoamericano II* (FCE); Gallegos, *Doña Bárbara*; Gabriela Mistral and A. Storni, Poetry (supplied); Escobar Galindo, Theatre (supplied).

**45.208** Eduardo Galeano, *Open Veins of Latin America* (Monthly Review Press); Cardenal, *En Cuba* (Carlos Loblé); Cortázar, *Nicaragua, tan violentamente dulce* (Muchnik); Escobar Galindo, *Después de medianoche* (supplied); García Márquez, *La aventura de Miguel Littin clandestino en Chile* (Editora Política, Cuba).

### Spanish III

**45.300** L. Miguel López/Neus Sans Baulenas, *¿A que no sabes...?* (Lourdes); *Third Year Departmental Workbook* (supplied).

**45.302** Cervantes, *Don Quijote de la Mancha* (Planeta); Quevedo, *El Buscón* (Cátedra); Tirso de Molina, *El burlador de Sevilla* (Cátedra); Calderón, *La vida es sueño* (Manchester Uni. Press), Poetry (supplied).

**45.305** Neruda, *Residencia en la tierra* (Losada); Rulfo, *Pedro Páramo* (FCE); García Márquez, *Cien años de soledad* (Espasa-Calpe); Solórzano, *Teatro hispanoamericano I* (FCE); one text to be chosen in consultation with lecturer.

**45.307** Fernando Fernán-Gómez, *Las bicicletas son para el verano* (Espasa-Calpe); Vargas Llosa, *Quién mató a Palomino Malero?* (Seix Barral); Buero Vallejo, *Diálogo Secreto* (Espasa-Calpe); Isabel Allende, *La casa de los espíritus* (Plaza y Janés); Puig, *El beso de la mujer araña* (Seix Barral); Feliú de Azúa, *Historia de un idiota contada por él mismo* (Anagrama).

## ZOOLOGY

### Zoology I

**38.102** Villee, Walker and Barnes, *General Zoology* 6th edn. (Sanders); or Keeton, W.T. and J.L. Gould, *Biological Science* 4th edn. (Norton).

### Advanced Zoology

**38.202, 38.302** Young, *Life of the Vertebrates*, (O.U.P.) OR Romer, A.S., Parsons, T.S. *The Vertebrate Body* 6th edn. (Saunders).

**38.204** Krebs, C. and Davies, N.B., *An Introduction to Behavioural Ecology* 2nd edn. (Blackwell Scientific Publications, 1981).

**38.205** Scott, R.R. (ed.), *New Zealand Pest and Beneficial Insects* (Lincoln University College, 1984);



Evans, *Insect Biology* (Addison-Wesley, 1984).

**38.207** Rowntree, D., *Statistics Without Tears* (Penguin, 1981).

**38.317** Fenimore, P.G., *Plant Pests and their Control*

(Butterworths, 1982); Scott, R.R. (ed.), *New Zealand Pest and Beneficial Insects* (Lincoln University College, 1984).

### SUMMARY OF SUBJECT CODES

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>01</b> Accounting   | <b>47</b> Obstetrics and Gynaecology                 |
| <b>02</b> Commercial Law                                       | <b>48</b> Chinese                                    |
| <b>03</b> Anthropology   | <b>50</b> Engineering, General                       |
| <b>04</b> Maori Studies  | <b>51</b> Chemical and Materials Engineering         |
| <b>06</b> Botany   | <b>52</b> Civil Engineering                          |
| <b>07</b> Computer Science                                     | <b>53</b> Electrical and Electronic Engineering      |
| <b>08</b> Chemistry  | <b>54</b> Theoretical and Applied Mechanics          |
| <b>09</b> Latin  | <b>55</b> Mechanical Engineering                     |
| <b>10</b> Greek  | <b>56</b> Mining                                     |
| <b>11</b> Biblical History & Literature                        | <b>59</b> Languages and Literature                   |
| <b>12</b> Ancient History                                      | <b>60</b> Human Biology                              |
| <b>13</b> Economics  | <b>63</b> Behavioural Science                        |
| <b>14</b> Education; Guidance & Counselling                    | <b>64</b> Environmental Science                      |
| <b>15</b> Architecture   | <b>65</b> Anatomy                                    |
| <b>16</b> Educational Psychology                               | <b>66</b> Biochemistry                               |
| <b>18</b> English  | <b>67</b> Physiology                                 |
| <b>19</b> Art History  | <b>68</b> Pathology                                  |
| <b>20</b> Geography  | <b>69</b> General Practice                           |
| <b>21</b> Geology  | <b>70</b> Business and Industrial Administration     |
| <b>22</b> German   | <b>71</b> Marketing and International Business       |
| <b>23</b> Hebrew   | <b>72</b> Management Studies and Labour Relations    |
| <b>24</b> History  | <b>73</b> Classical Studies                          |
| <b>25</b> Law  | <b>74</b> Management Science and Information Systems |
| <b>26</b> Mathematics  | <b>75</b> Drama                                      |
| <b>27</b> Fine Arts  | <b>76</b> Systems Analysis                           |
| <b>28</b> Music  | <b>79</b> Pacific Studies                            |
| <b>29</b> Philosophy   | <b>80</b> Indonesian                                 |
| <b>30</b> Political Studies; Local Government & Administration | <b>81</b> Japanese                                   |
| <b>31</b> Physics  | <b>82</b> Sociology                                  |
| <b>32</b> Psychology: (Arts and Science)                       | <b>83</b> Linguistics                                |
| <b>34</b> French   | <b>84</b> Environmental Studies                      |
| <b>35</b> Italian  | <b>86</b> Energy Technology                          |
| <b>36</b> Planning   | <b>89</b> Medical Science                            |
| <b>37</b> Property Administration                              | <b>90</b> Medicine (MBChB)                           |
| <b>38</b> Zoology  | <b>91</b> Community Health                           |
| <b>39</b> Biology  | <b>92</b> Medicine                                   |
| <b>40</b> Cellular & Molecular Biology                         | <b>93</b> Paediatrics                                |
| <b>43</b> Russian  | <b>94</b> Psychiatry                                 |
| <b>44</b> Optometry  | <b>95</b> Surgery                                    |
| <b>45</b> Spanish  | <b>96</b> Pharmacology                               |
| <b>46</b> Scandinavian Studies                                 | <b>97</b> Asian Studies                              |
|  | <b>98</b> Immunobiology                              |

# Blank Page

**DIRECTORY**

*The Postal Address for all Departments is Private Bag, Auckland*

Academic Registrar	Registry Building	24 Princes Street
Accommodation Officer	Old Arts Building	22 Princes Street
Accounts	Old Arts Building	22 Princes Street
Accounting & Finance	Commerce Building	18 Symonds Street
Acoustics Research Centre	Architecture Building	22 Symonds Street
Acoustics Testing Service	Architecture Building	22 Symonds Street
Administration	Registry Building	24 Princes Street
Anatomy	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
Ancient History — refer Classics	Classics Building	5 Symonds Street
Animal Research Laboratories	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
Anthropology	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Applied Research Office	Engineering Building	20 Symonds Street
Architecture, Property & Planning	Architecture Building	22/26 Symonds Street
Art History	Art History Building	11 Symonds Street
Asian History	History Building	5 Wynyard Street
Asian Geography — refer Geography	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Asian Languages & Literature	Asian Languages Building	9 Symonds Street
Auckland Savings Bank	Engineering Building	20 Symonds Street
Auckland University Press		9 Grafton Road
Audio Visual Centre	Science Building	23 Symonds Street
Bank of New Zealand	Old Arts East Wing	5 Symonds Street
Behavioural Science	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
Biblical History — refer Classics	Classics Building	5 Symonds Street
Biochemistry	Science Building	23 Symonds Street
Bookshop	Student Union Building	34 Princes and High Streets
Botany	Thomas Building	3 Symonds Street
Botany — deliveries	Thomas Building	3A Symonds Street
Cafeteria	Student Union	34 Princes Street
Careers Adviser	Upper Lecture Theatre (rear)	3A Symonds Street
Cashier	Old Arts Building	22 Princes Street
Catholic Chaplains	Newman Hall	16 Waterloo Quadrant
Cellular & Molecular Biology	Thomas Building	3 Symonds Street
Cellular & Molecular Biology — deliveries	Thomas Building	3A Symonds Street
Chapel and Chaplains	Maclaurin Chapel	18 Princes Street
Chemistry	Science Building	23 Symonds Street
Chemistry — deliveries	Science Building	40 Wellesley Street E.
Chinese	Asian Languages Building	9 Symonds Street
Classics & Ancient History	Classics Building	5 Symonds Street
Commerce Faculty Office	Commerce I Building	18 Symonds Street
Commercial Law	Commerce I Building	18 Symonds Street
Community Health	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
Computer Centre	Computer Centre Building	24 Symonds Street
Computer Science	Science Building	38 Princes Street
Conference Centre	Architecture Building	22 Symonds Street
Continuing Education	Old Arts Building	22 Princes Street
Counsellors	Old Arts East Wing	5 Symonds Street
Crèche		30 Wynyard Street
Criminology — refer Law	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Custodians Office	Old Choral Hall	7 Symonds Street
Drama Theatre	Arts I Building	14A Symonds Street
Economics	Economics Building	4 Alfred Street
Education	Education building	5 Alten Road
Educational Psychology	Education Building	5 Alten Road
Engineering	Engineering Building	20 Symonds Street
Engineering — deliveries	Engineering Building	3 Grafton Road
English	Arts I Building	14A Symonds Street
Enquiries	Registry Building	24 Princes Street
Finance Registrar	Old Arts Building	22 Princes Street
Fine Arts — pedestrian access	Fine Arts Building	28 Symonds Street or
Fine Arts — deliveries	Fine Arts Building	20 Whitaker Place
French — refer Romance Languages	Arts I Building	14A Symonds Street
General Practice	School of Medicine	85 Park Road

Geography	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Geology	Geology Building	3A Symonds Street
Geothermal Institute	Architecture Building	26 Symonds Street
Germanic Languages and Literature		
Grafton Hall	German Building	10 Grafton Road
Greek — refer Classics		40 Seafield View Road
Grounds	Classics Building	Symonds Street
Gymnasium		3 Symonds Street
Hebrew — refer Classics	Recreation Centre	17 Symonds Street
Higher Education Research Office	Classics Building	5 Symonds Street
History	Old Choral Hall	7 Symonds Street
Human Sciences Building	History Building	5 Wynyard Street
Indonesian		10 Symonds Street
Information Officer	Asian Languages Building	9 Symonds Street
International House	Registry Building	24 Princes Street
Italian — refer Romance Languages		27 Whitaker Place
Japanese	Arts I Building	14A Symonds Street
Kenneth Maidment Theatre	Asian Languages Building	9 Symonds Street
Language Laboratories B and D	Maidment Arts Centre	8 Alfred Street
Language Laboratories 1 and 2	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Language Laboratories 3, 4, and 5		8 Grafton Road
Latin — refer Classics	Arts I Building	14A Symonds Street
Law	Classics Building	5 Symonds Street
Lecture Theatres & Rooms:	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Architecture (ALR)		
Botany (BotLT)	Architecture Building	26 Symonds Street
Cell Biology (CBioLT)	Old Biology Building	3A Symonds Street
Chemistry (Chem)	Thomas Building	3A Symonds Street
Conference Centre	Science Building	23 Symonds Street
Engineering (Eng)		22 Symonds Street
Human Sciences (HSB)	Engineering Building	20 Symonds Street
Library (Lib)	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Mathematics (MLT)	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Medical	Science Building	38 Princes Street
Old Arts (OA)	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
Old Choral Hall (OCH)	Old Arts Building	22 Princes Street
Physics (PLT)	Old Choral Hall	7 Symonds Street
Upper and Lower (ULT & LLT)	Science Building	38 Princes Street
Zoology (ZooLT)		3A Symonds Street
Leigh Laboratory		
	Old Biology Building	5 Symonds Street
	Goat Island Bay Road, R.D., Leigh, North Auckland (phone Warkworth 26-111)	
Liaison Office	Lower Lecture Theatre (rear)	3A Symonds Street
Library:		
Main	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Main — deliveries	Library Building	26 Princes Street
Architecture	Architecture Building	22 Symonds Street
Audio Visual	Arts I Building	14A Symonds Street
Biological Sciences	Thomas Building	3A Symonds Street
Bio. Sciences — deliveries	Thomas Building	3 Symonds Street
Continuing Education	Classics Building	5 Symonds Street
Engineering	Engineering Building	20 Symonds Street
Engineering — deliveries	Engineering Building	3 Grafton road
Fine Arts	Fine Arts Building	20 Whitaker Place
Geography	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Geology	Geology Building	3A Symonds Street
Law	Library Building	5 Alfred Street
Music	Music Building	31 Princes Street
Science	Science Building	38 Princes Street
Undergraduate Reading Room	Old Government House	3A Symonds Street
Linguistics — refer Anthropology	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Maidment Arts Centre		8 Alfred Street
Main Stores — Services	Arts I Building	29 Wynyard Street
Maintenance	Human Sciences Building	13-19 Wynyard Street

Management Science & Information Systems	Commerce I Building	18 Symonds Street
Management Studies & Labour Relations	Commerce I Building	18 Symonds Street
Maori Studies	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Marketing & International Business	Commerce I Building	18 Symonds Street
Marae		16 Wynyard Street
Mathematics	Science Building	38 Princes Street
Medicine	School of Medicine	85 Park Road
Music	Music Building	6 Symonds Street
Newman Hall	Catholic Tertiary Centre	16 Waterloo Quadrant
New Zealand Federation of University women	The Annex, Old Government House	3A Symonds Street
Norman Spencer Student Apartments		9 St Stephens Avenue Claude Road, Epsom
Obstetrics and Gynaecology	National Women's Hospital	22 Princes Street
Old Arts Building		7 Symonds Street
Old Choral hall		3A Symonds Street
Old Government House		8 Symonds Street
Optometry	Human Sciences Building	49 Symonds Street
O'Rorke Hall		85 Park road
Paediatrics	School of medicine	70 Seafield View Road
Park Road Student Flats		85 Park Road
Pathology	School of Medicine	24 Princes Street
Personnel	Registry Building	85 Park Road
Pharmacology	School of Medicine	3 Alfred Street
Philosophy		23 Symonds Street
Photographer — refer Audio Visual Centre	Science Building	17 Symonds Street
Physical Recreation	Recreation Centre	10 Symonds Street
Physico-Chemistry	Human Sciences Building	38 Princes Street
Physics	Science Building	40 Wellesley Street E.
Physics — deliveries	Science Building	85 Park Road
Physiology	School of Medicine	22/26 Symonds Street
Planning	Architecture Building	14 Symonds Street
Political Studies	Political Studies Building	5 Symonds Street
Post Office	Old Arts East Wing	85 Park road
Psychiatry and Behavioural Science	School of Medicine	10 Symonds Street
Psychology	Human Sciences Building	9 Grafton Road-
Publications — Editor	Auckland University Press	17 Symonds Street
Recreation Centre		24 Princes Street
Registry		14A Symonds Street
Romance Languages	Arts I Building	10 Symonds Street
Russian	Human Sciences Building	10 Grafton Road
Scandinavian Studies	German Building	3A Symonds Street
Senior Common Room	Old Government House	10 Symonds Street
Serbo-Croatian — refer Russian	Human Sciences Building	11 Wynyard Street
Services — Administration	Human Sciences Building	10 Symonds Street
Sociology	Human Sciences Building	14A Symonds Street
Spanish — refer Romance Languages	Arts I Building	24 Princes Street
Staff Registrar	Registry Building	22 Princes Street
Student Accommodation	Old Arts Building	5 Symonds Street
Student Counsellors	Old Arts East Wing	5 Symonds Street
Student Health	Old Arts East Wing	34 Princes Street
Student Union		Park road
Surgery	Auckland Hospital	
Theatre and Student Activities Officer	Student Union	34 Princes Street
Thomas Building		3A Symonds Street
Thomas Building — deliveries		3 Symonds Street
University Club		23/25 Princes Street
University Park		85 Merton Road
University Press	Auckland University Press	9 Grafton Road
University Printing Services		176 Kapa Road Orakei
Works Registrar	Old Choral Hall	7 Symonds Street
Zoology	Thomas Building	3A Symonds Street
Zoology — deliveries	Thomas Building	3 Symonds Street

**INDEX****A**

Abandonments, 68  
 Abstracts, 84  
 Academic Dress, 85-86  
 Academic Dress hire, 409  
 Accommodation Service, 410  
 Accounting & Finance, Department of, 269-270  
 Additional Lectures, 69  
 Addition of papers and subjects, 63  
 Admission, 56-58  
   ad eundem statum, 57, 75  
   provisional, 58  
   special, 57-58  
   University Entrance, 56  
 Aegrotat pass, 83  
 Alcohol, 92  
 Alterations to courses, 62-63  
 Ancient History, 153-156  
 Anthropology, 139-143  
 Anthropology, Department of, 139-145  
 Applied Research Office, 410  
 Architecture, Property and Planning,  
   Faculty of, 314-338  
 Architecture, School of, 314-330  
 Arms of the University, 96  
 Art History, Department of, 145, 374  
 Arts, Faculty of, 97-190  
 Asian Geography, 162, 163  
 Asian History, 167, 168, 169  
 Asian Languages and Literatures, 145-148  
 Asian Politics, 172, 173  
 Asian Studies, 148  
 Auckland University Club, 415  
 Auckland University District  
   Graduates' Association, 415  
 Awards handbook, 444

**B**

Biblical History and Literature, 156-157  
 Biochemistry, Department of, 219-220  
 Biology (for BHB), 385  
 Biology (for BSc), 220-222, 250-253  
 Botany, Department of, 220-222  
 Bursaries, (See Tertiary Assistance Grants)

**C**

Calendar, 4, 11-16  
 Careers Adviser, 409  
 Catering Services, 413-414  
 Cellular and Molecular Biology,  
   Department of, 222-223  
 Certificates:  
   Courses of Instruction in a Single Instrument, 312  
   Geothermal Energy Technology, 368  
   Principles and Practice of Radiochemistry, 256  
 Certificate of Proficiency, 402-403  
 Certificate - Transitional, 403  
 Chapel, 409  
 Chaplains, 409  
 Chemistry, Department of, 223-226  
 Chinese, 145-146  
 Classical Studies, 153  
 Classics and Ancient History,  
   Department of, 148-157  
 Commerce, Faculty of, 258-276  
 Compassionate Pass, 83-84  
 Computer Centre, 406  
 Computer Science, Department of, 226-228  
   Commerce papers, 262-263  
   Science papers, 198-199, 226-228  
 Computer System Regulations, 407  
 Conceded Pass, 82  
 Continuing Education, Centre for, 406  
 Copyright, 95  
 Council meetings, 11-16  
   members, 17-18  
 Counselling Service, 411  
 Course prescriptions for Degrees:  
   Accounting, 269-270  
   Ancient History, 153-157  
   Anthropology, 139-143  
   Architecture, 325-328  
   Art History, 145, 374  
   Asian Geography, 162-163  
   Asian History, 167, 168, 169  
   Asian Politics, 172, 173  
   Asian Studies, 148  
   Biblical History and Literature, 156-157  
   Biochemistry, 219-220  
   Biology for BHB, 385  
   Biology for BSc, 220-222, 250-253  
   Business Administration, 274  
   Botany, 220-222  
   Cellular and Molecular Biology, 222-223  
   Chemistry, 223-226  
   Chinese, 145-146  
   Classical studies, 153  
   Commercial Law, 270  
   Computer Science, 226-228  
   Economics, 157, 270-271  
   Education, 158-160  
   Engineering, 349-366  
   English, 161-164  
   Environmental Studies, 253, 338  
   Fine Arts, 374-376  
   French, 175-176  
   Geography, 162-164, 229  
   Geology, 229-234  
   German, 164-166  
   Greek, 151-153  
   Hebrew, 157  
   History, 166-170  
   Human Biology, 385-386, 388  
   Indonesian, 146-147  
   Italian, 176-177  
   Japanese, 147-148  
   Jurisprudence, 291-293  
   Latin, 149-151  
   Law, 287-289  
   Law, (Honours), 289-291  
   Linguistics, 144-145  
   Management Science and Information  
     Systems, 271-272  
   Management Studies and Labour  
     Relations, 272-273

- Maori Studies, 143-144
  - Marketing and International Business, 273-274
  - Mathematics and Statistics, 234-239
  - Medical Science, 239
  - Medicine, 386-388
  - Music, 170, 306-307, 308
  - Music (Performance), 307
  - Music (Performance) with Honours, 308
  - Optometry, 239-240
  - Pharmacology, 241
  - Philosophy, 171-172, 241
  - Physics, 172, 241-247
  - Physiology, 247-249
  - Planning, 335-337
  - Political Studies, 172-173
  - Property Administration, 328-329
  - Psychology, 173-175, 249-250
  - Russian, 179-180
  - Scandinavian Studies, 165-166
  - Sociology, 180-181
  - Spanish, 177-179
  - Zoology, 250-253
  - Course prescriptions for Diplomas:
    - Broadcast Communication, 182-183
    - Business, 272
    - Clinical Psychology, 254
    - Commerce, 276
    - Computer Sciences, 254-255
    - Criminology, 292
    - Drama, 183-184
    - English Language Teaching, 186-187
    - Geothermal Energy Technology, 367-368
    - Gynaecology and Obstetrics, 390
    - Legal Studies, 292-293
    - Local Government and Administration, 189
    - Mathematical Education, 255-256
    - Music, 310-311
    - Music with Honours, 311
    - Obstetrics, 391-392
    - Social Research, 189-190
    - Statistics, 256
  - Course prescriptions for Professional Examinations:
    - Accounting, 274
    - Architecture, 324
    - Law, 291
  - Course Regulations for Degrees — see Degree Regulations
  - Course Regulations for Diplomas:
    - Broadcast Communication, 182
    - Business, 275-276
    - Clinical Psychology, 251
    - Commerce, 275
    - Computer Science, 252
    - Criminology, 292
    - Drama, 183
    - Education, 184
    - Educational Psychology, 184-185
    - English Language Teaching, 185-186
    - Geothermal Energy Technology, 367
    - Guidance and Counselling, 187
    - Gynaecology and Obstetrics, 389-390
    - Legal Studies, 292-293
    - Local Government and Administration, 188-189
    - Mathematical Education, 255
    - Music, 309-310
    - Music with Honours, 311
    - Obstetrics, 391
    - Paediatrics, 389
    - Social Research, 189
    - Statistics, 256
  - Course Regulations for Professional Examinations:
    - Membership of NZ Society of Accountants, 274-275
    - Institute of Architects & AERB Special Exam, 324-325
    - Admission as Barrister and Solicitor, 291
  - Crèche, 412
  - Credits, 57, 66-68
  - Auckland Technical Institute, 67
  - Centre for Continuing Education, 67
  - Teacher's College, 66-68
  - Cross-credits, 65-66
- ## D
- Dates of Terms, 11-16
  - Deans, 19
  - Degree, Completion of at another University, 69
  - Degrees, Conferring of, 85-86
  - Degree Courses, *see* Course Prescriptions for Degrees
  - Degrees, Honorary, 86
  - Degree Regulations:
    - Bachelor of Architecture, 315-319
    - Arts, 98-131
    - Commerce, 258-266
    - Engineering, 340-346
    - Fine Arts, 370-372
    - Human Biology, 380
    - Laws, 278-281
    - Laws (Honours), 281-283
    - Medicine and Surgery, 381
    - Music, 296-299
    - Music (Performance), 299-301
    - Music (Performance) (Hons), 301-302
    - Optometry, 212-213
    - Planning, 336-338
    - Property Administration, 319-322
    - Science, 194-209
    - Science (Honours), 209-212
  - Master of Architecture, 322-323
    - Arts, 131-138
    - Business Administration, 268-269
    - Commerce, 267-268
    - Engineering, 346-349
    - Fine Arts, 372-373
    - Human Biology, 382
    - Jurisprudence, 285-286
    - Laws, 283-285
    - Literature, 138-139
    - Medical Science, 383
    - Music, 302-304
    - Philosophy, 400
    - Planning, 333-334
    - Property Administration, 323-324
    - Science, 215-219
  - Doctor of Engineering, 397-398
    - Laws, 396
    - Literature, 394
    - Medicine, 384

Music, 304-306  
 Philosophy, 400-402  
 Science, 395  
 Deletions of papers and subjects, 62-63  
 Diploma courses, *see* Course prescriptions for  
 Diplomas  
 Discipline, Regulations, 89-92  
   Library, 92-95  
   Computer System, 407  
 District, University, 69  
 Doctorates, *see* Degree Regulations  
 Tuition and Research Fees, 88-89

## E

Economics, Department of, 268-269  
 Education, Department of, 158-160, 228  
 Elam School of Fine Arts, 370, 374-376  
 Eligibility to Enrol, 59-60  
 Eligibility to sit Examinations, 79-80  
 English, Department of, 161-164  
 Engineering, Faculty of, 340-368  
 Enrolment 1988, 59-61, 72-79  
 Enrolment:  
   eligibility, 59-60  
   extramural, 78-79  
   late, 61, 75  
   limitations, 70-72  
   preparatory, 73-76  
   Regulations, 59-62  
   timetable 1988, 76-78  
 Enrolment Course, Regulations (General), 59-69  
 Entrance, Provisional, 58  
 Environmental Science, 228  
 Environmental Studies:  
   Faculty of Arts, 131  
   Faculty of Science, 253  
   Planning, 338  
 Examinations, 79-85  
   aegrotat and compassionate passes, 83-84  
   availability of scripts, 83  
   concessions, 84  
   conduct, 80-85  
   grades and marks, 81-82  
   marking of scripts, 81  
   open and restricted book, 80-81  
   recount of marks, 82  
   theses, 84  
 Exclusions from Course of study, 63-64  
 Exempted papers, courses, subjects, 68  
 Extramural enrolment, 78-79  
   at Massey University, 78-79

## F

Failure in a paper, course, after two attempts, 61  
 Failure to make satisfactory progress in a course of  
   study as a whole, 63-65  
 Fees, 86-89  
   examination, 87  
   general, 86-87  
   late, 88  
   payment of, 62  
   refunds, 63  
 Students' Association, 87

tuition and research, 88-89  
 welfare, 87-88  
 Fine Arts, Faculty of, 370-376  
   Elam School of, 370, 374-376  
 Fines:  
   disciplinary, 91-92  
   library, 94  
   penalties, 88  
 Foreign Language Reading Examination, 207, 216  
   French, 176  
   German, 165  
 French, 175-176  
 Full time study, Definitions, 442-444

## G

General Course Provisions, 56-95  
 General Statutes and Regulations, 56-95  
 Geography, Department of, 162-164; 229  
 Geothermal Institute, 367-368  
 German, 164-165  
 Germanic Languages and Literature,  
   Department of, 164-166  
 Geology, Department of, 229-234  
 Graduate school of Business, 274-276  
 Graduates:  
   Association 415-416  
   N.Z. Association, 416  
   Club, 416  
   Honorary, 19-20  
 Graduation, 85-86  
 Grafton Hall, 410  
 Greek, 151-153

## H

Halls of Residence, 410  
   International House, 410  
   Grafton Hall, 410  
   Norman Spencer Apartments, 410  
   Park Road Student Flats, 410  
 Harassment procedures, 412  
 Health Service, Student, 412  
 Hebrew, 157  
 Higher Degrees:  
   Doctor of Engineering, 397-398  
   Doctor of Laws, 396  
   Doctor of Literature, 394  
   Doctor of Science, 395  
 History, Department of, 166-170  
 History University of Auckland, 5-7  
 Honorary Degrees, award of, 86  
 Honorary Graduates, 19-20

## I

Indonesian, 146-147  
 Intermediate Courses,  
   Other Universities, 404  
 Intellectual Property, 410-411  
 Inter-Faculty Studies, 400-404  
 International House, 410  
 Inventions and Patents, 410-411  
 Italian, 176-177



**J**

Japanese, 147-148

**L**

Laboratory Timetable, 1988, 436-439

Late Enrolment, 61, 75

Latin, 149-151

Law, Faculty of, 278-294

Lecture Timetable 1988, 416-436

Legislation, 452-480

Leigh Laboratory, 234

Library, 92-95

hours, 93

Limitations on Enrolment, 70-72

Linguistics, 144-145

Lost property, 411

**M**

Maclaurin Chapel, 411

Maidment Arts Centre, 415

Management Science and Information Systems,

Department of, 271-272

Management Studies and Labour Relations,

Department of, 272-273

Maori Studies, 143-144

Map, Campus, 9-10

Marine Research Laboratory, *see* Leigh Lab., 234

Marketing and International Business,

Department of, 273-274

Marking of Scripts, 81

Massey University, tuition at, 78-79

Mathematics and Statistics, Department of, 234-239

Matriculation, 56

McGregor Museum, 253

Medical Science, 239

Medicine and Human Biology, Faculty of, 377-392

Higher Academic and Refresher Training, 392

School of, 378-379

Music, BA papers, 170

course for non-degree students, 312

Music, Faculty of, 296-312

**N**

Newman Hall, 409-410

NZ Federation of University Women, 409

NZ University Students' Association, 414

NZ Universities Graduates' Association (UK), 415

Non-matriculated students, 56, 63

Norman Spencer Apartments, 410

**O**

Obstetrics & Gynaecology, Higher Training, 392

Postgraduate School, 389

Refresher Training for Family Doctors, 392

Officers of the University, 17

Operations Research, 403-404

Optometry, 239-240

Overseas educational qualifications, 57, 72, 75

Overseas Students Admissions Committee, 75

**P**

Parking, 90, 411

Park Road Student Flats, 410

Patents, 410-411

Payment of Fees, 62, 63

Penalties for late enrolment, 61, 63, 88

Personal Interest Course, 56-57

Pharmacology and Clinical Pharmacology,

Department of, 241

Philosophy, Department of, 171-172, 241

Master of, 400

Doctor of, 400-402

Physics, Department of, 172, 241-247

Physiology, Department of, 247-249

Planning, Department of, 331-338

Political Studies, Department of, 172-173

Postgraduate Medical Committee, 392

Postgraduate School of Obstetrics & Gynaecology, 389

Preparatory Application Regulations, 58

Preparatory enrolment, 73-75

Preliminary, preparatory & supplementary Courses:

German, 164-165

Latin, 149

Prerequisites, *see* Degree Regulations

Prescribed Text, 481-501

Press correspondence, 411

Prizes: 447-450

University of Auckland 1986, 446-450

Professores emeriti, 20

Professional Examinations, *see* Course Prescriptions for professional examinations

Property Administration, 319-322, 323-324

Provisional Entrance, 58

Psychology:

Clinic, 411

Department of, 173, 175, 249-250

**R**

Radiochemistry, 256

Recreation Centre, 412

Research Engineering, 349

Restricted pass, 82

Restrictions on Enrolment, 70-72

Recount of marks, 82

Romance Languages, Department of, 175-179

Russian, 179-180

**S**

Scandinavian Studies, 165-166

Science, Faculty of, 191-256

Scholarships and other Awards, 444-450

Scholarships, University of Auckland 1987, 445-447

Scholarships, National, 1987, 445

Senate:

meetings, 11-16

members, 18-19

Sketch Plan, Auckland University District, 69

Smoking, 90, 95  
 Society of Accountants, 274-275  
 Social Research Diploma in, 189-190  
 Sociology, 180-181  
 Spanish, 177-179  
 Special Admission, 57-58  
 Staff:  
   Academic, 21-49  
   Administrative, 50-54  
   Library, 49-50  
 Statutes and Regulations of the University:  
   Admission Regulations, 56-58  
   Award of Honorary Degrees Regulations, 86  
   Computer Systems Regulations, 407  
   Conferring of Degrees and Academic Dress, 85-86  
 Court of Convocation Statute, 467  
 Council Elections (Regulations),  
   Court of Convocation Representatives, 467-470  
   Representatives of Governing Bodies of Secondary  
   Schools, 470-473  
   Lecturers' Representatives, 472-474  
 Disciplinary Regulations, 89-92  
 Dress Regulations, 85-86  
 Enrolment and Course (General) Regulations, 59-69  
 Extramural Enrolment Regulations, 79  
 Extramural Enrolment Statute, 78-79  
 Examination Regulations, 79-85  
 Fees Regulations, 86-89  
 Library Regulations, 93-95  
 Limitation of Entry, 70  
 Preparatory Application Regulations, 58  
 Senate Elections,  
   Lecturers' Representatives of Faculties  
   Regulations, 474-477  
   Lecturers' Reps. at Large Regulations, 477-480  
 Student Counselling, 411  
 Student Health Service, 412  
 Student Learning Unit, 411  
 Student's Association, 413-415  
 Studio:  
   Architecture, 325-326  
   Fine Arts, 375-376

Subject Codes, Summary of, 501  
 Supplementary courses, *see* preliminary courses

## T

Telephones, 413  
 Terms, 59  
   dates, 11-17  
 Theses, 84  
   *see also* the Regulations for individual degrees  
 Tertiary Assistance Grants, 441-443  
 Tertiary Assistance Grants, Tenure, 444  
 Texts, prescribed, 1988, 482-504  
 Timetables, 1988, 416-439  
   Enrolment, 1988, 76-78  
   Lecture, 1988, 416-436  
   Laboratory, 1988, 436-439  
 Transfer from another NZ University, 59, 75  
 Transitional Certificate, 403

## U

University (Other) Intermediate Courses, 404  
 University of Auckland Foundation, 5  
 University Grants Committee Handbook, 444  
 University of Auckland Act 1961, 452-466  
 Unsatisfactory work during year, 63-64

## V

Vice-Chancellor's Special Powers, 69

## W

Welfare Services, 412-413  
 Withdrawals from course, paper or subject, 62-63

## Z

Zoology, Department of, 250-253  
 Museum, 250

## ADDENDUM

Although all reasonable efforts have been made to ensure that the information contained in the *Calendar* is correct at the time of going to press, some matters covered by this publication may be subject to change. The following amendments and alterations were approved too late for inclusion in the *Calendar* at the time of printing:

- (i) Faculty of Arts, Degree Regulations, BA Schedule, Russian, pages 126-127
  - (a) Delete '43.113, 43.212'. Add '\*43.113, \*43.312' ie papers 43.113 and 43.312 will not be taught in 1988.
  - (b) Delete '\*43.313'. Add '43.313' ie paper 43.313 will be taught in 1988.
- (ii) Faculty of Arts, Degree Prescriptions, Russian, pages 179-180.  
 Delete '43.113, 43.312, \*43.313'. Add '\*43.113, \*43.312, 43.313'.
- (iii) Faculty of Science, Degree Regulations Schedule, Geology, page 201.  
 Delete: Second entry for 21.300 Field Methods for Geology.  

Insert: 21.302	Advanced Tectonics	46
	and Applied Geology	23 x 3          6          21.201;203
- (iv) Faculty of Science, Degree Prescriptions, Optometry, page 240, Optometry for MSc  
 Delete: '2 papers selected from 44.451 to 44.454'.  
 Insert: '2 papers selected from 44.551 to 44.554'.  
 Renumber papers 44.451, 44.453, 44.454 as 44.551, 44.553, 44.554.